



## Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

## Linee guida per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

- + *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.
- + *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.
- + *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.
- + *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertarti di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

## Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da <http://books.google.com>















SYNTAX  
OF  
THE LATIN VERB

BY  
WILLIAM E. PETERS, LL.D.,  
PROFESSOR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE  
UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA.

PUBLISHED BY ANDERSON BROS.,  
UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA.

1898.

37216

PA 2215  
.PA

---

Copyrighted 1898, by ANDERSON BROS., University of Virginia.

---

## ERRATA ET ADDENDA.

---

- Page 7, line 31, write *object* instead of *oject*.  
Page 11, line 2, destroy comma after *attributive*.  
Page 15, line 7, instead of *a quality* write *an action*.  
Page 38, line 1, write *mos* instead of *nos*.  
Page 39, line 28, destroy *permittere*.  
Page 81, line 3, instead of *actonis* write *actionis*.  
Page 107, after line 37, add: "REM. The Pluperfect Tense expresses an action completed in the general Past in which the resulting state of the completed action is emphasized as the characteristic sense of the tense. This resulting state is essentially the Imperfect Tense; as, *pervenerat* = *aderat*."  
Page 121, line 8, write *exercituum* instead of *exercitum*.  
Page 171, line 2, instead of *singe* write *single*.  
Page 173, line 25, after *failure to meet* insert , *in some cases an insistence to discharge*,  
Page 181, line 20, instead of *si* or *nisi* write *ni* or *nisi*.  
Page 183, bottom line, instead of *conditional sentence of comparison* write *conditional wish*.  
Page 268, line 32, after *Simple Tense*, destroy comma and write *of* instead of *if*.  
Page 368, line 14, right hand side of page, instead of *ut dirisses* write *ut errasses*.  
Page 368, line 17, right hand side of page, instead of *ut dirisses* write *ut errasses*.  
Page 388, line 11, instead of *exurere* write *exuere*.  
Page 400, line 16, instead of *diffugiunt* write *diffugiunt*.  
Page 410, line 6, instead of *licit* write *licet*.  
Page 442, line 3, instead of *The Indicative (rarely occurring)* emphasizes an affirmative statement, write "The negative with the Indicative emphasizes a negative fact which is not the cause or ground. Ex.—*Miser sum, non quod amicus meus ad me non scribit, sed quod metuo ne aegrotus sit* (non scribit the fact but not the cause). Cf. *Miser sum, non quod amicus meus ad me non scribat, sed quod metuo ne aegrotus sit* (non scribat = scribit)."





## PREFACE.

---

THE following discussion of the *Syntax of the Latin Verb* has been prepared, primarily, for the Latin classes of the University of Virginia. It is believed, however, that after the Paradigms have been thoroughly mastered it may be used with profit by students of Latin in High Schools, in Academies, and in the Freshman class of Colleges, as far as the *Potential Subjunctive*.

In the treatment of certain forms, as the *gerund* and *gerundive*, the aim has been so to formulate the different interpretations of them and so to restrict them by Rule as to enable the student to use them with certainty and according to the facts as they occur in the language. For the different theories as to the origin and meaning of the forms the student is referred to Roby's Grammar. The following grammars and works have been consulted, and where an example aptly illustrating the subject discussed occurs the writer has not hesitated to use it: *Gildersleeve and Lodge, Allen and Greenough, Stolz and Schmalz, Lattmann and Müller, Roby, Kühner, Mulvig, Dräger*, and others.

No attempt has been made to treat the subject *historically*. In fact, no reliable historical syntax of the Latin language is known to the writer. But where a construction occurs, for the first time, in any period of the language the aim has been to give an example illustrating it.

The writer is greatly indebted to his accomplished assistant, Mr. C. C. Wright, for his valuable aid. The latter has read the entire proof and is responsible for the correctness of the text. He desires also to express his gratitude to Prof. George H. Denny, of Hampden-Sidney College, Virginia, an excellent Latinist, for his kindness in preparing the *Index*.

W. E. PETERS.

*University of Virginia, July 12th, 1898.*



# Syntax of the Latin Verb.

---

1. The Verb conveys a *twofold* idea:

(a) Of *action* or *state*.

(b) Of *affirmation*, *declaration*.

The *action* or *state* is called the *substantive element* of the Verb. The Verb, then, consists:

(a) Of a *substantive element* of *action* or *state*.

(b) Of the *affirmation* or *declaration* of this element. The *affirmation* or *declaration* must be of a *subject*. Hence the Verb *affirms* or *declares action* or *state* of a *subject*.

Ex.—**Equus currit.** The *substantive element* is *running* and this is *affirmed* or *declared* of the *subject equus*. The *substantive element* of the Verb, independently considered, is a *Noun Substantive*; this element, then, is not the Verb, nor is it the *characteristic element* of the Verb as a *Part of Speech*, since it is controlled to a certain extent by the same laws which govern other *Nouns Substantive*; the remaining element, *affirmation* or *declaration*, is not the Verb, because there is lacking that which is *affirmed* or *declared*. But the Verb is the only *Part of Speech* which involves *affirmation* or *declaration*; this element, then, *distinguishes* the Verb as a *Part of Speech*. Hence the Verb involves both a *substantive element* and the *affirmation* or *declaration* of this. While both elements, the *substantive* and the *affirmative* or *declarative*, are necessary to the definition of the Verb as a *Part of Speech*, the *affirmative*, as it belongs *exclusively* to the Verb, is its *characteristic element*.

2. The *substantive element* of the Verb, as also the *affirmation* of this, is modified by *Mood* and *Tense*. Hence the Verb is subdivided into—

(a) *Mood*. The basis of *Mood* is the *manner* in which the *substantive element* is *affirmed*.

(b) *Tense*. The basis of *Tense* is *twofold*:

1. The *Time* to which the *substantive element* is referred; that is, whether it is *affirmed* as embraced in the *Present*, *Past*, or *Future Time*.

2. The *action* or *state* according as it is *incomplete* and *progressive* or *complete* and *finished*. Both elements, namely, *Time* and *Action*, are necessary to the definition of *Tense*.

Again, Tense is *modified in form* according to the relation of the action or state to the Subject; that is, according as it is affirmed of a *subject* in the *First, Second, or Third Person*, Singular or Plural.

3. The Verb is again modified in form by a third subdivision, namely, *Voïce*. The basis of this subdivision is—

1. The relation of the *substantive element*—(a) to the *Subject of Affirmation*, that is, the *person or thing* of whom or of which the substantive element is *affirmed*; (b) to the *agent* who *executes or does* what is expressed in the substantive element; (c) to the *object* which *receives, suffers, defines (measures)*, or to which *extends* the substantive element.

2. The relation of the *subject of affirmation*, of the *agent*, and of the *object* to one another.

4. Of *Mood* there are three forms essentially differing from one another in form and sense.

5. The *Indicative Mood* is that form of the Verb employed in *explicit, positive affirmation*, or when *affirmation is suspended or awaits explanation*. In this Mood the substantive element of the Verb is *positively affirmed as a fact*, as something that *is* occurring (in the Present), that *did* occur (in the Past), or that *will* occur (in the Future). This Mood is also used when there is expressed only the *logical relation* of one substantive element to another (in the *Conditional sentence*) without affirmation as to the actual occurrence of either, or when its occurrence or reality depends upon an explanation (*Indicative Mood in a Question*).

Ex.—*Puer scribit, scripsit, scribebat, scribet. Tuum est, Servi, si vir es, regnum*, Liv., I, 41, 2. *Visne, O Damocle, fortunam experiri meam?* Cic., Tusc., V, 21, 61.

6. The *Subjunctive Mood*. By means of this form of the Verb its substantive element is represented as something *supposed, ideal, probable, contingent*. Hence, with a corresponding indefinite affirmation, the substantive element is presented as something that *is probably occurring*, that *did probably* occur, or that *will probably* occur. The *ideal or contingent force* of the Subjunctive depends upon the exact *kind of contingency or ideality* to be expressed. In other words, it depends upon the exact character of the contingent or ideal relation which the *substantive element* bears to the *Subject of affirmation*: this relation may be one of *condition, of unreality, of a matter wished or*

*desired, of a purpose, or result to be developed, or that of a modest expression of opinion.*

Ex.—**Si veniat** (= If he were to (should he) come). **Si adesset** (= If he were present—were he present). **Utinam amicus meus veniat** (would that my friend may come. I wish my friend may come). **Fluctuans animo, ut tereret tempus** (= in order to waste time) **ordines explicavit**, Liv., I, 27, 6. **Numero alterum tantum adiecit, ut mille et octingenti equites in tribus centuriis essent** (so that *there should be*), Liv., I, 36, 7. **Velim** (= *I would like*) **ad me scribas**, Cic., Att., I, 16, 18.

7. The *Imperative Mood* is that form of the Verb which presents a *command or order either absolutely or in the modified form of a wish or request, of a prayer, of an exhortation, or rule of action.* In other words, in the Imperative form of the Verb its *substantive element* is presented as a matter *commanded or ordered, requested, prayed for, advised or exhorted*, to be observed as a rule of conduct and action. The *time* of the execution of an order or command, of the realization of a prayer or wish, etc., is *future*. Hence, the *Time* to which the substantive element is referred by the Imperative is necessarily *Future*. It cannot be *Present*. It is only apparently *Present*, when the *continuance* of an action *already begun and in progress* is ordered or requested; as, *mane* = *remain or continue where you are*. The *Time*, then, of the Imperative is *Future*.

Ex.—**O Iuppiter, serua haec bona nobis**, Ter., Eun., 1047. **Abi, nuntia Romanis, caelestes ita velle**, etc., Liv., I, 16, 7. **Valetudinem tuam cura diligenter**, Cic., Fam., XIV, 10. **Poemata dulcia sunt et quocumque volent animum agunto**, Hor., A. Poet., 99. **Iustitiam cole et pietatem**, Cic., Rep., VI, 16, 16. **Haec caelestia semper spectato, illa humana contemnito**, Cic., Rep., VI, 19, 20.

8. The *Infinitive Mood*. This form of the Verb is characterized by the *lack of Affirmation*. If it lacks affirmation it must lack the *manner* of affirmation. But *manner* of affirmation is the distinguishing characteristic of *Mood*. Hence the Infinitive is, properly speaking, not a *Mood*. The Infinitive, by variation of form, is capable of denoting the kind of action or state, whether *complete* or *incomplete*, and of accommodating itself to the time to be expressed as indicated by the *Tense of the leading Verb*, upon which it depends. Some of its forms as *-rum esse*, *-tum (-sum) iri* and *-tum (-sum) fore* express in themselves *future time*. The Infinitive, as stated, lacks affirmation. It is, then, that form of the Verb which *lacks affirmation*. If we strip the Verb of affirmation, there is left according to the definition of it, *action or state, or the substantive element*. But action or state, with-



out affirmation, is a *Noun Substantive*. Hence the Infinitive is really a Noun Substantive, but differs from other Nouns Substantive in denoting, by distinct forms, the *state* or *condition* of *action*, whether *complete* or *incomplete*, and is capable, by the same means, of *accommodating* itself to the *time* to be expressed as indicated by the Tense upon which it depends, and in governing the case that the Verb governs from which it is derived. It thus retains, in certain respects, the character of a Verb. As a Noun Substantive, thus restricted, the Infinitive occurs in two cases:

(a) In the Nominative as Subject, usually Present or Imperfect form.

Ex.—**Invidere non cadit in sapientem, ergo ne misereri quidem**, Cic., Tusc., III, 10, 21. **Naturam mutare difficile est**, Sen., Ira., II, 20, 2. **Non est acerbum carere eo quod cupere desieris**, Sen., Ep., X, 2, 11.

(b) In the Accusative as Object.

Ex.—**Perdere iste sciet, donare nesciet**, Tac., Hist., I, 30. **Spartae rapere pueri et clepere discunt**, Cic., Rep., IV, 3, 3. **Dionysius, ne tonsori collum committeret, tondere filias suas docuit**, Cic., Tusc., V, 20, 58.

REM. 1. The Infinitive very rarely occurs in the Accusative associated with a Preposition. The *repetition* of *inter* with the Infinitive after *interest* is classical and allowable.

Ex.—**Aristo et Pyrrho inter optime valere et gravissime aegrotare nihil dicebant interesse**, Cic., Fin., II, 13, 43. **Si quis sibi beneficium dat, nihil interest inter dare et accipere**, Sen., Ben., V, 10, 2.

9. The Infinitive, as we have seen, is a peculiar Noun Substantive in two cases, the Nominative and Accusative. But it is a *necessity* that the *Infinitive* relation shall be expressed in *other* cases than the *Nominative* and *Accusative*. This necessity is to a certain well-defined extent supplied by the *Gerund*.

10. The *Gerund*, then, is only the Infinitive in the oblique cases. It has been seen that the Infinitive occurs in an Accusative relation. The Gerund has an *Accusative* case. The Accusative of the Gerund differs from the Accusative of the Infinitive not in sense, not in the kind of Action which characterizes it. Both express the *simple, absolute substantive* element of the Verb. Both *govern* the case that the Verb governs from which they are derived. Both may be associated with the *Present, Past, and Future* Time as decided by the context and leading *Tense*. They are identical in sense, and differ from each

other only in their grammatical government. While the *Accusative* of the *Infinitive* supplies the object of a Verb, or is the *Accusative of exact complement*, and is rarely associated with a Preposition, the *Accusative* of the Gerund is associated with a Preposition *ad*, *inter*, *in*, *ob*, less frequently *ante*, *circa*, *propter*.

Ex.—*Nos ad audiendum parati sumus*, Cic., Tusc., I, 9, 17. *Equi ante domandum ingentes tollunt animos*, Verg., Georg., III, 206. *M. Tullius inter agendum numquam est destitutus scientia iuris*, Quint., XII, 3, 10. *Eloquentia plus circa movendum valet*, Quint., IV, 5, 6. *In loquendum tarda per aestivos defuit hora dies*, Ov., Pont., II, 10, 37. (*Indignum est*) *eum, a quo pecuniam ob absolvendum acceperis, condemnare*, Cic., Ver., II, 32, 78. *Hippuris utilis (est) vulneribus ex aceto imposita propter sistendum sanguinem*, Plin. Mai., XXVI, 134.

(a) The *Genitive* and *Dative* of the Gerund occur when it is necessary to express the Infinitive relation or the Substantive element of the Verb in the *Genitive* or *Dative Case*. These cases of the Gerund, then, are decided and controlled by the rules which govern the Genitive and Dative of a Noun Substantive.

### 1. Genitive of the Gerund.

Ex.—*Pueris non omnem ludendi licentiam damus*, Cic., Off., I, 29, 103. *Beate vivendi cupiditate incensi omnes sumus*, Cic., Fin., V, 29, 86.

### 2. Dative of the Gerund.

Ex.—*Aqua bituminata aut nitrosa utilis est bibendo*, Plin. Mai., XXXI, 59. *Emporetica inutilis scribendo*, Plin. Mai., XIII, 76.

(b) The *Ablative* of the Gerund is used when it is necessary to express the Infinitive relation or the *substantive element* of the Verb in the Ablative of *means*, *cause*, *manner*, *general circumstances under which*, or in association with *Prepositions* *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *in*, rarely with *pro*, *cum*. (*Super* not in classical Latin). *Sine* not to be considered.

Ex.—*Unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem*, Cic., Sen., IV, 10. *Lycurgi leges laboribus erudiant iuventutem, venando currendo, esuriendo sitiendo, algendo aestuando*, Cic., Tusc., II, 14, 34. *Ita educati venando peragraré sal-tus*, Liv., I, 4, 9. *Pisoni nullum tempus umquam vacabat a cogitando*, Cic., Brut., LXXVIII, 272. *Quae de bene vivendo a Platone disputata sunt*, Cic., Fin., I, 2, 5. *Voluptas, quam ex discendo capiunt*, Cic., Fin., V, 18, 48. *Quarum (ministrarum) altera quae sint in disputando vera atque falsa iudicat*, Cic., De Part., XXIII, 78. *Pro vapulando ego abs te mercedem petam*, Pl., Aul., III, 3, 8. *Scribendi ratio coniuncta cum loquendo*, Quint., I, 5, 3. (*Super adimenda vita*, Amm., Marc., XIV, 7, 12).

## 11. The *Supine*, as do the Infinitive and Gerund, expresses the

simple substantive element of the Verb, and hence is to this extent a Noun Substantive. In its Declension it is restricted to two cases, the *Accusative* and *Ablative*. It is identical in meaning with the Infinitive and Gerund, in that it presents, as they do, the simple Substantive element of the Verb, and is so far a Noun Substantive. As do the Infinitive and Gerund, so the form of the Supine in *-um* governs the case which the Verb governs from which it is derived, thus differing from an ordinary Noun Substantive. Qualification by an Adverb doubtful. The form of the Supine in *-u* has so far lost the force of its verbal origin and has so far assumed the office of expressing the pure substantive element of the Verb that it does not govern a case.

The *Supine*, then, like the *Gerund*, may be regarded as only a different form of presenting the Infinitive relation *under restrictions*.

(a) The Accusative of the Infinitive is used with a Verb and gives the object of the Verb.

(b) The Accusative of the Gerund is used when it is necessary to express the Infinitive relation in association with a Preposition.

(c) The Accusative of the Supine (in *-um*) is employed to present the Infinitive relation with a Verb of Motion.

(d) The Ablative of the Supine (in *-u*) is also restricted in its use. We have seen that when it is necessary to present the Ablative of the Infinitive or of the pure substantive element of the Verb as *Means*, etc., and *in association* with a Preposition the Ablative of the *Gerund* is employed. The Ablative of the Infinitive relation may also be expressed by the Ablative of the Supine in *-u* under the restriction that, in this case, it must be associated with an *adjective* and with certain fixed expressions.

Ex.—*Aurum per medios ire satellites amat*, Hor., Od., III, 16, 10, (*ire* object of *amat*). *Aquam ea extra moenia petitum ierat*, Liv., I, 11, 6, (*petitum* depends on *ierat*). *Alpinus amnis difficillimus transitu est*, Liv., XXI, 31, 10, (*transitu* depends on *difficillimus*).

So when the Infinitive relation or substantive element of the Verb is in the Accusative associated with a Preposition, the Accusative of the Gerund must be used.

12. The Participle conveys a *twofold* idea :

(a) A substantive idea ; (b) An attributive idea.

The substantive idea of a Participle is the substantive element of the Verb from which the Participle is derived. But the substantive

element of a Verb is, as has been seen, *action* or *state*. Hence the substantive idea of a Participle is *action* or *state*. The Participle, then, is a Part of Speech which *attributes action* or *state*. But the Adjective likewise has an *attributive* character. To the extent of their *attributive* character, the Adjective and Participle are identical in their office. They differ, however, from each other in the kind of substantive element characteristic of each. In the case of the Adjective its substantive element is quality. Hence an Adjective is a Part of Speech which attributes quality to a subject. In the case of the Participle its substantive element is action or state. Hence a Participle is a Part of Speech which attributes action or state to a subject. Thus, *equus currens*, the action *running* is attributed to *equus*, but in the phrase *equus albus*, the quality *whiteness* is attributed to *equus*. From its definition, it appears that the Participle and adjective agree in certain respects. They are both governed by the same laws of *inflection* and *agreement*, they are both, in certain cases, modified by Comparison. But the Participle partakes, to a certain extent, of the character of the Verb from which it is derived. Hence it *governs case* and by a change of form *denotes kind of action* or *state* and conforms to the time to be expressed as indicated by the context in which it is used. The form in *-rus* expresses *future time*.

13. Of the Form of the Verb called *Voice* there are three kinds : *Active*, *Passive*, and *Reflexive*. These are distinguished by the relation of the *Subject of Affirmation*, of the *Agent*, and of the *Object to one another*, and to the *substantive element of the Verb*.

(a) In the *Active Voice* the *Subject of Affirmation* (Subject of which the action of the Verb is affirmed) and the *Agent* who performs the action are the same ; but the *Object* which receives or suffers the action is different from both.

Ex.—**Alexander Dareum vicit.** Here **Alexander** is the *Subject of Affirmation* and the *Agent* ; **Dareum** is the *Object*.

(b) In the *Passive Voice*, the *Subject* of which the action is affirmed and the *Object* which *suffers* the action are the same, but the *Agent* by whom the action is done is different from both.

Ex.—**Dareus ab Alexandro victus est.** Here **Dareus** is the *Subject of affirmation* and the *Object* ; **Alexander** is the *Agent*.

(c) The *Reflexive* form of the Verb is sometimes the *Active* form, sometimes the *Passive* form. In it the *subject* of whom the action is

*affirmed*, the *Agent* who performs the action, and the *Object* who suffers the action are all the same.

Ex.—**Lavo**, more frequently **lavor** = I wash myself = I bathe. **Verto**, **muto**, **vergo**, **inclino**, **moveo**, **augeo**, **minuo**, **volvo**, **deflecto**, **finio**, etc. The Reflexive sense is oftener presented in the *Passive form of the Verb*, as **lavor**, **vertor**, **vergor**, **inclinor**, **moveor**, **minuor**, **volvor**, **deflector**, **finior**, **augeor**, **effundor**, **diffundor**, **circumcior**, etc. **Animus ad alterius non modo sensum, sed etiam vultum convertitur**, Cic., Am., XXV, 93. (**Convertitur** = **se convertit**). **Revolveris eodem**, Cic., Tusc., I, 6, 12. (**Revolveris** = **te revolvis**). **Quod semper movetur, aeternum est**, Cic., Tusc., I, 23, 53, etc.

(d) In the *Passive form of the Verb* sometimes obtains the same relation of *Subject of Affirmation*, *Agent*, and *Object* that is presented in the Active. The class of Verbs, *Passive in form*, in which this relation of *Subject of Affirmation*, *Agent*, and *Object* obtains, is called *Deponent*.

Ex.—**Caesar hostes aggressus est**. **Caesar** is the *Subject of Affirmation* and the *Agent*; **hostes** is the *Object*.

14. It has been seen that the Infinitive presents the simple Substantive element of the Verb and is, to this extent, a *Noun Substantive*. In the classical prose writers, the Infinitive, as a Noun Substantive, is confined to two cases, the Nominative and Accusative, and, generally, to the Present form of the Infinitive. The Nominative of the Perfect form of the Infinitive occurs, often, in the presentation of a *general truth*: the Accusative of the Perfect form of the Infinitive is poetical. It must, however, be observed that wherever the Perfect form of the Infinitive occurs it may be clearly distinguished from the Present Infinitive by the translation (to have, etc.).

Ex.—**Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores nec sinit esse ferus**, Ov., Pont., II, 9, 48. **Soles custodire defunctorum voluntatem, quam bonis heredibus intellexisse pro iure est**, Plin. Min., IV, 10, 3. **Quam utile est ad usum secundorum pro adversa venisse!** Plin. Min., Pan., 44. **Cogita quantum boni opportuna mors habeat, quam multis diutius vixisse nocuerit**, Sen., Marc., XX, 4. Cf. Sen., Clem., I, 1, (**fecisse**); XI, 2, (**fudisse**); Sen., Ben., I, 10, 3, (**cepisse**); Sen., Ben., IV, 15, 2, (**dedisse**); Sen., Ben., VI, 26, 1, (**detraxisse**); Sen., N. Q., III, Praef., 10, (**complesse**), etc.; Hor., Od., I, 1, 4, (**collegisse**). **Bacchatur vates, magnum si pectore possit excussisse deum**, Verg., Aen., VI, 78. Cf. Caes., B. G., VI, 21, (**habuisse**).

15. While with the phrases *satis est*, *satis habeo*, *melius est*, *sufficit*, *piget*, *invidet*, *parcitet*, *contentus sum*, *volo*, etc., the late Prose writers and the Poets often emphasize the completed action of the dependent Infinitive where the *progressive* or *repeated* action of the Present Infini-

tive would answer the conditions and express the sense, the Perfect Infinitive should be distinguished from the Present Infinitive in the translation.

Ex.—**Satis est mihi vigilare desiisse**, Sen., Ep. XII, 1, 6. **Moderationis eorum argumentum exemplo unius rei notasse satis erit**, Liv., III, 33, 9. Cf. Plin. Mai., VI, 1 (**fuerat satius**); XVIII, 36 (**satius sit**); XXXIII, 27 (**est satis**); XXXV, 53 (**satius erit**); Hor., Ars. Poet., 416 (**satius est**). **Nec ideo non ex toto illis (febribus) caruisse melius est**, Sen., Ira., I, 12, 6. Cf. Liv., III, 41, 3 (**erit melius**); Liv., III, 61, 3 (**turpe est**); Liv. XL, 35, 13 (**facilius est**); Sen., Ben., IV, 10, 3 (**gravius est**); Sen., Ep., XV, 3, 44 (**parum est**). **Semel spectasse sufficit**, Plin. Min., IX, 6, 1. **Iuvat beneficium acceperisse**, Sen., Ben., I, 12, 2. Cf. Liv., Praef., 3 (**iuvabit**); Hor., Od., I, 1, 4 (**iuvat**). **Dixisse paenitet**, Plin. Min., I, 9, 5. Cf. Plin. Min., Ben., II, 4, 1 (**paeniteat**). **Contentus demonstrasse**, Plin. Min., Pan., 38. Cf. Sen., Ep., X, 3, 11; XII, 3, 41; Plin. Mai., XXX, 77; Curt., VIII, 5; VIII, 40. **Pudebit cum animalibus permutasse mores**, Sen., Ira., II, 31, 6. **Iratis profuit aspexisse speculum**, Sen., Ira., II, 36, 1. Cf. Sen., Ep., XV, 3, 38 (**proderit**); Sen., Ep., XVI, 4, 4 (**doles...prodest**). **De Tigri ipso dixisse conveniat**, Plin. Mai., VI, 27. Cf. Plin. Mai., XIII, 122 (**conveniat**). **Pace Messalarum dixisse liceat**, Plin. Mai., XXXV, 8. Cf. **Bellum instauremus, quod possumus...ante hiemem perfecisse**, Liv., XXXVII, 19, 5. **Censuit senatus per Italiam edicta mitti ne quis coisae aut convenisse sacrorum causa vellet**, Liv., XXXIX, 14, 8. **Pepercisse vobis volunt**, Liv., XXXII, 21, 32. **Illud notasse satis habeo**, Quint., IX, 4, 15. **Te uolup est conuenisse**, Pl., M. G. 275.

16. When the simple or pure Infinitive occurs associated with words and phrases which ordinarily require an oblique (as the Genitive) case of the Infinitive, then the Infinitive may be grammatically explained:

(a) As an *Apposition* in the *Nominative* or *Accusative*, the cases to which the *pure Infinitive* is restricted.

Ex.—**Nunc corpora curare tempus est**, Liv., XXI, 54, 2. (Here **curare** could be regularly expressed by **curandi**. The Infinitive may be explained as in *Apposition* with **tempus**.) **Vetus illi cura erat, curriculo quadrigarum insistere**, Tac., Ann., XIV, 14. **Cupido inceserat interiora Aegypti invisere**, Curt., IV, 33.

(b) Again, the Infinitive may be explained as the *Subject* or *Object* of a single verbal idea resulting from the resolution of a *Substantive* and *Predicate*, or of a *Substantive*, or *Substantive* and *Adjective*, with *esse*.

Ex.—**Nunc corpora curare tempus est**. (**Curare** may be explained as the *Subject* of **tempus est**, resolved as **tempestivum est**). **Lysander iniit consilia reges Lacedaemoniorum tollere**, Nep., Lys., 3. (Here **tollendi** could be used. The Infinitive **tollere** may be explained as in *apposition* with **consilia** or as the *Object* of **iniit consilia** resolved as **constituit**). **Nulla est ratio amittere occasionem**,



Cic., Caec., V, 15. (Here **amittendi** could be used. The *Infinitive* may be explained as the *Subject* of **nulia est ratio**, resolved as **ineptum est**.) **Postero die consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere**, Caes., B. G., VII, 26. **Consilium capit, omnem ab se equitatum noctu dimittere**, Caes., B. G., VII, 71.

17. When an *Infinitive* defines an *Adjective* which regularly governs the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative, or with which another construction than the Accusative obtains, then the *Adjective* is interpreted as the *equivalent* or *synonym* of a *Participle* derived from a *Verb* related in origin or sense to the *Adjective* and which requires the Accusative; or the *Infinitive* may be explained as the Accusative of the *Complement* with the *Adjective*. This Accusative of the *Infinitive* as the complement is used with many *Adjectives* in Late Latin and in Poetry.

Ex.—**Avidi committere pugnam**, Ov., Met., V, 75.

(a) *Committere* may be explained as the *Object* of *avidi* = *cupientes*; or (b) as the Accusative of the *Complement* with *avidi*.

Ex.—**Audax omnia perpeti**, Hor., Od., I, 3, 25.

(a) *Perpeti* may be explained as the *Object* of *audax* = *audens*; or (b) As the Accusative of the *Complement* with *audax*.

Ex.—**Uterque dignus erat, alter eligi, alter eligere**, Plin. Min., Pan., 7.

(a) *Eligi, eligere* may be explained as the *Object* of *dignus* = *meritus*; or (b) As the Accusative of the *Complement* with *dignus*.

Ex.—**Nec interficere contenti saeviunt**, Sen., Clem., II, 4, 1. **Quidam parati fundere suum sanguinem**, Sen., Ep., VI, 5, 5. **Indocilis pauperiem pati**, Hor., Od., I, 1, 18. **Nos cedere nescii**, Hor., Od., I, 6, 6. **Non lenis precibus fata recludere**, Hor., Od., I, 24, 17. **Peritus obsequi, eruditusque utilia honestis miscere**, Tac., Agr., 8. **Graias mirari nescius artes**, Iuv., XI, 100. **Pompeius saevus iugulos aperire**, Iuv., IV., 110.

REM. 1.—As the Accusative of the *Complement* presented as an end in view may be explained the *Infinitive* interpreted as *Purpose* or *Design*.

Ex.—**Voltisne eamus visere**, Ter., Ph., 102. **Reddere hoc, non perdere, erus me misit**, Pl., Ps., 642. **Non ego te frangere persequor**, Hor., Od., I, 23, 10.

18. When the *Infinitive* depends upon a *Preposition* (cf. 8, Rem. 1), as rarely occurs, it presents the simple Substantive element of the *Verb* as a *Noun Substantive* with no reference to an *Object*.

Ex.—**Nihil interest inter dare et accipere**, Sen., Ben., V, 10, 2. **Quid inter sapientiam et sapere intersit inquiris?** Sen., Ep., XIX, 8, 31.

19. A *Pronoun*, rarely an *Adjective*, may be associated as an *attributive*, with the Infinitive either as Subject or Object, even when it so far preserves its verbal character as to retain an *Object* with it.

Ex.—*Hoc ipsum nihil agere et plane cessare delectat*, Cic., De Or., II, 6, 24. *ipsum Latine loqui est in magna laude ponendum*, Cic., Brut., XXXVIII, 140. *ipsum illud cadere non habet in se mali quicquam*, Sen., Ep., XIX, 1, 4. *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum*, Hor., Ep., I, 7, 27.

## The Supine.

20. It has been seen that the Supine is a peculiar kind of Noun Substantive in two cases, the Accusative in *-um* and the Ablative in *-u*.

21. The Supine in *-um* admits an Object in the case allowed by the Verb from which it comes, its modification by an Adverb not clear, and is used in connection with a Verb of *Motion*. The Supine in *-um*, then, furnishes the case of an Accusative with a Verb of Motion. In this connection the Accusative is :

(a) The Accusative of the end *reached*; or (b) The Accusative denoting the end *contemplated*, *had in view* as an end *to be reached*.

22. The Supine in *-um*, then, bears to the Verb of Motion the relation of an *end reached*, in an *abstract connection*. Hence a *state* or *condition reached*. The Accusative case in *this office* is *regularly* associated with a Preposition. The Accusative of the Supine representing *state* or *condition* reached, differs from the regular use of the Accusative representing state or condition reached, in the *absence* of a Preposition.

Ex.—*Galli gallinacei cum sole eunt cubitum*, Plin. Mai., X, 46. *Argos habitatum concessit*, Nep., Them., 8. *Damnatus absens in Volscos exsulatum abiit*, Liv., II, 35, 6. *Exsulatum ad generum Tusculum abiit*, Liv., II, 15, 7. *Sophrosynen Dionysio filio nuptum dedit*, Nep., Dion., 1. *Sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocavit*, Caes., B. G., I, 18. Cf. *Ei filiam suam in matrimonium dat*, Caes., B. G., I, 3. *Sororis suae filiam in matrimonium collocavit*, Cic., Div., I, 46, 104. Cf. *In exsilium ire* (*abire*) with *exsulatum abire*, Cic., Cat., I, 8, 20.

REM. 1. In the preceding examples the Accusative of the Supine expresses not so much the state or condition as an end *had in view*, as a state or condition *actually reached*. The use of the Accusative, in this office, without a Preposition is exceptional, and yet in a similar office the Accusative of an ordinary Noun Substantive occurs in certain fixed expressions uniformly.

Ex.—**Nemo it infitias**, Nep., Ep., 10. **Non ibo infitias**, Tac., Ann., XV, 2. **Non itis infitias**, Sen., Const. Sap., III, 1. **Non eo infitias**, Curt., VII, 4. **Exsequias Chremeti quibus est commodum ire, em tempus est**, Ter., Ph., 1026. **Edepol, ere, ne tibi, suppetias temperi adueni modo**, Pl., Men., 1001. Cf. **Suppetias proficisci**, Auct., B. Afr., 25. **Suppetias ire**, Auct., B. Afr., 39, etc. **Ei Romae omnia venum ire in animo haeserat**, Sal., Iug., 28. **Alii omnes venum dati (sunt)**, Sal., Iug., 91. **Illam (republicam) pessum euntem tenet**, Sen., Brev. Vit., V, 1. **Nec pessum ibit nec exstabit**, Sen., N. Q., III, 25, 5. Cf. **Pessum premere**, Pl., Most., V, 2, 49.

23. The Supine in *-um* presents, with a verb of motion, not so much a state or condition *reached*, as an end *contemplated*; but an end *contemplated* is an end *had in view, intended, purposed, designed*. This relation is expressed in the translation by, *in order to, to*.

Ex.—**Aedui questum (veniebant) quod Harudes fines eorum popularentur**, Caes., B. G., I, 37. **Titurius interpretem suum mittit rogatum ut sibi parcat**, Caes., B. G., V, 36. **C. Blossius ad me deprecatum venit**, Cic., Am., XI, 37. **Legati ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt**, Caes., B. G., I, 30.

REM. 1. An object *contemplated* as an *end, aim, purpose*, is an object *desired*. The verb *ire* with the Supine in *-um* means *to go to, to aim to, to intend to*, the essential meaning of which is *to wish to*, a sense which *ire* with the Supine in *-um* often exactly conveys.

Ex.—**Fuere cives, qui seque remque publicam perditum irent**, Sal., Cat., 36. (Here **qui perditum irent** means, *that were going to destroy, that aimed to destroy, more exactly, that wished to destroy*.) Cf. **Quintianus contumelias ultum ibat**, Tac., Ann., XV, 49. **Caecina proximam quamque culpam ultum ibat**, Tac., Hist., I, 67. Cf. Tac., Hist. II, 6 (**raptum ire**); Sal., Iug., 31 (**perditum eatis**); Sal., Iug., 86 (**ereptum eunt**); Sal., Iug., 52 (**perditum eant**).

REM. 2. An *end, intention (to go to, to aim to, to intend to*, the sense of *ire* and the Supine in *-um*), is *Future* as to its attainment or realization. Hence *ire* with the Supine in *-um* sometimes expresses the exact sense of the Periphrastic Active, *-rus est*.

Ex.—**Mea Glycerium, inquit, quid agis? Cur te is perditum?** Ter., And., 134. (Here **te is perditum**?=**te perditurus es**?) (**Dixit eos**) **gemmis et auro Macedoniam Graeciamque repletum ire**, Curt., IX, 1. (Here **repletum** = **repleturos esse**.)

REM. 3. Sometimes *ire* and the Supine in *-um*, as a Future relation, furnish in the Infinitive, the Future Complement of a Verb, *to decree, to resolve*, which regularly requires the Simple Infinitive as its complement, and very rarely the future sense of *ire* with the Supine is emphasized by the form *-rum* and the Supine (*iturum* and Supine in *-um*). These constructions are very rare.

**Ex.**—*Meleagri temeritatem armis ultum ire decreverant*, Curt., X, 25. (Here the simple Infinitive, *ulcisci*, more usual.) *Pharasma dixit eam iniuriam. . . ultum iturum*, Tac., Ann., XII, 45. (We look for *ultum ire* or *ulturum esse*.)

(a) It must be borne in mind that the Supine in *-um* allows the Direct Object and occasionally the Direct Object associated with the Indirect.

**Ex.**—*Legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium*, Caes., B. G., I, 11. *Dixerunt se Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum*, Caes., B. G., I, 31. *Magna manu castra oppugnatum venerunt*, Caes., B. G., V, 26. *Velentes pacem petitum oratores Romam mittunt*, Liv., I, 15, 5. *Cum parte copiarum filium Arruntem Ariclam oppugnatum mittit*, Liv., II, 14, 5. *Sicne oportet ire amicos homini amanti operam datum?* Pl., Poen., 511.

(b) The Verbs most frequently occurring with the Supine in *-um* are *mittere*, *venire*, *ire*, *advenire*, *abire*, *dimittere*, *proficisci*, *recipere*, *vocare*, etc.

(c) The Passive *-um iri* (Future First Infinitive Passive) may be explained in two ways:

1. If we accept the active form *-um ire* as a transitive form with its Object in the Accusative, this Object becomes the subject in the Passive, in accordance with the general principle that the Direct Object of a Verb in the Active becomes the Subject of the Verb in the Passive. Hence the Passive *-um iri* is only the Passive of the transitive form *-um ire* in the Active. This conception of the form is supported by the following examples:

**Ex.**—*In hac contumelia, quae mihi per huiusce petulantiam factum itur*, Gell., 10, 14. In this sentence *factum itur* is the Personal Passive, with subject *quae* of the transitive Active *factum ire*. Cf. *Mihi istaec uidetur praeda praedatum irier*, Pl., Rud., 1230. *Reus parricidii damnatum iri videbatur*, Quint. IX, 2, 88.

2. Again of the phrase *-um iri*, the form *iri* may be taken as the Passive of the form *ire*, and hence as the only Passive element of the Phrase (*-um iri*) = it is gone. The Agent of this action is indefinite and not stated. The Supine is the Accusative of the end after the Passive *iri*, and retains its object in the Accusative, as *urbem captum iri* = (that) it is gone to take the city. *Audio urbem captum iri* = I hear that it is gone to take the city. The personal phrase, "That the city will be taken," is a translation, with future time the result of the association *it is gone to take* = *will be taken*.

**24.** With the Verbs *festinare*, *maturare*, and *properare*, the Infinitive is so generally the construction that the Supine may be regarded as practically excluded.

Ex.—**Traiecit exercitum Ciliciam occupare festinans**, Curt., III, 17. Cf. V, 36; VI, 22; Sal., Jug., 68; Tac., Or., 3; Curt., IV, 28. **Exercitum traducere maturavit**, Caes., B. G., II, 5. Cf. Sal., Jug., 36 and 79; Tac., H., IV, 70. **Quidam enavigare properantes**, etc., Curt., IX, 35. Cf. Curt., V, 17; X, 10; Sal., Jug., 56; Sal., Cat., 48; Tac., H., II, 24; Sen., Ben., V, 23, 2; Sen., Ep., X, 1, 3; Caes., B. G., II, 11. Cf. **Ultro licentiam in vos auctum atque adiutum properatis**, Sal., Or. Licin., ad Pleb., H., III, 61, 16.

25. The Constructions parallel with the Supine in *-um* are:

1. *Ut* (Final, Purpose) with the Subjunctive.
2. The Relative (Final) with the Subjunctive.
3. The Preposition *ad*, less frequently *ob*, with the Accusative of the Gerund (attracted and unattracted).
4. The Genitive of the Gerund (attracted and unattracted) with *causa* and *gratia*.
5. The Dative of the Gerund (Late Latin).
6. The Future Active Participle (Late Latin).
7. The Infinitive (Poetical).
8. The Present Participle (in a sense approximating the Final relation).

Ex.—**Veientes pacem petitem oratores Romam mittunt**, Liv., I, 15, 2.

1. **Veientes oratores Romam mittunt ut pacem petant.**
2. **Veientes oratores Romam mittunt qui pacem petant.**
3. **Veientes oratores Romam ad (ob) pacem petendum (petendam) mittunt.**
4. **Veientes oratores Romam pacem petendi (pacis petendae) causa (gratia) mittunt.**
5. **Veientes oratores Romam pacem petendo mittunt.**
6. **Veientes oratores Romam pacem petituros mittunt.**
7. **Veientes oratores Romam pacem petere mittunt.**
8. **Veientes oratores Romam pacem petentes mittunt.**

REM. 1. In this connection the Present Participle is to be interpreted in the *Predicate-Attributive* sense of the Participle and as only *approximately* expressing the Final Sense of the Supine in *-um*.

Ex.—**Legati a Segeste venerunt auxilium orantes**, Tac., Ann., I, 57. (Here *orantes* = *as pleaders for*, *pleading for*, rather than *to plead for*.) **Germaniae statim misere legatos auxilium offerentes**, Tac., II., IV, 17. **Praemisit indicantes venisse reginam adeundi eius avidam**, Curt., V, 19. Cf. Verg., Aen., II, 114; Tac., II., II, 41 (*postulantes*).

26. The Supine in *-u* expresses the Substantive element of the Verb in the Ablative. It is associated with *Adjectives* which signify *good*, *bad*; *easy*, *difficult*; *agreeable*, *disagreeable*; *worthy*, *unworthy*; and

others of like sense ; also with *fas est, nefas est, opus est* ; also very rarely with *pudet*, and the Participial form *pudendus*. The Ablative of the Supine presents an example of the *Restrictive Ablative*, defining the *matter, case* or *respect* in which the quality of an Adjective obtains or is true, or in which the statement of a phrase is made. Here the Ablative, while it may be accepted as *Restrictive*, essentially furnishes a quality or state as the *ground* or *cause* and is hence characterized by the *whence* rather than by the *locative* sense of the case. It is best rendered passively, but the sense of the Passive does not inhere in the Supine. It is simply a convenient translation. Hence:

Ex.—**Facile dictu est** = it is easy in (the matter or respect of) saying. It is easy to be said. The explanation and source of the *ease* is *saying*. **Quod vix auditu fas esse debeat, laudis et gloriæ et ingenii loco plerique iactant, cantari saltarique commentarios suos**, Tac., Or., 26. **Videtur nefas esse dictu**, etc., Cic., Sen., V, 13. **Scitu opus est**, Cic., Inv., I, 20, 28. **Pudet dictu**, Tac., Agr., 32. **Quo de genere mortis difficile dictu est**, Cic., Am., III, 12.

(a) While it is difficult to restrict, by naming them, the Adjectives which occur with the Supine in *-u*, the following are most frequently met with : *facilis, difficilis, gravis, honestus, incredibilis, incundus, memorabilis, optimus, proclivis, turpis* ; less frequently, perhaps, *acerbus, crudelis, dignus, indignus, mirabilis, nefarius*.

(b) The Supines in *-u* most frequently occurring are *aditu, auditu, cognitu, dictu, factu, visu*. Those occurring quite frequently are *aspectu, conatu, inventu, intellectu, perpassu, probatu, responsu, scitu, tactu, servatu, transitu*. Other Supines occur less frequently and in Late Latin.

Ex.—**Optimum factu esse duxerunt**, Caes., B. G., IV, 30. **Incredibile memoratu est**, Sal., Jug., 40. **Iucundum cognitu atque auditu**, Cic., De Or., I, 8, 31. **Honestum, turpe factu**, Cic., Off., I, 3, 9. **Facile inventu**, Cic., Am., XVII, 64. **Difficile perpassu**, Cic., Tusc., II, 12, 29. **Mollis tactu**, Cic., N. D., II, 57, 142. **Mirum dictu**, Tac., II., I, 79. **Pudendum dictu**, Tac., H., II, 61. **Facilis mutatu**, Tac., H., II, 63. **Facile intellectu**, Nep., Dion., 9. **Facilis visu**, Sal., Jug., 98. **Difficilis transitu**, Liv., XXI, 31, 10. **Difficilis aditu**, Sal., Jug., 90. **Credibile memoratu**, Tac., H., II, 73. **Prodigiosum dictu**, Tac., H., III, 56. **Durus toleratu**, Sen., Prov., VI, 6. **Gravis toleratu**, Sen., Const. Sap., XV, 3. **Speciosus dictu**, Curt., V, 1. **Dignus cognitu**, Tac., Ann., VI, 7. **Absurdus cognitu**, Tac., Ann., VI, 28. **Gratus auditu**, Tac., H., I, 18. **Inhonestum factu**, Tac., Or., 28. **Speciosum dictu**, Liv., I, 23, 7. **Planus aditu**, Liv., I, 33, 7. **Foedum visu dictu**, Liv., XXI, 32, 7. **Pulchrum dictu**, Tac., H., III, 19, etc.

REM. 1. The Supine in *-u* does not allow an object. The grammatical subject is liable to be misinterpreted as the Object. When its



verbal origin (Verb to say, to think) allows it, the Supine in *-u* may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive.

Ex.—**Difficile dictu est quid verum sit.** (Here the Subject of **difficile est** is **quid verum sit**, what is true, is difficult to say.) **Videtis nefas esse dictu miseram fuisse Fabii senectutem**, Cic., Sen., V, 13. **Facile intellectu est verbis eos, non re dissidere**, Cic., Fat., XIX, 44.

27. The constructions parallel with the Supine in *-u* and resulting from a modification in conception are the following:

1. The Preposition *ad* with the Accusative of the Gerund. Here the conception is that of a *Final relation*. This construction obtains with Adjectives, particularly *facilis*, *difficilis*, *iucundus*, *dignus*.

Ex.—**Difficilis auguri locus ad contra dicendum**, Cic., Div., II, 33, 70. (Here **ad contra dicendum** (depending on **difficilis** rather than on **locus**) = for speaking against, for contradicting.) **Cibus facillimus ad concoquendum**, Cic., Fin., II, 20, 64. **Orator, qui verbis ad audiendum iucundis uti possit**, Cic., De Or., I, 49, 213. **Fuit noster ille amicus dignus huius ad imitandum**, Cic., Rep., I, 18, 30.

2. With Adjectives, particularly *facilis* and *difficilis*, instead of the restrictive Ablative of the ground (cause) as presented by the Supine in *-u* or the *Final relation* expressed by *ad* and the Accusative of the Gerund, the Infinitive, Active and Passive, occurs. The Infinitive Active presents the relation of the Subject while the Infinitive Passive presents the relation of the Object, or of the *Complementary Accusative*.

Ex.—**Quae corrigere difficile est**, Plin. Min., VI, 2, 9. (**Corrigere** is subject of **difficile est**.) **Difficile est continere, quod capere non possis**, Curt., IV, 43. **Iudicare difficile est**, Nep., Att., 16. **Scribonianus ne paratis quidem corrumpi facilis, adeo metuens incerta**, Tac., II., IV, 39. (**Corrumpi** is the Accusative limiting **facilis**.) **Non officio adiri faciles**, Sen., Ira., II, 36, 5. **Aspici facillior**, Sen., N. Q., I, 17, 2. **Corripi facilia**, Sen., Ep., II, 6, 15.

3. The Finite Verb in the Passive with *Adverb* of *facilis* and *difficilis*, and the Subject in the Nominative, presents a sense parallel with that of the Supine in *-u*.

Ex.—**Causa iusta defensu facilis est** may be differently expressed; **Causa iusta facile defenditur**.

4. A Verbal Substantive with the Adjective *facilis* or *difficilis* in agreement and in different case relations.

Ex.—With **iusta causa defensu facilis est** compare **iustae causae facilis est defensio**. **Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen**, Caes., B. G., VI, 7. (**Difficili transitu** is descriptive Ablative instead of **difficile transitu**.) **Natura deorum difficiles explicatus habet**, Cic., N. D., III, 39, 93. (Here **diffi-**

**ciles explicatus habet** is the equivalent of **explicatu difficilia**.) Cf. **Erat vallis difficili et arduo ascensu**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 34.

5. When a dependent sentence follows *facile (difficile) est factu*, it may be controlled by *factu* and expressed by *ut (consecutive)*, negative *ut non*, and the Subjunctive, or by *facile est* and expressed by the *Infinitive* or the *Accusative with the Infinitive* as the Subject of *facile est*, etc. The Infinitive or Accusative with the Infinitive is the leading construction.

Ex.—**Difficile factu est me id sentire quod tu vells**, Cic., N. D., III, 1, 1. (*Ut id sentiam* would imply a dependency upon *factu*.) Cf. **Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere**, Caes., B. G., I, 3. **Dicit perfacile esse factu pabulationibus Romanos prohibere**, Caes., B. G., VII, 64.

6. With the Adjectives *dignus* and *indignus* occurs the Infinitive, Active and Passive, particularly with an indefinite subject, while *qui* with the Subjunctive is the ruling construction, more rarely *ut* and the Subjunctive. The Accusative and the Infinitive with *dignus* is so *unusual* as to be practically excluded.

Ex.—**Alter eligere dignus est**, Plin. Min., Pan., 7. **Lyricorum Horatius fere solus legi dignus (est)**, Quint., X, 1, 96. (Better *dignus est qui legatur*.) **Non indignum videtur mirabile facinus duorum Carthaginiensium memorare**, Sal., Jug., 79. **Indignum est a pari vinci**, Cic., Quint., XXXI, 95. **Vos indigni fratrum rumpere foedus**, Hor., Ep., I, 3, 35. **Cum (since) indigni, ut redimeremus, visi simus**, Liv., XXII, 59, 17. **Indignus quem mors tam saeva maneret**, Iuv., IV, 95. **Non sum dignus, ut figam palum in parietem**, Pl., M. G., 1130. (**Dixit dignos esse, qui armis cepissent, eorum urbem agrumque Bolanum esse**, Liv., IV, 49, 11. Better *dignos esse... quorum urbs agerque Bolanus esset* (or *ut eorum urbs etc. esset*).

7. The Supine in *-u* expressing the *state from which* with a Verb of motion rarely occurs, but not in Classical Latin. In this connection, however, the Supine in *-u* is not to be confounded with the Ablative of a substantive.

Ex.—**Vilius primus cubitu surgat, postremus cubitum eat**, Cato, R. R., 5. **Id agimus, non ut pro ripa Hiberi stantes arceamus transitu hostes, sed ut ultro transeamus**, Liv., XXVI, 41, 6. (Here *transitu* is Ablative of the Substantive with *arceamus*.)

## The Gerund.

28. It has been seen that the Gerund occurs in the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative cases. The explanation of these cases of the Gerund is the same as of a Noun Substantive in the same cases.

29. The *Genitive* of the Gerund, associated with a Noun Substantive furnishes, as an ordinary Noun, the *specific restriction* of the Substantive with which it is associated.

Ex.—**Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est**, Cic., Fin., I, 13, 42. **Ad studium audiendi et cognoscendi feruntur**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 12. **Maiorem fiduciam prohibendi habebant**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 25. **Occasio navigandi**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 25.

REM. 1. So likewise in case of the attracted Gerund (so-called *Gerundive*).

Ex.—**Studium itineris conficiendi**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 39. **Fiducia rei bene gerendae**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 38. **Celeritas conficiendi belli**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 2.

30. The *Genitive* of the Gerund, both unattracted and attracted, occurs with *causa* and *gratia* in the sense of *on account of*, *for the purpose of*, *for the sake of*. The words *causa* and *gratia* are post-positive.

Ex.—**Equites dimissi sunt pabulandi causa**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 80. **Prima nocte aquandi causa nemo egreditur ex castris**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 81. **Alii ligandi pabulandique causa longius progrediebantur**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 76. **Confirmandorum militum causa diripiendas his civitates dedit**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 31. **Huc addunt rei confirmandae causa**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 15. **Equorum reficiendorum causa substituerunt**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 42. **Multa ad te cohortandi gratia scripsimus**, Cic., Off., III, 2, 6. **Graecis litteris utor Pythagoreorumque more exercendae memoriae gratia, quid quoque die dixerim, commemoro vespere**, Cic., Sen., XI, 38.

31. The *Genitive* of the Gerund, unattracted and attracted, occurs with adjectives which signify *partaking of*, *desirous of*, *experienced in*, *capacious*, *mindful of*, etc. The *Genitive* is *Objective*. Such Adjectives, among others, are *avidus*, *capax*, *cupidus*, (*gnarus*), *ignarus*, *memor*, *peritus*, *imperitus*.

Ex.—**Nero interficiendae matris avidus, non differri potuit**, Tac., Ann., XIII, 20. **Agrippina dominandi avida. . . vitia exuerat**, Tac., Ann., VI, 25. **Rictus ille edendorum hominum capax**, Sen., Clem., XXV, 1. **Sunt cupidi bellorum gerendorum**, Cic., Off., I, 22, 74. **Nullus affectus vindicandi cupidior est quam ira**, Sen., Ira., I, 12, 5. **Ignarus faciendae ac poliendae orationis**, Cic., De Or., I, 14, 63. **Nec minus regni sui firmandi quam augendae reipublicae memorandum in patres legit**, Liv., I, 35, 6. **Periti imperitique nandi perinde attoluntur**, Tac., II, V, 6. **Peritissimus inspicendorum naturalium**, Sen., N. Q., VII, 4, 1. **Lacus, qui nandi imperitos ferunt**, Sen., N. Q., III, 25, 5. Cf. **Vetus regnandi**, Tac., Ann., VI, 44. **Audiendi insolens erat**, Tac., Ann., XV, 67. **Insuetus navigandi**, Caes., B. G., V, 6. **Iubendi. . . vetandi potens**, Tac., H., III, 70. **Impatiens differendae voluptatis**, Sen., Ira., III, 18, 4.

32. The Attracted *Genitive* of the Gerund with its associated sub-

stantive sometimes occurs to express the relation of *Purpose*. This Genitive may be interpreted as an *Objective Genitive*, defining a phrase, or as a *Descriptive Genitive*, defining a single word.

Ex.—**Multa populus paravit tuendae libertatis et firmandae concordiae**, Tac., Ann., III, 27. (The Genitive as the Objective Genitive may define **multa populus paravit**, or as the Descriptive Genitive (of Quality), it may define **multa**.) **Orationes, quas Seneca, iactandi ingenii, voce principis vulgabat**, Tac., Ann., XIII, 11. **Tum e seditiosis unum vinciri iubet, magis usurpandi iuris, quam quia unius culpa foret**, Tac., H., IV, 25. **Sponte accusationem subisse iuvenis, nec depellendi periculi, sed in spem potentiae videbatur**, Tac., H., IV, 42. (The Objective Genitive in the above examples approaches *ad* with the Accusative; as, **depellendi periculi** = *ad depellendum periculum*, etc.)

REM. 1. The simple Gerund, unattracted and attracted, occurs in a similar sense, defining distinctly a Substantive.

Ex.—**lis certum diem conveniendi dicit**, Caes., B. G., V, 57. (Here **diem conveniendi** = a day for assembling. Compare *ad conveniendum*.) **Pullarius diem proelii committendi differebat**, Cic., Div., I, 35, 77.

REM. 2. Of a sense similar to that stated above (32) is that of the Genitive of the Gerund (attracted) with *esse*, in the sense *to tend to*, *to contribute to*, *to serve for*, *to answer the end of*.

Ex.—**Regium imperium, quod initio conservandae libertatis atque augendae reipublicae fuerat**, Sal., Cat., 6. **Conclamant frustrationem eam legis tollendae esse**, Liv., III, 24, 1. Cf. Liv., V, 3, 5 (**dissolvendae tribuniciae potestatis esse**); Liv., V, 6, 15 (**prodendae patriae est**).

33. A Substantive with *est* is sometimes associated with the Infinitive, the Accusative and Infinitive, and also with the Genitive of the Gerund. In the one case, the Infinitive or Accusative with the Infinitive is the Subject, and the Substantive with a tense of *esse* give an *adjective* expression as the Predicate. In the other, the Substantive with the Genitive of the Gerund form the Subject, while the tense of *esse* is the Predicate. (Cf. 16, a).

Ex.—**Tempus est abire** = **Abire tempestivum est**. **Tempus est abeundi** = **Tempus abeundi est** (= *adest*). **Non est iam tempus plura narrandi**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 6, 2. **Hoc est discendi tempus**, Sen., Ep., IV, 7, 4. **Certiores facit Datamen tempus esse maiores exercitus parari**, Nep., Dat., 11. **Tempus est te revisere molestias nostras**, Plin. Min., VII, 3, 3. Sometimes the difference between the Infinitive and the Genitive of the Gerund in this connection is unimportant.

34. With phrases formed by a substantive with *esse*, *dare*, *capere*, etc., such as *facultas*, *locus*, *occasio*, *potestas*, *tempus*, *causa*, *spatium*,

*consilium, condicio, ratio*, the Genitive of the Gerund, attracted and unattracted, is the *usage*. It is best translated by the *Infinitive*, e. g., *facultas dandi* = the opportunity to give. The Infinitive instead of the Genitive of the Gerund is far less frequent. The Accusative of the Gerund with the Preposition *ad* (Final) sometimes occurs, but is readily expressed in the translation.

Ex.—(*Dixerunt*) *datum iri pugnandi facultatem*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 71. *Non datur muri defendendi facultas*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 11. *Dixerunt opus esse colloquendi dare facultatem*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 27. Cf. *Facultas perficiendi dabatur*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 60. *Data facultate itineris faciendi*, Caes., B. G., I, 7. *Desiliendi facultatem dederunt*, Caes., B. G., V, 17. *Dant regrediundi facultatem*, Caes., B. G., V, 44. *Dum locus communis pugnandi daretur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 58. Cf. *Ut ipsis consistendi in suis munitionibus locus non esset*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 16. *Erat occasio bene gerendae rei*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 71. *Non modo occasio sed etiam causa illius opprimendi fuit*, Cic., Mil., XV, 40. *Caesar decernendi potestatem Pompeio fecit*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 41. *Multi venisse tempus premendae plebis putabant*, Liv., II, 34, 7. *Ut* (consecutive) *spatium pila in hostes conciliendi non daretur*, Caes., B. G., I, 52. *Ut* (consecutive) *Galli belli renovandi legionisque opprimendae consilium caperent*, Caes., B. G., III, 2. *Par condicio bellandi data*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 16. *Pompei sequendi rationem omittit*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 30. Cf. *Consilium capit equitatum noctu dimittere*, Caes., B. G., VII, 71. Cf. *Oppidum sic muniebatur ut ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem*, Caes., B. G., I, 38. *Id facerent commodius, si mihi aliquid spatii ad scribendum darent*, Cic., Fam., XV, 17, 1, etc.

35. The Dative of the Gerund occurs in the following connections and represents the relation of the *Indirect Object*, the *Object* or *End for which* :

I. With *Adjectives* which signify *fitness, adaptedness, equality, utility*, and the opposites ; as, the following among others : *aptus, accommodatus, bonus, habilis, par, idoneus, utilis, inutilis, secundus, efficax*, etc.

Ex.—*Mons pecori bonus alendo erat*, Liv., XXIX, 31, 9. *Quicquid alendo igni aptum erat*, Curt., IV, 12. Cf. Curt., IV, 5 (*gerendis rebus aptior*) ; Plin. Mai., XVI, 26 (*coriis perficiendis aptissima*) ; Sen., Brev. Vit. (*aptiora exportandis oneribus lumenta*) ; Sen., N. Q. (*pars anni edendis cometis apta*) ; Tac., Ann., V, 2, (*is aptus alliciendis feminarum animis*) ; Liv. XXI, 37, 2 (*vis venti apta faciendi igni*). *Tempora demetendis fructibus accommodata sunt*, Cic., Sen., XIX, 70. Cf. Plin. Mai., X, 98 (*accommodati transferendis ovis*). *Capessendae reipublicae habilis videbatur*, Tac., Ann., XII, 41. Cf. Sen., Ep., XIV, 4, 10 (*receptandis cibis habilis*). *Materia idonea eliciendis ignibus*, Sen., N. Q., II, 22, 1. Cf. Sen., Ep., XVIII, 5, 27 (*tempus idoneum agitandis ingeniis*). *Utilior componendis monumentis historiarum*, Sen., Tranq. An., VI, 2. (*Charta*) *emporetica inutilis scribendo*, Plin. Mai., XIII, 76. *Mare parando bello secundum tutumque*, Tac., H., II, 6. *Aqua maris efficacior discutiendis*

tumoribus, Plin. Mai., XXXI, 63. *Philosophia formandis animis inefficax*, Sen., Ep., XV, 2, 39. Cf. Plin. Mai., XVI, 158 (*rimis explendis fidelior pice*); Plin. Mai., XXI, 15 (*mensarum deliciis perunguendis minime noxia*); Plin. Mai., XXXII, 33 (*carnes propriae magicis artibus refutandis*); Plin. Min., I, 8, 7 (*quae sunt agenda rei necessaria*); Sen., Helv., X, 11 (*nullum tam inops exellium est quod non alendo homini fertile sit*); Liv. II, 5, 9 (*arcendis scele-ribus exemplum nobile*); Liv. II, 5, 4 (*area firma templis sustinendis*), etc.

REM. 1. Instead of the Dative of the Gerund, which obtains chiefly in late Latin, the Preposition *ad* (Final) with the Accusative of the Gerund is perhaps more usual in classical Latin with such Ad-jectives.

Ex.—*Ossa habent commissuras ad artus finiendos accommodatas*, Cic., N. D., II, 55, 139. *Castra erant ad bellum ducendum aptissima*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 37. Cf. Caes., B. Civ., III, 1 (*hoc ad timorem tollendum aptissimum existimavit*); Caes., B. Civ., III, 43 (*equitatus ad rem gerendam inutilis*); Caes., B. G., IV, 23 (*ad egrediendum idoneus locus*); Caes., B. G., IV, 23 (*tempestas idonea ad navigandum*). *Natura non tantum valet ut acutior quis atque habilior sit ad inveniendum*, Quint., VI, 3, 12. Cf. Sen., Clem., VI, 1 (*tristitia inhabilis est ad dispiciendas res*); Sen., Ep., XII, 2, 3 (*apes flores ad mel faciendum idoneos carpunt*).

REM. 2. With the Adjectives *aptus* and *idoneus* the Relative (Con-secutive) and the Subjunctive (of Result), more rarely *ut* (Result) and the Subjunctive, occurs. The Relative, rather than *ut*, with the Subjunctive is the construction.

Ex.—*Nulla videbatur aptior persona quae de illa aetate loqueretur*, Cic., Am., I, 4. *Idonea mihi Laelii persona visa est quae de amicitia dissereret*, Cic., Am., I, 4. *Plerique rem idoneam, de qua quaeratur, et homines dignos, quibuscum disseratur, putant*, Cic., Ac., II, 6, 18.

The Infinitive with these Adjectives is poetic.

II. The Dative of the Gerund occurs with Verbs which ordinarily require the Dative. Such as *convenire*, *desse*, *intentus esse*, *satis esse*, *studere*, with others, particularly in late Latin; as, *adhibere*, *assumere*, *conferre*, *consulere*, *insistere*, *prodesse*, *praeferre*, *praesidere*, *occurrere*, *obstare*, *sufficere*, etc.

Ex.—*Notum sit nobis ante omnia quid conciliando, docendo, movendo iudici conveniat*, Quint., XI, 1, 6. *Nec duces hostium augendae famae deerant*, Tac., H., III, 54. *Gnarus desse naves efficiendo ponti*, Tac., H., V, 19. *Consul intentus recipiendo exercitui esse*, Liv., X, 42, 1. *Spatium, quod vulneribus curandis supplendoque exercitui satis esset*, Liv., II, 17, 4. *Patrimonione augendo studere*? Cic., De Or., II, 55, 225. *Civitati curandae adhibitus sum*, Sen., Ira., I, 16, 4. *Oratio, quae sanandis mentibus adhibetur*, Sen., Ep., IV, 11, 4. *Sufficere fluminibus edendis*, Sen., N. Q., III, 13, 2. *Hora evertendis*

**imperii sufficit**, Sen., Ep., XIV, 3, 6. **Umbrica (creta) non nisi poliendis vestibus assumitur**, Plin. Mai., XXXV, 197. **Conferunt rura deprehendendo caelo**, Plin. Mai., XIX, 1. **Augendae multitudini consulitur**, Tac., II., V, 5. **Perdomandae Campaniae insistere**, Tac., H., III, 77. **Ne usurpandis quidem hereditatibus prodesset**, Tac., Ann., XV, 19. **Corbulo gerendae rei praeficitur**, Tac., Ann., XV, 25. **Publicis sumptibus minuendis optimum quemque praeficiebat**, Plin. Min., Pan., 62. **Cum horreis suis ventilandis praesideret**, Plin. Mai., XXII, 120. **Neque aliud humidum gignendis aquis occurrit, quam**, etc., Tac., Ann., XV, 42. **Prodendo obstat ingens verecundia**, etc., Plin. Mai., XXVIII, 29. **Impetrando triumphalium insigni sufficere suas res crediderant**, Tac., Ann., IV, 23. Cf. Tac., Agric., 45 (**denotandis palloribus sufficere**). Cf. Plin. Min., Plin. et Trai. Ep., 117 (**formandis moribus moderari**).

REM. 1. Instead of the Dative of the Gerund with the preceding Verbs to express the relation of *End*, the Preposition *ad* (Final) with the Accusative may be used.

Ex.—**Satis est ad consummandam sapientiam**, Sen., Ep., XV, 3, 1. **Omnes concedunt ad beate vivendum sufficere virtutem**, Sen., Ep., XII, 3, 17, etc.

(a) The Dative of the Gerund as the Indirect Object occurs with the Accusative of a Substantive with verbs, particularly in the phrases *operam dare*, *insumere*, *impendere tempus*, and other Substantives.

Ex.—**Consul placandis dis dat operam**, Liv., XXII, 2, 1. **Legibus condendis opera dabatur**, Liv., III, 34, 1. **Paucos dies insumpsit reficiendae classi**, Tac., Ann., II, 53. Cf. Cic., Mur., IV, 8 (**laborem hominum periculis sublevandis impertire**). **Portui Ephesiorum aperiendo curam insumpserat**, Tac., Ann., XVI, 23. **Ut his rebus collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur**, Caes., B. G., III, 4. **Tum sacerdotibus creandis animum adiecit**, Liv., I, 20, 1. **Rigando horto locavit manus**, Sen., Ep., V, 3, 3. **Armeniam turbandis barbarorum animis praebuerunt**, Tac., Ann., XII, 48. **Quibus libris componendis biennium impendi**, Quint., Page 1.

REM. 1. With a slight change of conception the Preposition *in* and the Ablative of the Gerund occurs.

Ex.—**Nec in auctoribus cognoscendis, nec in evolvenda antiquitate satis operae insumitur**, Tac., Or., 29.

REM. 2. After *operam dare*, *ut* (*ne*) with the Subjunctive is the construction with a slight change of conception.

Ex.—**Da operam ut valeas**, Cic., Att., XVI, 16A, 7. **Dent operam consules, ne quid respublica detrimenti capiat**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 5.

III. The Dative of the Gerund as *Indirect Object* frequently occurs with Verbs, particularly *to name*, *to take* (*adopt*), and *to choose*, *capere*, *eligere*, *dicere*, etc., with the Accusative of a Substantive, such as *locus*,

*sedes, dies*, etc. In such clauses the *influence of the Verb* must be considered in deciding the use of the Dative of the Gerund.

Ex.—*Dii hominesque hunc urbi condendae locum elegerunt*, Liv., V, 54, 4. *Locum oppido condendo ceperunt*, Liv., XXXIX, 22, 6. *Circa Margianam sex oppidis condendis electa sedes est*, Curt., VII, 40. *Hibernis oppugnandis hic est dictus dies*, Caes., B. G., V, 27. *Reciperandae Armeniae Mithridaten deligit*, Tac., Ann., VI, 32. Cf. *Loca sacris faciendis dedicavit*, Liv., I, 21, 5. *Locus iungendo flumini inventus*, Liv., XXI, 47, 6. *Industria laxam ostendendae virtuti nacta materiam*, Sen., Helv., VI, 2.

REM. 1. When the Gerund depends upon and defines the Substantive without reference to the Verb, the Genitive of the Gerund is the usage.

Ex.—*Audivit domo profugos condendae urbis locum quaerere*, Liv., I, 1, 8. *Nactus sum locum resecandae libidinis et coercendae iuventutis*, Cic., Att., I, 18, 2.

REM. 2. Instead of the Genitive, the Gerund may be objectively presented by *ad* (Final) and the Accusative.

Ex.—*Ut locum ad transgrediendum hostes haberent*, Liv., XXI, 5, 9. *Materia ad iocandum*, Cic., De Or., II, 59, 239.

REM. 3. It cannot be questioned that the *Dative* of the Gerund occurs with a Substantive with and without *esse*. The Gerund in this context denotes the *End* or *Office* to which the idea expressed by the Substantive is suited.

Ex.—*Nunc transisse conveniat ad cotes ferro acuendo*, Plin. Mai., XXXVI, 164. *Haec est generando homini materia*, Plin. Mai., VII, 66. *Ne in cauda quidem (est) praesidium abigendo taedio muscarum*, Plin. Mai., VIII, 30. *Exclamans alendis vocibus demonstravit rationem*, Plin. Mai., XXXIV, 166. *Haec fuere antiqua genera marmoribus secandis*, Plin. Mai., XXXVI, 52. Cf. Plin. Min., Paneg., 80 (*nec locupletando fisco sedes (est), nec aliud*, etc.).

IV. To be carefully noted is the Dative of the Gerund with *esse* in the sense of *to be in condition for*, *to be adequate to*, *to be able (competent) to*; also, the phrase *adesse scribendo* = *to be present as a witness to a writing*.

Ex.—*Cum (concessive) solvendo civitates non essent*, Cic., Fam., III, 8, 2. *Divites, qui oneri ferendo essent*, Liv., II, 9, 6. *Fretus esse tolerando certamini legatum*, Liv., X, 5, 5. *Experiundam rem esse sitne aliqui plebeius ferendo magno honori*, Liv., IV, 35, 9. *Igitur, ea modo quae restinguendo igni forent, portantes in agmen Romanum ruebant*, Liv., XXX, 6, 3. *Nec solvendo aere (aeri) alieno res publica erat*, Liv., XXXI, 13, 5. *In aede Apollinis scribendo affuerunt L. Domitius, Q. Caecilius, L. Villius*, Cic., Fam., VIII, 8, 5. Cf. Cic., Fam., VIII, 8, 6.



V. To be observed also is the Dative of the Gerund with designations of *public officials* to express the *Object contemplated* in their *creation or appointment*. The same construction obtains with *comitia* and *dies*. In some cases the *Verb* may be considered in connection with the Dative of the Gerund.

Ex.—Decemvros legibus scribendis intra decem annos et creavimus et e republica sustulimus, Liv., IV, 4, 3. Cf. Non dux scribendo exercitui est, Liv., IV, 43, 10. Duumviri sacris faciundis Apollinem... placavere, Liv., V, 13, 6. Me Albani gerendo bello ducem creavere, Liv., I, 23, 8. Ut quinque viri creentur legibus de imperio consulari scribendis, Liv., III, 9, 5. Cf. Triumviri coloniis deducendis, Sal., Jug., 42. Triumvros coloniae deducendae agroque dividendo creaverunt, Liv., VIII, 16, 14. Comitia consulibus rogandis habuit, Cic., Div., I, 17, 33. Cum dies venisset rogationi ferendae, etc., Cic., Att., I, 14, 5. Cf. Liv., III, 40, 12 (comitia decemviris creandis ipse habuit); Liv., III, 35, 1 (comitia decemviris creandis); Liv., V, 9, 3 (sollemnis ineundis magistratibus dies).

VI. The use of the Dative of the Gerund as the equivalent of *ut*, of the Relative, etc., with the Subjunctive to express *End* or *Purpose* belongs to late Latin and should not be imitated.

Ex.—Caecinam distrahendo hosti (= qui (ut) distraheret hostem) ad flumen Amisiam mittit, Tac., Ann., I, 60. Data (est) fides reddendae dominationi venisse, Tac., Ann., VI, 43. Claudius tamquam opprimendo bello Crispinum misit, Tac., Ann., XI, 1. Cf. Tac., Ann., XII, 66 (refovendis viribus Sinuessam pergit); Tac., Ann., XV, 8 (reciperandis Tigranocertis); Tac., Ann., XV, 10 (visendis hostium copiis); Tac., Ann., XV, 24 (accipiendo diademati venire); Tac., II, 1, 6 (opprimendis Vindicis coeptis); Tac., H., III, 70 (irritandis hominum oculis). Cf. Plin. Mai., VIII, 129 (herbam quandam laxandis intestinis devorant); Plin. Mai., X, 92 (nidum mollibus plumis consternunt tepefaciendis ovis), etc.

36. The Accusative of the Gerund occurs exclusively with the Prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *in*, *inter*, *circa*, *ob*, (*propter* rarely). In this connection the Accusative expresses an *End contemplated* as one to be reached with *ad*, *in*, *ob*, from which springs the relation of *Purpose*. With the other Prepositions, the Accusative furnishes the relation of the *Complement* restricting the idea conveyed by the Preposition alone or associated with the Substantive element of the Verb. Thus *inter* conveys the idea of *interior extension*, the measure of which is the Accusative. (Cf. 10).

Ex.—Cum pubem Albanam in arcem armis obtinendam avocasset, Liv., I, 6, 1. Ipse inter spoliandum corpus hostis veruto percussus, Liv., II, 20, 9. Ad arcendam vim advenarum... concurrunt, Liv., I, 1, 5. (Cf. 10 and examples.)

37. The Ablative of the Gerund occurs both with and without a Preposition.

I. Without a Preposition the Ablative of the Gerund expresses *cause, means, manner*.

Ex.—**Ne quid divini iuris negligendo patrios ritus turbaretur**, Liv., I, 20, 6. (Here **neglegendo** = *by neglecting, because of the neglect*.) **Tum bene imperando universus senatus popularis fuit**, Liv., II, 9, 8. (Here **imperando** is *causal*.) **Sedendo** = *means*) **expugnaturum se urbem spem Porsena habebat**, Liv., II, 12, 1. **Rem Romanam auxerant hostibus in civitatem accipiendis**, Liv., I, 33, 1. **Illi omnium ignari purgando** (manner) **terunt tempus**, Liv., I, 22, 6. **Certavere inter se ambo discipuli Venere facienda**, Plin. Mai., XXXVI, 17. **Alias civitates territando, alias cohortando, magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit**, Caes., B. G., V, 54.

(a) The Ablative of the Gerund, usually attracted, giving the *circumstances under which*, is properly the *Ablative Absolute*.

Ex.—**Maiores nostri omnibus rebus agendis, quod bonum esset, praeferebantur**, Cic., Div., I, 45, 102. (Here **omnibus rebus agendis** is explanatory Ablative Absolute of Time.) **Ut tamquam navale bellum tempestatibus captandis et observando tempore anni gerant, non aestus, non frigora pati possint?** Liv., V, 6, 4. **Quieti, rem nullam nisi necessariam ad victum sumendo sese tenuere**, Liv., II, 32, 4. **Lucretius agere varie rogando alternis suadendoque coepit**, Liv., II, 2, 9. **Sicut Romulus augurato urbe condenda regnum adeptus est, de se quoque deos consuli iussit**, Liv., I, 18, 6.

II. The Ablative of the Gerund occurs with the Prepositions *ab, de, ex, in*, occasionally with *pro, cum*, rarely with *super*. The preposition to be used is decided, as in the case of a Substantive, by the sense to be expressed. The Gerund in the Ablative is both *attracted* and *unattracted*. (Cf. 10 b.)

Ex.—**Ex providendo est appellata prudentia**, Cic., Leg., I, 23, 60. (Examples, see 10, b.)

(a) The Ablative of the Gerund with *in* is to be carefully noted. It is often to be interpreted by the English *while* with a Finite Verb or the Present Participle. Again, in the sense of *in the case of, in the matter of*, sometimes its essential relation to the subject is that of the *Present Participle* in a Predicate Attributive sense (*when, while*). To this relation the Ablative of the Gerund without *in* sometimes approaches.

Ex.—**Romulus augurato urbe condenda regnum adeptus est**, Liv., I, 18, 6. (Here the Ablative **urbe condenda** approaches the English *when or while* he was founding.) **Ad haec (signa) constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret**, Caes., B. G., II, 21. (Here **in quaerendis suis** = *while seeking* his own

(standards.) **Sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles**, Caes., B. G., IV, 5. (Here in **consiliis capiendis** (= in the *matter* (*case*) of adopting plans).)

(b) The Ablative of the Gerund as the Ablative of *means, manner*, etc., with the Reflexive as Direct Object and a Predicate Apposition or Predicate Attributive is not attracted.

Ex.—**Militem subornant ut auctorem se exhibendo ac velut visa, quae dubia erant, narrando concitaret iras hominum**, Liv., XXIV, 31, 15. **Herdonius hostem se fatendo prope denuntiavit, ut arma caperetur**, Liv., III, 19, 6. **Ita medium se gerendo nec plebis vitavit odium nec apud patres gratium inivit**, Liv., II, 27, 3. **Cognomina usurpavit Habrodiaetum se appellando**, etc., Plin. Mai., XXXV, 71.

(c) The Ablative of the Gerund, in any other connection, as after the comparative, or associated with a word requiring the Ablative is rare in classical Latin.

Ex.—**Nullum officium referenda gratia magis necessarium est**, Cic., Off., I, 15, 47. **Vera dignaque stirps suscipiendo patris imperio**, Tac., Ann., XIII, 14. **Morte magis metuenda senectus**, Iuv., XI, 45. **Aliquid immensum exspectans ac dignum deo movendo**, Plin. Mai., XXVIII, 20. (**Dixit**) **nec iam possidendis publicis agris contentos esse**, Liv., VI, 14, 11. **Sum ab observando homine perverso liber**, Cic., Att., I, 13, 2. **Aegyptus alendis augendisque seminibus gloriata est**, Plin. Min., Pan., 30.

(d) Later writers are free in the use of the Ablative of the Gerund as an Ablative Absolute.

Ex.—**Is finis fuit ulciscenda Germanici morte**, Tac., Ann., III, 19. **Explenda simulatione Nero matrem abeuntem prosequitur**, Tac., Ann., XIV, 4. (Cf. 37, I, a).

#### Attraction of the Gerund.

38. It has been seen that the *Gerund* represents the *oblique* cases of the *Present Infinitive* and that, as the Infinitive, it governs the case of the Verb from which it is derived. The Gerund occurs in the *oblique* cases either:

(a) Absolutely, that is, unchanged in form; as *ars scribendi*, *aqua utilis bibendo*, *ad arandum bos natus est*, *mens discendo alitur*; or

(b) In an *attracted* form, that is, when derived from a Verb which governs the Accusative, it is *attracted* into the Gender and Number of the Substantive with which it is associated and which it governs, *its case remaining unchanged*; as *ars epistolae scribendae*, *studium agri colendi*, *consul placandis diis operam dat*. *Stat Asia Luculli institutis servandis*, Cic., Ac., II, 1, 3.

39. The attracted form of the Gerund is the so-called *Gerundive*. "The Gerund governing the Accusative is *changed* into a Participle in *-ndus* which like an Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case." Again, "The Gerund is changed into the Gerundive, but in this change *loses* the sense of *Necessity*," (characteristic of the Future Passive Participle). As the Gerund is *recognized* as expressing the *oblique* cases of the *Infinitive*, it cannot be allowed that it becomes a Participle. To do so would imply that the Infinitive also can become a Participle. The so-called gerundive representing the oblique cases of the Gerund, the nominative being the Present Infinitive, cannot be interpreted as a Participle in either of the relations (attributive or Predicate attributive) in which a Participle stands to the subject defined by it. In the phrase *ars scribendae epistolae*, *epistolae* cannot be interpreted as depending upon *ars*, and *scribendae* as a Participle agreeing with *epistolae*, either in the office of an attributive or Predicate attributive. The phrase cannot be interpreted as skill in a letter which is *being written*, or which *has to be written*, but skill in *writing a letter*. Again, in the phrase, *peritus regendae reipublicae* (= *regendi rempublicam*) the idea of *peritus*, *skilled*, is explained by *regendi*, not by *reipublicae*, which is the Object (= *rempublicam*) of the Gerund *regendi*. The form *scribendae* in the phrase *ars scribendae epistolae* is as essentially a Gerund expressing the simple substantive element of the Verb as is the form *scribendi* in the phrase *ars scribendi epistolam*. There is no difference in the meaning of the two phrases. Instead of the form *ars scribendae epistolae* the phrase could be expressed *ars scribendi epistolam* in which the full form of the Gerund appears. The phrases, then, *ars scribendae epistolae* and *ars scribendi epistolam* are identical in sense. They differ in this that in the former the *Gerund* and the *Substantive* depending on it in the Accusative are *attracted* according to the following formulae:

1. When a *Gerund* and its *Object* in the *Accusative* are associated, the Gerund *assumes* by *attraction* the *Gender* and *Number* of the *Substantive* with which it is associated; its *Case*, as *determined* by the *context*, remains *unchanged*.

2. The *Substantive* (in the *Accusative*) assumes, by *Attraction*, the *Case* of the *Gerund*; its *Gender* and *Number*, of course, remain *unchanged*.

Ex.—**Consilium condendi urbem** (unattracted form). **Consilium condendae urbis** (attracted form). **Tempora demetendo fructus accommodata** (unattracted

form). **Tempora demetendis fructibus accommodata** (attracted form), Cic., Sen., XIX, 70. **Loquendi elegantia augetur legendo oratores** (unattracted form). **Loquendi elegantia augetur legendis oratoribus** (attracted form), Cic., De Or., III, 10, 39. **In voluptatem spernendo virtus cernitur** (unattracted form). **In voluptate spernenda virtus cernitur** (attracted form), Cic., Leg., I, 19, 52.

REM. 1. Should it be conceded that the *sense* of the *Future Passive Participle* (*Necessity*) could, by a forced and violent interpretation, be given, in some cases, to examples of the *attracted Gerund*; as the sense of the *Gerund* would equally apply in such cases and as there are instances of the *Attracted Gerund* which cannot be explained as conveying the idea of *necessity* either from the standpoint of the Grammatical or Logical subject, the conclusion is that the idea of *necessity* should be excluded in interpreting all.

Ex.—**In officio colendo sita vitae est honestas omnis et neglegendo turpitudō**, Cic., Off., I, 2, 4. (Cicero clearly did not intend to teach that duty *has to be neglected*). (Cf. **Bom ipsa terga declarant non esse se ad onus accipiendum figurata**, Cic., N. D., II, 63, 159.

REM. 2. The Gerund does not occur in a *Passive* sense. Its *Passive* force is only apparent. In such a case the action of the Gerund must be referred to an *Agent* expressed or implied and to an *Object* readily supplied by the context or involved in the Gerund.

Ex.—**Haec frequentia convenit censendi causa**, Cic., Verr., Prim. Act., XVIII, 54. (Here *censendi* is not Objective in its conception, namely, of being assessed, but Subjective, namely, of the assessing of themselves, “*of having themselves assessed*.”) **At M. Antonius et C. Trebonius legati, quibus eae partes ad defendendum obvenerant**, etc., Caes., B. G., VII, 81. (Here *ad defendendum* is not “*to be defended*,” but *to defend them*.) **Hostis Antonius iudicatus Italia cesserat; spes restituendi nulla erat**, Nep., Att., 9. **Nullum est sincerius genus gratiarum quam quod illas acclamationes aemuletur, quae fingendi non habent tempus**, Plin. Min., Pan., 3.

REM. 3. The Gerund is not attracted if derived from a Verb which governs *any other Case than the Accusative*; that is, only the Gerund of a Transitive or Active Verb is attracted in classical Latin.

Ex.—**Quare si Glabrionis patris vim ceperis ad resistendum hominibus audacissimis**, etc., Cic., Verr., Prim. Act., XVII, 52. **Quae si diceret, tamen ignosci non oporteret, si nimis atrociter imperando sociis in tantum adductus periculum videretur**, Cic., Verr., I, 27, 70. **Legatos ad satisfaciendum populo Romano miserat**, Tac., Ann., IV, 26. **Huic in respondendo Epaminondas dixit**, Nep., Ep., 6. **Idoneum tempus ratus studiis obsequendi suis Athenas se contulit**, Nep., Att., 2. **Hortor ne ignoscendo malis bonos perditum eat**, Sal., Jug., 31. **Fortuna indulgendo ei nunquam fatigata**, Curt., VIII, 11. **Supplicando diis nostris**, Plin. Min., Ep. Plin. et Trai., 97. **Tristitiae assentiendo**,

Sen., Ep., XVIII, 6, 4. *Ira est incitatio animi ad nocendum ei, qui, etc.*, Sen., Ira., I, 2, 4. Hence *Seclum spatium annorum centum vocarunt, dictum a sene, quod longissimum spatium senescendorum hominum id putarant* (Varr.), is entirely irregular and not to be imitated. (The proper form would be *senescendi hominibus*.)

40. As suggested above the Attraction of the Gerund is restricted to the Gerund of a Transitive Verb. This is true not because the Passive of a Transitive Verb is *Personal*, but rather in accordance with the following principle:

The Accusative presents the original case relation. The matter of thought, of reflection, of statement, is expressed in the Accusative. The other case relations are only *modifications* of the leading and fundamental case relation as furnished by the Accusative. As the Accusative is the leading case, so is its relation to the Verb more intimate than that of any other case and it is the proper case, in consequence, to be modified in form with the changed form of the Verbal. As the Attraction is restricted to the Accusative, the attracted form of the Substantive suggests at once the *Accusative* as the unattracted form. If the attraction were allowed beyond the Accusative there might arise, in a given case, ambiguity as to the case before attraction. The attraction of the Gerund is *not a grammatical necessity* in the language as may be gathered from the many cases in which it is not employed. The attraction may have been suggested by a regard to euphony, the Roman ear preferring an identity of final sound in two or more words.

41. When the Object of the Gerund is in the Accusative, the attraction of the Gerund is the rule, except when, if attraction were employed, ambiguity would result. This would arise when the *Object* of the Gerund is the *Neuter* of a *Pronoun* or *Adjective*. The attraction of the Gerund and its Object would, in some cases, leave it doubtful whether the Object represents a person or thing, a personal or impersonal Object.

Ex.—*Nam quid ego de studiis dicam cognoscendi semper aliquid?* Cic., Am., XXVII, 104. (*Alicuius* would be ambiguous.) *Qui animum minuta docendo demittunt et conterunt*, Sen., Ep., VIII, 2, 6. *Rex cognoscendi plura cupidine accensus, eos terram legere iubet*, Curt., X, 2. *Ne de eodem plura enumerando defatigemus lectores*, Nep., Lys., 2. *Dando et pollicendo multa perfecit, ut, etc.*, Sal., Jug., 16. *Agitando omnia plus timoris quam periculi effecerant*, Sal., Cat., 42. *Mihi tentandi aliquid ratio constabit*, Plin. Min., I, 5, 16. *Praeterea nec materia plura scribendi dabatur*, Plin. Min., IX, 2, 2.

REM. 1. When the Object of the Gerund is the Neuter *singular* expressing an abstract idea, attraction is *allowed*.

Ex.—*Nec modus est ullus investigandi veri, nisi inveneris*, etc., Cic., Fin., I, 1, 3. *Inest in mentibus nostris quaedam cupiditas veri videndi*, Cic., Tusc., I, 19, 44. Cf. *Mos est his virtutem dare vera dicendi*, Sen., Ben., VI, 32, 4. *Vis est illi etiam dura mordendi*, Sen., N. Q., III, 25, 2. *Sapiens artifex est domandi mala*, Sen., Ep., XII, 3, 41. *Agebat Alexandrum furor aliena vastandi*, Sen., Ep., XV, 2, 62. Cf. Tac., Ann., XV, 38 (*inferiora populando*); Tac., H., III, 8 (*alia praetextendo*); Tac., H., IV, 19 (*multa concedendo*); Tac., Ann., I, 11 (*regendi cuncta*); Tac., Ann., I, 61 (*solvendi suprema*).

While the attraction of the Gerund is *allowed* with the Singular (Genitive) of an abstract relation, the usage is not to attract with the Abstract in the Plural or in any other case than the Genitive.

(a) The attraction of the Gerund with its Object, even when the conditions allow it, is quite often omitted without implying any change in sense as compared with the attracted form.

Ex.—*Consilium adhibendo priores erant*, Liv., III, 19, 3. *Traditur fama, hunc auctorem Clusium oppugnandi fuisse*, Liv., V, 33, 4. *Conserendi manum fortuna data est*, Liv., XXI, 41, 4. *L. Papius Cursor iuga Samnii perlustrando an Luceriam premendo... iugum superbo Samniti imposuit?* Liv., XXII, 14, 12.

(b) The case of the Genitive of the Gerund of a Transitive Verb with a Personal Pronoun *me*, *te*, *nos*, etc., is to be carefully noted.

1. The Gerund and its Object are not attracted. This is entirely regular.

Ex.—*Finem altius se efferendi facit*, Cic., Tusc., I, 19, 43. *Sum cupidus te in illa longiore ac perpetua disputatione audiendi*, Cic., De Or., II, 4, 16. *Quem tanta libido exstinguendi me invasit ut*, etc., Sal., Jug., 24. *Grata omnis illi excitandi se materia est*, Sen., Tranq. An., II, 11. Cf. Sen., Clem., III, 4 (*se iactandi*); Sen., Helv., I, 1 (*consolandi te*).

2. The occurrence of the Genitives *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, *sui* (Plural) with the Genitive Singular of the Gerund is quite frequent. The use of the Genitives *mei*, *tui*, etc., with the Genitive Singular of the Gerund is peculiar. In such a case, perhaps, the Genitive Singular of the Pronominals (*mei*, etc.,) as well as the Genitive Plural (*nostri*, *sui*, etc.,) is an attraction from the Accusative Neuter *meum*, etc., = *that which concerns or pertains to me*. By this view can best be explained the Genitive Singular of the Gerund associated with what is essentially the Plural of the Pronoun.

Ex.—*Pompeius praesentem facultatem insequendi sui ademerat*, Caes., B.

Civ., I, 29. **Cognoscit arcem captam esse excludendi sui causa**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 102. **Barbari praedicaverunt quanta sui liberandi facultas daretur**, Caes., B. G., IV, 34. **Neque sui collegendi facultatem dederunt**, Caes., B. G., V, 17. **Hortatur, ne sui liberandi occasionem dimittant**, Caes., B. G., V, 38. **Non vereor ne quis me haec vestri adhortandi causa magnifice loqui existimet**, Liv., XXI, 41, 1.

3. When the Genitive of a Gerund has as its Object the Accusative of the Demonstrative (*is*, etc.,) or of the Relative, full attraction may be applied if the *Reference* and *Gender* of the Demonstrative or of the Relative are clear from the context; if not clear, omit the attraction.

Ex.—**Septimam decimam cohortem in urbem acciri Otho iusserat; armandae eius cura Vario data (est)**, Tac., H., I, 80. **Certo anni tempore bitumen egerit, cuius legendi (from quod legendi) usum experientia docuit**, Tac., H., V, 6. **Cupiditas puniendi eius, a quo te inique putes laesum**, Sen., Ira., I, 2, 4. **Adolescenti negare non potuit, quin Platonem arcesseret, cum Dion eius audiendi cupiditate flagraret**, Nep., Dion, 2. **Ut mihi eius facias conveniendi copiam**, Pl., Capt., 742.

4. The use of the Genitive of the Gerund unattracted with the Genitives *tui*, *eius*, etc., referring to a female is very peculiar and rare and is, perhaps, a case of partial attraction; that is, the Pronoun is attracted while the Gerund is not. (See below.)

Ex.—**Sed dic mihi. Benene ambulatumst? Huc quidem hercle ad te bene, quia tui (= Phronesium) uidendi copia est**, Pl., Truc., 366. **Una illarum praecurrit nuntians me uenisse; ego eius uidendi cupidus recta consequor**, Ter., Hec., 372.

5. The following examples may be regarded as furnishing instances of partial attraction in that the Accusative of the Object is attracted into the case of the Gerund while the Gerund remains unattracted.

Ex.—**Agitur utrum M. Antonio facultas detur opprimendae reipublicae.... agrorum suis latronibus condonandi**, Cic., Phil., V, 3, 6. **Honestum est facere omnia aut voluptatis causa aut eorum, quae secundum naturam sunt, adipiscendi**, Cic., Fin., V, 7, 19. **Illi fuit exemplorum eligendi potestas**, Cic., Inv., II, 2, 5. **Nominandi istorum tibi erit copia**, Pl., Capt., 846. **Mihi lucis das tuendi copiam**, Pl., Capt., 1003.

6. To be carefully observed is the occasional use by the best writers of the Gerund in apposition with a Pronoun or other word.

Ex.—**In quo consuevit iactare vestra se oratio, claris et fortibus viris commemorandis, id totum evertitur**, Cic., Fin., I, 10, 36. (Here *commemorandis*, etc., in apposition with *quo*.) **Neque immemor eius, quod initio consulatus imbiberat, reconciliandi animos plebis**, Liv., II, 47, 12. (*Reconciliandi*, etc., in apposition with *eius*.) **Numquam ingenium idem ad res diversissimas, parendum atque imperandum**, Liv., XXI, 4, 3. **Itaque ad remedium iam diu neque desi-**



deratum neque adhibitum, dictatorem dicendum, civitas confugit, Liv., XXII, 8, 5. Ad alia traducebantur opera, foros in circo faciendos cloacamque maximam, etc., Liv., I, 56, 2.

7. It occurs quite often that the *Gerund* is attracted while the Object is not expressed but supplied by the context. This is frequently the Antecedent of the Relative.

Ex.—Profecta deinde cohors ad sepeliendos, quos ceciderant, Liv., III, 43, 6. Exercitum in Aeolide continuit, partim sociis ferendo opem, partim quos in societatem pellicere non poterat depopulandis, Liv., XXXVII, 18, 1. Minus idem proderit in ediscendis, quae orationis perpetuae erunt, Quint., XI, 2, 24. Haec pars dialectica est utilis separandis, quae sunt differentia, Quint., XII, 2, 13. Agrippina suum cubiculum offerre contegendis, quae prima aetas et summa fortuna expeterent, Tac., Ann., XIII, 13. Neque ipse deerat, nimis commemorandis quae meruisset, Tac., H., IV, 80. Quarta aetas obtinendis, quae percurrebat, insumpta, Tac., Agr., 23. Nec tantum (patrem) rebus a me gestis nobilitavi, sed ipsi gerendarum ingentem dedi materiam, Sen., Ben., III, 30, 3. Hoc discamus beneficia secure debere et occasiones reddendorum observare, Sen., Ben., VI, 41, 1. Quaeris quid sit, quod oblivionem nobis acceptorum (beneficiorum) faciat? Cupiditas accipiendorum, Sen., Ep., XI, 2, 28. Prima literatura non docet liberales artes, sed percipiendis locum parat, Sen., Ep. XIII, 3, 20. Relicta phalanx ad subigendos, qui defecerant, Curt., VIII, 10. Prope cotidie ad audiendos, quos ego frequentabam, ventitabat, Plin. Min., VI, 6, 3.

42. The Verbs *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *perfruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, *medeor*, in the early period of the language allowed the direct Object (Accusative). In accordance with this (transitive) force of the Verb, the *Gerunds* derived from them admit attraction.

Ex.—Expetuntur divitiae cum ad usus vitae necessarios, tum ad perfrundas voluptates, Cic., Off., I, 8, 25. Oculus est probe affectus ad suum munus fungendum, Cic., Tusc., III, 7, 15. In eis (bonis) ipsis potiundis exsultans gestiensque laetitia turpis est, Cic., Tusc., IV, 31, 66. Apud maiores nostros iustitiae fruendae causa videntur olim bene morati reges constituti, Cic., Off., II, 12, 41. Rem per se popularem ita dexter egit, ut medendis corporibus animi multo prius militum imperatori reconciliarentur, Liv., VIII, 36, 7. Ex quo intellegitur tenendum esse eius (voluptatis) fruendae modum, Cic., Off., I, 30, 106. For the transitive *abuti*, see Pl., Trin., 682; for the transitive *vescor*, Plin. Mai., VIII, 203.

## The Future Passive Participle.

43. The Future Passive Participle is the form in *-ndus*, *-nda*, *-ndum*. It signifies *Necessity*, rarely *Possibility*. In other words, it denotes *what must be*, *what has to be*, *what is possible*. By the Future

Passive Participle is expressed the relation of an *abiding*, *progressive* *Necessity*, or of a *Necessity* experienced but *ever looking forward to Accomplishment or Realization*. In other words, *Necessity* as to a *Future Action*. The time to which the *Necessity* is referred is indicated by the different *Tenses of esse*.

44. The Future Passive Participle occurs in both a Personal (-*ndus*, -*nda*, -*ndum*) form, and in an Impersonal (-*ndum*) form and presents with the *Tenses of esse* a complete conjugation, known as the *Periphrastic Passive*.

45. The Personal form occurs when the Verb from which the Participle comes is Transitive, that is, governs the Accusative Case. In this form the Personal Passive character of the Participle, as derived from a Transitive Verb, is preserved in accordance with the Principle that the *Object* of a Transitive Verb becomes the *Subject* of the Verb in the Passive which is then *Personal*. The Conjugation of the Personal Future Passive Participle with the *Tenses of esse* (or of the Personal Periphrastic Passive) is complete.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. *Present Tense, Puer laudandus est* = the boy has to be praised.
2. *Imperfect Tense, Puer laudandus erat* = the boy had (was having) to be praised.
3. *Perfect Tense, Puer laudandus fuit* = the boy has had to be praised.
4. *Aorist Tense, Puer laudandus fuit* = the boy had (did have) to be praised.
5. *Pluperfect Tense, Puer laudandus fuerat* = the boy had had to be praised.
6. *First Future Tense, Puer laudandus erit* = the boy will have to be praised.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. *Present Tense, Si laudandus sit* (in O. O.) = if he has to be praised.
2. *Imperfect Tense, Si laudandus esset* (*foret*) (in O. O.) = if he had (was having) to be praised.
3. *Perfect Tense, Si laudandus fuerit* (in O. O.) = if he has had to be praised.
4. *Aorist Tense, Si laudandus fuerit* (in O. O.) = if he had (did have) to be praised.
5. *Pluperfect Tense, Si laudandus fuisset* (in O. O.) = if he had had to be praised.
6. *Future First Tense, from the Present, Si laudandus sit* (in O. O.) = if he shall have to be praised.

7. *Second Future Tense*, *Puer laudandus fuerit* = the boy will have had to be praised.
7. *Future Second Tense* from the *Present*, *Si laudandus fuerit* (in O. O.) = if he shall have had to be praised.
8. *Future First Tense* from the *Past*, *Si laudandus esset* (in O. O.) = if he should have to be praised.
9. *Future Second Tense* from the *Past*, *Si laudandus fuisset* (in O. O.) = if he should have had to be praised.

(a) The Indicative forms *laudandus est*, *laudandus fuit* (Perfect), when expressed in the Subjunctive (as in *Oratio Obliqua*), become, respectively, *laudandus sit* and *laudandus fuerit*. The Indicative forms *laudandus erat*, *laudandus fuit* (Aorist), *laudandus fuerat*, when expressed in the Subjunctive, become, respectively, *laudandus esset*, *laudandus fuerit*, and *laudandus fuisset*. The Indicative forms *laudandus erit* and *laudandus fuerit* when expressed in the Subjunctive from a *Given Present Time* become, respectively, *laudandus sit* and *laudandus fuerit*, from a *Given Past Time* they become, respectively, *laudandus esset* and *laudandus fuisset*. When the Future Time of the Subjunctive Tense is not entirely clear from the context the same forms are used or the expressions varied. The expressions *futurum sit ut laudandus sit* (*fuerit*) and *futurum esset ut laudandus esset* (*fuisset*) as periphrastic representatives of the *Future Subjunctive Tenses* are theoretical and not to be employed.

Ex.—*Si vera dicenda sunt*, Liv., I, 23, 7. *Neque nobilitas diutius demonstranda est*, Tac., Ann., VI, 27. *Erat agger petendus*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 42. *Quae contra hanc opinionem dicuntur segreganda fuerunt* (Perfect), Sen., Ep., XVII, 2, 5. *Recusabas, quod bene erat imperaturi. Igitur cogendus fuisti* (Aor.), Plin. Min., Pan., 5. *Nec patrius mos repudiandus fuit* (Aor.), Cic., Div., II, 33, 71. *Omnia, quae facienda erunt, audacter facit*, Sen., Ep., IX, 3, 31. *Si (tormenta) sustinenda fuerint, ut me in illis animose geram, optabo*, Sen., Ep., VII, 5, 4. *Cur legendi sint, qui idem sentiunt, non intellego*, Cic., Tusc., II, 3, 7. *Quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere poterant*, Caes., B. G., V, 33. *Pedites eripi sibi proprium officium tum, cum rex gestandus esset, querebantur*, Curt., VII, 25. *Quid sit hoc quare praecipiendum fuerit* (Perfect) scies, Sen., N. Q., II, 2, 2. *Haud tam facile dictu est, faciendumne fuerit* (Aor.), Liv., II, 34, 12. *Qui diu quaerendus fuisset* (unreal), nisi pre-visus esset Minicius, Plin. Min., I, 14, 3. *Illi respondent, se, quid agendum*

*ipsis foret* (= *esset*) (Future I.), *deliberaturos esse*, Curt., VI, 15. *Obstinatum enim tibi non suscipere Imperium nisi servandum fuisset* (Future II.), Plin. Min., Pan., 5.

(b) *The Infinitive Mood of the Periphrastic Passive.* The Tenses of the Infinitive are formed by means of the Future Passive Participle with the several Infinitive Tenses of *esse*.

1. *Present Tense*, *Dicit puerum laudandum esse* = he says that the boy has to be praised.

2. *Imperfect Tense*, *Dicebat puerum laudandum esse* = he said (insisted) that the boy had (was having) to be praised.

3. *Perfect Tense*, *Dicit puerum laudandum fuisse* = he says that the boy has had to be praised.

4. *Aorist Tense*, *Dicit puerum laudandum fuisse* = he says that the boy had (did have) to be praised.

5. *Pluperfect Tense*, *Dicebat puerum laudandum fuisse* = he said (insisted) that the boy had had to be praised.

6. *Future First Tense from the Present*, *Dicit puerum laudandum fore (esse)* = he says that the boy has (= will have) to be praised.

REM. 1. *Dicit fore (futurum esse) ut puer laudandus sit* (theoretical).

7. *Future Second Tense from the Present*, *Dicit fore (futurum esse) ut puer laudandus fuerit* (theoretical). Use, instead of the theoretical periphrastic, the form for *Future First* from the Present.

8. *Future First Tense from the Past*, *Dicebat puerum laudandum fore (esse)* = he said (insisted) that the boy would have to be praised.

REM. 1. *Dicebat fore (futurum esse) ut puer laudandus esset* (theoretical).

9. *Future Second Tense from the Past*, *Dicebat fore (futurum esse) ut puer laudandus fuisset* (theoretical). Use, instead of the theoretical periphrasis, the form for *Future First* from a Past.

46. The Impersonal form *-ndum est* is used when the Verb from which the Participle is derived is *Intransitive* or *Neuter*. In the form *-ndum est* the Passive character of the Participle, according to its derivation, is presented in conformity with the Principle that the Passive of an Intransitive or Neuter Verb is *Impersonal*. The Impersonal form *-ndum* is used with all the Tenses (Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive) of *esse*, and forms with them a complete Conjugation.

## (a) INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. *Present Tense*, *Obtemperandum est legibus* = the laws have to be obeyed.

2. *Imperfect Tense*, *Obtemperandum erat legibus* = the laws had (were having) to be obeyed.

3. *Future First Tense*, *Obtemperandum erit legibus* = the laws will have to be obeyed.

4. *Future Second Tense*, *Obtemperandum fuerit legibus* = the laws will have had to be obeyed, etc.

## (b) SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. *Present Tense*, *Si obtemperandum sit legibus* (in O. O.) = if the laws have to be obeyed.

2. *Imperfect Tense*, *Si obtemperandum esset legibus* (in O. O.) = if the laws had (were having) to be obeyed.

3. *Future First Tense* from the *Present*, *Si obtemperandum sit legibus* (in O. O.) = if the laws shall have to be obeyed.

4. *Future Second Tense* from the *Present*, *Si obtemperandum fuerit legibus* (in O. O.) = if the laws shall have had to be obeyed, etc.

## (c) INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. *Present Tense*, *Dicit obtemperandum esse legibus* = he says that the laws have to be obeyed.

2. *Imperfect Tense*, *Dicebat obtemperandum esse legibus* = he said (insisted) that the laws had to be obeyed.

3. *Future First Tense* from the *Present*, *Dicit obtemperandum fore (esse) legibus* = he says that the laws will have to be obeyed, etc.

Ex.—*Resistendum senectuti est*, Cic., Sen., XI, 35. *Utendum est exercitationibus modicis*, Cic., Sen., XI, 36. *Si quo erat longius prodeundum*, Caes., B. G., I, 48. *Quod vos inviti audistis, quasi vobis quoque faciendum sit*, Sen., Vit. Beat., XIX, 1. *Haud dubitare Artabazus, quin transeundum esset in castra Graecorum*, Curt., V, 32. *Erant qui censerent recedendum esse*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 30. *Ego arbitror, si id sit, mihi ignoscendum esse*, Cic., Att., I, 1, 4. *Non quia intercedendum putem imaginibus, quae marmore finguntur*, Tac., Agr., 46.

47. If there is no definite (*expressed*) *Subject*, *Agent*, or *logical Object*, the Impersonal form *-ndum* must be used with the Tenses of *esse*, thus presenting a complete Conjugation. This is the case though the Verb from which the Participle is derived is *Transitive*. The phrase

*-ndum est*, etc., may often best be rendered with an Indefinite Subject *one (we) has (have) to*, etc.

Ex.—**Audiendum est** = one has to hear, we have to hear, etc. **Si audiendum sit** = if one has to hear, if we have to hear, etc. **Dicit audiendum esse** = he says that one has to hear, that we have to hear, etc. **Post amicitiam credendum est, ante amicitiam iudicandum**, Sen., Ep., I, 3, 2. **Erant qui censerent recedendum esse**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 30, etc.

48. The Impersonal form *-ndum est* is used when the *Agent* is expressed and the logical *Object* is *not expressed*, and this is true though the Verb from which the Participle is derived is *Transitive*.

Ex.—**Mihi audiendum est** = I have to hear, etc. **Si mihi audiendum sit** = if I have to hear (in O. O.), etc. **Dicit mihi audiendum esse** = he says that I have to hear, etc. Cf. **In tyrannide illi vivendum est**, Sen., Ira., I, 10, 2. **Sequamur naturam a qua aberranti cupiendum timendumque est et fortuitis serviendum**, Sen., Ep., XVI, 3, 14.

49. As may be gathered from the preceding statements, the *Agent* by whom the action *must* or *has to be* done, and who is *interested* in the action so far as the duty or obligation of doing it is devolved upon him, is expressed in the Dative Case. The *Agent* is not the *Active Agent*, but one who is *interested* in doing the Action, and the Case is really the Dative of *Personal Interest*; as, *mihi audiendum est* = I have to hear, upon *me* rests the obligation to hear.

Ex.—**Ipsi erant transcendendae valles maximae**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 68. **Tentandas sibi provincias existimabat**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 34. **Sibi consilium capiendum existimabat**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 41. **Eam (naturam) suscipiendam admirandamque hominum generi pulchritudo mundi cogit confiteri**, Cic., Div., II, 72, 148.

(a) When this Dative, in fact, of *Personal Interest*, but translated as the real *working* or *effecting Agent*, and the Dative expressing the Subject or logical Object are both associated with and depend on the *same predicate*, then the relation of the *Agent* is expressed by *ab* with the Ablative when it is necessary to distinguish the *Agent* from the *logical Object*; otherwise, an ambiguity might arise.

Ex.—**Civibus vobis consulendum est** would be ambiguous, as the *Agent* is not distinguishable from the Object. The ambiguity is removed by expressing the *Agent* in the Ablative with the Preposition *ab*. **Aguntur bona multorum civium, quibus est a vobis consulendum est**, Cic., Imp. Pomp., II, 6.

(b) When the context removes ambiguity as to the *Agent* and *Object*, the two *Datives* may be retained.

Ex.—**Quem tu mihi, inquit Mucius, Staseam, quem Peripateticum narras?**

**Gerendus est tibi nos adolescentibus, Crasse, qui, etc.,** Cic., De Or., I, 23, 105. **Repperi negotium, si quidem his mihi ultro adgerunda etiam est aqua,** Pl., Rud., 473.

(c) The *Agent* in connection with the Future Passive Participle is quite often *prominently* and *emphatically* presented by the Preposition *ab* and the Ablative *instead* of by the *Dative*.

Ex.—**Amicorum litterae me ad triumphum vocant rem a nobis non neglegendam,** Cic., Att., VI, 6, 4. **Eos a se observandos et colendos putabat,** Cic., Fam., XIII, 16, 2. **Admonendum potius te a me quam rogandum puto,** Cic., Fam., XV, 4, 11. **Res a magistratibus animadvertenda videtur,** Cic., Caec., XII, 33.

REM. 1. The Preposition *ab* and the Ablative occurs in the statement of the *Agent* for the purpose of *uniformity of expression* in the same sentence.

Ex.—**Nec si a populo praeteritus est quem non oportuit, a iudicibus condemnandus est, qui praeteritus non est,** Cic., Plan., III, 8. Cf. **Qui afflictus ante te consulem, recreatus abs te, totus est nunc ab iis, a quibus tuendus fuerat, derelictus,** Cic., Fam., I, 9, 17.

(d) The Ablative of the *Instrument* is of course expressed in the Ablative without *ab*.

Ex.—**O diem laetum notandumque mihi candidissimo calculo!** Plin. Min., VI, 11, 2. **Frangendus misero gingiva panis inermi,** Iuv., X, 200. **Numquam virtus vitio adluvanda est,** Sen., Ira., I, 9, 1.

REM. 1. The Impersonal form *-ndum est* with the Accusative, when the Participle is derived from a Transitive Verb, occurs, generally, in early and late Latin and in Poetry, rarely in classical Latin. The use of the Accusative, in such cases, as the Inner Object, is irregular and *not to be imitated*.

Ex.—**Aeternas quoniam poenas in morte timendum est,** Lucr., I, 112. **Aeternae quoniam poenae...timendae sunt,** the regular form. **Hercle opinor mi aduenienti hac noctu agitandumst uigilias,** Pl., Trin., 869. **Quae tamen nemo sic accipiat, ut omnia credat audendum,** Quint., IV, 5, 17. Cf. **Obliviscendum vobis putatis matrum in liberos, virorum in uxores scelera?** Cic., Frag. Pro Saur., VII, 13.

REM. 2. Observe the Future Passive Participle of Deponent Verbs.

Ex.—**Quod quoniam negatis, hoc necessario confitendum,** Cic., Div., II, 62, 127. **Haec (persona) tibi tuenda est,** Sen., Consol., VI, 1. **Qui in admirationem sui adduxit hominem etiam Catoni suo mirandum,** Sen., Helv., IX, 5. Cf. **Quam (viam) nobis quoque ingrediendum sit,** Cic., Sen., II, 6 (*Impersonal and regular*, the Preposition with *quam* provided for in the Compound Verb.)

50. The Verbs *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor* in accordance with their original Transitive force allow the Personal form of the Future Passive Participle. The use of the Personal form seems to have been limited to the oblique cases. *Fruendus*, however, occurs in the Nominative Case. The Impersonal form *-ndum est*, etc., of all these Verbs may be relied upon in accordance with their later Intransitive character. In connection with the Verbs *dare*, *tradere*, the *Personal* form is the rule.

Ex.—*Huic Heraclio omnia utenda tradiderat*, Cic., Verr., II, 18, 46. *Fruenda etiam sapientia est*, Cic., Fin., I, 1, 3. *Ut (Final) fruendum amicis extremum Socratem daret*, Sen., Ep., VIII, 1, 9. *In medio lacent beneficia naturae promiscue utenda*, Sen., Ep., XIV, 2, 36. *Coctas dysintericis vescendas dedere*, Plin. Mai., XX, 41. Cf. *Constituunt, illo consilio utendum esse*, Caes., B. G., VII, 78. *Locus est utendum multis*, Quint., XI, 2, 22. Vid., Suet., Galb., 14 (*abutendus*).

51. The forms in *-ndum*, *-ndam*, *-ndum*, Plural *-ndos*, *-ndas*, *-nda*, defining the Direct Object of certain Verbs are to be explained as the Future Passive Participle. Their relation to the Substantive defined is that of a Predicate Attributive. The characteristic sense (Necessity) of the Participle reproduces and completes the sense of the leading Verb which in this connection is marked by more or less of authority. The Future Passive Participle (*-ndum*, etc.,) which with its Substantive furnish the Direct Object of the Verb in the Accusative become the *Subject* of the Verb in the *Passive*. The Verbs which thus occur are *adnotare*, *afferre*, *attribuere*, *apponere*, *accipere*, *curare*, *censere*, *commendare*, *concedere*, *conducere*, *dare*, *delegare*, *deligere*, *exposcere*, *imponere*, *locare*, *mittere*, *mandare*, *obicere*, *permittere*, *porrigere*, *praeberere*, *prodere*, *permittere*, *proponere*, *suscipere*, *tradere*, etc.

Ex.—*Caesar pontem in Arare faciendum curat*, Caes., B. G., I, 30 = Caesar took care of, took charge of a bridge which had to be built = had a bridge built. *Singula latera castrorum singulis attribuit legionibus munienda*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 42. *Fuerunt alii quos adnotavi in urbem remittendos*, Plin. Min., Ep., XCVI, 4. *Pecus omne equitibus auxiliariis agendum attribuit*, Sal., Jug., 90. *Qui columnam illam conduxerat faciendam*, Cic., Div., II, 21, 47. *Bona quaedam diripienda concessit*, Cic., Verr., II, 1, 15, 38. *Petit, si (imagines) sunt istic, pingendas delegem*, Plin. Min., IV, 28, 1. *Senatus decrevit populusque iussit ut eas (statuas) quaestores demoliendas locarent*, Cic., Verr., II, 11, 67, 161. *Dixit eos bona sua diripienda populo dedisse*, Liv., II, 6, 3. *Hortor illi te expoliendum limandumque permittas*, Plin. Min., I, 10, 11. *Critobulus hortari eum coepit, ut se continendum praeberet*, Curt., IX, 22. *Arcana noscenda famae proponit atque explicat*, Plin. Min., Pan., 83. *Is Epaminondam pecunia corrupendum suscepit*, Nep., Ep., 4. (*Illa*) *se tradidit ferendam dolori*, Sen., Marc., II, 2, etc.



REM. 1. The Object and Participle as the *Object* of the Verb in the Active become the *Subject* of the Verb in the Passive.

Ex.—**Diripienda (bona regia) plebi sunt data**, Liv., II, 5, 2. In the Active **diripienda (bona regia) plebi dederunt**.

REM. 2. The Active Construction of *ad* with the Gerund expresses a sense approaching that of the *Future Passive Participle*. They are, however, not identical in meaning.

Ex.—**Oppidum ad diripiendum militibus concessit**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 80. Cf. **Oppidum diripiendum militibus concessit**.

REM. 2. The use of the *Infinitive* in this connection is poetical, while it occasionally occurs in prose.

Ex.—**Tristitiam et metus tradam protervis in mare Creticum portare ventis**, Hor., Od., I, 26, 3. Here **portare** is direct Object of **tradam** and is not identical with the *Future Passive Participle*.

REM. 3. The association of the *Future Passive Participle* with *habere* in some cases after the analogy of the *Perfect Passive Participle* with this Verb (as *cognitum habere*) obtains quite frequently in the late writers. This association may be translated *have to*, *ought*, *should*.

Ex.—**Caryotae optimae, quae nunc cum ficis et boletis certandum habent**, Plin. Min., I, 7, 6. **O te beatum! qui eum imitandum habes**, Plin. Min., VIII, 13, 2. **Ut (Result) honoribus eius praesidio centurionis legionarii consulendum habuerimus**, Plin. Min., Plin. et Trai. Ep., 78, 1. **Ita egisti tribunum, ut nihil discendum haberes tempore docendi**, Plin. Min., Pan., 15. Cf. Tac., Ann., XIV, 44 (**si statuendum haberemus**); Tac., Or., 31 (**sive dicendum habuerit**). **Neque aliud excusandum habeo**, Tac., II., IV, 77. Cf. Cic., Verr., II, I, 50, 130 (**aedem habuit tuendum**).

REM. 4. In this connection is to be noted the occurrence of the *Infinitive* as the Object of *habere* in the sense of *can* where we expect the Relative (Consecutive) with the Subjunctive rather than the *Future Passive Participle*.

Ex.—**De re publica nihil habeo ad te scribere**, Cic., Att., II, 22, 6. (Better **nihil quod scribam** rather than **scribendum**.) **Haec fere dicere habui de naturae deorum**, Cic., N. D., III, 39, 93. (Where we expect **Haec quae dicerem habui**, rather than **dicenda habui**.) Cf. Cic., Div., II, 66, 136 (**de nostris somniis quid habemus dicere?**).

52. From the fundamental sense of the *Future Passive Participle*, namely, *necessity, what has to be*, spring several other modifications, in sense, namely, *worthy of, deserving to, fit for, capable of, possible to*, particularly in a *negative* and *quasi-negative* context, as with *haud*,

*non, vix*, and also, less frequently, without a negative context. These senses of the Future Passive Participle obtain chiefly in its Predicate Attributive Relation.

Ex.—**Vix erat credendum**, Caes., B. G., V, 28. (Scarcely credible, worthy of, deserving belief.) **Amnis haud spernenda latitudine**, Tac., Ann., XV, 4. **Bello non spernendus**, Tac., H., II, 86. **Inopia vix privato toleranda**, Tac., H., I, 21. **Sohaemus, haud spernendis viribus**, Tac., H., II, 81. **Hic exitus viri haud sane spernendi**, Tac., H., III, 75. **Haud temnendae manus ductor**, Tac., H., III, 47. **Intellegit poeta prudens... consuetudinem esse non contemnendam magistratam**, Cic., Tusc., II, 22, 49. **Ab eodem rege et circa forum privatis aedificanda divisa sunt loca**, Liv., I, 35, 10. **Carus et venerandus erat**, Curt., III, 16. **Assurgit arte visenda**, Plin. Min., VI, 21, 16. **Magnum aliquid memorandumque fecerunt**, Plin. Min., IX, 19, 3.

CAUTION.—As stated above, the Dative of the Agent with the Future Passive Participle is not the *active, working, and effecting Agent* expressed by the *Ablative* with the Preposition *ab*, but it denotes the Agent by whom the Action *is to be done*, the Agent *upon whom* is devolved the *necessity or obligation* of performing it, and the Agent who *is interested* in its performance. Whether the action is really *done or not done* is not involved in the Case, but determined by the context.

## The Participle.

53. The Participle like the Adjective is both Attributive and Predicate-Attributive. To this extent it is identical with the Adjective. In addition to this the Participle often surrenders its verbal force and assumes the grammatical construction and allows the treatment of an Adjective. It then allows the *Degrees of Comparison* and governs the Case which an Adjective of similar sense requires.

Ex.—**Cum (amnis) aquae vim vehat ingentem, navium patiens est**, Liv., XXI, 31, 11. **Boni cives, amantes patriae, mare infestum habebimus**, Cic., Att., IX, 19, 3. **Epaminondas fuit veritatis diligens**, Nep., Ep., 3. **Consul non modo legum sed ne deorum quidem satis metuens**, Liv., XXII, 3, 4. **Ad nos amantissimos tui veni**, Cic., Fam., XVI, 7.

54. As stated, the Substantive element of a Verb, expressed by the Participle, may be considered in a two-fold relation:

I. As an ordinary Attributive; as, *equus currens*, the running horse; *frater amatus* = the loved brother.

REM. 1. The Perfect Passive Participle in its attributive relation is often best rendered by a Verbal Substantive, suggested by the Parti-

ciple with its Subject defined by *of*; as, *Sicilia amissa* = the loss of Sicily; *Caesar interfectus* = the killing (assassination) of Caesar.

Ex.—**Sabinis creatus Romae dictator metum incussit**, Liv., II, 18, 9. (Here **creatus dictator** = the appointment of a dictator. The appointment of a dictator was a fact.) **Quae audita** (= the hearing of these things) **longe aliter patres ac plebem affecere**, Liv., II, 24, 1. **An vero in Hispania res gestas non audistis? duos pulsos exercitus, duos superatos duces, duas receptas provincias?** Caes., B. Civ., II, 32. **Creato dictatore primum Romae magnus plebem metus incessit**, Liv., II, 18, 8.

REM. 2. In such an association of the Perfect Passive Participle and its Subject, the controlling idea is the Subject to which is attributed the completed action or realized state expressed by the Passive Participle; as, *Caesar interfectus* = the assassinated Caesar (= the assassination of Caesar). This relation in the oblique cases is not to be confounded with the Gerund, which is translated in the same way but presents an action as *progressive*, *happening*, or *yet to happen*, without excluding it, in many cases, as a *reality* and *fact*. When the context clearly indicates, in a phrase formed by a Verbal Substantive and *of* that the action has been *completed* or the *state certainly realized or attained*, the Perfect Passive Participle is the construction, while if the action is stated as *progressive*, *repeated*, *anticipated*, or as *means*, the *Gerund* is the construction. It must be borne in mind that an action which is presented in a general way as *progressive*, *repeated*, etc., in the present, may be a fact when historically considered. In this case, however, the Gerund is the construction. Again, in case of the Gerund the simple substantive element of the Verb is the prominent and characteristic idea to be expressed.

Ex.—**Erige te, deosque duces sequere, qui clarum hoc fore caput divino quondam circumfuso igni portenderunt**, Liv., I, 41, 3. **Fama est Latinum dextera data fidem futurae amicitiae sanxisse**, Liv., I, 1, 8. **Alia muris, alia Tiberi obiecto videbantur tuta**, Liv., II, 10, 2. **Simul fragor rupti pontis, simul clamor Romanorum, pavore subito impetum sustinuit**, Liv., II, 10, 10. **Arboribus circa immanibus deiectis detruncatisque struem ingentem lignorum faciunt**, Liv., XXI, 37, 2. Cf. **Omnis loquendi elegantia augeatur legendis oratoribus et poetis**, Cic., De Or., III, 10, 39. **Valetudo sustentatur praetermittendis voluptatibus**, Cic., Off., II, 24, 86. **Numa Pompilius illam sapientiam constituendae civitatis cognovit**, Cic., De Or., II, 37, 154.

REM. 3. The use of the Perfect Passive Participle resolved as a verbal Substantive with its Subject defined by *of*, is frequent with Prepositions, as, *ab*, *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *cum*, *de*, *ex*, *inter*, *ob*, *per*, *post*, *propter*.

Ex.—**Ad** (Causal) **haec visa auditaque clamor ingens oritur**, Liv., II, 23, 7.

**Mirum mihi videtur lignea simulacra in delubris dicata usque ad devictam Asiam,** Plin. Mai., XXXIV, 34. **Regnatum Romae ab condita urbe ad liberatam annos CCXLIV,** Liv., I, 60, 3. **Neque ante philosophiam patefactam hac de re communis vita dubitavit,** Cic., Div., I, 39, 86. **Dixerunt ab incenso Capitolio, illum esse vicesimum annum,** Sal., Cat., 47. **Sententia eius indicanda est, ut in omni genere noscamus quae fuerint celeberrima anno sescentesimo urbis, circa captas Carthaginem ac Corinthum,** Plin. Mai., XIV, 45. **Conon plus tristitiae ex incensa et diruta a Lacedaemoniis patria, quam laetitiae ex recuperata cepit,** Iust., VI, 5. **Sed pariter cum capta Thala legati ex oppido Lepti ad Metellum venerant,** Sal., Iug., 77. **Inter Lavinium et Albam Longam deductam coloniam triginta ferme interfuere anni,** Liv., I, 3, 4. **Tu de emerso me et equo ad ripam quid habes dicere?** Cic., Div., II, 66, 136. **In itinere de proelio facto Brutoque et Mutina obsidione liberatis audivi,** Cic., Fam., X, 11, 2. **Per equites dispositos aqua prohibere classarios instituit,** Caes., B. Civ., III, 100. **Qui ob relata civium Romanorum capita pecunias acceperant,** Suet., Caes., 11. **Ob eam rem corruptam domi poenas metuunt,** Sal., Iug., 79. Cf. Cic., Am., VII, 25 **ob eam (amicitiam) servatam.** **Maiore ira pugnabat ob erepta bona,** Liv., II, 19, 10. **Sunt qui propter adiectum Aequorum Volscorumque bello et Ardeatium defectioni Velens bellum dicant,** etc., Liv., IV, 7, 2. **Neque enim ne vobis quidem Sicilia ac Sardinia satis digna pretia sunt pro tot classibus, tot exercitibus, tot tam egregiis amissis ducibus,** Liv., XXX, 30, 7. **Quod post acceptam illam maximam cladem expiatum est,** Cic., Div., I, 45, 101.

(a) Instead of *post* with the Perfect Passive Participle and Substantive with the period of time, which has elapsed, expressed, we may use *ab* with the Ablative of the Participle and Substantive.

Ex.—**Centesimo anno post urbem conditam = centesimo anno ab urbe condita.** **Quod sexennio post Velos captos factum esse videmus,** Cic., Div., I, 45, 100. Cf. **Dixerunt ab incenso Capitolio illum esse vicesimum annum,** Sal., Cat., 47. **Annis enim fere DX post Romam conditam Livius fabulam dedit anno ante natum Ennium,** Cic., Tusc., I, 1, 3. Cf. **Anno DX ab Roma condita,** etc. **Haec post exactos reges gesta primo anno,** Liv., II, 8, 9. Cf. **Haec ab exactis regibus gesta primo anno.** The use of *post* is more regular.

REM. 1. The Genitive of the Perfect Passive Participle with its Subject and the Time in the Ablative is late Latin.

Ex.—**Ipse aedem Salutis pinxit anno urbis conditae CCCCL,** Plin. Mai., XXXV, 19. **P. Licinius Crassus L. Iulius Caesar censores anno urbis conditae DCLXV edixerunt, ne quis,** etc. Plin. Mai., XIV, 95.

(b) The use of the Perfect Passive Participle resolved, in a Future context, as the Future Second (*Exactum*) in Direct and Indirect narrative is to be carefully noted. The Time of the Participle is derived from the context, the completed action is supplied by the Participle. This use of the Participle springs from its Predicate attributive character (see II below), and is very frequent in the Ablative Absolute construction.

Ex.—*Unum proelium superest, quo confecto nos nostram libertatem recuperabimus*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 91. (Here *quo confecto* = *quod cum confectum erit*.) *Levius casura pila sperabat in loco retentis militibus, quam si ipsi immissis telis occurrissent*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 92. (Here *retentis militibus* = *si retenti essent milites*.) *Quibus vitiis declinatis, quod in rebus honestis curae ponetur, id iure laudabitur*, Cic., Off., I, 6, 19. (Here *Quibus vitiis declinatis* = *quae si vitia declinata erunt*.) *Ea consultatio tenuit ne non reddita bona belli causa, reddita belli materia et adiumentum essent*, Liv., II, 3, 5 (= *ne si non reddita essent bona. . . si reddita, etc.*). *Eam occasionem, ut litterae legatis darentur, quae deprehensae (= quae cum deprehensae essent) rem coarguere possent, exspectabat*, Liv., II, 4, 6.

(c) The phrase *quod* (= *the fact or circumstance that*) and a finite Verb is quite frequently expressed with a conciseness and elegance, chiefly in Livy, by the Neuter Singular of the Perfect Passive Participle.

Ex.—*Ea arte aequasset superiores reges, ni degeneratum in aliis huic quoque decori offecissit*, Liv., I, 53, 1. (Here *degeneratum* may be interpreted as *quod degeneraverat* or *degeneratus erat*.) *Haud procul Carthagine aberant, cum ex obviis auditum postero die omnem exercitum proficisci omni metu liberavit eos*, Liv., XXVIII, 26, 7. *Sed refellit falsum imaginis titulum paucis ante annis lege cautum, ne, etc.*, Liv., IV, 16, 4. *Diu non perlitatum tenuerat dictatorem, ne ante meridiem signum dare posset*, Liv., VII, 8, 5.

REM. 1. It must be observed that the Personal Perfect Passive Participle occurs in a similar sense.

Ex.—*Lucumoni animos auxit ducta in matrimonium Tanaquil summo loco nata*, Liv., I, 34, 4. (*Ducta in matrimonium Tanaquil* = *the fact that he had married Tanaquil (that Tanaquil had been married, etc.)*). *Strictum etiam telum respersusque ipse cruore tota in se castra convertit*, Liv., III, 50, 3.

II. The Substantive element of the Verb is presented as a Predicate attributive relation by the Participle.

The Participle in its Predicate attributive office is often resolved and translated as a Finite Verb and connected by *and* with a second Finite Verb, *expressed as such*; it is also adversatively connected by *but* with such a Verb. Hence if, in English, two Finite Verbs are connected by *and*, and one of these is properly and logically *explanatory* of the other, this explanatory Verb is in *Latin* expressed by the *Participle*. Again if, in English, two Finite Verbs are connected by *but*, and one of these is *properly* and *logically explanatory* of the other, the explanatory Verb is in *Latin* expressed by the Participle. The connection of two Finite Verbs in *Latin* by *et* (*and*) and *sed* (*but*) implies coördination not only in form but in sense and *relative importance*. Neither is *explanatory* of, nor *subordinate* to the other.

(a) The two Verbs coördinated by *and* or *but* may, in English, be independently stated. In this case the logically *explanatory* and *subordinate* Verb is, in Latin, expressed by the *Participle*, while the other, which is the leading Verb, is expressed in the Indicative.

Ex.—*Ibi in turba ictus Remus cecidit*, Liv., I, 7, 1 (*Remus was struck and fell*). *Declaratus rex Numa de templo descendit*, Liv., I, 18, 10 (= *Numa was declared king and came down*, etc). *Profectus Politorium, urbem Latinorum, vi cepit*, Liv., I, 33, 1. *Excelsa et alta sperare complexa virum iubet*, Liv., I, 34, 9. *In locum inferiorem delectus concidit*, Caes., B. G., V, 44. *Ille perlectam (epistolam) in conventu militum recitat*, Caes., B. G., V, 48. *Oppidani comprehensos eos ad Caesarem perduxerunt*, Caes., B. G., VII, 13. *Faucibus portus navem onerariam submersam obiecit*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 39. *Comprehensos Volscos Romam duxere*, Liv., II, 22, 4. *Pausanias accusatus capitis absolvitur*, Nep., Paus., 2 (= *was accused of a capital crime but acquitted*).

(b) The two Verbs coördinated by *and* or *but* may, in English, be dependently stated (that is, with an explanation, or in some form of *dependency*). In this case, also, the logically explanatory and subordinate one of the two Verbs is, in Latin, expressed by the *Participle*, while the other, which is *relatively* the leading Verb, is expressed in the Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Miltiades classe Chersonesum profectus cum accessisset Lemnum, illi responderunt*, Nep., Milt., 1 (= *when Miltiades had set out and reached*). *Ut (Result) ex tumultu pila intercepta remitterent*, Caes., B. G., II, 27 (= *so that they intercepted and hurled back*). *Id esse consilium Caesaris, ut hos homines in Britanniam transductos necaret*, Caes., B. G., V, 6. *Cum Romanus exercitus instructus quod inter Palatinum Capitolinumque collem campi est complexisset non prius descenderunt in aequum, quam, etc.*, Liv., I, 12, 1. *Consules in agrum Sabinum profecti cum ita afflixissent opes hostium, etc.*, Liv., II, 16, 6.

REM. 1. While of the two coördinated Verbs that one remains the Finite Verb, in Latin, which expresses the *leading* idea, and the other, which is subordinate and explanatory, is expressed by the *Participle*, the case of the *Participle* and the form of the *Participle* are determined by the context and the leading Verb.

It is important to note, as may be gathered from the preceding examples, that the *Passive Participle* is translated by the *Active Verb* when its action is done by the Subject of the leading Verb.

Ex.—*Hostes pila intercepta remiserunt* (= *the enemy intercepted and hurled back*). *Milites Philippum consalutatum regem appellant*, Curt., X, 22. *Idem classem devictam cepit*, Nep., Cim., 2. *Quos consul illectos ad prodicionem domum dimittebat*, Sal., Iug., 47.

55. From the *Participle* in its *Predicate Attributive* office spring the

adverbial and other descriptive renderings of it. The various terms of *description* or *explanation* by which the Participle may be rendered do not belong to it as a Part of Speech, but proceed from the relation of *Predication* which its substantive element bears to the Subject. The exact character of the explanation furnished by the Participle must be determined by the *context*. The explanatory phrases into which the Participle as a Predicate attributive may be resolved and by which it may be translated are:

I. The *Relative* with the *Finite Verb* either Indicative or Subjunctive. The Mood is, of course, the Indicative, outside of *Oratio Obligua*, when the resolution of the Participle suggests the *ordinary Relative who, which*, etc. When it suggests the *Consecutive* or *Characteristic Relative* the Mood is the Subjunctive—that is, the Participle may be resolved by the Relative with either the *Indicative* or *Subjunctive*.

Ex.—**Forte praetervolans** (= **qui praetervolabat**) **corvus glebam, quam unguibus ferebat, subito amisit**, Curt., IV, 26. **Statuunt neminem esse potiorum quam Abdalonium quemdam ob inopiam suburbanum hortum exigua colentem** (= **qui coleret** (O. O.), **qui colebat** (O. R.)) **stipe**, Curt., IV, 3. **Hortatur Curionem Cn. Domitius, cum paucis equitibus circumsticiens** (= **qui circumstiebat**), **ut**, etc., Caes., B. Civ., II, 42. **Nonne proditi** (= **qui proditi estis**) **per illum Caesaris beneficio estis conservati?** Caes., B. Civ., II, 32. **Plurimum in amicitia amicorum bene suadentium** (= **qui bene suadeant**) **valeat auctoritas**, Cic., Am., XIII, 44. **Se enim eum esse dixit, qui ad officium peccantes** (**qui peccarent** in O. R.) **redire cogeret**, Nep., Ages., 5. **Mederis erroribus, sed implorantibus** (= **iis qui implorent**) **hanc astruis laudem, ne coegisse videaris**, Plin. Min., Pan., 46.

(a) If the Relative in the *resolved* (English) phrase refers to a Substantive with a Demonstrative (*this, that*), or to a Demonstrative alone, in neither case is the Demonstrative (*hic, is, ille*, etc.) expressed in the Latin Participial rendering of the phrase when the Demonstrative is *general* in its reference.

Ex.—**Nec deerant sermones senium atque avaritiam Galbae increpantium**, Tac., H., I, 5. (**Eorum... increpantium** would be a definite reference.) **Id comitatem bonitatemque faventes vocabant, quod**, etc., Tac., H., I, 52.

REM. 1. If the *Demonstrative* in the *resolved* phrase is fixed by the context and definite in the mind of the writer it is, in Latin, expressed with the Participle.

Ex.—**In eum haec gloriantem Romulus impetum facit**, Liv., I, 12, 9. **Ibi ei carpento sedenti cum uxore aquila demissa pileum aufert**, Liv., I, 34, 8. **Haec eum haud falsa memorantem populus Romanus regnare iussit**, Liv., I, 35, 6.

**Hunc tu ignorantem, an sedeat, putas scire an vivat an videat, an otiosus sit?** Sen., Brev. Vit., XII, 7.

REM. 2. In such sentences the Relative is not excluded.

Ex.—**Credite iis, qui illam (virtutem) secuti magnum quiddam ipsos sequi clamant,** Sen., Gall., Vita. Beat., XXVI, 7.

(b) If in the *resolved* (English) phrase the Antecedent is the Demonstrative as Subject (Nominative) or one of the indefinite designations, *nemo, multi, pauci, alii*, etc., the Relative with the Finite Verb is the Latin statement, as a rule, and the Subjunctive with the Relative when this is *Consecutive* or *Characteristic*.

Ex.—**Quae tamen sola mirantur atque expriment hi, qui se antiquos oratores vocant,** Tac., Or., 23.

Ex.—**Nemo erat qui memoriam rerum Romanorum teneret,** Cic., Brut., XCH, 322. **Sunt multi, qui omnino Graecas non ament litteras,** Cic., Ac., II, 2, 5.

(c) The English phrase *so-called* is in Latin expressed by the Relative and a Finite Verb, not by the Participle, as *qui (quae, quod) vocatur (dicitur, appellatur, nominatur) vocabatur (dicebatur, appellabatur, nominabatur)*, Passively expressed; *quem (quam, quod) vocant (appellant, etc.), vocabant, (appellabant, etc.)*, Actively expressed.

Ex.—**Sed vide, ne plus profutura sit ratio ordinaria quam haec, quae nunc vulgo breviarium dicitur, olim cum Latine loqueremur, summarium vocabatur,** Sen., Ep., IV, 10, 1. **Videmusne apud quos eorum ludorum, qui gymnici nominantur, magnus honos sit, nullum ab iis qui. . . devitari doleorem?** Cic., Tusc., II, 26, 62. **Cohortes suae, quae colonicae appellabantur,** Caes., B. Civ., II, 19. **Caelestia arma, quae ancilia appellantur,** Liv., I, 20, 4. **Locus, qui nunc Pila Horatia appellatur,** Liv., I, 26, 10. **Templum, quod Tamfanae vocabant,** Tac., Ann., I, 51. **Scholastici, qui rhetores vocantur,** Tac., Or., 35. **Sed expetuntur, quos rhetores vocant,** Tac., Or., 30. **Insulae, quae Cyclades nominantur,** Nep., Milt., 2.

(d) The phrases *mentioned above (the aforementioned)* and like phrases are reproduced in Latin by the *Relative* and *Finite Verb*, as a rule, not by the Participle which belongs chiefly to Late Latin.

Ex.—**Atque eum, quem supra demonstravimus, numerum expleverat,** Caes., B. Civ., III, 4 (not *supra demonstratum*). **Animadversum est vitium munitionis, quod supra demonstratum est,** Caes., B. Civ., III, 63. **Sed fama iam praecurrerat, quam supra docuimus,** Caes., B. Civ., III, 80. **Observabatur praeter illa quae supra dixi causae difficultas,** Plin. Min., II, 11, 12. **Sculptura lignum, ebur, marmor, praeterea quae supra dixi, complectitur,** Quint. II, 21, 9.

REM. 1. Compare *supra* with *Participle*.

Ex.—**Interiere et Caturiges Insubrum exsules et Spina supra dicta,** Plin.,



Mai., III, 125. *Insulae eius simul cum oppidis praeter supra significatas Ab-sortium, Arba, etc.*, Plin. Mai., III, 140. *Incipit a confluente supra dicto*, Plin. Mai., III, 149.

II. The Participle is resolved by an explanatory clause giving the *means* and *procuring cause* of the *leading action*. Here the Participle may be translated by *in that* or *by*.

Ex.—*Homerus Laërtem lenientem desiderium, quod capiebat e filio, colentem (by cultivating, in that he cultivated) agrum et eum stercorantem facit*, Cic., Sen., XV, 54. *Ego recreavi affictos animos bonorum, unumquemque confirmans, excitans*, Cic., Att., I, 16, 8. *Is patrem patratum Sp. Furium fecit verbena caput capillosque tangens*, Liv., I, 24, 6. *Verebatur, ne uno loco manens, equos militares perderet*, Nep., Eum., 5. *Hortum steriles herbas eligens Abdalonymus repurgabat*, Curt., IV, 4. *Procumbens venerari me saepe voluisti*, Curt., V, 9.

III. The Participle is resolved as a *conditional* relation, that is, as a Protasis (*si* and a Finite Verb). The form of the Protasis represented by the Participle is decided by the context and expressed Apodosis.

Ex.—*Quare talis improborum consensio supplicio omni vindicanda est, ut ne quis concessum putet amicum vel bellum patriae inferentem (= si inferat) sequi*, Cic., Am., XII, 43. *Non igitur potestis voluptate omnia dirigentes (= si dirigitis) retinere virtutem*, Cic., Fin., II, 22, 71. *Cuius temerariam linguam probra dicentis mihi diutius tuli, quam ille eadem me dicentem (= si dicerem) tulisset*, Curt., VIII, 26. *Quas victi (= si victi essent) ab hostibus poenas metuerant, eas ipsi volentes pependere*, Sal., Jug., 76. *Civilis adversantibus (civitatis) bellum inferre statuit*, Tac., H., IV, 66.

IV. The Participle is resolved as a *concessive* relation, that is, by a clause introduced by *although* and a Finite Verb. The form of the verb in the resolved phrase is decided by the context.

Ex.—*Atque hoc ipso tempore tibi paene minitanti nobis (though you almost threaten, etc.) per litteras hoc rescribo atque respondeo*, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 10. *Caesar ad eum legatos cum his mandatis mittit, quoniam tanto suo populi-que Romani beneficio affectus, hanc sibi populo-que Romano gratiam referret, ut, etc.*, Caes., B. G., I, 35. *Cum his Adiatunus, cum vehementer ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen uti eadem deditionis condicione uteretur, ab Crasso impetravit*, Caes., B. G., III, 22. *Qui territi, tamen spem retinendi Aegyptum non omiserunt*, Curt., IV, 5. *Ut oculus, sic animus, se non videns, alia cernit*, Cic., Tusc., I, 27, 67. *Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum cupientes tenere nequeamus*, Cic., De Or., II, 58, 235.

V. The Participle is resolved by a phrase representing the relations of *time*, as, *when*, *while*, *after that*, and a Finite Verb.

Ex.—*Discedentem vero ex contione universi cohortantur*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 33. *Scipionem properantem sequi litterae sunt consecutae a Favonio*, Caes.,

B. Civ., III, 36. **Proiecti** (= after, etc.) **ad terram fientes ab eo salutem petiverunt**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 98. **Cyrus apud Xenophontem eo sermone, quem moriens habuit, negat**, etc., Cic., Sen., IX, 30. **Dionysius tyrannus Syracusis expulsus** (after, etc.) **Corinthei pueros docuit**, Cic., Tusc., III, 12, 27. **Aranti Quintio Cincinnato nuntiatum est eum dictatorem esse factum**, Cic., Sen., XVI, 56.

REM. 1. The Present Participle is resolved by a clause which can hardly be interpreted as *temporal*, but as giving the circumstances under which the leading action occurs, approaching the idea of *manner*.

Ex.—**Bello Sabino perfecto Tarquinius triumphans Romam redit**, Liv., I, 38, 3.

VI. The Participle is resolved by a phrase representing the *reason*, the *cause*—*since*, *as* (*because*).

Ex.—**Dionysius cultros metuens tonsorios candente carbone sibi adurebat capillum**, Cic., Off., II, 7, 25. **Massilienses omnibus defessi malis, rei frumentariae ad summam inopiam adducti, his navali proelio superati, sese dedere constituunt**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 22. **Senescere igitur civitatem otio ratus undique materiam excitandi belli quaerebat**, Liv., I, 22, 2. **Timens consul, ne privato sibi eadem illa acciderent, abdicavit se consulatu**, Liv., II, 2, 9.

VII. The *Future Active Participle* is resolved by an explanatory clause of *time* (*when*), *concession* (*although*), *condition* (*if*), also by the Relative with a Finite Verb, and occasionally by a *causal clause*. The *periphrastic sense* of the Participle is retained—rarely that of a *pure future*.

Ex.—**Putas utile dari tibi argumenta, per quae intellegas nobilem equum ne fallaris empturus** (*when going to buy*), Sen., Ep., XV, 3, 67. **Bibere generaturos** (perhaps the Relative) **iubet**, Plin. Mai., XXIV, 166. **Rempublicam hortatur omnia experiatur, honestius in servitutem casura quam itura** (*since, etc.*), Sen., Ep., XV, 3, 70. **Hi iudices Clodiani a senatu petierant praesidium, quod non erat nisi damnaturis** (Relative) **necessarium**, Sen., Ep., XVI, 2, 6. **Cum primus nos nuntius acerbi funeris perculit, cum tenemus corpus e complexu nostro in ignem transiturum** (Relative with pure future) Sen., Ep., XVI, 4, 18. **Nullo enim tempore conquiescet et exspectatione venturi** (Relative with pure future) **praesentia amittet**, Sen., Ep., XVI, 3, 6. **Oportet utrumque valere, ut et ille prodesse possit et hic profuturo** (Consecutive Relative, etc.) **idonea materia sit**, Sen., Ep., XVIII, 6, 7.

(a) A Participle substituting a phrase with a Conjunctival explanation admits an expressed Demonstrative Antecedent when representing a relation *well defined*, *clearly known*, and hence when *emphatic*.

Ex.—**Itaque cognita Pompeii profectione concursantibus illis** (*when, etc.*) **ex tectis significabant**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 28. **Astitit ei quiescenti** (*when, etc.*) **Drusi Neronis effigies**, Plin. Min., III, 5, 4. **Illam (argillam) Gallias Britan-**

**niasque locupletantem** (*since, as it, etc.*) **cum cura dici convenit**, Plin. Mai., XVII, 43.

(b) The Particle *nisi* is associated with a Participle representing an explanatory clause when the leading member of the sentence is *negative* or *quasi-negative*. This association may best be explained, perhaps, by the ellipsis of the leading Predicate with *nisi*.

Ex.—**Ista non possunt ad alterum nisi alteri erepta transferri**, Sen., Ira., III, 34, 3 (= **nisi (possunt transferri) alteri erepta**). **Quaedam non nisi decepta sanantur**, Sen., Ira., III, 39, 4 (= **nisi sanantur decepta**). **Quae usquam provincia, quae castra sunt, nisi maculata?** Tac., H., I, 37 (= **nisi sunt maculata?**). **Nullus cunctationi locus est in eo consilio, quod non potest laudari, nisi peractum**, Tac., H., I, 38 (= **nisi potest laudari peractum**).

(c) The *Predicate attributive* sense of the Participle is *varied* by the association with it of particles which express the several modifications of its Predicate attribute meaning. These particles are *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *quasi*, *quippe*, *tamquam*, *velut*, *ut*, *utpote*, *antequam*. In this association *ut* generally expresses the *subjective* ground of the *writer*, or *actor* indicated by the context. In some cases the force of the Particle is *Conjunctional* rather than *Adverbial*, and may be explained by Ellipsis of the leading Predicate. The association of the Particles with the Participle obtains *chiefly* in Late Latin.

Ex.—**Armati nullum ante finem pugnae quam morientes fecerunt** (Livy) = **fecerunt nullum finem pugnae antequam morientes (fecerunt)**. **Alii censebant etsi aliquo accepto detrimento, tamen summa exercitus salva locum, quem petant, capi posse**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 67. **Quamvis iurato metuam tibi credere testi**, Iuv., V, 5. **Quamvis confusus**, Iuv., III, 1. **Corellium summa ratio ad hoc consilium compulsi quamquam plurimas vivendi causas habentem**, Plin. Min., I, 12, 3. **Impellit uti tamquam seam visens domum eat**, Sal., Iug., 12. **Ea (avaritia) quasi venenis malis imbuta corpus animumque effeminat**, Sal., Cat., 11. **Illi velut affixi curulibus suis, etc.**, Plin. Min., Pan., 71. **Forte et numero et virtute, utpote lecti utrimque, haud impares aequis viribus per aliquot horas pugnarunt**, Liv., XXXI, 33, 9. **Neque illis iudicium aut veritas, quippe eodem die diversa pari certamine postulaturis**, Tac., H., I, 32. **Hostes carpere multifariam vires Romanas, ut non suffecturas ad omnia, aggressi sunt**, Liv., III, 5, 1. (*Ut non suffecturas*, ground (reason) of the *hostes*.)

(d) To be carefully noted is the *Present Participle* with *esse*. In this case the substantive element of the verb is treated as an adjective and predicatively attributed to the subject. The Participle thus occurs, occasionally, in all periods of the language.

Ex.—**Senectus est operosa et semper agens aliquid et moliens**, Cic., Sen., VIII, 26. **Erit vera ratio sensibus insita et capiens inde principia**, Sen., Gal.,

Vit. Beat., VIII, 4. **Quae, si vis verum, connexa sunt, non cohaerentia**, Sen., Ben., V, 1, 2.

REM. 1. Two Participles in a Predicate attributive sense are sometimes associated without *et* with the same substantive. It is, however, better to change the construction and to express one of the Participles, readily suggested by the context, by a Finite Verb, thus :

Ex.—**Ciceronem legentem inventum salutavi**. Better **Ciceronem, quem legentem inveni, salutavi**. Cf. Plin. Mai., XXXII, 70 (**pectunculi salsi triti**) ; Plin., XXXII, 93 (**hippocampi tostii sumpti**) ; Plin., XXXII, 128 (**tritae illitae**).

56. With Verbs of *Perception* and of *Conception*, as *videre, audire, sentire, spectare, animadvertere, invenire, cernere, cognoscere*, etc., of *Representation in art*, or by *word*, as *exhibere, facere, fingere, inducere, formare*, etc., an object is defined by the Present Participle as in a *state or condition*, or as *doing* the action indicated by the Participle.

Ex.—**Pueros Lacedaemone barbaros vidisti in arena excipientes gravissimas plagas**, Cic., Tusc., II, 20, 46. **Solonem versibus gloriantem videmus**, Cic., Sen., VIII, 26. **Non audivit ille draconem loquentem, sed est visus audire**, Cic., Div., II, 68, 141. **Aspice M. Catonem sacro illi pectori manus admoventem**, Sen., Ep., VII, 5, 13. **Lacrimantem eum ac metuentem rex conspexerat**, Curt., IX, 22. **Cedens animadvertit quemdam scribentem**, Nep., Arist., 1. **Magni fuere viri, qui sidera crediderunt ignem alienum pascentia**, Sen., N. Q., VII, 1, 7. **Hos venientes T. Herminius conspicatus**, Liv., II, 20, 8. **Multo aliter ac sperarat rempublicam se habentem cognovit**, Nep., Hamil., 2. **Maternum sedentem et librum intra manus habentem deprehendimus**, Tac., Or., 3. **Laelium et Scipionem facimus admirantes, quod, etc.**, Cic., Sen., I, 3. **Natura, quae volucres huc et illuc vagantes efficit**, Cic., Div., II, 38, 80. **Dicaearchus Pherecraten quemdam disserentem inducit**, Cic., Tusc., I, 10, 21. **Iubebat eos qui audiebant secum ipsos cogitare voluptatem regali in solio sedentem**, Cic., Fin., II, 21, 69. **Ut (Result) (eam) lingua lambentem pueros magister regii pecoris invenerit**, Liv., I, 4, 6. **Varie formare vultus respicientes suspicientesve vel despicientes**, Plin. Mai., XXXV, 56. **Fertur Zeuxis pinxisse puerum uvas ferentem**, Plin. Mai., XXXV, 66. **Apelles pinxit Alexandrum Magnum fulmen tenentem**, Plin. Mai., XXXV, 92. **Fecit Antigonum thoracatum cum equo incedentem**, Plin. Mai., XXXV, 96.

REM. 1. In this connection is to be observed *esse* with the Present Participle, presenting the state or condition indicated by the Participle.

Ex.—**Est (= there is) Eupompi victor certamine gymnico palmam tenens**, Plin. Mai., XXXV, 75. **Fuit (= there was) in eodem Capitolio Victoria quadrigam in sublime rapiens**, Plin. Mai., XXXV, 108. **Huius erat Minerva spectantem spectans quacumque aspiceretur**, Plin. Mai., XXXV, 120.

(a) The verbs referred to (56) require the Perfect Passive Parti-

ciple when the object is presented as having suffered the action and in the condition indicated by it.

Ex.—*Eum modo decoratum ovantemque victoria incedentem vidistis*, Liv., I., 26, 10. *Nutrix animadvertit puerum dormientem circumplicatum serpentis amplexu*, Cic., Div., I, 36, 79. *Nunc video illum circumventum, me desertum*, Cic., Fam., V, 1, 1. *Naves invenit refectas*, Caes., B. G., V, 23. *Captam suam urbem videbant*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 12. *In litore relictam navem conspexit*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 23.

(b) The relation of a *Present Passive Participle* with the verbs referred to (56) must be expressed by the *Present Infinitive*, as there is no *Present Passive Participle* in Latin. The Infinitive in this office is only an approximate statement of the idea to be expressed, but from the lack of the *Present Passive Participle*, it is a necessity.

Ex.—*Caesar, cum suos vulnerari* (wounded, being wounded) *videret, recipere se iussit*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 44. *Numquam audiivi in Epicuri schola Lycurgum, Solonem, Miltiadem, nominari*, Cic., Fin., II, 21, 67. *Vir bonus non irascitur si caedi patrem suum viderit, si rapi matrem?* Sen., Ira., I, 12, 1. *Interrumpi agmen vidit*, Liv., XXI, 33, 9. *Postquam praeferri secures videntur*, Liv., II, 18, 8.

(c) The difference between the Accusative and Infinitive and the Participle in connection with the verbs named (56) was not uniformly observed in early Latin.

Ex.—*Eam vidit ire* (cf. *euntem*) *e ludo fidicinio domum*, Pl., Rud., Prol., 43. *Illanc concriminatus est meus conservus, se eam vidisse hic cum alieno ausculiarier*, Pl., M. G., 242. Cf. *Se vidisse eam ausculantem cum alieno adolescentulo*, Pl., M. G., 262.

57. The Perfect Passive Participle with a verb of *causing* or *procuring*, as *dare*, *reddere*, *curare*, *facere*, expresses the *speedy* and *energetic* accomplishment of the action indicated by the *Participle*.

Ex.—*Caligula Lolliam Paulinam brevi missam fecit*, Suet., Cal., 25. *Stratas legiones Latinorum dabo*, Liv., VIII, 6, 6. *Ego hanc mactatam victimam legatorum Manibus dabo*, Liv., IV, 19, 3. *Hoc tibi inuentum curabo et mecum adductum tuum Pamphilum*, Ter., And., 684. *Hoc ego tibi profecto effectum reddam*, Ter., And., 703.

58. The State or Condition *desired* and *not desired* for an object is expressed by the Perfect Passive Participle with verbs, *velle*, *nolle*, *cupere*.

Ex.—*Is qui patriam exstinctam cupit*, Cic., Fin., IV, 24, 66. *Huic mandes, si quid recte curatum uelis*, Ter., Ad., 372. *Te video nostrae familiae tam ex animo factum velle*, Ter., Ad., 918. *Di me servatum cupiunt*, Pl., Rud., 1151.

Magis non factum possum uelle quam opera experiar persequi, Pl., Capt., 423. Democritum laudatum a ceteris, ab hoc, qui eum unum secutus esset, nollem vituperatum, Cic., Fin., I, 6, 21. Cf. Plin. Min., II, 9, 3 (adiutum cuperem iuvenem). Bellum ego populo Romano neque feci neque factum umquam volui, Sal., Jug., 110. Bocchus, si ambobus consultum et ratam pacem vellet, daret operam ut, etc., Sal., Jug., 112.

59. With Verbs of *Thinking* and *Feeling*, the Nominative of the Perfect Passive Participle, agreeing with the *subject*, instead of the Accusative with the Infinitive, is strictly poetic and not to be imitated.

Ex.—Sensit medios delapsus in hostes, Verg., Aen., II, 377. Cf. Tac., H., IV, 55 (Classicus hostis populi Romani quam socius iactabat).

60. The Participle when negative or when associated with a negative, in its Predicate attributive relation, may be best resolved by a phrase introduced by *without*.

Ex.—Animus se non videns alia cernit, Cic., Tusc., I, 27, 67. Portus, stationes litora que omnia classibus occupavit hieme in navibus excubans neque ullum laborem aut munus despiciens, Caes., B. Civ., III, 8. Fuerunt qui dicerent nos esse, quos rerum natura nescientes ferat, Sen., N. Q., VII, 2, 3. Magni aestimo dignitati eius aliquid astruere inopinantis, necientis, immo etiam fortasse nolentis, Plin. Min., III., 2, 3. Epicurus non erubescens voluptates persequitur omnes nominatim, Cic., N. D., I, 40, 111.

(a) As the Participle with a *negative* or *involving a negative*, so may the Adjective with a *negative* or *implying a negative* often be best translated by a phrase introduced by *without*.

Ex.—Equites missi nocte iter conficiunt imprudentes atque inopinantes hostes aggrediuntur, Caes., B. Civ., II, 38. Suspiscatus fore, ut postero die invitus dimicare cogeretur, Caes., B. Civ., III, 37. Hostes inermes se porta proripiunt, Caes., B. Civ., II, 11. Horum pericula non potestis spectare securi, Sen., Ep., IX, 3, 22. At il inscil quid in Aeduis gereretur consultabant, etc., Caes., B. G., VII, 77. Cf. Hic quam volet Epicurus iocetur, homo non aptissimus ad iocandum minimeque resipiens patriam, numquam me movebit, Cic., N. D., II, 17, 46.

(b) It should be borne in mind that the Adjective is not only used as an Attributive, but that as a Predicate Attributive it may be resolved by the same explanatory clauses as the Participle. Hence, *vir prudens* = the prudent man, the man *who* is prudent, the man *if* he is prudent, *since* (*when, while, though*) he is prudent, etc.

61. In the Combination of the Perfect Passive Participle with a Tense (Present, Imperfect—rarely the Aorist) of *habere, tenere, possidere*, the *state* or *condition* realized and *effected* and thus presented by the Participle is asserted and emphasized as a possession by the verb

*habere*, etc. That is, the object in a *given state or condition* expressed by the Participle is presented as *possessed or held*. There is thus furnished a stronger Tense relation than the simple *Perfect* or *Pluperfect* Active of the verbs *habere*, *tenere*, and *possidere*. The full and proper conception, however, is the *having*, or *holding*, or *possessing* of an object *brought* or reduced to the *condition expressed* by the Participle.

Ex.—**Compertum habeo**, Sal., Cat., 58 (= **comperi et habeo**, stronger than **comperi**). In Asia pecunias magnas collocatas habent, Cic., Imp. Pomp., VII, 18. Cf. **Collocaverunt et habent** (stronger than **collocaverunt**). **Eiusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia**, Caes., B. G., VI, 16. **Rosciil patrimonium domesticil praedones vi ereptum possident**, Cic., Rosc. Am., VI, 15. **Caesar Lentulum quaestorem cum legione nona positum habebat**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 62. (Cf. **posuerat**.) **(Pons) quem oppido castrisque coniunctum habebat**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 40. **Fidem eius suspectam habui**, Curt., VI, 38. **Antiquitatem diligenter habuit cognitam**, Nep., Att., 18. **Locum nobilitas praesidiis firmatum atque obvallatum tenebat**, Cic., Leg. Agr., II, 1, 3. **Viderunt nostras legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri**, Caes., B. G., II, 24. **Dixit se prope iam effectum habere**, Caes., B. G., VII, 29.

(a) The use of the Perfect Passive Participle in the statement of the relation of *Result* is not only very rare, but grammatically incorrect, and not to be imitated.

Ex.—**Delphines agitata robora pulsant**, Ov., Met., I, 303. Here *agitata* = *ita—ut agitentur*.

## The Ablative Absolute.

62. The Ablative Absolute is an explanatory and hence a subordinate clause. The *Subject* of the clause is, in Latin, expressed in the Ablative, the *Predicate* is represented by a *Participle* in the Ablative. Instead of a Participle a *Predicate Apposition (Substantive)* and a *Predicate Attributive*, also in the Ablative, occur.

63. The exact character of the explanation expressed by the Ablative Absolute is determined by its relation to the principal or leading clause, restricted, however, to an *Ablative* sense—

- (a) Of *Time* (*when, while, after*).
- (b) Of *Cause* (*since, as*).
- (c) Of *Ground* (*by*).
- (d) Of *Condition* (*if*).
- (e) Of *Concession* (*although*).
- (f) Of *Means* (*by*).
- (g) Of *Manner*, or
- (h) Of *General circumstances under which*.

I. That these various relations spring from the *Case* rather than from the *Participle* appears from the fact that all of them obtain when the *Ablative Absolute* is formed by an *Appositive Substantive* or by a *Predicate Attributive* instead of the *Participle*.

II. As the *Ablative Absolute* is explanatory, it is resolved in translation by an explanatory clause introduced by one of the explanatory terms *when, while, etc., (time); since, as, etc., (cause); etc.*

III. The kind of action in the *Ablative Absolute* clause is denoted by the *Participle*; the time to which the action is referred is decided by the context. In the absence of the *Participle* a *Tense of esse*, determined by the context, is supplied in the translation. Hence, the General Rules for the translation of the *Ablative Absolute* clause may be stated as follows:

IV. It is introduced by one of the terms stated, *when, as, since, etc.*, to be decided by the context. The *Participle* is translated as a *Finite Verb* in the *Tense indicated* by the *Participle*, the *Tense* to be decided by the context. The *Substantive* in the *Ablative* is translated as the *Subject* of the *Finite Verb*. When there is no *Participle* in the *Ablative Absolute* clause, the *Predicate* in the translation is supplied by a tense of *esse* determined by the context.

Ex.—(a) *Time*.—**Haec ferme Romulo regnante domi militiaeque gesta**, Liv., I, 15, 6. (*Romulo regnante* = *when Romulus was reigning*.) **Dimisso consilio contionem advocat militum**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 32.

(b) *Clause*.—**(Ferrum) neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commode pugnare poterant**, Caes., B. G., I, 25. **Consules cum per senatum intercedentibus tribunis nihil agi posset, consilia principum domi habebant**, Liv., IV, 6, 6.

(c) *Ground*.—**Et ille annuentibus ac vocantibus suis favore multorum addito animo evadit**, Liv., I, 12, 10. (*Annuentibus suis* furnish the ground of *addito animo*.)

(d) *Condition*.—**Maximas virtutes iacere omnes necesse est, voluptate dominante**, Cic., Fin., II, 35, 117. **Negabant fato assensionibus adhibito necessitatem ab his removeri posse**, Cic., Fat., XVII, 40.

(e) *Concession*.—**Scipio detrimentis quibusdam circa montem Amanum acceptis imperatorem se appellaverat**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 31. **Tribuni crescente in dies fama belli dilectum impediunt**, Liv., IV, 6, 6.

(f) *Means* (instrumentality).—**L. Torquatus conatus portis clausis oppidum defendere**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 11. **Bellum perficietur, si urgemus obsessos, si non ante abscedimus quam spei nostrae finem captis Veiis imposuerimus**, Liv., V, 4, 10.



(g) *Manner*.—**Animadvertit Caesar Sequanos tristes capite demisso terram intueri**, *Caes.*, *B. G.*, *I.*, 32. **Acie triplici instructa ad eum locum venit**, *Caes.*, *B. G.*, *I.*, 49.

(h) *General circumstances under which*.—**Quantum iam diem sine pabulo retentis iumentis, aquae, lignorum, frumenti inopia colloquium petunt**, *Caes.*, *B. Civ.*, *I.*, 84. **Una valle non magna interiecta suas uterque copias instruit**, *Caes.*, *B. Civ.*, *II.*, 27. **Galli legatos ad Caesarem mittunt et petentibus Remis de deditione ut conservarentur impetrant**, *Caes.*, *B. G.*, *II.*, 12.

V. So the Ablative Absolute is formed with an *Appositive Substantive* and a *Predicate Attributive* instead of the Participle. This form of the Ablative Absolute is resolved and *translated*, as with the participial element, by *when*, *since*, etc., *with a tense of esse*. The Appositive Substantives most frequently occurring are *adiutor*, *adiutrix*, *auctor*, *comes*, *dux*, *consul*, *interpres*, *imperator*, *iudex*, *magister*, *magistra*, *praetor*, *praeceptor*, *praeceptrix*, *rex*, *testis*, etc.

Ex.—**Ianus clausus fuit, T. Manlio Consule**, *Liv.*, *I.*, 19, 3. (In the Consulship of T. Manlius, when T. Manlius was Consul.) **Quibus adiutoribus regem aggressus impellit, ut**, etc., *Sal.*, *Iug.*, 80. **Tum Horatius, auctore Tullo, provoco, inquit**, *Liv.*, *I.*, 26, 8. **Dareus paucis fugae comitibus ad Lycum animum contenderat**, *Curt.*, *IV.*, 61. **Profiscuntur Pisandro duce**, *Nep.*, *Con.*, 4. **Imperatore Epaminonda, hic fuit dux delectae manus**, *Nep.*, *Pel.*, 4. **Ab isdem, teste te, peto ut**, etc., *Plin. Min.*, *VI.*, 11, 4. **Hic Tito fratre suo censore... elapsus est**, *Cic.*, *Sen.*, *XII.*, 42. **Legatos ad Dumnorigem mittunt, ut, eo deprecatore, a Sequanis impetrarent**, *Caes.*, *B. G.*, *I.*, 9. **Pater meus, inquit, Hamilcar, puerulo me, Iovi optimo Maximo hostias immolavit**, *Nep.*, *Han.*, 2. **Frigus formica quidam expavere magistra**, *Iuv.*, *VI.*, 361. **His magistratibus legati Carthaginienses Romam venerunt**, *Nep.*, *Han.*, 7.

**Re integra primo incendendum Avaricum, post deserendum censuerat**, *Caes.*, *B. G.*, *VII.*, 30. **Quibus rebus perfectum est, ut altissimis fluminibus atque impeditissimis itineribus nullum acciperet incommodum**, *Caes.*, *B. Civ.*, *III.*, 77. **Ostendit virum fortem posse invita fortuna vivere**, *Sen.*, *Ep.*, *XVIII.*, 1, 29. **Tullus ad Feroniae fanum, mercatu frequenti, negotiatores Romanos comprehensos querebatur**, *Liv.*, *I.*, 30, 5. **Dixerunt Romani nominis id dedecus fore, si Anci regis virili stirpe salva advenis regnum Romae pateret**, *Liv.*, *I.*, 40, 3.

REM. 1. For the Gerund in the Ablative Absolute cf. 37, I, a.

Ex.—(Moles) **durant tamen a Tarquinio Prisco inexpugnabiles, non omitte memorabili exemplo**, etc., *Plin. Mai.*, *XXXVI.*, 106.

REM. 2. To be observed is the Ablative Absolute with the Participle *exceptus* translated *excepting*, *with the exception of*. While this is the Ablative giving the *circumstances under which*, it is more exactly and specifically the *restrictive Ablative*.

Ex.—**Vos hortor, ut ita virtutem locetis, sine qua amicitia esse non potest**,

ut, ea excepta, nihil amicitia praestabilius putetis, Cic., Am., XXVII, 104. Quae ordinabuntur, uno, ut ego censeo, excepto, ne a potentissimis ad levissima decrescat oratio, Quint., V, 12, 14. Quo pulchrior alter non fuit, excepto Laurentis corpore Turni, Quint., VIII, 4, 6.

REM. 3. According to a statement already made the Ablative Absolute with a Participle or Adjective and a negative or involving a negative is best translated by a phrase introduced by *without*.

Ex.—Timoleon tantum habebat amorem omnium Siculorum ut, nullo recusante, regnum obtineret, Nep., Tim., 3. In bello civili nihil accidit non praedicente me, Cic., Fam., VI, 6, 6. Accessit ut Caesare ignaro magister equitum constitueretur, Cic., Philip., II, 25, 62.

64. The *Neuter of the Perfect Passive Participle* and the *Neuter Adjective* occur alone in the Ablative Absolute. In either case the sense of a Subject is *suggested* by the Context or *involved* in the Participle or Adjective.

Ex.—In Erindis transgressu multum certato, pervicit Vardanes, Tac., Ann., XI, 10. (Here *multum certato* = *cum multum certatum esset* = *multis certaminibus commissis*.) Et multum invicem disceptato, Monobazus Adiabenus in diem posterum testis adhibetur, Tac., Ann., XV, 14. Cum nondum palam facto (= cum res nondum palam facta esset), vivi mortuique promiscue complorarentur, Liv., XXII, 55, 3. Apparet duas causas esse arcus, solem nubemque, quia nec sereno umquam fit nec nubilo, Sen., N. Q., I, 3, 14 (= nec cum serenum est = nec cum coelum serenum est, etc.) Quare et sereno tonat? Sen., N. Q., II, 18, 1. Tranquillo enim, ut aiunt, quilibet gubernator est, Sen., Ep., XII, 3, 34.

65. The *Neuter of the Perfect Passive Participle*, as also the *Neuter of an Adjective*, occur in the Ablative Absolute with a *Phrase*, as the *Accusative with the Infinitive*, an *Indirect Question*, a *clause introduced by ut (ne)* and by *quod* (= *that, the fact that*), as the Subject. The phrase to be used in a given case is decided by the *sense of the Participle* and the *Context*. The Participles most frequently occurring are *audito*, *cognito*, *comperto*, *desperato*, *edicto*, *explorato*, *nuntiato*, *permisso*, *exposito*, *addito*, *intellecto*, etc.

Ex.—Alexander, audito Dareum movisse ab Ecbatanis, fugientem insequi pergit, Curt., V, 35. Cognito, nihil hostium, nisi in fronte, esse, etc., Tac., Ann., XIV, 34. At Romae, nondum cognito, qui fuisset exitus in Illyrico, etc., Tac., Ann., I, 46. Caecina, comperto, vanam esse formidinem, etc., Tac., Ann., I, 66. Miles strictum obtulit gladium, addito acutiorem esse, Tac., Ann., I, 35. Consul edicto, ut quicumque ad vallum tenderet, pro hoste haberent, obstitit profuse tendentibus suis in castra, Liv., X, 36, 6. Addito ne caelestis religio decerneretur, Tac., Ann., V, 2. Exposito quid iniquitas loci posset, Caes., B. G., VII, 52. Perfecto enim et concluso neque virtutibus neque amicitiiis usquam locum

esse, Cic., Fin., II, 26, 85. **Explorato iam profectos amicos, noctem quietam egit**, Tac., H., II, 49. **Sic egesto, quicquid turbidum, redit urbi sua forma**, Tac., H., IV, 39. **Contracto quod erat militum**, Tac., H., IV, 71. **Ciceronem sequar, excepto, quod pes mihi tres syllabas non videtur excedere**, Quint., IX, 4, 79. **Multi incerto prae tenebris, quid peterent, foede interierunt**, Liv., XXVIII, 36, 12. Cf. Tac., Ann., I, 6, (periculoso).

(a) To be observed are the Ablatives *excepto* and *exceptis* with the subject not expressed but indicated by the Relative which follows.

Ex.—**Omnia verba, exceptis de quibus dixi, sunt alicubi optima**, Quint., X, 1, 9. **Aspectus semper eodem vertitur quo gestus, exceptis quae a nobis removere oportebit**, Quint., XI, 3, 70. **Reliqua Syria habet (exceptis quae cum Euphrate dicuntur), Arbethusios, etc.**, Plin. Mai., V, 82. **Omnia regerminant exceptis quae non scabrum caulem habent**, Plin. Mai., XIX, 122. **Aliis venenis resistunt, exceptis quae strangulando necant**, Plin. Mai., XX, 63.

(b) The Simple Ablative of a Substantive may occasionally be accepted as Ablative Absolute. But in such cases the Ablative may more correctly be interpreted as the Ablative stating *Time* or some other of the regular senses of the Ablative.

Ex.—**Umor allapsus extrinsecus, ut in tectoriis videmus austro, sudorem videtur imitari**, Cic., Div., II, 27, 58. (Here *austro* = *at the time of, during the prevalence of, or by the influence of, the South wind.*) Compare the Ablatives, *ludis*, etc.

66. The *Future Active Participle*, and perhaps the *Future Passive Participle*, occur in the Ablative Absolute. These constructions belong rather to Late Latin and to Poetry. In some cases it seems that what appears to be the attracted Gerund is rather the Future Passive Participle.

Ex.—**Dicit nec multum virium a tergo, quoniam Galliae tumeant et deserere Rheni ripam, irrupturis tam infestis nationibus, non conducat**, Tac., H., II, 32. **Momento temporis flagrabat ingens bellum, Illyricis exercitibus palam desciscitentibus, ceteris fortunam secuturis**, Tac., H., II, 86. **Propalam comprehendi Dareus non poterat, tot Persarum milibus laturis opem regi**, Curt., V, 28. **Hospite venturo cessabit nemo tuorum**, Iuv., XIV, 59. Cf. **Levat podagras cum farina ex melle et oleo tritus, ibi maxime usurpanda observatione quae, etc.**, Plin. Mai., XXXI, 102.

67. In the construction of the Ablative Absolute two Participles may be associated with the same Substantive when *one* as an *adjective* (*attributive*) defines the Substantive. When, however, two Ablatives Absolute, each with its separate Substantive and Participle are associated but not connected by *et*, one is directly explanatory of the other, giving the ground of it or other explanation to be decided by the con-

text. This repetition of the Ablative Absolute is avoided by Cicero. In the sentence *Defosso cadavere inventò, C. Iulius diem Sextio dixit* Liv., III, 33, 9, the participle *defosso* defines as an attributive *cadavere* and the Ablative Absolute is allowable.

Ex.—*Iuventute armata immissa vastatur agri quod inter urbem ac Fidenas* est, Liv., I, 14, 4. (*Armata* as an *attributive* defines *iuventute*.) *Conciliata prius voluntate plebis agro capto ex hostibus viritim diviso ausus est ferre ad populum*, Liv., I, 46, 1. (Here *capto* is *attributive* to *agro*, and *agro capto diviso* is the ground of *conciliata voluntate*, or means by which it was brought about; or, again, *conciliata voluntate* is the result of *agro capto diviso*.) *Caesar Antoni exercitu coniuncto deducta Orico legione...existimabat*, etc, Caes., B. Civ., III, 34. *Itaque cognita Pompeii protectione concursantibus illis atque in ea re occupatis vulgo ex tectis significabant*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 28.

68. The Perfect Passive Participle in the Ablative Absolute often presents an action done by the subject of the leading verb. This *common agency* of the *subject* is best expressed in the translation by the *coördination* (= *and*) of the actions of the Perfect Passive Participle and the leading Predicate. In Latin the *explanatory* or *subordinate* one of the *coördinate actions* is expressed by the *Participle*.

(a) As a translation, then, the Perfect Passive Participle in the Ablative Absolute construction may be *resolved* and *rendered* as a Finite Verb *coördinated* by *and* with the leading or principal verb, when it has the same agent with the leading verb. In the *coördination* the *Passive Participle* is translated by the Active Verb.

Ex.—*Urbe expugnata, imperator rediit* (= the general *reduced* the city and *returned*). *His datis mandatis Brundisium pervenit*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 25. *Itaque multis interfectis reliquos in oppidum repulerunt*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 14. *Ipsae celeriter ab opere deductis legionibus aciem instruit*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 26. *Augur ad laevam eius capite velato sedem cepit*, Liv., I, 18, 7. *Castris in aperto positis aliquotiens exercitus Latinus comminus cum Romanis signa contulerat*, Liv., I, 33, 4. *Silvius a patre accepto imperio regnat*, Liv., I, 3, 9. *Dextra Hercules data ait*, Liv., I, 7, 11.

REM. 1. This common agency should not be expressed in the participial clause by *ab se* (*eo*) unless the *agent* is to be presented with special emphasis. Hence, *urbe capta imperator abiit*. Not *urbe ab se capta, imperator abiit*.

(b) The Perfect Passive Participle in the Ablative Absolute is again translated by a Finite Verb, *coördinated* with a second Verb which is dependently stated in the Subjunctive or Infinitive, both Verbs in the translation having a common subject, and a common logical

agent. Of the coördinated predicates the one which is explanatory of and subordinate to the other is in Latin expressed by the Participle.

Ex.—**Tantus terror invasit ut protinus aperto sanctiore aerario ex urbe profugeret**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 14. **Varro, cum itinere converso sese Italicam venturum praemisisset, certior ab suis factus est praeclusas esse portas**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 20. **Relinquitur nova religio ut eo neglecto sacramento, quo tene-mini, respiciatis illud**, etc., Caes., B. Civ., II, 32. **Ferunt sedato eam tumultu moveri vetuisse puerum**, Liv., I, 39, 2.

69. In the construction of the (Latin) Ablative Absolute the *subject* of this clause should not occur in the leading clause as the subject or object of the *leading predicate*, nor should it be restated in this clause by a *Demonstrative Pronoun*. Hence, when the subject of an English phrase with the characteristics of the Ablative Absolute would occur in the Latin statement of the phrase as the *subject* or *object* of the leading predicate, *directly* or *descriptively*, in Latin the Ablative Absolute should not be used.

Ex.—**T. Manlius Gallum caesum torque spoliavit**, Liv., VI, 42, 5. This sentence should not be expressed, **T. Manlius Gallo caeso eum torque spoliavit**, because the subject **Gallo** of **caeso** reappears in **eum**, the object of **spoliavit**. Nor should it be stated, **T. Manlius Gallum, eo caeso, torque spoliavit**, because the subject **eo** of **caeso** is identical with **Gallum**, the object of **spoliavit**.

**Urbem captam imperator diripuit**; *not* **urbe capta imperator eam diripuit**, *nor* **urbem, ea capta, imperator diripuit**. The translations should not mislead, thus:

**Urbem captam imperator diripuit** = When the city had been captured the general plundered *it*, or the general captured the city and plundered *it*. While these translations have the characteristics of the translations of the Ablative Absolute, this construction cannot be used. Again, **Vocata ad concilium multitudine, iura dedit**, Liv., I, 8, 1 = When the people (multitude) had been summoned to a meeting, he gave a code; or, he summoned the people to a meeting and gave a code. But in the sentence the Ablative Absolute is correctly used, because the subject (**multitudine**) of **vocata** is neither the subject nor object of **dedit**. If the English sentence were: When the people had been summoned to a meeting he gave *them* a code—in Latin the Ablative Absolute should not be used, because the subject (people) of *had been summoned* reappears as Indirect Object of **dedit**. In such a sentence the correct Latin would be, **Multitudini ad concilium vocatae iura dedit**, *not* **Multitudine ad concilium vocata ei iura dedit**.

(a) It should be borne in mind that the subject of the Ablative Absolute is reproduced in the leading member of the sentence by the Relative; that is, the subject of the Ablative Absolute is referred to in the leading clause by the *Relative*.

Ex.—**Caesar infectis iis, quae agere destinaverat**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 33. **Vibullius sedato tumultu, quem adventus Caesaris concitaverat**, etc., Caes., B. Civ.,

III, 18. **Qui Atheniensium rebus studuissent eiectis, decem delegerat, etc.,** Nep., Lys., 1. **Missis, qui magnam vim lignorum ardentem in flumen conicerent,** Liv., I, 37, 1. **Pharnabazus comprehensis, qui res ad Macedones trahebant, Apollonidi urbem tradit,** Curt., IV, 23.

(b) Sometimes in order to give *special prominence* to the Ablative Absolute, or to reproduce its thought more sharply, its dependency, as a strictly explanatory clause, is ignored and its subject is restated by the Demonstrative in the leading clause contrary to the prevailing usage. In such cases the object of the leading predicate accords with the subject of the Ablative Absolute, which is not *regularly* the case. This departure from the restriction controlling the use of the Ablative Absolute occurs quite often with a Predicate Adjective in the Ablative Absolute clause and also to avoid the repetition of the same endings.

Ex.—**Vercingetorix convocatis suis clientibus facile eos incendit,** Caes., B. G., VII, 4. (We look for **convocatos suos clientes facile incendit.**) **Turribus excitatis tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbaris navibus superabat,** Caes., B. G., III, 14. (We look for **turres excitatas tamen altitudo, etc.**) **Obsidibus imperatis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendos tradit,** Caes., B. G., VI, 4. **Quibus auditis hortatus ut in ea sententia permanerent eos domum remittit,** Caes., B. G., IV, 21. Cf. Livy XXXI, 46, 4 (**Philippo urente. . . abstrahere eum. . . potuissent**). **Galliam Italiamque tentari se absente nolebat,** Caes., B. Civ., I, 29. **Quibus (navibus) effectis diebus triginta, a qua die materia caesa est, his D. Brutum praefecit,** Caes., B. Civ., I, 36. **Deductis tribus in arcem oppidi cohortibus, per se cohortes (instead of eas) eiectit,** Caes., B. Civ., II, 19. **De quo etiam nihil scribente me te non dubitare certo scio,** Cic., Fam., IX, 10, 1. **Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat,** Caes., B. G., I, 53.

REM. 1. The subject of the *Ablative Absolute* clause is quite frequently reproduced in the leading clause by the *Genitive* of the *Demonstrative*. The effect of this is to strengthen the independence of the Ablative Absolute clause.

Ex.—**Quorum princeps fuit M. Cato, qui vivo quoque eo allatrare magnitudinem eius solitus erat,** Liv., XXXVIII, 54, 1. (Compare **eius vivi allatrare magnitudinem solitus erat.**) **Iugurtha fratre meo interfecto regnum eius sceleris sui praedam fecit,** Sal., Jug., 14. **Exinde duabus admotis quadrigis in currus earum distentum illigat Mettium,** Liv., I, 28, 10. (Compare **duarum admotarum quadrigarum in currus distentum illigat Mettium.**) **Commemorabat suas leges, quibus manentibus lator earum in vincula ducatur,** Liv., III, 56, 9. **Vici erant in propinquo: quibus dirutis, pontem ex materia eorum strenue induxit,** Curt., V, 17. (Compare **quorum dirutorum ex materia, etc.**) **Illic epulante Britannico, quia cibos potusque eius delectus ex ministris gustu explorabat, etc.,** Tac., Ann., XIII, 16.

**70.** With a *negative* or *quasi-negative* sentence preceding, the Ablative Absolute with *nisi* regularly follows. The sentence may be *elliptical*.

Ex.—**Nobis nisi Caesaris capite relato pax esse nulla potest**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 19. **Ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere nisi munitis castris vetuerat**, Caes., B. G., II, 20. **Caesar respondit deditionis nullam esse condicionem, nisi armis traditis**, Caes., B. G., II, 32. **Clamare praeclari Ariopagitae se non esse venturos nisi praesidio constituto**, Cic., Att., I, 16, 5. **Non fit umquam arcus nisi nubilo**, Sen., N. Q., I, 3, 3.

REM. 1. In such a connection *nisi* with the Ablative Absolute may often best be rendered by *without*, etc.

Ex.—**Caesar respondit deditionis nullam esse condicionem, nisi armis traditis** (= *without the surrender of arms*).

REM. 2. So, too, the Ablative Absolute with a negative may be best rendered by *without*, etc.

Ex.—**Quo in bello nihil accidit non praedicente me**, Cic., Fam., VI, 6, 6 (= *without my foretelling it*). **Timoleon tantum habebat amorem omnium Siculorum, ut nullo recusante** (= *without any one objecting*) **regnum obtineret**, Nep., Tim., 3.

**71.** Chiefly in Livy and the later writers the particles *antequam*, *etsi*, *priusquam*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *quasi*, *quippe*, *tamquam*, *ut* (giving relation of subjective ground), *velut*, occur with the Ablative Absolute. With these may be conceived the *ellipsis* of the leading predicate of which the Ablative Absolute is the explanation.

Ex.—**Nec ante in praetorium rediit quam flagrante triclinio ex conceptu camini**, Suet., Vit., 8. **Nam etsi vagis adhuc et incertis auctoribus, erat tamen in ore famaeque Vespasianus**, Tac., H., II, 73. **Excessum Augusti non prius palam fecit, quam Agrippa iuvene interempto**, Suet., Tib., 22. **Nec decimanos adire cunctatus est quamquam deterrentibus amicis**, Suet., Caes., 70. **Libertum gratissimum, quamvis nullo querente, capitali poena affecit**, Suet., Caes., 48. **Alii caritate suorum, quos eripere nequiverant, quamvis patente effugio, interiere**, Tac., Ann., XV, 38. **Hostes maximo clamore insecuti, quasi parta iam victoria, turres agere coeperunt**, Caes., B. G., V, 43. **Haud dubie servaverat, non clementia, quippe tot interfectis, sed effugio in futurum**, Tac., H., I, 72. **Surgebat aestate a cena luce. hieme intra primam noctis, et tamquam aliqua lege cogente**, Plin. Min., III, 5, 13. **Pulvis ex distantibus locis ortus, velut nube inducta, omnia impleverat**, Liv., I, 29, 4. **Laeti, ut explorata victoria, ad castra pergunt**, Caes., B. G., III, 18.

## The Infinitive.

**72.** The Infinitive, as has been stated (8), presents the Substantive element of the Verb as a peculiar Noun Substantive. In this relation it occurs in *two* cases, the *Nominative* and the *Accusative*.

**73.** The Infinitive as a Noun Substantive is of the Neuter Gender. An adjective as an attributive is *not regularly* associated with the Infinitive. Instead of an Attributive Adjective it takes an *Adverb*.

Ex.—*Cadit in eundem et misereri et invidere*, Cic., Tusc., III, 10, 21. *Nihil obstat erumpere et exire cupienti*, Sen., VIII, 1, 24. *Numquam est utile peccare, quia semper turpe est*, Cic., Off., III, 15, 64. *Emendari, quam peccare posterius est*, Tac., Ann., XV, 20. *Verberare servum ac vinculis et opere coercere rarum* (est), Tac., Ger., 25. *Apud Persas summa laus erat fortiter venari, luxuriose vivere*, Nep., Alc., 11. (Not *forte venari, luxuriosum vivere*.) *Est ars difficilis recte rempublicam regere*, Cic., Att., VII, 25. (Not *rectum regere*.) *Hinc vel illinc appellere indiscretum et innoxium est*, Tac., H., III, 47.

REM. 1. As stated (19) a *Pronoun* may be associated as an attributive with the Infinitive.

Ex.—*Ipsium illud quod vocatur mori, brevius est*, Sen., Prov., VI, 9. *Ipsum perire non est magnum*, Sen., N. Q., VI, 32, 5. *Hoc ipsum philosophiae servire libertas est*, Sen., Ep., I, 8, 7. *Omnia mea mecum sunt, id est iustitia, virtus, prudentia, hoc ipsum nihil bonum putare, quod eripi possit*, Sen., Ep., I, 9, 19. *Locum ex loco mutas, cum illud, quod quaeris, bene vivere, omni loco positum sit*, Sen., Ep., III, 7, 5. (Observe *illud*, but *bene* (not *bonum*) *vivere*.)

**74.** While the Adjective as an ordinary *attributive* is not associated with the Infinitive, as a *predicate attributive*, it is thus associated with it. In this connection the Adjective is, of course, of the neuter gender. (Compare 73 examples).

Ex.—*Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori*, Hor., Od., III, 2, 13. *Molestum est mortem ante oculos habere*, Sen., Ep., I, 12, 6. *Turpe est aliud loqui, aliud sentire*, Sen., Ep., III, 3, 19. *Non est nostrum aestimare, quem supra ceteros et quibus de causis extollas*, Tac., Ann., VI, 8.

REM. 1. An Adjective of *one ending* is not associated as a predicate attributive with the Infinitive. Instead of an Adjective in this relation, the Genitive of the Adjective should be used.

Ex.—*In tranquillo tempestatem adversam optare dementis est*, Cic., Off., I, 25, 83. *Neglegere quid de se quisque sentiat arrogantis est*, Cic., Off., I, 28, 99. *His irasci dementis est, quae anima carent*, Sen., Ira., II, 26, 4.

**75.** The Infinitive Passive, as well as the Infinitive Active, occurs as the subject in the Nominative.



Ex.—**Plura castella Pompeius pariter distinendae manus causa tentaverat, ne ex proximis praesidiis succurri posset**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 52. Compare Caes., B. Civ., III, 63 (**ut . . . posset resisti**). **Ita ne moriendum quidem esse malum est**, Cic., Tusc., I, 8, 17. **In quibusdam rebus satius est decipi quam diffidere**, Sen., Ira., II, 24, 1. **Si tamquam ad remedium venimus, sine ira venimus, non quasi dulce sit vindicari, sed quasi utile**, Sen., Ira., II, 33, 1. **Cum ventum in aciem turpe principi virtute vinci**, Tac., Germ., 14. **Haec dignitas, hae vires: magno semper electorum iuvenum globo circumdari, in pace decus, in bello praesidium**, Tac., Germ., 13.

76. With the Infinitive as *subject* a second Infinitive may be used as *Predicate-Apposition*.

Ex.—**Loquor de docto homine et erudito, cui vivere est cogitare**, Cic., Tusc., V, 38, 111. **Bene mori est effugere male vivendi periculum**, Sen., Ep., VIII, 1, 6. **Sic vivimus, ut deprehendi sit subito aspici**, Sen., Ep., V, 2, 4. (Observe the Passive Infinitives.) **Numquam eicitur sapiens, quia eici est inde expelli, unde invitatus redeas**, Sen., Ep., VI, 2, 7.

(a) To be noted is the verb *est* with the Infinitive, in the sense sometimes of *potest* (*it is possible*), and again in the sense of *licet* (*it is allowable, may*), and in the sense of *necesse est* (*it is necessary*). Not in Classical Prose as far as observed.

Ex.—**Neque est levare tenta spiritu praecordia**, Hor., Epod., XVII, 25. **Quare, ne paeniteat te, desine matronas sectarier, unde laboris plus haurire mali est, quam ex re decerpere fructus**, Hor., Sat., I, 2, 79. **Est gaudia proidentem vultum celare**, Hor., Sat., II, 5, 104.

(b) As the Infinitive as subject may well be accepted as such in its grammatical relation, it is unnecessary, in such a case, to consider how far it may be parallel with the Infinitive with a general and indefinite subject. As *civere est cogitare* = “*For one (any one) (aliquem) to live is for him to think.*” Cf. *Inopiam excusare et calamitatem suam queri mediocris est animi*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 20.

(c) With the Potential Verbs *posse, licere*, etc., in a *Past Tense* the form of the Infinitive is to be observed. The Imperfect (Present form of the Infinitive) expresses an action inseparable from the time of the leading (governing) verb and coincident with it, while the Pluperfect (Perfect form of the Infinitive) presents an action completed and antecedent to the time of the leading verb. The *translation* of the Imperfect Infinitive in such an association is liable to mislead as to the form of the Tense.

*Venire potui* = *I could have come* = *I was able to come*.

Ex.—**Dixisse poteras** = *You could have told* = *you were able to have told*. In the

past conception the construction is liable to be confounded with the statement of an *unreal relation*.

In the phrase *dirisſe poterat*, Hor., A. P., 328, Horace intended to make, not an independent statement, but one qualified by a Protasis—"if I had asked you"—you could once have said.

Ex.—*Hic cognosci licuit, quantum esset hominibus praesidii in animi firmitudine*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 28.

77. The Infinitive occurs not only as the Subject (in the Nominative) but as the Inner Object (in the Accusative) with Verbs the sense of which is completed by the *complement* furnished by the Infinitive. Such Verbs are:

(1) *Active Verbs*—*Velle, nolle, malle, cupere, audere, conari (agredi), vereri (metuere, timere), scire, nescire, discere, incipere*, etc.

Ex.—*Tu vis in caelum migrare*, Cic., Tusc., I, 34, 82. *Nolui deesse ne tacitae quidem flagitationi tuae*, Cic., Top., I, 1, 5. *Cato ipse servire quam pugnare mavult*, Cic., Att., VII, 15, 2. *Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur*, Caes., B. G., I, 5. *Quos in conspectu Galliae interficere verebatur, hos*, etc., Caes., B. G., V, 6. *Timebat tantae magnitudini fluminis exercitum obicere*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 64. *Vincere scis, Hannibal, victoria uti nescis*, Liv., XXII, 51, 4, etc.

(2) *Neuter Verbs*—*Posse, contendere, laborare, paratus esse*, etc.

Ex.—*Nihil potest ad beatam vitam deesse sapienti*, Cic., Fin., V, 28, 84. *Caesar in Britanniam proficisci contendit*, Caes., B. G., IV, 20. *Sociis fidelissimis prospicere non laboratis*, Cic., Verr., III, 55, 127. (*Dixerunt*) *se paratos esse et obsides dare et imperata facere*, Caes., B. G., II, 3.

(a) The Accusative of the Infinitive, in the same sense, occurs, mostly in the Poets and late writers, with the Verbs, *amare, postulare, quaerere, tentare, fugere, vitare*.

Ex.—*Aurum per medios ire satellites amat*, Hor., Od., III, 16, 9. *Toto anno bibere amat*, Plin. Mai., XIII, 28. *Incerta haec si tu postules facere, nihil plus agas, quam*, etc., Ter., Eum., 61. *Mutare sedes quaerebant*, Tac., Ger., 2. *Tentabo de hoc dicere*, Quint., VI, 2, 29. *Neque enim illud fugerim dicere, ut Caelius*, Cic., De Or., III, 38, 153. *Monitus monendusque ut tangere vitet scripta Palatinus quaecumque recepit Apollo*, Hor., Epist., I, 3, 16.

#### The Accusative and the Nominative with the Infinitive.

78. It has been seen that the Infinitive presents the abstract substantive element of the Verb without reference to a definite *Subject, Person, Number, Time* or *Mood*. It lacks the elements of Tense and Mood, as *audire* = *to hear, the hearing*. The association of an abstract

verbal element with a subject cannot be made with the subject in the Nominative, as this is a definite relation implying *action, time, and predication*. This office must be performed by the Accusative, as this is the form of the Noun which presents the most *general case-relation* and, hence, the one by which the relation between a Verb and a Substantive is expressed in the most general way. The phrase *puer scribit* = *the boy writes*, is concrete in its character. It requires a subject in the Nominative. On the other hand, the phrase *puerum scribere* = *that the boy writes*, presents an abstract conception, and means the *idea or thought or statement of writing as to the boy*: *logically expressed*, "of the boy," "by the boy." Again, in the form of *predication* = "that the boy writes." With reference to a governing Verb of *Saying or Thinking*, the Infinitive (*scribere*) and its logical subject (*puerum*) are both in the *Accusative*, the Infinitive as the *Inner Object*, limiting as its complement, the *governing Verb* and its *logical Subject* (*puerum*) as the *Outer Object*. The affirmation of the Infinitive is not inherent in it, but is the result of the association of an *Inner and Outer Object* when the former is simple *action or state*. It is only a *translation* by which this association is *best expressed* and the *logical relation* of the two objects *best presented*. The Infinitive may be termed the *Predicate-Infinitive*. The Predicate-Infinitive then occurs:

(a) In connection with the *Outer Object* of a verb of *Saying or Thinking*, etc., and with this object furnishes what is known as the *Accusative with the Infinitive*.

(b) In connection with the Subject of the Passive of a Verb of *Saying or Thinking*, and with other Verbs, and forms with this subject what is known as the *Nominative with the Infinitive*.

#### The Accusative with the Infinitive.

79. In the Accusative with the Infinitive the Infinitive is, in its grammatical relation, the *Inner Object* of the Verb upon which the phrase depends, while the *Subject* of the Infinitive, the *Substantive* in the Accusative, is the *Outer Object* of the Verb. The logical relation of the Infinitive to this Substantive (its *logical subject*) is that of *predication*, and the Infinitive forms with it a dependent phrase (the object of the governing Verb), introduced in the translation by *that*, the *index* simply of the *relation of the object*. The subject of this phrase is furnished in the translation by the Substantive in the Accus-

ative. The predicate is furnished, in the translation, by the *Infinitive* resolved as a *Finite Verb* in the Tense indicated by the Infinitive and the *context*.

Ex.—**Audio amicum tuum venire** = The *coming as to your friend* (= of your friend) I hear = *I hear that your friend is coming*.

80. The Accusative with the Infinitive as a matter *conceived or thought* by the speaker, as an object, need not be restricted to the relation of the *object*. It may be presented as the grammatical *subject*. Hence:

81. The Accusative with the Infinitive occurs, as the *grammatical subject*.

Ex.—**Iam satis certumst uirginem uitiatam esse**, Ter., Eun., 704. **Certius tibi est me esse Romae quam mihi te Athenis**, Cic., Att., I, 9, 1.

82. The *Predicate-Appositive* and the *Predicate-Attributive* of the subject of the Infinitive, whether the Accusative with the Infinitive be *subject* or *object*, is in the *Accusative*, and of the gender and number of the subject of the Infinitive.

Ex.—**Non dicam sectam Epicuri flagitiorum magistram esse**, Sen., Gal. Vit. Beat., XIII, 2. **Dicimus plenum omni bono esse sapientem**, Sen., Ep., XVIII, 6, 1. **Intelleges infelicissimos esse felices**, Sen., Ep., XX, 7, 24.

83. The Accusative with the Infinitive, as subject, occurs:

1. With an Adjective Predicate, as *utile est*, *perspicuum est*, *credibile est*, *verum est*, *par est*, *inusitatum est*, *manifestum est*, *certum est*, *mirum est*, *rectum est*, *gratum est*, etc.

Ex.—**Quia semper est honestum virum bonum esse, semper utile est**, Cic., Off., III, 15, 64. **Perspicuum debet esse animos sublime ferri**, Cic., Tusc., I, 17, 40. **Turpe tibi erit pantheras Graecas me non habere**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 6, 5. **Fit credibile deorum et hominum causa factum esse mundum**, Cic., N. D., II, 53, 133. **In Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire periculosum est**, Caes., B. G., I, 33. **Manifestum est alteram apud eos partem gratia praevalere**, Tac., Or., 5. **Absurdum est Pisonem alii matrimonio se obstrinxisse**, Tac., Ann., XV, 53.

2. With a *Substantive Predicate*, as *scelus est*, *fama est*, *opinio est*, *mos est*, *fas est*, *nefas est*, etc. A Substantive with a Tense of *esse*.

Ex.—**Facinus est vinciri civem Romanum, scelus verberari, prope parricidium necari**, Cic., Verr., V, 66, 170 (Texts vary). **Tempus est nos de illa perpetua iam, non de hac exigua vita cogitare**, Cic., Att., X, 8, 8. **Eos hoc nomine appellari fas est**, Cic., Mur., XXXVII, 80. **Nunc opus est te animo valere ut corpore possis**, Cic., Fam., XVI, 14, 2. **Nunc illum honore augeri**,

me idem non assequi dedecus est, Cic., Att., VII, 2, 6. **Si iudicium est triginta homines ius ac fas omne delere**, Cic., Att., I, 16, 6. **Ambiorix dixit nihil esse negotii, subito oppressam legionem interfici**, Caes. B. G., V, 38. **Fama est ludibrio fratris Remum novos transiluisse muros**, Liv. I, 7, 2. **Hominum est opinio tuos familiares adversarios honori nostro fore**, Cic., Att., I, 2, 2.

3. With the so-called Impersonal Verbs, as *constat*, *decet*, *dedecet*, *licet*, *placet*, *convenit*, *apparet*, *necesse est*, *oportet*, *interest*, etc.

Ex.—**Quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat**, Caes., B. G., III, 6. **Oratorem vero irasci minime decet, simulare non dedecet**, Cic., Tusc., IV, 25, 55. **Evocari ex insula Cyprios non licet**, Cic., Att., V, 21, 6. **Duo placet esse Carneadi genera visorum**, Cic., Ac., II, 31, 99. **Eam partem nudari necesse erat**, Caes., B. G., V, 35. **Necesse fuit esse aliquid extremum**, Cic., Sen., II, 5. **Eum scire oportet sibi paratam pestem**, Vid. Cic., Tusc., II, 17, 39. **Magni interesse arbitrabatur eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere**, Caes., B. G., V, 4.

4. With the Passive of a Verb of Saying or Thinking in compound Tenses or in the sense of *it is maintained*, *the statement or opinion is current (common)*, *the view is*, in a simple Tense (*dicitur*, *nuntiatur*, etc.).

Ex.—**Nam Galbam, Africanum, Laelium doctos fuisse traditum est**, Cic., Tusc., I, 3, 5. **Eam Venerem Adonidi nupsisse proditum est**, Cic., N. D., III, 23, 59. **Existimandum est Philonem architecti potius artificio disertum quam oratoris fuisse**, Cic., De Or., I, 14, 16. **Vere dicitur illud, perverse dicere homines perverse dicendo facillime consequi**, Cic., De Or., I, 33, 150. **Dicitur eo tempore matrem Pausaniae vixisse**, Nep., Paus., 5. **Movisse numen ad indicandam tanti imperii molem traditur deos**, Liv., I, 55, 3. **Repente nuntiatur arcem Carventanam ab hostibus occupatam esse**, Liv., IV, 53, 3.

84. The Accusative with the Infinitive as the *object* occurs with Verbs of *Saying* and *Thinking*. The verbs *dicendi* are *dicere*, *affirmare*, *narrare*, *negare*, *nuntiare*, *respondere*, etc. The verbs *sentienti* are such as express an *internal* or *external* perception, as *audire*, *videre*, *cogitare*, *cognoscere*, *arbitrari*, *existimare*, *ducere*, *intellegere*, etc.

Ex.—**Saepe hoc maiores natu dicere audivi**, Cic., Mur., XXVIII, 58. **Quem esse negas, eundem esse dicis**, Cic., Tusc., I, 6, 12. **Ad haec Ariovistus respondit ius esse belli, ut, etc.**, Caes., B. G., I, 36. **Epicurus negat esse in deo gratiam**, Cic., N. D., I, 43, 121.

85. The Accusative with the Infinitive as the *object* of a Verb of *Saying* or *Thinking* becomes the *subject* of this verb in the *Passive* with the restriction stated in the preceding (83, 4).

Ex.—**Dicunt eo tempore matrem Pausaniae vixisse** (*Active*). **Dicitur eo tempore matrem Pausaniae vixisse** (*Passive*).

**86.** The Accusative with the Infinitive as the object occurs with *all verbs and expressions* having the *sense* of Verbs of *Saying* or *Thinking*.

Ex.—*Vim volumus extinguere*, Cic., *Sest.*, XLII, 92. *Ad Caesarem mittit paratum se esse legionem tradere*, *Caes.*, *B. Civ.*, II, 20. *Perscribit hostes ab se discessisse*, *Caes.*, *B. G.*, V, 49. *Oraculum datum erat, si rex interfectus esset, victrices Athenas fore*, Cic., *Tusc.*, I, 48, 116. *Mihi conscius sum numquam me nimis vitae cupidum fuisse*, Cic., *Tusc.*, II, 4, 10. *Contendo numquam neque sententiam eius auctoritate neque eloquentiam iucunditate fuisse maiore*, Cic., *Sest.*, I, 107. *Plato construi a deo atque aedificari mundum facit*, Cic., *N. D.*, I, 8, 19, etc.

**87.** The Verbs to *Hope*, to *Promise*, to *Swear*, to *Threaten*, to *Trust*, look to the *Future*, as a *rule*, for their realization. Hence in Latin they are generally followed by the Accusative with the Future Infinitive regularly rendered by the *simple* Infinitive.

Ex.—*At sperat adolescens diu se victurum*, Cic., *Sen.*, XIX, 68 (= hopes to live.) *Lentulus consul senatui rei publicae se non defuturum pollicetur*, *Caes.*, *B. Civ.*, I, 1. *Postulat, ut iurent omnes se exercitum ducesque non deserturos*, *Caes.*, *B. Civ.*, I, 76. *Quod se facturos minabantur*, *Caes.*, *B. Civ.*, II, 13. *Ipsa spes inopiam sustentabat, quod celeriter se habituros copiam confidebant*, *Caes.*, *B. Civ.*, III, 49.

(a) The Verbs to *Hope*, to *Promise*, to *Swear*, to *Trust*, allow the Accusative with the *simple* Infinitive. In such a case the verb is to be interpreted as a Verb of *Saying* or *Thinking* modified by its characteristic sense. Hence *sperare* = to entertain the *pleasant thought* or *belief that*.

Ex.—*Quae sentimus ipsi, reliquos sentire speramus*, *Caes.*, *B. Civ.*, II, 27. *Is non praeceps se, sed strenuum remedium afferre, tantamque vim morbi levaturum esse promisit*, *Curt.*, III, 14. *Nisi ineptum putarem id facere quod fieri interdum solet, iurarem me et ardere studio veri reperiendi et ea sentire, quae dicerem*, Cic., *Acad.*, II, 20, 65. *Quae quidem ego aut omnia falsa aut certe minora opinione esse confido*, *Caes.*, *B. Civ.*, II, 31. *Spero tibi me causam probasse*, Cic., *Att.*, I, 1, 4. *Illud scelus spero nullum fuisse*, Cic., *Att.*, X, 7, 3. *Sperabam notata me reliquiss genera dictorum meorum*, Cic., *Fam.*, VII, 32, 1. (*Observe Perfect Infinitive.*)

(b) When the *simple* Infinitive without a subject occurs with such verbs, as with *polliceri*, the Infinitive is to be explained as the Accusative of the Complement. But as it is the Accusative of the Complement with a verb the *object* of which is one to be realized, it is essentially the *equivalent* of the Accusative with the *Future* Infinitive, as *Pollicetur obsides dare* = *He promises to give* = *the giving of—hostages* = *that he will give hostages*.

Ex.—*Ad eum legati veniunt qui polliceantur obsides dare*, Caes., B. G., IV, 21. (= *se obsides daturus esse*.) *lurarunt inter se barbaros omnes necare*, Plin. Mai., XXIX, 14.

(c) With these verbs, notably *sperare*, the Present Infinitive form of *posse* is used to express the Future Infinitive. Future Time is here, as elsewhere, involved in *posse*. From a like office the Present Infinitives *velle* and *nolle* may not be excluded. Instead, however, of the Present Infinitive *posse* to express a future, the periphrasis *fore* (*futurum esse*) *ut* and the Subjunctive *occurrat*. The periphrastic representation is unnecessary and should not be used.

Ex.—*Vim tempestatis superari posse sperabat*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 26. *Profectus est sperans Pompeium aut Dyrrhacium compelli aut ab eo intercludi posse*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 41. *Sperans se instans periculum posse depellere domum rediit*, Nep., Paus., 3. *Opera tueri se posse confisi sunt*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 10. *Magnam in spem veniebat fore uti pertinacia desisteret*, Caes., B. G., I, 42. *Eram in spe magna fore ut in Italia possemus aut concordiam constituere aut rempublicam defendere*, Cic., Att., VIII, 11 D., 1.

88. The Accusative with the Infinitive occurs with *any phrase* or *Substantive* which involves the idea of *Saying* or *Thinking*, also as the complementary explanation of a *Neuter Pronoun* associated with such a verb. The Accusative with the Infinitive, while the grammatical apposition of a Substantive, is at the same time the *object* or *complement* of the verbal sense of "*Saying* or *Thinking*" characteristic of the Substantive.

Ex.—*Caesarem certiores faciunt sese non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere*, Caes., B. G., I, 11. *Credo Romulum habuisse opinionem esse in providendis rebus augurandi scientiam*, Cic., Div., II, 33, 70. *Iis utimini testibus appropinquare eorum adventum*, Caes., B. G., VII, 77. *Scipionem properantem sequi litterae sunt consecutae a M. Favonio*, Domitium adesse, Caes., B. Civ., III, 36. *Hoc primum sentio, nisi in bonis, amicitiam esse non posse*, Cic., Am., V, 18. *Ita fit verum illud, quod dixi, amicitiam nisi inter bonos esse non posse*, Cic., Am., XVIII, 65. *Id ipsum vident instare mortem*, Cic., Div., I, 30, 63.

(a) As with the Verbs to *Hope* and to *Swear* (see 87) the Accusative with the Future Infinitive is used to express future *realization* as is also the Present Infinitive, so with the Substantives derived from these Verbs is found the Complementary Accusative with the Infinitive (*Future* and *Present*).

Ex.—*Magna me spes tenet hunc locum Cluentio perfugium futurum*, Cic., Clu., III, 7. *Scaurus dixerat spem esse ex eo non irritas fore senatus preces, quod, etc.*, Tac., Ann., I, 13. *Tum iusiurandum a singulis exactum futuros in potestate regis geniti Alexandro*, Curt., X, 23. *Adicit iusiurandum, non ferro,*

**non veneno vim allaturum**, Tac., Ann., XII, 47. **Spes incesserat dissidere hostem in Arminium ac Segestem**, Tac., Ann., I, 55. **Magna spes erat per eos amissa posse recuperari**, Nep., Tim., 3. Cf. **Eos codicillos Nero accepit, spe exterritum Thræseam scripsisse, per quæ claritudinem principis extolleret**, etc., Tac., Ann., XVI, 24.

89. The *Subject-Accusative* of the Infinitive is quite often omitted when a *Personal Pronoun* (*me, te, se, nos, vos*), less often when a *Demonstrative Pronoun* (*eum, eos*). The omission of the *Personal Pronoun* is quite common in continued Indirect Narrative, not so usual in *short sentences*; also where readily supplied by the context.

Ex.—**Orant ut adventus Caesaris expectetur. Captam suam urbem videre** (= *se captam*, etc.), Caes., B. Civ., II, 12. **Ille respondit—sperare** (= *se sperare*) **a multitudine impetrari posse, quod**, etc., Caes., B. G., V, 36. **Quæ imperaret facturos pollicentur**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 12 (observe omission of *esse* with *facturos*. This is quite usual with omission of subject.) **Peto ut ea non de memet ipso, sed de oratore dicere putetis**, Cic., De Or., III, 20, 74. **Plerique existimant, si acrius insequi voluisset, bellum eo die potuisse finire**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 51 (= *eum bellum potuisse finire*). **Ferre non posse clamabit** (= *se ferre*, etc.), Cic., Tusc., II, 17, 40. **Hos clam Xerxi remisit, simulans ex vinculis effugisse** (= *eos effugisse*), Nep., Paus., 2. Cf. **Sed satis iam fecisse** (= *se (ipsos) fecisse*)....**tulisse. Perpressos: ....prohiberi, ....ferre posse**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 84.

(a) When two Accusatives with the Infinitive occur, one immediately succeeding and called for by the other, with a *Personal Pronoun* as the common subject, the *Pronoun* is omitted with the second Infinitive even when used with the former; it is often omitted with both.

Ex.—**Nec me pudet fateri nescire** (= *me nescire*) **quod nesciam**, Cic., Tusc., I, 25, 60. **Ille (dixit) sperare** (= *se sperare*) **ab eo de sua ac militum salute impetrare posse** (= *se impetrare posse*), Caes., B. G., V, 36. **Mihi licet fateri nescire** (= *me nescire*) **quod nesciam**, Cic., De Or., I, 22, 101.

90. In English the subject of the Infinitive may be transferred to the leading clause, in the *translation*, and rendered by *of*, *about* and repeated by *that he*, etc., in the dependent Infinitive clause. In this case the subject of the Infinitive in Latin is written in the *beginning* of the sentence. Prominence is thus given it in the translation. This prominence of the *subject* of the Infinitive is rarely strengthened by *de* and the Ablative.

Ex.—**Pythagoram ferunt olim Philiuntem venisse** (= *of Pythagoras* they relate that he came, etc.). **Orpheum poetam docet Aristoteles numquam fuisse**, Cic., N. D., I, 38, 107 (cf. *De Orpheo poeta docet Aristoteles eum numquam fuisse*). **De se autem hoc prædicat Antonio Aebutii servo se imperasse ut**, Cic., Caec., IX, 25.



91. In the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive when two Accusatives, one the subject (agent) the other the object, occur with the Infinitive *Active*, ambiguity may arise as to the subject or object. In such a case the ambiguity is obviated by using the Infinitive *Passive* with the *object* of the *Active* as the *subject* of the *Passive* Infinitive and the *subject* of the *Active* as the agent in the Ablative with the Preposition *a* (*ab*).

Ex.—*At ne fando quidem auditum est crocodilum violatum ab Aegypto*, Cic., N. D., I, 29, 82 (*crocodilum violasse Aegyptium (ambiguous)*). *Deinde adicit, "putares non ab illis Catonem, sed illos a Catone deprehensos,"* Plin. Min., III, 12, 3 (*illos Catonem, sed illos Catonem deprehendisse (ambiguous)*).

(a) As the object of the *Passive* construction, in the use of the *Passive* Infinitive, is to avoid ambiguity, when no ambiguity results the *Active* Infinitive with the two Accusatives is retained.

Ex.—*Aio te, Aeacida, Romanos vincere posse*, Cic., Div., II, 56, 116. *Labi-enus iurat se eum non deserturum*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 13 (*ab se eum non deser-tum iri (unnecessary)*). *Thrasybulus neque amplius requisivit neque quemquam honore se antecessisse existimavit*, Nep., Thras., 4 (the context makes it clear that *quemquam* is *subject* and *se* object of *antecessisse*). *Neque id mirandum si (Artaxerxes) non facile ad credendum adducebatur, reminiscens eius se opera Cyrum fratrem superasse*, Nep., Con., 3. *Navem conscendit, existimans facilius se imprudentem oppressurum*, Nep., Dat., 4 (*ab se imprudentem oppres-sum iri (unnecessary)*).

92. When the subject of a verb of *Saying* or *Thinking* is the same with the subject of the dependent Infinitive, the subject (*Reflexive Pronoun*) is in Latin expressed with the Infinitive. This form of statement prominently presents the subject of the Infinitive and with strong predication.

Ex.—*Dico (puto) me prudentem esse. Dicimus (putamus) nos prudentes esse.*  
*Dicis (putas) te prudentem esse. Dicitis (putatis) vos prudentes esse.*  
*Dicit (putat) se prudentem esse. Dicunt (putant) se prudentes esse.*

93. With Verbs *to will*, *to wish*, *to desire* when the subject of the dependent verb is the *same* as the subject of the leading verb (*to wish*, etc.) the dependent verb is expressed in the Infinitive. The Infinitive simply *completes*, as the object or complement, the sense of the leading verb.

Ex.—*Eas nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat*, Caes., B. G., III, 7. *Cum ad Clodium ventum est, cupiit diem consumere*, Cic., Att., IV, 2, 4. *Scire igitur studeo quid egeris*, Cic., Att., XIII, 20, 3. *Dareus equestri proelio decernere optabat*, Curt., III, 26 (Infinitive with *optare* not observed in Cicero or

Caesar). Cato ipse iam servire quam pugnare mavult, Cic., Att., VII, 15, 2. Nolui deesse ne tacitae quidem flagitationi tuae, Cic., Top., I, 5. Rem immaturam aperire noluerat, Liv., I, 5, 5.

(a) With verbs of *Willing* and *Wishing*, etc., when the subject of the dependent verb is *different* from that of the *leading* verb (to *wish*, etc.):

1. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used in the dependent clause when the leading predicate expresses only *mental state*, without the idea of *striving after*, or of *ordering*.

Ex.—Volam illum scire ex te me id fecisse, Cic., Att., II, 25, 1. Nolo te permovei, Cic., Att., I, 18, 2. Natura utrumque facere me voluit, Sen., Ser., De Ot., V, 8. Nolunt sine salebra esse iuncturam, Sen., Ep., XIX, 5, 15. Scripta nostra nusquam malo esse quam apud te, Cic., Att., XIII, 22, 3. Te tua frui virtute cupimus, Cic., Brut., XCVII, 331. Ego volebam vel cupiebam potius esse eum nobiscum, Cic., Att., X, 16, 1.

2. The Subjunctive with *ut* is used with a verb of *Wishing*, etc., when the subjects are *different*, to express the *end* of the leading verb as one *striven after*, *earnestly desired*, and *aimed at*, or when the idea of *wishing* is stated with *more or less of authority*.

Ex.—Velim ut tibi amicus sit, Cic., Att., X, 16, 1. Quin etiam necesse erit cupere et optare, ut quam saepissime peccet amicus, etc., Cic., Am., XVI, 59. Numquam ego a dis immortalibus optabo, ut Catilinam ducere exercitum hostium audiatis, Cic., Cat., II, 7, 15. Opto ut beatus sis, Cic., Att., X, 16, 1.

REM. 1. When the subjects of the leading and dependent verbs are *different* the *Accusative with the Infinitive* is much more *usual* than *ut* with the Subjunctive.

REM. 2. In this connection is to be observed the *Potential Subjunctive velim* = *I would like*, followed by the Subjunctive *without ut*.

Ex.—Tu me velim certiores facias quid de meis mandatis egeris, Cic., Att., I, 15, 2. Tu velim saepe ad nos scribas, Cic., Att., I, 12, 4.

(b) When the subject of the leading verb is the *same* with that of the dependent verb, in the dependent clause occur, apart from the simple Infinitive as above stated (§3):

1. The Accusative (*Reflexive Pronoun*) and the Infinitive. In this case the attainment of the matter wished in the Infinitive is not entirely within the *control of the subject*.

Ex.—Vult se esse carum suis, Cic., Sen., XX, 73. Ego me Phidiam esse malle quam vel optimum tignarium, Cic., Brut., 257. Cupio me esse clementem, cupio in tantis rei publicae periculis me non dissolutum videri, Cic., Cat., I, 2, 4.

**Timoleon maluit se diligi quam metui**, Nep., Tim., 3. **Malebat se capitis periculum adire, quam Timotheo deesse**, Nep., Tim., 4. **Is postulat se Romae absolvi**, Cic., Verr., III, 60, 138. **Omnes homines, qui sese student praeferre ceteris animalibus**, Sal., Cat., 1.

**REM. 1.** With the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*, when the subjects are the same, compare the *Nominative with the Infinitive* with, perhaps, no appreciable difference in sense.

**Ex.—Cupio me clementem esse.** (Compare **Cupio clemens esse.**) **Qui ipse augur vellet esse**, Cic., Div., I, 3, 5. (Cf. **Qui ipse se augurem vellet esse.**)

**2.** With the *same* subject in the leading and dependent clauses the latter is rarely introduced by *ut* and the Subjunctive. Here the dependent action is presented as one to *be earnestly striven after* and *desired* by the common subject.

**Ex.—Quo in genere est in primis senectus, quam ut adipiscantur omnes optant**, Cic., Sen., II, 4.

**94.** With the verbs *sino* and *patior* the construction is the *Accusative* with the *Infinitive* and rarely *ut* and the Subjunctive.

**Ex.—Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt**, Caes., B. G., IV, 2. **Transalpinas gentes oleam et vitem serere non sinimus**, Cic., Rep., III, 9, 16. **Eo die tabernacula statui passus non est**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 81. **Postulavit ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur**, Caes., B. G., I, 43. **Patieris Demetrium mentiri, rursusque me exoruciari?** Curt., VI, 44. **Cupido famae nihil invium, nihil remotum videri sinebat**, Curt., IX, 7. **Nec dii siverint ut hoc decus mei capitis aut demere mihi quisquam aut condonare possit**, Curt., V, 25. **Illud natura non patitur, ut aliorum spoliis nostras facultates, copias, opes augeamus**, Cic., Off., III, 5, 22.

**REM. 1.** Observe the Subjunctive *without ut* associated with *sino* usually in the Imperative. The phrase expresses an Imperative relation.

**Ex.—Sine me expurgem atque illum huc coram adducam**, Ter., And., 900. **Sinite abeam si possum uiua a uobis**, Pl., M. G., 1084. **Sine, priusquam complexum accipio, sciam, ad hostem an ad filium venerim**, Liv., II, 40, 5.

**95.** With the verbs *concedere* and *permittere* the construction is the *Dative* with *ut* and the Subjunctive, and the *Dative* with the *Infinitive*; also the *Dative* with *Accusative* and *Infinitive*. The verb *concedere* in the sense of *to concede*, *to confess*, allows the *Accusative* with the *Infinitive*. The *Accusative* and the *Infinitive* with *permittere* is late.

**Ex.—Puella petiit a matertera ut sibi concederet, paulisper ut in eius sella requiesceret**, Cic., Div., I, 46, 104. **Quis tibi concedit non melius se habere eum?** Sen., Ep., XVI, 4, 12. **Gabinio Secundo cognomen Gauchius usurpare**

*concessit*, Suet., Claud., 24. *In his rebus si suspicio reperta erit, culpam inesse concedam*, Cic., Rosc. Am., XXVIII, 76. *Concedite me non pro me magis munere isto quam pro collega fungi*, Plin. Min., Pan., 90. *Primum, quis Antonio permisit ut partes faceret?* Cic., De Or., II, XC, 366. *Non permitto mihi ne eas quidem opiniones praeterire*, Sen., N. Q., VI, 19, 1. *Iudicibus sine mea argumentatione coniecturam facere permittam*, Cic., Verr., V, 9, 22. *Permitte mihi uti verbis publicis*, Sen., Ep., VI, 7, 1. *Plus enim sperare modestia tibi tua non permittit*, Sen., Ep., X, 3, 7. *Ad cuius spectaculum commeare in urbem non solum praesidibus provinciarum permisit, verum etiam exsulibus quibusdam*, Suet., Claud., 17. *Lolliae Paullinae cineres reportari, sepulcrumque exstrui permisit*, Tac., Ann., XIV, 12. *Tiberius non in sua acta iurari permisit*, Tac., Ann., I, 72. (*Observe Infinitive Passive without definite subject.*)

96. The constructions with *suadere* and *persuadere* are to be observed. With *suadere* occur the *Dative* and *Infinitive*; the *Dative* with the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*; the *Dative* with *ut* and the Subjunctive; the *Accusative* with *ut* and the Subjunctive (rare). With *persuadere* occur the *Dative* with the *Infinitive*; the *Dative* with the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*; the *Dative* with *ut* and the Subjunctive. When the *Accusative* with the *Infinitive* occurs the verbs have the force of verbs *sentendi* and the characteristic sense is *to convince*. With *ut* and the Subjunctive the *dominant* idea is *to persuade, to admonish*.

Ex.—*Nemo suaserit studiosis dicendi adolescentibus in gestu discendo histrionum more elaborare*, Cic., De Or., I, 59, 251. *Huic omittere totum actionum laborem suadebo*, Quint., XI, 2, 49. *Nisi mihi suasissem nihil esse in vita magnopere expetendum, etc.*, Cic., Arch., VI, 14. *Marcoellus dixit: Suadere Prisco ne supra principem scanderet*, Tac., H., IV, 8. *Nam postea me ut sibi essem legatus non solum suavit, verum etiam rogavit*, Cic., Prov. Cons., XVII, 42. *Persuasit ei tyrannidis facere finem*, Nep., Dion, 3. *Nemo mihi umquam persuadebit patrem tuum tanta esse conatum*, Cic., Sen., XXIII, 82. *Velim tibi persuadeas me tuis consiliis nullo loco defuturum esse*, Cic., Fam., XI, 5, 3. *Huic persuadet, uti ad hostes transeat*, Caes., B. G., III, 18. Cf. Nep., Them., 2 (*suadere*, *Dative ut* and Subjunctive). Nep., Eum., 6 (*suadere*, *Dative ne* and Subjunctive). Nep., Lys., 3 (*suadere*, *Dative ut* and Subjunctive). Curt., VIII, 9 (*suadere*, *Dative ut* and Subjunctive). Sal., Jug., 26 (*suadere*, *Dative ut* and Subjunctive). Curt., VII, 43 (*suadere*, *Dative* and *Infinitive*). Nep., Dat., 10 (*persuadere*, *Dative ut* and Subjunctive). Nep., Epam., 7 (*persuadere*, *Dative ut* and Subjunctive). Cf. Nep., Pelop., 5; Ages., 2; Eum., 2; Hann., 8; Sal., Jug., 32 (*persuadere*, *Dative ut* and Subjunctive). Sal., Jug., 32 (*persuadere*, *Dative ne* and Subjunctive).

97. With the verbs *iubere* and *vetare* the *regular* and *ruling* construction is the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*.

Ex.—*Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit*, Caes., B. G.,

II, 11. **Portas murosque asservari iubet**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 21. **Legatos Caesar discedere, nisi munitis castris, vetuerat**, Caes., B. G., II, 20. **Castra vallo muniri vetuit**, Caes., B. Civ., 41. **Vetare** with *ne* and Subjunctive is poetical. **Ne quis humasse velit Aiace, vetas cur?** Hor., Sat., II, 3, 187.

(a) These verbs occur with the *simple Infinitive*, in a *general sense*, without a definite subject, or when the *subject* is *derived* from the context.

Ex.—**Arbitramur prudentiam esse legem, cuius ea vis sit, ut recte facere iubeat, vetet delinquere**, Cic., Leg., I, 6, 19. **Tabulae peccare vetantes** (= *quae peccare vetant*), Hor., Epist., II, 1, 23. **Vetat Pythagoras in iussu dei de statione vitae decedere**, Cic., Sen., XX, 73. **Hinc, inquit, Iuppiter optimus maximus resistere atque iterare pugnam iubet**, Liv., I, 12, 7 (bids a halt and renewal of the fight, or the subject (*vos*) may be supplied from *Romani*). **Quorum e numero primus est ausus Leontinus Gorgias in conventu poscere quaestionem, id est, iubere dicere qua de re quis vellet audire**, Cic., Fin., II, 1, 1. **Signa canere iubet**, Sal., Cat., 59. **Praeconibus circummissis pronuntiari iubent**, etc., Caes., B. G., V, 51 (subject of *pronuntiari* not named).

(b) With these verbs the subject, while not expressed, is *supplied from the context*, or *general sense of the sentence*. This principle may explain the Infinitive Passive.

Ex.—**Duces eorum pronuntiare iusserunt**, Caes., B. G., V, 34 (= *centuriones pronuntiare iusserunt*). **Hoc into consilio toto flumine Hiberno naves conquirere et Octogesam adduci iubent**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 61. **Castra secundum mare iuxta Pompeium munire iussit**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 65. **Ambiorix pronuntiari iubet**, Caes., B. G., V, 34 (= *praecones pronuntiare*, etc.).

REM. 1. The verb *iubere* is rarely construed with the *Dative* and the *Infinitive*; the *Dative* and *Accusative* with the *Infinitive*; with the *Dative* (or *Accusative*) and *ut* with the Subjunctive. The construction of *ut* and the Subjunctive is the language of *law* and *military authority*.

Ex.—**Hae mihi litterae Dolabellae iubent ad pristinas cogitationes reverti**, Cic., Att., IX, 13, 2. (Texts vary. Cf. *Hae me . . . reverti*.) **Tandem suis rex corporibus et cultu feminarum abstinere iussit**, Curt., V, 20. Cf. **Qui interroganti scribae quid fieri signis vellet, deos iratos Tarentinis relinqui iussit**, Liv. XXVII, 16, 8. **Quibus iusserat, ut instantibus comminus resisterent, refugos non sequerentur**, Tac., Ann., XIII, 40. **Senatus decrevit populusque iussit ut statuas quaestores demoliendas locarent**, Cic., Verr., II, 67, 161. **I intro, Pinacium, iube famulos rem diuinam mihi adparent**, Pl., Stich., 397 (observe omission of *ut*).

(c) The verb *imperare* is construed with the *Dative* and *ut* with the Subjunctive; also with the *Accusative* and *Infinitive Passive*.

Ex.—**Naves longas decem Gaditanis ut facerent imperavit**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 18. **His imperat ut simulatione timoris paulatim cedant ac pedem referant**,

Caes., B. Civ., II, 40. **Ad eum locum fluminis navibus iunctis pontem imperant fieri**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 61. **Caesar magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat**, Caes., B. G., V, 7. **Cratero praecipit ut plures de industria ignes fieri imperet**, Curt., V, 14.

REM. 1. The translation of *iubere* = *to bid*, is to be observed.

Ex.—**Sperare nos amici iubent.**

REM. 2. The verb *simulare* = *to pretend*, is usually construed with the Accusative of a Reflexive Pronoun and the Infinitive. The Accusative and the Infinitive is translated as the *simple* Infinitive.

Ex.—**Se proficisci ad Caesarem simulavit**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 21 (= he pretended to depart, etc.). **Quam (partem) se petere simulabat**, Curt., VIII, 46. **Id se Lacedaemoniorum causa facere simulabat**, Nep., Lys., 1. **Simulans a Dareo sese esse praemisum**, Curt., IV, 5 (= pretending to have been sent forward, etc.).

98. The Accusative with the Infinitive occurs with *prohibere*, *impedire*, *cogere*, *insuescere*, *assuefacere*, *consuefacere*. The Simple Infinitive with *assuescere* and *consuescere* is to be observed.

Ex.—**Hiemare Dyrrhacii constituerat, ut mare transire Caesarem prohiberet**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 5. **Ignes fieri prohibuit**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 30. **Me et hunc Sulpicium impedit pudor ab homine omnium gravissimo haec exquirere**, Cic., De Or., I, 35, 163. **Ex utraque munitione deiectos terga vertere coegerunt**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 63. **Est hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant**, Caes., B. G., IV, 5. **Plurimum intererat insuescere militem nostrum non solum parata victoria frui, sed pati taedium**, etc., Liv., V, 6, 1. **Equos eodem remanere vestigio assuefecerunt**, Caes., B. G., IV, 2. **Admoneri iussit, ut si cordi vestis esset, conficere eam neptes suas assuefaceret**, Curt., V., 9. **Multitudinem paulatim consuefacit ordines habere**, Sal., Jug., 80. **Naves habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt**, Caes., B. G., III, 8. **Ut fremitum assuesceret voce vincere**, Cic., Fin., V, 2, 5.

REM. 1. The *Simple* Infinitive with the Passive of *prohibere* is to be noted.

Ex.—**I sensisse Atticos credo, quia Athenis affectus movere etiam per praecnem prohibebatur orator**, Quint., VI, 2, 7. **Pugnare prohibebatur**, Cic., Div., II, 8, 21.

REM. 2. Other constructions with *prohibere*, *impedire*, *cogere*, and *vetare* will be given in the proper context.

99. The Accusative with the Infinitive occurs with verbs and expressions which denote *Emotion* and *Feeling*. With the Accusative and Infinitive not only does the sense of the leading verb find its complement in the Accusative and Infinitive, but the leading verb is used as

**a Verb of Saying.** Such verbs are *angi animo (animi), dolere, gaudere, gloriari, indignari, laetari, mirari, admirari, queri, conqueri, aegre (graviter, moleste) ferre*, etc.

**Ex.**—*Angor animo non consilii, non ingenii, non auctoritatis armis egere rempublicam*, Cic., Brut., II, 7. *Accedebat quod suos ab se liberos abstractos (esse) obsidum nomine dolebant*, Caes., B. G., III, 2. *Se alterum fore Sullam inter suos gloriatur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 4. *Is inter suos queri atque indignari coepit regem ad causam dicendam evocari*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 108. *Quem esse natum et nos gaudemus et haec civitas, dum erit, laetabitur*, Cic., Am., IV, 14. *Si quis vestrum, iudices, miratur me ad accusandum descendere*, Cic., Caecil., I, 1. *Admiratus sum, mentionem te hereditatum ausum esse facere*, Cic., Phil., II, 16, 42. *Queruntur se (virtutes) a beata vita esse relictas*, Cic., Tusc., V, 5, 14. *Barbarum sibi appositum (esse), ipse quodam libello conqueritur*, Suet., Cl., 2. *Si quis aegre ferat se pauperem esse*, etc., Cic., Tusc., IV, 28, 59. *Hoc ab isto praedone ereptum esse graviter et acerbe homines ferebant*, Cic., Verr., I, 58, 152. *Te de praedio Oviae exerceri moleste fero*, Cic., Att., XIII, 22, 4.

**REM. 1.** It is *not easy* to bring out, in the translation, the force of these verbs as Verbs of Saying and Thinking with the Accusative and Infinitive.

**REM. 2.** The construction with these verbs of *quod* and the *Finite Verb* will be presented in the proper context.

**100.** In the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive, according to the *translation*, the Latin Passive Infinitive of an Impersonal verb or of a verb used impersonally *cannot have a Subject Accusative*.

**Ex.**—*Certum est nobis moriendum esse. It is certain that we have to die. Not Certum est nos moriendos esse. Habitari ait Xenophanes in luna*, Cic., Fin., II, 39, 123. Xenophanes says that the moon is inhabited. *Not lunam habitari*.

**REM. 1.** It should be noted that with the Infinitive of a so-called *Impersonal* verb, a simple Infinitive or Accusative with the Infinitive *may be associated as Subject Accusative*.

**Ex.**—*Caesar nullum spatium perterritis dare oportere existimans milites cohortatus est, ut, etc.*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 95. *Negabat ullam vocem inimiciorum amicitiae potuisse reperiri quam eius, qui dixisset ita amare oportere, ut si aliquando esset osurus*, Cic., Am., XVI, 59. *Si illustris et perlucida stella apparuerit significari caelum esse tenue*, Cic., Div., I, 57, 130. Cf. *Perfice, si potes, ut ne moriendum quidem esse miserum putem*, Cic., Tusc., I, 8, 15.

**101.** It should be carefully noted that with reference to an indefinite subject of the Infinitive *aliquem (any one) aliquos (any) (rare)* which is not expressed, a *Predicate Attributive (Adjective or Participle)* or a

*Predicate Appositive* with the Infinitive is written in the Accusative as decided by and in agreement with the *unexpressed aliquem* or *aliquos*.

Ex.—**Nam si, quod raro fit, id portentum putandum est, sapientem esse portentum est,** Cic., Div., II, 28, 61. **Quid est enim aliud esse versutum?** Cic., Fin., II, 17, 54. **Quomodo disertum haberi, pulcrum et gloriosum, sic contra mutum et elinguem videri, deforme habebatur,** Tac., Or., 36. **Est enim demum vera felicitas felicitate dignum videri,** Plin. Min., Pan., 74. **Magnis in laudibus tota fere fuit Graecia, victorem Olympiae citari,** Nep., Praef. **Mori praestat, quam precario imperatorem esse,** Curt., IX, 11. **Minus est imperatorem et Caesarem et Augustum quam omnibus imperatoribus et Caesaribus et Augustis esse meliorem,** Plin. Min., Pan., 30. **Sed satius est purgatos esse quam suspectos,** Curt., VII, 6.

REM. 1. A reference to the *implied aliquem (aliquos)* is made by the *Reflexive*.

Ex.—**Calamitatem aut propriam suam aut temporum queri mediocris est animi,** Caes., B. Civ., III, 20. **Hoc est ipsum esse contra se copiosum et disertum,** Cic., Div., II, 40, 83. **Bellum est sua vitia nosse,** Cic., Att., II, 17, 2.

REM. 2. The Indefinite Second Person (*you = one, we, people*), as a rule, requires the Subjunctive. A reference to this Indefinite second Person is made by *te, tuus*, but translated by the third Person, *one, one's*. The translation of the Indefinite second Person by the third Person (*one*) should not mislead to the use of the Pronoun of the third Person in referring to it. In this office the Second Person is retained.

Ex.—**Quid dulcius quam habere quicum omnia audeas sic loqui ut tecum?** Cic., Am., VI, 22 (What more pleasant than to have one with whom one ventures so to talk as with *one's self*) (not *secum*). **Non enim neque tu possis, quamvis licet excellas, omnes tuos ad honores amplissimos perducere,** Cic., Am., XX, 73.

**Profecto hoc uere dicunt; si apsis uspiam,  
Aut ibi si cesses, euenire ea satius est  
Quae in te uxor dicit et quae in animo cogitat  
Irata quam illa quae parentes propitii.**—Ter., Ad., 28.

102. The Accusative with the Infinitive occurs in *exclamations* and in *exclamatory questions* with and without *ne*. In either case there is expressed *astonishment, indignation, and complaint* as to the matter of the sentence. This presents the *simplest* and *purest* form of the *Accusative with the Infinitive* as the complement of what is said or thought, with the subject of the Infinitive as the *outer* and the Infinitive as the *inner* object. It should be borne in mind that the *matter of thought, feeling, or statement—what is thought, felt, or said—in the*



Accusative with the Infinitive, may be reproduced and stated as the *subject* or *object* of a verb, as has been seen.

Ex.—*Te ista virtute, fide, probitate in tantas aerumnas propter me incidisse!* Cic., *Fam.*, XIV, 1, 1. *Huncine hominem tantis delectatum esse nugis?* Cic., *Div.*, II, 13, 30. *Esse locum tam prope Romam, ubi multi sint qui Vatinius numquam viderint?* Cic., *Att.*, II, 6, 2. *Nonne timuisse, si minus vim deorum hominumque famam, at illam noctem facesque illas nuptiales?* Cic., *Clu.*, VI, 15 (observe *nonne?*). *Tene, cum ab iis, qui se ludicum numero haberi volunt, evaseris, ad eos venire, qui, etc.?* Cic., *Tusc.*, I, 41, 98. *Meamne hic in via hospitam tractatam et ludificatam, ingenuam et liberam?* Pl., *M. G.*, 489. *Mene incepto desistere victam, non posse Italia Teucrorum avertere regem?* Verg., *Aen.*, I, 37.

103. It has been seen (56) that an object in the Accusative is defined by the Present (Active) Participles with verbs of *Perception*, of *Conception*, and of *Representation*. Here the object is presented as *doing* the action expressed by the Participle or in the *state* indicated by it. To express this relation in the Passive, the sense of a Present Passive Participle is necessary, but in Latin there is no Present Passive Participle. Hence to present the object as suffering or as being affected by the Action, the Present *Infinitive Passive* must be employed.

Ex.—*Civem Romanum virgis caedi vidi.*

**The Double Nominative—The Nominative with the Infinitive.**

104. With *esse* and many other verbs not only the *Subject* but the *Predicate Appositive* and the *Predicate Attributive* are expressed in the Nominative. With the *Subject* and *Predicate Appositive* in the Nominative there is furnished the construction of the Double Nominative. It occurs:

(a) With *Intransitive* verbs *to be*, *to turn out*, *to remain*, *to continue*, etc., as *esse*, *evadere*, *existere*, *nasci*, *manere*, *apparere*, etc.

Ex.—*Cicero consul est. . . Galba imperator exstitit*, Suet., *Galb.*, 6. *M. Brutus homo summus evaserat*, Cic., *Brut.*, XLVII, 175. *Numidae quieti manserunt*, Liv., XXII, 48, 4.

(b) With the *Passive* verbs *to be chosen*, *to be appointed*, *to be elected*, etc., as *creari*, *declarari*, *fieri*, *deligi*, etc.

Ex.—*Consules creantur Iulius Caesar et P. Servilius*, Caes., *B. Civ.*, III, 1. *Gyges repente anuli beneficio rex exortus est*, Cic., *Off.*, III, 9, 38. *Cyrus rex delectus est*, Just., I, 5. *T. Larcus dictator, Sp. Cassius magister equitum creati sunt*, Liv., II, 18, 5. *P. Lucretius et P. Valerius Publicola consules facti (sunt)*, Liv., II, 15, 1.

(c) With *Passive* verbs *to be named, to be called, to be judged, etc.,* as *vocari, appellari, nominari, iudicari, etc.*

Ex.—*Arx oppidi Cadmea nominatur*, Nep., Pel., 1. *Tempus actionis opportunum Latine appellatur occasio*, Cic., Off., I, 40, 142. *Iudicatur hostis Antonius*, Cic., Phil., III, 6, 14. *Liber Oeconomicus inscribitur*, Cic., Off., II, 24, 87. *Genus hominum quod Helotae vocatur*, Nep., Paus., 3.

(d) In the construction of the *Accusative with the Infinitive* the *Double Nominative* becomes the *Double Accusative* with the *Infinitive*.

Ex.—*Creati sunt consules L. Aebutius, P. Servilius*, Liv., III, 6, 1.

*Dicunt creatos esse consules L. Aebutium, P. Servilium*,

105. When a *Verb* associated with the *Double Nominative* is to be expressed in the *Infinitive*, the *Double Nominative* is retained and the leading subject becomes the *subject of the Principal Verb*. The *Infinitive* with a *Predicate Appositive* (Noun) or *Predicate Attributive* (Adjective or Participle) in the *Nominative* is called the *Nominative with the Infinitive*. In all such cases the leading or governing verb is *Personal*. The *Nominative* with the *Infinitive* occurs:

(a) With the *Passive* (*Personal*) of a verb of *Saying* or *Thinking*.

Ex.—*Aristaeus inventor olei esse dicitur*, Cic., Verr., IV, 57, 128. *Aristides unus omnium iustissimus fuisse traditur*, Cic., Sest., LXVII, 141. *De iis, qui nunc petunt, Caesar certus (esse) putatur*, Cic., Att., I, 1, 2. *Apud tuos Mamertinos inveniris improbissima ratione esse praedatus*, Cic., Verr., IV, 1, 3.

(b) With verbs which signify *must, ought, to venture (dare), to be able, to begin, to continue, to cease, to learn, to wish, etc.,* as *debere, audere, posse, coepisse, incipere, velle, nolle, etc.*

Ex.—*Veterrima quaeque, ut ea vina, quae vetustatem ferunt, esse debent suavissima*, Cic., Am., XIX, 67. *Nec tamen omnes possunt esse Scipiones aut Maximi*, Cic., Sen., V, 13. *Dionysius a Zenone fortis esse didicit*, Cic., Tusc., II, 25, 60. *Dionysius crudelior esse coepit*, Nep., Dion, 3. *Hoc numquam tuum desinet esse*, Plin. Min., I, 3, 4. *Spectator malueris esse, quam lector*, Plin. Min., V, 4, 4. *Ut perseveres esse fortis, rogo ne tibi contra rationem aetatis tantum laboris iniungas*, Plin. Min., VII, 23, 1. *Quorum reges esse fastidiunt*, Curt., IV, 55. *Incipies forsitan iustus esse rex*, Curt., VII, 7. *Vos liberi esse vultis*, Sal., Iug., 31. *Populus Romanus beneficii et iniuriae memor esse solet*, Sal., Iug., 104. *Desinet malus esse, si ad illum virtus intraverit*, Sen., Ben., V, 12, 5.

REM. 1. With the *Infinitive Passive* the forms *coeptus esse, desitus esse* are much more usual than *coepisse* and *desinere*.

Ex.—*Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coepit essent, agere cum eo*, Caes., B. G., I, 47. *Undique in*

**murum lapides iaci coepti sunt**, Caes., B. G., II, 6. **Materia coepta erat comportari**, Caes., B. G., IV, 18. **De republica consuli coepti sumus**, Cic., Div., II, 2, 7. **Veteres orationes post nostras a plerisque legi sunt desitae**, Cic., Brut., XXXII, 123. **Desitum est videri quicquam in socios iniquum, cum exstisset in cives tanta crudelitas**, Cic., Off., II, 8, 27.

**REM. 2.** It should be remembered that with the Infinitive Passive the *simple* forms *coepti* and *desii* are not *excluded*. In this connection, however, the Passive Infinitive, in some cases, may be interpreted as the Infinitive of a *Reflexive (Middle) Verb*.

**Ex.**—(Senatus) **ordine consuli coepit**, Liv., II, 29, 6. **In patientiorem campum pandi (= se pandere) agmen coepit**, Liv., XXII, 4, 4. **Id ego hoc anno desisse dubitari certum habeo**, Liv., V, 3, 2. **Marius maior atque clarior haberi coepit**, Sal., Jug., 92. **Streptitus desierat audiri**, Curt., VIII, 41.

**REM. 3.** With the Passive Infinitive *feri* the simple form *coepti* is quite frequent.

**Ex.**—**Plura fieri ludicia coeperunt**, Cic., Brut., XXVII, 106. **Quae rapinae fieri coeperunt**, Cic., Fam., XIV, 18. **Iniuriae a primoribus fieri coepere**, Liv., II, 21, 6. But **Deditio coepta fieri est**, Liv., VIII, 2, 6. **Tum passim fuga coepta Samnitium fieri**, Liv., IX, 43, 16.

**REM. 4.** It is to be carefully noted that a verb which is construed personally with a Predicate appositive or a Predicate attributive and the Infinitive is construed personally with the simple Infinitive, that is, with the Infinitive without a Predicate appositive or Predicate attributive.

**Ex.**—**Nos bene emissee indicati sumus**, Cic., Att., I, 13, 6. **Thermus cum Silano contendere existimatur**, Cic., Att., I, 1, 2. **Aeschines adiecisse fertur**, Plin. Min., II, 3, 10.

In speaking of the *Personal Passive* of verbs of Saying and Thinking it should be remembered that such verbs are meant as occur *personally* in the Passive with the Infinitive, either with or without a Predicate Appositive or Predicate Attributive. Such verbs are often *best translated impersonally*. The translation should not mislead to the use of the Impersonal verb, followed by the Accusative and the Infinitive, as, It is said that your friend has come, not *Dicitur amicum tuum venisse*, but *Dicitur amicus tuus venisse* = *Your friend is said to have come*.

(c) The following verbs of Saying or Thinking are used personally in the Passive with the Infinitive and a Predicate Appositive or Predicate Attributive in the Nominative, also without a Predicate Appositive or Predicate Attributive: *Arguor, dicor, existimor, feror, iubeor,*

*perhibeor, prohibeor, putor, reperior, sinor, videor, vetor*, also *intellegor, prodor, narror, trador, invenior, credor, promittor, probor, nuntior, convincor, negor, iudicor, affirmor, sentior, clueo*, etc.

Ex.—*Ius amicitiae deserere arguebantur*, Cic., Am., X, 35. *Secundum quietem visus (esse) ei dicitur draco*, Cic., Div., II, 66, 135. *Thermus cum Silano contendere existimatur*, Cic., Att., I, 1, 2. *In Italiam reductus existimabor*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 18. *Themistocles fertur Seriphio cuidam respondisse*, Cic., Sen., III, 8. *Consules iubentur subitarium scribere exercitum*, Liv., III, 30, 3. *Tyndaridae fratres adiutores fuisse perhibentur*, Cic., Tusc., I, 12, 28. *Athenia affectus monere per praeconem prohibebatur orator*, Quint., VI, 1, 7. *Acilius prudens esse in lure civili putabatur*, Cic., Am., II, 6. *Illi di hinc a nobis profecti (esse) in caelum reperientur*, Cic., Tusc., I, 13, 29. *Hic accusare eum moderate, a quo ipse nefarie accusatur, per senatus auctoritatem non est situs*, Cic., Sest., XLIV, 95. *Esse omnium iudicio inferiores videbantur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 47. *Nullum aliud tempus ad conandum habituri videbantur*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 6. *Simonides vetitus est navigare*, Cic., Div., II, 65, 134. *Accisae iam reliquiae consedissee intellegebantur*, Tac., Ann., I, 61. *Ibi Hesperidum horti fuisse produntur*, Plin. Mai., XIX, 63. *Quae procul ab oculis facta narrabantur*, Liv., XXXIX, 6, 6. *Ipse etiam optimus augur fuisse traditur*, Cic., Div., I, 2, 3. *Remedia autem haec communia inveniuntur*, Plin. Mai., XXVI, 107. *Ut (Result) orationes nostrae varietatem duarum, contextum unius habuisse credantur*, Plin. Min., IV, 9, 13. *Vomitibus canum illitus ventri aquam trahere promittitur*, Plin. Mai., XXX, 105. *Stipulatus de Marciano quinquaginta milia denariorum probabatur*, Plin. Min., II, 11, 23. Cf. *Liberati probarentur*, Plin. Min., Ep. Plin. et Trai., XXXI, 4. *Pons in Hiberno prope effectus nuntiabatur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 62. *Decretum ut, qui adversus Romanos dixisse quid convincerentur, capitis condemnarentur*, Liv., XLV, 10, 14. *Picus Martius in Tarentino agro negatur esse*, Plin. Mai., X, 77. *Negabatur fecisse*, Plin. Min., IV, 22, 1. *Ex eo negantur ibi ranae coaxare*, Suet., Aug., 94. *Solus hominum artem ipsam fecisse artis opere iudicatur*, Plin. Mai., XXXIV, 55. *Lauriotis utilissima (esse) oculis affirmatur*, Plin. Mai., XXXIV, 132. *Alter arma deponens anhelare sentitur*, Plin. Mai., XXXV, 71. *Atridae duo fratres client fecisse facinus maximum*, Plaut., Bacch., 920.

REM. 1. While it is not practicable to name the verbs of *Saying* and *Thinking* which, in the Passive, are used personally, that is, with the Nominative and Infinitive, this may be done with approximate exactness. The verbs *arguor, iubeor, sinor, vetor, videor*, are used personally throughout—that is, with the Nominative and Infinitive in all Moods and Tenses.

Ex.—*Occidisse patrem Sex. Roscius arguitur*, Cic., Rosc. Amer., XIII, 37. *Pericles Ephesius auctor illius iniuriae fuisse arguebatur*, Cic., Verr., I, 33, 85. *Is maiores copias opperiri iubetur*, Tac., Ann., XIII, 36. *Classis praefectus ante omnia mare a piraticis classibus vindicare iussus est*, Curt., IV, 34. *Vis earum suci tantum gratia exire sinitur*, Plin. Mai., XIV, 10. *Strepitum hostilium armorum exaudire mihi videor*, Curt., III, 13. *Vitam beneficio Caesaris*

**habere videbor**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 18. **Circiter milla quindecim oecidisse videbantur**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 99. **Castra Alexandri magno ignis fulgore collucere ei visa sunt**, Curt., III, 6. **Tolerabilis labor visus est**, Curt., IV, 30. **Arriovistus tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur**, Caes., B. G., I, 33. The Dative of the Person with the personal **videri** is to be observed; **as, Mihi videor** = It seems to me that; **Sibi (ei) videtur** = It seems to him that, etc.

**REM. 2.** Apart from the verbs named (Rem. 1), the other verbs of *Saying and Thinking* in the Passive, notably the verbs *existimor, putor, perhibeor*, are, as a rule, construed personally, that is, with the Nominative and Infinitive, in the Simple Tenses, but as a rule impersonally (with the Accusative and Infinitive) in the Compound Tenses.

**Ex.**—**Apud nos, re vera sicut sunt, mercenarii scribae existimantur**, Nep., Eum., 1. **Summam scientiam rei militaris habere existimabantur**, Caes., B. G., III, 23. **In Italiam reductus existimabor**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 18. (**Dixit**) **cunctari se ne . . . destituere existimaretur**, Suet., Aug., 56. **Eandem scientiam Aegyptii consecuti putantur**, Cic., Div., I, 1, 2. **Quorum interpres dicturus in senatu putabatur**, Cic., Div., II, 54, 110. **Perhibetur tantum ceteris praestitisse ut**, etc., Cic., Rep., II, 2, 4. **Neque existimandum est (Philonem) architecti potius artificio disertum quam oratoris fuisse**, Cic., De Or., I, 14, 62. **Huic (insulae) milia passuum DCCC in longitudinem esse existimatur**, Caes., B. G., V, 13. Observe *impersonal existimatur*.

**REM. 3.** Observe the *Impersonal memoriae proditum est*.

**Ex.**—**Memoriae proditum est, magno consensu locum nusquam ei datum a suis civibus**, Cic., Sen., XVIII, 63. (Vid. Curt., V, 4; V, 5; VI, 1; VII, 33.)

**REM. 4.** The verb *dicor* occurs as a *personal* verb in the Simple Tenses and in the first, second, and third persons. As a *personal* verb, it occurs frequently in the *third person Present Indicative*. The verbs *feror* and *trador* occur as *personal* verbs in the third person singular and plural. The *personal ferebatur* occurs quite frequently. The verb *credor* also occurs quite frequently as a *personal* verb in the *Present and Imperfect Tenses third Person*.

**Ex.**—**Sed neque est heres eius, a quo accepisse mutuam dicor**, Quint., IV, 4, 6. **Sed O Palaemon, sancte Neptuni comes, Qui Herculis socius esse diceris**, Pl., Rud., 160. **Dicar princeps Aeolium carmen ad Italos deduxisse modos**, Hor., Od., III, 30, 10. **Tum secundum quietem visus ei dicitur draco**, Cic., Div., II, 66, 135. **Ptolemaeus sanatus dicitur et multi milites, qui, etc.**, Cic., Div., II, 66, 135. **Is primus et petisse regnum et orationem dicitur habuisse**, etc., Liv., I, 35, 2. **Capuae aut Vercellis, ubi nati dicuntur**, Tac., Or., 8. **Histriones diserte saltare dicantur**, Tac., Or., 26. **Themistocles fertur cuidam respondisse**, Cic., Sen., III, 8. **Saepius eadem postulanti fertur dixisse**, Sal., Jug., 64. **Narcissus prompsisse inter proximos ferebatur**, certam sibi perniciem, Tac., Ann., XII, 65. **Idem ferebatur Corbu-**

lonis virtutes criminatus, Tac., H., III, 6. Ipse etiam optimus augur fuisse traditur, Cic., Div., I, 2, 3. Inventa et arca ingens venenorum plena, quibus mox a Claudio demersis infecta maria traduntur, Suet., Calig., 49. Unde primum creditur Caecinae fides fluitasse, Tac., H., II, 93. Creditur potionatus a Caesonia uxore amatorio medicamento, Suet., Cal., 50. Is firmare Drusum credebatur, Tac., Ann., I, 27. Credebatur libertatem redditurus, Tac., Ann., I, 33. Quae composita credebantur, Tac., Ann., XVI, 17. Scriptitasse Othoni credebatur, Tac., H., II, 86. Perfidiae locum quaesisse credebatur, Tac., H., III, 4. Saturninus ad Vitellium scripsisse credebatur, Tac., H., III, 11. Metus instabat ne cunctanter exceperisse victoriam crederentur, Tac., H., II, 52.

REM. 5. The verb *creditur* occurs also as an *impersonal* verb (with Accusative and Infinitive) in the Simple Tenses. This is the rule in the Compound Tenses of *creditur*, less often in Simple Tenses, as also of *traditur*, and other verbs of *Saying* and *Thinking*. The personal use of the Compound Tenses of *dicor* and *credor* is rare, and need not be imitated.

EX.—*Credetur abesse ab eo culpam fietque ultro miserabilis*, Quint., XI, 1, 64. *Creditur Pythagorae auditorem fuisse Numam*, Liv., XL, 29, 8. *Galbam Africanum, Laelium doctos fuisse traditum est*, Cic., Tusc., I, 3, 5. *Epistolam scripsisse Sulla nomenclator dictus est*, Cic., Quint. Frat., I, 2, 9. *Non immerito ab hominibus aetatis suae regnare in iudiciis dictus est*, Quint., X, I, 112. *Libertorum potissimos veneno interfecisse creditus est*, Tac., Ann., XIV, 65. *Creditus est de celebranda Neronis memoria agitavisse*, Tac., H., I, 78. *Traditur* (*Impersonal*), Liv., I, 55, 3; V, 33, 2.

REM. 6. In the parenthetical clauses, *ut videtur* (*videbatur*), *ut dicitur* (*dicebatur*), it is not certain that the verbs are to be regarded as *uniformly impersonal*. In some cases they may be interpreted as personal with the Infinitive supplied from the context.

EX.—*Primis diebus, ut videbatur, libenter auditus, reliquis ad colloquium non admittitur*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 57 (here *ut videbatur* may be interpreted “as he appeared to have been” (*personal*), instead of “as it seemed” (*impersonal*)). *Locum domestici belli, ut videbatur, causa iam ante praeparaverant*, Caes., B. G., V, 9 (here *ut videbatur* is necessarily impersonal; as a *personal* verb we would have *ut videbantur*). *Navem frumentariam conscendit saepe, ut dicebatur, querens, etc.*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 96. (*Germani*) *ad eum in castra venerunt simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa*, Caes., B. G., IV, 13 (here *ut dicebatur* is necessarily impersonal).

REM. 7. With the verbs *dicor* and *videor*, and other verbs of *Saying* and *Thinking*, used personally (with the *Nominative* and *Infinitive*), when the dependent statement is continued, there is generally a transition in this from the *Nominative* and the *Infinitive* to the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*, that is, from the personal to the impersonal use of the

governing verb of Saying or Thinking. A change of subjects or change in the number of the same subject renders apparent the propriety of the change from the *personal* to the *impersonal* construction.

Ex.—**M. Papirius dicitur Gallo Scipione eburneo incusso iram movisse: atque ab eo initium caedis ortum, ceteros in sedibus suis trucidatos**, Liv., V, 41, 9. Observe change in subjects (*Papirius* to *initium* . . . *ceteros*).

**Forte ibi tum seges farris dicitur fuisse matura messi. . . Ita in vadis haesitantis frumenti acervos sedisse illitos limo**, Liv., II, 5, 3 (4).

**Visust in somnis pastor ad me appellere.**

**Pecus lanigerum eximia pulchritudine:**

**Duos consanguineos arietes inde eligi**, etc., Vid., Cic., Div., I, 22, 44,

**Mihi non videbatur quisquam esse beatus posse, in malis autem sapientem esse posse**, Cic., Tusc., V, 8, 22. Vid. Cic., Tusc., I, 47, 113, *dicitur*, etc.

REM. 8. The impersonal *videtur* is translated *it seems good*, *it seems well*, etc. In this impersonal form it occurs in all Tenses. The construction is, of course, the Accusative with the Infinitive.

Ex.—**Portae, quibus locis videtur, eruptionis causa in muro relinquuntur**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 15. **Dividamus, si tibi videtur, iniuriam a contumelia**, Sen., Const. Sap., V, 1. **Fenestras, quibus in locis visum est, ad tormenta mittenda in struendo reliquerunt**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 9. **Cum visum erit, distraham cum illo societatem**, Sen., Ep., VII, 3, 22. **Sed ipsemet, cum visum erit, profugiam**, Sen., Ep., XIX, 8, 21. **De ea re, si ei videretur, quo loco vellet, in colloquium veniret**, Nep., Dat., 11. **Ut ferirent, quando ita videretur, hortatus est**, Suet., Galb., 20.

REM. 9. The impersonal use of *videtur*, in the sense of *it seems*, it appears, is rare.

Ex.—**Non mihi videtur ad beate vivendum satis posse virtutem**, Cic., Tusc., V, 5, 12 (instead of *Non videtur . . . posse virtus*). Cf. Cic., Att., VII, 2, 3.

REM. 10. It has been stated that *videtur* in the sense of *it seems* is used personally, that is, with the Nominative and Infinitive, in all tenses and moods. If, however, *videtur* in this sense is associated with an impersonal Infinitive, this fact requires the impersonal *videtur*, as the dependent Infinitive cannot become personal.

Ex.—**Longius a vallo est acies Pompeii progressa, ut non iniquo loco posse dimicari videretur**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 85 (the impersonal *dimicari* requires the impersonal *videretur*). **Non alienum esse videtur de Galliae moribus proponere**, Caes., B. G., VI, 11. **Ut iis rerum omnium inopia pereundum videretur**, Caes., B. G., VI, 43. **Satis ambulatum videbatur**, Cic., Div., II, 3, 8. So with other verbs of *Thinking* which allow the Nominative and Infinitive, or the *personal* construction.

Ex.—**Ex quo etiam Pythagoris interdictum putatur**, Cic., Div., I, 30, 62 (the impersonal *interdictum* compels the impersonal *putatur*).

**The Dative with the Infinitive and a Predicate Appositive or Predicate Attributive.**

106. When a leading verb takes an indirect object (in the *Dative*), a *logical predication* of this object is made by the *Infinitive*. The Infinitive is here to be recognized as *logically a Predicate*. In its *grammatical* relation it is the *subject* or *object* of the *leading verb*, thus:

*Licet nemini contra patriam ducere exercitum.* In this sentence *ducere* is the *grammatical subject* of *licet*. But in the sentence, *Permitto tibi respondere*, the Infinitive is the *grammatical object* of *permitto*.

(a) The *grammatical indirect objects* (*nemini, tibi*) in the preceding and similar sentences and the *logical subjects* of the Infinitives are the same. In such cases the *Predicate Appositive* and the *Predicate Attributive* of the *logical subject* of the Infinitive are written in the *Dative*.

Ex.—*Licuit esse otioso Themistocli*, Cic., Tusc., I, 15, 33. *Illis timidis et ignavis esse licet*, Liv., XXI, 44, 8. *Quo in genere mihi neglegenti esse non licet*, Cic., Att., I, 17, 6. *Mittunt qui, ut (iis) incolumibus abire liceat, paciscantur*, Curt., VII, 43. *Quibus licet iam esse fortunatissimis*, Caes., B. G., VI, 35. *Atqui (iis) licet esse beatis*, Hor., Sat., I, 1, 19.

REM. 1. This use of the *Predicate Attributive* or the *Predicate Appositive* in the *Dative* is the result of *attraction*, that is, the *Subject Accusative* of the Infinitive is *omitted* and its *Predicate Attributive* or *Predicate Appositive* is *attracted* out of the *Accusative* into the *Dative* (the case of the indirect object of the leading verb), thus:

Ex.—*Licuit Themistocli eum esse otiosum*. Omit *eum* = *Licuit Themistocli esse otiosum*. *Attract otiosum* into the *Dative* to agree with *Themistocli* = *Licuit Themistocli esse otioso*.

REM. 2. The theory of the attraction of the *Predicate Attributive* or *Predicate Appositive* seems to be sustained by the fact that the *Subject Accusative* of the Infinitive may be omitted, while the *Predicate Attributive* or *Predicate Appositive* remains *unattracted* in the *Accusative*.

Ex.—*Si civi Romano licet esse Gaditanum*, Cic., Balb., XII, 29. *Is erat annus, quo per leges ei consulem fieri liceret*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 1.

(b) When the *Indirect Object* of the leading verb is indefinite (= *one, us, people*) it is not expressed in Latin. In this case the *Predicate attributive* or *Predicate appositive* remains *unattracted* in the



Accusative, *as a rule*, while its attraction into the Case (Dative) of the *unexpressed* object of the leading verb occurs.

Ex.—*Nam medios esse iam non licebit*, Cic., Att., X, 8, 4. *Vel pace vel bello clarum fieri licet*, Sall., Cat., 3. *But, Adice, quod e lege Chrysippi vivere otioso licet*, Sen., De. Otio, VII, 4.

107. The Dative with the Infinitive and Dative of *Predicate Attributive* or Predicate Appositive occur chiefly with *licet* in standard Prose: in addition, the same construction obtains with *necesse est*, and in late Latin and in Poetry with *vacat*, *contingit*, *satiush est*, *prodest*, *libet*.

Ex.—*Vobis necesse est fortibus viris esse*, Liv., XXI, 44, 8. *Quid eo infelicius, cui iam malo esse necesse est?* Sen., Clem., XIII, 3. *Non oderit anxium de fama ingenii, et cui esse deserto vacet*, Quint., XI, 1, 50. *Mihi fratrique meo destinari praetoribus contigit*, Vell., II, 124, 4. *Nescio an satius fuerit populo Romano Sicilia contento fuisse*, Flor., III, 12, 6. *Quo tibi, Tilli, fieri tribuno?* Hor., Sat., I, 6, 25 (= *Quo tibi profuit fieri tribuno?*). (*Mihi*) *exire e schola pauperi libuit*, Sen., Ep., XVIII, 5, 14. *Mediocribus esse poetis, non homines, non di concessere*, Hor., A. P., 372.

(a) The preceding verbs, including *licet*, occur with the Dative and the Infinitive alone, that is, without the Predicate Attributive or Predicate Appositive.

Ex.—*Licet mihi versibus eisdem adfari te, quibus adfatur Flaminium*, Cic., Sen., I, 1. *Non est dignus solacio, qui filium sibi decessisse sicut mancipium moleste fert, cui quicquam in filio respicere praeter ipsum vacat*, Sen., Marc., XIX, 3. *Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum*, Hor., Epist., I, 17, 36. *Dixit, scire servo utilius esse parere dicto quam afferre consilium*, Curt., VII, 16. *Produci illi et tentari expedit*, Sen., Vit. Beat., XXVII, 2. *Convenit amori in te meo praemonere quid debeas fugere*, Plin. Min., II, 6, 6. *Ideo non ultra matutinum illis (ventis) datur fluere*, Sen., N. Q., V, 8, 3. Cf. *Exstingui mihi si fors ita feret, pulchrum est*, Curt., IX, 26.

REM. 1. The Accusative of the Predicate *Attributive*, after the verbs *stated*, when the *Indirect Object* of the verb is not *expressed*, may be explained from the standpoint of an implied *aliquem* (*aliquos*).

Ex.—*Satiush est otiosum esse quam nihil agere*, Plin. Min., I, 9, 8. *Prodest bonos esse*, Plin. Min., Pan., 44.

(b) To reproduce the *Indirect Object* (Dative) of the *leading* verb by the *Accusative* in the dependent clause is irregular, and should not be imitated, while it presents the full form of *expression* before attraction.

Ex.—*Non mihi licere meam rem me solum, ut uolo,  
Loqui atque cogitare sine ted arbitro?* Pl., Cas., 89.

## Tenses.

108. Tense involves *two elements*:

- (a) Time,
- (b) Action.

Both *time* and *action* are necessary to a proper conception of *Tense*.

109. Of Time there are three *divisions* or *spheres*:

- (a) Present,
- (b) Future,
- (c) Past.

The *Present* is the absolute time, or rather it is the determinative time, as the *Past* and *Future* are *fixed* with reference to it. Hence, the *Past* and *Future* denote, with reference to the *Present*, *relative* Times. They are *relative* in this, that all time *prior* to the *Present* is the *Past*; all time *subsequent* to the *Present* is the *Future*. In order, then, to determine the *Past* and the *Future*, the *Present* must be *antecedently* ascertained. The *Present* is not restricted to the *immediate* *Present* (moment) of the speaker. This *may be* and often *must be* embraced in the *Present* Time, but it does not *constitute it*, which, in a more comprehensive sense, represents any denomination or period of time, however extended, which is the time of the *speaker*—that is, the time within which the speaker considers himself as *being* and *acting*, to which he *belongs* and the events of which he is *considering*.

Ex.—*Nemo his viginti annis reipublicae fuit hostis, qui, etc.*

Here the period of twenty years is the *Present Time*, and the comparison is, properly, between the *present* period of *twenty years* and any other period of the *same denomination*, namely, *twenty years*. The comparison is not between the *present* period of *twenty years* and a *different* period of *thirty* or *fifty* years.

Again, as the *Past* may be considered as subdivided, with reference to the *speaker*, into a *near* and *remote* *Past*; the *Future* into a *near* and *remote* *Future*, so may we consider as embraced in the *general Present* the *near* or *immediate* *Present* (of the speaker), and the *remote* *Present*. From this subdivision of the general denominations of Time arises a parallel and corresponding conception of *Tense* relations. In the *Past*: the action in the *nearer* *Past* is expressed by the Aorist or Imperfect, while the action in the *remoter* *Past* is expressed

by the Pluperfect; in the Future: the action in the *nearer* Future is expressed by the Future *Exactum*, while the action in the *remoter* Future is expressed by the Future First. So in the Present: the action in the *nearer* Present is expressed by the Present, while the action in the *remoter* Present is expressed by the *Perfect*. We thus have for the *Tenses* of the *Past* the Imperfect and Aorist with the Pluperfect; for the *Tenses* of the *Future* the Future *Exactum* and Future First; for the *Tenses* of the *Present* the Present and Perfect. This subdivision of the general Present into the *immediate* and *remoter* Present is, in Latin, recognized in the *Subjunctive Sequence* of the *Imperfect* and *Present* Subjunctive after the Perfect. The Imperfect Subjunctive Sequence conforms to the *Perfect* expressing an action in the *remoter* as compared with the *immediate Present*.

110. There is a second very important view of *Future Time* in connection with future actions. That is, an action may be presented in time *subsequent* to or *Future* from a *given event in the Past*. If two actions are presented in this Future from a given event in the Past, the action which stands nearer to it is the *Future Exactum*, while the *remoter* action is the *Future First*. In this connection it must be carefully noted that, in Latin, there is no Indicative Tense that *exactly* expresses the relation of a *Future First* from a *given Past*—that is, that expresses the same relation from a *given Past* which is expressed by the *Future First* Indicative from the *Present*. This temporal relation is only approximately represented by the form *-rus erat*. To express a *Future Exactum* from a given Past there is *no Indicative Tense*. Hence this temporal relation must be expressed by the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* form, as is seen in the regular *Objective Oratio Obliqua* and in epistolary composition (*Subjective Oratio Obliqua*). So, too, to express *fully* a *Future First* relation from a given Past the Imperfect Subjunctive is used.

Ex.—Si ipse Verrem convenero, aequitate causae commovere hominem potero.

Stated from a given Past Time, thus:

Non dubitabat, quin si ipse Verrem convenisset, aequitate causae commovere hominem posset, Cic., Verr., II, 1, 48, 126.

Here both *convenisset* and *posset* are *subsequent* to and *future from* *dubitabat*, but, as compared with *posset* (= *Future First*), *convenisset* must *first* occur, and is hence *Future Exactum* from *dubitabat*.

Ex.—**Metuebant, si discessissent, ne reliquas fortunas omnes amitterent**, Cic., Verr., II, III, 52, 121.

Here *discessissent* is *Future Exactum*, and *amitterent* is *Future First* from *metuebant*.

Ex.—**Si Syracusas cepero, duo templa Romae dedicabo = Marcellus, si Syracusas cepisset, duo templa se Romae dedicaturum voverat**, Cic., Verr., II, IV, 55, 123.

Here *cepisset* is *Future Exactum*, and *dedicaturum* is *Future First* (Infinitive) from *voverat*.

Again, it may be observed that, if two actions fall between a given Past and the Present (Time of the speaker), they are Past from the standpoint of the latter, and that the action which falls *nearer* to a given Past is *remoter* as compared with a second action from the time of the speaker, and antecedent to this action. Hence the *Future Exactum* from a given Past becomes from the time of the speaker an antecedently completed action, or the regular Pluperfect, as in the following example:

**Metuebant, si discessissent, ne reliquas fortunas omnes amitterent.**

From the time of the *Speaker* *discessissent* expresses an action antecedently completed as compared with *amitterent*. It is better, however, to consider the actions from the standpoint of a *stated Past* and to designate the Tenses as *Future Exactum* and *Future First* as compared *with it*.

111. The second element of Tense is *action*. Of action there are two general kinds, *complete* and *incomplete*. To action incomplete may be referred action *progressive*, *attempted*, *had in view*, *aimed at*, *insisted on*, *repeated* (may be action completed), *habitual* or *customary*, *commenced*.

In this connection should be noted the *Aoristic* action, expressed by the Present Tense, Future First, and Future *Exactum*. In this case the action is presented as a unit in the Present and Future Times. The Future *Exactum* emphatically presents the action *as certain of execution*. The *incompleteness* of the action is *not insisted on* in the *Aoristic Present* and *Future First*. Thus:

**Puero librum do** (= I give; not "I am giving" nor "I propose to give"). Again, **Puero librum dabo** (= I shall give; not "I shall be giving"). Cf. **Abeo** = I depart; **veniam** = I shall come.

## Classification of Tenses.

112. The Tenses are divided into three classes according to the *Character of the action* and the *Time* to which it is referred.

## I.—PRESENT TENSES.

- |                          |                  |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------|------------------------------|
|                          | (a) <i>Time.</i> | (b) <i>Action.</i>           |
| 1. <i>Present Tense.</i> | <i>Present.</i>  | <i>Incomplete, Aoristic.</i> |
| 2. <i>Perfect Tense.</i> | <i>Present.</i>  | <i>Completed.</i>            |

## II.—PAST TENSES.

- |                             |                  |  |
|-----------------------------|------------------|--|
|                             | (a) <i>Time.</i> | (b) <i>Action.</i>   |
| 1. <i>Imperfect Tense.</i>  | <i>Past.</i>     | <i>Incomplete, etc.</i>  |
| 2. <i>Aorist Tense.</i>     | <i>Past.</i>     | <i>Completed absolutely.</i>   |
| 3. <i>Pluperfect Tense.</i> | <i>Past.</i>     | <i>Completed relatively, i. e., before<br/>a second past action.</i> |

## III.—FUTURE TENSES.

- |                                 |                  |   |
|---------------------------------|------------------|---|
|                                 | (a) <i>Time.</i> | (b) <i>Action.</i>  |
| 1. <i>Future First Tense.</i>   | <i>Future.</i>   | <i>Incomplete, Aoristic.</i>  |
| 2. <i>Future Esactum Tense.</i> | <i>Future.</i>   | <i>Completed relatively, i. e., before<br/>a second future action, Aoristic<br/>(emphatically presented).</i> |

113. As a *general* fact, the positive affirmation or declaration of actions in their respective times, or the representation of them as realities, constitutes them *Indicative relations*, to be expressed by *Indicative Tenses*. The presentation of actions in their respective times, characterized by lack of *positive* affirmation, or the statement of them as *probabilities* or *contingencies*, constitutes them *Subjunctive relations* to be expressed by *Subjunctive Tenses*.

The *Time* of that which is *ideal*, *contingent*, or *probable* is not necessarily *future*. It may be *conceived* in the *Past* or *Present* as well as in the *Future*. Hence for practical purposes the *Tenses* of the *Subjunctive* may be accepted as presenting an action *ideal*, *contingent*, or *probable* in the *Present*, *Past*, and *Future* and designated, accordingly as *Present*, *Past*, and *Future Subjunctive Tenses*. The *Subjunctive Tenses* may be thus exhibited:

## I.—PRESENT TENSES.

(a) *Time.* (b) *Action.*

1. *Present Subjunctive.* *Present.* *Incomplete, etc., Aoristic, (contingently stated).*
2. *Perfect Subjunctive.* *Present.* *Completed (contingently stated).*

## . II.—PAST TENSES.

(a) *Time.* (b) *Action.*

1. *Imperfect Subjunctive.* *Past.* *Incomplete, etc., (contingently stated).*
2. *Aorist Subjunctive.* *Past.* *Completed absolutely (contingently stated).*
3. *Pluperfect Subjunctive.* *Past.* *Completed relatively, i. e., before a second past action, (contingently stated).*

## III.—FUTURE TENSES.

## 1. FROM THE PRESENT.

(a) *Time.* (b) *Action.*

- |                         |   |   |  |
|-------------------------|---|---|--|
| 1. <i>Fut. First,</i>   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Present Subjunctive} \\ \textit{(form of), or -rus} \\ \textit{sit, or futurum sit} \\ \textit{ut with the Present} \\ \textit{Subjunctive.} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Future.} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Incomplete, etc.,} \\ \textit{Aoristic, (contingently} \\ \textit{stated).} \end{array} \right.$   |
| 2. <i>Fut. Exactum,</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Perfect Subjunctive} \\ \textit{(form of), or fu-} \\ \textit>turum sit ut with} \\ \textit{the Perfect Sub-} \\ \textit{junctive.} \end{array} \right.$          | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Future.} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Completed rela-} \\ \textit>tively, i. e., before} \\ \textit{a second future} \\ \textit{action, (contingently} \\ \textit{stated).} \end{array} \right.$ |

## 2. FROM A PAST.

(a) *Time.* (b) *Action.*

- |                         |   |   |  |
|-------------------------|---|---|--|
| 1. <i>Fut. First,</i>   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Imperfect Subjunc-} \\ \textit>tive (form of), or -rus} \\ \textit{esset, or futurum} \\ \textit{esset ut with the Im-} \\ \textit>perfect Subjunctive.} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Future.} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Incomplete, etc.,} \\ \textit{Aoristic, (contingently} \\ \textit>stated).} \end{array} \right.$   |
| 2. <i>Fut. Exactum,</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Pluperfect Subjunc-} \\ \textit>tive (form of), or fu-} \\ \textit>turum esset ut with} \\ \textit>the Pluperfect Sub-} \\ \textit>junctive.} \end{array} \right.$            | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Future.} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Completed rela-} \\ \textit>tively, i. e., before} \\ \textit>a second future} \\ \textit>action, (contingently} \\ \textit>stated).} \end{array} \right.$ |

REM. 1. The Passive has the same Tenses with the Active, differing from them only in the sense of the Passive Voice. (Cf. 13, 2.)

114. The *Imperative Mood* has two forms, a short and a long form. The time of each is *Future*. By the short form the action is referred to the near future, or absolutely to the future. By the long form the action is referred relatively to the future. The long form, in addition, is used in legal language, and in language similar to this, in maxims, precepts, wills, etc.

	(a) Time.	(b) Action.
Imperative,	1. Short form. { Near Future, Absolute Future.	{ Incomplete, Aoristic.
	2. Long form. { Relative Future.	{ Incomplete; Aoristic; Relative, i. e., completed after a second action.

115. Action without affirmation is presented by the *Infinitive*. The necessities of the language require, however, the same kinds of action in the *Infinitive* that are expressed in the *Finite Verb* and that they should be referred to the different times. The affirmation of the *Infinitive* is not real; it is incidental and logical. The time of the *Infinitive* action is decided, in most cases, by its *Tense association*. For practical purposes the *Infinitive*, retaining *Tense designations*, may be presented as follows:

### I.—PRESENT INFINITIVE RELATIONS.

	(a) Time.	(b) Action.
1. Present Infinitive in -are, etc.	{ Present.	{ Incomplete, etc., Aoristic.
2. Perfect Infinitive in -avisse (-asse), etc.	{ Present.	{ Completed.

### II.—PAST INFINITIVE RELATIONS.

	(a) Time.	(b) Action.
1. Imperfect in -are, etc.	{ Past.	{ Incomplete, etc., Coincident.
2. Aorist in -avisse (-asse), etc.	{ Past.	{ Completed absolutely.
3. Pluperfect in -avisse (-asse), etc.	{ Past.	{ Completed relatively, i. e., before a second past action.

## III.—FUTURE INFINITIVE, ACTIVE RELATIONS.

## 1. FROM THE PRESENT.

(a) Time. (b) Action.

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| 1. <i>Future First</i> in -rum esse; also by <i>fore</i> ( <i>futurum esse</i> ) ut with the <i>Present Subjunctive</i> . | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Future from} \\ \text{the Present.} \end{array} \right.$ | <i>Incomplete, Aoristic.</i>                                      |
| 2. <i>Future Exactum</i> by <i>fore</i> ( <i>futurum esse</i> ) ut with the <i>Perfect Subjunctive</i> .                  |  |   |
|   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Future from} \\ \text{the Present.} \end{array} \right.$ | <i>Completed relatively, i.e., before a second future action.</i> |

## 2. FROM A PAST.

(a) Time. (b) Action.

- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| 1. <i>Future First</i> in -rum esse; also by <i>fore</i> ( <i>futurum esse</i> ) ut with the <i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i> . | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Future from} \\ \text{a Past.} \end{array} \right.$ | <i>Incomplete, Aoristic.</i>                                      |
| 2. <i>Future Exactum</i> by <i>fore</i> ( <i>futurum esse</i> ) ut with the <i>Pluperfect Subjunctive</i> .                 |   |   |
|   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Future from} \\ \text{a Past.} \end{array} \right.$ | <i>Completed relatively, i.e., before a second future action.</i> |

## IV.—FUTURE INFINITIVE, PASSIVE RELATIONS.

## 1. FROM THE PRESENT.

(a) Time. (b) Action or State.

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| 1. <i>Future First</i> in -um iri, or by <i>fore</i> ( <i>futurum esse</i> ) ut with the <i>Present Subjunctive</i> .   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Future from} \\ \text{the Present.} \end{array} \right.$ | <i>Incomplete, Aoristic.</i>   |
| 2. <i>Future Exactum</i> in -tum (-tos, etc.), -sum (-sos, etc.) <i>fore</i> , or by <i>fore</i> ( <i>futurum esse</i> ) ut with the <i>Perfect Subjunctive</i> . |  |  |
|   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Future from} \\ \text{the Present.} \end{array} \right.$ | <i>Completed relatively, i.e., before a second future action or state.</i> |

## 2. FROM A PAST.

(a) Time. (b) Action or State.

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| 1. <i>Future First</i> in -um iri, or by <i>fore</i> ( <i>futurum esse</i> ) ut with the <i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i> .  | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Future from} \\ \text{a Past.} \end{array} \right.$ | <i>Incomplete, Aoristic.</i>   |
| 2. <i>Future Exactum</i> in -tum (-tos, etc.) or -sum (-sos, etc.) <i>fore</i> , or by <i>fore</i> ( <i>futurum esse</i> ) ut with the <i>Pluperfect Subjunctive</i> . |   |  |
|  | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Future from} \\ \text{a Past.} \end{array} \right.$ | <i>Completed relatively, i.e., before a second future action or state.</i> |



## Force of the Indicative Tenses.

116. The *Present Tense*. The time is *Present*. The action is *incomplete or progressive, attempted, had in view or aimed at, insisted on, commenced, repeated or customary*.

*Action continuing.*

Ex.—*Haec duo signa nunc ad impluvium tuum stant*, Cic. Verr., I, 23, 61. *Equus currit* (*is running*).

*Attempted.*

Ex.—*Quintus Tusculanum venditat, ut, si possit, emat Pacillianam domum*, Cic., Att., I, 14, 7.

*Had in view, aimed at.*

Ex.—*C. Herennius ad plebem P. Clodium traducit*, Cic., Att., I, 18, 4. *Solvunt Salaminii*, Cic., Att., VI, 2, 9 (here *solvunt* = *want to pay, are ready to pay*). *Fugio homines*, Cic., Att., III, 7, 1. (*Vos*) *reduces in patriam facit*, Liv., XXII, 60, 13.

*Persisted in, insisted on.*

Ex.—*Me secum in Hispaniam ducit*, Cic., Fam., VIII, 16, 4.

*Repeated, customary, habitual.*

Ex.—*Adventus meos celebrat, profectionibus angitur, honoribus gaudet*, Plin. Min., IV, 1, 4. *In omnibus desideriis meis tuam indulgentiam expior*, Plin. Min., Ep. Plin. et Trai., 94, 3.

REM. 1. As an action *incomplete*, as also one *persisted in*, involves an action *commenced*, the Present Tense may often best be interpreted as presenting an action commenced.

Ex.—*Turbat Sampsiceramus*, Cic., Att., II, 17, 1 (*is beginning to make trouble*).

(a) The *Aoristic Present*, that is, the *Present Tense* presenting an action in the Present Time as a *simple fact without reference to incompleteness or continuance, should be kept in view*.

Ex.—*Narro tibi* (= *I tell you, not I am telling you*): *plane relegatus mihi videor*, Cic., Att., II, 11, 1. *Prorsus, ut scribis, ita sentio*, Cic., Att., II, 17, 1.

117. The Present is used to express an action which *has been* for some time and *is still* in progress, with *iam* associated with a word of Time; *iam diu, iamdudum, dudum, iam pridem*; with an ordinal defining a word of Time; less frequently with a cardinal number, or general designation of number. This Present expresses the relation of an *English progressive Perfect* = *Has been* and *is*.

Ex.—*Iam diu ego huic et mi hic bene uolumus*, Pl., Pseud., 233. *De quorum religione iam diu dicimus*, Cic., Verr., IV, 47, 105. *Cur isto modo oracula Delphis iam diu non eduntur?* Cic., Div., II, 57, 117. *Iamdudum vereor ne oratio mea aliena ab iudiciorum ratione esse videatur*, Cic., Verr., IV, 49, 109. *Constantia, quam iamdudum tracto*, Cic., Am., XVII, 65. *Quamquam dudum nihil habeo quod ad te scribam, scribo tamen*, Cic., Att., XIV, 12, 3. *Genus illud Sullani regni iam pridem appetitur*, Cic., Att., VIII, 11, 2. *At ego me amavi, quod mihi iam pridem usu non venit*, Cic., Att., IX, 18, 1. *Cato miseros publicanos tertium iam annum vexat*, Cic., Att., I, 18, 7. *Annum iam tertium et vicesimum regnat*, Cic., Imp. Pomp., III, 7. *At iam decimum annum in spelunca iacet*, Cic., Fin., II, 29, 94. *In quibus (miseriis) tot annos versamur*, Cic., Fam., VII, 3, 1. *De lucro prope iam quadriennium (= quattuor annos) vivimus*, Cic., Fam., IX, 17, 1. *Ego et Maximus meus biduum iam beatissimum agimus*, Sen., Ep., XIII, 2, 2. *Is Lilybaei multos iam annos habitat*, Cic., Verr., IV, 18, 38. Cf. *Olim*. (Ex.) *Olim mihi nullas epistolas mittis*, Plin. Min., I, 11, 1. *Gaudium, quod ego olim pro te non temere praesumo*, Plin. Min., II, 10, 6. Cf. *Diu iam*. (Ex.) *Diu iam in urbe haereo et quidem attonitus*, Plin. Min., I, 22, 1.

REM. 1. When the action is represented as *having occurred at a stated time*, definite or indefinite, in the Past, the above temporal designations are used with the Aorist.

Ex.—*Quis illic igitur est? Quem dudum dixi (Aorist) a principio tibi*, Pl., Capt., 624. *Quam dudum istuc aut ubi actumst? (Aorist)*, Pl., Trin., 608. *Conventus, qui initio celebrabantur, iam diu fieri desierunt (= ceased, Aorist)*, Cic., Att., I, 19, 9.

118. The Present Tense expresses an action which is *general* in character, which is true in *every time*; or an *action which is now a fact and which holds good for any time*. In a Past context, also, the Present is retained to state a fact which obtained not only in the *Past*, but is a fact *now (in the Present)*.

Ex.—*Virtus conciliat amicitias et conservat*, Cic., Am., XXVII, 100. *Divitiarum et formae gloria fluxa atque fragilis est*, Sal., Cat., 1. *Est quaedam dolendi voluptas*, Plin. Min., VIII, 16, 5. *Quod bonum est, prodest*, Sen., Ep., XIX, 8, 2. *Ipse ad flumen Scaldem, quod influit in Mosam, ire constituit, quo profectum Ambiorigem audiebat*, Caes., B. G., VI, 33.

119. The verb *memini* (= I remember) is often found associated with the *Imperfect (Present form) Infinitive* to reproduce a *Past* action, instead of the *Perfect* form of the Infinitive which is looked for. This use of the Present form of the Infinitive to reproduce a Past action after the Present *memini* is peculiar. The *subject* of *memini*, in this form of statement, reproduces, as a matter of *personal experience*, an action in the *Past*. To do this he conceives himself as *present* at the

*time* of the occurrence of the action in the past, *identifies* himself with it and speaks of it in the *First Person*. The same is true of *any other* person than the *first*.

Ex.—**Memini me ex multis hospitibus audire te de glorioso et celeri reditu meo confirmare**, Cic., Fam., VI, 6, 2. **Memini Pamphilum mihi narrare**, Cic., Verr., IV, 14, 32. **Memini me adesse P. Sextilio Rufo, cum, etc.**, Cic., Fin., II, 17, 55. **Cum multa tum etiam hoc me memini dicere**, Cic., Verr., IV, 66, 147. **Te memini censorias quoque leges tollere et commutare**, Cic., Verr., III, 7, 16. **Meministis tum corporibus Tiberim compleri cloacas referciri**, Cic., Sest., XXXV, 77.

REM. 1. After the analogy of *memini* we find the *Imperfect (Present form)* Infinitive after *memoria tenere, recordari*, and occasionally *accepisse (accepī)*, to express a past action.

Ex.—**Scaevolam augurem memoria teneo bello Marsico facere omnibus conveniendi sui potestatem**, Cic., Phil., VIII, 10, 31. **Recordor longe omnibus unum anteferre Demosthenem eumque accommodare ad eam, quam sentiam, eloquentiam**, Cic., Or., VII, 23. **Accepimus Hannibalem facile celare, tacere, dissimulare, insidiari, praecipere hostium consilia**, Cic., Off., I, 30, 108.

(a) When, in *memini*, etc., the speaker *maintains* his *time* (the *Present*) and presents from this standpoint a past action, the *Perfect* form of the Infinitive is regularly employed.

Ex.—**Ea, quae a te commemorantur, secus ab eo in me facta esse non memini**, Cic., Att., IX, 9, 1. **Memini in hoc genere gloriari solitum esse nostrum Hortensium**, Cic., Fam., II, 16, 3. **Profecto memoria tenetis complures in Capitolio res de caelo esse percussas**, Cic., Cat., III, 8, 19. **Romulus quem parvum . . . fuisse meministis**, Cic., Cat., III, 8, 19.

120. The statements and views of a *writer*, which are presented in his works still extant, are reproduced or referred to by the *Present*.

Ex.—**Sisenna disputat somniis credi non oportere**, Cic., Div., I, 44, 99. **Matrem Phalaridis scribit Ponticus Heraclides visam esse videre in somnis simulacra deorum, etc.**, Cic., Div., I, 23, 46.

121. By the *Present Tense* an event of the *Past* is transferred to the *Present* and *vividly* represented as occurring in the *Present*. This use of the *Present (Praesens Historicum)* is employed in animated narrative, and is very common. It reproduces in the *Present* the *relation* of the *Aorist*.

Ex.—**Interim video me esse inter Antonianos Antoniumque post me esse aliquanto**, Cic., Fam., X, 30, 3 (here *video* = *I see* for *I saw*). **Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat pontem, qui erat ad Genevam, iubet rescindi**, Caes., B. G., I, 7. **In his castris Cluilius Albanus rex moritur: dictatorem Albani Mettium Fufetium creant**, Liv., I, 23, 4.

**122.** As an *Aoristic* event of the Past is reproduced and stated in the Present by the Present Tense, so may an *Aoristic* event in the Future be *anticipated* and stated in the Present by the same Tense—namely, the Present. This use of the Present occurs in *animated* and *passionate* statement.

Ex.—*Quod si conficitur negotium, omnia consequemur*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 2, 3. *Romamne venio, an hic maneo?* Cic., Att., XVI, 8, 5. *Tuemini, inquit, castra. Ego reliquas portas circumeo et castrorum praesidia confirmo*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 94. *Cito ambula; actutum redi:*

*Illic sum atque hic sum*, Pl., Trin., 1109.

**123.** The Present Tense with *dum* often occurs, particularly in historical narrative, in the sense of the Imperfect. This use of the Present is peculiar. While it retains one of the characteristics of the Present Tense—namely, *progressive* action—it seems to have lost the element of Present Time; its logical time (the past) is supplied by the context. This is not the *Historical Present* which substitutes the *Aorist*.

Ex.—*Haec dum inter eos aguntur, Domitius navibus Massiliam pervenit*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 36. *Dum haec in Hispania geruntur Trebonius aggerem turresque agere instituit*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 1. *Dum redeo, Hortensius venerat*, Cic., Att., X, 16, 5. *Dum hoc corrigere vult, apertior eius improbitas facta est*, Cic., Verr., II, 17, 42.

**124.** By the Perfect Tense an action is presented as *completed* in the *Present Time*. It must be borne in mind that the *Present Time* is *not limited* to the *immediate Present* of the *speaker*, but that it may embrace any extent of *Time accepted* as the *Time of the Speaker*. The *Perfect Tense* presents an action *completed* at any time within this *general Present* of the *speaker*. Again, the Perfect expresses the *result* of an action *antecedently* completed within the *general Present*. Hence the action of the Perfect Tense may be stated as follows:

(a) Action completed at some point in the *general Present* and not including the *immediate Present* (of the *speaker*).

Ex.—*De genere belli dixi, nunc de magnitudine pauca dicam*, Cic., Imp. Pomp., VIII, 20 (here *dixi* is the *Perfect* = *I have spoken*. The action is *accomplished*, but within the limits of the *present* or of the *present occasion*).

(b) Action *completed* in the *general Present* and in which the *resulting state* of the *completed* action is *emphasized* as the characteristic sense of the Tense. This resulting state is essentially the *Present Tense*.

Ex.—**Nunc autem confugi ad te tuam petens amicitiam**, Nep., Them., 9 (here **confugi ad te** = I have fled for refuge to you. = **Apud te adsum** = And I am here with you).

REM. 1. In some forms of the Perfect, the *present result* of a previously completed action (in the Present) is the *leading and characteristic sense* of the Tense. Such a Perfect is used and translated as a *Pure Present*, as—

**Novi** = I have become acquainted with and hence I know. **Memini** = I have called to mind and hence I remember. **Constiti** = I have taken position and hence I stand; I have reached a given state and hence I stand. **Veni** = I have arrived, I have come, and hence I am here. **Odi** = I have formed a dislike and hence I hate. **Assuevi** (**consuevi**) = I have accustomed myself and hence I am wont. **Obrui** **fui** = I have set myself in the way of (against) and hence I meet (oppose). **Cognovi** = I have learned and hence I know (am aware).

Ex.—**Plerique neque in rebus humanis quicquam bonum norunt, nisi**, etc., Cic., Am., XXI, 79. **Meministis me ita distribuisse initio causam**, etc., Cic., Rosc. Am., XLII, 122. Cf. **Frigore constitit Ister**, Ov., Tr., V, 10, 1. **Odi celebritatem** Cic., Att., III, 7, 1. **Vulgus assistentium et affluens et vagus auditor assuevit iam exigere laetitiam et pulchritudinem orationis**, Tac., Or., 20. **Nemo est quin eo, quo consuevit, libentius utatur quam intractatō et novo**, Cic., Am., XIX, 68, etc.

125. For the *force* of the Perfect formed by the association of the Perfect Passive Participle with *habeo*, etc., see 61.

126. To be observed is the Perfect used in the statement of a *general fact*, a *maxim*, an *axiom*, the so-called *Gnomic Perfect*. While the Tense states a fact gathered from experience and observation in the Present, this fact embodies a *general truth*, applies to the *Present*, and holds good for the *Future*. The explanation of the Tense (Perfect) is action completed or realized in the general Present embracing the immediate Present of the Speaker = *Has* and *does*; *has been* and *is*.

Ex.—**Avaritia pecuniae studium quam nemo sapiens concupivit**, Sal., Cat., 11 (= *quam nemo sapiens concupivit nec concupiscit*). **Imprudentium ut gaudia sic dolores exundavere**, Sen., Ep., XVI, 4, 21. **Multum celeritas fecit, multum abstulit mora**, Sen., Ben., II, 6, 1. **Qui dedit alicui vitam, si semel et iterum liberatus est mortis periculo, maius accepit beneficium quam dedit**, Sen., Ben., III, 35, 2. Cf. **Quicumque alterum obsidere conati sunt, percussos atque infirmos hostes adorti aut proelio superatos aut aliqua offensione permotos continuerunt**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 47. **Multi mortales vitam sicuti peregrinantes transiere**, Sal., Cat., 2.

127. It has been seen (122) that a *Future Aoristic* (*Future First*) action is anticipated and stated in the Present by the Present Tense; so the relation of a *Future Second* (*Exactum*) is anticipated and expressed by the Perfect. By this use of the Perfect the occurrence of a *Future Exactum* action is *emphatically* presented and insisted upon by representing it as having already taken place in the Present. The language is not only emphatic but more or less *rhetorical*. The Tense does not express so much a certain *future result*, as a *future action conceived as a matter of realization in the Present*.

Ex.—*Sin autem ille suis condicionibus stare noluerit, bellum paratum est*, Cic., Fam., XVI, 12, 4. *Qui si conservatus erit, vicimus*, Cic., Fam., XII, 6, 2. *Unum ostende in tabulis aut tuis aut patris tui emptum esse: vicisti*, Cic., Verr., I, 23, 61. *Et bello vicerimus, si vicimus proelio*, Curt., IV, 54. *In super-vacuum praecepta iactavimus, nisi illud praecesserit*, Sen., Ep., XV, 3, 54. *Si eundem (animum) mox in aestimanda fortuna vestra habueritis, vicimus, milites*, Liv., XXI, 43, 2.

128. When the Perfect Tense is associated with a designation of Time the action is represented as completed within the Present Time. In this case the *including* of the *immediate* Present time of the Speaker is *not emphasized*.

Ex.—*Hanc (aquilam) ego, inquit aquilifer, et vivus multos per annos magna diligentia defendi et nunc moriens eadem fide Caesari restituo*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 64. Cf. *Quam (rationem) dudum diximus*, Cic., Fat., XVIII, 42. *Iam dudum res paratast*, Pl., M. G., 1301. *Consules multos menses de populi Romani libertate meditati sunt*, Cic., Phil., III, 14, 36. The Perfect here is not to be confounded with the Aorist.

129. From the preceding statements it is to be borne in mind that when an action is represented by the Perfect as *over* and *gone*, it must be understood as *over* and *gone* in the general Present of the Speaker or subject as compared with the *immediate Present*.

Ex.—*Honestissime viximus* = *We have lived* in the greatest honor, but *no longer thus live*. *Floruimus* = *We have prospered*, but *no longer prosper*.

130. The *Aorist* is identical in form with the Perfect. By the Aorist an action is expressed as completed *absolutely* in the *Past*, that is, the action is *not compared with a second action* in the Past, while it may furnish the *standard* with reference to which other actions are *determined as coincident* with it, antecedent to it, or future from it. The Aoristic action is not limited to a *moment* or very *brief period* in the past. It may embrace any extent of Time, or may occur within any period of Time. The completion of the action, and this an action

*independently* stated, is emphasized by the Aorist without reference to the *extent* of *Time* covered by it or within which it occurs. Hence the *completion* of an action in the Past, with its beginning and end ascertained, and this independently stated, is the essential characteristic of the Aorist. An action in progress in the Past or completed before or after a Second Past action is not expressed by the *Aorist Tense*.

Ex.—**Equidem suasi, ut Romam pergeret**, Cic., Att., XVI, 8, 2. **Homo inimicus iis, qui recitassent, exarsit iracundia**, Cic., Verr., II., 20, 48. **Tantus in curia clamor factus est, ut populus concurreret**, Cic., Verr., II., 19, 47. **Ostendit se reddere coacturum**, Cic., Verr., II., 20, 48. **Arganthonius quidam Gadibus octoginta regnavit annos, centum viginti vixit**, Cic., Sen., XIX, 69. **Hae permanserunt aquae dies complures**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 50. **Bina postea inter tot annos opima parta sunt spolia**, Liv., I, 10, 7. **Regnavit Ancus annos quattuor et viginti**, Liv., I, 35, 1. **Caligula vixit annis undetriginta, imperavit triennio et decem mensibus diebusque octo**, Suet., Cal., 59.

REM. 1. The correctness of the preceding definition of the Aorist is not affected by the fact that its action may occur during the progress of a second action or after it, nor by the fact that when two Aoristic actions are stated one is *necessarily* and *logically* subsequent to the other, or, from a different standpoint, one is antecedent to the other.

Ex.—**Pausanias eodem loco sepultus est, ubi vitam posuerat**, Nep., Paus., 5. **Quod et liberius vivebat et rem familiam neglegabat, a patre exheredatus est**, Nep., Them., 1. **Quod non satis tutum se Argis videbat, Corcyram demigravit**, Nep., Them., 8. **Praetulit titulum, veni, vidi, vici**, Suet., Iul. Caes., 37. By the Aorists **veni, vidi, vici**, the actions are stated as *completed units* in the Past, and independently of one another. They are not compared by the Tense, while the reasonable and logical inference is that I *saw after* I came and I conquered *after* I came and saw.

131. The *Imperfect Tense*. The Imperfect is the Tense of *incomplete, progressive* action in the Past. It expresses the same kinds of action in the Past which are expressed by the Present Tense in the Present Time. If the actions of the Present Tense be *transferred* to the Past they become the actions expressed by the *Imperfect Tense*. Hence the actions expressed by the Imperfect are *incomplete, progressive* or *continuing, attempted* or *had in view, aimed at, insisted on* or *persisted in, commenced, customary, habitual, repeated*. Most of these kinds of action spring from the primary action of this Tense, namely, *action incomplete*. Actions *attempted, had in view, persisted in, com-*

*menced*, cannot be said to be actions *completed*, while actions *repeated* and *habitual* may or may not be completed.

**Ex.**—*Crescebat* interim urbs munitionibus alia atque alia appetendo loca, Liv., I, 8, 4. (*Crescebat*=action *continuing*.) *Civitas* intestino inter patres plebemque flagrabat odio, Liv., II, 23, 1. (*Flagrabat*=action or state, *incomplete* or *continuing*.) *Deinde* eos quoque ipsos exigua parte pontis relicta, revocantibus qui rescindebant, cedere in tutum coegit, Liv., II, 10, 7. (*Rescindebant*=*who were engaged in* or *were trying to break down*.) *Fato* assensiones liberabant, Cic., *Fat.*, XVII, 40. (*Liberabant*=*aimed to free*.) *Liberabam* agrum eum, qui P. Mucio L. Calpurnio consulibus publicus fuisset, Cic., *Att.*, I, 19, 4. (*Liberabam*=*I aimed at, insisted on, was in favor of freeing, etc.*) *Delebant* incolae urbem: hostes defendebant, Curt., IX, 14. (*Delebant*=*tried, aimed, to destroy*; *defendebant*=*persisted in defending*.) *Hic et bella gerebat ut adolescens*, Cic., *Sen.*, IV, 10. (*Gerebat* expresses action *repeated*.) *Epulas a medio die ad mediam noctem protrahabat, cenitabatque nonnunquam et in publico*, Suet., *Nero*, 27. (*Protrahabat* and *cenitabat* express *customary, habitual actions*.) *Ut Romae consules, sic Carthagine quotannis annui bini reges creabantur*, Nep., *Han.*, 7. (*Creabantur* expresses *habitual, customary, and hence repeated action*.) *Pausanias regio apparatu utebatur. Satellites Medi et Aegyptii sequebantur: epulabatur more Persarum, superbe respondebat, crudeliter imperabat*, Nep., *Paus.*, 3. (The Imperfect Tenses express *habitual actions*.)

**132.** It has been seen that the Imperfect expresses, in some cases, an action *adhered to, persisted in*. This Imperfect occurs *with and without* a negative. In either case the force of the Tense is the same. While without a negative the positive action is *urged* or *persisted in*; with a negative the *negative action* is *persisted in* and *insisted on*, notwithstanding influence and persuasion to the contrary. Translate the Imperfect with a negative by "*would not*," in some cases nearly *could not*, as *non veniebat* = *he would not come* (*notwithstanding inducement or persuasion to come*).

**Ex.**—*Sullanorum hominum possessiones confirmabam*, Cic., *Att.*, I, 19, 4. *Volaterranos et Arretinos in sua possessione retinebam*, Cic., *Att.*, I, 19, 4. By the Imperfect Tense *retinebam* Cicero states what he was in *favor of* and *insisted upon keeping*. *Unam rationem non reiciebam*, Cic., *Att.*, I, 19, 4. The Imperfect with the negative = *I would not reject, would not consent to reject* one section (of the bill). *Numerabantur nummi: noluit Scaptins*, Cic., *Att.*, VI, 2, 7. *Tu id non modo non prohibebas, verum etiam probabas*, Cic., *Att.*, XVI, 7, 3. *Quibus de meo celeri reditu non probabam*, Cic., *Att.*, XVI, 7, 5. Here *probabam*, nearly "*I could not*" = *I did not, though I persisted in trying, etc.* *Atticus mendacium neque dicebat, neque pati poterat*, Nep., *Att.*, 15.

**133.** The Imperfect Tense with a plural subject, in which prominence is given to the individuals composing it, or with two or more *different* subjects, or with two or more different *objects* or *object rela-*



*tions*, the Predicate being the same, or with the *same* subject and different Predicates, is a common but not uniform usage. The explanation of the Tense is found in the *repetition* of the Action.

Ex.—**Principes utrimque pugnam ciebant**, Liv. I, 12, 2. (The action of **ciebant** is repeated with each **princeps**.) **Concurrebant legati, centuriones tribunicie militum**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 71. **Romanis conspicuum eum novitas divitiarum faciebant**, Liv., I, 34, 10. (**Conspicuum faciebant** is predicated of and hence repeated with **novitas** and **divitiae**.) **Ab Sabinis Mettius Curtius, ab Romanis Hostius Hostilius pugnam ciebant**, Liv., I, 12, 2. **Caesar iis civitatibus pecus imperabat, calones ad longinquiores civitates dimittebat**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 52. **Haec Afranius Petreiusque et eorum amici pleniora etiam atque uberiora Romam ad suos perscribebant**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 53. **Acerronia poenitentiam filii et reciperatam matris gratiam memorabat**, Tac., XIV, 5.

134. We have seen that the Present Tense with a designation of Time expresses an action that *has been* and *is still going on*, thus presenting the relation of an English *progressive Perfect*. The Imperfect Tense with a designation of Time expresses the same relation in the Past—that is, an action which *had been* and *was still going on at a given Past*—thus presenting the force of an English *progressive Pluperfect*. The temporal designations are *iam*, *iam diu*, *iamdudum*, a word of time with an ordinal, or other designation of time.

Ex.—**Achates et pater Aeneas iamdudum erumpere nubem ardebant**, Verg., Aen., I, 580. **Qui bellum iam pridem parabat**, Iust., XII, 8, 2. **Tertiam iam aetatem hominum vivebat**, Cic., Sen., X, 31. **Iam nonum diem stativa erant, cum rex intestino facinore petebatur**, Curt., VI, 25. **Qui iam complures annos possessionem Siciliae tenebant**, Nep., Tim., 2. **Qui complures annos habitabat Athenis**, Nep., Att., 12. **Multi iam menses erant neque Brundisio naves legionesque ad Caesarem veniebant**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 25.

REM. 1. In this connection is to be observed *nondum* with the *Imperfect*.

Ex.—**Iamque a fundo maris in altitudinem modicam opus creverat, nondum tamen aquae fastigium aequabat**, Curt., IV, 10. (*Nondum aequabat* = *had not yet reached*.)

REM. 2. The difference between the *Aorist* and *Pluperfect* with time, as compared with the *Imperfect*, is readily suggested by the Tenses (*Aorist* and *Pluperfect*).

Ex.—**Huic studium, officium, operam, laborem meum iam pridem et pollicitus sum et detuli**, Cic., Fam., VI, 6, 13. **Alexander iussus dicere, quamquam toto triennio meditatus erat defensionem, tamen haesitans pauca ex his, quae composuerat, protulit**, Curt., VII, 1.

135. The Imperfect Indicative occasionally occurs in expressing

*astonishment* upon *ascertaining* a fact to exist *contrary to expectation* and without *one's knowledge*. This use of the Imperfect Indicative may be compared with its use in the Apodosis of an unreal condition.

Ex.—*Oh, tune is eras?* Ter., Phorm., 945. *Quis hic loquitur? ehem, tun' hic eras, mi Phaedria?* Ter., Eun., 87. Cf. Ter., Ad., 900 (*tu hic eras?*).

136. The Imperfect when associated with the Aorist has a *twofold* office.

1. It presents an action in *progress* in the Past when the *Aoristic* action occurs. The Imperfect action need not be suspended by the occurrence of the Aoristic action. The two actions are, however, *concurrent* only to the extent of the *Aoristic* action. Hence there is presented the relation of *partial concurrence*. Entire concurrence of two actions incomplete is furnished by the association of the *Imperfect* with the *Imperfect*.

Ex.—*Scribebam, cum amicus tuus venit. Dum Scribebam, amicus tuus ambulabat. Quae divina res dum conficiebatur, quaesivit a me, vellemne secum in castra proficisci*, Nep., Han., 2. *Quem quidem ego cum ex urbe pellebam, hoc providebam animo*, Cic., Cat., III, 7, 16.

2. In *narrative* the Aorist, in some cases the Pluperfect, introduces a *leading fact*. The Imperfect illustrates this by citing *particulars* and *circumstances* in explanation of it. Hence the *Aorist*, as it expresses a leading idea or fact, *advances the narrative*, while the Imperfect dwells upon the particulars, the subordinate facts or items introduced in *explanation* or *description* of the leading fact.

Ex.—*Verres Inflammatus scelere in forum venit. Ardebant oculi: toto ex ore crudelitas eminebat. Expectabant omnes quo tandem progressurus aut quidnam acturus esset*, Cic., Verr., V, 62, 161. *Haec (Diana = signum Dianae) erat posita Segestae. Colebatur a civibus: ab omnibus advenis visebatur. Erat admodum amplum signum cum stola: verum tamen inerat in illa magnitudine aetas atque habitus virginalis: sagittae pendebant ab humero: sinistra manu retinebat arcum: dextra ardentem facem praeferebat*, Cic., Verr., IV, 34, 74.

137. The Imperfect, as may be gathered from what has been said, is the Tense of *description*, whether the *description* consists in citing *particulars* or in stating *customs, habits, or modifying relations*.

138. The Imperfect Tense is supplied by the *Pluperfect* form of the verbs *memini*, etc. (vid. 124, b, Rem. 1), whose Present is furnished by the Perfect form.

Ex.—*Memineram divinum illum virum*, Cic., Sest., XXII, 50. *Hunc secum*

**habere in primis constituerat, quod eum magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat**, *Caes., B. G., V, 6.* **Cognoverat** = *Had learned and knew (was aware).* **Trebellium valde iam diligit: oderat tum, cum ille tabulis novis adversabatur.** *Cic., Phil., VI, 4, 11.* **Omnia norat, omnium aditus tenebat**, *Cic., Cat., III, 7, 16.* **Eo die, quo consuerat intervallo, hostes sequitur**, *Caes., B. G., I, 22.* (**Consuerat** = *He had become accustomed to = was wont, etc.*)

**139. Historical Infinitive.** As in animated narrative the Present Tense occurs in the sense of the *Aorist*, so the *Present Infinitive* occurs in the sense of the *Imperfect*. This use of the Infinitive as the representative of a Tense relation is peculiar. In such an office the Infinitive is the offspring of *virid imagination, of active conception*. It presents the *action or state* involved in the verb as a matter of *thought or statement*. As such it lacks the Tense characteristics of *Time, Number, and Person*. The writer or speaker in his hurried transition from one action to another states them as simple *conceptions, items, or units* in the Past without distinguishing them by the ordinary Tense characteristics. This Infinitive is associated with a *subject* and, particularly in late Latin, with *conjunctions*, as *ubi, postquam*, etc. The Infinitive *Passive*, as well as the Infinitive *Active*, occurs as *Historical Infinitive*.

Ex.—**Ridere convivae, cachinnare ipse Apronius**, *Cic., Verr., III, 25, 62.* **Iste tum petere ab illis, tum minari, tum spem, tum metum ostendere**, *Cic., Verr., IV, 34, 75.* **Homines non modo non recusare, sed etiam hoc dicere, se a me solvere**, *Cic., Att., V, 21, 11.* **Iugurtha, ubi primum adolevit, ut mos illius gentis est, equitare, iaculari, cursu cum aequalibus certare**, *Sal., Jug., 6.* **Efferri sine thecis vasa, extorqueri alia de manibus mulierum, effringi multorum fores, revelli claustra**, *Cic., Verr., IV, 23, 52.* (Observe the *Passive Infinitives*.) **Iam legiones in testudinem glomerabantur, cum languescere Vitellianorum animi**, *Tac., H., III, 31.* **Ubi crudescere seditio**, etc., *Tac., H., III, 10.* **Postquam exui aequalitas**, etc., *Tac., Ann., III, 26.*

REM. 1. While the *succession of two or more Infinitives* is usually found in the statement of actions by the Historical Infinitive, yet a single Infinitive is occasionally found in this office.

Ex.—**Hic Ligurius furere: se enim scire summo illum in odio fuisse Caesari**, *Cic., Att., XI, 9, 2.*

(a) As the Present form of the Infinitive is employed to state an action in the Past without the characteristics of Tense (*Historical Infinitive*), there is no reason why the Present Infinitive may not be used to *state* an action in the Present without assigning to it the characteristics of Tense, but as simple items or units in the Present, and hence as the representative of the Present Tense. It *seems* that the Present was thus used, in presenting an action *general* in its character,

in referring to distinguishing habits and customs in the Present, and in the mere statement of an action which deserves *special attention* and in which the speaker or writer is peculiarly interested.

Ex.—*Sic omnia fatis in peius ruere, ac retro sublapsa referri*, Verg., Georg., I, 200. *Catti praeponere electos, audire praepositos, nosse ordines, intellegere occasiones, differre impetus, disponere diem, vallare noctem, fortunam inter dubia, virtutem inter certa numerare*, Tac., Germ., 30. (*Iudaei corpora condere, quam cremare, e more Aegyptio*, Tac., II., V, 5. (*Pompeius nihil interim ad me scribere, nihil nisi fugam cogitare*, Cic., Att., IX, 10, 4. The time in this sentence is clearly *Present* (= *In the meanwhile not a line from Pompey; his only thought is flight*).

140. *The Pluperfect Tense.* By this Tense an action is stated as *relatively* completed in the Past, that is, completed *before* a second action in the Past. To express an action *completed after* a second action in the Past, that is, completed in the *Future* from a *given Past*, there is no *Indicative Tense*.

Ex.—*Catiline ex omni copia, quam et ipse adduxerat et Manlius habuerat, duas legiones instituit*, Sal., Cat., 56. *Pausanias eodem loco sepultus est, ubi vitam posuerat*, Nep., Paus., 4. *Miltiadi, quia Athenas totamque Graeciam liberarat, talis honos tributus est*, Nep., Milt., 6.

141. The Pluperfect does not occur in Latin as an *absolute* or *independent* Tense. Its use in this sense is *only apparent*. In every such case the action is expressed by the Pluperfect as *antecedent* to an action, fact, or *specific* Time supplied by the context.

Ex.—*Ingenii magni est praecipere cogitatione futura, nec committere, ut aliquando dicendum sit, non putaram*, Cic., Off., I, 23 (*I had not before thought; I had not thought before something occurred*). *Post Caesaris reditum, quid tibi maiori curae fuit, quam ut essem ego illi quam familiarissimus? quod effeceras*, Cic., Fam., XI, 27, 5. (Here *effeceras* is not the equivalent of *effecisti*, but must be explained as a Pluperfect = *which you had (already) effected*.) *Quorsum igitur haec oratio longior, quam putaram?* Cic., Fam., XI, 27, 6. *Ego hic pascor bibliotheca Fausti. Fortasse tu putaras, his rebus Puteolanis et Lucrinensibus*, Cic., Att., IV, 10, 1. *Magister adest citius quam putaramus*, Cic., Fam., VII, 10, 1. *Obrepere aiunt eam citius quam putassent* (O. O.), Cic., Sen., II, 4. *Classem septuaginta navium Athenienses Miltiadi dederunt, ut insulas, quae barbaros adiuverant, bello persequerentur*, Nep., Milt., 7. (Here *adiuverant* expresses an action antecedent to *dederunt* and the time of the transaction.)

142. The Future First presents an action or state *continuing, progressing, etc.*, in the *Future* Time.

Ex.—*Disces quam diu voles*, Cic., Off., I, 1, 2. *Qui si sustulerint religionem, aream praeclaram habebimus*, Cic., Att., IV, 1, 7. (*Habebimus, not we will*

get, but *will be in possession of.*) **Maneo in voluntate et, quoad voles tu, permanebo,** Cic., Fam., V, 2, 10.

143. Particularly to be observed is the use of the Future First in presenting an action or state in future time without reference to its *continuance, but simply as a fact in the future.* The action or state thus presented may be termed an *Aoristic Future action or state* and the Tense the *Aoristic Future.* In this office the First Future Indicative frequently occurs.

Ex.—**Si erit pugnandum, arcessam ad societatem laboris: si quies dabitur ab Amalthea te non commovebo,** Cic., Att., II, 20, 2. **Cum inimici nostri venire dicentur, tum in Epirum ibo,** Cic., Fam., XIV, 3, 4. **Si belli nomen tolletur, municipiorum studia tollentur,** Cic., Phil., VIII, 2, 4. **Lucceius quid agat, scribam ad te, cum Caesarem videro, qui aderit biduo,** Cic., Att., II, 1, 9.

144. In an explanatory member of a sentence the Future First may often best be *rendered* in English by the *Present* when the Predicate in the leading member is *Future.* In Latin the time of the leading Predicate determines the future time of the *English Present*, and as the actions are really coincident the Future First is used in each member.

Ex.—**Sapientius, meo quidem iudicio, facies, si te in istam pacificationem non interpones,** Cic., Fam., X, 27, 2. Here *interpones* may best be rendered = if you *do not meddle with.* **Neque tu hoc dicere audebis, nec, si cupies, licebit,** Cic., Phil., II, 69, 167. Here *si cupies* may best be rendered = if you *desire.*

(a) The rendering of the *Future First* by the *Present* is peculiarly applicable to the Future First of the Potential verbs, particularly *posse* and *velle.* The time of the Imperative and of the Imperative Subjunctive is Future. Hence in connection with the Imperative, the Imperative Subjunctive, or a Future relation, the Future First of the Potential verbs may often best be rendered by the *Present.* Here, too, the proper time of the English Present is indicated by the future time of the leading Predicate (the *Imperative* or *Imperative Subjunctive*), and in Latin is expressed by the *Future First.*

Ex.—**Summam cogitationum mearum tibi, si potero, breviter exponam,** Cic., Fam., I, 9, 10. **Causam igitur investigato, si poteris,** Cic., Div., II, 28, 60. **Si nullam (causam) reperiēs, illud exploratum habeto,** etc., Cic., Div., II, 28, 60. **Faciam ut potero,** Cic., Sen., III, 7. **Fiet quodcumque volent, qui valebunt,** Cic., Fam., IX, 17, 1. **Cedendum est, si id volet,** Cic., Fam., VII, 9, 3. **Iam istuc quidem, cum volumus, licebit,** Cic., Fam., IX, 18, 2.

(b) Again, the *leading* Predicate often occurs in the *Future First* while the explanatory Tense is the *Present.* In such cases the action expressed by the *Present* Tense may be conceived as limited to the

Present Time or as a future action appropriated by the Present (vid. 122). This association of the Future with the Present is frequent in conditional statements.

Ex.—**Qui quidem semper erunt beati: sed nos, nisi me fallit, iacebimus,** Cic., Att., XIV, 12, 2. (Here the time of *fallit* is the *Present*.) **Reus est nocentissimus, qui si condemnatur, desinent homines dicere his iudiciis pecuniam plurimum posse,** Cic., Verr., I, 2, 6. (Here *condemnatur* looks to the future = *condemnabitur*.)

145. The time of the Imperative is future. The Future First is used as an *Imperative*. In this use of the Tense the speaker states the action as one that *will occur or be done*, leaving *no room for discussion or objection* on the part of the person *addressed* or for whom it is intended. In the *unqualified prediction* of the action is implied the sense of the Imperative. In addition, the Future First expresses an Imperative relation in a more *general way* in the statement of a *general truth, of a rule of action or conduct* prescribed (*affirmative*) or *forbidden (negative)*.

Ex.—**Curabis et si quid tibi de eo videbitur, scribes,** Cic., Att., XV, 15, 4. **Ad propositum revertar: festinationi meae brevitatiue litterarum ignoscas: reliqua ex Furnio cognoscas,** Cic., Att., IX, 6 A. **Quod vitium effugere qui volet, adhibebit diligentiam,** Cic., Off., I, 6, 18. **Ne homini quidem nocebimus, quia peccavit, sed ne peccet, nec umquam ad praeteritum sed ad futurum poena referetur,** Sen., Ira, II, 31, 8.

146. The *Future Second (Exactum)*. By this Tense, in its usual sense, an action is presented as *relatively completed* in the Future, that is, *before a second Future action*. There is a *distinct interval* between the action of this Tense or its effect and the Future First or its representative with which it is associated.

Ex.—**Si bonitas tua responderit iudicio meo, quod semper habui de te, gaudebo,** Cic., Att., XIV., 13A, 1. **A tergo, fronte, lateribus tenebitur, si in Galliam venerit,** Cic., Phil., III, 13, 32. **At si paululum cessaverimus, in tergis nostris Scythae haerebunt,** Curt., VII, 30. **Cum redieritis in Graeciam, praestabo ne qui statum suum vestro credat meliorem,** Curt., V, 19. **Tu, si me amas, expeditus facito ut sis, si inelamro, ut accurras,** Cic., Att., II, 20, 5.

147. In the preceding examples the action of the Future *Exactum* is completed and antecedent to the action of the associated Tense. Between the two actions there is a distinct interval. It is often the case, however, that the simple completed and antecedent action is not so much the characteristic sense of the Tense as the *state or condition resulting therefrom*. The resulting state or condition is a relation of

*continuance* and *covers* the time of the associated Future Tense. It is in effect a *Future First relation*. Hence *Cum in urbem venero, tibi scribam*. Here *venero* expresses "When *I shall have arrived* and when *I shall be in the city*, I will write to you." The resulting state may be expressed by *ero* = *Cum in urbe ero*.

Ex.—*Cum venerit dies ille, ipse me dis reddam*, Sen., Ep., XVII, 2, 22. *Tum igitur, cum venero, desinam*, Cic., Att., VII, 9, 1. *Orator prout cuiusque natura postulaverit, adhibebit manum et temperabit orationem*, Tac., Or., 31. (Here *postulaverit* = not only *shall have demanded*, but *shall require, be in need of*.) *Cum satius spectaculo superiorum in terram oculos deleceris, excipiet te alia fortuna rerum*, Sen., Ad Marc., XVIII, 4.

REM. 1. A sense similar to the Future *Exactum* expressing resulting state is the Future First of *habere* with the Perfect Passive Participle, as *urbem captam habebit*.

(a) The resulting state or condition is essentially the characteristic sense of the Future *Exactum* of the Potential verbs *posse, velle, nolle, licere, placere*, etc. With such verbs it is difficult to conceive the sense expressed by them as completed in the Future without the *resulting* or *consequent state or condition*, thus: *Si potuero* = *If I shall have been able*. The state or condition resulting—that is, *power or ability*—is a *continuing relation* = *If I shall be able* = *Si potero* = *Si potestatem habebo*.

Ex.—*Ego vero, si potuero, faciam vobis satis*, Cic., Brut., V, 21. *Si quis voluerit animi sui notionem evolvere, iam se ipse doceat eum virum bonum esse qui*, etc., Cic., Off., III, 19, 76. (To accept *voluerit* as a Subjunctive Tense would not affect the principle.)

148. The Future *Exactum* often occurs as an independent Tense, that is, *without comparison* with a second Future Tense or its *representative*. In this case the Future *Exactum* expresses an action that is *certain of accomplishment* in the Future. The fact that resulting state or condition may be a prominent characteristic of the Tense is not in conflict with its distinctive office in expressing *certainty of accomplishment*.

Ex.—*Vitam vel sustentabo, vel, quod multo est melius, abiecero*, Cic., Att., III, 19, 1. (Here *abiecero* = *I shall certainly cast it aside*.) *Pomponia, inquit, tu invita mulieres, ego accivero pueros*, Cic., Att., V, 1, 3. *Ego certe meum rei publicae atque imperatori officium praestitero*, Caes., B. G., V, 25. *Hoc dico, si hic, qua ratione initium fecit, eadem cetera aget, valde videro et consideratius utilitati nostrae consulero*, Cic., Att., IX, 10, 9. *Bonos viros ad tuam necessitudinem adiunxeris, municipium gratissimum beneficio tuo devin-*

xeris, mihi vero etiam gratius feceris, quod, etc., Cic., Fam., XIII, 11, 3. Non ius vestrum sed invidiam minueritis, Liv., III, 9, 12. Quid ages, si accedent propius? Ego recessero, Pl., Rud., 788.

149. The *Future Exactum* of *video* quite often occurs with a designation of time or other word of restriction to express that a matter has not yet been considered but will be later. Here *certainty of accomplishment* is stated by calling attention to the action as one to be done *later* or *under a definite restriction*.

Ex.—Quae fuerit causa mox videro, Cic., Fin., I, 10, 35. Quoi tamen ego assentiar in omnibus necne, mox videro, Cic., Leg., I, 21, 54. Verum esto: alio loco de aratorum animo et iniuriis videro, Cic., Verr., II, 61, 150. Tu quidem adhuc meam causam agis. Sed hoc mox videro, Cic., Tusc., II, 11, 26. Quid inventum sit, paulo post videro, Cic., Ac., II, 24, 76. Recte secusne alias viderimus, Cic., Ac., II, 44, 135.

150. It is convenient to accept the *Future Exactum* of *video*, particularly in the second and third persons as *Imperative*, while in some cases the Tense seems to be *Subjunctive* and *Potential*. Again, the interpretation of the Tense as *Future Exactum*, expressing certainty of accomplishment, must be kept in view.

Ex.—Deinde tu ipse videris, qui eam artem facilem esse dicis, Cic., De Or., I, 58, 246. (Here *videris* is *Imperative*.) Sed ipse viderit: quamquam illud turpiter ignorat, Cic., Att., XII, 21, 1. (Here *viderit* is also *Imperative*.) Sed haec iterum ipse viderit, Cic., Att., XII, 21, 2. Harum sententiarum quae vera sit deus aliqui viderit, Cic., Tusc., I, 11, 23. (It seems that *viderit* here inclines to the *Potential*.) Videtur commodius ad te: postridie scilicet: quid enim tua? Sed viderimus, Cic., Att., IV, 5, 3. (Here *viderimus* seems to be *Future Exactum* in the presentation of action certain of accomplishment.)

151. To be carefully noted is the *Future Exactum* in the leading member of a sentence associated with the *Future Exactum* in the subordinate or explanatory member. We cannot say that in this association of Tense one action *involves* the other. It is true, however, that one action *succeeds* the other with *no appreciable interval* between them.

Ex.—Respiravero, si te videro, Cic., Att., II, 24, 5. Qui Antonium oppresserit, is hoc bellum taeterrimum confecerit, Cic., Fam., X, 19, 2. Quos cohonestaris in primisque me, si res publica municipii tuo studio, diligentia bene administrata erit, Cic., Fam., XIII, 11, 3. Gratissimum mihi feceris, si Volaterranos omnibus rebus integros incolumesque esse volueris, Cic., Fam., XIII, 4, 3. Quibus (litteris) nisi credideris, me omnis officii et humanitatis expertem iudicaris, Cic., Fam., XI, 27, 8.



152. The Future *Eractum* in an explanatory clause may be substituted by the Imperative. In the leading clause occurs the *Future Eractum* as well as the *Future First*.

Ex.—*Immuta* (= *si immutaveris*) *verborum collocationem paululum, perierit tota res*, Cic., Or., LXX, 232. *Adduc pari animo inexercitatum militem: mulier videbitur*, Cic., Tusc., II, 16, 37.

153. The Future *Eractum* represents the Future First of the verbs *meminisse*, etc., the Perfect form of which represents the Present.

Ex.—*Meminero, odero*, etc. = *I shall remember, I shall hate*, etc.

(a) The Future *Eractum* in Latin may often be rendered by the English *Perfect*. The time of the English Tense is readily decided by the context.

Ex.—*Tibi si recta probanti placebis, tum non modo tete viceris, sed omnes et omnia*, Cic., Tusc., II, 26, 63. (Here *viceris* may be rendered “you have conquered”).

#### The Relations of Concurrence—Antecedence—Coincidence.

154. When two *incomplete* actions are referred to the same *sphere* of time without reference to their close, that is, when they *commence* at the same time and *continue together*, while their termination is not implied or stated, they measure each other and hence furnish the relation of *concurrence*. Thus—

*Dum ego lego, tu scribis* = While I am reading, you are writing.  
*Dum ego legebam, tu scribebas* = While I was reading, you were writing.  
*Dum ego legam, tu scribes* = While I shall be reading, you will be writing.

(a) The state or condition resulting from a completed action in any sphere of time is *concurrent* with and *measured* by an *incomplete* action in the same sphere of time; hence the state or condition resulting from the completed action of the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future Eractum* is measured by the action of the *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future First* respectively.

Ex.—*Veni et te exspecto* = *I have come* = *I am present and am awaiting you*.  
*Veneram et te exspectabam* = *I had come* = *I was present and was awaiting you*.  
*Venero et te exspectabo* = *I shall have come* = *I shall be present and shall await you*.

155. The relation of *partial concurrence* is furnished by the association of the *Imperfect* and *Aorist*. The *concurrence* is complete only to the extent of the *Aoristic action*.

Ex.—*iamque hoc facere noctu apparabant, cum matres familiae repente in publicum procurrerunt*, Caes., B. G., VII, 26.

156. The relation of *Antecedence* is furnished by the association of a *Tense of Complete* with a *Tense of Incomplete action* in the different spheres of time.

I. The actions are single—that is, they are not repeated.

(a) *Present Time.* The *Perfect* with the *Present*.

Ex.—*Nuntio quod audiui* = *I announce what (that which) I have heard.*

(b) *Past Time.* The *Pluperfect* with the *Aorist*.

Ex.—*Nuntiavi quod audiveram* = *I announced what (that which) I had heard.*

(c) *Future Time.* The *Future Exactum* with the *Future First*.

Ex.—*Cum venerit, abibo* = *when he shall have come, I shall leave.*

II. The actions are repeated in the different spheres of time, and one is completed and antecedent to the other. The Tenses employed are those of complete and incomplete actions. The Mood in the explanatory clause is, in the best prose, generally the *Indicative*, while the *Subjunctive* is not excluded; but in late Latin the *Subjunctive* is very frequent, while the *Indicative* is not excluded. The *Indicative* is retained in the leading clause. This association of Tenses furnishes what may be termed the relation of *Iterative Antecedence*.

1. *Indicative in both clauses.*

(a) *Present Time.* The *Perfect* with the *Present*. Thus: *Si te vidit, clamat* = *If ever he sees (has seen) you, he exclaims.*

Ex.—*Cum (when = whenever) ad ipsius Caesaris nomen veni, toto corpore contremesco*, Cic., Fam., VI, 7, 4. *Nos, si (= if; if ever) pes condoluit, si dens, ferre non possumus*, Cic., Tusc., II, 22, 52. *Cum se inter equum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur*, Caes., B. G., IV, 33. *Si qui (quis) eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt*, Caes., B. G., VI, 13. *Cum pater familiae, illustriore loco natus, decessit, eius propinqui conveniunt*, Caes., B. G., VI, 19.

(b) *Past Time.* The *Pluperfect* with the *Imperfect*. Thus: *Si te viderat, clamabat* = *If ever he saw (had seen) you, he exclaimed (would exclaim).*

Ex.—*Quicumque accesserant ad Siciliam paulo pleniore, eos Sertorianos milites esse dicebat*, Cic., Verr., V, 56, 146. *Quae probarant, iis crustae aut embiamata detrahebantur*, Cic., Verr., IV, 23, 52. *Quidquid illis placuerat, perdendum erat*, Cic., Verr., IV, 13, 31. *Ut quisque istius animum offenderat, in lautumias coniciebatur*, Cic., Verr., V, 55, 143. *Si quando nostri facultatem*

nacti ferreis manibus iniectis navem religaverant, undique suis laborantibus succurrebant, Caes., B. Civ., II, 6. Hi, quamcumque in partem impetum fecerant, hostes loco cedere cogebant, Caes., B. Civ., II, 41. Qui horum quid crudelissime fecerat, is et vir et civis optimus habebatur, Caes., B. Civ., III, 32. Quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat, Caes., B. G., IV, 26. Omnes vici atque omnia aedificia, quae quisque conspexerat, incendebantur, Caes., B. G., VI, 43. Eorum ut quisque primus venerat, sub muro consistebat, Caes., B. G., VII, 48. Si quis in amicitiam eius inciderat, similia ceteris fiebat, Sal., Cat., 14. Ut quisque domum aut villam, postremo vas aut vestimentum alicuius concupiverat, dabat operam, ut, etc., Sal., Cat., 51.

(c) *Future Time.* The *Future Exactum* with the *Future First*. Thus: *Si te viderit, clamabit* = *If ever he shall see (shall have seen) you, he will exclaim.*

Ex.—Cum aliquem apud te laudaro tuorum familiarium, volam illum scire ex te me id fecisse, Cic., Att., II, 25, 1. Ad oratorem nihil pertinet, cuius nullum erit, si tam tardum fuerit, auxilium, Quint., X, 4, 4. Quotiens aliud egeris, animus relaxabitur, Sen., Ad Marc., VIII, 3. Nam quotiens quis dixerit, "occidit Persarum multa milia," opponetur, Sen., N. Q., VI, 23, 3.

REM. 1. To be noted is the *Aorist* in the leading clause.

Ex.—Quotiens nullam inveneram misericordiae causam, mihi peperci, Sen., Clem., I, 4.

REM. 2. To be noted is the *Aorist* in each clause (authorized by the (temporal) particle).

Ex.—Nam quotiescumque cum eo congressus est in Italia, semper diacecit superior, Nep., Han., 1. Si qua res maior acta est, non defuit, Nep., Att., 4. Ego ipse, quotiens, quae audieram, detuli, cum ludibrio credulitatis repulsus sum, Curt., VI, 40.

2. *Subjunctive* in the *explanatory* clause, *Indicative* in the leading clause.

(a) *Present Time.* The *Perfect Subjunctive* with the *Present Indicative*.

Ex.—Haec, quicumque ei primus vir obviis fuerit, peragit, Liv., I, 32, 8. Abieti et pino si quis detraxerit, sole taurum vel geminos transeunte, statim moriuntur, Plin. Mai., XVII, 235. Quidam ipsi miscent praecipuum ad scabiem pecorum remedium aut si fetus mammas laeserit matrum, Plin. Mai., XXIV, 41. Remedio sunt pycnocomi folia trita cum polenta, si nondum caput fecerint, Plin. Mai., XXVI, 125. Probabilius id facit hasta velitaris evolans corpori hominis, si terram non tetigerit, Plin. Mai., XXVIII, 34. Cum quid oculo inciderit, alterum comprimi prodest, Plin. Mai., XXVIII, 60. Si araneus iumenta momorderit, mus recens cum sale imponitur, Plin. Mai., XXIX, 88.

(b) *Past Time.* The *Pluperfect Subjunctive* with the *Imperfect Indicative*.

**Ex.**—Quantum Apronius edidisset deberi, tantum ex edicto dandum erat, Cic., Verr., III, 29, 70. Id ubi dixisset, hastam in fines eorum emittebat, Liv., I, 32, 13. Ubi rixae committendae causa clamor ortus esset, principes Senatus primi turbae offerentes se peti ferique atque occidi iuebant, Liv., V, 25, 2. Ubi his ordinibus exercitus instructus esset, hastati omnium primi pugnam inibant, Liv., VIII, 8, 9. Ita, quocumque se intulisset, victoriam secum haud dubiam trahebat, Liv., VI, 8, 6. Quotiens libuisset egressus tricolinio paulo post reversus, vel laudabat palam vel vituperabat, Suet., Cal., 36. Nam si paulo serius ad praedictam cenae horam occurrisset, non nisi aegre et circuito demum triclinio recipiebatur, Suet., Claud., 8.

**REM. 1.** While the relation of *Iterative Antecedence* in the Future time would be regularly expressed by the *Perfect Subjunctive* (*Future Exactum*) with the Future First Indicative, no case of the *First Person Perfect Subjunctive* with the *Future First Indicative* has been observed. This *person* of the *Perfect Subjunctive* would alone decide the Tense as Subjunctive and not the *Future Exactum Indicative*.

**157.** In the preceding statements reference has been had to the *Iterative Antecedent* relation in the different spheres of Time, involving the association of complete and incomplete actions. It remains to consider the actions which are *coincident*, that is, actions one of which is involved in the other, thus presenting the relation of *Coincidence*. Here, too, the actions may be repeated, furnishing the relation of *Iterative Coincidence*. The Tenses employed in *Iterative Coincidence* are the Tenses of *incomplete* action in the different spheres of Time. In the best Prose the *Mood* is the *Indicative* in each clause, while the Subjunctive is not excluded in the explanatory clause; in the late Latin the Subjunctive is the tendency in the explanatory clause, while the *Indicative* is not excluded.

**I. Iterative Coincidence.** The *Indicative* in each clause.

(a) *Present Time.* The *Present* with the *Present*.

**Ex.**—Illud soles mirari, quotiens (litterae) a Quinto mihi fratre afferuntur (afferantur (?)), Cic., Fam., VII, 7, 1. Cum bellum civitas infert, magistratus, qui ei bello praesint, deliguntur, Caes., B. G., VI, 23. Non oculos animo sed animum oculis sequor, qui eadem quae mens vident, quotiens non vident alia, Plin. Min., IX, 36, 2. Cum (= whenever) aliqua conclamatio est quomodo exeat, non quid offerat quaerit, Sen., Ep., II, 5, 3. Exulto, quotiens epistolas tuas accipio, Sen., Ep., II, 7, 1.

(b) *Past Time.* The *Imperfect* with the *Imperfect*.

**Ex.**—Si mons erat ascendendus, facile ipsa loci natura periculum repellebat, Caes., B. Civ., I, 79. Mi, si quid erat durius, concurrebant, Caes., B. G., I, 48.

**Si qua in parte nostri laborare aut gravius premi videbantur, eo signa inferri Caesar aciemque converti iubebat**, *Caes.*, *B. G.*, VII, 67.

(c) *Future Time.* The *Future First* in each clause.

**Ex.**—**Quotiens poterit, fortunae intercedet**, *Sen.*, *Clem.*, VI, 3. **Sciet nos, quotiens libertatem quam dedit experiemur, sibi parere**, *Plin. Min.*, *Pan.*, 67. **Quotiens posteri nostri optimum aliquem vocare cogentur, totiens recordabuntur quis meruerit vocari**, *Plin. Min.*, *Pan.*, 88.

II. Iterative Coincidence. The *Subjunctive* in the explanatory clause, the *Indicative* in the leading clause.

(a) *Present Time.* The *Present Subjunctive* with the *Present Indicative*.

**Ex.**—**Pirus et amygdala, etiamsi non pluatur, sed fiat austrinum caelum aut nubilum, amittunt florem et primos fructus**, *Plin. Mai.*, XVI, 109. **Neutra in aquis fluitat, nec suber, si dematur cortex, nec larix**, *Plin. Mai.*, XVI, 204. **Ad eas modice distantes arrepunt, contra oleum refugunt aut, si quid obstat, vel si pendeant, curvantur intorquenturque**, *Plin. Mai.*, XIX, 66. **Necatur cuminum a limodoro, nisi repurgetur**, *Plin. Mai.*, XIX, 176. **Pisces, si aegrotent in piscinis, apio viridi recreantur**, *Plin. Mai.*, XX, 112. **Constat a scorpiione percussos, quamdiu teneant eam herbam, non sentire cruciatum**, *Plin. Mai.*, XXI, 184. **Sed haec quae ex rore nascitur, si fricetur, resinosa est**, *Plin. Mai.*, XXIV, 101.

(b) *Past Time.* The *Imperfect Subjunctive* with the *Imperfect Indicative*.

**Ex.**—**Si hastati profligare hostem non possent, pede presso eos retrocedentes in intervalla ordinum principes recipiebant**, *Liv.*, VIII, 8, 9. **Si negotium confici stirpemque hominum sceleratorum interfici vellet, dimittendae plures manus diducendique erant milites**, *Caes.*, *B. G.*, VI, 34. **Ubi dimicarent, is habitus animorum erat, ut, etc.**, *Liv.*, XXI, 42, 4. **Ubi res posceret, priores erant**, *Liv.*, III, 19, 3. **Quotiens cubiculum eius intraret, vivere filium simulabat**, *Plin. Min.*, III, 16, 4. **Cum lacrimae vincerent prorumperentque, egrediebatur**, *Plin. Min.*, III, 16, 5. **Quae regi portarentur, abripiebat**, *Nep.*, *Dat.*, 4. **Atque ignoti, faciem eius cum intuerentur, contemnebant**, *Nep.*, *Ages.*, 8. **Quotiens post cibum addormisceret, olearum aut palmularum ossibus incessebatur**, *Suet.*, *Cl.*, 8.

REM. 1. No clear case of the association of the Present Subjunctive (*Future First*) with the *Future First* Indicative, presenting the relation of *Iterative Coincidence* in the Future, has been identified.

**Cf.** **Quid ergo? Cum videat secari patrem suum filiumve, vir bonus non flebit?** *Sen.*, *Ira.*, I, 12, 1.

(c) The preceding statements are confined to the relation of *Iterative Coincidence* in the several spheres of Time. The relation of *simple*

*Coincidence*—that is, *Coincidence* without repetition—is frequent. There is necessary to this relation the *same Tense* of either *complete* or *incomplete action* (with the *same* or *different subjects*) in the different spheres of Time. The purest form of *simple Coincidence* is presented by the *same Subject*, the *same Tense*, and the *same Predicate* in each clause of a sentence. One action *involves* and *explains* the other *without repetition*.

Ex.—*Hoc cum tibi opto, opto ut beatus sis*, Cic., Att., X, 16, 1 (= *When I wish this, I wish that*, etc. = *In wishing this, I wish that* = *In that I wish this, I wish that*, etc.). *Quae cum taces, nulla esse concedis*, Cic., Rosc. Am., XIX, 54. *Id cum impetrabatur, hoc videlicet impetrabatur*, Cic., Verr., III, 48, 115. *Quam (potestatem) cum populus poscebat, verbo illam poscere videbatur*, Cic., Verr., Act. Prim., XV, 44. *Cum Archimedes lunae, solis, quinque errantium motus in sphaeram illigavit, effecit idem quod*, etc., Cic., Tusc., I, 25, 63. *Expectationem nobis attuleras, cum scripseras*, Cic., Att., III, 18, 1. *Quam (salutem) cum utrisque his dederis tres fratres rei publicae condonaveris*, Cic., Lig., XII, 36. *Omnia tu Deiotaro, Caesar, tribuisti, cum et ipsi et filio nomen regium concessisti*, Cic., Reg. Dei., XIII, 36. *Quaecumque mens illa fuit, Gabinii fuit*, Cic., Rab. Post., VIII, 21.

### Tenses in Epistolary Composition.

158. The change of Tense in *letter-writing* is not a necessity. When it does occur it is based on the following principle: The Writer, whose *proper* time is the *Present*, transfers himself to the time of the Receiver of the letter, which is *Future*, and represents, in his character of first person when he refers to himself, the actions from this standpoint, namely, the time of the *Receiver*. From the time of the *Receiver* the time of the *composition* of the letter, that is, the time of the *Writer*, is necessarily *past*, and hence the actions belonging to the time of the *Writer* are expressed in the *Past Tenses*. The actions future from the time of the composition of the letter, that is, from the time of the *Writer*, must remain future from *this time*, though they are past from the time of the *Receiver*. The actions which are past from the time of the composition (*Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*) cannot be changed; they remain past, that is, unchanged, from the time of the Receiver. Only the actions in which the Writer is immediately interested may be expressed in the epistolary form of the Tenses, while general statements are made in the regular Tenses. The adverbial designations of Time and the Pronouns are usually stated as conceived from the time of the Receiver or in the regular forms as incidents or explanations of the time of the Writer. Hence:

1. The Present Tense, expressing a Present *progressive* or *continuing*, *incomplete action* at the time of the *Writer*, becomes a *Past progressive*, *continuing*, *incomplete action* from the time of the *Receiver*. In other words, the *Present* becomes the *Imperfect*. Thus *Scribo* = I am writing (Time of *Writer*) becomes *Scribebam* = I was writing (Time of the *Receiver*). In translating *maintain the time of the Writer*. Hence translate *Scribebam* = I am writing.

Ex.—*Nihil habebam quod scriberem*, Cic., Att., IX, 10, 1 (from the time of *Receiver*) = *Nihil habeo quod scribam* (at the time of the *writer*).

Translate the following and state the Tenses from the time of the *Writer* :

Ex.—*Ego volebam loco magis deserto esse in Epiro, quo nec Hispo veniret nec milites*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 1, 3. *Haec erant fere, quae tibi nota esse vellem*, Cic., Fam., XII, 5, 5. *Quamquam, nisi me fallebat, res se sic habebat, ut totius belli omne discrimen in D. Bruto positum videretur*, Cic., Fam., XII, 5, 1. *Praeter Bononiam, Regium Lepidi, Parmam, totam Galliam tenebamus. Tuos etiam clientes Transpadanos mirifice coniunctos cum causa habebamus. Erat firmissimus senatus, exceptis consularibus*, Cic., Fam., XII, 5, 2.

(a) The Present, expressing *action habitual* or *repeated* at the Time of the *Writer*, becomes the *Imperfect* from the Time of the *Receiver*.

Ex.—*Ante lucem inambulabam domi, ut olim candidatus*, Cic., Att., VI, 2, 5. *Concisos equites nostros a barbaris nuntiabant ii, qui veniebant. Bibulus ne cogitabat quidem etiam nunc in provinciam suam accedere: id autem (eum) facere ob eam causam dicebant, quod tardius vellet decedere*, Cic., Att., V, 16, 4.

(b) The Present, expressing an action *had in view*, *aimed at*, *intended*, at the time of the *Writer*, becomes the *Imperfect* from the time of the *Receiver*.

Ex.—*Brundisio profecti sumus a. d. II. K. Mai., per Macedoniam Cyzicum petebamus*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 3. *Ad eum postridie mane vadebam, cum haec scripsi*, Cic., Att., IV, 10, 2 (this force of the Present is not reproduced by *-eram* from the time of the *Receiver*).

REM. 1. When the Subjunctive is required (as in some of the preceding examples) the Present Tense at the time of the *Writer* becomes, from the time of the *Receiver*, the *Imperfect Subjunctive*.

Ex.—*Cum (= though) appropinquare tuus adventus putaretur et te iam ex Asia Romam versus profectum esse constaret, magnitudo rei fecit* (Aoristic Present), *ut non vereremur, ne nimis cito mitteremus, cum (= since) has quam primum ad te perferri litteras magno opere vellemus*, Cic., Fam., II, 6, 1. *Ego autem, cum (= since) esset incertum iter Caesaris, quod vel ad Capuam vel ad*

*Leoceriam iturus putabatur, Leptam ad Pompeium misi (Aoristic Present) et litteras; ipse, ne quo inderem, reverti Formias, Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 7.*

(c) The *Aoristic Present*, that is, the *Present* in which the *continuance* of the action is not expressed, becomes from the time of the Receiver the *Aorist* (form of the Perfect). Thus *Venio* = *I come*, becomes from the time of the Receiver *Veni* = *I came*. Translate the *Perfect form* by the *Present*.

Ex.—*Subsedi (= I sit down) in ipsa via dum haec summatim tibi perscriberem, Cic., Att., V, 16, 1. Haec Idibus mane scripsi, Cic., Fam., I, 1, 3. Pridie Idus Febr. haec scripsi ante lucem, Cic., Q. Fr., II, 3, 7. Nondum erat auditum te ad Italiam adventare, cum Sex. Villium cum his ad te litteris misi, Cic., Fam., II, 6, 1. Haec scripsi seu dictavi, apposita secunda mensa, apud Vestorium, Cic., Att., XIV, 21, 4. Haec te scire volui scripsique sedatiore animo, quam proxime scripseram, Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 7. Cum quod scriberem ad te nihil haberem, tamen, ne quem diem intermitterem, has dedi litteras, Cic., Att., IX, 16, 1. Haec conscripsi X. Kal. accubans apud Vestorium, Cic., Att., XIV, 12, 3.*

2. The *Perfect Tense*, expressing an action completed before the *immediate Present* of the Writer, becomes from the Time of the Receiver an action completed before a definite *Past* (the *Time of the Writer*) and is reproduced from the time of the Receiver by the *Pluperfect*. Thus *Veni* = *I have come* = *Veneram* from the Time of the Receiver. Translate the *Pluperfect* by the *Perfect*.

Ex.—*Nos initium prensandi facere cogitaramus eo ipso tempore, quo tuum puerum cum his litteris proficisci Cincius dicebat, in campo, comitis tribuniciis, a. d. XVI. K. Sextil, Cic., Att., I, 1, 1. Mihi erat in animo, quoniam iuris dictionem confeceram, civitates locupletaram, publicanis etiam superioris lustris reliqua sine sociorum ulla querela conservaram, privatis summis infimis fueram iucundus, proficisci in Ciliciam Nonis Maiis, Cic., Fam., II, 13, 4. Quae autem impendere putarem (= I think), scripseram ad te, et iam tuas litteras expectabam, Cic., Att., VIII, 13, 2. Res, cum haec scribebam, erat in extremum adducta discrimen, Cic., Fam., XII, 6, 2.*

3. The *Aorist*, as has been seen, expresses an action completed absolutely, not relatively, in the Past. In the reproduction of the *Aoristic action* in letter-writing there are three points of time, namely, that of the Receiver, that of the Writer and that of the *Aorist*. From the standpoint of the Receiver the *Aorist* will be antecedent to the time of the Writer, and, as it expresses an action completed *before* the time of the Writer, it must be reproduced by the *Pluperfect*. Then the *Aorist* becomes in Epistolary Composition the *Pluperfect*.

Ex.—*Modo caedem timueramus (= we feared), quam oratio Q. Considii dis-*



cusserat, Cic., Att., II, 24, 4. *Hæc te scire volui scripsique sedatiore animo, quam proxime scripseram* (= *I wrote*), Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 7.

REM. 1. It is not always easy to decide whether the Pluperfect reproduces the Perfect or the Aorist. The context alone must decide.

4. The First Future is reproduced in Epistolary Composition by the form *-rus eram*. This form is not an *exact statement* of the *First Future* of the Writer. There is no *Indicative Tense* which *exactly* reproduces a *First Future* from a *given Past*.

Ex.—*Pridie Idus Febr. hæc scripsi ante lucem: eo die apud Pomponium in eius nuptiis eram cenaturus*, Cic., Q. Frat., II, 3, 7. *Cum (Vettius) esset damnatus, erat indicium postulaturus*, Cic., Att., II, 24, 4. *Hæc scripsi a. d. XVI. Kal. Febr. ante lucem: eo die senatus erat futurus*, Cic., Fam., I, 2, 4. *Deiotarus ad me, ut scripsit, cum Ciceronibus Laodiceam venturus erat*, Cic., Att., V, 20, 9. *Tu, si intervallum longius erit mearum litterarum, ne sis admiratus: eram enim afuturus mense Aprili*, Cic., Fam., VII, 18, 3. *Quo die hæc scripsi, Drusus erat absolutus. Ego eodem die post meridiem Vatinius eram defensurus*, Cic., Q. Frat., II, 15 (16), 3.

REM. 1. It has been seen that the form *-rus eram* reproduces the First Future from the time of the Receiver of a letter—that it is, however, only an *approximate* reproduction of the Tense. It cannot be established that the form *-rus eram* is not the statement from the Receiver of *-rus sum*. The only Tense by which the *First Future* can be stated with exactness from a given Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive, a Tense and Mood which, it seems, are sometimes employed in this office in Epistolary Composition in *dependent clauses* and even in the *Apodosis* of a Future Conditional. The explanation of the Subjunctive is the *Subjective Oratio Obliqua*—that is, the *Writer* expresses from the time of the *Receiver* his *impression* or *view* at the time of the composition of the letter.

Ex.—*Si paulo plus furor Pulchelli progredi posset, valde ego te istim excitarem*, Cic., Att., II, 1, 4 (*si paulo plus furor Pulchelli progredi poterit* (not *possit*), *valde ego te istim excitabo* (not *excitem*)—Time of *Writer*). *M. Tullium, meum necessarium, ad te misi, cui tu, si tibi videretur ad me litteras dares*, Cic., Att., VIII, 11 B, 4 (*M. Tullium, meum necessarium, ad te mitto, cui tu, si tibi videbitur, ad me litteras dabis* (possibly *des*)—Time of the *Writer*).

5. The *Future Exactum* from the time of the Writer becomes, from the time of the Receiver, the Future Second (*Exactum*) from a *given Past*—that is, from the Receiver's conception of the Time of the Writer. As there is no *Indicative Tense* by which to express this relation, the office must be performed by the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* as

the *Future Exactum* from a *Past*—that is, the Writer is forced to adopt the *Subjective Oratio Obliqua* statement.

Ex.—*Cum (Vettius) esset damnatus, erat indicium postulaturus: quod si impetrasset, iudicia fore videbantur: ea nos non contemnebamus, sed non pertimescebamus: hominum quidem summa erga nos studia significabantur, Cic., Att., II, 24, 4 (here cum (Vettius) esset damnatus and si impetrasset = cum erit damnatus, si impetraverit from Time of the Writer). Ad hoc robur nostrorum exercitum, sive Africanus exercitus sive Caesaris accessisset, aequo animo summam rem publicam in discrimen deduceremus, Cic., Fam., X, 24, 4 (here accessisset — deduceremus = accesserit — deducemus from the Time of the Writer). Nonis Maiis in Ciliciam cogitabam: ibi cum Iunium mensem consumpsissem, Quinctilem in reditu ponere, Cic., Att., VI, 2, 6 (here consumpsissem = consumpsero from the Time of the Writer). Si nactus hic esset Gnaeum nostrum, spes dubia pacis, sin ille ante tramisisset, exitiosi belli metus, Cic., Att., VIII, 13, 1 (here nactus esset and tramisisset reproduce nactus erit and tramiserit, not nactus est and tramisit (Perfects) from the Time of the Writer). Quod ubi audissem, si ille Appia veniret, ego Arpinum cogitabam, Cic., Att., VIII, 16, 1 = Quod ubi audivero, si ille veniet, ego cogito (from Time of the Writer). Dilectus magnos habebamus putabamusque illum metuere, si ad urbem ire coepisset, ne Gallias amitteret, Cic., Fam., XVI, 12, 4 = Habemus putamusque, coeperit, amittat (from Time of the Writer).*

(a) The Conjunction *cum* with the *Perfect* Indicative, or Subjunctive (in which case *cum* is *causal* or *concessive*), becomes from the time of the Receiver *cum* with the *Pluperfect* Subjunctive. Thus *cum* with *Perfect* Indicative becomes, in Epistolary style, essentially *cum Historicum*.

Ex.—*Ego has pr. Nonas Quinctiles proficiscens Athenis dedi; cum ibi decem ipsos fuissem dies, Cic., Att., V, 11, 3.*

6. It must be carefully noted that an unreal conditional sentence in the Present Time, in which *si* and the *Imperfect* Subjunctive denies an *Aoristic Present* action, is reproduced from the time of the Receiver of a letter by *si* and the *Pluperfect* Subjunctive. In such a case the negation is not of a *Progressive past action* (*Imperfect* Subjunctive) but of an *Aoristic past action*, which is the proper conception of *si* with the *Pluperfect* Subjunctive in an unreal Past conditional.

Ex.—*Tuas litteras exspectassem Brundisii, si esset licitum per nautas, qui tempestatem praetermittere noluerunt, Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 5 (from the Time of the Writer = Tuas litteras exspectarem Brundisii, si liceret per nautas, qui tempestatem praetermittere nolunt). Plura scripsissem, nisi tui festinarent, Cic., Fam., XII, 22, 3 (from the Time of the Writer = Plura scriberem, nisi tui festinarent). Here scriberem expresses the negative of an Aoristic Present action, while festinarent expresses the negative of a Progressive Present action stated from the standpoint of the Receiver as a Progressive past action.*

(a) The Pronoun *hic* from the standpoint of the *Writer* is, as a general usage, retained from the standpoint of the *Receiver*.

Ex.—**Ego has pr. Nonas Quinctiles profiscicens Athenis dedi**, Cic., Att., V, 11, 3. **Idibus Februariis, quo die has litteras dedi, forum institueram agere Laodiceae Cibraticum et Apameense**, Cic., Att., V, 21, 9. **Pridie Idus Febr. haec scripsi ante lucem**, Cic., Q. Frat., II, 3, 7.

REM. 1. The Pronoun *hic*, however, can be restated from the standpoint of the *Receiver* by *is* or *ille*.

Ex.—**Quod si haec ratio rei gerendae periculosa tibi esse videbitur, placebat illud ut, si rex amicis tuis fidem suam praestitisset** (Future *Ejectum*), et **auxiliis eum tuis et copiis adiuvares**, Cic., Fam., I, 7, 6. **Eo tempore Polla tua misit, ut ad te, si quid vellem, darem litterarum, cum. quid scriberem. non habebam**, Cic., Fam., XI, 8, 1 (here *eo tempore misit* = at this time sends, not *has sent*). **Ego has pr. Nonas Quinctiles profiscicens Athenis dedi, cum ibi decem ipsos fuisset dies**, Cic., Att., V, 11, 4 (here *ibi* reproduces *hic* from the time of the *Receiver*). Cf. **Qui status rerum tum fuerit, cum has litteras dedi. scire poteris ex C. Titio Strabone**, Cic., Fam., X, 30, 1 (here *tum* reproduces *nunc* from the standpoint of the *Receiver*).

(b) The word *hodie* is reproduced by *eo die* from the standpoint of the *Receiver*.

Ex.—**Eo die apud Pomponium in eius nuptiis eram cenaturus**, Cic., Q. Frat., II, 3, 7 (here *eo die* reproduces, from the time of the *Receiver*, *hodie* from the time of the *Writer*). **Eo die mane tabellarios miseram. quibus ad te dederam litteras**, Cic., Att., XI, 12, 1 (here *eo die mane* = *hodie mane* = *this morning*). **Hoc litterularum exaravi egrediens e villa ante lucem, atque eo die cogitabam in Anagnino, postero autem in Tusculano**, Cic., Att., XII, 1, 1 (from the standpoint of the *Writer* = *Hoc...exaro...atque hodie cogito...cras* (crastino die)). **Eo die senatus erat futurus**, Cic., Fam., I, 2, 4.

(c) The word *heri* (*hesterno die*) is reproduced from the standpoint of the *Receiver* by *pridie* = *the day before*; from the standpoint of *Writer* = *yesterday*.

Ex.—**Nihil habebam quod scriberem: neque quicquam audieram, et ad tuas omnes rescripseram pridie** (translate *yesterday*), Cic., Att., IX, 10, 1. **De me excusando apud Appuleium dederam ad te pridie litteras**, Cic., Att., XII, 14, 1.

REM. 1. The term *heri* may, in Epistolary Composition, be reproduced from the standpoint of the *Receiver* by the phrase *pridie quam scripsi*, instead of by *pridie*.

Ex.—**De his rebus pridie, quam haec scripsi** (= *yesterday*), **senatus auctoritas gravissima intercessit**, Cic., Fam., I, 2, 4.

REM. 2. With this use of *pridie quam scripsi* is not to be confounded *pridie quam* with the proper Epistolary Tenses.

Ex.—**Haec ego pridie scribebam, quam comitia fore putabantur**, Cic., Att., IV, 15, 8 (= **Haec ego pridie scribo, quam comitia fore putantur** from standpoint of the Writer).

(d) The word *cras* (*crastino die*) is reproduced from the standpoint of the Receiver by *postridie* (*postero die*) = *the day after*; from the standpoint of the Writer = *to-morrow*, the proper translation.

Ex.—**Eo die cogitabam in Anagnino, postero (= to-morrow) autem in Tusculano: ibi unum diem**, Cic., Att., XII, 1, 1. **Haec scripsi seu dictavi, apposita secunda mensa, apud Vestorium. Postridie apud Hirtium cogitabam**, Cic., Att., XIV, 21, 4.

REM. 1. The term *cras* (*crastino die*) may be reproduced from the standpoint of the Receiver by *postridie cum (quam) haec scripsi*.

Ex.—**Ad eum postridie mane vadebam, cum haec scripsi**, Cic., Att., IV, 10, 2.

### The Subjunctive Mood.

159. The Subjunctive, as has been stated, is the Mood of *Ideality*, that is, the action of the Verb is presented as one *conceived*. An action, however, may be *conceived* as one of *probable fact or existence* in the *Present* as well as in the *Future*. For practical purposes it cannot be maintained that every Subjunctive is *Future*.

### The Indefinite Second Person.

160. When an action is stated in connection with an Indefinite Second Person, *you* = *one, we, a person*, a predication of such a subject is properly and regularly made by the Subjunctive. The Tenses of the Subjunctive, when not influenced by a different *conception*, as in the case of the Potential, unreal relations, etc., is translated by the corresponding *Indicative Tenses*. The Indefinite Second Person is referred to by *te, tuus*, etc.

Ex.—**Cum inopias, cupias: quando eius copias, tum non uelis**, Pl., Trin., 671 (here translate *cupias*, *we desire, one desires, people desire*). **Quid dulcius quam habere quicum omnia audeas sic loqui ut tecum?** Cic., Am., VI, 22 (= what more delightful than to have one with whom *one* ventures to talk of everything as with *one's self* (*himself*)?). **Non enim neque tu possis, quamvis excellas, omnes tuos ad honores amplissimos perducere**, Cic., Am., XX, 73 (the translation of *tuos* depends upon the translation of the Second Person. If it be translated *one*, *tuos* is rendered *his*; if it be translated *we*, *tuos* is rendered *our*). **Aptissima omnino sunt arma senectutis artes exercitationesque virtutum, quae in omni aetate cultae, cum diu multumque vixeris, mirificos efferunt fructus**, Cic., Sen., III, 9 (translate *vixeris*). **Quicquid erat patrum, reos diceres**, Liv., II, 35, 5 (here *reos diceres* = *one (we) might, or could have said that they were on trial—might or could have called them defendants*).

(a) It may not be doubted that the Future Tenses of the Indicative, particularly the *Future Exactum*, occur with the *Indefinite Second Person*. The *uncertainty of realization* of every future action, apart from its *affirmation*, justifies the association of the *Future Indicative* Tenses with the *Indefinite Second Person*.

Ex.—**Quocumque te abdideris, mala humana circumstrepent**, Sen., Ep., XI, 3, 4. **Numquam deerunt causae querendi, si beneficia a deteriore parte spectaveris**, Sen., Ben., II, 28, 4. Cf. **Quod si exemeris ex rerum natura benevolentiae conjunctionem, nec domus ulla nec urbs stare poterit, ne agri quidem cultus permanebit**, Cic., Am., VII, 23. In these examples it seems that the *Second Person* is *Indefinite*, and the contexts demand the Indicative. The Imperative *Second Person* must also be accepted as presenting an *Indefinite Subject* (also the *Future First Indicative*). Cf. Verg., Georg., IV, 229 (*relines . . . fove, praetende*).

### Tenses of the Subjunctive.

161. 1. *The Present Subjunctive* expresses an action incomplete, etc., an Aoristic action, in the Present Time, *subjunctively* or *contingently* stated. It is translated as the *Present Tense*. The *Present Indicative*, with the several phases of its action, *incomplete, progressive, customary*, etc., is represented subjunctively by the *Present Subjunctive*.

Ex.—**Haec negotia, quo modo se habeant (se habeant = are), ne epistola quidem narrare audeo**, Cic., Fam., II, 4, 1. **Non intellego cur (gratiam) reconciliatam esse dicas (= you say), quae numquam imminuta est**, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 5. **Quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit**, Caes., B. G., I, 20.

(a) So the *Perfect Subjunctive* of the Verbs, the *Perfect Indicative* of which represents the *Present*, is used to express the *Present Subjunctive*, and, with a temporal designation, the *Present Subjunctive* expresses the English *Progressive Perfect*—that is, an action which has been and is still in progress.

Ex.—**Non dubito quin isti me oderint (= hate). Quis exercitation, qui viginti iam annos bellum geram cum impiis civibus?** Cic., Phil., VI, 6, 17. **Cogita, quamdiu iam idem facias**, Sen., Ep., X, 1, 6.

2. The *Present Subjunctive* expresses action *incomplete* or *aoristic* in time *future* from the *Present*, *contingently* or *subjunctively* stated. The *First Future Indicative* is represented subjunctively by the *Present Subjunctive*.

Ex.—**Rogo atque oro, te collegas**, Cic., Fam., V, 18, 1 (*collegas* is *future* from *rogo atque oro*). **Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit**, Caes., B. G., I, 20 (from *ponit, scire possit* is *future*, and *agat* and *loquatur* are coincident with *scire possit* and *future*). **Quo animo ad**

**otium sapiens secedit? ut sciat se tum quoque ea acturum, per quae posteris prosit**, Sen., *De Otio*, VI, 3 (the future time of **prosit** is demanded by **acturum**).

3. The *Imperfect Subjunctive* expresses an action *incomplete*, etc., in the *Past Time subjunctively* or *contingently* stated. It is translated as the *Imperfect Tense*. The *Imperfect Indicative*, with the several phases of its action, *incomplete*, *progressive*, *customary*, etc., is represented *subjunctively* by the *Imperfect Subjunctive*.

Ex.—**Epaminondas, cum gravi vulnere exanimari se videret, quaesivit salvusne esset clipeus**, Cic., *Fin.*, II, 30, 97 (here **salvus esset clipeus** reproduces the Indicative **salvus erat clipeus** and is of the same time with **quaesivit**). **Fiebat ut, cum is, qui audire vellet, dixisset quid sibi videretur, tum ego dicerem**, Cic., *Tusc.*, I, 4, 8 (here the Imperfects represent *iterative* or *customary* actions). **Regulus, cum retineretur a propinquis et ab amicis, ad supplicium redire maluit quam fidem hosti datam fallere**, Cic., *Off.*, I, 13, 39 (here **retineretur** expresses action *attempted*). **Haud dubium erat, quin cum Aequis alter consulum bellum gereret**, Liv., III, 4, 2 (here **gereret** expresses action *contemplated*, *had in view*).

(a) The *Pluperfect Subjunctive*, of course, represents the *Imperfect Subjunctive* of the Verbs whose *Imperfect Indicative* is represented by the *Pluperfect Indicative*. And, with a temporal designation, the *Imperfect Subjunctive* expresses the *English Progressive Pluperfect*—that is, an action which had been and was still in progress.

Ex.—**Quaesivi cur me odissent (= hated, were hating)**. **At Eumenes, cum diutius in vinculis esset, ait Onomarcho se mirari quare iam tertium diem sic teneretur**, Nep., *Eum.*, 11. **Quae cum multis dies noctesque agitare, quidam Ligus animum advortit**, etc., Sal., *Jug.*, 93.

4. The *Imperfect Subjunctive* expresses an action *incomplete* or *aoristic* in time *future* from a stated or readily ascertained *Past*, *contingently* or *subjunctively* stated. The *Future First Indicative* is reproduced by the *Imperfect Subjunctive* = *Future First from a given Past*.

Ex.—**Ratus (est) secuturos, ut quemque vulnere affectum corpus sineret**, Liv., I, 25, 7 (the Tense **sineret** is *Future First* from **ratus est** and *coincident* with **secuturos**. Here **sineret** reproduces the *Future First Indicative* from a given Past, **ratus est**). **Existimabant se Allobroges vi coacturos, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur**, Caes., *B. G.*, I, 6 (here **paterentur** is *Future First* from **coacturos**, which is *Future First* from **existimabant**).

(a) If the *original* conception is of *an action* to be *stated* in the relation of a *Future First* from a given *Past*, as in the final and consecutive sentences, the *Imperfect Subjunctive* is used to express the action.

Ex.—**Hi magnopere suadebant, ut retro abiret**, Curt., III, 19. **Eum diem ibi consumpsi, ut cum eo essem**, Cic., Fam., IV, 12, 1. **In freto medio hanc epistolam legi, ut, quid possem providere, in mentem mihi non veniret**, Cic., Att., XVI, 7, 6 (**veniret** is subsequent to and Future from **legi**. It follows, of course, that if the original conception is of an action to be stated in the relation of a Future First from the *Present*, as in the final and consecutive sentences, the *Present Subjunctive* is used to express the action).

5. *The Perfect Subjunctive* expresses an action *completed* in the *general Present Time* of the Speaker. The Perfect Indicative is *subjunctively* or *contingently* expressed by the *Perfect Subjunctive*. Translate the Perfect Subjunctive as the *Perfect Tense*.

Ex.—**Deos hominesque testor quo animo semper in rem publicam fuerim**, Cic., Fam., X, 35, 1 (translate **fuerim** = *I have been*). It reproduces the Indicative fui). **Est fons, quem si qui vitare voluerit, sex milium circuitu in oppidum pervenit**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 24 (the Tense **voluerit** reproduces the Indicative voluit). **At Curio numquam se amisso exercitu, quem a Caesare acceperit, in eius conspectum reversurum confirmat**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 42 (the Tense **acceperit** reproduces the Perfect **accepi** (*Oratio Recta*) and is translated “*he has received*”).

6. The Perfect Subjunctive expresses an action completed in the *time future* from the Present and before a *second future action*, and *subjunctively* or *contingently* stated—that is, it reproduces in the Subjunctive the *Future Exactum* from the Present. The Future *Exactum* of the Indicative is stated in the Subjunctive by the *Perfect Subjunctive*.

Ex.—(**Dicit**) **quod nisi (Pompeius) fecerit, se magnumque numerum senatorum atque equitum Romanorum in periculum esse venturum**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 17 (the Tense **fecerit** reproduces the Indicative Tense **fecerit**—*Future Exactum*. Its time is decided by **esse venturum**). **Curio constituit, cum primum sit data potestas, proelio rem committere**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 33 (Future time is involved in **constituit committere**, and the form **sit data** reproduces the Indicative **erit data**). **Nega me ei iratum fore, si ad mea comitia non venerit**, Cic., Att., I, 1, 2. **Ambiorix pronuntiari iubet, ut procul tela coniciant, et quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint, cedant**, Caes., B. G., V, 34 (the time of **cedant** is future from the Present (**iubet**); the time of **fecerint** is also future and action *antecedent* to that of **cedant**). **Labienus praecipit unum omnes petant Indutiomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit**, Caes., B. G., V, 58. **Ad haec Tullus, nuntiate, inquit, regi vestro, regem Romanum deos facere testes, uter prius populus legatos dimiserit, ut in eum omnes expetant huiusce clades belli**, Liv., I, 22, 7.

7. *The Aorist Subjunctive* is identical in form with the *Perfect*. It expresses action *completed absolutely* in the *Past*, *subjunctively* or *contingently* stated. *Independence* and *completion* of action, an action

*speedily accomplished, done in a moment*, are the characteristics of this Tense, particularly in a *Result clause*. In Cicero and Caesar the Tense does not occur very frequently—instead of the Aorist the *Imperfect Subjunctive* is the *general usage*—; but in the later prose writers, in the *consecutive relation*, it is very common. The Aorist Indicative, then, is reproduced subjunctively by the Aorist Subjunctive of the *same form* with the *Perfect*.

Ex.—*Iudices ita fortes fuerunt, ut vel perire maluerint quam perdere omnia*, Cic., Att., I, 16, 5. *Epistola illa ita me pupugit, ut somnum mihi ademerit*, Cic., Att., II, 16, 1. *Iter ita feci, ut ad me legati convenerint*. *Ad urbem ita veni, ut nemo ullius ordinis homo nomenclatori notus fuerit, qui mihi obviam non venerit*, Cic., Att., IV, 1, 4. *Neque vero tam remisso animo quisquam omnium fuit qui ea nocte conquieverit*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 21. *Addidit Caelius tantos terrae motus factos esse, ut multa oppida corruerint, multis locis labes factae sint terraeque desederint*, Cic., Div., I, 35, 78. *Coërta tempestas tam denso regem operuit nimbo, ut conspectum eius contioni abstulerit*, Liv., I, 16, 1. Cf. Suet., Caes., 6 (*ut...decreverit*); 12 (*ut...profuerit*); 14 (*ut...deseruerint*); 24 (*ut...decreverit*); 48 (*ut...vinxerit*); 54 (*ut...abstulerit*), etc. *In fine sententiae adiecit arbitrari senatum ita nos fecisse, ut dignum mandatis partibus fuerit*, Plin. Min., II, 11, 20. *Sedit immobilis adeo ut, quid mallet, intuentibus eam fuerit incertum*, Curt., IV, 56. *Tanto plus virtute valuerunt Athenienses, ut decemplicem numerum hostium profligarint*, Nep., Milt., 5. Cf. Nep., Them., 4 (*ut...non potuerit*); Dion, 1 (*ut...sint admirati*); Dion, 3 (*ut...persuaserit*); Dion, 5 (*ut...introierit*); Iph., 1 (*ut...attulerit*), etc.

8. The *Pluperfect Subjunctive* expresses an action completed in Past Time before a second action in Past Time, *subjunctively* or *contingently stated*. The Pluperfect Indicative (and in some relations the *Aorist*) is reproduced in the Subjunctive by the Pluperfect Subjunctive. Translate the Tense as the *Pluperfect*.

Ex.—*Hoc in sermone cum a me exponeretur, quae mea expectatio fuisset orationis tuae quantoque in errore versatus essem, visa est oratio non iucunda*, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 2 (here *fuisset*, *versatus essem* express relations antecedent to and realized (completed) before *exponeretur*, whether the Indicative Tenses be conceived as *expectatio fuit* (or *fuerat*), *versatus sum* (or *eram*)). *Orabat ne se, quem paulo ante cum egregia stirpe conspexissent, orbem liberis facerent*, Liv., I, 26, 9 (here *conspexissent* is antecedent to *orabat*). *Cum Philogenes ad me salutandi causa venisset, has ei litteras dedi*, Cic., Att., VI, 2, 1.

9. The *Pluperfect Subjunctive* expresses action completed in Time *future* from a given Past and *before* a *second Future* action, *subjunctively* or *contingently stated*. It therefore represents the Future *Exactum* from a given Past. The Future *Exactum* of the Indicative is reproduced from a *given Past* by the *Pluperfect Subjunctive*.



Ex.—**Appius dictitabat sese si licitum esset legem curiatam ferre, sortitum esse cum collega provincias**, Cic., Fam., I, 9, 25 (from *dictitabat*, *licitum esset* and *sortitum esse* are *subsequent* and *future*, but *licitum esset* must be realized *before* *sortitum* can occur). **Ipsi illi putavi perniciosum fore, si eius hoc tantum scelus percrebuisset**, Cic., Att., XI, 9, 2. **Responderunt: Caesar in Galliam reverteretur, exercitus dimitteret: quae si fecisset, Pompeium in Hispanias iturum**. Interea, quoad fides esset facta, Caesarem facturum, quae polliceretur, Caes., B. Civ., I, 10. **Tanta desperatio rerum eius omnium regum et populorum animos occupat, ut, quocumque venisset, hoc putarem futurum**, Cic., Att., XI, 6, 5 (the time of the sentence beginning with *ut* is future from *occupat*, and *venisset* expresses an action which must occur before *hoc futurum* (*putarem*)). **Si ille vicissent intellegebam quam crudelis esset futura victoria**, Cic., Fam., IV, 14, 2 (from *intellegebam* both *vicissent* and *esset futura* are *future*, but *vicissent* must occur before *esset futura*). **Inventum est magno esse usui posse, si haec esset in altitudinem turris elata**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 8 (the future time of the dependency is involved in *posse*). **Veritus est ne, si ex hibernis fugae similem protectionem fecisset hostium impetum sustinere non posset**, Caes., B. G., V, 47 (the time of the dependency beginning with *ne* is future from *veritus est*, but *fecisset* must be realized *before* *posset*).

162. As may be gathered from the preceding, the following may be stated, for practical purposes, as the offices of the Subjunctive Tenses:

1. The *Present* Subjunctive { (a) Present Tense.  
represents, *Subjunctively* { (b) Future First Tense from the  
stated, Present.
2. The *Imperfect* Subjunctive { (a) Imperfect Tense.  
represents, *Subjunctively* { (b) Future First Tense from a Past.  
stated,
3. The *Perfect* Subjunctive { (a) Perfect Tense. [Present.  
represents, *Subjunctively* { (b) Future *Exactum* Tense from the  
stated, (c) Aorist Tense.
4. The *Pluperfect* Subjunctive { (a) Pluperfect Tense.  
represents, *Subjunctively* { (b) Future *Exactum* Tense from a  
stated, Past.

#### The Tenses of the Predicative Infinitive.

163. 1. *The Present Infinitive* expresses action *incomplete*, *progressive*, etc., *aoristic*, in the Present Time or in a *Present connection*. The Present Indicative, in all its meanings, is reproduced *infinitively* by the Present Infinitive.

Ex.—**Vos video esse miserrimas**, Cic., Fam., XIV, 2, 1 (*vos esse* = *that you are*). **Sed video in te esse omnia**, Cic., Fam., XIV, 2, 3 (*in te esse omnia* = *that all things are*). **Quod scribis te velle scire qui sit rei publicae status**, Cic., Fam., I, 7, 10 (*te velle scire* = *that you wish to know*). **Spero nostram amici-**

tiam non egere testibus, Cic., Fam., II, 2 (nostram amicitiam non egere = *that our friendship does not need*). Illud moleste fero, nihil me adhuc his de rebus habere tuarum litterarum, Cic., Fam., II, 12, 1.

(a) *All the senses of the Present Tense are reproduced infinitively by the Present Infinitive. The context decides the character of the Infinitive action.*

Ex.—Equum vendit = *He is trying or aims to buy a horse; he repeatedly buys a horse.* Hence Dicit se equum vendere = *He says that he is trying to buy, aims to buy, repeatedly buys a horse.* Non oportet peccata corrigere (= *to try (aim) to correct*) peccantem, Sen., Ira, I, 16, 1. Qui Flavio legionem et Siciliam dari scribas, Cic., Att., X, 1, 2 (= *Since you write that a legion and Sicily are proposed to be given, etc.*).

(b) The Present Infinitive is furnished by the *Perfect* form of the Infinitive of the Verbs whose *Perfect* Indicative furnishes the Present.

Ex.—Ea te et litteris multorum et nuntiis cognosse (= *know*) arbitror, Cic., Fam., I, 5 b, 1.

(c) The Present Infinitive with a designation of time is rendered by the *English Progressive Perfect* = *that has been and is*, etc.

Ex.—Iamdudum (eum) aliquid ruri agere arbitror, Ter., Ad., 401. Id me iam pridem agere intelleges ex litteris Balbi et Oppii, Cic., Att., IX, 7, 3. Dicit haec iam pridem contra se parari, Caes., B. Civ., I, 85. Adnotasse vos credo, patres conscripti, iamdudum me non eligere quae referam, Plin. Min., Pan., 56. Dicit eum complures annos portoria reliquaque Aeduum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, Caes., B. G., I, 18.

(d) The time of the Infinitive, apart from the forms *-rus esse*, *-tum (-sum) iri*, *-tus (-sus fore)*, is determined by its association and the context. Hence, when the Present form of the Infinitive is associated with a Future Tense or representative of the Future, as the *Imperative*, etc., its time may be coincident with that of the *Speaker* (the *Present*) or of the time (*Future*) of the *Tense* on which it depends.

Ex.—Rem publicam nos habere arbitrabimur, si vos habebimus, Cic., Fam., XII, 10, 3 (*habere* may well be referred or restricted to the *Present* (time of the *Writer*)). Persuade tibi in te et in Bruto tuo esse omnia, vos exspectari, Cic., Fam., XII, 10, 3. Ego, quae te velle quaeque ad te pertinere arbitror, semper sine ulla dubitatione faciam, Cic., Att., XIV, 13, B, 5 (here *pertinere* is better conceived as restricted to the time of *arbitror*). (Litterae) tuae quam in partem acceptae sint, ex viro optimo, fratre tuo, et ex C. Furio, poteris cognoscere, Cic., Fam., X, 6, 1.

2. The *Imperfect Infinitive* is identical in form with the Present Infinitive. It expresses an action *incomplete, progressive, attempted*,

etc., in the Past Time or in a *Past connection*. The Imperfect Indicative is reproduced *infinitively* by the Imperfect Infinitive.

Ex.—*Dixit se putare* (= *that he thought = was thinking*) *satis ab se de nostris rebus esse responsum*, Cic., Att., I, 14, 2. *Senescere civitatem otio ratus undique materiam excitandi belli quaerebat*, Liv., I, 22, 2 (*senescere civitatem* = *that the state was becoming languid; of the same time with ratus*). *Cum audissem Antonium in provinciam meam venire* (= *that Antony was coming*), *castra movi*, Cic., Fam., X, 34, 1. *Perspexeram te magis iudicio bonorum quam insignibus gloriae delectari*, Cic., Fam., X, 13, 2.

(a) It must be carefully noted that an action *attempted, had in view*, etc., may be conceived as a *Future action*. Hence the Imperfect Infinitive (*de conatu*) often expresses an action *attempted, had in view, aimed at*, and in this sense approaches very nearly a *Future action*. This same kind of action is, of course, expressed in a Present Context by the Present Infinitive.

Ex.—(*Senatus respondit*) *non quin breviter reddi responsum potuerit, non recipi reges* (almost = *that the Kings would not be admitted = were not proposed to be admitted*), *ideo potius delectos patrum ad eum missos, quam legatis eius Romae daretur responsum, sed ut*, etc., Liv., II, 15, 2. *Profertur tempus ferundae legis, quam, si subiecta invidiae esset, antiquari apparebat*, Liv., IV, 58, 14 (here *antiquari* almost = *that it would be rejected*). *Dictator cum iam in manibus videret victoriam esse, urbem opulentissimam capi, tantumque praedae fore*, etc., Liv., V, 20, 1. *Inseritur huic loco fabula: immolante rege Veientium vocem haruspiciis dicentis, qui eius hostiae exta prosecuisset, ei victoriam dari, exauditam movisse Romanos milites*, Liv., V, 21, 8.

(b) The Imperfect Infinitive with a designation of *Time* expresses the sense of an *English Progressive Pluperfect*—that is, an action or state that *had been* and *was still in existence*.

Ex.—*Ex quo intellegi potest curam reipublicae defendendae iam pridem apud nos excubare*, Cic., Fam., X, 8, 5 (= *has been and is still keeping watch*, etc. (in Present)). *Dixit ex eo intellegi posse curam reipublicae defendendae iam pridem apud se excubare* (in the Past) = *had been and was still watching*, etc.).

REM. 1. The Imperfect Infinitive is expressed by the Perfect form of the verbs whose Perfect form expresses the Present.

Ex.—*Dixit se odisse iuventutem protervam*.

3. The *Perfect Infinitive* expresses an action completed in the *general Present*. The Perfect Indicative is reproduced *infinitively* by the Perfect Infinitive.

Ex.—*Me intellegis nullum neque periculum neque laborem patriae denegasse*, Cic., Fam., XII, 12, 2 (*me denegasse* = *that I have refused*, reproduces the

Indicative *denegavi*). *Dicunt res repetitum se venisse*, Liv., I, 22, 6 (*se venisse* = *that they have come*, reproduces the Perfect Indicative *venimus*).

(a) The Perfect Infinitive occurs, but rarely, in reproducing the Future *Exactum* Indicative.

Ex.—*Quod (bellum) possumus, si ex hoc impetu rerum nihil prolatando remittitur, ante hiemem diis volentibus perfecisse*, Liv., XXXVII, 19, 5 (*perfecisse*, apart from its association with *possumus*, reproduces *perfecerimus*). *Sic, ne quid aliud actum putent, victam legem esse, nisi caveant*, etc., Liv., III, 10, 13 (here *victam legem esse* reproduces *victa lex est* = *victa lex erit*).

(b) The Perfect Infinitive when associated with a Future Indicative Tense, or with the representative of a Future, reproduces an action conceived as completed in the Present, and again as completed in the Future before that of the leading Future Tense or the *representative of a Future*.

Ex.—*Crede mihi Caesarem maximum beneficium te sibi dedisse iudicatum, si huc te reicis*, Cic., Att., VIII, 15, A, 1 (*dedisse* seems to reproduce an action conceived as completed in the Present). *Vereor ne decepissem Caesarem videar*, Plin. Min., II, 9, 2 (*I fear it will seem that I have deceived Caesar*). *Facilius exhortabor, si ostendero non fortes tantum viros hoc momentum efflandae animae contempsisse*, Sen., Ep., III, 3, 9. *Damnum fecisse philosophiam non erit dubium, postquam prostituta est*, Sen., Ep., V, 12, 15. *Sin autem (civitas) non erit, in easdem solitudines tu ipse venies, in quibus nos consedissee audies*, Cic., Fam., II, 16, 4 (here *consedissee* clearly reproduces a completed action in the Future antecedent to *audies*). *Tunc in tenebris vixisse te dices, cum totam lucem et totus aspexeris*, Sen., Ep., XVII, 2, 28.

The context must decide whether the *Perfect* Infinitive associated with a *Future* presents an action conceived as completed in the *Present* or in the *Future*.

4. *The Aorist Infinitive* is identical in form with the Perfect Infinitive. It presents an action completed absolutely (not relatively) in the Past or in a past connection. If the Aorist Infinitive depends upon a Past Tense its action from the Present is *antecedent* and *completed* as compared with that of the Past Tense. In this case the Aorist Infinitive cannot be readily distinguished from the *Pluperfect Infinitive*, nor is the difference essential. The Aorist Indicative is reproduced in the Infinitive by the *Aorist Infinitive*.

Ex.—*Deos hominesque testifcor me tibi praedixisse neque temere monuisse*, etc., Cic., Fam., VIII, 16, 1 (*praedixisse* . . . *monuisse* reproduce *praedixi* . . . *monui*). *Plurimi sunt testes me initio, ne coniungeret se cum Caesare, monuisse Pempelum*, etc., Cic., Fam., VI, 6, 4 (*monuisse* reproduces *monui*). *Avi regno magis necessariam fuisse pacem credebat cum in novo tum feroci*

**populo**, etc., Liv., I, 32, 4 (here **necessariam fuisse** is properly an Aoristic conception, reproducing **necessaria fuit**; but, as it is completed and antecedent to **credebat**, it is better translated by the *Pluperfect* = *that peace had been*, etc.).

5. *The Pluperfect Infinitive* is identical in form with the *Perfect Infinitive*. It presents an action completed relatively in the Past—that is, before a second past action. The *Pluperfect Indicative* is reproduced in the Infinitive by the *Pluperfect Infinitive*.

Ex.—**Legati dixerunt, eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse**, Caes., B. G., I, 30 (translate **eam rem accidisse**, *that that thing had happened*). **Tum Pompeius senatus auctoritatem sibi maximi videri semperque visam esse respondit**, Cic., Att., I, 14, 2 (observe **videri** coincident with **respondit**, and **visam esse** antecedent to it = *that it had appeared*). **Tullus ad Feroniae fanum mercatu frequenti negotiatores Romanos comprehensos (esse) querebatur**, Liv., I, 30, 5.

6. *The Future First Infinitive* presents, in the form **-rum esse, -ros esse**, an action *progressive* or *aoristic* in time future from the Present. The Future First Indicative is reproduced in the Infinitive by the form **-rum esse, -ros esse**. The omission of *esse* is frequent.

Ex.—(**Domitius dicit**), **quod nisi (Pompeius) fecerit, se in periculum esse venturum**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 17. (**Caesar dicit**), **si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum**, Caes., B. G., I, 14. (**Caesar**), **si vim facere conentur, (se) prohibiturum ostendit**, Caes., B. G., I, 8. (**Arriovistus dicit**), **nisi (Caesar) decedat atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed pro hoste habiturum**, Caes., B. G., I, 44.

(a) As the verbs *posse, velle, nolle, malle*, involve the future, the *Future First Infinitive* of these verbs is expressed by the *Present Infinitive* form. The periphrasis *fore (futurum esse) ut* and the Subjunctive is unnecessary.

Ex.—(**Dicit**), **nisi subsidium sibi summittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse**, Caes., B. G., II, 6 (**sese non posse** = *that he will not be able*).

(b) So of other verbs, in energetic and passionate language, the Present Infinitive occurs where the Future First Infinitive is looked for.

Ex.—**Cato affirmat se vivo illum non triumphare (cf. triumphaturum)**, Cic., Att., IV, 16, 12.

(c) To be observed is the old form of the Future Infinitive built upon the form of the Future Second (Indicative in *-so*), as *reconciliaviso, reconciliaviso (reconciliaviso)*. Infinitive, *reconciliavisse*.

Ex.—**Illum confido domum in his diebus me reconciliavisse**, Pl., Capt., 168. **Credo te facile impetravisse**, Pl., M. G., 1128. This form of the Infinitive,

generally of verbs of first conjugation, seems to have the force of the *Future First Infinitive* rather than of the *Future Exactum*.

7. *The Future Exactum Infinitive* presents an action completed in the future time before a second future action. There is, however, no form of the *Infinitive Active* by which *this relation can be expressed*. This office is performed by the periphrasis *fore* or *futurum esse ut* and the Perfect Subjunctive. The *Future Second (Exactum) Indicative*, then, may be exactly reproduced by this periphrasis. The periphrasis, however, is rather *theoretical* than practical, and the fact in the language is that it is avoided, and the *Future Exactum Indicative* is reproduced in the *Infinitive* only approximately by the *Future First* form *-rum, -ros, (esse)*.

Ex.—**Spero fore (futurum (esse)) ut haec feceris** (*theoretical*). The periphrasis is not the usage in Latin.

8. *The Future First Infinitive* in *-rum, -ros, (esse)* presents an action progressive or aoristic in the future from a given *Past* as well as from a given *Present*—that is, the *Future First Indicative* is reproduced in the *Future* from a given *Past* by the form *-rum, -ros, (esse)*. *Esse* is often omitted.

Ex.—**Arivistus respondit: Aeduis se obsides redditurum non esse, neque his iniuria bellum illaturum, si stipendium quotannis penderent; si id non fecissent, longe iis fraternum nomen populi Romani afuturum**, Caes., B. G., I, 36 (*rediturum...illaturum...afuturum* reproduce from *respondit* (the Aorist) *reddam...inferam...aberit*). **Tullus satis sciebat negaturum Albanum**, Liv., I, 22, 4. (*Tullus dixit*) **usurum se eorum opera, si bellum cum Veientibus foret**, Liv., I, 26, 1. **Miltiades (dicebat), id si factum esset, civibus animum accessurum**, Nep., Milt., 4.

9. *The Future Exactum Infinitive from a given Past*. There is no separate and distinct *Indicative Tense* by which an action can be expressed as completed before a second future action from a given *Past*. This office in the *Infinitive* is performed by the periphrasis *fore* or *futurum esse ut* and the *Pluperfect Subjunctive*. The *Future Exactum Indicative*, then, may be exactly reproduced from a given *Past* by this periphrasis. Here, too, the periphrasis is *theoretical* rather than practical, and the fact in the language is that the periphrasis is avoided, and the *Future Exactum* from a given *Past* is reproduced in the *Infinitive* only approximately by the *Future First* form, *-rum, -ros, (esse)*.

Ex.—**Sperabam fore (futurum (esse)) ut haec fecisses** (*theoretical*). The periphrasis is not the usage in the language.

**CAUTION.** After a Present or Future leading Tense an *Imperfect*, *Aorist*, or *Pluperfect* Infinitive relation is expressed by the *Perfect* form of the Infinitive.

Ex.—**Audio amicum tuum venisse** (= I hear that your friend *was coming*).  
**Audio amicum tuum venisse** (= I hear that your friend *did come (came)*). **Audio amicum tuum venisse** (= I hear that your friend *had come*). Reproducing **veniebat, venit, venerat**.

So when the leading Predicate is a Future Tense.

Ex.—**Amicus tuus te venisse dicet** (= your friend will say that you *were coming, did or had come*). Reproducing **veniebat, venit, venerat**.

### Passive Infinitive Tenses.

164. The Passive has the same *Infinitive* Tenses with the Active. They differ from the Tenses of the Active in the sense of the *Passive Voice*. The Tenses may be exhibited as follows:

1. *Present Infinitive*, reproduces in all its senses the Present Indicative Passive.

Ex.—**Audio urbem oppugnari** = I hear that the city is *being assaulted*; is *repeatedly assaulted*; is *intended to be assaulted*; is *begun to be assaulted*, etc.

2. *Imperfect Infinitive*, reproduces in all its senses the *Imperfect Indicative* Passive.

Ex.—**Audiebam urbem oppugnari** = I *heard* that the city *was being* assaulted; *was repeatedly* assaulted; *was intended to be* assaulted; *was beginning (begun) to be* assaulted, etc.

3. *Aorist Infinitive*, reproduces the *Aorist Indicative*.

Ex.—**Audio urbem oppugnatam esse** = I hear that the city *was* assaulted.

4. *Perfect Infinitive*, reproduces the *Perfect Indicative*.

Ex.—**Audio urbem oppugnatam esse** = I hear that the city *has been* assaulted.

5. *Pluperfect Infinitive*, reproduces the *Pluperfect Indicative*.

Ex.—**Audiebam urbem oppugnatam esse** = I *heard* that the city *had been* assaulted.

6. *The Future First Infinitive from the Present* is expressed by the Supine in *-um* with *iri*.

Ex.—**Audio urbem oppugnatum iri** = I hear that the city *will be* assaulted.

The Subject of the Infinitive may be of *any gender, singular or plural*.

Ex.—*Sed quem tu locum Graeciae non direptum iri putas?* Cic., Att., IX, 9, 2. *Me legatum iri non arbitrator*, Cic., Att., X, 1, 4. *Mihi mater cecinit tibi aram hic dicatum iri*, Liv., I, 7, 10.

7. *The Future Exactum Infinitive from the Present* is expressed by the Perfect Passive Participle with *fore*. The Participle is, of course, *declinable* and agrees in *gender, number, and case* with the subject.

Ex.—*Dicit urbem deletam fore* (= he says that the city *will have been destroyed* = he says that the city *will come to be destroyed*). *Quod (proellum) iam decretum arbitrabar* (= *arbitror*) *fore*, Cic., Fam., X, 10, 1 (*arbitrabar Epistolary Tense*; interpret as the *Present*). *De reliquis rebus a te iam expectare litteras debemus, quid ipse agas, quid noster Hirtius, quid Caesar meus; quos spero brevi tempore societate victoriae tecum copulatos fore*, Cic., Fam., XI, 8, 2.

(a) The Future *Exactum Infinitive* of a Deponent Verb may be expressed in the same way.

Ex.—*Hoc possum dicere, me satis adeptum fore, si ex hoc tanto in omnes mortales beneficio nullum in me periculum redundarit*, Cic., Sull., IX, 27.

8. *The Future First Infinitive Passive from a given Past* is expressed by the Supine in *-um* with *iri*. The subject of the Infinitive may be of any *gender, singular or plural*.

Ex.—(*Dixerunt*), *si iniquitatem loci timeret, datum iri tamen aliquo loco pugnandi facultatem*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 71. *Caesar longius bellum ductum iri existimans et de Italicis comitatibus desperans, in Epirum rei frumentariae causa Q. Tullium misit*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 42. *Existimaram nec absentem me ludibrio laesum iri nec Metellum fratrem per te oppugnatum iri*, Cic., Fam., V, 1, 1.

9. *The Future Exactum Infinitive Passive from a given Past* is expressed by the Perfect Passive Participle with *fore*. The Perfect Participle is declined and agrees in *gender, number, and case* with the subject.

Ex.—*Audiui (audiebam) captivos occisos fore* (= I heard that the prisoners would be put to death = would *come to be put to death*). *Semper existimasti in Sicilia satis cautum tibi ad defensionem fore, si aut referri aliquid in litteras publicas vetuisses aut, quod relatum esset, tolli coëgisses*, Cic., Verr., I, 35, 88.

(a) The association of the Perfect Passive Participle with *futurus*, seems to reproduce the Future *Exactum Infinitive Passive*.

Ex.—*Cogitasti, si ei reddidisses, te minus habiturum, rem nihilo minus testatam futuram*, Cic., Verr., IV, 12, 29.

(b) The Future *Exactum* of a Deponent verb from a given Past is expressed in the same way; that is, by the Perfect Participle with *fore*.

Ex.—*Dixi me satis adeptum fore, si ex tanto in omnes mortales beneficio nullum in me periculum redundasset*. Cf. Cic., Sull., IX, 27.



REM. To be observed is the Perfect Infinitive Passive used in *anticipation* of a Future, and, in effect, reproducing the Future *Exactum* from a given Past or from the Present.

EX.—Qui obvius fuerat, mulcatus nudatusque abibat, ut satis appareret, si sic agi liceret, victam legem esse, Liv., III, 11, 8 (here *victam legem esse* = *victam legem fore*). Cf. Sic, ne quid aliud actum putent, victam legem esse, nisi caveant, etc., Liv., III, 10, 13 (with *victam legem esse* compare *victam legem fore*).

### Periphrastic Representation of Future Subjunctive Tenses.

165. From what has been said (162), it is seen that the *Present*, *Perfect*, *Imperfect*, and *Pluperfect* Subjunctive occur as regular Present and Past Tenses; also as Future Tenses from the Present (Present and Perfect), and as Future Tenses from a given Past (Imperfect and Pluperfect). Hence ambiguity may arise as to the Time of the Tenses, that is, whether they express *future Time* or not. They are Future Tenses when the *context* demands it; that is, when they are associated, as explanatory Tenses, with relations which are *clearly future*. When this is not the case, their future force, when this is necessary to be expressed, must be otherwise *exhibited*. The Tenses must be taken as the regular *Present*, *Perfect*, *Imperfect*, and *Pluperfect* if they are not *Future Tenses*. If they are *Future Tenses* and this is not shown by the context, then their *Time* must be otherwise indicated than by the *simple Tenses*.

1. The Future First Subjunctive, when the time (future) is not clear from the context, is expressed by the form *-rus sit*.

EX.—Sic mihi persuasi, quia animus se ipse moveat, ne finem quidem habiturum esse motus, quia numquam se ipse sit relicturus, Cic., Sen., XXII, 78 (the simple *relinquat* would not decide the time). Si sunt di neque ante declarant hominibus quae futura sint, quid eventurum sit ignorant, etc., Cic., Div., I, 38, 82 (the time of *sint*...*eveniat* would not be clear). Non numquam certe quid futurum sit intellegunt, Cic., Div., I, 56, 128. Incertum est, quam longa cuiusque nostrum vita futura sit, Cic., Verr., I, 58, 153. Neque tantopere mihi considerandum est, quid in praesentia velis, quam quid semper sis probaturus, Plin. Min., I, 7, 3. Haec eo pertinent, ut scias quam copiosam domum uno beneficio sis obligaturus, Plin. Min., IV, 15, 4. Illud occurrat, quantum nobis commendationis allatura sit clementiae fama, Sen., Ira., II, 34, 2. Age, non vides, quam multa (voluptas) suasura sit? Sen., Vit. Beat., XI, 1. De quibus non dubito quid sis sensurus, Sen., Ep., XVI, 4, 26. Tibi praecipio, ne sis miser ante tempus, cum illa, quae velut imminetia expavisti, fortasse numquam ventura sint, certe non venerint, Sen., Ep., II, 1, 4. Non possum scire, an ei profuturus sim, quem admoneo, Sen., Ep., III, 8, 2.

**Ego, quid futurum sit, nescio: quid fieri possit, scio**, Sen., Ep., XIII, 3, 17. **Scit, quo exiturus sit, qui, unde venerit, meminit**, Sen., Ep., XX, 3, 15. **An profecturus sim nescio**, Sen., Ep., III, 4, 2 (**proficiscar** could be interpreted as the *Deliberative Question*). **Quem quidem nec quo modo visurus nec ubi dimisurus sim, scio**, Cic., Att., III, 7, 3 (the simple **videam...dimittam** liable to be confounded with *Deliberative Questions*).

(a) The periphrastic Present Subjunctive is again employed to express with *emphasis* a future relation when the context would more or less directly indicate the simple Tense, if used, as *Future*. Again, it is employed to distinguish the Future from the Present when both times are associated.

**Ex.—Nec dubitat Deiotarus, quin (Orodes) cum omnibus copiis ipse prima aestate Euphraten transiturus sit**, Cic., Att., V, 21, 2 (the clause **prima aestate**, indicating the *future*, would justify **transeat**, but the *emphatic* statement of the *future* is made by **transiturus sit**). **Quorum furibunda mens videt ante multo quae sint futura**, Cic., Div., I, 50, 114 (here **ante multo** would perhaps justify the simple tense instead of **sint futura**, while the *emphatic* statement of the *future* authorizes the periphrastic). **Mihi autem non minori curae est, qualis res publica post mortem meam futura sit, quam qualis hodie sit**, Cic., Am., XII, 43 (the Future **futura sit** and the Present **hodie sit** contrasted). **Ex quo intelligitur cur et ea, quae praeterierunt, facta sint et, quae instant, fiant et, quae sequuntur, futura sint**, Cic., Div., I, 55, 126. **Hoc in animo volve malorem partem mortalium, cum illi nec sit quicquam mali nec pro certo futurum sit, aestuare ac decurrere**, Sen., Ep., II, 1, 13.

(b) The periphrastic *-rus sit* is, of course, employed as the Present Subjunctive of the *Periphrastic Conjugation* to express what one *is about to do, is going to do, intends to do, is likely to do, is to do* (a rare *sense*), *is going to be*, etc.

**Ex.—Praedicere possunt, qualis quisque natura et ad quam quisque maxime rem aptus futurus sit**, Cic., Div., II, 43, 90 (here **futurus sit** = *is likely to be; is going to be; is to be*). **Quem exitum acies habitura sit divinare nemo potest**, Cic., Fam., VI, 3, 2 (here **habitura sit** (better) = *is likely to have; is going to have*). It is not always easy to decide between the *regular Present Periphrastic Subjunctive* and the same form in the statement of a *future relation*.

**REM. 1.** Only verbs which have the *supine* have the form in *-rus*. When a verb has no *supine* and hence no form in *-rus* the Subjunctive *-rus sit* does not exist. The circumlocution **futurum sit ut** with the Present Subjunctive would very exactly represent it, but instances of this circumlocution are so rare as to exclude it. It is likely that *possit* with the Infinitive was used by the Latin writers instead of the circumlocution; but this cannot be proved. As the circumlocution is in effect excluded, use the *simple Present Subjunctive* or *possit* with the Infinitive.

Ex.—**Non dubito quin futurum sit ut id nobis contingat** (*theoretical*) = **Non dubito quin id nobis contingere possit**, or **Non dubito quin id nobis contingat**, leaving the *context* to determine the *future*).

The exact force of the circumlocution is exhibited in the following example, though *it is not necessary*, as the verb has the form in *-rus*.

Ex.—**Sed in his quoque, quae constabit posse fieri, coniectura aliquando erit, si quaeretur, an utique futurum sit, ut Carthaginem superent Romani; ut redeat Hannibal, si Scipio exercitum in Africam transtulerit**, etc. ? Quint., III, 8, 17. Cf. **An Carthaginem superaturi sint Romani**.

REM. 2. The periphrastic representation of the Future *Exactum* Subjunctive from the Present, namely, with the *futurum sit ut* and Perfect Subjunctive, is rather theoretical and not to be adopted. Instead use the simple Perfect Subjunctive and let the context decide its time.

2. The Future First from a *given Past* when the future time is not obvious from the context, or when it is to be *emphatically* expressed, or to distinguish a future from an action coincident in the Past (Imperfect) is expressed by the periphrastic form *-rus esset*.

Ex.—**Labienuſ litteras Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex hibernis educturus esset**, Caes., B. G., V, 47 (here *educturus esset* = *would lead away*). **Dixerunt se plurimum navibus posse, Romanos neque ullam facultatem habere navium neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, vada, portus, insulas novisse**, Caes., B. G., III, 9. **Ex iis litteris quid ageres et ubi esses cognovi, quando autem te visuri essemus nihil ex iisdem litteris potui suspicari**, Cic., Fam., IX, 1, 1 (the simple *videremus* could be interpreted as a question of *deliberation*). **Quamquam dicebas omnia, quae fierent futurave essent, fato contineri**, Cic., Div., II, 7, 19. **Litterae tuae non solum quid fieret, verum etiam quid futurum esset indicabant**, Cic., Att., II, 11, 1.

(a) The form *-rus esset* may often best be interpreted as the regular Imperfect Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Active Conjugation = *what one was going to do, was intending to do; what was to be*, etc.

Ex.—**Ubi eum visuri essemus nesciebam**, Cic., Att., III, 7, 3 (here *ubi visuri essemus* may well be interpreted *where we would likely (probably) see him; where we were going to see him*). **Quae enim vita fuisset Priamo, si scisset quos eventus senectutis esset habiturus?** Cic., Div., II, 9, 22 (here *esset habiturus* = *was going to have; was likely to have; was to have*).

(b) Only verbs which have the supine can have the form in *-rus*. Hence, in case of a verb which has no supine, the simple Subjunctive Imperfect is used to express the Future First from a *given Past*, leaving the context to decide the time; or, perhaps, the Imperfect

Subjunctive of *posse* (*posset*) with the Infinitive is employed. The circumlocution *futurum esset ut* with the *Imperfect Subjunctive*, while it exactly states the relation to be expressed, *is not the usage*.

Ex.—**Non dubitabam quin futurum esset ut id nobis contingeret** (*theoretical*).  
Cf. **Non dubitabam quin id nobis contingere posset**.

(c) There is no form by which to express the Future *Exactum* from a given Past. The relation would be exactly stated by the circumlocution *futurum esset ut* with the *Pluperfect Subjunctive*, but the facts in the language *do not authorize the use of the circumlocution*. In this case the *Pluperfect* alone is used, and the context *must decide the force of the tense*.

Ex.—**Nesciebam num futurum esset ut redisset** (*theoretical*).

REM. The Future *Exactum Subjunctive Passive* seems to have been represented by the *Perfect Passive Participle* with *futurus sit* (from the Present), *futurus esset* (from a given Past).

Ex.—**Sed id erit perbrevis, nec dubito, quin legente te has litteras confecta iam res futura sit**, Cic., Fam., VI, 12, 3 (from the Present). **Nec dubitabam, quin te legente has litteras confecta res futura esset** (from the Past).

#### Periphrastic Representation of Future Infinitive Relations.

##### 166. *Active*.

1. Future *First* from the Present. We have seen that this tense relation is regularly expressed by *-rum esse*, *-ros esse*, when the verb has the *supine*. If it has no *supine* it is expressed by *fore* (*futurum esse*) *ut* with the Present Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Spero fore ut contingat id nobis**, Cic., Tusc., I, 34, 82. **Huius me constantiae puto fore ut numquam paeniteat**, Cic., Fam., II, 16, 3. **Spero fore studiis non solum amicorum, sed etiam alienorum, ut vi resistamus**, Cic., Quint. Frat., I, 2, 3. **Quod si diutius alatur controversia, fore ut pars cum parte civitatis confligat**, Caes., B. G., VII, 32.

(a) The *periphrasis fore* (*futurum esse*) *ut* with the Present Subjunctive is allowable even when the predicate *has the supine*, or *where the regular Future First Infinitive -rum (-ros) esse* is expected.

Ex.—**Quid, si ne id quidem est exploratum, fore ut mihi liceat**, Cic., Att., X, 8, 3 (*licitum esse* could have been used). **Nam liquet mihi futurum ut, peracto quod promisisti, inchoes aliud**, Plin. Min., V, 11, 3. Cf. **Te incohaturum esse. Neque dubito futurum ut non deponas, si semel sumpseris**, Plin. Min., VI, 21, 6. Cf. **Te non depositurum esse**.

2. There is no form by which the *Future Exactum Infinitive Active* is expressed. The periphrasis *fore* (*futurum esse*) *ut* with the Perfect Subjunctive, while it would exactly reproduce it, is not authorized by the facts in the language.

Ex.—**Spero fore ut id contigerit nobis** (theoretical).

3. Future First from a given Past. It has been seen that this tense relation is regularly expressed by *-rum esse*, *-ros esse*, when the verb has the supine. If it has no supine it is expressed by *fore* (*futurum esse*) *ut* and the Imperfect Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Aristoteles scribit Eudemo visum in quiete iuvenem dicere fore ut perbreui convalesceret**, Cic., Div., I, 25, 53. **Si Caesar divinasset fore ut trucidatus iaceret**, Cic., Div., II, 9, 23 (the form *iaciturus* not usual). **Excepta vox est, cum teporem (balnearum) incusaret, futurum ut incalescerent**, Tac., H., III, 32.

(a) It is to be observed that the periphrasis *fore* (*futurum esse*) *ut* with the Imperfect Subjunctive often occurs instead of *-rum esse*, *-ros esse*, even when the verb has a supine.

Ex.—**Plane putaverunt fore ut victrix nequitia ac libido poenas ab optimo quoque peteret sui doloris**, Cic., Att., I, 16, 7. Cf. **Petituram esse. Vidit, nisi in eo occultasset voluntatem, futurum ut Thasii dilaberentur consulerentque rebus suis**, Nep., Lys., 2. Cf. **Dilapsuros consulturosque**.

4. There is no form by which the *Future Exactum Infinitive Active* from a given Past is expressed. While this relation would be exactly stated by the periphrasis *fore* (*futurum esse*) *ut* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive, the facts in the language do not warrant its use.

Ex.—**Sperabam fore (futurum) ut id nobis contigisset** (theoretical).

#### 167. *Passive*.

1. The periphrastic statement of the Future First Infinitive Passive from the Present is *fore* (*futurum esse*) *ut* with the Present Subjunctive. It is to be observed that the periphrastic representation of the Future First Infinitive Passive from the Present occurs more frequently than the regular form *-um iri*, even when the verb has the supine.

Ex.—**Illud tibi affirmo, si rem istam ex sententia gesseris, fore ut absens a multis collaudere**, Cic., Fam., I, 7, 5. (Dicit) **ita fore ut per te Ptolemaeus restitueretur**, Cic., Fam., I, 7, 4. **Ea comitia puto fore ut ducantur**, Cic., Att., IV, 15, 7. **Si dederint, quod petimus, tamen paulo post futurum puto ut hostes iudicemur aut aqua et igni nobis interdicatur**, Cic., Fam., XI, 1, 2.

2. The Future *Exactum* Infinitive from the *Present*. While no example has been observed of the periphrastic statement of this Infinitive, namely, *fore* (*futurum esse*) *ut* with the Perfect Subjunctive, yet the following sentence (Cic., Att., XVI, E, 16) seems to authorize it:

Ex.—*Sperabam fore ut ea, quae superioribus litteris a te petissemus, impetrata essent*, Cic., Att., XVI, E, 16 (*from the Past*).

Cf. *Spero fore ut ea . . . impetrata sint* (*from the Present*).

3. The periphrastic statement of the Future First Infinitive Passive from a given Past is *fore* (*futurum esse*) *ut* with the Imperfect Subjunctive. It is to be observed that the periphrastic representation of the Future First Infinitive Passive from a given Past is *more usual* than the regular form *-um iri*, even when the verb has the supine.

Ex.—*In libris scriptum Veientes habebant, fore ut brevi a Gallis Roma caperetur*, Cic., Div., I, 44, 100. *Exaudita vox est a luco Vestae, futurum esse, nisi provisum esset, ut Roma caperetur*, Cic., Div., I, 45, 101. (*Divitiacus dixit*) *qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur*, Caes., B. G., I, 20. (*Dixit*) *futurum esse paucis annis uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur*, Caes., B. G., I, 31.

4. The Future *Exactum* from a given Past is rarely expressed by the periphrasis *fore* (*futurum esse*) *ut* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Sperabam fore ut ea, quae superioribus litteris a te petissemus, impetrata essent*, Cic., Att., XVI, E, 16.

REM. It may be well to state that, as far as has been observed, there is no difference in meaning between the Infinitive Future First Active *-rum* (*-ros*) *esse* and *-rum* (*-ros*) *fore*, nor between the Subjunctive *-rus esset* and *-rus foret*.

Ex.—*Illud confirmas, moram mihi nullam fore, deinde addis, si quid secus, te ad me fore venturum*, Cic., Att., V, 21, 4. Cf. Liv., VI, 42, 12 (*facturos fore*). *Enuntiare consuli satis habuit, qua noctis hora quaque porta et quam in viam egressurus hostis foret*, Liv., IX, 16, 7. *Sciscitatum est quanam futura finis tantis cladibus foret*, Liv., XXII, 57, 5.

### The Periphrastic Active Conjugation.

168. This Conjugation is formed by means of the Future Active Participle in *-rus* with the tenses of *esse*. It is a complete conjugation, that is, it has all the tenses of *esse*. The participle in this association with the tenses of *esse* expresses an action that one *intends to do, is going to do, is about to do, is likely to do*. In these several

expressions is involved a modified *future time*. The leading sense is that of an action that one *intends to do*. The office of the tense of *esse* is to define the *time* of the *intention*, while the participle states the *time (future)* of the *action*. The Present *est*, then, states the *present intention* as to a *future action* expressed by the *participle*. The Imperfect *erat* states a *past intention* as to a *future action* expressed by the *participle*. The conception, in its simplest form, implies a *rational, intelligent subject*, as—

Ex.—**Scripturus sum** = *I intend, am going, am about, am likely, to write.*

**Scripturas eram** = *I was intending, was going, was about, was likely, to write.*

### Indicative Mood of the Periphrastic Active Conjugation.

169. 1. *Present Tense*, **Amicus tuus scripturus est** = *your friend is intending, etc., to write.*

2. *Perfect Tense*, **Amicus tuus scripturus fuit** = *your friend has intended, etc., to write.*

3. *Imperfect Tense*, **Amicus tuus scripturus erat** = *your friend was intending, etc., to write.*

4. *Aorist Tense*, **Amicus tuus scripturus fuit** = *your friend intended (did intend), etc., to write.*

5. *Pluperfect Tense*, **Amicus tuus scripturus fuerat** = *your friend had intended, etc., to write.*

6. *Future First Tense*, **Amicus tuus scripturus erit** = *your friend will be likely, etc., to write.*

7. *Future Exactum Tense*,—

Ex.—**Sapiens tamen non vivet, si fuerit sine homine victurus**, Sen., Ep., I, 9, 14 (the only instance observed of this tense. Here **si fuerit victurus** = *if he shall be appointed to live; if it shall be his lot to live*).

### The Subjunctive Tenses of the Periphrastic Conjugation.

170. 1. *Present Tense*, **Non dubito, quin venturus sit** = *I do not doubt that he intends, etc., to come.* This tense occurs, also, under the restrictions stated, as the *Future First* of the Subjunctive from the *Present*.

2. *Perfect Tense*, **Non dubito, quin venturus fuerit** = *I do not doubt that he has intended, etc., to come.*

3. *Imperfect Tense*, **Non dubitabam, quin venturus esset** = *I did*

not doubt that he *intended*, etc., *to come*. This tense occurs also, under the restrictions stated, as the *Future First* of the Subjunctive from a given Past.

4. *Aorist Tense*, *Non dubito, quin venturus fuerit* = I do not doubt that he *intended*, etc., *to come*. This tense is used also as the representative of the *Apodosis* of the *Unreal Past Conditional*, i. e., of the *Pluperfect Subjunctive*, when dependently expressed, as an *Indirect Question*, etc. Hence—

**Non dubito, quin venturus fuerit** = I do not doubt that *he would have come*.

5. *Pluperfect Tense*, *Non dubitabam, quin venturus fuisset* = I did not doubt that he *had intended to come*. This tense is used also, but rarely, as the representative of the *Apodosis* of the *Unreal Past Conditional*, i. e., of the *Pluperfect Subjunctive*, when dependently expressed as an *Indirect Question*, etc.

Ex.—**Non dubitabam, quin venturus fuisset** = I did not doubt that *he would have come*.

### The Infinitive Tenses of the Periphrastic Conjugation.

171. 1. *Present Tense*, *Dicit se venturum esse* = he says that he *intends*, etc., *to come*. This Infinitive is used also as the *Future First Infinitive* from the Present and *rarely* as the *Apodosis* of the *Unreal Present Condition* dependently stated in the Infinitive.

2. *Perfect Tense*, *Dicit se venturum fuisse* = he says that he *has intended*, etc., *to come*.

3. *Imperfect Tense*, *Dicebat se venturum esse* = he said that he *was intending*, etc., *to come*.

4. *Aorist Tense*, *Dicit se venturum fuisse* = he says that he *intended*, etc., *to come*.

5. *Pluperfect Tense*, *Dicebat se venturum fuisse* = he said that he *had intended*, etc., *to come*.

The form *-rum fuisse* is also used to express *infinitively* the *Apodosis* of the *Unreal Present* and *Unreal Past Conditionals*.

172. The Periphrastic Active Tenses, *-rus est*, etc., are used with meanings somewhat different from the preceding, namely, to express that a subject, either *personal* or *impersonal*, is *appointed* or *intended* for a given object or end; again, that a subject possesses *inherent properties* or a *general* character likely to result in a given *state* or



*end*. In the former case a *directing conscious* agent is implied; in the latter no such agent is implied, as the *state* or *end* is the outcome of the properties or character of the subject. In either case the Periphrastic Tense, as *-rus est*, etc., *-rus erat*, etc., may best be translated *is to*, *was to*, etc.

Ex.—**Servus ne vulgari quidem more periturus est**, Sen., Ira, III, 40, 2 (**periturus est** = *is to die; is appointed to die*). **Quid timeam, si post mortem beatus futurus sum?** Cic., Sen., XIX, 67 (**si futurus sum** = *if I am to be, am destined or appointed to be*). **Sin una est interiturus animus cum corpore**, Cic., Sen., XXII, 81 (**est interiturus** = *is appointed or destined to perish*). **Faciam, praesertim si utrique vestrum gratum futurum est**, Cic., Sen., II, 6 (*if it is to be, etc.; if its character is such that it is likely to result in being agreeable, etc.*). **Quod nociturum est, medici non relinquunt**, Curt., VI, 8 (*that whose properties tend to, or whose general character is likely to result in injury; that which is to injure*).

173. If the verb has no supine, then the Periphrastic Tenses cannot be formed. In such a case a periphrasis *futurum est ut* with the Subjunctive must be employed. Again, the *Passive* has no form corresponding with the future Active Participle in *-rus*. The periphrasis *futurum est ut* with the Subjunctive exactly reproduces in the *Passive* the sense of a periphrastic Active Tense, *-rus est*, etc. But this *Passive* periphrasis rarely occurs.

Ex.—**Futurum est ut sapiam: ex hoc licet nondum sapere me intellegas**, Sen., Ep., XIX, 8, 20 (**sapere** has no Supine; hence the periphrasis **Futurum est ut, si dividantur sententiae interficientis et relegantis, praevaleat illa, quae absolvit**, Plin. Min., VIII, 14, 21). **Non faciunt hae nidos migrantque multis diebus ante, si futurum est ut auctus amnis attingant**, Plin. Mai., X, 95. **Futurum est ut urbs capiator** (= *the city is to be, is going to be, is likely to be taken*). **Futurum erat ut urbs caperetur** (= *the city was to be, was going to be, was likely to be taken*). This *Passive* periphrasis is to be avoided.

174. It is to be observed that neither in the Periphrastic Active (*-rus est*, etc.) nor in the representative of this (*futurum est ut* with the Subjunctive) is the time an *immediate future*. To express this relation of Time = *to be on the point of*, a second periphrasis is employed, namely, *in eo esse ut* with the Subjunctive. From the examples observed it appears allowable to use this periphrasis not only in the *Indicative* but in the *Subjunctive* and *Infinitive*. The Verb *esse* in the periphrasis *in eo esse*, etc., seems to be uniformly impersonal.

Ex.—**In eo est ut veniat** = *he is on the point of coming*.

**In eo fuit ut veniret** = *he was on the point of coming*, etc.

**In eo est ut urbs capiator** = *the city is on the point of being taken*.

**In eo fuit ut urbs caperetur** = *the city was on the point of being taken*.

**Non dubito quin in eo sit ut veniat** = I do not doubt that he *is on the point of coming*.

**Non dubitabam quin in eo esset ut veniret** = I did not doubt that he *was on the point of coming*.

**Non dubito quin in eo sit ut urbs capiatur** = I do not doubt that the city *is on the point of being taken*.

**Non dubitavi quin in eo esset ut urbs caperetur** = I did not doubt that the city *was on the point of being taken*.

**Dico in eo esse ut veniat** = I say that he *is on the point of coming*.

**Dixi in eo esse ut veniret** = I said that he *was on the point of coming*.

**Dico in eo esse ut urbs capiatur** = I say that the city *is on the point of being taken*.

**Dixi in eo esse ut urbs caperetur** = I said that the city *was on the point of being taken, etc.*

Ex.—**Cum in eo esset ut oppido potiretur, lucus incensus est**, Nep., Milt., 7. **Cum in eo esset ut comprehenderetur, insidias sibi fieri intellexit**, Nep., Paus., 5. **Cum in eo esset ut in muros evaderet miles, deditio est facta**, Liv., II, 17, 5. **Si rem inclinatam viderent atque in eo esse ut urbs caperetur, scirent**, etc., Liv., XXVIII, 22, 8.

(a) The preceding phrase, *in eo esse ut*, expressing an immediate future, in which *esse* is impersonal, is not to be confounded with the phrase, *in eo esse ut*, in which *esse* is *personal*. In the latter phrase *ut* depends upon the demonstrative *eo*, and denotes *result* and an *indefinite future*; as, *Res in eo est ut* = the affair *is in such (that) state that, etc.*

Ex.—**Romae sicut plebis victoria fuit in eo, ut quae mallerent comitia haberent, ita eventu comitiorum patres evicere**, Liv., IV, 56, 1. **Dicunt iam in eo rem fore ut Romani aut hostes aut domini habendi sint**, Liv., VIII, 27, 3. **Dicunt non in eo esse Carthaginiensium res, ut Galliam atque Italiam armis obtineant**, Liv., XXX, 19, 3. **Cum res non in eo essent, ut Cyprum tentaret, Seleuciam rediit**, Liv., XXXIII, 41, 9.

### Sequence of Tenses.

175. Indicative Tenses are associated in any way demanded by the Indicative relations to be expressed. The Sequence of Tenses applies to the association of the *Subjunctive with the Indicative*, and also of Subjunctive with Subjunctive Tenses. Hence—

I. 1. The *Present Indicative* is associated with the *Present Subjunctive Tenses (Present and Perfect)*.

Ex.—**Rogo quid agat** = I ask what he *is doing*. **Rogo quid egerit** = I ask what he *has done*. **Cnaeus noster quid consilii ceperit capiatve nescio**, Cic., Att., VII, 10.

2. The *Perfect Indicative* is associated with the *Present Subjunctive Tenses* (Present and Perfect).

Ex.—**Rogavi quid agat**=I have asked what he *is* doing. **Rogavi quid egerit**=I have asked what he *has* done. **Quibus rebus adductus ad causam accesserim demonstravi**, Cic., *Caecil.*, III, 10. **Nondum satis constitui molestiae plus an voluptatis attulerit mihi Trebatius noster**, Cic., *Fam.*, XI, 27, 1.

3. The *Present Indicative* is associated with the *Future First Subjunctive* from the Present, necessarily expressed by *periphrastic* form *-rus sit* when the Future Time is not clear from the context.

Ex.—**Rogo quid acturus sit**=I ask what he *will* do. **Vereor, ne laborem augeam**, Cic., *Leg.*, I, 4, 12.

4. The *Perfect Indicative* is associated with the *Future First Subjunctive* from the Present, necessarily expressed by *periphrastic* form *-rus sit* when the Future Time is not clear from the context.

Ex.—**Rogavi quid acturus sit**=I have asked what he *will* do. **Cognovi quid acturus sit**=I have learned=I *know* what he *will* do.

(a) The *Subjunctive Tense Sequence* after the Perfect deserves a more careful consideration. The Perfect expresses an action *completed* in the *general Present*. When the Perfect expresses an action completed in the *general Present* and more or less remotely from the *immediate Present*, and hence by which the *immediate Present* is not covered, the Sequence is the *Imperfect Subjunctive*. In this case, by the use of the Imperfect Subjunctive, there is a conformity of the dependent Subjunctive action to the time (*past Present*) of the occurrence of the *Perfect* action. Accepting the Perfect as a Present Tense and its action as completed in the general Present, the use of the Imperfect Subjunctive in connection with it seems to be and is, from the English standpoint, an *inaccuracy*, and is to be regarded as a means by which to distinguish the *past Present* of the *Perfect* from the *immediate Present*, a time which may be also covered by the Perfect.

Again, the Perfect Tense expresses not only an action completed in the general Present and *not* covering the *immediate Present*, but the *state* or *condition* resulting from the completion of the action. This resulting state or condition is, in effect, the *Present Tense*. Hence upon the *Perfect* expressing *state* or *condition* the Present Subjunctive is the Sequence.

Again, the effect of the action completed in the general Present may be *limited* to the immediate Present. In this case also the Sequence after the Perfect is the Present Subjunctive.

If from the Perfect expressing an action completed in the general Present but *not embracing* the *immediate* Present the dependent action is *future*, but the future time is *not indicated* by the context, the future time of the dependent action is expressed by *-rus esset*, not by the simple Imperfect Subjunctive. So, also, the future after the Perfect, expressing resulting *state* or *condition*, when the future time of the simple Present Subjunctive would not be clear, is expressed by *-rus sit*.

Ex.—**Me ut tibi amicissimum esse intellegeres laboravi**, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 10 (here *intellegeres* conforms to the time (*Past Present*) of *laboravi* = *I have striven*). **Ex epistolis tuis intellexi, quam suspenso animo scire averes, quid esset novi**, Cic., Att., II, 18, 1 (*averes* conforms to the time of *intellexi*, while it *may cover* the immediate Present). **Hoc aspersi, ut scires me tamen in stomacho solere ridere**, Cic., Fam., II, 16, 7. **Equidem iam effeci, ut maxime plebs et, qui antea noster fuit, populus vester esset**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 17, 2. **Odia autem illa libidinosae et delicatae iuventutis sic mitigata sunt comitate quadam mea, me unum ut omnes illi colant**, Cic., Att., I, 19, 8 (here *mitigata sunt* expresses *state* or *condition*; hence *Present Subjunctive* *colant*). **Ita his novis amicitiiis implicati sumus, ut crebro mihi vafer ille Siculus insurret Epicharmus cantilenam illam suam**, Cic., Att., I, 19, 8 (here *implicati sumus* expresses *state* or *condition* = *are so embarrassed (hampered)*, etc.). **Quem (exercitum) turpiter se ex hac fuga recipientem ne qua civitas suis finibus recipiat, a me provisum est**, Caes., B. G., VII, 20 (here *provisum est* = *I have provided* and *am on the watch*, etc.). **Hoc dies duodecim profecerunt, ut, quem nemo praeter Cotylam inventus sit qui defenderet, is habeat iam patronos etiam consulares**, Cic., Phil., V, 2, 5 (here *habeat* emphasizes the *Present result* of *profecerunt*). **Rogavi quid acturus esset** = *I have asked what he would do* (*acturus esset* expresses a distinct future from *rogavi*, while *ageret* would express an action coincident with *rogavi*). Cf. **Quando te visuri essemus nihil sane ex iisdem litteris potui suspicari**, Cic., Fam., IX, 1, 1 (*visuri essemus* conforms to *potui suspicari*). But **Cognovi** (= *I have learned and know*) **quando amicus venturus sit** (*venturus sit* conforms to the sense of *cognovi* = *present*, and expresses distinctly a future from it). **Qua re, si quid eius modi evenerit, ut arcessamur, quod equidem non curo; quid enim essem de pace dicturus, dixi**, etc., Cic., Att., X, 1, 3 (*essem dicturus* conforms to *dixi* (*I have said*) and expresses a future from it). **Haec tibi exposui, quo magis scires quantum ego tibi debiturus essem**, Plin. Min., I, 24, 5.

(b) The simple Present and Perfect Subjunctives are used as *Future Subjunctive Tenses* after the Present Indicative Tenses (*Present* and *Perfect*) when the future time of the dependent Subjunctive Tenses is clear from the context. It often occurs that the *leading predicate* or *clause* implies and points to future time. In such cases the Present or Perfect Subjunctive which follows is a *Future*, not a *Present Tense*. Thus:

*Multa pollicetur, si servem* = he promises much; he makes great promises = he promises to do great things — if I shall save him. *Multa pollicetur* implies and points to the future; *servem* is Future First Subjunctive.

1. *Multa pollicetur, si servem* = he promises much, if I shall save him.
2. *Multa pollicetur, si servaverim* = he promises much, if I shall have saved him.
3. *Multa pollicitus est, si servem* = he has promised much, if I shall save him.
4. *Multa pollicitus est, si servaverim* = he has promised much, if I shall have saved him.

Ex.—*Inimicitias mihi denuntias, si quicquam ex his, quae cotidie facio, ignoraveris*, Sen., Ep., IX, 5, 1 (= you threaten me with your enmity, if you shall (come to) be ignorant, etc.). Cf. *Inimicitias mihi denuntias, si quicquam... ignores* = (if you shall be ignorant, etc.). *Inimicitias mihi denuntiasti... si quicquam ignores* = (you have threatened, etc.). Cf. *Inimicitias mihi denuntiasti, si quicquam ignoraveris*, etc.

REM. It is to be observed that where the Imperfect Subjunctive would be the Sequence to express a *general* action or *action incomplete*, the *Pluperfect* Subjunctive occurs to express *completed action*, and is translated by the *Perfect*. In such a case, however, the *Perfect* Subjunctive is the usage rather than the *Pluperfect*.

Ex.—*Nam inter patres etiam filiosque, cum intervenisset emancipatio, litigatum (esse) scio*, Quint., XI, 1, 65 (here *intervenisset* is determined by *litigatum (esse)* and is translated as the *Perfect*).

II. 1. The *Imperfect* Indicative is followed by the *Imperfect* Subjunctive, expressing action coincident with the leading (*Imperfect*) action.

Ex.—*Rogabam quid ageret* = I was asking (would ask) what he *was* doing.

2. The *Imperfect* Indicative is followed by the *Pluperfect* Subjunctive, expressing action antecedent to the leading action.

Ex.—*Rogabam quid egisset* = I was asking (would ask) what he *had* done.

3. The *Imperfect* Indicative is followed by the *Aorist* Subjunctive, expressing a momentary and completed action in the *Past*, frequent in a *Result clause*.

Ex.—*Diligebat usque adeo, ut audita clade Tituriana barbam capillumque summiserit*, Suet., Caes., 67.

4. The *Aorist* Indicative is followed by the *Imperfect* Subjunctive, expressing action coincident with the leading (*Aorist*) action.

Ex.—*Rogavi quid ageret* = I asked what he *was* doing.

5. The Aorist Indicative is followed by the Pluperfect Subjunctive, expressing action antecedent to the leading action.

Ex.—**Rogavi quid egisset** = I asked what he *had done*.

6. The Aorist Indicative is followed by the Aorist Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Tam facile (eos) circumegit et flexit, ut ei milites esse confestim responderint**, Suet., Caes., 70.

7. The *Pluperfect* Indicative is followed by the *Imperfect* Subjunctive, expressing action coincident with the leading (*Pluperfect*) action.

Ex.—**Rogaveram quid ageret** = I had asked what he *was doing*.

8. The *Pluperfect* Indicative is followed by the *Pluperfect* Subjunctive, expressing an action antecedent to the leading action.

Ex.—**Rogaveram quid egisset** = I had asked what he *had done*.

9. The *Pluperfect* Indicative is followed by the *Aorist* Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Nobilem iuvenem adversus Hiempsalem regem tam enixe defenderat, ut lubae regis filio in altercatione barbam invaserit**, Suet., Caes., 71. **Tantum opes creverant, ut arma movere nec Mezentius nec ulli alii accolae ausi sint**, Liv., I, 3, 4.

(a) The simple *Imperfect* Subjunctive expresses the relation of the *First Future Subjunctive* from a given *Past*, and when the future time of the simple Tense (*Imperfect Subjunctive*) is not clear, the periphrastic form *-rus esset* is used.

Ex.—**Rogabam quid acturus esset** = I was asking (would ask) what he *would do*. **Rogavi quid acturus esset** = I asked what he *would do*. **Rogaveram quid acturus esset** = I had asked what he *would do*.

(b) The simple *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* Subjunctive after *Past* Tenses are used as *Future Subjunctive* Tenses when the future time of the dependent Subjunctive Tenses is *clear* from the context. It often occurs that the leading predicate or clause *implies* and *points to the future time*. In such cases the *Imperfect* or *pluperfect* Subjunctive, which follows, is a *Future Tense*. The *Imperfect* in this connection represents the *Future First* from a given *Past* (leading predicate or phrase), while the *Pluperfect* represents the *Future Exactum* from the time of the leading predicate or clause. The *Pluperfect* here occurs far more frequently than the *Imperfect*.

1. **Pollicebatur multa, si servarem** = he would make great promises, if I *should (try to) save him*.

2. **Pollicitus est multa, si servarem** = he made great promises, if I *should (try to) save him*.

3. **Pollicitus erat multa, si servarem** = he had made great promises, if I *should (try to) save him*.
4. **Pollicebatur multa, si servassem** = he would make great promises, if I *should have saved him*.
5. **Pollicitus est multa, si servassem** = he made great promises, if I *should have saved him*.
6. **Pollicitus erat multa, si servassem** = he had made great promises, if I *should have saved him*.

Ex.—**Quidam demonstravit istum esse pollicitum, quantam vellent pecuniam, si me aedilitate deiecissent**, Cic., Verr., Prim. Act., VIII, 23. **Nisi restituisent statuas, vehementer minatur** (*minatus est*), Cic., Verr., II, 67, 162 (Future implied in *minatur*). **Iter eius erat ad Lentulum cum praemiorum promissis, si Romam revertisset**, Cic., Att., VIII, 11, 5. **Quae minae omnibus, qui remansissent!** Cic., Att., IX, 10, 2. **Hernici Latinique pudore etiam, non misericordia solum moti, si non obstitissent communibus hostibus, Romam pergunt**, Liv., III, 7, 4. **Dictator fertur pronuntiasse militi praemia, qui primus castra hostium intrasset**, Liv., II, 20, 12. **Unam opem aegris corporibus relictam, si pax ab diis impetrata esset, credebant**, Liv., I, 31, 7. The Imperfect (*Future First*) Subjunctive is rare, because the sense of the Future First in such a connection is unusual. In such a sentence as **Nisi restituerent statuas, vehementer minatur**—the Tense **restituerent** would mean *unless they should (try, attempt to) restore, etc.*

III. 1. The Present and Perfect Subjunctive follow the *Future Indicative* Tenses—the Present Subjunctive as the *Present* Tense or the *Future First* from the *Present*, the Perfect Subjunctive as the *Perfect* Tense or the *Future Exactum* from the *Present*.

1. **Rogabo quid agat** = I shall ask what he *is doing* (at the time of the Speaker).
2. **Rogavero quid agat** = I shall (certainly) ask what he *is doing* (at the time of the Speaker).
3. **Rogabo quid egerit** = I shall ask what he *has done* (before the time of the Speaker).
4. **Rogavero quid egerit** = I shall (certainly) ask what he *has done* (before the time of the Speaker).

Ex.—**Satis tempore ad eos accedemus, ubi, quid valeant, scierimus**, Cic., Fam., XI, 1, 4 (here **quid valeant** = *what their strength is*). **Sentiet quos lacessierit**, Cic., Fam., XII, 22, 1 (here **quos lacessierit** = *whom he has attacked*). **Qualis quisque sit** (= *is*) **scies**, si, etc., Sen., Ep., V, 12, 12. **Si voles scire quo modo quisque dicat** (*speaks*), Plin. Min., II, 14, 8. **Hoc quale sit, facilius existimabit is, qui iudicare poterit**, etc., Nep., Att., 20. **Cum, quid inter sapientem et sapere intersit** (what the difference *is*), **didicero, sapiam?** Sen., Ep., XIX, 8, 33. **Veniet tempus quo posteri visere gestient quis sudores tuos hauserit campus**, Plin. Min., Pan., 15 (here **hauserit** is Perfect). **Ignosces, laudabis etiam, si cogitaveris quid amiserit**, Plin. Min., V, 16, 9.

2. So, too, the Present and Perfect Subjunctive follow the *Future Indicative* Tenses—the *Present* as the *Future First* Subjunctive co-

incident with the leading Future Tense, and the *Perfect* as the *Future Exactum* of the Subjunctive presenting an action completed in the Future before the leading Future Tense.

1. **Rogabo quid agat**=I shall ask what he *will be doing* (at time of **rogabo**).
2. **Rogavero quid agat**=I shall (certainly) ask what he *will be doing* (at time of **rogavero**).
3. **Rogabo quid egerit**=I shall ask what he *will have done* (before time of **rogabo**).
4. **Rogavero quid egerit**=I shall (certainly) ask what he *will have done* (before time of **rogavero**).

Ex.—**Cum omnes audiero, quid de quoque sentiam scribam**, Plin. Min., II, 18, 3 (here **quid sentiam**=what I shall think, at the time of **scribam**). **Si quis quaesiverit, unde sciam, primum, si noluerit, non respondebo**, Sen., Mort. Claud., I, 1 (here **sciam** is coincident with **quaesiverit**). **Ubi cumque eris, sciam quid agas**, Sen., Ep., V, 10, 1. **Si quis sibi proposuerit, quantum operis aggressus sit, sciet nihil molliter esse faciendum**, Sen., Ep., V, 11, 6. Cf. **Quid egerim, celeriter ut scias, dabo operam**, Cic., Fam., XII, 12, 5 (here **egerim** is Future *Exactum* compared with **ut scias** (Future). In such connections it is not always easy to decide whether the Present and Perfect Subjunctives are to be taken as *Present Tenses* according to 1 or as *Future Tenses* according to 2).

3. Again, upon the *Future Indicative Tenses*, the Present Subjunctive follows to express an action in the Subjunctive *future from* or *subsequent* to the *leading future* action.

(a) When the Future time is clear from the context, or is necessarily involved in the dependent Present Subjunctive Tense, the simple Tense is used.

Ex.—**Celeriter ut scias, dabo operam**, Cic., Fam., XII, 12, 5 (**ut scias** necessarily *future from* or *subsequent to* **dabo operam**). **Pauper flam: inter plures ero. Exsul flam: ibi me natum putabo, quo mittar**, Sen., Ep., III, 3, 17. **Erunt qui hanc ruinam timeant**, Sen., Ep., VI, 5, 6. **Praecipiet aliquis, ut prudentiam magni aestimemus**, Sen., Ep., XV, 3, 55.

(b) If the Future time of the dependent Subjunctive is not clear from the context, the time is expressed by the form *-rus sit*.

Ex.—**Videbimus quid futurum sit**, Sen., Ep., II, 1, 7. **Ego te disertum putabo, si ostenderis quo modo sis eos inter sicarios defensurus**, Cic., Phil., II, 4, 8. **Aliqua sequuntur, ut, si priora bene narraveris, iudex ipse, quod postea sis narraturus, exspectet**, Quint., IV, 2, 53 (here **sis narraturus** is *future from exspectet*, itself future).

### Special Cases of the Sequence of Tenses.

176. After a Past Tense (or the *Perfect*) a dependent statement of general application—one that is true of any time—is expressed, in



Latin, by the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* Subjunctive, but is, in English, translated by a *Present* Tense, that is, the *Imperfect* is translated by the *Present* and the *Pluperfect* by the *Perfect*. This is a matter of translation and is to be carefully noted.

Ex.—*Tum ille (= Lentulus) subito scelere demens, quanta conscientiae vis esset (= is), ostendit (= showed), Cic., Cat., III, 5, 11. Nullam capitaliorem pestem quam voluptatem corporis hominibus dicebat a natura datam, cuius voluptatis avidae libidines effrenate ad potiundum incitarentur (= are incited), Cic., Sen., XII, 39. (Dixit) se autem conservata religione confirmare exercitum, cum animadverteret deum numen facere secum, hominesque sibi conciliare, quod iis studere consuissent (= are wont), quos conservare fidem viderent (= they see), Nep., Ages., 2. Mihi numquam persuaderi potuit animos (= the soul), dum in corporibus essent (= is) mortalibus, vivere, cum exissent (= has departed) ex iis, emori, nec vero tum animum esse insipientem, cum ex insipienti corpore evasisset (= has escaped), sed cum omni admixtione corporis liberatus purus et integer esse coepisset, tum esse sapientem, Cic., Sen., XXII, 80. (For the *Pluperfect*, vid. 175, I, 4, b, Rem.)*

177. The Subjunctive Tenses in the preceding (176) conform to the time (Past) of the leading predicate and present actions, which, in the opinion of the subject of the leading predicate, were true at that time and are of such a character as to be accepted as true at the Present and at any time.

Again, the *Present* Subjunctive follows a *Past* Tense. In this case the Present Subjunctive presents an action which, in the opinion of the Writer or Speaker, is true of *his* (*Present*) time and is of such a character (decided by *present* observation or experience) as to hold good for any time. In other words, it presents a general truth as gathered from present observation and experience.

Ex.—*Ariovistus respondit (= replied) se stipendium capere iure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint (= are wont), Caes., B. G., I, 44. (Legati dixerunt (= said)) urbes quoque, ut cetera, ex infimo nasci; dein, quas sua virtus ac dii iuvent (= help), magnas opes magnumque nomen facere, Liv., I, 9, 3.*

(a) It sometimes occurs that after a *Past* Tense the *Present* Subjunctive is used in an animated statement of the dependent action. In this case there is preserved in lively or animated narrative the Present time of the original statement or conception.

Ex.—*Coelius legem promulgavit, ut sexenni die sine usuris creditae pecuniae solvantur (= shall be paid), Caes., B. Civ., III, 20 (here solvantur presents the conception at the time of the leading actor or speaker; the regular Tense would be solverentur). Inter se hunc confinxerunt dolum quo pacto hic servos suum erum amittat domum, Pl. Capt., 36.*

178. After a Past Tense the Present or pure Perfect Subjunctive occurs, when the dependent Subjunctive is represented as occurring or as having occurred in the present time. This Sequence is found particularly in a sentence of *Result* and presents the present *Result* of a *past action*.

Ex.—Verres Siciliam per triennium ita vastavit (=desolated) ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo possit, Cic., Verr., Act. Prim., IV, 12 (=that it cannot in any way be restored, etc.). Statim ita sum levatus (=was so relieved), ut mihi deus aliquis medicinam fecisse videatur (=it seems to me, etc.), Cic., Fam., XIV, 7, 1. Tanti (nostri sonitus) fuerunt (=were), ut ego eo brevior sim (=am), quod eos usque istinc exauditos putem (=I think), Cic., Att., I, 14, 4. Aedes Minervae ab isto sic spoliata atque direpta est, ut a barbaris praedonibus vexata esse videatur, Cic., Verr., IV, 55, 122. Priores ita regnarunt ut haud immerito omnes deinceps conditores partium urbis numerentur (=are reckoned), Liv., II, 1, 2. Olim constitutum est, quid gaudeas, quid fleas, Sen., Prov., V, 7. Ventitabat vlr gravis et qui prodesse filio memoria sui debeat, Plin. Min., VI, 6, 3. Hi fere fuerunt Graecae gentis duces, qui memoria digni videantur, praeter reges, Nep., Reg., 1. Hortensius ardebat cupiditate sic, ut in nullo umquam flagrantius studium viderim (=have seen), Cic., Brut., LXXXVIII, 302. Fuerunt tantae (causae), ut id, quod vides, effecerint (=have effected), Cic., Att., XI, 5, 1. Iam hoc, quis tum fuit Syracusis, quin audierit (=has not heard), quin sciat (=does not know), Cic., Verr., V, 45, 120. Tanto me dolore affecit, ut postea iacuerim (=have been since prostrate), Cic., Att., XI, 9, 2.

179. The *pure Perfect*, as in the preceding examples, is not to be confounded with the pure Aorist Subjunctive after a Past Tense. The Aorist, identical in form with the Perfect, emphasizes the speedy, momentary occurrence of an action as an historical fact in the Past. It is very frequent in a clause of *Result* (*vid.* 161, 7).

Ex.—In turba C. Vibienus senator ita est mulcatus, ut vitam amiserit, Cic., Mil., XIV, 37. Singulas (naves) nostri consecrati expugnaverunt, ut perpaucae ad terram pervenerint, Caes., B. G., III, 15. Equites hostium cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt (ita) tamen ut nostri eos in silvas collesque compulerint, Caes., B. G., V, 15. Iudices ita fortes fuerunt ut, summo periculo proposito, vel perire maluerint quam perdere omnia, Cic., Att., I, 16, 5.

REM. The difference between the *pure Aorist* and the *Imperfect Subjunctive* as the Sequence upon a Past Tense, in a sentence of *Result*, cannot in many cases be clearly traced. The choice between the two Tenses seems to have been decided by the view of the Writer or Speaker. It may be observed, however, that where *continuousness* of action is prominent the *Imperfect* is used; and yet the *Imperfect* occurs when, from the English standpoint, the *Aoristic* seems to be the

proper conception of the action. For practical purposes it may be accepted as the fact that in *Cicero* and *Caesar* and to a great extent in *Livy* the Imperfect Subjunctive is the usage, while in later writers, notably *Suetonius*, the decided *tendency* is to the Aorist. In some cases the difference between the *Imperfect* and *Aorist*, as stated, is clearly observed in the same sentence.

Ex.—*Adeo ea res subita fuit, ut prius Anienem transirent hostes, quam obviam ire Romanus posset*, Liv., I, 36, 1 (here *transirent* expresses an *aoristic* idea, and *transierint* could have been used). *Tantus terror omnes occupavit, ut non modo alius quisquam arma caperet aut castris pellere hostem conaretur sed etiam ipse rex. . . . ad flumen navesque perfugerit*, Liv., XXIV, 40 12 (in *caperet* and *perfugerit* the difference between the *Imperfect* and *Aorist* is strikingly presented—*caperet* = *would take up arms, was willing to take up arms*, while *perfugerit* expresses an action completed absolutely and speedily in the past).

180. After a Past Tense of a Verb of *Happening*; as, *accidit, incidit, evenit, contingit, usu venit*, etc., the Imperfect Subjunctive is the Sequence, *not the Aorist*. As the Result is emphasized in the leading predicate, the reproduction and statement of it in the dependent Subjunctive would seem logically to call for the Aorist, but the Aorist is not the usage.

Ex.—*Acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovandi consilium caperent*, Caes., B. G., III, 2. *Accidit ut una nocte omnes Hermae deicerentur*, Nep., Alc., 3. *Optanti utrique nostrum cecidit ut in istum sermonem, Crasse, delaberemini*, Cic., De Or., I, 21, 96. *Quod iis saepe usu venit ut aspectum omnino amitterent*, Cic., Tusc., I, 30, 73. *Huic contigit ut a triginta (patriam) oppressam tyrannis e servitute in libertatem vindicaret*, Nep., Thras., 1, etc.

181. After the Present Tense the Imperfect or a Past Tense occurs:

1. When the *Present Tense* expresses an action which *does not apply to the Present alone*, but to the *Past as well, which decides the Sequence*. Here the Present expresses what *is*, has been, and *was*. This Sequence occurs chiefly in sentences of Result.

Ex.—*Illudne dubium est quin multi, cum ita nati essent, ut quaedam contra naturam depravata haberent, restituerentur ab natura, cum se ipsa revocasset, aut arte atque medicina?* Cic., Div., II, 46, 96 (here *illudne dubium est* = *is there doubt and has there been and was there doubt?* etc.). *Culus praecepti tanta vis est ut ea non homini cuipiam, sed Delphico deo tribueretur*, Cic., Leg., I, 22, 58 (here *est* = *is and has been, was, etc.*).

2. The *past Potential* is expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive as a rule. This Tense is independently decided—that is, *apart from Tense Sequence*. When it becomes a Subjunctive dependency on a

Present or Future leading Tense, it is *unchanged*—that is, remains the *Imperfect Subjunctive*.

Ex.—**Causae permultae istum impellerent** (=very many reasons might (could) have influenced him). **Video igitur causas esse permultas, quae istum impellerent**, Cic., *Rosc. Am.*, XXXIII, 92. **Verisimile non est, ut...hunc in adversis rebus...ab se dimitteret**, Cic., *Sull.*, XX, 57.

3. The Imperfect Subjunctive is used in the Potential Question of the Past, whether the question be *Deliberative* or *Rhetorical*. This is decided outside of Tense Sequence. Hence, when stated dependently, that is, as an Indirect Question after the *Present* Tense, the *Imperfect Subjunctive* must be retained.

1. **Quid agerem?** = what was I to do?
2. **Rogo quid agerem** = I ask what I was to do.
3. **Quid aliud agerem?** = what else was I to do?
4. **Nescio quid aliud agerem** = I do not know what else I was to do.

Ex.—**Sed quaero a te cur C. Cornelium non defenderem**, Cic., *Vatin.*, II, 5.

182. If upon a *Present* or *Future* leading Tense there follows a Subjunctive expressing an *English Past Tense relation*, namely, that of an *Imperfect*, *Aorist*, or *Pluperfect*, the Perfect form of the Subjunctive is uniformly employed. The exact force of the dependent Subjunctive, whether it represents an *Imperfect*, *Aorist*, or *Pluperfect relation*, is decided by the context.

Ex.—**Nescio quid fecerit** (=I know not what he *was doing*, ; what he *did*, ; what he *had done*). **Quid mihi discedens mandaritis, memini**, Cic., *Fam.*, VIII, 6, 2. **Non dubito quin istum offenderim** (*Aoristic relation*), Cic., *Att.*, IX, 18, 4. **Quare acciderit, ut ex meis superioribus litteris id suspicarer, quod scribis, nescio**, Cic., *Fam.*, II, 16, 1. **Tu neque quam diu vixerit Caesar, sed quam non diu regnarit, fac cogites**, Cic., *Fam.*, XI, 3, 4. **Neque abest suspicio, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit**, *Caes.*, *B. G.*, I, 4. **Id non traditur aetate an dignitatibus suis virorumve an sorte lectae sint**, *Liv.*, I, 13, 7 (lectae sint may reproduce an Imperfect, legebantur). **Mirum quantum illi viro nuntianti haec fides fuerit**, *Liv.*, I, 16, 8 (here fuerit may reproduce erat). **In re tam clara nominum error manet, utrius populi Horatii, utrius Curiatii fuerint**, *Liv.*, I, 24, 1 (here fuerint reproduces erant). **Quae praeterea providerim, praetereo**, Cic., *Fam.*, VI, 6, 5 (here providerim may be interpreted as reproducing provideram). **Quam hoc consilium collegarum meorum non utile solum sed etiam necessarium fuerit, postea disseram**, *Liv.*, V, 4, 1. **Haud ambigam hicine fuerit Ascanius an maior quam hic**, *Liv.*, I, 3, 2. **Memorare possem quibus in locis maxumas hostium copias populus Romanus fuderit, quas urbes pugnando cepit, ni ea res longius nos ab incepto traheret**, *Sal.*, *Cat.*, 7. Observe the same Sequence after *Unreal Present Conditional*.

(a) In case of a second dependent Subjunctive, this is controlled by the time of the former dependency (*Perfect Subjunctive*) and is Past.

Ex.—**Quare acciderit, ut ex meis superioribus litteris suspicari, quod scribis, nescio**, Cic., *Fam.*, II, 16, 1. **Vereor ne natura, cum corpora nobis infirma dedisset, animos quoque dederit corporum doloribus congruentes**, etc. Cic., *Tusc.*, V, 1, 3.

183. In *Oratio Obliqua* an *explanatory clause* in the Past following a *Past Infinitive* (= *Perfect form*) depending upon a leading or governing *Present* or *Future Tense* is often expressed in the *Perfect Subjunctive*. This is the *Subjective Oratio Obliqua* form of statement, in which a Past action, while the thought of the party reported, is stated *subjectively* by the *Speaker* or *Writer* from the *standpoint of the latter* (the *Present*) and hence by the *Perfect Subjunctive*. In addition, when the *entire context* is the *Past*, and the leading or governing Verb is a *Past Tense*, an *explanatory Subjunctive clause* may be *subjectively* expressed from the Time (*Present*) of the *Speaker* or *Writer* by the *Perfect form* of the Subjunctive. It is clear that this *Tense form* represents *relatively* either the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive*; but that when the action is *independently* stated from the Time of the *Speaker* or *Writer* (*Present*) its *Tense context* and regular *Tense relation* are *ignored* and it is expressed *absolutely*, that is, without reference to these. The use of the Tense form (*Perfect Subjunctive*) is based on the general principle that any past Subjunctive relation (*Imperfect*, *Pluperfect*, or *Aorist*) depending upon a *Present* or *Future Tense*, or *conceived* and *expressed* from the Time of the *Speaker* or *Writer* (the *Present*), is stated in the *Perfect form* of the Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Additur fabula, quod vulgo Sabini aureas armillas brachio laevo gemmatosque magna specie anulos habuerint, pepigisse eam, quod in sinistris manibus haberent**, Liv., I, 11, 8 (here *pepigisse* from the *Present Tense additur*. *Habuerint* stated *absolutely* from the time of the *Writer* (the *Present*), if relatively stated—that is, if compared with *pepigisse* it would be *coincident* and *expressed* by the *Imperfect Subjunctive, haberent*). **Apud quosdam invenio, A. Postumium, quia collega dubiae fidei fuerit, se consulatu abdicasse**, Liv., II, 21, 3 (in this sentence *fuerit* is the *absolute* or *independent* statement from the time of the *Writer*. If compared with *abdicasse* it would be *coincident* and expressed by *Imperfect, esset*). **Sunt qui ferunt fortunam matris, quod capta patria in hostium manus venerit, ut serva natus crederetur, fecisse**, Liv., I, 39, 6 (here *venerit* is the *independent* statement from the time of the *Writer* (*Present*); if compared with *fecisse*, etc., it would be the *Pluperfect Subjunctive, venisset*). **Credo, quia nulla gesta res insignem fecerit consulatum, memoriam intercidis**, Liv., II, 8, 5 (here *fecerit* from time of the *Writer*; compared with *intercidis* it would be *fecisset*).

REM. 1. The same construction obtains when, in *Oratio Obliqua*, the leading or governing Verb is a *past Tense*.

Ex.—**Tarquinius dixit: Eos inter se, quia nemo unus satis dignus regno visus sit, partes regni rapuisse**, Liv., II, 6, 3 (in this sentence **visus sit** from standpoint of the *Writer*; if compared with **rapuisse** it would be *coincident*, **vide-retur**). **C. Mucio indignum videbatur populum Romanum ab iisdem Etruscis obsideri, quorum saepe exercitus fuderit**, Liv., II, 12, 2 (here **obsideri** is Imperfect Infinitive, coincident with **videbatur**; **fuderit** from the standpoint of the *Writer*; if compared with **obsideri** it would be the Pluperfect, **fudisset**).

REM. 2. This subjective statement by the Perfect form of Subjunctive of a *dependent, explanatory* sentence, in *Oratio Obliqua*, occurs in all periods of the language.

Ex.—**Deos testificor me, postquam Caesarem convenerim, te certiore fecisse**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 16, 1.

(a) It must be carefully noted that this subjective and independent statement of a Past action by the Perfect Subjunctive, from the standpoint of the *Writer* or *Speaker*, that is, from the *Present time*, obtains also when there is no leading Verb of *Saying* or *Thinking* and no *Infinitive dependent upon it*.

Ex.—**Etsi, quamvis non fueris suator et impulsor profectionis meae, approbator certe fuisti, dum modo Kal. Ian. Romae essem**, Cic., Att., XVI, 7, 2. **Consulis alterius, cum nihil aliud offenderit, nomen invisum civitati fuit**, Liv., II, 2, 3.

184. If upon the Protasis or Apodosis of the Unreal *Present Conditional* (*Imperfect Subjunctive*) a Subjunctive dependency follows expressing a logically *coincident* or *Future* relation, the dependency is expressed by the *Imperfect Subjunctive*. This usage is almost universal. It is the result, from the English standpoint, of the *attraction of Tense*. The translation of the dependent Imperfect Subjunctive is the *Present* or *Future First from the Present*, to be decided by the context.

Ex.—**Si mihi nemo invideret, si omnes faverent, tamen non minus esset probanda medicina, quae sanaret (= that heals) vitiosas partes rei publicae, quam quae exsecaret (= that cuts off)**, Cic., Att., II, 1, 7. **Quod si aliter essem animatus numquam quod facerem negarem, ne timidus ac vanus existimarer**, Cic., Fam., XI, 28, 5.

185. The dependent Subjunctive clause is sometimes determined, not by the leading Predicate upon which it regularly depends, but by the Predicate in a *parenthetical* clause, and hence has a different Sequence from that required by the *leading Predicate*.

**Ex.**—*Sed quae haec est arrogantia, quod Caesar numquam interpellavit quin, quibus vellem atque etiam quos ipse non diligebat, tamen iis uterer, eos, qui mihi amicum eripuerunt, carpendo me efficere conari, ne, quos velim, diligam?* Cic., *Fam.*, XI, 28, 7 (here the leading Verb (*interpellavit*) of the Parentheses decides the Sequence within the Parentheses). *Curavit, quod semper in re publica tenendum est, ne plurimum valeant plurimi*, Cic., *Rep.*, II, 22, 39 (here *tenendum est* decides the Sequence, and not *curavit*). *Quae ratio civilis perficit in bonis ingeniis, id quod iam persaepe perfecit, ut incredibilis quaedam et divina virtus exsisteret*, Cic., *Rep.*, III, 3, 4 (here *exsisteret* decided by *perfecit*, not by *perficit*).

**186.** The Subjunctive Sequence after the Historical Present conforms either to the *form* of the Tense (the *Present*) or to its *sense* (the *Aorist*) and its *force* is decided either by the *Present Tenses* (*Present* and *Perfect*) or by the *Past Tenses* (*Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*) of the Subjunctive which depends upon it. Sometimes both *Present* and *Past* Subjunctive Tenses follow it in the same sentence. The Historical Present when followed by *Present* Tenses is translated regularly as the *Present*. When followed by *Past* Tenses it should be translated as the *Aorist*. If associated with both *Present* and *Past* Subjunctive Tenses it may be translated as the *Present* or *Aorist*, according as the immediate dependency is a *Present* or *Past* Tense, and, in this case, the other Subjunctive dependencies may be translated according to their *Tense forms*.

**Ex.**—*Orant (= they beg) ne sua dissensione rem in summum periculum deducant (= that they will not bring)*, Caes., *B. G.*, V, 31. *Clamant fraude fieri, quod foris teneatur exercitus*, Liv., III, 24, 1 (here *clamant* = they *exclaim*; decided by *teneatur* = *is kept*). *Docent, si omnino turris concidisset, non posse milites contineri, quin spe praedae in urbem irrumperent urbemque delerent*, Caes., *B. Civ.*, II, 12 (*docent* translated as the *Aorist*, decided by the *Past Subjunctive* Tenses *concidisset, irrumperent, delerent*). *Multa pollicendo persuadet legatis, uti lugurtham maxime vivum, sin id parum procedat, necatum sibi traderent*, Sal., *Jug.*, 46 (here translate *persuadet* by the *Aorist*, decided by the immediate dependency *traderent*, but translate *procedat* as the *Present*, or more correctly the *Future First from the Present* (= *shall succeed*)). *Caesar Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus naves instituat*, Caes., *B. G.*, V, 11 (here translate *scribit* as the *Present*, decided by the immediate dependency *instituat*, but translate *posset* as the *Imperfect*). *Quem Caesar ad eum remittit cum mandatis: quoniam... non fuerit, atque... sit venturus... neque... ferantur, ac si... disceptetur*, Caes., *B. Civ.*, I, 24 (in this sentence *remittit* translated as the *Present*, as decided by *fuerit... sit venturus, ferantur, disceptetur*).

(a) While the *Present* or *Past* Subjunctive Tenses may follow the Historical Present throughout, according as it is conceived as the *Present* or *Aorist*, the following restrictions may be observed when both a *Present* Subjunctive Tense and a *Past* Subjunctive Tense follow:

1. If the immediate dependency be the Present Subjunctive, the second is *usually* a Past Tense.

Ex.—*Adversarii postulant, ut in eam rem iudices dentur ex his civitatibus, quae in id forum convenirent*, Cic., Verr., II, XV, 38. *Naevium certiores facit, rogat ut curet quod dixisset*, Cic., Quinct., V, 18.

2. If a Subjunctive dependency precedes the Historical Present, it is, as a rule, a Past Tense of the Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Imprimis, ut ipse cum Pompeio colloqueretur, postulat*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 26. *Pompeius, quo facilius impetum Caesaris tardaret, ne sub ipsa profectioe milites oppidum irrumperent, portas obstruit*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 27. *Quae perspexisset renuntiat*, Caes., B. G., IV, 21. *Ea qui conficeret, C. Trebonium legatum relinquit*, Caes., B. G., VII, 11. *Cum hostes adessent pro se quisque in urbem ex agris demigrant*, Liv., II, 10, 1. *Ut eliceret praedatores, edicit suis*, etc., Liv., II, 11, 5.

REM. When a *second* Historical Present precedes or in case of a *Dependent (Indirect) Question*, the Present Tenses of the Subjunctive are usual, but, with other Subjunctive dependencies preceding, the Present Sequence is rare.

Ex.—*Legatos ad Crassum mittunt seque in deditioem ut recipiant petunt*, Caes., B. G., III, 21. *Bis magno cum detrimento repulsi Galli, quid agant, consulunt*, Caes., B. G., VII, 83. But *Ne quid eis noceatur, neu quis invitus sacramentum dicere cogatur, a Caesare cavetur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 86. Also, *Quod bene vertat, castra Albanos Romanis castris iungere iubet*, Liv., I, 28, 1. Here *vertat* is properly retained in the original form of the *wish*. (*Eum*) *dictatorem legati consulant, in urbem vocant, qui terror sit in exercitu exponunt*, Liv., III, 26, 10.

187. After the Present used to introduce the view of a *Writer* no longer living, but whose work is extant, the Past Subjunctive Sequence is much more usual than the Present—that is, the tendency is to conform the Subjunctive Sequence to the time of the *Writer*, as reported, and not to his time as *Speaker* (Present).

Ex.—*Praeclare apud eundem est Platonem, similiter facere eos, qui inter se contenderent uter potius rem publicam administraret*, Cic., Off., I, 25, 87. *Chrysippus disputat aethera esse deum, quem homines Iovem appellarent*, Cic., N. D., I, 15, 40. *Aeschines in Demosthenem invehitur, quod is septimo die post filiae mortem hostias immolasset*, Cic., Tusc., III, 26, 63. *Cleanthes docet quanta vis insit caloris in omni corpore*, Cic., N. D., II, 9, 24 (but in this dependency is expressed a *general truth*, and the Present *insit* can hardly be accepted as an *exception* to the general usage).

188. After the *Historical Infinitive* a Past Tense of the Subjunctive is the usage. The Historical Infinitive represents the *Imperfect Indicative*.



Ex.—**Tarquinius orare maxime Veientes Tarquiniensesque, ne se ortum, eiusdem sanguinis, cum liberis adolescentibus ante oculos suos perire sine-rent, Liv., II, 6, 2. Laniare deinde os unguibus, et circumstantes rogare. ne se tanto dedecori superstitem esse paterentur, Curt., VIII, 6. Rex circumire milites, contrahere dispersos, allevare prostratos, hortarique, ut proxima quaeque suffugia occuparent, Curt., VIII, 14.**

189. After the Present Tense with *dum* in the sense of the *Imperfect* a Past Tense of the Subjunctive is the Sequence.

Ex.—**Neque sum ignarus a plerisque scriptoribus omissa multorum pericula et poenas, dum copia fatiscunt, aut quae ipsa nimia fuerant, ne pari taedio lecturos afficerent, verentur, Tac., Ann., VI, 7.**

190. It often occurs that a Subjunctive depends upon an *Infinitive*, *Supine*, *Gerund*, *Participle*, and even a *Substantive*. In such cases the *Sequence* is decided by the *leading Predicate*, by the *Tense relation logically involved* in and expressed by the *Infinitive*, *Supine*, *Gerund*, etc., or by the *general time of the sentence* or the specific time to which the Substantive is referred, as decided by the *context*.

Ex.—**Si intelligis me coactum (esse) ut ipse me et meos perderem, Cic., Att., III, 19, 3 (perderem decided by coactum (esse)). Miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis, Nep., Them., 2 (facerent directly dependent on consultum, whose time is decided by miserunt). Neque cognoscendi quid fieret hostibus facultatem relinquunt, Caes., B. G., III, 6 (fieret depends on cognoscendi = an Imperfect relation). Cupido incessit animos iuvenum sciscitandi, ad quem eorum regnum Romanum esset venturum, Liv., I, 56, 10. Litora omnia classibus occupavit ipse gravissima hieme in navibus excubans neque ullum laborem despiciens, ne quod subsidium exspectanti Caesari in conspectum venire posset, Caes., B. Civ., III, 8 (posset depending on excubans and despiciens = cum excubaret—despiceret or dum excubabat—despiciebat). Hem causam cur lex tam egregia...ferretur, Cic., Phil., V, 6, 15 (= see! that was the reason, etc.). Quod est igitur meum triste consilium? ut discederem fortasse in aliquas solitudines? Cic., Fam., II, 16, 2 (discederem with reference to the general idea that the resolution (consilium) was taken at a past time). Est apud Platonem Socrates, cum esset in custodia publica, dicens (=qui dicebat) Critoni, sibi post tertium diem esse moriendum, Cic., Div., I, 25, 52.**

191. The Sequence of the Infinitive Tenses may be thus exhibited:

1. *Present*, *Dicit*

2. *Perfect*, *Dixit*

3. *Future*, *Dicet*

Se { *venire*=that he *is coming* (*Present*).  
*venisse*=that he *has come* (*Perfect*).  
*venisse*=that he *did come* (*Aorist*).  
*venisse*=that he *had come* (*Pluperfect*).  
*venturum esse*=that he *will come* (*Future First*).  
*fore (futurum esse) ut venerit*=that he *will have come* (*Future Exactum*).

1. Imperfect, <i>Dicebat</i>	Se {	<i>venire</i> = that he <i>was coming</i> ( <i>Imperfect</i> ).
2. Aorist, <i>Dixit</i>		<i>venisse</i> = that he <i>came</i> ( <i>Aorist</i> ).
3. Pluperfect, <i>Dixerat</i>		<i>venisse</i> = that he <i>had come</i> ( <i>Pluperfect</i> ).
		<i>venturum esse</i> = that he <i>would come</i> ( <i>Future First from a Past</i> ).
		<i>fore</i> ( <i>futurum esse</i> ) <i>ut venisset</i> = that he <i>would have come</i> ( <i>Future Exactum from a Past</i> ).

192. After a *Present* or *Future* leading Tense (or the *Imperative* which is *Future*) a *Past Infinitive* relation (*Imperfect* = that *was*, etc.; *Aorist* = that *did*, etc.; *Pluperfect* = that *had*, etc.) is expressed in Latin by the *Perfect* form of the *Infinitive*, and, if a dependent *Subjunctive* follows the *Infinitive*, it conforms to the *Past* time of the *Infinitive*, and is expressed in a *Past Tense* of the *Subjunctive* (*Imperfect*, *Aorist*, or *Pluperfect* as demanded by the sense). If the dependent *Subjunctive* is *Future* from the time of the *Infinitive* it must be expressed by the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive* as *Future Tenses*. Care must be observed not to express an English *Imperfect* relation after a *Present* or *Future* leading Tense by the *Present* form of the *Infinitive*.

Ex.—*Scio te voluisse*, Cic., Att., IV, 5, 3. *Milo Crotoniates aspexisse lacertos suos dicitur illacrimansque dixisse*, Cic., Sen., IX, 27. *Tenet fama lupam sitientem . . . ad puerilem vagitum cursum flexisse*, Liv., I, 4, 6. *Sunt, qui eam ex pacto tradendi, quod in sinistris manibus esset, directo arma petisse dicant*, Liv., I, 11, 9. *Plurimi sunt testes me, ne coniungeret se cum Caesare, monuisse Pompeium*, Cic., Fam., VI, 6, 4. *Quam (gratulationem) abs te praetermissam esse arbitror, quod vererere ne cuius animum offenderes*, Cic., Fam., V, 7, 3. *Numquam ego dicam C. Fabricium ad istorum normam fuisse sapientem*, Cic., Am., V, 18. (*Artabazum*) *hospitem fuisse Philippi saepe diximus* (*Perfect*), Curt., V, 26. *Credemus in huius urbis Gaza fuisse C et XX milia talentum*, Curt., V, 20. *Regem tradunt, cum ibi quaedam occulta sollemnia sacrificia Iovi elicio facta invenisset, operatum iis sacris se abdidisse*, Liv., I, 31, 8.

193. The Sequence of the *Subjunctive Tenses*—that is, the association of *Subjunctive Tenses* and their relations to one another—are to be carefully noted.

Ex.—*Duum mensium spatium consulibus datum est, ad inspiciendam legem, ut, cum edocuissent populum, quid fraudis occultae ferretur, sinerent deinde suffragium inire*, Liv., III, 25, 4 (here *sinerent* is subsequent to and *Future* (First) from *datum est*; *edocuissent* is also *Future* from *datum est*, but, as compared with *sinerent*, it is antecedent and completed (*Future Exactum*); *ferretur*, if compared with *edocuissent*, is *coincident*. From the time of the Speaker (the

Present) the same temporal relations would distinguish the Tenses. They would be *edocuerint, feratur, sinant*). *Inde signum observare iussit, ut pariter et socii rem inciperent referrentque pedem, si receptui cecinisset*, Liv., III, 22, 6 (here *inciperent, referrent*, are Futures (First) from *iussit*; *cecinisset* is also a Future, but, as compared with *inciperent, referrent*, it is antecedent and completed (Future *Exactum*)). *Tantum terrorem incussere, ut Postumio negotium daretur, videret, ne quid respublica detrimenti caperet*, Liv., III, 4, 9 (here *daretur* is Future from (subsequent to) *incussere*; *videret*, as compared with *daretur*, is subsequent and Future (First), and *caperet*, as compared with *videret*, is also subsequent and Future (First)). *Erat periculum ne, si pars navium adversariorum Euboeam superasset ancipiti premerentur periculo*, Nep., Them., 3 (here *superasset* is Future *Exactum* as compared with *premerentur* (Future *First*)).

(a) It must be observed that a Subjunctive Tense is not always compared with a second Subjunctive Tense, but is decided with reference to the leading action or the Time of the person or event *reported*.

Ex.—*Adeo moverat Porsenam primi periculi casus, quo nihil se praeter errorem insidiatoris texisset, ut pacis condiciones ultro ferret Romanis*, Liv., II, 13, 2 (here *texisset* is not to be compared with *ferret*, but is the Pluperfect antecedent to *moverat* or to the Time of the party reported (*Porsena*) (= *dixit*). *Idem ossa eius clam in Attica ab amicis sepulta esse, quoniam legibus non concederetur, quod proditiōnis esset damnatus, memoriae prodidit*, Nep., Them., 10 (here *concederetur* is coincident with *sepulta esse*, while *esset damnatus* is the Pluperfect action antecedent to *concederetur*).

## The Potential Subjunctive.

194. By the Potential Subjunctive a mere *opinion* or *view* of the Speaker or *Writer* is expressed. In other words, the action of the Verb is presented as a *mere opinion, thought, or probability*. It may be translated by *may, can, might, could*. While the action may be conceived as *Present, Past, or Future*, its *ascertainment* is Future. The negative Potential relation is expressed by *non*. The Potential Subjunctive occurs (frequent with the Indefinite Second Person)—

1. In a *Present* connection, and may be rendered by *may* or *can*. The Tenses here employed are the *Present* and *Perfect*. The translation of the Perfect Subjunctive is to be observed = *may (can) have*; *may prove to have*; *may or can allow one's self to*.

Ex.—*Ego nunc tam sim stultus, ut hunc ipsum facilem hominem putem mihi esse amicum*? Cic., Att., XIV, 2, 3. *Hic quaerat quispiam, cuiusnam causa tantarum rerum molitio facta sit*, Cic., N. D., II, 53, 133. *Condicionem temporum illorum etiam per haec aestimare quisvis possit* (= *may be able*), Suet., Cal., 60.

**Perfectum officium rectum, opinor, vocemus, Cic., Off., I, 3, 8. Amor enim tuus ac iudicium de me utrum mihi plus dignitatis an voluptatis sit allaturus, non facile dixerim, Cic., Fam., X, 24, 1 (here dixerim = may allow (bring) myself to say). Sed haec fuerit nobis tamquam levis armaturae prima orationis excursio: nunc cominus agamus, etc., Cic., Div., II, 10, 26. Non immerito in urbem introitum retulerim, Suet., Nero, 13.**

## 2. In a *Past* connection.

**Ex.—O dei boni, quam facile perspiceres (eum) timere otium! Cic., Att., XIV, 21, 2 (perspiceres = one could have perceived). Hoc tu putares? Ob hoc citius Romam quam constitueram, Cic., Att., XVI, 11, 6. Ipse autem, quod minime quis crederet, cum hostis propius esset, tertiam partem militum frumentatum dimisit, Liv., XXII, 24, 4. Universi deinde processere—quidquid erat patrum, reos diceret—precibus plebem exposcentes, Liv., II, 35, 5. Afros Romanam magna ex parte crederes aciem, Liv., XXII, 46, 4. Esto: fuerit hoc censoris, si iudicabat eumentum, Cic., Div., I, 16, 29 (in fuerit the reference is clearly to the Past). Neque, recte an perperam interpreter: fuerit ista eius deliberatio, qui bellum suscepit, Liv., I, 23, 8. Fuerit ille Brutus, qui dominatu regio rem publicam liberavit, Cic., Phil., I, 6, 13. Quae malum! est ista voluntaria servitus? Fuerit quaedam necessaria, Cic., Phil., I, 6, 15.**

(a) By the forms *velim*, *malim*, *nolim*, the substantive elements of the Verbs are presented as purely *Potential*. *Velim* = I could (would) wish; *malim* = I could (would) prefer; *nolim* = I could (would) not wish. The Potential sense of the substantive idea of the Verb thus modestly expressed is completed or finds its complement in the Infinitive or Accusative and Infinitive according to the usual construction after these Verbs.

**Ex.—Nimio plus quam velim (= I could wish) nostrorum ingenia sunt mobilia, Liv., II, 37, 4. His de generibus quid sentias audire velim, Cic., Div., II, 48, 100. Tu velim sic existimes omne perfugium bonorum in te et Bruto esse positum, si, quod nolim (= I could (would) not wish) adversi quid evenerit, Cic., Fam., XII, 6, 2. Itaque vos ego, milites, eo animo, quo adversus alios hostes soletis, pugnare velim, Liv., XXI, 41, 11. Illud te, Tulle, monitum velim, Liv., I, 23, 8. Quare te, ut polliceris, videre plane velim, Cic., Att., XI, 9, 3. Magno de flumine malim quam ex hoc fonticulo tantundem sumere, Hor., Sat., I, 1, 5 (here malim may be interpreted as *Apodosis* of Ideal Condition).**

(b) By the forms *vellem*, *mallem*, *nollem*, (*cuperem*) the substantive elements of the Verbs are presented as Potential in the Past. *Vellem* = I could have wished; *mallem* = I could have preferred; *nollem* = I could not have wished (I could have wished not, etc.); *cuperem* = I could have desired. The substantive element of the Verb thus modestly expressed in the Potential Subjunctive is completed by the Infinitive or Accusative and the Infinitive. The *denial*

of the *action* (in the Infinitive), which furnishes the complement of the Potential Verb, is *simply incidental*. *Vellem* = I could have wished; *mallem* = I could have preferred; *nolem* = I could not have wished or I could have wished—not, etc.

Ex.—*Quod cum fecisse Socratem in fidibus audirem, vellem equidem etiam illud, sed in litteris certe elaboravi*, Cic., Sen., VIII, 26. *De quo dum disputarem, tuam mihi dari vellem*, Cotta, eloquentiam, Cic., N., D., II, 59, 147. *In oppido aliquo mallem resedissem, quoad arcesserem*, Cic., Att., XI, 6, 2. *Maiores nostri Carthaginem et Numantiam funditus sustulerunt: nollem Corinthum (= nollem Corinthum sustulisse)*, Cic., Off., I, 11, 35.

REM. It must be observed that the Imperfect Subjunctive *vellem*, etc., may be interpreted as the Apodosis of the unreal Present conditional. Here the Infinitive or Accusative and the Infinitive may follow.

Ex.—*Ego me Phidiam esse mallem, quam vel optimum fabrum lignarium*, Cic., Brut., LXXIII, 257 (= *I would prefer, etc., if it were possible, if I could decide it, etc.*).

(c) As to the Imperative and Potential force of the Future *Ex-actum* of *video* (*videris, viderit, etc.*), vid. 150.

Ex.—*Sed de illa ambulatione fors viderit, aut si qui est, qui curet, deus*, Cic., Att., IV, 10, 1 (here *viderit*, it seems, may be interpreted as *Potential*). *Viderint iuvenes. Tu mea curabis, ut curas*, Cic., Att., XIV, 21, 4 (here the force of *viderint* is clearly Imperative).

## The Imperative Mood.

195. By the Imperative the *will* of the speaker or writer is expressed that the verb's action *shall* or *may* be done. In other words, the verb's action is presented as an *order*, either *absolutely* as such or in the modified form of a *wish, request, exhortation, prayer, rule of action, precept*, etc. The *execution* of an order, the *fulfilment* of a *wish*, of a *request*, or *exhortation*, the *granting* of a *prayer*, the *compliance* with a *rule of action*, and the *observance* of a *precept*, contemplate necessarily a *Future*. Hence the time of the Imperative is *Future*; it cannot embrace an action in progress in the *Present*. In such a sentence as *Mane, ubi es*, the order is, *Continue to remain where you are*, and the execution of this order is *Future*.

196. The Imperative has two forms:

(a) A *short form*. By this form of the Imperative the action is referred to the *immediate* or *near Future*, or, if already commenced, its

*continuance* is *ordered* or *requested*. Again, by this form of the Imperative the action is referred *absolutely* to the Future.

Ex.—At tu, pater deum hominumque, hinc arce hostes: deme terrorem Romanis fugamque foedam siste, Liv., I, 12, 5 (here *prayer* is expressed by the Imperative). Audi, inquit, Iuppiter, audi pater patratre populi Romani, Liv., I, 24, 7. Qua re advola (*entreaty*): aut expedies nos omni molestia aut eris particeps, Cic., Att., II, 25, 2. Ac primum de Agrinensi populo fideli breviter cognoscite, Cic., Verr., III, 27, 67. Perge, Catilina, quo coepisti, egredere ex urbe: patent portae, proficiscere, educ tecum omnes tuos, purga urbem, Cic., Cat., I, 5, 10. Sed sic, Scipio, ut avus hic tuus, ut ego, iustitiam cole et pietatem, Cic., Rep., VI, 16, 16. Quam ob rem, Plance, incumbere toto pectore ad laudem, subveni patriae, omnium gentium consensum et incredibilem conspirationem adiuva, Cic., Fam., X, 10, 2.

(b) A *long form*. By this form of the Imperative the action is referred *relatively* to the Future. Its occurrence contemplates a *second* Future action *after* which it must take place, and, as this second Future action may be one *remote* in the Future, the time of the occurrence of the action expressed by the *long form* of the Imperative may be a *remote* Future.

Ex.—Tu partem infortuni meam, si diuidetur, accipito, Plaut., M. G., 866. Hanc ad nos, quom ex templo a foro veniemus, mittitote, Plaut., M. G., 933. Postea tu aspicio meum, quando ego tuum inspectauero, Plaut., Rud., 755. Post huc redito atque agitato hic custodiam, Plaut., Rud., 858. Memor esto, iam cum signum pugnae dabis, has duas acies spectaculo fore, etc., Liv., I, 23, 9. Si prior defexit publico consilio dolo malo, tum illo die, Iuppiter, populum Romanum sic ferito, etc., Liv., I, 24, 8. Sed posthac omnia, quae certa non erunt, pro certo negato, Cic., Att., V, 21, 5. Si quid acciderit, quod censeas mihi faciendum, utique scribito, Cic., Att., X, 1, 3. Cum haec confessus eris, quae, ...negato tum, si voles, te pecuniam accepisse, Cic., Phil., II, 33, 81.

197. Only the *second person* can receive a *direct order*. The third person can receive an order only *indirectly* or through a *medium*. Thus *abi* = *depart*, involves *direct address*. *Abito* = *let him depart* = *he shall depart*, implies the *conveyance* of the order, not a *direct order*. The *execution* of an order by the second person may be *immediate*, *absolute*, *remote* in the Future, or *relative*—that is, after a second event or action. The *execution* of an order by the third person must be *relative*—that is, after it has been *received* or *communicated*, or after a given *state of things* shall have occurred which requires obedience. Hence the *second person* has both the *short* and *long* forms of the Imperative—that is, the forms which imply *absolute* and *relative execution*, while the *third person* of the Imperative has only the *long* form, which implies *relative performance*—that is, performance *after*

the order has been received, or *after* a state of things shall have occurred which requires performance.

**198.** The injunctions of *law*, the provisions of a *will*, the requirements of a *rule of action*, are relative in their character, in that they contemplate *contingencies* and are to be enforced as these arise. Hence the long form of the Imperative is always used in *law*, in a *will*, in the *statement of a rule of action*, etc., in the *second* person as well as in the *third*.

Ex.—*Iuris disceptator, qui privata iudicet iudicative iubeat, praetor esto: is iuris civilis custos esto*, Cic., Leg., III, 3, 8 (*law*). *Imperia, potestates, legationes, quom senatus creverit populusve iusserit, ex urbe exeunto, duella iusta iuste gerunto, sociis parcunto, se et suos continente*, Cic., Leg., III, 3, 9 (*law*). *Servus meus Stichus liber esto. Heres meus uxori meae dare damnas esto argenti pondo centum*, Quint., VII, 9, 9 (*in wills*). *Haec caelestia semper spectato, illa humana contemnito*, Cic., Somn. Scip., VI. *Ubi eas (virgas) combusseris, ibi papaper serito*, Plin., Mai., XVIII, 229 (*a rule of conduct or action*).

(a) To temper or modify the force of the Imperative the words *quaeso*, *quaesumus*, *obsecro*, *sis*, *sultis*, *sodes*, *age*, *amabo*, *-dum* (appended) are often associated with the Imperative, chiefly in colloquial or familiar language.

Ex.—*Relinque quaeso quam iucundissimam memoriam tui*, Cic., Q. Fr., I, 3, 8. *Cura, obsecro, ut (gratus) etiam in Pompeium esse possim*, Cic., Att., IX, 11, A, 3. *Age, sis, nunc de ratione videamus, nisi quid vis ad haec*, Cic., Tusc., II, 18, 42. *Caue sis infortunio*, Plaut., Rud., 828. *Curate haec, sultis, magna diligentia*, Plaut., Rud., 820. *Dic, sodes, mihi: quid hic est locutus tecum?* Plaut., Trin., 562. *Dic, sodes*, Hor., Ep., I, 1, 61. *Age, da ueniam filio*, Ter., Ad., 937. *Iteradum eadem istaec mihi* (cf. Cic., Tusc., II, 19, 44). *Agedum ergo, accede huc modo*, Plaut., Rud., 785. *Tangedum*, Plaut., Rud., 784. *Hoc agite, amabo*, Ter., Eun., 130. *Amabo te, advola, consolabor te*, Cic., Q. Fr., II, 8, 4 (in Cicero the pronoun *te* is usually added to *amabo*).

REM. *Sis* = *si vis*; *sultis* = *si vultis*; *sodes* = *si audes*.

**199.** It cannot be claimed that the essential difference in sense and usage between the two forms of the Imperative is uniformly observed, particularly in the second person. Hence the short form occurs where the long form would be more in accordance with general usage, and the long form where the short would be proper. The forms *scito*, *scitote*, *memento*, *mementote*, *habeto*, *habetote* (*habere* = *to know, to think*), are uniformly used. But Ov., M., XV, 142 (*scite*).

Ex.—*Dolabella tuo nihil scito mihi esse iucundius*, Cic., Att., IX, 16, 3. *Hoc scitote*, Cic., Verr., I, 38, 95. *Acerbiorem scitote esse civitatibus falsam istam*

emptionem, quam, etc., Cic., Verr., IV, 60, 134. *Dextram cohibere memento*, Iuv., V, 71. *Immo (causa) optima, sed agetur, memento, foedissime*, Cic., Att., IX, 7, 4. *Sed in omni oratione mementote eam me senectutem laudare quae*, etc., Cic., Sen., XVIII, 62. *Sed, si me non offendes, satis tamen (eam) habeto commendatam*, Cic., Att., XI, 9, 3. *Hoc vero certum habeto*, Cic., Fam., X, 28, 3. *Sic habetote, plures esse a Syracusanis istius adventu deos, quam victoria Marcelli homines desideratos*, Cic., Verr., IV, 58, 131.

### Positive Imperative Relations.

200. 1. The *third person* of the Imperative is used in *legal language* and in language of like import or employed in imitation of the language of the law, as in *contracts, legislative* or other *enactments*, in *usages* which are binding, in *moral* or other *injunctions*.

Ex.—*Regio imperio duo sunt, militiae summum ius habento, ollis salus populi suprema lex esto*, Cic., Leg., III, 3, 8. *Censores populi aevitates, suboles, familias pecuniasque censento, urbis tecta templa, vias aquas, aerarium vectigalia tuento*, Cic., Leg., III, 3, 7. *Quod eorum iudicium maior pars iudicavit. id ius ratumque esto*, Cic., Fam., VIII, 8, 3. *Virgines vestales in urbe custodiunto ignem foci publici sempiternum*, Cic., Leg., II, 8, 20. *Foedus in haec verba fere cum Antiocho conscriptum est: amicitia regi Antiocho cum populo Romano his condicionibus esto. . . . Excedito urbibus agris vicis cis Taurum montem usque ad Halyn amnem*, etc., Liv., 38, 38, 1 (*injunctions of a treaty*). *Poëmata dulcia sunt, et, quocumque volent, animum auditoris agunto*, Hor., A. P., 100.

(a) Outside of legal language, etc., the regular third person *Positive Imperative* is expressed by the third person Present Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Sit sermo lenis: insit in eo lepos. . . videat imprimis, quibus de rebus loquatur: si seriis, severitatem adhibeat*, Cic., Off., I, 37, 134. *Si quid opis, si quid artis in medicis est, sciant me non tam mortis, quam belli remedium quaerere*, Curt., III, 13. *Quod si quem e vobis nomen gentis movet, cogitet Macedonum illic arma esse, non corpora*, Curt., IV, 54.

(b) Outside of legal language, etc., the third person *Positive Imperative* is expressed, again, by the third person Future First Indicative. The tense in this office is one of simple, unqualified *prediction*, and, as such, expresses a *strong Imperative* sense.

Ex.—*Quod vitium effugere qui volet, omnes autem velle debent, adhibebit ad considerandas res et tempus et diligentiam*, Cic., Off., I, 6, 18. *Itaque hoc, quod apud Pomponium legi, animo mandabitur*, Sen., Ep., I, 3, 6. *Ideo adhibebitur prudentia, quae modum illis aut parsimoniam imponat*, Sen., Ep., IX, 3, 19.

REM. It is probable that the Future *Exactum Indicative* was occasionally used in an Imperative sense. (Cf. *Videris, viderit.*)



Ex.—*Ita tamen delituerit ut ubicumque otium suum absconderit prodesse velit singulis universisque ingenio.* Sen., Tranq. An., III, 2. *Quadraginta milia librorum Alexandriae arserunt: pulcherrimum regiae opulentiae monumentum alius laudaverit, sicut et Livius, qui, etc.,* Sen., Tranq. An., IX, 5 (it is difficult to decide in such sentences between the Future *Exactum* Indicative, in an Imperative sense, and the Potential (Perfect) Subjunctive).

2. The *second person Positive Imperative* is expressed by the second person Imperative, *long* or *short* form, according to the sense to be expressed, as stated above—the long form in legal language, etc.

Ex.—*Qua re, ut id, quod speras et quod agis, consequamur, servi valetudini,* Cic., Fam., XIV, 2, 3. *Curre, per deos atque homines! et quam primum haec risum veni: crede mihi, est properandum,* Cic., Fam., VIII, 14, 4. *Cuius (nominis) si vos paenitet, mihi meum nomen restituite,* Caes., B. Civ., II, 32. *Vos, data facultate, vobis consulite,* Caes., B. G., VII, 50. *Rex ait: Puram (herbam) tollito,* Liv., I, 24, 5 (language of *authority*). *Abi atque Hegioni cognato huius rem enarrato omnem ordine,* Ter., Ad., 351. *Illa humana contemnit,* Cic., Scip. Somn., VI. *Priusquam semen maturum sit, secato,* Plin., Mai., XVIII, 260.

(a) To express the second person Positive Imperative by the second person Present Subjunctive when the subject is definite is ante-classical and poetical. It is rarely found in classical prose, and here it partakes more or less of the character of a *wish*. The student is cautioned not to use the Subjunctive as a more *polite* form of expression, as the Imperative Mood is employed even in *prayer*.

Ex.—*Post adeas tute Philonem et dotem dare te ei dicas,* Plaut., Trin., 736. *Pares, quod vendere possis pluris dimidio,* Iuv., XIV, 200. *Pater, obsecro, mihi ignoscas,* Ter., Heaut., 1049. *Te si expectari vellis, cures ut sciam,* Cic., Att., I, 17, 11. *Si quemquam nactus eris, qui perferat, litteras des ante, quam discedimus,* Cic., Att., X, 15, 4. *Quid mihi suadeas, diligenter mihi perscribas,* Cic., Fam., VIII, 4, 5.

(b) When the subject is the Indefinite Second Person, the second person Present Subjunctive is employed.

Ex.—*Denique isto bono utare, dum adsit, cum absit, ne requiras,* Cic., Sen., X, 33. *Sic iniurias fortunae, quas ferre nequeas, defugiendo relinquas,* Cic., Tusc., V, 40, 118. *Emas non quod opus est, sed quod necesse est,* Sen., Ep., XV, 2, 27. *Ab alio expectes, alteri quod feceris,* Sen., Ep., XV, 2, 43. *Commodis omnium laeteris, movearis incommodis et memineris, quae praestare debes, quae cavere,* Sen., Ep., XVII, 3, 3.

(c) The second person Positive Imperative relation is represented by the second person *Future First* Indicative. The Future First, in this office, is a tense of simple, unqualified prediction, and expresses a strong Imperative sense. This usage is frequent in familiar and collo-

quial language. Observe Future *Exactum* Indicative, chiefly *videris* (if this be not Potential Subjunctive).

Ex.—Tu, si tibi placuerit liber, curabis ut Athenis sit, Cic., Att., II, 1, 2. Hoc ego sentio valde nobis opus esse. Sed tu id videbis, Cic., Att., II, 16, 4. Valebis igitur et valere Piliam et Caeciliam nostram iubebis litteris et salvebis a meo Cicerone, Cic., Att., VI, 2, 10. Curabis ut hoc fiat, Cic., Fam., XIV, 5, 2. Expone primum animos remanere post mortem: tum docebis carere omni malo mortem, Cic., Tusc., I, 12, 26. Videris, quemadmodum hoc votum meum excipias, Sen., Ep., XVI, 1, 4.

(d) The second person Positive Imperative is represented by *non* and the second person Present Indicative, rarely by *non* and the second person Future First Indicative, Interrogatively stated: *Non venis?* = *veni*; *non scribes?* = *scribe*.

Ex.—Non manum abetines, mastigia? Ter., Ad., 781. Fac, promitte. Non omittitis? Ter., Ad., 941.

(e) The second person Positive Imperative is expressed by an interrogative clause with *quin* and the second person Present Indicative.

Ex.—Quin tu urges istam occasionem et facultatem, qua melior numquam reperietur? Cic., Fam., VII, 8, 2. Quin tu aspicias ad te venientem Paulum patrem? Cic., Som. Scip., III. Quin igitur expergiscimini? Sal., Cat., 20. Quin, quod est ferundum, fers? Ter., Phor., 430. Quid nunc stas? quin abis? Pl., M. G., 1087.

REM. The association of *quin* with the Positive Imperative second person is to be observed.

Ex.—Quin tu audi, Pl., Bacch., 276 (perhaps from audi, quin audis?). Quin tu aliquot dies perdura, Pl., Curc., 241. Quin tu uno uerbo dic, quid est quod me uolis, Ter., And., 45.

(f) The second person in *Oratio Recta* becomes regularly the third person in *Oratio Obliqua*. Hence the second person Imperative of the Direct is expressed in the third person Present or Imperfect Subjunctive (according to the time assumed, whether of the Speaker (Present) or of the Reporter (Past)) in the Indirect narrative.

Ex.—Vercingetorix dicit...aequo animo sua ipsi frumenta corrumpant aedificaque incendant, Caes., B. G., VII, 64. Milites certiores facit: paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tela missa exciperent, seque ex labore reficerent, Caes., B. G., III, 5. Dixit ferrent opem, adiuvarent, Liv., II, 6, 3.

3. The first person Positive Imperative singular (rarely occurring) and plural, for which there are no distinct Imperative forms, are expressed by the Present Subjunctive first person singular and plural. This, the so-called Hortatory Subjunctive, is properly referable to the

Imperative, as it expresses an *incitement, exhortation, encouragement*, addressed by the Speaker to himself, *to do or to act*.

Ex.—**Sed reprimam me**, Ter., *Heaut.*, 199. **Amemus patriam, pareamus senatui, consulamus bonis**, Cic., *Se-t.*, LXVIII, 143. **Hoc affigamus animo, hoc nobis subinde dicamus**, Sen., *N. Q.*, VI, 22, 12. **Tantum mortem desinamus horrere**, Sen., *Ep.*, X, 2, 25.

(a) An Imperative relation is expressed by *quin* with the first person Present Indicative Interrogative; also by the Future First Indicative first person, which is often characterized by Imperative force.

Ex.—**Quin, si vigor iuventae inest, conscendimus equos?** Liv., I, 57, 6. **Gaudium exsultatio, exsultationem tumor et nimia aestimatio sui sequitur. Dabimus aliquod laxamentum, in desidiam vero otiumque non resolvemus, et procul a contactu deliciarum retinebimus**, Sen., *Ira*, II, 21, 6. **Videbimus quid futurum sit**, Sen., *Ep.*, II, 1, 7.

(b) To the Imperative may, perhaps, be referred the association *velis nolis, velim nolim, and velit nolit*. Hence *velis nolis* = *let one wish; let him not wish*.

Ex.—**Mors interim aderit, cui, velis nolis, vacandum est**, Sen., *Brev. Vit.*, VIII, 5. **Velit nolit, necesse est illi omnia videre, quae in caelo aguntur**, Sen., *Mort. Cl.*, I, 2. **Praeterea futuri principes, velint nolint, sciant, etc.**, Plin. *Min.*, *Pan.*, XX. **Volo te existimare me nulla eius modi astrictum necessitate, ut, velim nolim, sit, etc.**, Cic., *N. D.*, I, 7, 17.

4. The Imperative Passive formed by the Imperative of *esse* and the *Perfect Passive Participle* rarely occurs.

Ex.—**Tum Caesar: Eatur, inquit, quo deorum ostenta et inimicorum iniquitas vocat. lacta alea esto (est?)**, Suet., *Caes.*, 32 (the language of authority and stern command). **At vos admoniti nostris quoque casibus este**, Ov., *Tr.*, IV, 8, 51. **Sacrum commissum, quod neque expiari poterit, imple commissum esto**, Cic., *Leg.*, II, 9, 22.

### Negative Imperative Relations.

201. 1. The third person Negative Imperative relation is expressed by the Third Person Imperative with *ne, neve (neu), ne quis* in *legal* language and in language used in imitation of it or of *like import*.

Ex.—**Nocturna mulierum sacrificia ne sunt praeter olla, quae pro populo rite flent: neve quem initiant nisi, etc.**, Cic., *Leg.*, II, 9, 21. **Quocirca ne quis agrum consecrato**, Cic., *Leg.*, II, 9, 22. **Mulieres genas ne radunto neve lessum funeris ergo habento**, Cic., *Leg.*, II, 23, 59. **Donum ne capiunto neve danto neve petenda neve gerenda neve gesta potestate**, Cic., *Leg.*, III, 4, 11.

(a) Outside of legal language the *third person Negative Imperative* relation is expressed by the third person Present Subjunctive

(rarely by the third person Perfect Subjunctive) with *ne*, *neve* (*neu*), *non* defining a single word, *neque* (*nec*), *nemo* emphasizing the (negative) subject, *ne quis*, *ne quid*.

Ex.—*Si qui voluptatibus ducuntur. . . missos faciant honores, ne attingant rem publicam*, Cic., *Sest.*, LXVI, 138. *Ne extra rerum naturam vagari virtus nostra videatur*, Sen., *Ep.*, VIII, 2, 29. *Nec sicci sint oculi amisso amico nec fluant*, Sen., *Ep.*, VII, 1, 1. *Ne sumptuosa respersio, ne longae coronae nec acerrae praetereantur*, Cic., *Leg.*, II, 24, 60. *Cressa ne careat pulchra dies nota, neu promptae modus amphorae, neu morem in Salium sit requies pedum*, Hor., *Od.*, I, 36, 10. *Ille (liberalitas) in quantum libet exeat, sed eat, non erret*, Sen., *Ben.*, I, 14, 2. *Ultra Histrum Dacus non exeat*, Sen., *N. Q.*, I, Prolog., 8. *Id, etiamsi incommodum putat, malum non putet*, Sen., *Ep.*, VII, 4, 17. *Itaque secundis nemo confidat, adversis nemo deficiat*, Sen., *N. Q.*, III, Praef., 7. *Nemo ullum auferat diem nihil dignum tanto impendio redditurus*, Sen., *Tranq. An.*, I, 11. *Nihil humile nihil servile patiat*, Sen., *Ira.*, II, 21, 4. *Numquam illi necesse sit rogare suppliciter nec prosit rogasse*, Sen., *Ira.*, II, 21, 4. *Annitimini mecum et capessite rempublicam, neque quemquam ex calamitate aliorum metus ceperit*, Sal., *Iug.*, 85. *I, lictor, deme vincula Romanis: moratus sit nemo, quominus, ubi visum fuerit, abeant*, Liv., IX, 11, 13. *Non assuescat (puer) sermoni, qui dediscendus sit*, Quint., I, 1, 5 (*non attaches to and defines assuescat*). *Non leges auspicato ferantur, non magistratus creentur*, Liv., VI, 41, 10.

(b) The third person Future First Indicative with *non*, etc., seems to occur in an Imperative sense = *he shall not; they shall not*.

Ex.—*Itaque sapiens numquam potentium iras provocabit*, Sen., *Ep.*, II, 2, 7 (= *he shall never—let him never*, etc.). *Finitis actionibus Caesar: Neutra, inquit, pars de mora queretur*, Plin. *Min.*, VII, 10, 2.

2. The second person Negative Imperative relation is expressed in legal language and in language of like import by the second person Imperative (*long form*) with *ne*, *neve* (*neu*).

Ex.—*Hoc plus, inquit, ne facito: rogum ascia ne pollito*, Cic., *Leg.*, II, 23, 59. *Hominem mortuum in urbe ne sepelito neve urito*, Cic., *Leg.*, II, 23, 58. *Homini mortuo ne ossa legito*, Cic., *Leg.*, II, 24, 60. *Binas gemmas ne amplius relinquito*, Plin. *Mai.*, XVII, 198 (a law or rule to be observed). *Per brumam ne colito*, Plin. *Mai.*, XVIII, 232. *Hordeum nisi sicco ne sarito*, Plin. *Mai.*, XVIII, 241. *Stercus nisi decrescente luna ne tangito*, Plin. *Mai.*, XVIII, 322. *Frondem medio die, arborator, ne caedito*, Plin. *Mai.*, XVIII, 330.

(a) Outside of legal language and in classical prose and poetry the second person Negative Imperative is expressed by the second person Perfect Subjunctive with *ne*, *neve*, *ne quid*, *non*, *neque* (*nec*), *nihil*, *numquam*, *nusquam*, etc. The regular and more frequent form of the negative is *ne*, *neve*, *nec* (*neque*), *ne quid*, etc.

Ex.—Ac ne sis perturbatus: novi enim te, etc., Cic., Att., II, 24, 1. Sed hoc ne curaris, Cic., Att., IV, 15, 6. Ne destiteris ad me, quicquid tibi in mentem venerit, scribere, Cic., Att., IX, 9, 1. Si quid Theophanes tecum forte contulerit, ne omnino repudiaris, Cic., Att., II, 5, 1. Ne transieris Hiberum: ne quid rei tibi sit cum Saguntinis, Liv., XXI, 44, 6. Nusquam te vestigio moveris, Liv., XXI, 44, 6. Iurando gratiam Scythas sancire ne credideris, Curt., VII, 35. Quod dubitas, ne feceris, Plin. Min., I, 18, 5. Quoad vives numquam tibi redditam gratiam putaveris, Sal., Iug., 110. Non vis esse curiosus? ne fueris curiosus, Sen., Ira, III, 11, 1. Nec hoc grave duxeris ceterorum more, Sen., Marc., V, 3. Quod pudet debere, ne acceperis, Sen., Ben., II, 23, 1. Neminem despexeris, Sen., Ben., III, 28, 3. Horum nec speraveris immunitatem nec petieris, Sen., Ep., XV, 1, 2. Publicos paedagogos assis ne feceris nec dubitaveris, etc., Sen., Ep., XX, 6, 11. Tu illi nihil dixeris, Cic., Att., V, 11, 7. Non die, non hora citius quam necesse est magistratu abieris, Liv., IX, 34, 15. Nullam aciem, nullum proelium timueris, Liv., II, 12, 11.

(b) In ante-classical Latin the second person Negative Imperative is often expressed by the second person *Present Subjunctive* with *ne*, *nihil*, *numquam*, etc.

Ex.—Ne attigas puerum istac caussa, Pl., Bacch., 445. Ne me moneatis, Pl., M. G., 1378. Neque istum metuas ne amet mulier, Ter., Eun., 1080.

(c) The second person *Present Subjunctive* with *ne*, etc., is the usage in all periods to express the second person Negative Imperative when the subject is the Indefinite Second Person. With a Definite Second Person the *Present Subjunctive* is rare.

Ex.—Denique isto bono utare, dum adsit; cum absit, ne requiras, Cic., Sen., X, 33 (Indefinite Second Person). Sunt orationes quaedam, quas Menocrito dabo, neque ita multae: ne pertimescas, Cic., Fam., I, 9, 23 (Definite Subject). Tu quicquid novi scribere ne pigresce, Cic., Att., XIV, 1, 2 (Definite Subject).

(d) To express the second person Negative Imperative by the short form of the Imperative with *ne* (*non*) is poetical and late Latin. It rarely occurs outside of the limits stated and should not be imitated. It is frequent in comedy.

Ex.—Uigila, ne somno stude, Pl., M. G., 215. Ne, inquam, timete, Pl., Rud., 688. Ne male loquere apsentis amico, Pl., Trin., 926. Ne time, Ter., Ad., 279. Quando ego tuom non curo, ne cura meum, Ter., Ad., 802. Ne grauare, Ter., Ad., 942. Vos non caris aures onerate lapillis, nec prodite graves insuto vestibibus auro, Ov., Art. Am., III, 129. Erit copia pugnandi, ne timete, Liv., III, 2, 9. Ne repugnate vestro bono et hanc spem... alite, Sen., Prov., XIX, 4.

(e) The second person Negative Imperative is expressed by the second person *Future First Indicative* with *non*. The action is presented as one which shall not be done, and, while the language of familiarity, it presents a strong Imperative sense.

Ex.—*Tu interea non cessabis et ea, quae habes instituta, perpolles nosque diliges*, Cic., *Fam.*, V, 12, 10. *Itaque nec fructus tanges colono tuo prohibente*, Sen., *Ben.*, VII, 5, 2.

3. The first person Negative Imperative relation is expressed by the first person Present Subjunctive with *ne*, *neve*, *non*, *neque* (*nec*), etc. The first person *singular* rarely occurs.

Ex.—*Quid mihi tam optandum potest esse quam ut haec dicat ipse Helius? Nihil profecto: sed ne difficilia optemus*, Cic., *Verr.*, IV, 7, 15. *Quoniam omnia commoda nostra legibus obtinemus, a legibus non recedamus*, Cic., *Cluent.*, LVII, 155. *Non splendeat toga, ne sordeat quidem. Non habeamus argentum in quod, etc.*, Sen., *Ep.*, I, 5, 3. *Nihil habeamus, quod cum magno emolumento insidiantis eripi possit*, Sen., *Ep.*, II, 2, 9. *Sciamus...nec invidemus altius stantibus*, Sen., *Tranq. An.*, X, 5. *Me musae in illa sacra illosque fontes ferant: nec insanum ultra et lubricum forum famamque pallentem trepidus experiar*, Tac., *Or.*, 13.

(a) The first person of the Future *First Indicative* with *non* occasionally occurs in an Imperative sense.

Ex.—*Primam iram non audebimus oratione mulcere*, Sen., *Ira*, III, 39, 2. Cf. Quint., XI, 1, 6 (*tractabimus*).

202. To the Imperative relation in the Past may be best referred the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; negative *ne*, interrogative *non*? The Tenses in this sense occur as Tenses of *unreality* in the Past—more exactly, expressing obligation *not fulfilled*, discharged, or realized, in the Past. The Imperfect presents a *continuous* and *persistent* failure to meet an obligation, while the Pluperfect is limited to a *given, specific* occasion on which an obligation *was not discharged*. As, *venires* = you ought to have come, but you would not = *non veniebas*; *venisses* = you ought to have come, but you did not = *non venisti*. Again, if the Subjunctive action is coincident with the leading action or with the main proposition, the *Imperfect* is used. If antecedent to the leading action or to the main proposition, the *Pluperfect* is used.

Ex.—*Quod si meis incommodis laetabantur, urbis tamen periculo commoverentur*, Cic., *Sest.*, XXIV, 54 (they ought to have been moved, but were not = *non commovebantur*). *Quid petens? ut servires? Tibi uni peteres, ut omnia patere, facile ut servires*, Cic., *Phil.*, II, 34, 86. *Male Curio, cum causam Transpadanorum aequam esse dicebat, semper autem addebat vincat utilitas! Potius diceret non esse aequam, quia, etc.*, Cic., *Off.*, III, 22, 88. *Ageret videlicet causam arator*, Cic., *Verr.*, III, 12, 31. *Gladius non erat. Caperes aut fustem aut lapidem*, Pl., *Rud.*, 842. *Haec non in tuam domum neque in suburbanam amicorum, sed Romam in publicam deportasses*, Cic., *Verr.*, I, 20, 54 (=you ought to have sent off, but you did not (= *non deportasti*)). *Imitatus esses ipsum illum Voconium, qui, etc.*, Cic., *Verr.*, I, 42, 107. *Asservasses hominem*

....clausum habuisses, Cic., Verr., V, 65, 168. Restitisses, repugnasses, mortem pugnans oppetisses, Cic., Sest., XX, 45. Iisdem ex libris perspicies et quae gesserim et quae dixerim, aut ne poposcisses, Cic., Att., II, 1, 3. Non me hanc rem patri, ut ut erat gesta indicasse! exorasset ut eam ducerem, Ter., Ad., 630 (observe first person). Non et in eum, qui accepisset animadvertisset? Cic., Verr., II, 23, 57.

### Periphrases of the Imperative.

203. The *Positive Imperative* is approximately represented by the following clauses—the modification of the regular Imperative consisting in the leading verb of the clause:

1. *Cura, curato, ut* with the Subjunctive=*take care to, take care that*.

Ex.—*Cura ut valeas et sic existimes me tua miseria commoveri*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 6. *Curato ut praedati pulcre ad castra conuortamini*, Pl., Pers., 605 (observe *curato* with *conuortamini*).

2. *Fac, also fac ut*, with the Subjunctive=*make to, cause to*.

Ex.—*Qua re magnum fac animum habeas et spem bonam*, Cic., Q. Fr., I, 2, 16. *Ad me fac venias*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 3. *Fac ut omnia ad me perscribas*, Cic., Att., III, 15, 7. *Facito ergo ut Acherunti clueas gloria*, Pl., Capt., 689. *Tu facito ut subuenias*, Pl., Bacch., 36. *Expeditus facito ut sis*, Cic., Att., II, 20, 5.

3. *Vide, also vide ut*, with the Subjunctive=*see (to it) that*.

Ex.—*Uide, sis, calleas*, Pl., Poen., 577. *Uide (ut) tu tuum (officium) efficias*, Pl., Truc., 701.

204. The *Negative Imperative* is approximately represented by the following clauses:

1. *Cura, curato, ne* with the Subjunctive = *take care not to*.

Ex.—*Curato ne sis intestabilis*, Pl., Curc., 30.

2. *Fac ne* with the Subjunctive = *make (cause) not to*.

Ex.—*Modo fac ne quid aliud cures hoc tempore nisi ut conualescas*, Cic., Fam., XVI, 11, 1.

3. *Cave ne* and *cave* alone (more usual) with the Subjunctive = *beware not to, beware of*.

Ex.—*At tibi ne vicinus Enipeus plus iusto placeat cave*, Hor., Od., III, 7, 23. *Quae cave ne te perturbent*, Cic., Fam., XVI, 12, 5. *Cave putes plus me quemquam cruciari*, Cic., Att., VIII, 15, A, 2. *Sed eius amentias cave contemnas*, Cic., Att., IX, 9, 4. *Cave festines aut committas, ut hieme naviges*, Cic., Fam., XVI, 12, 6.

4. *Noli* with the *Infinitive*. This is a very usual periphrasis of the

Negative Imperative, and is used, perhaps, as the equivalent of *ne* with the second person of the Perfect Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Noli spectare quanti homo sit*, Cic., Q. Fr., I, 2, 14. *Noli putare me ad quemquam longiores epistolas scribere, nisi*, etc., Cic., Fam., XIV, 2, 1. *Noli quaerere*, Cic., Fam., IV, 4, 2. *Hac legione noli acrius quicquam putare esse*, Cic., Fam., X, 31, 5.

5. *Vide ne* with the Subjunctive = *see to it that not*.

Ex.—*Uide ne me ludas*, Pl., Curc., 325. *Uide ne sis illi expectationi*, Pl., M. G., 1279. *Uide sis ne in quaestione sis quando arcessem mihi*, Pl., Pseud., 663.

(a) The use of *noli* with the Infinitive *velle* is not identical with *noli* with the Infinitive. In the former association (*noli velle*) the will or disposition of the party addressed (*velle*) is insisted upon by the Speaker (*noli*) as not allowed by the latter and not to be entertained by the former.

Ex.—*Noli adversum eos me velle ducere, cum quibus ne contra te arma ferrem, Italiam reliqui*, Nep., Att., 4. *Cuius auspicia pro vobis experti nolite adversum vos velle experiri*, Liv., VII, 40, 16. Cf. *Nolite id velle quod fieri non potest*, Cic., Phil., VII, 8, 25.

(b) The periphrases of the Imperative by *fuge*, *omitte*, *mitte*, *parce*, *absiste* and the Infinitive are, generally, poetical or late Latin.

Ex.—*Quid sit futurum cras, fuge quaerere*, Hor., Od., I, 9, 13. *Omittite Sagunti atque Hiberi mentionem facere*, Liv., XXI, 18, 12. *Omitte de te dicere*, Ter., Eun., 989. *Mitte orare*, Ter., And., 904. *Cressare parce*, Pl., Pers., 312. *Absiste moveri*, Verg., Aen., I, 399.

(c) The Imperative represents the Protasis of a conditional sentence. This occurs in animated statement.

Ex.—*Da mihi hoc: iam tibi maximam partem defensionis praecideris*, Cic., Verr., II, 62, 151. *Aspice nobilissimarum civitatum fundamenta vix notabilia: has ira delecit*, Sen., Ira, I, 2, 2.

REM. While the Perfect Subjunctive with *ne* presents the conception of an action completed or state attained in the future as *not wished* by the speaker, and may be accepted as the subjective expression of the *negative wish* (or *protest*) of the speaker, and by the form *noli* the speaker refers an action to the will of the person addressed with the injunction that *he* shall *not wish* it, and is therefore an objective conception from the standpoint of the Speaker and a milder form of prohibition, it is probable that these forms of expression (*ne* with the Perfect Subjunctive and *noli* with the Infinitive) were employed without reference to a difference in their sense.



**The Subjunctive in the Expression of a Wish (Optative Subjunctive).**

**205.** The Optative Subjunctive is closely related in sense to the *Imperative Subjunctive*. *Wishes are of two kinds.*

1. A wish that *may* be realized.
2. A wish that *cannot* be realized—that is, a wish for the realization of which the *time has passed*.

In the former the realization of the matter wished is in *suspense*; it has not been decided as impossible of realization. Its realization is possible. In the latter the matter *wished* has been decided as impossible to be realized.

**206.** In the statement of a wish the Subjunctive is used *alone*, with *ut* (rare), with *si* (rare), with *O si* (chiefly poetical), with *utinam*, in the positive wish; with *ne*, *utinam ne* (*non*), in the negative wish. It is not clear that the use of *non* (*utinam non*) always implies an intimate association of the negative and predicate, thus expressing a positive wish as regards a *negative* action. The frequent occurrence of *non* has suggested the Potential as a partial explanation of the mood, but the use of *non* with the Subjunctive when the *will* or *wish* is involved does not demand the *Potential Subjunctive*. The particle *utinam*=*how, pray!* =*how I would that*. In the form *si*, *O si*, there is an ellipsis of the Apodosis of a conditional sentence. The form of the Apodosis to be supplied is decided by the predicate in the Protasis. The tenses in wishes are the *Present* and *Perfect* (rare), the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*. However the action is conceived the realization of the *wish* is necessarily *Future* with the *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive. Hence the tenses are essentially *Future Tenses* of the Subjunctive. Thus, *Utinam amicus meus veniat*=I wish my friend *may come*=a future conception; again, I wish it may *turn out* that my friend *is coming*. *Utinam amicus meus venerit*=I wish my friend *has come*=I wish it may *turn out* that my friend *has come*.

**207.** It follows, then, from what has been stated that a *wish*, the realization of which is in *suspense*—that is, a wish that *may* be realized—is expressed by the *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive. With the *Present Subjunctive* the action may be referred to an *indefinite future*=I wish my friend may come; or the action, while conceived as present, may be referred to a *future ascertainment*=I wish my friend may

be coming=I wish it *may turn out* (*prove*) to be the case that my friend *is coming*.

Ex.—Quando ita vis, di bene uortant, Pl., Trin., 573. Di te eradicent, Syre, qui me hinc extrudis, Ter., Heaut., 589. Stet haec urbs praeclara, Cic., Mil., XXXIV, 93. Quod di omen averterint, Cic., Phil., XII, 6, 14. Quicquid matri dolendum fuit, in me transierit, Sen., Helv., XVIII, 6. Di propitii, quae Cleo dixit, audierint, Curt., VIII, 19. Ut, Syre, te cum tua monstratione magnus perdat Iuppiter, Ter., Ad., 714 (ut explained by an implied verb to *wish*, to *pray*). Si nunc se nobis ille aureus arbore ramus ostendat nemore in tanto, Verg., Aen., VI, 187. O mihi praeteritos referat si Iuppiter annos! Verg., Aen., VIII, 560. O si angulus ille proximus accedat, qui nunc denormat agellum! Hor., Sat., II, 6, 9. Utinam with Subjunctive in all periods of the language. Quam palmam utinam di immortales, Scipio, tibi reservent, Cic., Sen., VI, 19. Ad quam (senectutem) utinam perveniat, Cic., Sen., XXIII, 85. Huic utinam aliquando gratiam referre possimus, Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 2. In spem tamen venio appropinquare tuum adventum: qui mihi utinam solacio sit, Cic., Fam., IX, 1, 1 (observe the Relative (qui) with utinam.). Cf. Quod bonum faustum felixque sit, inquit, regem create, Liv., I, 17, 10. Quod bene vertat, castra Albanos Romanis castris iungere iubet, Liv., I, 28, 1. Utinam hic sit modo defunctum, Ter., Ad., 507. Utinam aut hic surdus aut haec muta facta sit, Ter., And., 463. Utinam sic ipse quam spem tunc ille de me concepit, impleverim, ut, etc., Plin. Min., I, 10, 3. Utinam iam venerit, Plin. Min., III, 18, 10. Utinam non peiora vincant, Quint., IX, 3, 1.

(a) A mild form of the wish that *may* be realized is expressed by *velim* with the Subjunctive, less frequently, by *velim ut* with the Subjunctive, the *positive wish*; again, by *velim ne* (*non*) with the Subjunctive, also by *nolim* with the Subjunctive, the *negative wish*.

Ex.—Velim recordere quae ego de te in senatu egerim, quae in contionibus dixerim, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 4. Velim improbissimo homini malas edentauerint, Pl., Rud., 662. Velim ut mihi ignoscas, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 6. Diligenter Latinos ut conserves velim, Cic., Att., II, 1, 12. Velim ut tibi amicus sit, Cic., Att., X, 16, 1. Velim ne intermittas scribere ad me, Cic., Att., XI, 12, 4. In altera (re) mihi velim obtemperes aut in altera non offendas, Cic., Fam., V, 14, 3. (Meus consulatus) tibi velim ne quid eripuerit praeter unum me, Cic., Q. Fr., I, 3, 1. Atque hoc nolim me iocari putes, Cic., Fam., IX, 15, 4. Nolim ita existimes, Cic., Att., II, 1, 6.

208. The wish that *cannot* be realized, or that is *impossible* to be realized, is stated as follows:

1. In *Present* time, by the Imperfect Subjunctive with *utinam*, *positive wish*; *utinam ne* (*non*), *negative wish*.

(a) *Positive wish*.

Ex.—Iterum dico, utinam adesses, Cic., Att., II, 19, 5. Odi hominem et odero, utinam ulcisci possem, Cic., Att., IX, 12, 2. Quod utinam ita esset: sed

longe aliter esse intellego, Cic., Att., XI, 12, 3. **Utinam L. Caesar valeret, Servius Sulpicius viveret**, Cic., Phil., VIII, 7, 22.

(b) *Negative wish.*

Ex.—**Utinam ne esset mons ullus Pelius**, Cic., Fat., II, 15, 35. **Illud utinam ne vere scriberem, ea te re publica carere, in qua, etc.**, Cic., Fam., V, 17, 3. **Utinam liberorum nostrorum mores non ipsi perderemus**, Quint., I, 2, 6. **Utinam tantum non prodesse**, Sen., Ep., V, 8, 9. **Utinam de vita beata non in conspectu mortis ageremus**, Sen., Ep., VII, 6, 12. The negative *non* affects, properly, the word with which it is immediately connected.

2. In *Past* time, by the Pluperfect Subjunctive with *utinam*, positive wish; *utinam ne (non)*, negative wish.

(a) *Positive wish.*

Ex.—**Utinam me mortuum prius vidisses aut audisses! Utinam te non solum vitae, sed etiam dignitatis meae superstitem reliquisset**, Cic., Q. Fr., I, 3, 1. **Utinam (deus) sapientes Stoicos effecisset**, Cic., Div., II, 41, 86. **Quod utinam minus vitae cupidus fuisset**, Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 1.

(b) *Negative wish.*

Ex.—**Utinam ne in Pelio nata ulla umquam esset arbor**, Cic., Fat., XV, 35. **Utinam istam calliditatem hominibus di ne dedissent**, Cic., N. D., III, 30, 75. **Haec ad te die natali meo scripsi: quo utinam susceptus non essem aut ne quid postea ex eadem matre postea natum esset**, Cic., Att., XI, 9, 3.

REM. 1. *Utinam* with the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect* Subjunctive is continued negatively by *neve (neu)*, *neque (nec)*; it is continued positively by *et*, *-que*.

Ex.—**Utinam emori fortunis meis honestus exitus esset, neu vivere contemptus viderer**, Sal., Jug., 14 (end). **Utinam res publica stetisset... nec in homines evertendarum rerum cupidos incidisset**, Cic., Off., II, 1, 3. **Utinam iam ante vidisses neque totum animum tuum maerori mecum simul dedisses**, Cic., Att., III, 8, 4. **Utinam ista saevitia intra peregrina exempla mansisset nec in Romanos mores transisset**, Sen., Ira., III, 18, 1. **Utinam iam tenerentur omnia et inoperta ac confessa veritas esset nihilque ex decretis mutaremus!** Sen., De Otio, III, 30, 1.

REM. 2. *Utinam ne* in the wish impossible of fulfillment is continued negatively by *neve (neu)*, (*neque (nec?)*). Cf. Cic., Fat., XV, 35.

**Utinam ne in nemore Pelio caesae accidissent trabes,  
Neve inde navis inchoandi exordium coepisset.**

REM. 3. If upon *utinam* with the *Imperfect* Subjunctive, *wish impossible of fulfillment* in the *Present*, a second Subjunctive follows whose time from the *English standpoint* is *Present* or *Future* from the

Present, this dependent Subjunctive is expressed in the *Imperfect* by attraction of *Tense*.

Ex.—*Utinam quidem eadem homini lex esset ut ira cum telo suo frangeretur nec saepius liceret nocere quam semel*, etc., Sen., Clem., XIX, 4. *Utinam quidem persuadere possemus, ut pecunias creditas tantum a volentibus acciperent*, Sen., Ben., III, 15, 1. *Utinam, qui divitias optaturi essent, cum divitiis deliberarent*, Sen., Ep., XIX, 6, 17 (the time of optarent would be coincident with *deliberarent*).

3. The Imperfect Subjunctive with *utinam* in the Past is not identical in meaning with the Pluperfect. The former (Imperfect Subjunctive) implies *state* or *condition* in the Past wished for but not realized. *Utinam* with the Imperfect Subjunctive in a Past connection is very rare.

Ex.—*Utinam te di prius perderent quam peristi e patria tua*, Pl., Capt., 537 (= I wish the gods *had been* destroying you = I wish you *had been* under the curse of the gods, etc.). *Utinam tu prius quam te oculis uidissem meis, malo cruciatu in Sicilia perbiteres*, Pl., Rud., 495.

4. Instead of *utinam* with the Imperfect Subjunctive is found *vellem*, *pervellem*, *cuperem* (rarely occurring) with the Imperfect Subjunctive. Instead of *utinam* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive is found *vellem* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive. Again, instead of *utinam ne* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive is found *nollem* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive. (No instance of *nollem* with the Imperfect Subjunctive (wish impossible to be realized in the Present) has been observed; perhaps it does not occur in the language). While the elements *vellem* and *nollem* are properly milder forms of stating the wish, it is likely that the expressions *vellem* with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (*positive forms*) and *nollem* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive (*negative form*) were employed as the equivalents of *utinam* with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive and *utinam ne* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive. Instead of *nollem* with the Imperfect Subjunctive, which has not been observed, perhaps *vellem ne* could be used.

(a) *Positive form, wish impossible to be realized in Present Time.*

Ex.—*Vellem adesses*, Cic., Att., V, 21, 14. *Tecum vivere possem equidem et maxime vellem*, Cic., Fam., V, 15, 2. *Vellem nobis hoc idem vere dicere liceret*, Cic., Off., III, 1, 1. *Vellem hoc posset dicere*, Cic., Verr., III, 98, 225. *Tu vellem ego vel cuperem adesses*, Cic., Att., II, 18, 4. *Pervellem adessent ii, qui affuerant antea*, Cic., Verr., II, 29, 72.

(b) *Positive form, wish impossible to be realized in Past Time.*

Ex.—**Vellem consequi potuisses, ne eius ordinis rem aut voluntatem offenderes**, Cic., Fam., I, 9, 26. **Vellem tibi dixisset**, Cic., Att., XII, 21, 4. **Vellem in meo gravissimo casu affuisses**, Cic., Fam., IV, 6, 1. **Vellem Idibus Martiis me ad cenam invitasses**, Cic., Fam., XII, 4, 1. **Cuperem pervenire in Bithyniam potuisses**, Plin. Min., Ep. Plin. et Trai., XVIII, 1 (observe *cuperem*).

(c) *Negative form, wish impossible to be realized in the Past.*

Ex.—**Nollem accidisset tempus in quo perspicere posses, quanti te, quanti Pompeium, quanti Brutum facerem**, Cic., Fam., III, 10, 2.

REM. 1. If upon *vellem* and the Imperfect Subjunctive a second Subjunctive follows as a dependency and coincident with the time of the wish (*Present*) the dependent Subjunctive is expressed by the Imperfect.

Ex.—**Vellem posses aliquid afferre quam ob rem id facere possem**, Cic., Att., XI, 2, 3.

REM. 2. With *vellem* and the Imperfect Subjunctive compare *vellem ut*, negative *ne*, with the Imperfect Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Huius industriam vellem ut imitarentur ii, quos oportebat; secundo autem loco, ne alterius labori inviderent**, Cic., Phil., VIII, 10, 31.

REM. 3. *Utinam* quite often occurs without a predicate, but this is readily supplied by the context.

Ex.—**Ibi cum Iunium mensem consumpsissem...atque utinam in pace (=utinam in pace consumpsissem)**, Cic., Att., VI, 2, 6. **Ego, ut spero, te propediem videbo, atque utinam re publica meliore quam timeo!** Cic., Fam., XV, 6, 2 (= *utinam...te videam*).

209. With *utinam* in the expression of a wish compare *qui* (=how?) with the Subjunctive. *Qui* is quite the equivalent of *utinam*.

Ex.—**Qui istum di perdant**, Pl., Trin., 923. **Qui te di omnes aduenientem peregre perdant**, Charmides, Pl., Trin., 997.

210. A form of wish impossible to be realized in the Present and Past is expressed by *mallem* with the Imperfect Subjunctive (*Present Time*), *mallem* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive (*Past Time*). *Mallem* = *I would rather*=*I had rather*; as, *mallem adesset*=*I would rather he were present*; *mallem affuisset*=*I would rather he had been present*. (The negative form *mallem ne* with Imperfect Subjunctive (*Present*)(?): the negative form *mallem ne* with Pluperfect Subjunctive (*Past*)(?).)

(a) *Mallem* with the Imperfect Subjunctive (*Present unreal wish*).

Ex.—**Iam mallem Cerberum metueres, quam ista tam inconsiderate diceres**, Cic., Tusc., I, 6, 12. **Illum (dolorem) mallem lebares**, Cic., Fin., II, 28, 93.

(b) *Mallem* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive (*Past unreal wish*).

Ex.—*Sed ego mallem ad illum scripsisses mihi illum satis facere*, Cic., Att., II, 25, 4. *Numquam illius victoriae socius esse volui: calamitatis mallem fuisset*, Cic., Att., IX, 12, 4. *Quod mecum per litteras agis, unam ob causam mallem coram egisses*, Cic., Att., XIV, 13, B, 1.

REM. 1. To be observed is *mallem* with *ut* and the Imperfect Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Quod ad me scribis, te in Asiam statuisses non ire, equidem mallem ut iras*, Cic., Att., I, 16, 14.

REM. 2. When the entire conception, *wish*, etc., is *Past*, *maluisset* with Pluperfect Subjunctive may be used. This is rare.

Ex.—*Maluisset alium oboluisse!* Suet., Vesp., 8 (*maluisset* = *I would have preferred*, etc.).

Subjunctive in *Asseveration* or *Protestation*.

211. In connection with the Imperative may be considered the Subjunctive in *Asseveration* or *Protestation*. By this (*Asseveration*, *Protestation*) is meant the expression by which a statement or fact is affirmed or denied, or a penalty invoked if the statement be not true or if it be not false. When the statement is affirmed as true it is introduced by *si* or *nisi* (Mood and Tense decided by the sense to be expressed); by the *Indicative alone*; by *ut* (=as) with the *Indicative*. When the statement is denied it is introduced by *si* (Mood and Tense decided by the sense to be expressed). Hence *ni* or *nisi* affirms, *si* denies, the statement introduced by it.

The forms of *Asseveration* or *Protestation* are: *Ita vivam; ita di ament; ita di iuvent; ita di faveant; di faveant; ita ames; ita valeas; ita (eum) saluum habeas; di faciant quod volunt; velim ames*, etc.; *ne vivam; ne sim saluus; moriar; peream; dispeream; ita di perdant; di perdant; di oderint*, etc.

Ex.—*Ita vivam, putavi*, Cic., Fam., II, 13, 3. *Praebebo, ita vivam*, Sen., Ep., XI, 3, 12. *Reliqua, ita mihi salus aliqua detur potestasque in patria moriendi, ut me lacrimae non sinunt scribere*, Cic., Q. Fr., I, 3, 10. *Saepe, ita me di iuvent, te desideravi*, Cic., Att., I, 16, 1. *Ita me di ament, te facturum credo ut*, etc., Ter., Ad., 750. *Dii faveant, maiora adhuc restant*, Curt., IX, 26. *Ita vivam ut maximos sumptus facio*, Cic., Att., V, 15, 2. *Ita tu me ames, ita Philolaches tuus te amet, ut uenusta es*, Pl., Most., 177. *Ita valeas, ut...tu non inieris Tertullam*, Suet., Aug., 69. *Ab hoc ego quaecumque audivi, certa affero, ita illum felicem habeam*, Sen., Mort. Cl., I, 3. *Di me faciant quod uolunt, ni ob istam orationem te liberasso*, Pl., Most., 217. *Ita uelim me ames, ut me hoc delictum admisisse in me, id mihi dolet*, Ter., Ad., 681. *Ne vivam, si*

scio, Cic., Att., IV, 16, 8. Ne sim salvus, si aliter scribo ac sentio, Cic., Att., XVI, 13 a, 1. Moriar si quidquam fieri potest elegantius, Cic., Att., V, 20, 6. Moriar ni pute te malle a Caesare consuli quam in aurari, Cic., Fam., VII, 13, 1. Peream si minima causa est properandi, Cic., Fam., VIII, 15, 2. Dispeream si te mater, amare potest, Suet., Tib., 59. Di me perdant, si ego tui quidquam abstuli, Pl., Aul., 637. Di me perdant nisi cohorrescit corpus meum, Suet., Tib., 21. Di me oderint ni magis quam oculos amo meos, Ter., Ad., 701. Moriar, si magis gauderem, si id mihi accidisset, Cic., Att., VIII, 6, 4.

(a) The Future Indicative occasionally occurs in the clause of Asseveration or Protestation.

Ex.—Ita me di amabunt, mortuum illum credidi expostulare, Pl., Most., 509.

### The Conditional Wish.

212. The terms *dum*, *dummodo*, *modo*; negatives *dum ne*, *dummodo ne*, *modo ne* (*non* rare and defining a single word) occur with the Subjunctive in what may be termed the *Conditional Wish*. The words *dum*, *modo* = *only if* (if only), *provided*; *dummodo* = *provided only*; *as*, *oderint*, *dum metuant* = let them hate, *only if they fear* = let them hate, under the *restriction* or *condition* that they fear. The exact meaning is clearly, *let them hate, but let them fear* = *let them hate*; *I only wish that they shall fear*. The Wish springs from the *Mood*. The time of the realization of the wish is *future*. The Tenses are the *Present* (as a *Future*), the *Perfect* (as a *Future*, rare), the *Imperfect* (in *Oratio Obliqua* and expressing *unreality* in the *Present*). No instance of the Pluperfect expressing unreality in the Past has been observed.

Ex.—Tragicum illud subinde iactabat: oderint, dum metuant, Suet., Cal., 30. Numquam me paenitebit maxima pericula pro patria subire, dum, si quid acciderit mihi, a reprehensione temeritatis absim, Cic., Fam., X, 23, 1. Dilue sane crimen hoc Calidianum, dum ego tabulas aspicere possim, Cic., Verr., IV, 20, 43. Uolo, dum istic itidem uinciatur, Pl., Capt., 608. Medicus sanitatem aegro promittit: si tamen... summa non contingit, dum ipse omnia secundum rationem fecerit, medicinae fine non excidet, Quint., II, 17, 25. Romae, dum modo simul simus, perficiam ut id iudicium nostrum commodissimum esse iudicetur, Cic., Fam., IX, 1, 2. Quem, si placet, appellet furorem, dum modo is furor ita laudetur, ut in Phaedro Platonis laudatus est, Cic., Div., I, 37, 80. Non fugio ne hos quidem mores, dum modo ea exempla sequamur, Cic., Verr., III, 90, 210. Aequi istuc faciam, dum modo eam des, quae sit quaestuosae, Pl., M. G., 784. Uno capite, quo revocabor, modo res conficiatur, ero contentus, Cic., Att., III, 23, 4. Te iudicem aequum puto, modo quae dicat ille bene noris, Cic., Fin., I, 5, 15. Modo haec faciat, quae facit, Cic., Verr., II, 56, 139. Ego, si cui adhuc videor segnior fuisse, dum ne tibi videar, non laboro, Cic., Att., VIII, 11, B, 3. Interpellent me, quo minus honoratus sim, dum ne interpellent quo minus res

*publica a me commodè administrari possit*, Cic., Fam., XI, 10, 1. *Dum ille ne sis quem ego esse nolo, sis mea causa qui lubet*, Pl., Trin., 979 (observe separation of elements *dum—ne*). Cf. *Dum ab re ne quid ores* (Pl., Capt., 938). *Quo lubeat, nubant, dum dos ne fiat comes*, Pl., Aul., 483. *Recte genus hoc numerorum, dum modo ne continuum sit, in orationis laude ponetur*, Cic., De Or., III, 48, 185. *Declinandum de via est (sit), modo ne summa turpitudine sequatur*, Cic., Am., XVII, 61. *Neque sumptui neque modestiae parcere, dum illos obnoxios fidosque faceret* (O. O.), Sal., Cat., 14. *Id Romani, modo ne moverent, aequo satis, Poenus periniquo animo ferebat*, Liv., XXI, 52, 4. *Quae (mediocritas) placet Peripateticis et recte placet, modo ne laudarent iracundiam et dicerent utiliter a natura datam* (*Unreal*), Cic., Off., I, 25, 89. *Transem ista, dummodo te complecti possem* (*Unreal*), Sen., Ep., V, 4, 2. (Non occurs defining a word.) *Omnia licet foris resonent, dum intus nihil tumultus sit, dum inter se non rixentur cupiditas et timor, dum avaritia luxuriaque non dissideant nec altera alteram vexet*, Sen., Ep., VI, 4, 5. *Quo modo volet, dummodo non ex animo suspirem*, Sen., Ep., VI, 2, 6. *Atque adeo nihil largiatur princeps, dum nihil auferat: non alat dum non occidat*, Plin. Min., Pan., 27.

(a) It is to be carefully noted that a conditional wish is *continued* negatively by *neve* (*neu*), *neque* (*nec*).

Ex.—*Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat industria, nec ea solum in claris viris* (*sc. permaneat*), etc., Cic., Sen., VII, 22. *Dum ego ne imiter tribunos, nec me contra senatus consultum consulem renuntiari patiar*, Liv., III, 21, 6. *Si M. Claudio proconsuli aliter videretur, faceret quod e re publica duceret, dum ne quis eorum munere vacaret, neu dono militari virtutis ergo donaretur, neu in Italiam reportaretur*, Liv., XXV, 7, 4. *Dum ne . . . neu*, Tac., Ann., III, 71.

REM. 1. The idea of wishing implied in the Subjunctive in the conditional wish is sometimes more emphatically expressed by *ut* with the Subjunctive, *modo ut*, etc.

Ex.—*Quo modo nunc se res habet, modo ut haec nobis loca tenere liceat, bellissime vel mecum vel in nostris praediis esse poteritis*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 14, 1. *Concede ut impune emerit, modo ut bona ratione emerit*, Cic., Verr., IV, 5, 10. *Videtur, si insaniet, posse opprimi, modo ut urbe salva (opprimatur)*, Cic., Fam., XVI, 12, 4.

REM. 2. The conditional wish is not to be confounded with the conditional relation, *restrictively* stated, *si modo* = *if only*. Here Mood and Tense are decided by the character of the condition as in other conditional sentences.

Ex.—*Obsecro te, sine alios, qui volunt, si modo volunt, sustinere*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 2, 3. *Omnem impetum belli in me convertere non recusem, si modo confirmare patriae salutem possim*, Cic., Fam., X, 8, 6. *Omnia ei obsequia polliceor, si modo rem publicam respicere volet*, Cic., Fam., X, 11, 3.

(a) Very closely related in sense to the conditional sentence of



comparison (*modo* and the Subjunctive) are the phrases *tantum ut* (negative *tantum ne*), *tantum modo ut* (negative *tantum modo ne*) and the Subjunctive. In this construction is felt the presence of a Verb of wishing, or of a similar verb, which is defined by *tantum*, and decides *ut*, *ne*.

Ex.—*Itaque perstringam sine ulla contumelia Siccae aut Septimiae, tantum ut sciant omnes posteri*, etc., Cic., Att., XVI, 11, 1. Cf. *Tantum ut . . . esset*, Liv., III, 15, 8. *Tantum ne Carthaginiensium socii aut sollicitarentur ad defectionem aut sua sponte desciscentes reciperentur*, Liv., XXI, 19, 5 (= *tantum caveretur ne*, etc. (*O.O.*)). *Tantum modo Cnaeus noster ne, ut urbem reliquit inconsiderate, sic Italiam relinquat*, Cic., Att., IX, 10, 4. *Tantum modo ut eum intercludamus, ne ad urbem possit accedere*, Cic., Fam., XVI, 12, 4.

### The Concessive Subjunctive.

213. To the Imperative relation may be referred the Concessive Subjunctive. By this Subjunctive an action is *assumed* or *conceded* for the time, in order to give *emphasis* or to *illustrate* a statement with which it is associated and which follows. The Concessive relation may be rendered *granted that*, *supposing that* (= *let it be that*). The Subjunctive in its *Concessive* office occurs *alone*, or *with ut*; negative *ne*, more rarely *ut non* particularly when the negative (*non*, *nihil*, etc.) defines a single word, or is to be independently stated. The Tenses are the *Present* and *Perfect*; the *Imperfect*, less frequently the *Aorist*. An unreal concessive relation in the Present time is expressed by the *Imperfect* Subjunctive; in the Past time by the *Pluperfect* Subjunctive, as in the Unreal Conditional sentence.

Ex.—*Quid vita habet commodi? quid non potius laboris? sed habeat sane, habet certe tamen aut satietatem aut modum*, Cic., Sen., XXIII, 84. *Sed sint falsa quaedam: contra vera quid dicimus?* Cic., Div., I, 29, 60. *Sit (Caesar) nobis amicus: deferet triumphum*, Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 6. *Ut sint auspicia, haec certe quibus utimur auspicia nullo modo (sunt)*, Cic., Div., II, 33, 71. *Sed, ut vis, acciderit; modo maneat id, quod negari non potest*, etc., Cic., Div., I, 19, 38. *Sed ut potuerint; potuerunt omnibus rebus auditis*, Cic., Acad., II, 3, 9. *Fecerit, si ita vis*, Torquatus propter suas utilitates, Cic., Fin., II, 19, 61. *Fuerit aliis: tibi quando esse coepit?* Cic., Verr., I, 14, 37 (Aorist not readily distinguished from the Potential of the Past). *Quod ut ita sit: quid habet ista res laetabile?* Cic., Tusc., I, 21, 49. *Nihil est homini prudentia dulcius quam, ut cetera auferat, affert certe senectus*, Cic., Tusc., I, 39, 94. *Qui locus erit nobis tutus, ut iam placatis utamur fluctibus, ante quam ad illum venerimus*, Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 5. *In quo, ut iam sit in iis culpa, qui me defenderunt, non minor est in iis, qui, etc.*, Cic., Fam., I, 9, 13. *Ut commutato consilio iter in provinciam converteret, viarum difficultas impendebat*, Caes., B. G., VII, 56. *Ne sint in senectute vires: ne postulantur quidem vires a senectute*, Cic., Sen.,

XI, 34. **Non accipere, ne periculosum sit, invidiosum ad bonos**, Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 16. **Ne sit sane summum malum dolor, malum certe est**, Cic., Tusc., II, 6, 14. **Ne sit tanta similitudo in rerum natura; videri certe potest**, Cic., Acad., II, 26, 84. **Ut enim non efficias quod vis, tamen mors ut malum non sit efficias**, Cic., Tusc., I, 8, 16. (**Exercitus**) **ut non referat pedem, insistet certe**, Cic., Phil., XII, 3, 8. **Ut enim rationem Plato nullam referret, ipsa auctoritate hos frangeret** (*Unreal*), Cic., Tusc., I, 30, 62. **Nam, ut essent atomi, quas quidem esse mihi nullo modo probari potest, tamen declinationes istae numquam explicarentur**, Cic., Fat., XX, 48. **Ut enim cetera paria Tuberoni cum varo fuissent, hoc certe praecipuum Tuberonis fuit**, Cic., Lig., IX, 27 (*Unreal Past*).

## The Interrogative Sentence.

214. A complete sentence involves the existence of a *subject*, and the distinct affirmation of an *action* in connection with the subject and often with reference to an object. Thus, *Equus currit* = the horse runs; *Scripti litteras* = I have written a letter. The Interrogative is an incomplete sentence, to the extent that it aims to ascertain the *existence, reality, or kind* of the *subject or object* or the *existence or reality* of the *action* of the predicate. As the answer to the question may show the *existence or non-existence*, the *reality or unreality* of the *action* of the predicate as well as of the *subject or object*, it follows that the answer *completes the sense* of the Interrogative sentence, while this fact precludes the possibility of the positive affirmation of the *action* of the predicate in the question. As the answer decides the *existence or non-existence*, the *reality or unreality* of the *action* of the predicate in a question, the affirmation of the *action* must *await the answer*, is *dependent upon it*, and is *decided by it*. In the question, *Scriptistine?* = have you written? we cannot say that the Indicative Mood is used *because* the *action* of the predicate is a *fact accomplished* and hence *positively affirmed*. The fact may be that you have or have not written, and the object of the question is to ascertain whether you have written or not. This object is satisfied only by the answer, which may be either *yes* = *scripsi*, or *no* = *non scripsi*. Again, in the question, *Scriptistine litteras?* = have you written a letter? the answer *scripsi* affirms both the *action* as a *fact* and the *object (litteras)* as a *thing real and accomplished*, while the answer *non scripsi* denies both. Again, in the question *Tu has litteras scripsisti?* = have you written this letter? the answer *ego scripsi* emphasizes the *existence and reality* of the *subject or agent, ego*, while *ego non scripsi* denies the *reality* of the *subject or agent* without in either case denying the *reality* of the *action*.

**215.** The action which is the object of inquiry may be one *adverbially* or otherwise qualified; as, Does your friend live *well*? *Whence* does he come? *Whither* does he go? Again, the subject or object may be qualified by an adjective; as, Does the brave soldier refuse to fight? Have you written a long letter?

**216.** From the preceding it is seen that the object of a Question is to ascertain the existence or non-existence of the *subject* or *object*, also the *kind* of *subject* or *object*, also the existence or non-existence, the *reality* or *unreality* of the *action*, *simple* or *modified*, of the *predicate*.

**217.** A Question propounded with the view of ascertaining the *existence* or *non-existence* of the *action*, *simple* or *modified*, of the *predicate* is called a *Predicate Question*; when propounded with the view of ascertaining the existence or non-existence of the *subject* or *object* it is called a *Nominal Question*.

**218.** A Question is a sentence of *one* member, or of *two* or *more* members, either in the relation of *alternatives* to one another or in *exclusive* relation, each to the other. A Question of *one* member is called a *Simple Question*. A Question of *two* members may be called a *Disjunctive* or *Alternative Double Question*. A Question of more than two members may be called a *Disjunctive Compound Question*.

**219.** The Question, either Simple or Disjunctive, may be *directly* put, or stated as an *independent* sentence. Such a Question is called a *Direct* or *Independent Question*.

Ex.—**Quid dicis?** A *Direct* or *Independent Simple Question*.

**Romamne veniam an hic manebo?** A *Direct Disjunctive Double Question*.

**Romamne veniam an hic manebo an Arpinum fugiam?** A *Direct Disjunctive Compound Question*.

**220.** The Question, either Simple or Disjunctive, may be *indirectly* put or stated as a clause *dependent* upon a word or phrase. Such a Question is called an *Indirect* or *Dependent Question*.

Ex.—**Non intellego quid dicas.** An *Indirect* or *Dependent Simple Question*.

**Nescio utrum scribas an legas.** An *Indirect* or *Dependent Disjunctive Double Question*.

**Nescio utrum scribas an legas an dormias.** An *Indirect* or *Dependent Disjunctive Compound Question*.

**REM.** The Mood in the *Direct* or *Independent Question* is, as a rule, the *Indicative*. The Mood in the *Indirect* or *Dependent Question*

tion is, as a rule, the Subjunctive. The Alternative or Disjunctive relation is, as a rule, stated by *an*, and, if repeated, the repetition is made by *an*.

### Interrogative Words.

221. The Interrogative Words are, as a rule, the same in the Direct and Indirect Question, and are determined by the object contemplated in putting the question.

1. In the *Nominal Question* the inquiry as to the existence or kind of the Subject or Object, either in the Direct or Indirect Question, is made by *quis? qui? qualis? quantus? quot? quotus? cuius? cuius, -a, -um? uter? quam?* with an adjective; as, *quam bonus? quam multi?* etc.

Ex.—*Quis Dionem doctrinis omnibus expoliavit?* Cic., De Or., III, 34, 139. *Qui cantus moderata oratione dulcior inveniri potest?* Cic., De Or., II, 8, 34. *Qualis est istorum oratio, qui omnia non tam esse quam videri volunt?* Cic., Acad., II, 14, 44. *Qualis oratoris et quanti hominis in dicendo putas esse historiam scribere?* Cic., De Or., II, 12, 51. *Quotus erit iste denarius, qui non sit ferendus?* Cic., Verr., III, 94, 220. *Socrates cum rogaretur curiatem se esse diceret, "Mundanum," inquit,* Cic., Tusc., V, 37, 108. *Quoia nox resonat?* Pl., Ps., 704. *Per deos immortales! utrum tibi sumes ad defensionem?* Cic., Verr., III, 37, 84. *Scio quam timida sit ambitio quantaque et quam sollicita sit cupiditas consulatus,* Cic., Mil., XVI, 42.

(a) The proper office of *quis* (=who?) is to ascertain the *name* or *existence* of a subject. In this office it is a substantive, while *qui* (=of what kind?) is attributive. With *qui* compare *qualis* (=of what character or kind?). The use of *qui* in the sense of the substantive *quis* is poetical. On the other hand, when *quis* seems to be used adjectively in the sense of *qui*, it is best to explain the substantive with which it is associated as in apposition with it. *Qualis* (=of what kind?) inquires after the *character*. *Quantus* has reference always to *quantity* or *degree* (=what? =how great?). *Quotus* has reference to *numerical sequence* (=of what number, etc.). *Cuius, -atis*, has reference to *origin* (=of what country or family, etc.). *Cuius, -a, -um*, has reference to *possession* (=belonging to whom? whose?) *Uter* means *which of two individual persons or things*, in which sense *qui* is sometimes loosely used. *Utri* means *which of two parties*.

2. In the *Predicate Question* inquiry as to the existence of the action of the Predicate is made, in either the Direct or the Indirect form of the Question, by the same words.

(a) The words *ubi* (=where?), *quo* (=whither?), *quorum* (=whither? to what end?), *unde* (=whence?), contemplate the relation of the action of the Predicate in space and similar senses to be decided by the particles.

Ex.—*Ubi hos persequeris? ubi accusas? ubi defendis ius nomenque legati?* Cic., Verr., I, XXXIII, 83. *Ubi sunt, qui Antonium Graece negant scire?* Cic., De Or., II, 14, 59. *Quo tantam pecuniam conferebant?* Cic., Verr., II, 55, 137. *Quorsum haec spectat tam longa oratio?* Cic., De Or., III, 24, 91. *Unde delecti sunt Galli?* A Capitolio, Cic., Caecin., XXX, 87.

(b) The word *quando* contemplates the relation of the action in time.

Ex.—*Malus civis Cn. Carbo fuit. Fuerit aliis: tibi quando esse coepit?* Cic., Verr., I, 14, 37. *Quando illa (provincia) frumentum quod deberet non ad diem dedit? quando id, quod opus esse putaret, non ultro pollicita est?* Cic., Verr., II, 2, 5.

(c) The particle *ut* (=how?), especially in the *Indirect* form of the Question (rarely occurring in the Direct form of the Question in standard prose), *qui* (=how?), *quid*, *cur*, contemplate the action of the Predicate in a *causal relation*. These particles allow both the Direct and Indirect Question.

Ex.—*Ut sese in Samnio res habent? quae te causa, ut provincia tua excederes, induxit?* Liv., X, 18, 11. *Neque iam, ut aliquid acquireret proelioque hostes lacesseret, sed, ut incolumem exercitum Agedincum reduceret, cogitabat,* Caes., B. G., VII, 59. *Sed nos deum nisi sempiternum intellegere qui possumus?* Cic., N. D., I, 10, 25. *Quid plura disputo?* Cic., Mil., XVI, 44. *Miror cur me accusas,* Cic., Fam., VII, 27, 1. *Cur non hic (studes)?* Plin. Min., IV, 13, 4.

REM. From *ut* Interrogative must be distinguished *ut* in exclamations, which allows the Indicative.

Ex.—*Cnaeus autem noster ut totus iacet!* Cic., Att., VII, 21, 1.

(d) Several Interrogative words and phrases are formed by the Interrogative *qui* (*quis*) with a substantive, sometimes with a preposition added; as, *quomodo* (=in what way? how?); *qua re* (=by what means? on what account?); *quam ob rem* (=on account of what?); *quo consilio* (=with what object?), etc.

Ex.—*Quo modo te veteres Marsi tui? quo modo emptio nova? Placent agri, postquam tui facti sunt?* Plin. Min., II, 15, 1. *Quo modo intellegam vana an vera sint?* Plin., Ep., II, 1, 7. *Qua re (quare) primum ille adesse noluit, cum ex eo numero iudices haberet quos postularat?* Cic., Verr., II, 18, 44. *Primum quo tantam pecuniam? deinde quam ob rem censores ad statuam tibi confere-*

**bant?** Cic., Verr., II, 55, 137. **Quid nunc?** *qua spe aut quo consilio huc imus?* Ter., Eun., 1025.

(e) Some Interrogative words of time are formed of a word of time with the simple interrogative; as, *quousque*, *quamdiu*, (= until what time? how long?).

Ex.—**Quousque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientia nostra?** Cic., Cat., I, 1, 1. **Quousque miserum cruciatis?** Plin. Min., II, 20, 8. **Quam diu id factum est?** Pl., Capt., 974.

### The Direct or Independent Simple Question.

**222.** The Direct or Independent Simple Question is formed by means of the Interrogative words used in a Nominal or Predicate Question. The Mood is, as a rule, the Indicative. The Tense is determined by the context.

Ex.—**Ubi aut qualis est tua mens?** *potesne dicere?* Cic., Tusc., I, 27, 67. **Quando propinat Virro tibi?** Iuv., V, 127. **Quis peccandi finem posuit sibi?** Iuv., XIII, 240. **Quoto cuique lorica est?** Curt., IX, 12. **Quantopere mihi providendum est ne te haec pars sarcinarum tamquam supervacua offendant?** Plin. Min., IV, 26, 2.

**223.** The Question is introduced by a word which serves to indicate the view or expectation of the speaker or writer in propounding it.

I. The most general Interrogative particle is *-ne*. It serves, as a rule, only to give the sentence an Interrogative form, without implying that an affirmative or negative answer is expected. It asks simply for information. The answer may be either *yes* or *no*. It is attached as an enclitic to the word on which the stress of the question rests. It is usually attached to the first word of the sentence, as this, from its position, is often the emphatic word of the sentence.

Ex.—**lubesne me, rex, cum patre patrato populi Romani foedus ferire?** Liv., I, 24, 4. **Rex, facisne me tu regium nuntium populi Romani?** Liv., I, 24, 5. **Estisne vos legati missi a populo Collatino?** **Estne populus Collatinus in sua potestate?** Liv., I, 38, 2. **Estne hic uidulus, ubi cistellam tuam inesse (hic) aibat?** Pl., Rud., 1130.

(a) When the word of a sentence to which *-ne* is appended is not the Predicate, this word is presented with more or less emphasis, accompanied, it may be, with something of surprise or doubt.

Ex.—**Tunc id veritus es, ne ego iracundia aliqua adductus pueros ad te sine litteris miserim?** Cic., Q. Fr., I, 3, 1. **Numquamne hos artissimos laqueos, si solvere negatur, abrupam?** Plin. Min., II, 8, 2. **Si quis sua causa nobis profuit, eine debetur aliquid?** Sen., Ben., II, 12, 1.

(b) In a question with *-ne* it is often indicated by the tone of the voice in colloquial language, by the context, or by the contents of the question that the speaker or writer expects an affirmative answer (with *-ne* here compare *nonne*), or a negative answer, in which case *-ne* is the equivalent of *num*.

### 1. *Affirmative Answer:*

Ex.—*Visne tu te cohibere et meminisse hominem te esse natum?* Cic., Fam., IV, 5, 4. *Satisne videtur declarasse Dionysius nihil esse ei beatum, cui, etc.?* Cic., Tusc., V, 21, 62. *Videtisne, milites, captivorum orationem cum perfugis convenire?* Caes., B. Civ., II, 39. *Dixin hoc fore?* Ter., Ad., 83. *Iurauistin te illam nulli uenditurum nisi mihi?* Pl., Ps., 352. *Uidesne amabo hoc fanum?* Pl., Rud., 253.

### 2. *Negative Answer:*

Ex.—*Quid ais? possumne (quaternas dare) contra meum edictum?* Cic., Att., V, 21, 11. *Ubi tua aut qualis sit mens potesne dicere?* Cic., Tusc., I, 27, 67. *Potestne earum rerum, quae nihil habent rationis, quare futurae sint, esse ulla praesensio?* Cic., Div., II, 6, 15. *Tamenne ista tam absurda defendes?* Cic., N. D., I, 29, 81.

REM. The vowel *e* of the Interrogative *-ne* is frequently dropped, particularly after a preceding *s*, with the shortening of the remaining long vowel (very usual in early Latin).

Ex.—*Scin quid tecum oro, senex?* Pl., Rud., 773. *Uiden me ut raptor?* Pl., Rud., 869. *Ain?* Pl., Rud., 1095. *Satin?* Liv., I, 58, 7. *Tun te abiisse hodie hinc negas?* Pl., Am., 758. *Satin tibist? Mihin?* Ter., Ph., 1047. But compare *Visne tu te cohibere*, etc.? Cic., Fam., IV, 5, 4.

(c) In Cicero, and generally, the Interrogative *-ne* is not appended to a preposition, but to the substantive or emphatic word (attributive) defining the substantive.

Ex.—*Eane de causa?* Caes., B. G., VII, 5. *Cum utrisne istius factum collaturus es?* Cic., Verr., III, 83, 191. *A mene tu?* Cic., Fin., IV, 10, 24. *Iustisne de causis?* Plin. Min., II, 17, 20. *Cum paucisne?* Sal., Jug., 54.

II. The Interrogative *nonne* implies the expectation by the speaker or writer of an affirmative answer. The questioning of a *negative* implies an *affirmative* answer. Hence *nonne* expects an affirmative answer.

Ex.—*Polyidum Corinthium nonne Homerus et aliis multa et filio ad Troiam proficiscenti mortem praedixisse commemorat?* Cic., Div., I, 40, 89. *Nonne melius est de his aliquid quam tantis voluminibus de Themista loqui?* Cic., Fin., II, 21, 68. *Quid? ea plaga nonne ad multos bonos viros pertinet?* Cic., Att., II, 1, 10. *Quid? canis nonne similis lupo?* Cic., N. D., I, 35, 97. *Nonne furor*

et ultimus mentium error est, cum tam exiguum capias, cupere multum? Sen., Ad Helv., X, 6. Unde ista quies, in qua putrescis ac marces? Nonne, si gratus es, dices? Sen., Ben., IV, 6, 4. Nonne apparet opus esse nobis aliquo advocato qui, etc.? Sen., Ep., XV, 2, 52.

REM. 1. In the early Latin *nonne* does not frequently occur. It cannot, however, be excluded from Plautus and Terence.

Ex.—Nonne arbitraris tum adolescentem anuli paterni signum nosse? Pl., Trin., 790. Nonne ego possum, furcifer, te perdere? Pl., Am., 535. Eho nonne hoc monstri similest? Ter., Eun., 334.

REM. 2. The negative *non* quite often occurs in a question. It protests against the negative and insists on the affirmative; as, *Non audis* = do you not hear? you must hear; you cannot help hearing. Hence it is stronger in its affirmative insistence than *nonne*. While this is true in the classical Latin and in the early Latin *nonne* is often substituted by *non*.

Ex.—Pugnantia te loqui non vides? Cic., Tusc., I, 7, 13. Patere tua consilia non sentis? Cic., Cat., I, 1, 1. Quid? si nos tacemus locus ipse te non admonet, quid tibi dicendum sit? Cic., Leg., III, 20, 47. Non erat accipiendum a Claudio quod dabatur? Sen., Ben., I, 15, 6. Quid? non sciunt ipsi viam, domum qua veniant? Ter., Hec., 360. Non licet mihi dicere? Pl., M. G., 1404.

REM. 3. According to the preceding the compounds *nemone*, *nullusne*, *nihilne*, *numquamne*, *numquamne*, imply that the speaker or writer expects in the answer not an acceptance of the negative but an assent to the opposite of this, the affirmative.

Ex.—Nihilne te nocturnum praesidium Palatii, nihil urbis vigilliae, nihil timor populi moverunt? Cic., Cat., I, 1, 1. Numquamne legisti Gaditanum quemdam ad eum visendum venisse? Plin. Min., II, 3, 7. Etc.

III. The particle *num* is a positive form. The questioning of a positive inclines to a negative answer. Hence a question with *num* implies the expectation on the part of the speaker or writer of a negative answer. The particle *num*, then, is used when a negative answer follows and is expected.

Ex.—Num quid hoc pelus (est)? Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 4. Num patriis Heraclium bonis exturbare oportuit? Cic., Verr., II, 19, 46. Num argumentis utendum (est) in re eius modi? Cic., Verr., IV, 6, 11. Ne vos quidem T. Pontii centurionis vires habetis: num idcirco est ille praestantior? Cic., Sen., X, 33. Sunt pueritiae certa studia: num igitur ea desiderant adolescentes? Cic., Sen., XX, 76. Num esse amicam suspicari visus est? Pl., Merc., 212. Num quis tam iniquam censuram inter suos agit, ut sanum filium quam aegrum magis diligat? Sen., Ep., VII, 4, 25.



REM. There is no doubt that in early Latin *num* was used without reference to an expected answer; that is, in a question for information.

Ex.—*Numquid nunc alius me vis?* Pl., M. G., 575. *Num ille te nam novit?* *Numquam uidit*, Pl., M. G., 924.

(a) Sometimes the particle *-ne* is appended to *num* without affecting the force of the latter.

Ex.—*Numne, si Coriolanus haberet amicos, ferre contra patriam arma illi cum Coriolano debuerunt?* Cic., Am., XI, 36. *Nomen est Chares? an Charicles? numne Charmides?* Pl., Trin., 922.

The particle *nam* appended to *num* inquires with interest in the matter of the question. This association has not been observed in classical Latin.

Ex.—*Eho, numnam hic relictus custos?* Ter., Eun., 286. *Hem, numnam perimus?* Ter., And., 591.

REM. The particle *num* associated with *non* inclines to the affirmative answer. The negative implied in *num* and the negative *non* may cancel each other; or they strengthen each other in which case the negative answer is insisted on.

Ex.—*Num non vis audire cur, etiam si ita sit, mors tamen non sit in malis?* Cic., Tusc., I, 22, 77. *Num castra vallata non habetis?* Liv., X, 25, 6 (here *num non* = a strengthened *num*.)

(b) Of the compound Interrogatives the following deserve special attention; they introduce questions in most cases more or less rhetorical:

1. *Quisnam* (=who, pray?), expressing impatient interest in the matter of the question and earnest expectation as to the answer.

Ex.—*Quisnam tuebitur P. Scipionis memoriam mortui, quis monumenta virtutis, si tu ea deseris?* Cic., Verr., IV, 36, 80.

REM. When *num* is associated with *quisnam* interest in the matter of the question is increased with the implication of the expectation of a negative answer.

Ex.—*Crassus, numquidnam, inquit, novi? Nihil sane, inquit Catulus: etenim vides esse ludos*, Cic., De Or., II, 3, 13. *Numquidnam aequum est gravius homini et durius imperari, quam imperatur animalibus mutis?* Sen., Clem., XVI, 4. *Numquidnam amplius tibi cum illa fuit, Charine?* Ter., And., 325 (=pray, you did not have anything more to do with her, did you?).

2. *Numquis* (=does any one?) inclines to expectation of a negative answer.

Ex.—**Num quis Pisoni est assensus?** Cic., Att., XVI, 7, 7. **Numquis hic est?** Nemo. **Numquis hinc me sequitur?** Nemo homost, Ter., Eun., 549 (= is there any one here? = there is no one here, is there?).

3. *Num quando (umquam)* (= whether at any time (ever)?).

Ex.—**Num quando (umquam) perditis civibus vexillum quo concurrant de-futurum putatis?** Cic., Phil., V, 11, 29.

4. *Numqui* (= whether in any way? = *num qua ratione?*)

Ex.—**Numqui minus (nunc) serui, quam si forem serua nata?** Pl., Rud., 218. **Numqui minus hasce esse oportet liberas?** Pl., Rud., 736.

5. *Numquid* (= is there anything? is there to any extent? there is nothing further, is there?). Very usual in closing an interview and taking leave.

Ex.—**Numquid, quamvis non sit naturalis ira, assumenda est, quia utilis saepe fuit?** Sen., Ira, I, 7, 1. **Numquid sol magnitudini suae adicit? numquid ultra quam solet luna procedit?** Sen., Ep., X, 3, 8. **Numquid molestum mihi erit? Nil, si caueris,** Pl., Rud., 832. **Abi cito atque orna te. Numquid aliud (est)? Haec ut memineris,** Pl., M. G., 1195. **Numquid nunc aliud me vis?** Pl., M. G., 575.

6. *Ecquis, ecquid*; strengthened form *ecquisnam*; *ecqui, ecquae, ecquod* (= *en + quis*, etc.) occur in indefinite questions without affirming or denying the matter of the question, and without implying the expectation of an affirmative or negative answer = *is there any?* with *interest* in the matter of the question.

Ex.—**Ecquis in aedibus? heus, ecquis hic est? ecquis hoc aperit ostium? ecqui exit?** Pl., Bacch., 582. **Aperite hoc, aperite, heus ecqui his foribus tutelam gerit?** Pl., Trin., 870. **Ecquem in his locis nouisti?** Pl., Rud., 1033.

By this form it is *evident* sometimes from the contents of the question that an *affirmative* answer is expected.

Ex.—**Ecqui pudor est? ecquae religio, Verres? ecqui metus?** Cic., Verr., IV, 8, 18 (= is there any shame? etc. = there must be some shame, etc.). **Ecquid erubescitis?** Sen., De Prov., VI, 9. **Ecquid sentitis iam vos, Quirites, Caesonem simul civem et legem, quam cupitis, habere non posse?** Liv., III, 11, 12. **Ecquid sentitis, in quanto contemptu vivatis?** Liv., IV, 3, 8. **Ecquid ergo intelligis quantum mali de humana condicione deleceris?** Cic., Tusc., I, 8, 15.

It is equally clear that by *ecquis*, etc., the speaker or writer insists upon the negative in the answer.

Ex.—**Ecquo in oppido pedem posuit ubi non plura stuprorum suorum quam adventus sui vestigia reliquerit?** Cic., Verr., I, 24, 62. **Ecquis Volcatio, si sua sponte venisset, ullam libellam dedisset?** Cic., Verr., II, 10, 26. (Compare *ec-*

**quando** = at any time? ever? inclining to the negative.) **Ecquando isto fructu quisquam caruit, ut videre piratam captum non liceret?** Cic., Verr., V, 26, 66.

### The Rhetorical Question.

**224.** The preceding has reference chiefly to the answer expected by the speaker or writer. When, however, to impart greater emphasis to his language, he uses the form of a Question, not with reference to the answer, but to make a statement, the Question thus employed is called the *Rhetorical Question*. By such a Question the strongest form of statement may be made. Thus, "Can the Ethiopian change his skin?" is an emphatic form of the statement, "*The Ethiopian cannot change his skin.*" "Is it not disgraceful to steal?" is an emphatic form of the statement, "*It is disgraceful to steal.*"

**225.** To the Rhetorical Question may be referred also that form of a sentence introduced by an Interrogative word and stated for Rhetorical effect with an emphasis approaching exclamation.

**226.** The distinguishing characteristic of the Rhetorical Question is that it *does not expect an answer, but makes a statement.*

**227.** In *Oratio Obliqua* the Rhetorical Question is expressed in the Accusative with the Infinitive, while the Interrogative form of the sentence is retained. This construction is peculiar, and is to be explained by the fact that in *Oratio Obliqua* the statement which is the characteristic of the Rhetorical Question decides the construction regardless of its Interrogative form. The statement made by a Rhetorical Question varies, and its exact character is the important matter to be determined.

1. When the Question occurs without an Interrogative word, the opposite of the matter of the Question is, generally, the statement intended to be made. If the Question is affirmatively put—that is, without a negative expressed—the statement intended to be made is *Negative*; if the Question is negatively put—that is, with a negative expressed—the statement intended to be made is *Affirmative*.

Ex.—**Tu servitutem pacem vocas?** (= *non servitutem pacem vocas*), Cic., Phil., VIII, 4, 12. **Parva est enim mihi tecum dissensio?** (= *non parva est*, etc.), Cic., Phil., VIII, 5, 17. **Hi Antonium diligent et cum his pacem servabit Antonius?** Cic., Phil., VII, 8, 22. **Infelix est Fabricius, quod rus suum, quantum a republica vacavit, fodit?** Sen., Prov., III, 5. **Infelix est Mucius, quod dextera ignes hostium premit?** Sen., Prov., III, 4. **Creditis tot gentes eodem proelio domitas esse, quo victae sunt?** Curt., VI, 7. **Cadit in virum bonum**

**mentiri emolumenti sui causa?** Cic., Off., III, 20, 81. **Haec non turpe est dubitare philosophos, quae ne rustici quidem dubitent?** Cic., Off., III, 19, 77. **Non pudet philosophum in eo gloriari, quod haec non timeat?** Cic., Tusc., I, 21, 48.

REM. Refer to this context the negative in a *Question*, the equivalent of the *Imperative*. Here the action of the Predicate is stated as an *injunction*.

Ex.—**Non taces, insipiens?** Pl., Bacch., 627. **Non tu hinc abis?** Pl., Stich., 603.

(a) In this form of the Question (*without* an Interrogative word), both with and without a negative, the speaker, under the form of a Question, expresses *surprise* or *disgust* at the matter of the Question, or *insists* that the opposite of the matter of the Question should be the fact, or *asserts* the matter of the Question as presented.

Ex.—**Fremebat tota provincia: nemo id tibi renuntiabat?** Cic., Verr., III, 57, 132 (here *surprise* is expressed that *nemo id tibi renuntiabat*). **Ignorabas haec? ignorabas haec omnia?** Cic., Verr., III, 57, 132 (here, too, *surprise* is expressed). **Haec te vox non percussit? non perturbavit? non, ut capiti et fortunis tuis prospiceret, excitavit?** Cic., Verr., III, 57, 132 (here *surprise* at the negative (*non percussit*, etc.) is expressed with the strong affirmation of the affirmative (*percussit*, etc.)). **Te nulla sua calamitate civitas satiare tam fidelis potest?** Cic., Phil., VIII, 6, 19 (here *strong disgust* is expressed). **Certe patrem tuum non occidisti?** Suet., Aug., 33 (here *non occidisti* is insisted upon by the speaker and furnished as a reply to the person to whom the question is addressed).

2. A Question formed by an Interrogative word with and without the negative *non*, etc., is Rhetorical when by it a statement is intended to be made by the speaker or writer, or when it is put not with the view to an answer. It cannot be maintained that, in such a Question, the statement is always the opposite of the matter of the Question; on the contrary, the matter of the Question may be the statement intended, and this may often be asserted with *surprise*, *impatience* or *disgust*. In many cases the statement must be decided by the *context*, aided by the *elements of the Question*. The Question, again, may be in the form of an *exclamation*.

Ex.—**Quae potest pax esse M. Antonio cum senatu?** (negative statement = *nulla pax*, etc.), Cic., Phil., VII, 8, 21. **Quae est spes...is pacem cum populo Romano esse posse?** Cic., Phil., VII, 8, 22. **Quid ille umquam arbitrio suo fecit?** Cic., Phil., VI, 2, 4. **Quem philosophum non contemnimus?** (affirmative statement) Cic., Sen., IV, 12. **Quid ego praetermisi aut monitorum aut querelarum!** (negative statement) Cic., Fam., VI, 6, 5. **At nos quem ad modum est complexus!** (emphatic affirmative statement) Cic., Fam., VI, 6, 10. **Qui sermo, quae praecepta, quanta notitia antiquitatis, quae scientia iuris augurii!** (af-

firmative statements) Cic., Sen., IV, 12. **Ut omittam ceteros populos, noster quam multa genera (divinationis) complexus est!** (*affirmative statement: quam multa = permulta*) Cic., Div., I, 2, 3. **Quas ego pugnas et quantas strages edidi! quos impetus in Pisonem feci! quo modo sum insectatus levitatem senum, libidinem iuventutis!** Cic., Att., I, 16, 1. **O quam sollers est iracundia ad fingendas causas furoris!** Sen., Ira, I, 18, 6. **Si pelletur, quam gratus tum erit ad Pompeium noster adventus?** Cic., Att., X, 8, 2.

(a) Whether a *Rhetorical* Question or an *ordinary* Question is, in a given case, employed depends upon the choice of the speaker or writer. In *Oratio Obliqua*, however, the regular Question is reproduced in the Subjunctive, while the Rhetorical Question is expressed in the Accusative with the Infinitive. Hence it often occurs that we find, according to the view of the speaker or writer, the Subjunctive, in *Oratio Obliqua*, where the Accusative with the Infinitive is expected and would be correct.

Ex.—**Quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id iis eripi quis pati posset?** Caes., B. G., I, 43 (compare ....**quem pati posse?**). **Cur igitur extraxisset biduum, tamquam indicio haberet fidem?** Curt., VI, 30 (the Infinitive *extraxisse* is looked for).

REM. The Question addressed to the second person in *Oratio Recta*, as this *regularly* inquires for information, is reproduced in *Oratio Obliqua* by the Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Si bonum ducerent, quid ita pro noxio damnassent?** Liv., XXVII, 34, 13 (in *Oratio Recta* *damnastis?*).

228. If several Questions follow one another it is usual to introduce only the *first* by an Interrogative word (Pronoun or *-ne*). Hence, *nonne* in the succession of several Questions is continued by *non*.

Ex.—**Verres praetor appellatur. At quis appellat? Magistratus aliqui? Nemo. Senator? Ne id quidem. Syracusanorum aliqui? Minime, Cic., Verr., IV, 65, 146. Nonne ad te L. Lentulus, qui tum erat praetor, non Q. Sanga, non L. Torquatus pater, non M. Lucullus venit?** Cic., Pis., XXXI, 77. **Nonne me huc erus misit meus? Nonne ego nunc sto ante aedis nostras? non mihi ista laterna in manu? non loquor? non uigilo?** Pl., Amph., 402. **Egone has indignitates diutius patiar quam necesse est? Tarquinium regem qui non tulerim. Sicinium feram?** Liv., II, 34, 10. **Eritne quam postea uxoribus nostris ostentare possimus? erit a qua viri quoque fortitudinis exempla sumamus?** Plin., Min., VII, 19, 7.

REM. *Nonne*, however, may be repeated in simple Questions separately stated.

Ex.—**Nonne extremam pati fortunam (vos) paratos proiecit ille? nonne sibi clam vobis salutem fuga petivit? nonne proditi per illum Caesaris beneficio estis conservati?** Caes., B. Civ., II, 32.

**229.** To be noted are the words and phrases *quid?* *quid hoc?* *quid quod?* *quid ad me?* *quid multa?* *quid plura?* *quid tua?* *quid vero?* *quid postea?* *quid ergo?* *quid enim?* etc.

(a) *Quid* is to be explained:

1. As the object of the predicate of a preceding Question.

Ex.—*Quid aliud scribam ad te? quid?* Cic., Att., I, 17, 11 (here *quid* = *quid scribam?*).

2. As the object of a verb, such as *censes*, *dicis*, etc., by which a transition in statement or argument is suggested.

Ex.—*Quid? quod scriptum apud te est de Ti. Graccho, nonne et augurum et haruspicum comprobant disciplinam?* Cic., Div., I, 17, 33. *Quid ergo? sat in hoc est, ut non deliquisse videantur?* Cic., Off., III, 18, 73.

(b) *Quid hoc* (= *why do you say (think of) this? what as to this?*).

Ex.—*Quid hoc? dasne aut manere animos post mortem aut morte ipsa interire?* Cic., Tusc., I, 11, 25.

(c) *Quid quod* (= *what of this—that? what of the fact that? = quid de eo (hoc) dicam, quod?*).

Ex.—*Quid, quod Zaleucum istum negat ullum fuisse Timaeus?* Cic., Leg., II, 6, 15. *Quid, quod eadem mente res dissimillimas comprehendimus?* Cic., Tusc., I, 20, 46.

(d) *Quid ad me* (*te*, etc.) (= *quid ad me attinet (pertinet)?*).

Ex.—*Quid id ad me, inquit?* Cic., Att., I, 13, 6.

(e) *Quid multa, quid plura* (= *quid multa (plura) dicam?*).

Ex.—*Quid multa? omnis cura mea solet in hoc versari, si*, etc., Cic., De Or., II, 75, 306. *Sed quid plura? Ortum videamus haruspicinae*, Cic., Div., II, 23, 50.

(f) *Quid tua* (= *quid tua interest?*), Sen., N. Q., VI, 32, 12.

### The Subjunctive Mood in a Direct Question.

**230.** The Subjunctive in a Direct Question is the Potential Subjunctive. The Question is, generally, a *Simple Question*. The Tenses are the *Present* and *Perfect* (not frequent) in a Present connection; the *Imperfect* in a Past connection; *Aorist* (rare). Of this Question there are two kinds:

(a) The Question is one of *Deliberation* or *Embarrassment*—a *Deliberative Question*. In this Question the speaker is undecided or embarrassed what to do. He deliberates what course to pursue. He

does not make a statement; he seeks information and direction. This is furnished by the answer, to which he looks. This Question may be termed the *Potential Deliberative Question*, or the *Potential Question of Embarrassment*; as, *Quo me vertam?* = *whither may or can I turn?* *whither am I to turn?* The answer, particularly to the first person, would naturally be given by the Imperative, or the answer may be *Potential* in accordance with the character of the Question; as, *Quid faciat?* = *what may or can he do? what is he to do?* Answer: He *may or can do this*.

1. *In a Present connection.*

Ex.—*Tibi quid suadeam, cuius ipse consilium exspecto?* Cic., Att., VII, 10, 1. *Illuc, quo spectat animus et quo res vocat, qua veniam?* Cic., Att., VIII, 16, 1. *Cum tot impendeant, cur non honestissimo depecisci velim?* Cic., Att., IX, 7, 3. *Quem sequamur? Vide nomen, vide aetatem,* Cic., Att., XVI, 8, 1. *Quid agam, iudices? quo accusationis meae rationem conferam?* Cic., Verr., V, 1, 1. *Quid ego nunc te laudem?* Ter., Ad., 256. *Quo modo hac me expediam turba?* Ter., Ad., 615. *Quo redeam?* Ter., Ad., 186. *Unus homo tantas strages impune per urbem ediderit?* Verg., Aen., IX, 784 (better Rhetorical). *Quis ullius boni accessionem recusaverit?* Sen., Ira, I, 13, 2.

2. *In a Past connection.*

Ex.—*Haec cum viderem, quid agerem, iudices?* Cic., Sest., XIX, 42. *Quid faceres pro innocente homine, cum propter hominem perditissimum committis, ut, etc.?* Cic., Verr., Prim. Act., X, 28 (the time here is Past).

REM. The Question may be *Disjunctive*.

Ex.—*Patiamur an narremus cuiquam?* Ter., Ad., 336.

(b) The Question may be *Rhetorical*. By it the speaker or writer expresses with the reserve and modesty characteristic of a Potential statement the *opposite* of the matter of the Question; as, *Quis hoc credat?* = *who may or can believe this?* = *no one may or can believe this*. *Quis hoc crederet?* = *who could have believed this?* = *no one could have believed this*.

1. *In a Present connection.*

Ex.—*Cum illo quis neget actum esse praecclare?* Cic., Am., III, 11. *Quis eum diligit quem metuat?* Cic., Am., XV, 52. *Quid ego hospitem nostrum Deiotarum regem commemorem?* Cic., Div., I, 15, 26. *Quid putem aliud?* Cic., Att., VIII, 5, 1. *Pro urbis salute cur non omnibus facultatibus utamur?* Cic., Fam., X, 23, 6. *Quin ego hoc rogem?* Pl., M.G., 426. *An ego non provideam meis civibus?* Cic., Phil., VI, 6, 17.

REM. The Question may be *Disjunctive*.

Ex.—*Tamenne dubitemus an ei nos etiam cum periculo venditemus?* Cic., Att., X, 8, 3. *Tuam magnanimitatem an modestiam an benignitatem prius mirer?* Plin. Min., Pan., 35. *Nationesne an reges appellem, qui, etc.?* Sal., Jug., 14.

2. *In a Past connection.* Tense *Imperfect* (Aorist rarely).

Ex.—*Ego sorte datum offenderem?* Cic., Att., VI, 6, 4. *Ego me, illum regum hostem, cupiditatis regni crimen subitum timerem?* Liv., II, 7, 9. *Quid facerem?* Ter., Ad., 214. *Aduersumne illum causam dicerem, cui ueneram aduocatus?* Ter., Ad., 676. *Ego quasi canem hominem insectarer lapidibus?* Pl., Rud., 843. *Ego te videre noluerim?* Cic., Q. Fr., I, 3, 1 (seems to be the Aorist).

REM. 1. This Question often implies *disappointment*, *aversion*, *disgust*, and *impatience*—that is, the matter of the Question is not approved, is not accepted, is regarded with impatience. Often deep feeling is expressed, when the Question may be termed a *Passionate* or *Intensive* Question, particularly when a preceding predicate is repeated in the Question.

Ex.—*Exercitum tu habeas diutius quam populus iussit, invito senatu?* Cic., Att., VII, 9, 4 (*Disapprobation*). *Urbem tu relinquas?* Cic., Att., VII, 11, 3 (*Disapprobation*). *Habeat is turmas?* Cic., Att., VI, 2, 9 (*Aversion*). *Hoc timet ne deseras se. Egone istuc conari queam?* Ter., And., 270. *Egone propter me illam decipi miseram sinam?* Ter., And., 272. *Egone dicam?* Ter., And., 384. *Egone istuc facerem?* Ter., And., 584. *Adeamne ad eum et cum eo iniuriam hanc expostulem?* Ter., And., 639 (observe *-ne*). Cf. *Equiti Romano tam locupleti libertinus homo sit heres?* Cic., Verr., I, 47, 124 (these questions express *Aversion*). *Eripias tu voluntatem mortuo, bona vivis?* Cic., Verr., I, 44, 114 (*Passionate Protest*). *Quid nunc rogem te, ut venias?* Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 3. *Non rogem? sine te igitur sim?* Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 3 (*Passionate Questions*). *Quid agitur? Quid agatur?* Ter., Ad., 374. *Quid fecit? Quid ille fecerit?* Ter., Ad., 84. *Ausculpta quaeso. Ego auscultem tibi?* Pl., M. G., 496. *Volo me expurgare. Tune te expurges?* Pl., M. G., 497 (observe *-ne*). *Sineres uero illum tu tuom facere haec? Sinerem illum?* Ter., Ad., 396. *Quid faciam amplius? Quid facias?* Ter., Ad., 732. (These questions imply *passionate inquiry*, in some cases associated with *aversion*.)

REM. 2. The Imperfect Subjunctive in a Deliberative or Rhetorical Question may furnish the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional in the Present or Past, as indicated by the Protasis expressed or to be supplied.

Ex.—*Quid faceres, si amicum perdidisses?* Sen., Ep., XVI, 4, 2. *Quis posset observare illud momentum, quo cometes solutus et in duas partes reductus est?* Sen., N. Q., VII, 16, 3.

231. The Question introduced by *quidni* (= *why not?*), also writ-



ten separately *quid—ni*, always with the Subjunctive, is to be referred to the *Rhetorical Question*.

Ex.—Cum rogaret eum Salinator ut meminisset opera sua se Tarentum recepisse: Quidni, inquit, meminerim? Cic., De Or., II, 67, 273. Quisquis sequitur priores male iter ingressos, quidni habeat excusationem? Sen., Ira, II, 10, 3. Quidni gauderet, quod iram suam multi intellexerent, nemo sentiret? Sen., Ira, III, 13, 3. Quidni in illa toto nos demus animo? Sen., Brev. Vit., XIV, 2. Quidni tu (mihi) magnum munus dederis? Sen., Ben., I, 8, 2. Populi odium quidni nouerim? Pl., M. G., 922. Quid ego ni ita censeam? Pl., M. G., 1120. Quid illam ni abducatur? Ter., Ad., 662. Quid ego ni fleam? Pl., M. G., 1311.

REM. 1. To *quidni* the negative *non* is occasionally added without affecting the character of the Question, and sometimes *quidni* occurs without a predicate expressed, but which may be readily gathered from the context.

Ex.—Vivere mihi non licet. Quidni non liceat? Sen., Brev. Vit., VII, 6. Quidni non timeat, qui mori sperat, si, etc.? Sen., Ep., XVII, 2, 30. Ut iudicetis et feratis de meliore suffragium, quidni non permittam? Sen., Ep., V, 12, 9. Quidni non possit beata vita rescindi? Sen., Ep., XIV, 4, 23. (*Quidni non?* may be resolved as *quidni? non?* with Subjunctive; as, *quidni? non permittam?*) Quid ergo? non aliquando castigatio necessaria est? quidni? Sen., Ira, I, 6, 1. Nostrum amicum noras? Quidni? Ter., Ad., 466.

REM. 2. From the Question with *quidni* and the Subjunctive is to be distinguished that formed by *quin* (= *why not?*) with the Indicative. The Question with *quin* is also *Rhetorical*. It expresses an injunction or exhortation to do what is stated in the Question. It is the equivalent of an Imperative.

Ex.—Quin tu urges istam occasionem? Cic., Fam., VII, 8, 2. Quin conscendimus equos invisimusque praesentes nostrarum ingenia? Liv., I, 57, 7. Quin tu ergo rogas? Pl., Asin., 30. Quin ego hanc iubeo tacere? Pl., Asin., 291.

232. The particle *an* does not introduce a *Direct Simple Question*, but the second member of a *Direct Disjunctive Question*. When *an* occurs in what seems to be a *Simple Question* the former member of a *Disjunctive Question* has been omitted, but is readily suggested by the *an* member. As *an* introduces the alternative member of a *Double Question*, the member to be supplied must be one the acceptance or affirmation of which implies the negation of the statement with *an*, or the rejection or negation of which implies the affirmation of the statement with *an*. When *an* occurs in what seems to be a *Simple Question*, its office is clearly presented in the translation *then? or then?* It is to be carefully noted that, in accordance with the principle stated,

the Question with *an* often refers to a preceding view or statement with irony or astonishment as one not to be accepted. In any case translate *an* by *then?* or *then?* *An vero?* = *then really?* or *then really?*

Ex.—*Si quid fecimus, certe irati non fecimus. An est quicquam similis insaniae quam ira?* Cic., Tusc., IV, 23, 52 (= *Utrum hoc verum est an est quicquam similis insaniae quam ira?* or, accepting the member to be supplied as true, = *Nonne hoc verum est (Nonne res se ita habet) an est quicquam similis insaniae quam ira?*). *Pugnantia te loqui non vides? Quid enim tam pugnat quam non modo miserum, sed omnino quicquam esse qui non sit? An tu egressus porta Capena, cum Serviliorum sepulcra vides, miseros putas illos?* Cic., Tusc., I, 7, 13 (= *Utrum hoc verum est an... putas?* or, accepting the member to be supplied as true, = *Nonne res ita se habet, an... putas?*). *An mihi nutus tuus non faceret fidem?* Cic., Att., IV, 8, 1.

REM. 1. It may be observed that after a Question *an* often obtains the sense of *nonne*—that is, there is a strong insistence upon the correctness of the statement in the *an* member.

Ex.—*Quidnam beneficio provocati facere debemus? an imitari agros fertiles (debemus), qui multo plus efferunt, quam acceperunt?* Cic., Off., I, 15, 48.

Refer to and explain the following questions with *an*:

Cic., Sen., VI, 15; XXIII, 82. Cic., Div., II, 13, 31; II, 15, 36; II, 16, 37; II, 28, 59. Cic., Tusc., I, 2, 4; I, 7, 14; IV, 25, 55; V, 14, 40. Cic., Att., VIII, 11, 2; IX, 18, 1. Cic., Fam., II, 16, 5; IV, 5, 3. Cic., Att., I, 16, 5. Liv., V, 3, 4; V, 4, 7. *An vero?* see Caes., B. Civ., II, 32.

REM. 2. To *an* the particle *-ne* is sometimes appended without affecting its force.

Ex.—*Quid est iucundius senectute stipata studiis iuventutis? Anne eas quidem vires senectuti relinquimus, ut adolescentes doceat, instituat, ad omne officii munus instruat?* Cic., Sen., IX, 29. *Vid. Iuv., VII, 199.*

REM. 3. *An non* strongly affirms = *then not?* or *then—not?* *An vero?* = *then really?* *then truly?* or *then really?* or *then truly?*

Ex.—*An vero in Hispania res gestas non audistis?* Caes., B. Civ., II, 32. *An non, uti corporis vulnera, ita exercitus incommoda sunt tegenda?* Caes., B. Civ., II, 31.

REM. 4. The Particle *an* is used in the Potential Subjunctive Question, as is also *an non*.

Ex.—*An, qui incolumes resistere non potuerunt, perditii resistant?* Caes., B. Civ., II, 32. *An, cum videat quam te nullus terror, nulla comitetur ambitio, non et ipsa cum silentio incedat ingredientemque pedibus maritum, in quantum patitur sexus, imitetur?* Plin. Min., Pan., 83.

### The Direct Disjunctive Double Question.

233. The Direct Disjunctive Double Question = *whether—or?* is thus formed:

Whether—or?

*Utrum—an?*

*Utrumae—an?* (poetical and late).

*Utrum—anne?*

*-ne—an?*

Ex.—*Puer utrum bonus an malus est? Puer bonusne est an malus? Puer utrum bonus anne malus est?*

*Utrum de imperatore populi Romani an de Hannibale loquimur?* Cic., Att., VII, 11, 1. *Utrum defenditis an impugnatis plebem? Utrum militantium adversarii estis an causam agitis?* Liv., V, 3, 7. *Quid tibi tandem nocet? resne, quae talis est, an ego, qui verum explicari volo?* Cic., Div., II, 20, 46. *Vosne vero L. Domitium an vos Domitius deseruit?* Caes., B. Civ., II, 32.

234. In the construction of the Direct Disjunctive Question the *first* Interrogative Particle (*utrum*, *-ne*) may be omitted.

Ex.—*Mentiri Xenophontem an delirare dicemus?* Cic., Div., I, 25, 53. *Recto itinere duxisti exercitum ad hostes, an per omnes anfractus viarum?* Liv., XXXVIII, 45, 9. (The more common usage is not to omit the Particle.) *Filius (est), anne aliquis magna de stirpe nepotum?* Verg., Aen., VI, 864.

(a) The Particle *an* is repeated when there are more than two members to the Question. Such a Question may be termed the *Disjunctive Compound Question*.

Ex.—*Utrum impudentius ab sociis abstulit, an turpius meretrici dedit, an improbius populo Romano ademitt, an audacius tabulas publicas commutavit?* Cic., Verr., III, 36, 83.

(b) The form *utrum* sometimes precedes, followed by *-ne—an*. In this case *utrum* may be accepted as the pure pronoun (=which of the two?), limited by the two members of the *Disjunctive Question*.

Ex.—*Utrum censemus dormientium animos per sene ipsos in somniando moveri, an, ut Democritus censet, externa et adventicia visione pulsari?* Cic., Div., II, 58, 120. *Utrum mavis, statimne nos vela facere an, quasi e portu egredientes, paulatim remigrare?* Cic., Tusc., IV, 4, 9. *Utrum, obsecro te, aequius iudicas, te naturae an tibi parere naturam?* Sen., Ep., XV, 1, 2. *Utrum studione id sibi habet an laudi putat fore, si perdidit gnatum?* Ter., Ad., 382.

REM. 1. The preceding is not identical with *-ne* superfluously ap-

pended to *utrum* (*utrumne*). This form of expression is rare. It has not been observed in classical prose in the Direct (Indicative) Question.

Ex.—**Utrumne ego sum, Domiti, exemplo gravis, an tu qui**, etc.? Plin. Mai., XVII, 1, 1. **Utrumne iussi persequemur otium an hunc laborem mente laturo?** Hor., Epod., I, 7. **Agesis, inquit, si virum illa meliorem habeat, quam tu habes, utrumne tuum virum malis an illius?** (*Ideal Conditional*), Cic., Inv., I, 31, 51.

REM. 2. The Question may be Potential (*vid.* 230).

Ex.—**Patiamur an narremus cupiam?** Ter., Ad., 336. (Cf. 230, a, Rem.)

REM. 3. The single Question with *num* repeated is to be observed, and is not to be confounded with the Disjunctive Question. In the Questions with *num* the force of *num* is retained.

Ex.—**Num maiora praesidia quaeruntur? num obscure regnum constituitur? num obscure libertas vestra tollitur?** Cic., Læg. Agr., II, 28, 75. **Num quae trepidatio? num qui tumultus? num quid nisi moderate, nisi quiete?** Cic., Reg. Deiot., VII, 20.

REM. 4. In poetry and late Latin *an* occasionally responds to a preceding *sive* and seems to represent *sive*. Hence, *sive—an* = *sive—sive*. (But for *an* compare 246, d, Rem. 1.)

Ex.—**Abrumpi dissimulationem Silius, sive fatali vecordia an imminentium periculorum remedium ipsa pericula ratus, urgebat**, Tac., An., XI, 26.

235. By *num—aut num* two Simple Questions are stated, the former of which is *extended* or *substituted* by the latter. Again, by *num—aut* a Simple Question is stated, the sphere of which is *extended*, or the Simple Question is *corrected* by *aut*. Of like character is the Simple Question expressed by *-ne—aut*. The Particle *aut* is not Interrogative: it simply *enlarges* or *extends* the sphere of a Simple Question or *introduces* a substitute of it by which the Question is presented in a different form. In any Question of which *num* forms an element the particle seems to maintain its negative force and to indicate a negative answer.

Ex.—**Num igitur me fefellit, aut num diutius sui potuit dissimilis esse?** Cic., Phil., II, 36, 92. **Num quid in his rebus est, quod...? aut num nescio qui, etc.?** Cic., Div., II, 3, 9. **Num igitur eorum frequentia Stoici de sententia deterrentur, aut num plerisque in rebus sequitur eorum auctoritatem multitudo?** Cic., Div., II, 39, 81. **Num quid simile populus Romanus audierat aut viderat?** Cic., Am., XII, 41. **Num potui Ciliciam Aetoliam aut Macedoniam reddere?** Cic., Att., V, 20, 1. **Dasne aut manere animos post mortem aut morte ipsa interire?** Cic., Tusc., I, 11, 25. **Potestne bonum cuiquam malo esse aut potest quisquam in abundantia bonorum ipse esse non bonus?** Cic., Parad.,

1, 1, 7. **Quid est horum in voluptate? Melioremne efficit aut laudabiliorem virum?** Cic., Parad., I, 3, 15.

**236.** The Sequence *num—an* presents an Interrogative sentence, of which the former (*num*) member has always a negative sense; the latter (*an*), an affirmative (= *or rather not?*). Cf. *An potius?*

Ex.—**Num hunc, num Homerum, num Platonem coegit in suis studiis obmutescere senectus? an in omnibus his studiorum agitatio vitae aequalis fuit?** Cic., Sen., VII, 23. (Cf. Cic., Tusc., I, 17, 40; Tac., Ann., IV, 35.)

### The Direct Disjunctive Question = Whether or Not?

**237.** This form of the Disjunctive Question is employed when the alternative involves the *negation* of the former member or when the *opposite* of the action in the former member of a Disjunctive Question is presented as an alternative in the latter. The form of the Question is thus exhibited:

*Whether—or not?*

*Utrum—annon (necne)?*

*-ne—annon (necne)?*

REM. 1. The form *annon* is rather the usage in the Direct form of the Question, and with it the Predicate *may be repeated*; the form *necne* is rather the usage in the Indirect form of the Question, with *omission* of the Predicate.

REM. 2. The Interrogative *utrum*, *-ne*, may be omitted in either the Direct or Indirect Question. The tendency is to the omission of the Predicate with *annon* and *necne* in both the Direct and Indirect Question.

Ex.—**Utrum animos sociorum ab re publica removebas et abalienabas annon?** Cic., Her., IV, 15, 22. **Mittin me an non mittis?** Pl., M. G., 449. **Estne hic an non est?** Pl., Trin., 1071. **Properas an non abire ab his regionibus?** Pl., Trin., 983. **Utrum vultis patri Flacco licuisse necne?** Cic., Flac., XXV, 59. **Sunt haec tua verba necne?** Cic., Tusc., III, 18, 41. (*Necne* in Direct Questions not frequent in Cicero.)

**238.** The origin and sense of *utrum* (= *whether? which of the two?*) forbids its use in a Simple Question. When it is apparently thus used in a Direct or Indirect Question, *annon* or *necne* is to be supplied.

Ex.—**Utrum est in clarissimis civibus is (sc. an non), quem iudicatum hic duxit Hermippus?** Cic., Flac., XIX, 45. **Utrum igitur hactenus satis est?** Cic., Top., IV, 25.

**239.** From a Question of several members is to be distinguished several Simple Questions repeated.

Ex.—*Quod aut a quibus auxilium petam? Deorumne immortalium populine Romani, vestramne qui summam potestatem habetis hoc tempore fidem implorem?* Cic., Rosc. Am., XI, 29.

### The Indirect or Dependent Question.

**240.** The Indirect Question is one dependent upon a verb of asking, etc., a word, or phrase. In other words, it is a Direct Question stated as dependent upon a verb, word, or phrase. Hence it is called a *Dependent* or *Indirect* Question. In its simplest form the Dependent or Indirect Question presents, by the speaker or writer, the matter of the Question as one conceived *by him*, imputed to the *party addressed*, and as one to be decided by the answer of the latter. It is a matter true or false, real or unreal, subject to the decision of the party to whom the Question is addressed. The proper conception, then, of the Dependent or Indirect Question seems to be *Oratio Obliqua*. Hence the Mood employed is the Subjunctive. This view seems to be confirmed by such Questions as the following:

*Sed finem fore quem dicam nescio*, Plant., Trin., 2 (= *Sed qui finis futurus sit nescio*).

*Sed utrum strictimne attonsurum dicam esse an per pectinem*, Pl., Capt., 268 (= *Sed utrum strictimne attonsurus sit dicam an per pectinem*).

The resolution of the Indirect Question by *Oratio Obliqua* is not affected by the fact that the subject of the leading and dependent Predicates is the same.

The Tense in the Indirect Question is decided by the regular principles governing the Sequence of Tenses.

### The Indirect or Dependent Simple Question.

**241.** The Interrogative Words employed in this form of the Question are the same as those employed in the Independent or Direct Question.

Ex.—*Nec, quis primum dictator creatus sit, satis constat*, Liv., II, 18, 4. *Quaeris ex me quid acciderit de iudicio*, Cic., Att., I, 16, 1. *Te puto videre qui sit totius negotii status*, Cic., Att., VII, 11, 5. *Pergratum mihi feceris, si sic de amicitia disputaris quid sentias, qualem existimes, quae praecepta des*, Cic., Am., IV, 16. *Considerandum est, quanta fides ei sit habenda*, Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 2. *Hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, quinam anteferre-*

tur, Caes., B. G., V, 44. **Tu, quid agas, ubi sis, cuius modi istae res sint, fac me certiores,** Cic., Att., I, 14, 7. **Tentabo equonam modo possim voluntate eius nullam reipublicae partem attingere,** Cic., Att., IX, 9, 1. **Sciscitabantur cuinam eam ferrent,** Liv., I, 9, 12. **En tibi, ut sentias quam vile corpus sit iis, qui, etc.,** Liv., II, 12, 13. **Credo te audisse ut me circumsteterint,** Cic., Att., I, 16, 4. **Quid agas et ut te oblectes scire cupio,** Cic., Q. Fr., II, 3, 7. **Considerabo quem ad modum fieri posse videatur,** Cic., Att., XI, 5, 2. **Videamus et Gnaeus quid agat et illius rationes quorsum fuant,** Cic., Att., X, 10, 4. **Non intellego cur (gratiam) reconciliatam esse dicas quae numquam imminuta est,** Cic., Fam., V, 2, 5. **Ab utro factae (insidiae) sint incertum, est,** Cic., Mil., XI, 31. **Valerius Horatiusque consules sortiti, uter aedem dedicaret,** Liv., II, 8, 6. **Num quid aliud in iudicium venit nisi uter utri insidias fecerit?** Cic., Mil., XII, 31. Etc.

(a) The particle *nonne* occurs quite frequently in the Indirect Simple Question. Here *nonne* retains its characteristic force.

Ex.—**Quaero nonne tibi faciendum idem sit quod, etc.,** Cic., Fin., III, 4, 13. **Sed ex te quaero nonne intellegas eo maiorem vim esse naturae, etc.,** Cic., Fin., II, 18, 58. **Cum esset ex eo quaesitum Archelaum nonne beatum putaret: Haud scio, inquit,** Cic., Tusc., V, 12, 34. (Cf. Cic., Ac., II, 24, 76; Cic., Phil., XII, 7, 15; Cic., Or., LXIII, 214. In all these examples after *quaerere*.)

(b) In the Indirect Simple Question *num*, like *-ne*, is simply Interrogative = *whether*, and does not, *as a rule*, imply a negative answer; but, when a negative answer is clearly implied, *num* may properly be used.

Ex.—**Ipse velim iudices satisne videatur his rebus tuus adventus mutue respondisse,** Cic., Fam., V, 2, 4. **Quaesivit ex eo placeretne ei iudices a praetore legi,** Cic., Att., I, 14, 1. **Id possetne fieri, consuluit,** Cic., Div., I, 17, 32. **Labienus interrogavit, solerentne veterani milites fugere,** Caes., B. Civ., III, 71. **Quaerit ex me, num consuessem Siculis locum gladiatoribus dare,** Cic., Att., II, 1, 5. **Videbis num quid fuerit in iis, quod, etc.,** Cic., Att., VII, 9, 2. **Vos fortasse id in hoc loco quaeretis, num quas ex hisce rebus pecunias ceperit,** Cic., Verr., III, 16, 40.

REM. The Dependent Question is sometimes to be explained by ellipsis of a verb or word upon which it depends, but which is suggested by the context.

Ex.—**Dixit ipsorum esse consilium velintne prius quam finitimi sentiant milites... deducere,** Caes., B. G., V, 27 (here *num sentiant* depends upon a verb (*statuere*) to be supplied, rather than upon *consilium*).

(c) The repetition of the Simple Indirect Question is to be noted.

Ex.—**Quaero abs te circumsessusne sis Lampsaci, coeperitne domum in qua deversabare, illa multitudo incendere, voluerintne legatum populi Romani comburere Lampsaceni,** Cic., Verr., I, 31, 78.

**242.** The use of *an* in the sense of *num* or *-ne* to introduce a Simple Indirect Question belongs to *poetry* and *late* Latin and is not to be imitated. Of course *num* or *-ne* is used in late Latin also.

Ex.—*Consultus Caesar an sepeliri sineret, non erubuit permittere*, Tac., An., VI, 23. *Interrogatur an suam quoque genitalem horam comperisset*, Tac., An., VI, 21. *Interrogatus ab eo an essent alii digniores, respondit*, Suet., Aug., 54. *Disputatur an ipse sibi manus attulerit*, Sen., Brev. Vit., VI, 2. *Altera legatione an mitigari possint experiamur*, Curt., X, 27. *Porum percontatur an vera essent, quae dicerentur*, Curt., IX, 7. *Petis ut libellos tuos in secessu legam, examinem an editione sint digni*, Plin., Min., III, 15, 1. *Te quaerere ex iis iubebat an ferrum habuissent*, Liv., XL, 14, 7. *Quis scit an adiciant hodiernae crastina summae tempora di superi?* Hor., Od., IV, 7, 17.

REM. We may not *insist*, perhaps, upon the exclusion of *an* in Cicero.

Ex.—*Quaesivi an misisset*, Cic., Verr., IV, 12, 27.

**243.** Both the Deliberative Question (Question of Embarrassment) and the Rhetorical Question, Mood Subjunctive (*vid.* 230), occur as Indirect (Dependent) Questions; as, *Quid faciam?* = what may (can) I do = what am I to do? Dependent, *Rogo quid faciam* = I ask what I may (can) do = I ask what I am to do (Deliberative Question). *Quis hoc credat?* = who may (can) believe this? = no one may (can) believe this. Dependent, *Rogo quis hoc credat* = I ask who may (can) believe this = I ask who is to believe this (Rhetorical Question).

Ex.—*Quid dicam nescio*, Cic., Att., II, 16, 4 (= I know not what to do). *Nec quid faciam sciam*, Cic., Att., II, 19, 1. *Est stultum me praecipere quid agatis aut quo modo*, Cic., Att., III, 15, 6. *De Ciceronibus nostris dubito quid agam*, Cic., Att., VII, 13, 3. *Ego quo nomine appellem nescio*, Cic., Verr., IV, 1, 1. *Nec ego reperio quid scribam*, Cic., Att., X, 8, 9. *Neque quo signa ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, provident*, Caes., B. G., VI, 37. *Repulsi Galli, quid agant, consulunt*, Caes., B. G., VII, 82. *Sed consules non praeceperant mihi, quid facerem*, Cic., Fam., X, 31, 4 (*quid facerem* = what I was to do). *Quonam modo gererem me adversus Caesarem, usus tuo consilio sum*, Cic., Fam., XI, 27, 5. *Neque (iis) constabat quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent*, Caes., B. G., III, 14. *Consilia inibat quemadmodum ab Gergovia discederet ac rursus omnem exercitum contraheret*, Caes., B. G., VII, 43. *Agitatum in senatu, quanti (frumentum) plebi daretur*, Liv., II, 34, 7. *Miserunt Delphos consultum quidnam facerent*, Nep., Them., 2. *Ignoro quomodo et animo meo et tempori paream*, Curt., VI, 37.

**244.** The Particle *si* occurs in an Interrogative sense (= whether) in the Indirect or Dependent Simple Question. This Interrogative



force of *si* obtains with a relation of *trying, striving, waiting* (= *trying to see* (to find out), *striving to see* (to find out), *waiting to see* (to find out)), *expressed* in the leading sentence by a verb; as *expectare, experiri, conari, tentare, operam dare*, etc., or *implied* when *si* occurs with the Subjunctive of *posse* or *velle*. The Subjunctive of *posse* or *velle* occurs also when the leading verb (*expectare*, etc.) is *expressed*.

Ex.—*Hanc (vallem) uterque si adversariorum copiae transire conarentur expectabat*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 34. *Hanc (paludem) si nostri transirent hostes expectabant*, Caes., B. G., II, 9. *Expectabat suis postulatis responsa, si qua hominum aequitate res ad otium deduci posset*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 5. *Caesar expectabat, si forte hostes in suum locum elicere posset*, Caes., B. G., V, 50. *Helvetii si perrumpere (flumen) possent, conati*, etc., Caes., B. G., I, 8. *Nunc agamus experiamurque, si possimus cornua commovere disputationis tuae*, Cic., Div., II, 10, 26. *Si qua nocturna transitio proditiove fieri posset, tentant castra*, Liv., II, 25, 1. *Primo tentata res est, si disicere rem possent*, Liv., II, 35, 4. *Si possem impetrare ut abiret, operam dedi*, Pl., M. G., 1207. *Circumfunduntur ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem aditum reperire possent*, Caes., B. G., VI, 37 (= *to try (to see) whether*, etc.). *Dixerunt se ex castris exisse, si quid frumenti in agris reperire possent*, Caes., B. G., VII, 20. *Reservatis Aeduis atque Arvernīs, si per eos civitates recipere posset*, etc., Caes., B. G., VII, 89. *L. Minucium Basilum praemittit, si quid . . . proficere possit*, Caes., B. G., VI, 29. *Pars aggerem vallumque conscendit, si ex superiore loco tueri se posset*, Liv., X, 5, 10. (Cf. Liv., XXVII, 14, 6; XLII, 62, 4.) *Caesar exercitum in aciem produxit, si Pompeius proelio decertare vellet*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 56 (= *to try to see, whether (if)*, etc.).

REM. Compare in this connection the Simple Question repeated, *sive—sive*.

Ex.—*Cum ad hostem proficisci constituisset, sive eum ex paludibus silvisque elicere, sive obsidione premere posset, legati ad eum veniunt oratum, ut*, etc., Caes., B. G., VII, 32 (= *to try to see whether, or whether or*).

(a) The Particle *si*, apart from the preceding, is occasionally used as a pure *Interrogative* in a Simple Indirect Question. After *mirari, mirum esse*, *si* introduces a phrase as subject or object. The particle *si* in this connection is not identical with the preceding.

Ex.—*Accepto poculo nihil aliud locutum ferunt quam quaesisse, si incolumis Lycortas equitesque evasissent*, Liv., XXXIX, 50, 7. *Cum praetor victurum respondisset, quaesivit iterum, si cum Romanis militare liceret*, Liv., XL, 49, 6. *Diebus ac noctibus cogito, si qua me quoque possim tollere humo*, Plin. Min., V, 8, 3. *Chlamydes Lucullus si posset centum scaenae praebere rogatus*, etc., Hor., Ep., I, 6, 41. *Miror illa superbia et importunitate si quemquam amicum habere potuit*, Cic., Am., XV, 54. *Minime mirum, si ista res adhuc nostra lingua illustrata non est*, Cic., De Or., II, 13, 55. (With this *si* compare *quod*.)

245. With the verbs *nescio* and *haud scio* and verbs of a negative import, as *dubito*, *delibero*, *dubium est*, *haesito*, *cunctor*, *incertum est*, *an* is used with the Subjunctive when there is an inclination to the affirmative of the matter in suspense (introduced by *an*), or to state a modest assent to it. In this case *haud scio an*, *nescio an*, may be rendered by *perhaps*, *it may be that* (= *I do not know whether . . . not*), *I am inclined to think that*; also, *dubito an*, etc., may be rendered *perhaps* (= *I doubt whether . . . not*), expressing a modest affirmative. In such cases assent to the negative (= perhaps not = *I do not know whether*; perhaps not = *I doubt whether*), is expressed by *nescio an*, *haud scio an*, *dubito an*, etc., with the pure negatives *non*, *nemo*, *nullus*, *numquam*, *nusquam*; as, *Nescio an non*, *dubito an non*, with the Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Extremum illud est, quod tu nescio an primum putes*, Cic., Fam., IX, 18, 3 (= *which you perhaps think the first*). *Nescio an tibi gratius acciderit*, Cic., Fam., VI, 7, 3. *Nescio an Dareus ideo tam multa amiserit, quia nimiae opes magnae iacturae locum faciunt*, Curt., IV, 43. *Nescio an enumeranti mihi quaedam ipsarum rerum multitudo subduxerit*, Curt., VI, 7. *Nescio an pauperes eo laetiores sint, quod, etc.*, Sen., Helv., XII, 1. *Quorum licentiae nisi Carneades restitisset, haud scio an soli iam philosophi ludicarentur*, Cic., Div., II, 72, 150. *Aristoteles, quem, excepto Platone, haud scio an recte dixerim principem philosophorum*, Cic., Fin., V, 3, 7. *De accessione dubito an Apronio ipsi data sit merces operae atque impudentiae*, Cic., Verr., III, 32, 76. *Dubitavit adhibitis principibus viris, an obtemperaret*, Suet., Claud., 35. *Dubitavit an privatis spectaculis operam inter scenicos daret*, Suet., Ner., 21. *Dubitavit an eas (litteras) pro contione recitaret*, Curt., IV, 40. *Dicitur acinace stricto Dareus dubitasse an fugae dedecus honesta morte vitaret*, Curt., IV, 59. *Dubitavit an solveret pontem*, Curt., IV, 61. *Non quidem irascor, sed dubito tamen an irasci oporteat*, Sen., Ira, III, 38, 1. *Diu cunctatus (est) an se contineret et quae apud senatum proposuerat agere differret*, Suet., Caes., 81. *Diu cunctatus (est) an sibi successorem destinaret*, Suet., Cal., 4. *Diu cunctatus (est) an omnes igni ferroque absumeret*, Suet., Cl., 21. *Haesitavit an potius in laevum detorqueret agmen*, Curt., IV, 48. *Quod si pacem bona fide peteret, deliberarem an darem*, Curt., IV, 44.

*With negative :*

*Quod cum omnibus est faciendum, tum haud scio an nemini potius quam tibi (faciendum sit)*, Cic., Off., III, 2, 6. *Contigit tibi quod haud scio an nemini (contigerit)*, Cic., Fam., IX, 14, 6. *Quod nescio an nulli umquam nostro acciderit imperatori*, Cic., Fam., IX, 9, 2. *Huic uni contigit, quod nescio an nulli (contigerit)*, Nep., Tim., 1. *Nescio an nemo ad dandam veniam difficilior sit, quam, etc.*, Sen., De Clem., VI, 2. *Ego haud scio an nec cardiacis hoc tribuendum sit nec phreneticis*, Cic., Div., I, 38, 81.

REM. The Predicate, as may be seen from some of the preceding examples, is often omitted with *nescio an*, etc.

(a) While *nescio an*, *haud scio an*, with the Subjunctive greatly tend to the *modest affirmation* of the matter introduced by *an*, there is no doubt that this is sometimes *modestly denied*, and *not affirmed*. This negative sense of the *an* dependency is rare in Cicero, but quite frequent in late Latin, as in the younger Pliny. In addition to this, *an*, with the Subjunctive after *nescio* (*haud scio*), etc., occurs, according to the usage in late Latin, as a Simple Indirect Question, to express simple doubt. Here *Nescio an* = *nescio num* = *I know not whether*, tending neither to the affirmative nor negative.

Ex.—*Qua (amicitia) quidem haud scio an, excepta sapientia, quicquam melius sit homini a dis immortalibus datum*, Cic., Am., VI, 20 (= I do not know whether any thing, etc. = perhaps nothing. We look for *haud scio an nihil*, etc.). *Mea quidem sententia haud scio an ulla (senectus) beatior possit esse*, (Cic., Sen., XVI, 56 (we look for *haud scio an nulla*, etc.)). *Nescio an ullum iucundius tempus exegerim quam quo nuper apud Spurinnam fui*, Plin. Min., III, 1, 1. Cf. *Doleo feminam maximam eripi oculis civitatis, nescio an aliquid simile visuris*, Plin. Min., VII, 19, 4. (Cf. Plin. Min., IV, 2, 1; VI, 21, 3.) *Dixit, donec ad supplicium, nescio an innocens (fuerit), certe tamquam innocens, ducta est*, Plin. Min., IV, 11, 8. (Cf. IV, 15, 6.) Here simple uncertainty is expressed in the *nescio an* clauses. (Cf., also, IV, 15, 6; I, 14, 9.)

(b) The phrases *nescio an*, etc., seem to have been conceived, in some cases, at least, as a simple *adverbial qualification* = *perhaps*, and hence, when associated with the Pluperfect Subjunctive Active, as the Apodosis of an Unreal Past Conditional, which, as a *dependency*, is regularly expressed by *-rus fuerit*, the Pluperfect Subjunctive is retained. Again, when the phrase with *an* is treated as a dependency upon *nescio*, etc., and hence as a regular Indirect Question, the Pluperfect Subjunctive is expressed by *-rus fuerit*. Whether, then, the Pluperfect Subjunctive Active as the Apodosis of an Unreal Past Conditional is *retained* or *changed* into *-rus fuerit* depends upon the choice of the speaker or writer, since both forms, the Pluperfect Subjunctive and its representative form *-rus fuerit*, express a *modest affirmative*.

Ex.—*C. Gracchus, diutius si vixisset, eloquentia quidem nescio an habuisset parem neminem*, Cic., Brut., XXXIII, 126. *Quod si extemplo rem fortunae commisisset haud scio an magno detrimento certamen staturum fuerit*, Liv., III, 60, 2. *Quod si mecum ante viri strenui, aediles, consilium habuissent, nescio an suasurus fuerim, omittere potius adulta vitia, quam hoc assequi*, etc., Tac., Ann., III, 53.

(c) A real doubt after the preceding verbs and phrases (*haud scio*, *dubito*, etc.) is expressed regularly by the Indirect Question with *num*,

-ne, and often, in late Latin, by *an* with the Subjunctive (as has been stated).

Ex.—*Dubito num idem tibi suadere quod mihi debeam*, Plin. Min., VI, 27, 2. *Invenio apud quosdam auctores dubitasse exercitus, num vel ipsi in medium consulerent, vel senatui permetterent legere imperatorem*, Tac., H., II, 37. *Idque haud scio mirandumne sit*, etc., Caes., B. G., V, 54.

246. The frequent use of *nescio an* (*haud scio an*) as a modest affirmative resulted in the occasional use of the phrase as an *adverb*, without influence upon the construction, and hence with the Indicative. Here *nescio an* (*haud scio an*) = *fortasse*. This pure adverbial force of the phrase, while not frequent, must in some cases be accepted; in others, the explanation may be an elliptical dependency from the standpoint of a Predicate suggested by the context.

(a) *Nescio an* (*haud scio an*) as a pure *adverb* = *perhaps*.

Ex.—*Quorum quidem testem non medioorem, sed haud scio an gravissimum, Regulum nolite vituperare*, Cic., Off., III, 29, 105. *Vir sapientissimus atque haud scio an omnium praestantissimus peccatum suum confiteri maluit*, Cic., N. D., II, 4, 11.

(b) *Nescio an* (*haud scio an*) with Predicate to be supplied from context.

Ex.—*Ingens eo die res ac nescio an maxima illo bello gesta est*, Liv., XXIII, 16, 16 (the explanation may be = *Ingens eo die res gesta est ac nescio an maxima gesta sit*). *Is mortuus est C. Sacerdote praetore, nescio an antequam Verres praeturam petere coepit*, Cic., Verr., I, 47, 125 (= *Nescio an mortuus sit antequam . . . coepit*). How far *nescio* (*haud scio*) *an* is to be taken as an *adverb*, or is to be explained from standpoint of a verb to be supplied, cannot be certainly stated.

(c) The particle *an*—not introducing the second member of a Disjunctive Question—is sometimes employed to express uncertainty between two statements, but with inclination to the latter (= *or perhaps*). This use of *an* may be explained from the standpoint of an implied *nescio* or *incertum est* with the omission of the Predicate with *an*.

Ex.—*Themistocles, cum ei Simonides an quis alius artem memoriae polliceretur: oblivionis, inquit, malle, Cic., Fin., II, 32, 104* (here *an quis* may be explained from the conception of *haud scio* (*incertum est*) *an quis alius . . . polliceretur*, etc.) *Caesar de se nihil addidit, metu an ratus conscientiam facti satis esse*, Tac., Ann., II, 22 (= *Caesar de se nihil addidit metu, haud scio an (scil. nihil addiderit) ratus conscientiam facti satis esse*). There is no substantial reason for explaining *incertum utrum metu an ratus*, as in this case the Predicate is to be supplied = *utrum metu nihil addiderit an ratus*, etc.

(d) The adverbial force of *incertum an* (= *fortasse*) is best explained by *ellipsis* of Predicate with *an*.

Ex.—*Quos statim acciverat, incertum an et ante gnaros*, Tac., Ann., XIV, 7 (= *incertum est an et ante gnaros acciverit*).

REM. It seems that *an* alone occurs in an adverbial sense with the Indicative. In this sense it is the retained element of the phrase *incertum an* = *perhaps*.

Ex.—*Longum utriusque silentium, ne irriti dissuaderent, an eo descensum credebant, ut*, etc., Tac., Ann., XIV, 7 (this *an* is not the equivalent of *aut.*).

### The Indirect Disjunctive Question.

247. In the Indirect Disjunctive Double Question the same Interrogative particles occur as in the Direct Question.

<i>Whether—or.</i> <i>Utrum—an,</i> <i>-ne—an,</i> <i>Utrum—anne,</i> <i>-ne—ne (rare).</i>	The Interrogative Particle in the first member may be omitted.	<i>Whether—or.</i> ———— <i>—an,</i> ———— <i>—an.</i> ———— <i>—anne,</i> ———— <i>—ne.</i>
---	--	--

Ex.—*Multum interest utrum laus imminuatur an salus deseratur*, Cic., Fam., I, 7, 8. *Iudicium tuum de me utrum mihi plus dignitatis an voluptatis sit allaturum, non facile dixerim*, Cic., Fam., X, 24, 1. *Magna res est utrum tibi Siculos publice privatimque amicos an inimicos existimari vells*, Cic., Verr., II, 64, 155. *Id eane de causa an perfidia adducti fecerint, non videtur pro certo esse ponendum*, Caes., B. G., VII, 5. *Nondum satis constitui molestiae plus an voluptatis attulerit mihi Trebatius noster*, Cic., Fam., XI, 27, 1. *Quaeris a me fugamne foedam an moram utiliore putem*, Cic., Att., IX, 10, 6. *Haud ambigam hicine fuerit Ascanius an maior quam hic*, Liv., I, 3, 2. *Quaerendum est utrum una species et longitudo sit earum anne plures*, Cic., Or., LXI, 206. (Dicit) *neque interesse ipsosne interficiant impedimentisne exuant, quibus amissis bellum geri non possit*, Caes., B. G., VII, 14. *Qui teneant, hominesne feraene, quaerere constituit*, Verg., Aen., 308. *Incertum quis tantam Rutulis laudem, casusne Deusne, attulerit*, Verg., Aen., XII, 321.

Interrogative Particle omitted in first member.

Ex.—*Deliberatur de Avarico in communi concilio incendi placeret an defendi*, Caes., B. G., VII, 15. *Quasi quicquam intersit, mures diem noctem aliquid rodentes scuta an cribra corroserint*, Cic., Div., II, 27, 59. *Admiror, non scripsisse te mihi manendo in provincia an ducendo exercitum in Italiam rei publicae magis satisfacere possim*, Cic., Fam., X, 31, 6. *Veri simile est sic etiam mentem moveri, ut non modo non internoscat, vera visa illa sint anne falsa*, Cic., Ac., II, 15, 48. *Quid interest divitias, opes, valetudinem bona dicas anne praeposita?* etc., Cic., Fin., IV, 9, 23.

REM. 1. In this connection when two relations, the *opposite* of each other, are expressed the Particle *-ne* seems to be the usage.

Ex.—*Aut hoc dicis, ut possit iudicari verum id falsumne sit, aut nihil dicis, Cic., Tusc., I, 7, 14. Quaeramus ab utroque quonam modo vitam agere possimus, si nihil interesse nostra putemus, valeamus aegrine simus, vacemus an cruciemur dolore, Cic., Fin., IV, 25, 69 (observe transition from -ne to an). Nunc fatemur, acuti hebetesne, valentes imbecilline simus non esse id in nobis, Cic., Fat., V, 9.*

REM. 2. The relation *whether not—or* is expressed regularly by *utrum (-ne) non—an*.

Ex.—*Multum refert, utrum aliquem non excludas an eligas, Sen., De Ben., IV, 28, 5.*

(a) The Disjunctive Question is repeated (in pairs) in the same sentence.

Ex.—*Atqui ille intuendus est, voluerit an inciderit, coactus sit an deceptus, odium secutus sit an praemium, sibi morem gesserit an manum alteri commodaverit, Sen., Ira, III, 12, 2. Prima pars naturam siderum scrutatur... solidumne sit coelum an ex subtili tenuique (materia) nexum, agatur an agat, et infra sese sidera habeat an in contextu sui fixa, Sen., N. Q., II, 1, 1. Nihil interest utrum me lapis unus elidat an monte toto premar, utrum super me domus unius onus veniat an totus caput meum terrarum orbis abscondat, Sen., N. Q., VI, 1, 9.*

(b) The *Disjunctive* or *Alternative* relation is continued by the repetition of *an*.

Ex.—*Iste praetor designatus—utrum admonitus an tentatus, an sine indice pervenerit ad hanc improbitatem nescio, Cic., Verr., I, 41, 105. Postulo, ut mihi respondeat qui sit iste Verrucius, mercator an negotiator an arator an pecuarius, Cic., Verr., II, 57, 188.*

(c) The Indirect Disjunctive Question may be Potential, in the sense of either the Deliberative or Rhetorical Question.

Ex.—*Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat utrum igni statim necaretur an in aliud tempus reservaretur, Caes., B. G., I, 53. Consultabat utrum Romam profisceretur, an Capuam teneret, an iret ad tres legiones Macedonicas, Cic., Att., XVI, 8, 2. Exspecto Thessalonicae acta Kal. Sext. ex quibus statuam in tuosne agros confugiam... an abeam Cyzicum, Cic., Att., III, 15, 6. Incerti, morando an veniendo plus periculi contraherent, Liv., II, 23, 14.*

(d) The Particle *an* repeated (*an—an*) is to be carefully noted. This is not the equivalent of *utrum* or *-ne* followed by *an*. It is the use of *an* in *separate* and *distinct simple Questions* of a *passionate*



**Tum utrum fundi facti sint an non quaerendum esse videtur**, Cic., Balb., VIII, 22. **Neque natus necne is fuerit id scio**, Pl., Trin., 850. **Nescio tu ex me hoc audieris an non**, Pl., M. G., 1265. **Tentabam spiraret an non**, Pl., M. G., 1336. **Impendam huic rei dies et utrum possit aliquid agi an non possit**, Sen., Ep., III, 4, 3. **Videndum, utrum doceant isti virtutem an non**, Sen., Ep., XIII, 3, 4. (**Quaestio est**) **utrum corpus sit an non sit**, Sen., Ep., XIII, 3, 34. **Di immortales ita vos potentes huius consilli fecerunt, ut, sit Latium deinde an non sit, in vestra manu posuerint**, Liv., VIII, 13, 14. **Nihil interest valeam ipse necne, si tu non valebis**, Suet., Tib., 21.

(a) *The Question may be Deliberative.*

Ex.—**Nondum enim statuerat, conservaret eum, necne**, Nep., Eum., 11.

(b) To be observed—not identical with the preceding—is the *regular Disjunctive Question* with *an non* where *non* defines the Predicate in the alternative, which is not the same with the Predicate in the first member.

Ex.—**Multum interest utrum aliquis eripiat an non det**, Sen., Ira., III, 28, 4.

(c) The Predicate in the Question is omitted, but easily supplied from the context.

Ex.—**Merito necne, neutram in partem decernere audeamus**, Plin. Min., Paneg., 91 (= **Merito factum sit necne**, etc.).

**250.** To be observed is the dependency by *sive (seu)*—*sive (seu)* (= *whether—or*) upon a negative relation of *doubt* or *uncertainty*; perhaps a rarely occurring case of *sive* Interrogative.

Ex.—**Dubii seu vivere credant, sive extrema pati**, Verg., Aen., I, 218.

**251.** The *Pronoun utrum* (= *which of the two*) points to the members of an Indirect Disjunctive question. The first member of the latter may be introduced by *-ne*, or it is used without an Interrogative Particle.

Ex.—**Venit in contentionem utrum sit probabilius deosne immortales concurrere, etc. . . an natura fieri, ut, etc.**, Cic., Div., II, 63, 129. **Dixisse dicitur aequum esse illos cogitare utrum esset Agrigentinis utilius, suisne servire an populo Romano obtemperare**, Cic., Verr., IV, 33, 73. **Dice utrum Spemne an Salutem te salutem**, Pl., Ps., 709. **Sed utrum strictimne attonsurum dicam esse an per pectinem nescio**, Pl., Capt., 267. (Cf. Pl., Trin., 306.)

**Is cum interrogaretur, utrum pluris, patrem matremne faceret: Matrem, inquit, Nep., Iph., 3. Nescio utrum sibi peius optaverit, ut odio esset an ut timori**, Sen., Ira., I, 20, 4. (In these two examples *utrum* is distinctly the Relative.)

Cf. **Intellegi non poterat uter eum plus diligeret Cicero an Hortensius**, Nep., Att., 5. **Hoc me quaerere, uter maior aetate fuerit, Homerus an Hesiodus, non**



**pertinet ad rem**, Sen., Ep., XIII, 3, 6. **Non facile dixerim utris magis irascar, illis, qui, etc., an illis, qui, etc.**, Sen., Ep., XIII, 3, 46. (In these examples **uter** and **utri** illustrate the force of **utrum** in the preceding.)

**252.** To *utrum* the particle *-ne* is sometimes added in poetry and late Latin. By the addition of *-ne* to *utrum* the Question is more emphatically presented. Here *utrum* is not the same as in the preceding. It introduces regularly the first member of the Indirect Question.

Ex.—**Agitamus, utrumne divitiis homines an sint virtute beati**, Hor., Sat., II, 6, 73. **Consilium habitum est, utrumne ultra progrediendum foret, an ibi opperiendi essent novi milites**, Curt., III, 17. **Dubitaverat utrumne circa Mesopotamiam subsisteret an interiora regni sui peteret**, Curt., IV, 35. **Refert utrumne (ira) verberanda et agenda retro sit an cedere ei debeamus**, Sen., Ira, III, 1, 1. **Inquirit utrumne tu tantum rebus secundis uti dextere scias an et adversas possis viriliter ferre**, Sen., Ad Pol., De Cons., VI, 1. **Quis in tam obscura et involuta veritate divinat, utrumne fratri tuo mors inviderit an consuluerit?** Sen., Ad Pol., De Cons., IX, 9. **Utrumne stultius sit, nescio, mortalitatis legem ignorare an impudentius recusare**, Sen., Ad Pol., De Cons., XI, 4. **Qui cunctati utrumne in Campo trucidarent an in Sacra via adorirentur**, Suet., Caes., 80.

(a) The Particle *utrum* does not occur in a simple Indirect Question. When this is apparently the case, *neque* is to be supplied.

Ex.—**In hoc dicere audebis, utrum de te aratores, utrum denique Siculi universi bene existiment, ad rem id non pertinere?** Cic., Verr., II, 69, 167.

**253.** The Indirect Question is one of the Subjunctive dependencies in which the forms *-rus sit* and *-rus esset* are used to express actions *future* from the *Present* and from a *given Past*, respectively, if the *time (future)* of the actions is not clear from the context; as, *Quid facies?* *Rogo quid facturus sis.* *Rogari quid facturus esses.*

Ex.—**De reliquo neque hercule quid agam nec quid acturus sim scio**, Cic., Att., VII, 10, 1. **Quod (bellum) nondum vident homines quale futurum sit**, Cic., Att., IX, 10, 2. **Sciri quid defensuri essemus (non) erat periculosum**, Cic., Fam., X, 8, 4. **Erat summa expectatio quonam esset eius cupiditas eruptura**, Cic., Verr., II, 30, 74. **Dixit hoc nihil interesse, utrum C. Caesar senatui dicto audiens futurus non esset an pararet, qui senatum decernere non pateretur**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 8, 9. **Agitur non qua condicione victuri, sed victurine simus an cum supplicio ignominiaque perituri**, Cic., Phil., IV, 5, 12.

#### The Interrogative and Relative Sentences Compared.

**254.** 1. In some cases a *Relative* is liable to be confounded with an *Interrogative* sentence. Outside of the Nominative and Accusative singular of the Interrogative (*quis?* *quid?*) the Interrogative and

Relative are identical in form. The Interrogative, however, differs essentially in syntax and sense from the Relative sentence. In the Interrogative sentence the Interrogative word is the subject or object of the dependent verb in the Subjunctive; and again the Interrogative word with its verb is the object of the leading verb (of asking, etc.). In the Relative sentence the Relative is the subject or object of the dependent Predicate in the Indicative, while the object of the leading verb (of asking, etc.), is the antecedent, either expressed or to be supplied, of the Relative.

Ex.—*Intellego quid dicas* (here *quid* is object of *dicas*, while *quid dicas* together is the object of *intellego* = I understand what you say = I understand your statement).

*Intellego quod dicis* = I understand that which you say = *Intellego (id) quod dicis*.

*Scio quantum scis* = *Scio (tantum) quantum scis* = I know as much as you know.

*Scio quantum scias* = I know how much you know = I know the extent of your knowledge.

*Scio quid agatur*. Compare *Scio quod agitur*.

Ex.—*Nosti quae sequuntur*, Cic., Tusc., IV, 36, 77 (= *ea quae sequuntur*). *Sed ego quae mente agitavi, omnes iam antea divorsi audistis*, Sal., Cat., 20 (= *ea audistis quae... agitavi*). *Aperit quae ex fratre compererat*, Curt., VI, 26 (= *ea quae compererat*). *Vos, quae sentiebam, ne reticerem, impulistis*, Curt., VI, 39.

(a) In case the antecedent is expressed and there occurs the incorporation of the antecedent and Relative by the attraction of the antecedent into the clause and case of the Relative, then the sentence assumes fully the form of an Interrogative sentence. The Indicative in Latin is the evidence that such a sentence is Relative. The reason for the Indicative will appear in the unattracted form of the sentence. In such cases of attraction the Relative clause often stands first.

Ex.—*Neque nostri longius, quam quem ad finem loca aperta pertinebant, cedentes insequi audebant*, Caes., B. G., II, 19 (= *Neque nostri cedentes insequi audebant longius quam ad finem ad quem, etc.*). *Caesar qui milites adversariorum in castra per tempus colloqui venerant, summa diligentia conquiri iubet*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 77 (= *Caesar milites... conquiri iubet, qui venerant*). *At quo utuntur homines acuti argumento ad probandum operae pretium est considerare*, Cic., Fin., IV, 24, 67 (= *At pretium est considerare argumentum, quo... utuntur*).

(b) Such sentences as the following present cases of attraction, which deserve special attention.

Ex.—*Nihil est admirabilius quam quo modo ille mortem filii tulit*, Cic., Sen., IV, 12 (= *quam modus quo...tulit*). *Oculi, quemadmodum animo affecti sumus, loquuntur*, Cic., Leg., I, 9, 27 (= *Oculi loquuntur modum ad quem affecti sumus*). *Quaeramus ubi maleficium et est et inveniri potest*, Cic., Rosc. Am., XXX, 83 (= *Quaeramus maleficium ibi, ubi est, etc., or, better, Quaeramus maleficium quo in loco est, etc.; quaeramus locum in quo (ubi) maleficium est, etc.*). *Qua de causa et quorum causa ille hoc promulgavit, ostendi*, Cic., Leg. Agr., III, 4, 15 (= *ostendi causam et quorum causa (= propter quos) ille hoc promulgavit*). Cf. *Non audiisti quo pacto leno nos hinc auferre voluit?* Pl., Rud., 355.

REM. In the translation it is often not easy to distinguish the Interrogative from the Relative sentence. In some cases the texts vary between the Indirect Question (the Subjunctive) and the Relative (Indicative).

#### Mood in Indirect Questions.

255. In the classical Latin the Mood is the Subjunctive in the Indirect Question. It must be admitted, however, that in early Latin an Indirect Question which, in standard Latin requires the Subjunctive, is expressed in the Indicative. In such cases the dependency may be conceived as presenting a *simple indefinite substantive idea* as the object of the leading verb.

Ex.—*Scio iam quid vis dicere*, Pl., M. G., 36. *Nescio quae te scelera suscitant*, Pl., M. G., 330. *Set scin quid est quod te uolo?* Pl., Rud., 1216. *Mosce hunc quis est*, Pl., Pseud., 262. *Scin quid ego te volebam?* Ter., Eun., 338. *Sed scin quid nos volumus?* Pl., Pseud., 276. *Sed scin, quid uolo potius sodes facias?* Ter., Hec., 753.

(a) The preceding is not identical with the Question whose dependency is *suspended* by the punctuation (colon or semicolon) and which thus occurs as a *Direct Question*. This is common in all periods of the language.

Ex.—*Dic: num te illa terrent?* Cic., Tusc., I, 5, 10. *Dic: ne esse quidem se sciet, ne moveri quidem se?* Cic., Tusc., I, 22, 53. *Unde scio; hic mihi an ille ventus bellum invehet?* Sen., N. Q., V, 18, 12. *Dico vanissime; quis te festinare iubet?* Iuv., XIV, 211. *Rogitabant: hicine Achilles est?* Pl., M. G., 61. *Paucis uerbis te uolo: unde exit haec?* Pl., M. G., 375. *Dic; quid censes?* Liv., I, 32, 11.

256. The expressions, *nescio quis (qui)*, *nescio quid (quod)*, *nescio qui*, *nescio quae*, *nescio quod*, and derivatives of *quis*, as *nescio ubi*, *nescio quo*, etc., after which the Subjunctive in a dependent Question is looked for, are used as *Indefinite Pronouns* (*aliquis, aliqui*) and *indefinite Pronominal adverbs* (*alicubi, aliquo*, etc.), and, as such, in

all cases, especially in the Nominative and Accusative, exert no influence on the Mood; they are construed with the Indicative. *Nescio quis*, etc., may even govern a genitive or be defined by an adjective, as, *Nescio quis loquitur*—*Some one speaks* (*there speaks one* (*some one*), *I know not who*).

Ex.—*Nescio quis incedit ornatu thalassico*, Pl., M. G., 1281. *Nescio quis inspectavit uostrum familiarium per nostrum impluvium*, etc., Pl., M. G., 174. *Cur ergo hic nescio qui thesaurum solus invenit?* Cic., Div., II, 65, 134. *Muliercula hanc nescio quae huc ad me detulit*, Pl., Rud., 482. *Homerici Ajax nescio quid hoc modo nuntiat*, Cic., Div., II, 39, 82. *Praeclarum nescio quid adepti sunt*, Cic., Tusc., I, 21, 49. *Bibulus in Amano nescio quid cohortularum amisit*, Cic., Fam., VIII, 6, 4. *Illud nescio quid non fortuitum, sed divinum videbatur*, Cic., Fam., VII, 5, 2. *Si in oppidum nescio quod Pompeius rei frumentariae causa venisset*, etc., Cic., Fam., VI, 17, 2. *Is asseclae suo Pergameno tetrarchiam nescio cui dedit*, Cic., Div., II, 37, 79. *Huic terrae filio nescio cui committere epistolam tantis de rebus non audeo*, Cic., Att., I, 13, 4. (*Talis*) *qualem fuisse Athenis Timonem nescio quem accepimus*, Cic., Am., XXIII, 87. *Mulierculae, nescio quem metuentes*, Pl., Rud., 561. *Hoc genus sermonum plus nescio quo pacto videtur habere gravitatis*, Cic., Am., I, 4. *Canorum illud in voce splendet etiam nescio quo pacto in senectute*, Cic., Sen., IX, 28. *Nescio quo fato sum servatus*, Cic., Fam., X, 30, 3. *Serpit nescio quo modo per omnium vitas amicitia*, Cic., Am., XXIII, 87. *Obsurdescimus nescio quo modo*, Cic., Am., XXIII, 88. *Nescio ubi hic prope adest quem expeto uidere*, Pl., M. G., 1258. *Nescio quo casu non respondit*, Cic., Verr., II, 40, 98. *Inertissimos homines nescio qua singulari segnitia praeditos videmus*, etc., Cic., Fin., V, 20, 56. *Nescio quando in Latmo obdormivit*, Cic., Tusc., I, 38, 92. *Fit nescio qui, ut quasi coram adesse videare*, Cic., Fam., XV, 16, 1. *Qui fit ut non videas cor subito non potuisse nescio quo avolare?* Cic., Div., II, 16, 37. So with the Potential Subjunctive: *Quamquam hoc nescio quo modo dicatur*, Cic., Tusc., II, 20, 47.

The preceding examples show the extensive use of *nescio quis*, *nescio qui*, etc., as *Indefinite Pronouns*.

257. The phrases, *mirum* (*plurimum*, *immane*, *immensum*, *incredibile*, *nimum*) *quantum* (less frequently *quam*), as, *mirum quantum*, etc.; also, *mire* (*sane*, *admodum*, and *oppido*) *quam*, as, *mire quam*, etc., occur as *adverbs* without influence on the Mood (Indicative) when defining a verb. In the absence of a verb they are used, particularly those with *quam*, as *sane quam*, to strengthen an adjective or second adverb: as, *Id mirum quantum profuit ad concordiam civitatis*, (Liv., II, 1, 11). Here *mirum quantum* = wonderfully (arising from *Id profuit, mirum est quantum profuerit*).

Ex.—*Id mirum quantum profuit ad concordiam civitatis*, Liv., II, 1, 11 (= *Id profuit, mirum est quantum profuerit*). *Flavianus exercitus, immane*

quantum animo exitium Valentis ut finem belli, accepit, Tac., H., III, 62. Civilis lapsu equi prostratus immane quantum suis pavoris et hostibus alacritatis indidit. Tac., H., IV, 34 (observe Genitives, pavoris et alacritatis). Sales in dicendo nimium (mirum) quantum valent, Cic., Or., XXVI, 87. Incredibile quantum ea res Philippo gloriae dedit, Iust., VIII, 2, 5. Vino et lucernis Medus acinaces immane quantum discrepat, Hor., Od., I, 27, 5. Nimium quantum audacter, Gell., XVI, 6, 9 (observe nimium quantum defining audacter). Mire quam illius loci non modo usus, sed etiam cogitatio delectat, Cic., Att., I, 11, 3. Sane quam incutit multis magnum metum, Cic., Fam., VIII, 4, 2. Sane quam sum gavisus, Cic., Fam., XI, 13, 4. Suos valde quam paucos habet, Cic., Fam., XI, 13, 3. Nimis quam formido, Pl., Most., 495. Nimis quam cupio, Pl., Capt., 102. Voce admodum quam suavi versus cecinit, Gell., XIX, 9, 10. Oppido quam breve intervallum videtur, Liv., XXXVI, 25, 3 (oppido=perquam). Perquam breviter perstrinxi atque attigi, Cic., De Or., II, 49, 201.

(a) It follows, of course, that a regular Indirect Question may follow.

Ex.—Mirum quantum illi viro nuntianti haec fides fuerit, Liv., I, 16, 8. Mirum quam inter diversi generis...dites pauperes...omnia cohibita sint, Tac., Ann., XV, 54. Cf. Admirabile est quantum inter omnes unus excellat, Cic., Or., II, 6.

#### Peculiarities in the Construction of Interrogative Sentences.

258. 1. The subject of a Dependent Question, in order to present it more prominently, is attracted into the leading clause and becomes the object of the leading Predicate.

Ex.—Nosti Marcellum quam tardus et parum efficax sit, Cic., Fam., VIII, 10, 3. Quis tuum patrem antea, quis esset, quam cuius gener esset, audivit? Cic., Reg. Deiot., XI, 30. Timens sciscitari uter Porsena esset, ne ignorando regem semet ipse aperiret, quis esset, Liv., II, 12, 7. Scin tu illum quo genere gnatus sit? Pl., Trin., 373. Set istuc negoti cupio scire quid siet, Pl., Trin., 88. Scio equidem te animatus ut sis, Pl., Trin., 698. Remittam nuntium qui me quid rerum hic agitem patri meo...illuc perferat, Pl., Capt., 377. Scis me in quibus sim gaudiis, Ter., Eun., 1035.

REM. 1. The subject is presented yet more prominently by *de* and the *Ablative*.

Ex.—De Pollione Asinio puto te perspicere quid facturus sit, Cic., Fam., XI, 9, 1. De duobus, qui fuerint, minus convenit, Liv., II, 33, 2.

REM. 2. The statement of the subject of the dependent clause as the object of the leading clause, in order to give the subject greater prominence, occurs outside of the *Interrogative sentence*, particularly with *facere*.

Ex.—Longum est illum me expectare dum exeat, Ter., And., 977. Illum

ut uiuat optant, Ter., Ad., 874. *Necessitate me, mala ut flam, facis*, Pl., Pers., 381. *Si eam facio ut exire hinc uideas domo*, Pl., M. G., 341. *Nec potui propitiam Uenerem facere ut esset mihi*, Pl., Poen., II, 5.

2. A final sentence of Design (*ut*) is presented *interrogatively* as *quid ut?* = *in order that what?* *quis ut?* = *in order that who?*

Ex.—*Veniamus in forum. Sessum it praetor. Quid ut ludicetur?* Cic., N. D., III, 30, 74. *Homines, inquit, emisti, coëgist, parasti. Quid ut faceret?* Cic., Sest., XXXIX, 84. *Vos tamen cum Gallis condemnare malitis? Quid ut secuti esse videamini?* Cic., Font., XIV, 32 (22). *III oppugnatum venturi erant? Quem? Fabium. Quo consilio? Ut occiderent. Quam ob causam? quid ut proficerent?* Cic., Tull., XXIV, 55. *Num P. Decius aliquid de voluptatibus suis cogitabat? Ubi ut eam caperet aut quando?* Cic., Fin., II, 19, 61. *Incipite mirari cur pauci vestram suscipiant causam. Quid ut a vobis sperent?* Liv., IV, 49, 15. *Ut quibus aliis sacris contaminatam omni scelere mentem expiarem?* Liv., XL, 13, 4 (cf. Liv., XLIV, 39, 5). *Quid ex ea re ut caperes commodi?* Ter., Eun., 573. Cf. *Gripe, animum aduerte ac tace. Utine istic prius dicat?* Pl., Rud., 1063.

3. In colloquial language the enclitic *-ne* is often attached to the Relative which is thus presented *interrogatively*. The sentence is *elliptical*. The Demonstrative (*is*) to which the Relative refers, and to which the Interrogative *-ne* properly belongs, as well as the Predicate, readily gathered from the context, are *omitted*, and the Interrogative *-ne* is attracted into the Relative clause and appended to the Relative. This form of statement finds its parallel in English. Thus: *My friend has arrived. (Reply) Whom I met in Rome?—He whom I met in Rome?—Has he arrived whom I met in Rome? or, Do you mean him whom I met in Rome?—Isne peruenit quem Romae conueni?* or, *Eumne dicis quem Romae conueni? = Quemne Romae conueni?* This form of statement has not been observed in prose.

Ex.—*Quemne ego seruavi in campis Corcodiloniis?* Pl., M. G., 13 (= *isne (est) or Eumne dicis quem ego seruavi, etc.?*) *Quaen' cupit?* Pl., M. G., 965 (= *Eamne dicis quae cupit?*). *Quaene subducta erat tuto in terram?* Plaut., Most., 724 (= *Eamne (navem) dicis quae, etc.?*). *Quemne ego excepi in mari?* Pl., Rud., 1019. *Quodne ego inueni in mari?* Pl., Rud., 1230. *Quaene uigilans somniat?* Pl., Amph., 690. *Quodne ego discripsi porro illis quibus debui?* Ter., Phorm., 923.

REM. The Mood in the Relative clause is decided by the meaning of the Relative which, in a causal or concessive sense, requires the Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Quaene electae e mari simus ambae?* Pl., Rud., 272 (here Relative is causal). *Quine auderem tecum in navem ascendere?* Pl., Rud., 538. *Quin examen superadducas?* Pl., Truc., 528. The resolution of the following is

more complicated: **O seri studiorum, quine putetis?** Hor., Sat., I, 10, 21 (= **Nonne vos seri studiorum estis, qui putetis?**).

(a) So also may be explained *ut* (*uti*) with *-ne* (= *ut* (*uti*) *-ne*) = *utine*, likewise *si* with *-ne* = *sin*, in Questions.

Ex.—**Utine istic prius dicat?** Pl., Rud., 1063 (= **Eone taceam ut istic prius dicat?**). **At ego maledicentiorum quam te noui neminem.** **Sin, saluti quod tibi esse censeo, id consuadeo?** Pl., Merc., 143 (which may be thus resolved: **Maledicentemne me dicis, si...id consuadeo?** or, perhaps, better: **Tumne maledicentem me dicis, si...consuadeo?**)

4. A participle is associated with the Subject of the Predicate in a Question both Direct and Indirect. Here the logical relation of the participle to the Predicate is that of *ground* or *cause*. The participle is best translated by a *finite verb* connected with the verb stated by *that*; as, **Quid petens venisti?** = *what are you after (what do you want) that you have come?*

Ex.—**Quam utilitatem aut quem fructum petentes cupimus illa, quae occulta nobis sunt?** Cic., Fin., III, 11, 37. **Percunctatum quid quaerentes in agrum Laurentinum exissent,** Liv., I, 1, 7. **Tum legatis Tullus dicendi potestatem, quid petentes venerint, dedit,** Liv., I, 22, 6. **In vulgus militum elatum est, qua arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset,** Caes., B. G., I, 46. Cf. **Quid enim spectans deus ipse diceret Marcellum eum in mari esse peritum?** (*Potential Question*) Cic., Fat., XIV, 33.

REM. The Ablative Absolute rarely occurs in this Interrogative sentence.

Ex.—**Tu vero quibus rebus gestis, quo hoste superato, contionem donandi causa advocare ausus es?** Cic., Verr., III, 80, 185. **Verba facit, quibus iuvantibus quibusque ministris ea egerit, quamquam intellegat populus Romanus, tamen,** etc., Sal., Ing., 33.

5. To be observed is the association, without a connective, of two or more Questions with a common Predicate. The Questions are either *Direct* or *Indirect*.

Ex.—**Quem si interficere voluissent, quantae quotiens occasiones, quam praeclarae fuerunt?** Cic., Mil., XIV, 38. **Qui, si mortem tum obisset, in amplissimis fortune occidisset, is propagatione vitae quot, quantas, quam incredibiles hausit calamitates?** Cic., Tusc., I, 35, 86. **Considera, C. Piso, quis quem fraudasse dicatur,** Cic., Rose. Com., VII, 21. **Tanti errores implicant (scriptores) ut qui consules secundum quos non digerere possis,** Liv., II, 21, 4. **Inter se agitabant uter ad utrum bellum dux idoneus magis esset,** Liv., X, 14, 2. **Iam e memoria excessit quotiens in obsidentes quam inimice eruperimus?** Liv., XXVI, 13, 6. **Oratio fuit commemorantium, ex quantis opibus quo recidissent Carthaginiensium res,** Liv., XXX, 42, 18.

**REM.** It should be remembered that such a succession of Questions *generally* states Questions with emphasis and feeling. In the absence of these a connective may unite them.

**Ex.**—*Iam e memoria excessit quo tempore et in qua fortuna a populo Romano defecerimus?* Liv., XXV, 13, 5. *Quid quoque pacto agi placeat, occulte inter se constituunt,* Caes., B. G., VII, 83.

6. To be carefully noted is the Accusative with the Infinitive in a Question with *quis, quid*, etc., in connection with a verb of saying or thinking; as,

*Quid te fecisse dicis?* = what do you say that you have done?

*Quid mihi faciendum (esse) putas?* = what do you think I have to do?

**Ex.**—*Quaeris, quid putem futurum (esse),* Cic., Fam., VIII, 7, 4. *Velim consideres quid faciendum (esse) putes,* Cic., Att., VII, 13, 3. *Deliberatio omnis haec est, quid mihi agendum (esse) putes,* etc., Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 1. *Ex me quaeris, quid de istis municipiis et agris futurum (esse) putem,* Cic., Fam., IX, 17, 1.

7. The Infinitive alone and the Accusative with the Infinitive occur as Questions which are often exclamatory in character. The Question occurs both *without* and *with* Interrogative *-ne* attached to the emphatic word of the Question. The Question presents the complement or the inner object of *thought, conception, or statement*. The Infinitive or Accusative with the Infinitive is here to be regularly interpreted as after a verb of *thinking or saying* when expressed. A verb of saying or thinking is to be supplied. The Question is peculiar in this, that while it presents the object of *thought or statement*, it is implied that the speaker regards its matter with *astonishment, disinclination, dissatisfaction, aversion, regret*. The matter of the Question may or may not be a fact as decided by the context. With this *Infinitive or Accusative with the Infinitive* compare the simple *Accusative* as the complement of a verb of *thinking or saying* not expressed.

**Ex.**—*Probari autem?* Cic., Att., VI, 2, 1 (= to be approved? = do I say approved? The idea or thought of its being approved!). *Puero tradere?* Cic., Att., VI, 6, 3. *Haec vero non videre!* Cic., Fin., II, 10, 29. *Hoc non videre, id ad gubernatoris artem nihil pertinere!* Cic., Fin., IV, 27, 76. *Me Getarum et Armeniorum copias ad eam (urbem) adducere?* Cic., Att., IX, 10, 3. *Pontii Neapolitanum a matre tyrannoctoni possideri?* Cic., Att., XIV, 21, 3. *Tantum laborem capere ob talem filium?* Ter., And., 870. *Te, mea Terentia, sic vexari!* Cic., Fam., XIV, 2, 2. *Tulliolam nostram tantos percipere luctus!* Cic., Fam., XIV, 1, 1. *Adeo impotenti esse animo!* Ter., And., 879. *Perii, numquamne etiam me illam uidisse?* Ter., Eun., 360. *Non me hanc rem patri indicasse!* Ter., Ad., 630. *Hocine tam audax facinus facere esse ausum!* Ter.,



Eun., 644. *Meamne in uia hospitam ludificatam (esse)?* Pl., M. G., 490. *Tan- tamne rem tam neglegenter agere!* Ter., And., 252. *Adeone hominem esse infelicem quemquam, ut ego sum!* Ter., And., 245. *Alios in facinore gloriari!* Cic., Fam., XI, 28, 3. Cf. *Unde enim miserae civitati tot Harmodios?* Sen., Tranq. An., V, 2. *Quo innumerabiles libros et bibliothecas, quarum, etc.,* Sen., Tranq. An., IX, 4. *Abs te tam diu nihil litterarum?* Cic., Att., I, 2, 1. *Hancine uitam! hoscine mores! hanc dementia!* Ter., Ad., 758.

(a) Of like character with the preceding is the Question in the Subjunctive with *ut* alone or with *-ne* (*-ne ut*). The Question is stated negatively by *ut non*, also by *-ne ut non*. The Subjunctive here is *consecutive*. By the Question is implied the *disinclination* of the *speaker* or *writer* to accept, allow, or credit the matter of the Question as a Result. The Subjunctive may be conceived and interpreted from the standpoint of *Fieri posse putas ut?* *Fierine potest ut?* negative *ut non*. This Question is not identical with the Question of strong emotion or passion (230, 2, Rem. 1, etc.).

Ex.—*ludicio ut arator decumanum persequatur?* Cic., Verr., III, 10, 26. *Te ut ulla res frangat? tu ut umquam te corrigas? tu ut ullam fugam meditare? tu ut exsiliu cogites?* Cic., Cat., I, 9, 22. Cf. *Brutos ut non ames, Antonios ames? Egone ut te interpellem?* Cic., Tusc., II, 18, 42 (= *Fierine potest ut ego te interpellem?*). *Hocine ut ego nomine appellem eversores huius imperii?* Cic., Sest., VII, 17. *Illine ut impune discordias serentes concitent finitima bella?* Liv., IV, 2, 12. *Victamne ut quisquam victrici patriae praeferret?* Liv., V, 24, 10. *Egone ut quod ad me allatum esse alienum sciam celem?* Pl., Rud., 1244. *Egone ut cauere nequeam?* Pl., Pseud., 516. *Ut ego nunc adulescenti thesaurum indicem indomito?* Pl., Trin., 750. *Impuratus me ille ut etiam inrideat?* Ter., Ph., 669. *Tibi ego ut credam, furcifer?* Ter., And., 618. *Egone illam ut non amem?* Pl., Truc., 438.

### Answers to Questions.

#### 259. 1. *Affirmative.*

(a) As the object of a Question is, regularly, to ascertain the existence or non-existence, the reality or unreality, of the subject or object, or of the action of the Predicate—in other words, to ascertain the exact relation of the action to the subject or object—and, as this is made clear by the answer, the Affirmative answer is made by the repetition of the Predicate of the Question, or of a Predicate closely allied to it in sense, when the action of the Predicate is the matter of inquiry. The answer is often strengthened by terms of assurance or corroboration, as *sane*, *vero*, etc. The pronoun and person of the Tense in the Question are changed to suit the transfer to the answer.

Ex.—Rex interrogavit: *Estisne vos legati a populo Collatino? Sumus. Estne populus Collatinus in sua potestate? Est. Deditisne vos populumque Collatinum in populi Romani dicionem? Dedimus, Liv., I, 38, 2. Sponden tu istut? Spondeo, Pl., Capt., 898. Non tu iuratus mihi 's? Iuratus sum, Pl., Rud., 1373. Ain tu tandem? Aio, Pl., Trin., 987. Laudas, qui eros fallunt? In loco ego uero laudo, Ter., Heaut., 538. Dasne manere animos post mortem? Do vero, Cic., Tusc., I, 11, 25. Vin tibi condicionem luculentam ferre me? Sane volo, Pl., Rud., 1407. Dasne hoc nobis, deorum immortalium vi naturam omnem regi? Do sane, Cic., Leg., I, 7, 21. Tun 'es qui, etc.? Ego is sum, Pl., Rud., 1055.*

(b) If in the Question any other word than the Predicate is the matter of inquiry, or the emphatic word of the Question, the Affirmative answer is made by the repetition of this word. The word in the Question is changed to suit the transfer to the answer.

Ex.—*Ablit Clitipho. Solus? Solus, Ter., Heaut., 904. Bacchis consecutast ilico. Sola? Sola, Ter., Heaut., 906. Nempe hic tuus est? Meus est, Pl., Rud., 1057. Meumne gnatum (uidisti)? Tuum gnatum et genium meum, Pl., Capt., 879. Bonan fide tu mi istaec uerba dixisti? Bona, Pl., Capt., 890. Satin habes? Satis, Pl., Capt., 446. Haecinest? Istaec est, Pl., Rud., 1144. Ergo ipsusne's? Ipsissimus, Pl., Trin., 988. Virtutes narro. Meas? Tuas, Ter., Ad., 536.*

(c) An Affirmative answer may be made by the verbs *censeo, opino (opinor)*, and by *scilicet*, which in this office retain their characteristic meaning.

Ex.—*Quid, patri etiam gratulabor quom illam inuenit? Censeo, Pl., Rud., 1270. Et popularis est? Opino, Pl., Rud., 1268. Et mihi nupturast? Suspicio, Pl., Rud., 1268. Sanum tu credis esse? Equidem arbitror, Ter., Ad., 748. Ecquid est quod [Id] mea referat? Scilicet, Pl., Rud., 949. Et ducenda indotast? Scilicet, Ter., Ad., 729.*

(d) An Affirmative answer may be made by a word or a phrase either alone or sometimes associated with a verb as its modifier, as *sane, sane quidem, etiam, ita (ita est), verum, vero, ita enim vero, certe, certo, admodum.*

Ex.—*Novi tibi quidnam scribam? quid? Etiam, Cic., Att., I, 13, 6. Numquid uis? Etiam: ut actutum aduenias, Pl., Amph., 540. Estne, ut fertur, forma? Sane, Ter., Eun., 361. Sed visne sermoni reliquo demus operam sedentes? Sane quidem, Cic., Leg., II, 1, 1. Militem tu aspexisti? Ita, Pl., M. G., 1262. (Ait) nempe ergo in somnis illum ad se uenisse? Ita, Pl., Most., 481. Nempe apud test? Ita est, Pl., Trin., 196. (Is uenit) uirginem ut secum auchat? Sic est, Ter., Ad., 655. Facies? Verum, Ter., Heaut., 1013. Sed tu orationes nobis veteres explicabis? Vero, inquam, Cic., Brut., LXXXVII, 300. Cur non intro eo in nostram domum? Quid, domum uostram? Ita enim uero, Pl., Amph., 406. Negas? Nego hercle uero, Pl., M. G., 830. Estne*

**hic an non est? Is est. Certe is est, is est profecto**, Pl., Trin., 1072. **Liberum ego te iussi abire? Certo**, Pl., Menaech., 1038. **Meamne ille amicam leno ui de ara deripere Ueneris uoluit? Admodum**, Pl., Rud., 840. **Nempe tu hanc dicis, quam, etc.? Admodum**, Pl., Rud., 1080.

(e) An affirmative answer is occasionally introduced by *nimirum*, *quippe*, or *nempe*. These particles are *corroborative* in sense and introduce in an answer, a matter that is *obvious, self-evident* and one that *need not excite surprise*. The transition from this sense to that of *irony* is easy.

Ex.—**Uter melior dicetur orator? Nimirum qui homo quoque melior**, Quint., XII, 1, 9. **Quos ego orno? Nempe eos, qui ipsi sunt ornamenta rei publicae**, Cic., Phil., XI, 14, 36. **Quem hunc appellas, Zeno? Beatum, inquit. Etiam beatissimum? Quippe, inquit**, Cic., Fin., V, 28, 84. (Cf. Cic., Div., I, 17, 30, *nempe*.)

## 2. Negative.

(a) The Negative answer is made by *non* alone or with the repetition of the *emphatic word* of the Question, generally the *Predicate*. Here, as in the Affirmative answer, the true relation of the Predicate to the subject or object, as presented in the Question, is determined.

Ex.—**Dic mihi, non clamas? non insanis? Non**, Ter., Ad., 727. **Ceterum placet tibi factum? Non**, Ter., Ad., 737. **Mihi non liceat meas ancillas Ueneris de ara abducere? Non licet**, Pl., Rud., 724. **Prompsisti tu illi uinum? Non prompsi**, Pl., M. G., 829. **C est principium nominis. Callias? Non est. Callipus? Non est**, Pl., Trin., 916.

(b) By negative words and phrases alone, as *nihil*, *minime*, or by words which strengthen the negative, as *non vero*, *minime vero*, *non hercle vero*, etc.

Ex.—**Numquid molestum mihi erit? Nihil, si caueris**, Pl., Rud., 832. **Adibon? Minime**, Pl., M. G., 1242. **An tu haec non credis? Minime vero**, Cic., Tusc., I, 6, 10. **Quid enim? Africanus indigens mei? Minime hercle**, Cic., Am., IX, 30. **Sapientem esse me dico? Minime**, Sen., Ad Helv., V, 2.

(c) By *censeo* and similar verbs with negative *non*.

Ex.—**Etiamne adueniens complectar eius patrem? Non censeo**, Pl., Rud., 1277. **Quid, matrem? Non censeo**, Pl., Rud., 1278.

(d) Sometimes the negative in the answer reproduces the negative *implied* and *anticipated* in the Question.

Ex.—**Num quisnam est vestrum, qui tribum non habeat? Certe nemo**, Cic., Phil., VI, 5, 12. **Numquis est hic alius praeter me atque te? Nemost**, Pl., Trin., 70.

**260.** The office of the particle *immo* in Answers is to be carefully noted. In this connection its office is *twofold*. In the first place it *assents* to the matter of the Question or statement, and again *assents* to it with an *addition* or *enhancement*—*aye—aye more*. In the second place, it *dissents* from the matter of the Question, and again *dissents* from it with a *correction*, and in some cases with an *addition*—*nay—nay but—nay more*. In the former office *immo* is often associated with a particle of confirmation, as *certe, vero, etiam*; in the latter with *vero*.

1. *Immo assents* to the matter of a Question.

Ex.—*Probus homost, ut praedicare te audio. Immo sic scias*, Pl., Pseud., 749. *At etiam maledicis? Immo, saluos quando quidem aduenis, di me perdest si*, etc., Pl., Trin., 991. *Non igitur patria praestat omnibus officiis? Immo vero*, Cic., Off., III, 23, 90. *Credin? Immo certe*, Ter., Eun., 812.

(a) *Immo assents* to the matter of a Question with an *addition* or *enhancement*.

Ex.—*Hic vivit? immo vero etiam in senatum venit*, Cic., Cat., I, 1, 2. *Causa igitur non bona est? Immo optima*, Cic., Att., IX, 7, 4. *Tenaxne pater est eius? Immo edepol pertinax*, Pl., Capt., 289. *Quid, hoc intellextin? Immo callide*, Ter., And., 201. *Sed ferendus tibi in hoc meus error. Ferendus? Immo vero etiam iuvandus*, Cic., Att., XII, 43, 1.

2. *Immo dissents* from the matter of a Question and usually with a *correction* or *explanation*.

Ex.—*Ego te videre noluerim? Immo vero me a te videri nolui*, Cic., Q. Frat., I, 3, 1. *Sine dubio errasse nos confitendum est. At semel? at una in re? Immo omnia, quo diligentius cogitata, eo facta sunt imprudentius*, Cic., Att., X, 12, 4. *Di immortales, ubi loci sunt spes meae? Immo edepol meae*, Pl., Rud., 1161. *Hicine Achilles est? Immo eius frater est*, Pl., M. G., 61. *Istuc times quod ille operam amico suo dat? Immo quod amicae*, Ter., Heaut., 911. *Propere curre ad Pamphilum. Quid eo? Dic me orare ut ueniat. Ad te? Immo ad Philumenam*, Ter., Hec., 809. *Quid? hoc Aetnenses soli dicunt? Immo etiam Centuripini qui*, etc., Cic., Verr., III, 45, 108. *Erravit aut potius insanivit Apronius? Immo tum insanisset, si*, etc., Cic., Verr., III, 48, 113.

REM. 1. The particle *immo* may be strengthened or enforced by other particles than those above mentioned, as *edepol, hercle, potius*, but these are readily expressed in translating.

REM. 2. The particle *immo* is not restricted to *Answers*, but its offices are the same in other connections—that is, it *assents* to a preceding *statement* and with an *enhancement*; it *dissents* from it with a *correction* or *explanation*.

**261.** The particle *nam* (*enim*) often introduces the *ground, explana-*

tion or verification of a preceding statement. After a *Question nam* (*enim*) introduces the ground or explanation of an affirmative or negative answer implied in or to be gathered from the Question.

**Ex.**—*Nos hunc Heracliensem, multis civitatibus expetitur, de nostra civitate eiciemus? Nam si quis minorem gloriae fructum putat ex Graecis versibus percipi quam ex Latinis, vehementer errat, Cic., Arch., X, 23 (here nam, etc., = nay—for, etc.). Vos autem incerta victoria Caesarem secuti diiudicata iam belli fortuna victum (Pompeium) sequamini? Desertos enim se ac proditos a vobis dicunt, Caes., B. Civ., II, 32 (= aye—for, etc.). Numquid hic Lysimachus felicitate quadam dentibus leonis elapsus ob hoc, cum ipse regnaret, mitior fuit? Nam Telesphorum Rhodium amicum suum undique decurtatum in cavea velut novum animal aliquod diu pavit, Sen., Ira, III, 17, 3 (= nay—for, etc.). Cf. Quid mirum, si, etc.? Vides enim, etc., Sen., N. Q., II, 22, 3.*

## The Final Clause of Design or Purpose.

**262.** 1. The Mood in the Final Clause of Design or Purpose is the *optative Subjunctive*. An action presented in the *optative Subjunctive* is an action *wished for*, and hence an action *Designed* or *Purposed*. The particle *ut* is *Relative* in its origin, and, in connection with the *optative Subjunctive*, may be rendered, *by which, whereby*. The translation, *in order to, in order that, to*, is simply an offspring of the office of the particle *ut* in connecting the action *wished for* or *designed* with the leading Predicate and its Subject. In the sentence *Edimus ut vivamus*—*we eat in order to live*, the action *living* is stated in the *optative Subjunctive* as one *wished for*, and hence *designed*—*we wish to live, we design to live, wherefore (ut) we eat*. If the dependent Subjunctive action be considered from the standpoint of the *leading Predicate* and its *Subject* the sense is essentially the same—*we eat whereby (ut) to live*—*in order (thereby) to live*.

2. It is clear that the *logical* relation of the action of the dependent Subjunctive to the leading action is *causal*: *We desire to live wherefore—on that account—for that reason—(ut) we eat*. Our eating is procured by our *wish (desire) to live*. Hence our *wish* or *desire* to live is the *ground* of our *eating*. According to this analysis, it is to be observed that the action in the dependent Subjunctive (*optative*) is the *antecedent* and *primary* conception upon which *follows* the action of the *leading Predicate*.

3. The difference between a Final Clause of Design and of Result is to be carefully observed. The former in its pure form implies a rational, conscious agent, or one conceived as such, working to a given

end—to carry out a given purpose. In the Clause of Result the dependent Subjunctive action is a simple evolution from the leading action with no conscious agency on the part of the Subject to bring it about. While the *translation* of the Final Clause of Design may be identical with that of Result, yet, if there be present the working of an intelligent, conscious agent directed to a given end, the dependent Subjunctive is the Final Subjunctive of Design, not of Result.

*Edimus ut vivamus* = we eat to live = we eat *in order to* live.

*Edimus ut vivamus* = we eat to live = we eat *so as to* live, *so that* we shall live.

The latter is a *Result translation*, and yet, as the aim and purpose of the subject is obvious, it is the Subjunctive of *Design*, not of *Result*. Again,

*Filius ita se gerit ut patri suo honori sit* = the son so demeans himself as to honor his father.

This is a *Result* sentence, as it is not clear that the son, in his demeanor, has the *honoring of his father in view*, but his conduct is such that honor to his father follows, while not specifically intended or had in view. In order to express Purpose in this sentence the agent (*filius*) must act and be represented as acting *with reference* to the end—namely, to honor his father. Hence, the son demeans himself *so* (=as he is demeaning himself) *as to be* (=in order to be) an honor to his father = the son thus demeans himself *in order to* be an honor to his father.

REM. From the preceding it may be gathered that a Final Clause (of Purpose) is separated from a Consecutive Clause (of Result) by a very narrow margin; that in some cases, by a change of conception, a Consecutive involves and may be interpreted as a Final relation.

**263.** The Final Clause of Design or Purpose is of two kinds:

(a) That in which the Design or Purpose is exhibited by the *particle ut*. In this office *ut* is translated, *in order that, in order to, to*.

(b) That in which the dependent clause is presented in the relation of the *inner object* or *complement* of the leading verb, which is a verb of *wishing* as such, or in a *modified* form. In this case the particle *ut* is translated *that* or *to*, not *in order that, in order to*.

**264.** The *pure* Final Clause of Design or Purpose, then, is expressed:

1. By *ut*=*in order that, in order to, to*, with the Subjunctive. The Tenses are the *Present* and *Imperfect* (*Future First* Tenses from the *Present* and *Past* respectively); more rarely the *Perfect* and *Pluperfect* (*Future Exactum* Tenses from the *Present* and *Past* respectively).

Ex.—Sed ut ad Zeuxim revertar, obstiti eius sermoni, Cic., Q. Frat., I, 2, 5. In duas partes sese distribuunt, alii ut praedae praesidio sint, alii ut venientibus resistent, Caes., B. Civ., I, 55. His rebus confectis, Caesar, ut reliquum tempus a labore intermitteretur, milites in proxima municipia deducit, Caes., B. Civ., I, 32. Ut explerentur legatorum iniuriae regisque caedes, foedus inter Romam Laviniumque urbes renovatum est, Liv., I, 14, 3. Tunc Mucius... Quando, inquit, est apud te virtuti honos, ut beneficio tuleris a me, quod minis nequisti: trecenti coniuravimus, etc., Liv., II, 12, 15 (ut tuleris=*in order that you shall have won from me, etc.* = *in order that you shall feel (confess) that you have won, etc.*). Haec non deflebitis, ne opera et oleum philologiae nostrae perierit, Cic., Att., II, 17, 1. Istic te videbo: si minus, persequar in Cumanum et ante te certiorum faciam, ut lavatio parata sit, Cic., Fam., IX, 5, 2 (here *parata sit* may be interpreted as *Consecutive* also). No clear case of Pluperfect has been observed.

REM. The repetition of *ut* in the same sentence is to be observed. The latter *ut* clause is subordinate to the former.

Ex.—In Hispaniam, ut adirent civitates, ut in societatem perlicerent aut averterent a Poenis, traiecerunt, Liv., XXI, 19, 6 (this repetition of *ut* is not to be confounded with the repetition of the particle in which the latter simply resumes and repeats the former. Cf. Liv., VIII, 6, 14).

(a) The relation of Purpose or Design is often distinctly indicated by a demonstrative word or phrase defined by *ut* Final with the Subjunctive, and which stands to it as its *exact definition* or *complement*. These words and phrases are: *Ideo, idcirco, eo, ad hoc, in hoc, ob hoc, ea mente, hoc (eo) animo, ob hanc causam, eo consilio, eo nomine*.

Ex.—Non ideo scripseram, ut dicerem, Plin. Min., III, 10, 1. Tunc ignoras ideo me fecisse quod feci, ut esset liberum vobis scribere, etc.? Plin. Min., IX, 19, 5. Haec idcirco ad te scripsi, ut existimes, etc., Cic., Fam., XV, 5, 3 (cf. Verr., I, 30, 77; Verr., IV, 4, 7). Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam, etc., Caes., B. G., IV, 2. Nos ad hoc fortes sumus, ut levia portemus? Sen., Ep., X, 2, 17. Veni ob hoc, ut experiar, Plin. Min., VI, 1, 2. Nos peccavimus, si Dareum ob hoc vicimus, ut servo eius traderemus imperium, Curt., VI, 9. Quos in hoc mihi videtur violare fortuna, ut sic generi humano prosint, Sen., Ad Marc., XV, 1. Hostes cuneatim constiterunt hoc animo, ut...acie instructa depugnarent, Caes., B. G., VII, 28. Sed pergo praeterita (commemorare) ob hanc causam, ut, si quid agatur, legem illam ne tangatis, Cic., Att., III, 15, 5. Is erit ob eam rem vobis carior, ut ceteri libentius...vestris cupiditatibus serviant? Cic., Verr., III, 4, 9. Ab eo digressus sum eo consilio, ut ab Athenis in Boeotiam irem, Cic.,

Fam., IV, 12, 1. **Ego eo nomine sum Dyrrhaeii hoc tempore, ut quid agatur audiam**, Cic., Fam., XIV, 3, 4. **Hoc eo** (*terminal*) **valebat, ut ingratis ad depugnandum omnes cogerentur**, Nep., Them., 4. Etc.

2. By the *Relative Pronoun*. Here the Relative refers to and reproduces a preceding *subject* or *object* as possessing the proper qualities for the realization of a Purpose or the attainment of an End. In this case the *qui=ut is*; *quae=ut ea*; *quod=ut id*; *quem=ut eum*, etc.; *quo=ut eo*, etc.; *quorum=ut eorum*; *quos=ut eos*, etc.; *quibus=ut iis*, etc.

Ex.—**Frumenti magnum numerum coegit, quod Massiliensibus mitteret**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 18 (*quod = ut id*, etc.). **Addiderunt falsum ab his equitum numerum deferri, quorum (= ut eorum) stipendium averterent**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 59. **Virgultis collectis, quibus (= ut iis) fossas Romanorum compleant, ad castra pergunt**, Caes., B. G., III, 18. **Relatis in publicum cornibus, quae (= ut ea) sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem**, Caes., B. G., VI, 28. **Iphicratem ab Atheniensibus ducem petivit, quem (= ut eum) praeficeret exeroitui conducticio**, Nep., Iph., 2. **Data tibi est pecunia, qua (= ut ea) frumentum emeret, quod (= ut id) Romam mitteres**, Cic., Verr., III, 87, 202.

(a) So, also, Relative Particles *ubi (= ut ibi)*; *quo (= ut eo)*; *unde (= ut inde)*.

Ex.—**Tum sibi non hanc, quam nunc male tuetur, sed M. Pisonis domum, ubi (= ut ibi) habitaret, legerat**, Cic., Phil., II, 25, 62. **Locum in foro destinant, quo (= ut eo = ut in eum) pretiosissima rerum suarum congererent**, Liv., XXVIII, 22, 6. **Themistocli Lampsacum (urbem) donarat, unde (= ut inde) vinum sumeret**, Nep. Them., 10. Cf. **Pontem fecit in Histro flumine, qua (= ut ea (via, parte)) copias traduceret**, Nep., Milt., 3.

REM. To be observed is the Ablative form *qui* (Relative) for all genders and numbers. It is frequent in early Latin.

Ex.—**Itidem mi aduenienti haec upupa, qui (= ut ea) me delectem, datast**, Pl., Capt., 1004. **Dedi ei meam gnatam, quicum (= ut cum ea) una aetatem exigat**, Pl., Trin., Prol., 15. **Paraui magnas machinas, qui (= ut iis) amantis una inter se facerem conuenas**, Pl., M. G., 139. **Pueris aut anates aut ootur-nices dantur, quicum (= ut cum iis) lusitent**, Pl., Capt., 1003.

(b) The Final Subjunctive of Purpose (Design) occurs with *quo (= ut eo)*. By *quo* a preceding clause is prominently presented as suited to the promotion or attainment of a Purpose (End) stated in the dependent (Subjunctive) clause.

Ex.—**Corrupsisse dicitur A. Cluentius iudicium pecunia, quo inimicum suum innocentem Statium Albiu condempnaret**, Cic., Clu., IV, 9. **Sublata erat celebritas virorum ac mulierum, quo (= ut eo (in order thereby)) lamentatio minueretur**, Cic., Leg., II, 26, 65. **Aut simulandi gratia, quo (= ut eo) regi formi-**



dinem adderet, aut cupidine caecus ob thesauros oppidi potiundi, vineas agere, aggerem iacere, etc., Sal., Iug., 37. Ceterum, quo (= ut eo) gravaret invidiam matris, feminas illustres, praefectura functos, sedibus patrii reddidit, ab Agrippina olim pulsos, Tac., Ann., XIV, 12. L. Sulla exercitum, quo sibi fidum faceret, luxuriose habuerat, Sal., Cat., 11.

(c) The use of *quo* (= *ut eo*) is especially frequent with a comparative in the *quo* (dependent) clause.

Ex.—*Honestum (est) occupare urbes civium, quo (= in order thereby) facilius sit aditus ad patriam?* Cic., Att., VII, 11, 1. *Quo facilius consilium dare possis, quid in utramque partem mihi in mentem veniat, explicabo brevi*, Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 1. *Sed noctu, quo tutius venire in castra possemus, legionem Martiam miserat Hirtius nobis*, Cic., Fam., X, 30, 1. *Quo facilius impetum Caesaris tardaret... portas obstruit*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 27. *Caesar eo die tabernacula statui passus non est, quo paratiores essent ad insequendum omnes*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 81. *Quo expeditiore re frumentaria uteretur, (oppidum) oppugnare instituit*, Caes., B. G., VII, 11. *Quare ad haec opera addendum Caesar putavit, quo minore numero militum munitiones defendi possent*, Caes., B. G., VII, 73.

REM. In a Final Clause of Purpose with a comparative the particle *ut* is not excluded. It occurs quite often instead of the more usual *quo*.

Ex.—*Quod tibi ut planius exponam, altius paulo rationem consiliorum meorum repetam necesse est*, Cic., Fam., I, 9, 4. *Equidem etiam in te saepe vidi et, ut ad leviora veniamus, in Aesopo tantum ardorem, etc.*, Cic., Div., I, 37, 80. *Atque, ut apertius hoc sit, exemplo licet vim rei, qualis et quanta sit, cognoscamus*, Cic., Inv., II, 57, 170. *Repente interdium vel nocte se subtrahebat augebatque iter, ut serius subsequentes defatigaret*, Suet., Caes., 65. *Ut levior labor iudicantibus foret, ad quattuor priores quintam decuriam addidit*, Suet., Cal., 16. *Ut certiolem indolem ostenderet, ex Augusti praescripto imperatorum se professus (est)*, Suet., Nero, 10. *Ille peltam pro parma fecit, ut ad motus concursusque essent leviores*, Nep., Iph., 1. *Aduritur dextera (pappilla), ut arcus facilius intendant*, Curt., VI, 19. *Quas (faces) accenderant barbari, ut tutior esset ipsis fuga*, Curt., VIII, 41. Etc.

The context alone distinguishes *ut* Final (with a comparative) from *ut* of Result.

265. The Basis of the Final Subjunctive of Purpose, as has been seen, is the idea of *wishing*. When this relation of *wishing* is expressed in the *leading Predicate*—that is, when the leading Predicate is a verb of *wishing*, as *such*, or in a *modified form*—the dependent Subjunctive with *ut* which follows is the *exact definition or complement* of the relation of *wishing* expressed in the leading Predicate. This Subjunctive may very properly be termed the *Complementary Final Subjunctive of Purpose*. As compared with the time of the leading

Predicate the dependent Subjunctive is *Subsequent* and *Future*. Translate the Complementary Final Subjunctive by *that* or *to*—not *in order that*, *in order to*. From what has been stated it follows that the Complementary Final Subjunctive of Purpose occurs with verbs *Voluntatis et Studii* (of *wishing* and *desiring*). In these classes of verbs are embraced not only verbs in which *wish* and *desire* are literally expressed, but in which the *idea* of wishing is involved. Such verbs are numerous in Latin, and hence the Complementary Final Subjunctive with *ut* obtains *extensively* in the language. The verbs *Voluntatis et Studii* may be thus classified:

1. Verbs to *wish*, to *desire*, etc., as *velle*, *cupere*, *studere*, *optare*, etc.

Ex.—*Volo ut mihi respondeas*, Cic., Vat., VI, 14. *Equidem vellem, uti pedes haberent, ut aliquando redires*, Cic., Fam., VII, 31, 2. *Quin etiam necesse erit cupere et optare, ut quam saepissime peccet amicus*, Cic., Am., XVI, 59. *Idem aiebat nihil malle Caesarem quam ut Pompeium assequeretur*, Cic., Att., VIII, 9, 4. *Caesar maxime studebat ut partem oppidi excluderet*, Auct., B. Alex., I, 4. (Ut with *studere* is very rare.)

2. Verbs to *order*, to *request*, to *exhort*, to *advise*, to *persuade*, to *admonish*, etc., as *imperare*, *mandare*, *edicere*, *praecipere*, *praescribere*, *petere*, *postulare*, *rogare*, *orare*, *precari*, *flagitare*, *hortari*, *adhortari*, *audere*, *persuadere*, *monere*, *admonere*, *obsecrare*, etc.

Ex.—*His, uti conquirerent et reducerent, imperavit*, Caes., B. G., I, 28. *Imprimis, ut ipse cum Pompeio colloqueretur, postulat*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 26. *Mandat, ut Libonem de concilianda pace hortetur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 26. *Edicunt, penes quem quisque sit Caesaris miles, ut producat*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 76. *Illud praeciendum fuit, ut eam diligentiam adhiberemus*, etc., Cic., Am., XVI, 60. *Hortemur liberos nostros ceterosque, ut animo rei magnitudinem complectantur*, Cic., De Or., I, 5, 19. *Dicit cognitum sibi militibus non posse persuaderi, uti eum (Caesarem) defendant*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 6. *Flagitavi, ut convocaremur*, Cic., Phil., V, 11, 30. *Peritos regionum cum litteris mittit, qui petant atque orent ut sibi subveniat*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 17. *Moniti a Brundisinis, ut vallum caecum fossasque caveant, subsistunt*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 28. *Orat atque obsecrat, ut sibi parcat*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 22. *Equidem suasi, ut Romam pergeret*, Cic., Att., XVI, 8, 2. Etc.

3. Verbs to *impel*, to *incite*, to *prompt*, to *induce*, to *compel*, etc., as *incitare*, *impellere*, *excitare*, *movere*, *permovere*, *adducere*, etc.

Ex.—*Quarum (causarum) illa fuit iustissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venirent*, etc., Caes., B. G., IV, 16. *Quae ratio poetas maximeque Homerum impulit ut principibus heroum certos deos adiungeret*, Cic., N. D., II, 66, 166. *Perpulit tandem, ut Romae fanum Dianae facerent*, Liv., I, 45, 2. *Tum autem, qui non ipso honesto movemur, ut boni viri simus, callidi sumus, non boni*, Cic., Leg., I, 14, 41. *Audivit Eumolpidas*

**sacerdotes a populo coactos, ut se devoverent**, Nep., Alc., 4. **Coëgere ut dedicationem facerent**, Sal., Jug., 91 (the Accusative + Infinitive is the rule with *cogere*). **Assequere quod vis, si me adduxeris ut existimem me bonorum iudicium non perdidisse**, Cic., Att., XI, 7, 3. Etc.

4. Verbs *to decree, to resolve, to swear, to conspire*, etc., as *censere, statuere, constituere, decernere, iurare, coniurare*, etc.

Ex.—**M. Calidius censebat, ut Pompeius in suas provincias profiscisceretur**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 2. **Statuunt, ut decem milia hominum in oppidum summitterentur**, Caes., B. G., VII, 21. **Constituit, ut arbitri darentur**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 1. **Decrevit senatus, ut L. Opimius consul videret ne quid res publica detrimenti caperet**, Cic., Cat., I, 2, 4. **Trecenti coniuravimus, ut in te hac via grassaremur**, Liv., II, 12, 15. Etc.

REM. When the verb *to resolve* means simply *to conclude, to make up one's mind*, it requires the simple Infinitive; as, *Statuit (constituit, decernit) profiscisci = he decides (resolves) to set out*.

5. Verbs *to care for, to strive for*, etc., as *curare, videre (= see to it that (ut)), niti, eniti, elaborare, consulere, prospicere, providere*, etc.

Ex.—**Vettius pollicitus est sese curaturum, ut in aliquam suspicionem facinoris Curio filius adduceretur**, Cic., Att., II, 24, 2. **Miltiades nitebatur, ut primo quoque tempore castra fierent**, Nep., Milt., 4. **Tu omni amore enitere, ut nos cura tua et prudentia iuves**, Cic., Att., IX, 15, 4. **Laborare, uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent**, Caes., B. G., I, 31. **Consulere vivi ac prospicere debemus, ut illorum solitudo et pueritia quam firmissimo praesidio munita sit**, Cic., Verr., I, 58, 153. **Nos id videamus, ut, quicquid acciderit, fortiter feramus**, Cic., Att., XIV, 13, 3. **Ut quam rectissime agantur, omni mea cura providebo**, Cic., Fam., I, 2, 4.

6. Verbs *to permit, to grant, to allow*, etc., as *dare, permittere, concedere, pati*, etc. (Cf. 94.)

Ex.—**Da patriae, ut, si qua in re opus sit, opera et consilio tuo uti possit**, Cic., Fam., IV, 5, 6. **Quis Antonio permisit, ut partes faceret?** Cic., De Or., II, 90, 366. **Consuli permissum est, ut duas legiones scriberet**, Liv., XXXV, 20, 4. **Ille legem mihi recitavit, quae permittit, ut furem noctu liceat occidere**, Cic., Tull., XX, 47. **Mihi uni tu concedis, ut sine ulla iuris scientia tamen causis satis facere possim**, Cic., De Or., I, 58, 248. **Caesar dixit: Neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati, ut optime meritos socios desereret**, Caes., B. G., I, 45.

7. Verbs of *effecting* and of *doing* when an *end is had in view* or *purposed*—that is, when the subject of the leading Predicate is *working consciously in order* to attain an end. Parallel with the relation of an end to be attained with such verbs is the relation of *Result*. In this latter relation the *subjective conscious working* to an end does not

obtain, but the dependent clause is simply an *evolution* from the *leading* action or expresses merely the *tendency* of this action or is the *complement* of it. The conception is purely *objective*. In case of the positive form of the dependency it cannot, in some cases, be stated with certainty whether it is *Final* or *Consecutive*, an ambiguity, however, which is removed in the *negative* dependency where *ne* (*ut—ne*) indicates its *Final* and *ut non* its *Consecutive* character. The verbs belonging to this class are *facere*, *efficere*, *perficere*, *vincere*, *evincere*, *pervincere*, *assequi*, *consequi*, *adipisci*, *impetrare*, *tenere*, *obtinere*, *perferre*, etc.

Ex.—*Feci ut essent nota nostris*, Cic., Acad., I, 2, 8. *Faciam ut uerus hodie reperire Tyndarus*, Pl., Capt., 610. (See below the *negative* form of the dependency in the *Final* construction after these verbs.)

266. Most of the above classes of verbs allow other constructions than *ut* with the Subjunctive.

1. When the subject of the dependent verb is the same with that of the leading verb, the verbs *to will*, *to wish*, *to desire*, *to resolve*, *to strive after*, *take*, as a rule, the simple Infinitive. Such verbs are *velle*, *nolle*, *malle*, *cupere*, *optare*, *studere*, *decernere*, *constituere*, *laborare*, etc. In this case the dependent verb furnishes the simple restriction of the leading verb or completes its otherwise incomplete verbal idea by presenting its complement. (*Vid.* 93.)

Ex.—*Video te velle in caelum migrare*, Cic., Tusc., I, 34, 82. *Ea desiderare malui quam iudicare*, Cic., N. D., III, 40, 95. *Phylarchus dixit se cupisse te celare de phaleris*, Cic., Verr., IV, 12, 29. *Dignus es, Caesar, qui officia mandes deponere optantibus*, Plin. Min., Pan., 87. *Studemus nostris consiliis et laboribus tutiorem vitam hominum reddere*, Cic., De Rep., I, 2, 3. *Quaerat aliquam defensionem proferre*, Cic., De Inv., II, 26, 77. *Caesar his de causis Rhenum transire decreverat*, Caes., B. G., IV, 17. *Reliquas res, quascumque agere instituit*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 33. *Caesar cognovit Suevos hic Romanorum adventum expectare atque ibi decertare constituisse*, Caes., B. G., IV, 19. *Pompeius statuerat proelio decertare*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 86. *Ratio postulat agere aliquid*, Cic., Fin., III, 17, 58. *Facere elaborarunt*, Quint., III, 8, 58. *Saltem populi Romani comoda respicite, si sociis fidelissimis prospicere non laboratis*, Cic., Verr., III, 55, 127. Etc.

2. The verbs *to compel*, *to allow*, etc., admit the Accusative and Infinitive when the subject of the dependent Predicate is *different* from that of the leading Predicate. In this case the leading Predicate does not find its complement in an end designed (*ut*, etc.), but takes the construction of an Active verb with both an *inner* and *outer object*.

The inner object is the Infinitive, the outer object is the logical subject of the Infinitive. When the subject of the Infinitive is *indefinite*, then the simple Infinitive occurs after these verbs. The verbs are *cogere*, *pati*, *sinere*, etc. (cf. 94). The conception of these verbs may, perhaps, be that of verbs of *saying* or *thinking*, as *to compel* by word, *to constrain* by a decision, etc. The verbs *pati* and *sinere* are more obviously verbs of *saying* or *thinking*.

Ex.—*Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coëgerunt*, Caes., B. G., I, 4. *Reliquos atque ipsum Octavium in naves confugere coëgerunt*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 9. *Transalpinas gentes oleam et vitem serere non sinimus*, Cic., Rep., III, 9, 16. *Me sine ad hanc opinionem nunc dirigere puerum*, Cic., Att., XIV, 13, A, 3. *Orabant, ne se, oriundos ex Etruscis, eiusdem sanguinis nominisque, egentes exsulare pateretur*, Liv., II, 9, 1.

3. When the subject of the dependent verb is different from that of the leading verb the Accusative with the Infinitive may follow verbs *to will*, *to wish*, *to command*, *to admonish*, *to exhort*, etc., as *velle*, *nolle*, *malle*, *cupere*, *studere*, *postulare*, *flagitare*, *curare*, *imperare*, *monere*, *admonere*, *hortari*, etc. These verbs are to be interpreted in this connection as verbs of *saying* or *thinking*. (Cf. 93, a, etc.)

Ex.—*Nihil erat quod minus eum vellem existimare, quam*, etc., Cic., Att., XI, 12, 1. *Attendere te volo, quae in manibus sunt*, Cic., Fam., XI, 13 a, 1. *Nolo hunc de me optime meritum existimare ea me suasisse Pompeio*, Cic., Fam., VI, 6, 5. *Scripta nostra nusquam malo esse quam apud te*, Cic., Att., XIII, 22, 3. *Te tua frui virtute cupimus*, Cic., Brut., XCVII, 331. *Rem ad arma deduci studebat*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 4. *Ex quo postulabimus nobis illud, quod dubium sit, concedi, dubium esse id ipsum non oportebit*, Cic., Inv., I, 32, 53. *Carnificem acciri flagitavit*, Suet., Cl., 15. *Neque haec inter se congruere possent, ut natura diligi procreatos non curaret*, Cic., Fin., III, 19, 62 (very rare). *Frumentum ab Asia comportari imperat*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 42 (*Infinitive Passive*). Cf. *In certo dentes cadere imperat aetas tempore*, Lucr., V, 672. *Secretis nuntiis monet Rhodamistum oppugnationem quoquo modo celerare*, Tac., Ann., XII, 46. *Chariclem medicum remanere hortatus est*, Suet., Tib., 72. *Plura scribere dehortatur me fortuna mea*, Sal., Jug., 24.

267. The verbs *velle*=*to think*, *to maintain*; *concedere*=*to grant*, *to allow*, *to confess*; *contendere*=*to insist upon*, *to maintain*; *efficere*=*to show*, *to prove*; *adduci*=*to be brought (induced) to believe*, *to be convinced*; *statuere*=*to consider*, *to think*, *to decide*; *cogere*=*to infer*, *to conclude*, *to show*; *decernere*=*to determine*, *to decide*; *facere*=*to represent*; *monere*, *admonere*=*to remind*; *persuadere*=*to convince* (Dative with Accusative and Infinitive), require, as verbs of *Saying* and *Thinking*, the *Accusative with the Infinitive*.

Ex.—**Vult**, quod nemo negat, quicquid natum sit, interire, Cic., Tusc., I, 32, 79. **Chrysippus** cum nihil vellet sine praepositis causis evenire, causarum genera distinguit, Cic., Fat., XVIII, 41. **Concedo** non esse miseros, qui mortui sint, quoniam extorsisti ut faterer, Cic., Tusc., I, 7, 14. **Coegisti** ut concederem, qui mortui essent, eos miseros non esse, Cic., Tusc., I, 8, 15. **Alius** victores barbaros venisse contendit, Caes., B. G., V, 37. **In quibus** (libris) **vult** efficere animos esse mortales, Cic., Tusc., I, 31, 77. **Quae** cum ita sint, effectum est nihil esse malum, quod turpe non sit, Cic., Fin., III, 8, 29. **Ut** nec adducar aut in extis totam Etruriam delirare aut eandem gentem in fulgoribus errare, Cic., Div., I, 18, 35 (abbreviated for **adducar** ut credam, etc.). Cf. **Eo** magis adducor ut credam Larcium moderatorem et magistrum consulibus appositum (esse), Liv., II, 18, 6. Cf. Liv., VI, 42, 6 (**adducor** ut credam, etc.). **Hi** sibi nihil iuris, nullam societatem communis utilitatis causa statuunt esse cum civibus, Cic., Off., III, 6, 28. **Hoc** cogere volebat falsas litteras esse (rare), Cic., Ad Brut., II, 7, 4. **Mihi** reliquam aetatem a re publica procul habendam (esse) decrevi, Sal., Cat., 4. **Plato** construi a deo atque aedificari mundum facit, Cic., N. D., I, 8, 19. **Monuit** eius diei victoriam in earum cohortium virtute constare, Caes., B. Civ., III, 89. **Admonebant** alios supplicium ex se, non victoriam peti, Liv., XXVIII, 19, 11. **Id** ego minime probabam qui quidem Theophani facile persuasi nihil esse melius quam illum nusquam discedere, Cic., Att., V, 11, 3. **Velim** tibi persuadeas me tuis consiliis nullo loco defuturum, Cic., Fam., XI, 5, 3. **Persuade** tibi in te et in Bruto tuo esse omnia, Cic., Fam., XII, 10, 4.

268. In a complementary Final clause the particle *ut* is often omitted, particularly with the verbs *to wish*, *to request*, *to beg*, *to order*, *to command*, *to permit*, *to admonish*, *to exhort*, *to decree*, etc. By this use of the simple Subjunctive *without ut* the substantive element of the Predicate is prominently and emphatically presented, in some cases approaching an Imperative relation. This use of the simple Subjunctive is to be especially observed in the close association of the leading and dependent Predicates; as, *Velim scribas*. The verbs which the simple Subjunctive follows are, notably, *velle*, *nolle*, *malles*, *petere*, *censere*, *rogare*, *quaeso*, *precari*, *orare*, *iubere*, *imperare*, *edicere*, *permittere*, *monere*, *hortari*, *mandare*, *postulare*, *suadere*, *persuadere*, *licere*, etc.

Ex.—**Volo** se efferat in adolescente fecunditas, Cic., De Or., II, 21, 88. **Tu velim** sic existimes, Cic., Fam., XII, 6, 2. **Nolim** ita existimes, Cic., Att., II, 1, 6. **Malo** te sapiens hostis metuat, quam stulti cives laudent, Liv., XXII, 39, 20. **Ab proconsule** petit... (eos) ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci iuberet, Caes., B. G., VI, 1. **Huic** imperat, quas possit, adeat civitates, Caes., B. G., IV, 21. **Principio** anni censuit, occuparent patres ipsi suum munus facere, Liv., II, 48, 2. **Consolatus** rogat, finem orandi faciat, Caes., B. G., I, 20. **Deos** quaesumus, consilia tua reipublicae salutaria sint, Cic., Fam., XI, 3, 4. **Te** precor haec arma accipias, Liv., II, 10, 11. **Plancum** quoque con-

**firmetis oro**, Cic., Fam., XI, 9, 2. **Ibi eum legati adierunt iubentes primo quoque tempore in Africam traiceret**, Liv., XXX, 19, 2. **Edicit suis postero die frequentes porta Esquilina expellerent pecus**, Liv., II, 11, 5. **Cetera, uti facto opus sit, ita agant permittit**, Sal., Cat., 45. **Sed eos moneo, desinant furere**, Cic., Cat., II, 9, 20. **Tribunos milites et praefectos hortatur ab eruptionibus caveant**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 21. **Huic mandat Remos adeat**, Caes., B. G., III, 11. **Caesar nuntios misit, qui postularent, eos, qui...sibi dederent**, Caes., B. G., IV, 16. **Suadeo videas**, Cic., Fam., II, 16, 7. **Meam sororem tibi dem suades sine dote**, Pl., Trin., 681. **Huic Sp. Albinus persuadet regnum Numidiae ab senatu petat**, Sal., Jug., 35. **De isto licet bene speres**, Cic., Att., IX, 7, 5. **Fulmina fortunae contemnamus licebit**, Cic., Tusc., II, 27, 66.

### The Negative Final Clause of Purpose or Design.

**269.** The idea of *wishing*, as has been seen, is the basis of the Final Clause of Purpose. An action wished is expressed in the optative Subjunctive with *ut*. The action when *not wished* is expressed in the optative Subjunctive with *ne*. Hence, as the Positive Final Subjunctive of Purpose is expressed by *ut* with the Subjunctive, so the Negative Final Subjunctive of Purpose is expressed by *ne* with the Subjunctive. Hence—

1. The Negative Purpose or Design is expressed by *ne* with the Subjunctive. The Tenses are the *Present* and *Perfect* (*Futures First* and *Second* from the Present), the *Imperfect* (and *Pluperfect*) (*Futures First* and *Second* from a given Past). Translate *ne*, *in order that not*, *in order not to*, *not to*.

Ex.—**Has (rates) terra atque aggere integebat, ne aditus atque incursus ad defendendum impediretur**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 25. **Caesar frustra diebus aliquot consumptis, ne reliquum tempus amittat...ab urbe proficiscitur**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 33. **Diversam aciem in duas partes constituit, ne ab equitatu circumveniri posset**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 40. **Caesar in campis exercitum reficit, ne defessum proelio obiciat**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 65. **Ne ignores quid ego in tuis litteris desiderarim, scribam aperte**, Cic., Fam., V, 7, 3. **Verum, ut scribis, haec in Arpinati a. d. VI. circiter Id. Mai. non deflebitis, ne et opera et oleum philologiae nostrae perierit**, Cic., Att., II, 17, 1. (No clear case of Pluperfect Subjunctive has been observed.)

2. Instead of *ne* the phrase *ut ne* occurs. By *ut ne* the negative contents of the dependent clause are positively (*ut*) proposed as *designed*. The Purpose is *first* presented, followed by the *negative* (*ut—ne*). Perhaps *ne* and *ut ne* were used without reference to any essential difference in sense. The elements of *ut ne* are often separated, *ut—ne*.

Ex.—Et, ut ne quid praetermittam, Caesonius ad me litteras misit, Postumiam Sulpicii domum ad se venisse, Cic., Att., XII, 11. Tu ut adhuc fecisti, quam plurimis de rebus ad me velim scribas, ut prorsus ne quid ignorem, Cic., Att., III, 10, 3. Tantum a vallo eius prima acies aberat, uti ne telo adici posset, Caes., B. Civ., III, 56. Proposuit legem sed minutissimis litteris uti ne cui describere liceret, Suet., Cal., 41. Reperi, comminiscere.... quae hic sunt uisa, ut uisa ne sint, Pl., M. G., 227.

REM. 1. The particle *ne*, perhaps less frequently *ut—ne*, occurs after the *demonstratives* *ita*, (*sic*), etc. The dependent clause is here not to be interpreted as *Consecutive*, as the leading subject is represented as acting *consciously* under the *limitation* or *restriction* of an *End* or of a *Purpose not wished*.

Ex.—Minucius sciebat, ita se in provincia rem augere oportere, ut ne quid de libertate perderet, Cic., Verr., II, 30, 73. Quod ad librum attinet, quem tibi filius dabit, peto a te, ne exeat, aut ita corrigas, ne mihi noceat, Cic., Fam., VI, 7, 6. Accusatores multos esse in civitate utile est, ut metu contineatur audacia: verum tamen hoc ita est utile, ut ne plane illudamur ab accusatoribus, Cic., Rose. Am., XX, 55. Solitus etiam in gestatione ludere, ita essedo alveoque adaptatis ne lusus confunderetur, Suet., Claud., 33. Masinissa nos ita instituit ne quem coleremus nisi populum Romanum, Sal., Jug., 14.

REM. 2. When the negative attaches to and defines a *given word*, the negative *non* is used; hence the form *ut—non*. In this form of statement a negative relation is presented as one *purposed* or *designed*, perhaps a *stronger* negative idea than *ut—ne*.

Ex.—Dies continuos quinque Caesar aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset, Caes., B. G., I, 48. Non est tanti vita, si, ut ego non peream, tam multa perdenda sunt, Sen., De Clem., IX, 5. (Cf. Ut beneficium tibi debeam, parum est voluisse te dare, ut non debeam, satis est noluisse, Sen., Ben., VI, 10, 1. Non ex una causa ventos invenit, sed primum, ut aëra non sinerent pigrescere, Sen., N. Q., V, 18, 1. Dilata arma, ut Corbulo merita tot per annos gloriae non ultra periculum faceret, Tac., Ann., XV, 6.

REM. 3. The association of *ne—non* in a Final sentence of Purpose or End is to be observed. Here, in some cases, the negative word or clause with *non* is presented as one *not wished*, and *not designed*, accompanied in some cases with the idea of *anxiety* or *fear*; in others the two negatives cancel each other, furnishing *ut* as the equivalent.

Ex.—Per aliquot dies ea consultatio tenuit, ne non reddita belli causa, reddita belli materia et adiumentum esset, Liv., II, 3, 5. Ac tamen, ne cui loco non videatur esse responsum, pauca etiam nunc dicam ad reliquam orationem tuam, Cic., Fin., II, 27, 85. Ac ne quod non manubiarum genus experiretur, lupanar in Palatio constituit, Suet., Cal., 41 (here the two negatives can-



cel each other, giving an affirmative idea (= *ut*). **Petiit ut sibi successor in Africam mitteretur, ne, deserto agro, non esset, unde uxor et liberi alerentur.** Vir. Rom., Reg., 30.

**270.** The *Negative Complementary Final Clause*—that is, the Final Subjunctive of Purpose or Design after the classes of verbs named (265)—is likewise introduced by *ne* (*ut-ne*) with the Subjunctive; also by *ut-non* with the restriction stated for *non* in the simple Subjunctive of negative Purpose or Design.

Ex.—**Credibile est hoc voluisse legum latorem, ne auxilia liberorum innocentibus deessent,** Quint., VII, 1, 56. **Caesar Trebonio mandaverat, ne oppidum expugnari pateretur,** Caes., B. Civ., II, 13. **Caesar suis imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent,** Caes., B. G., I, 46. **His praedixit, ut ne prius Lacedaemoniorum legatos dimitterent, quam,** etc., Nep., Them., 7. **Pausanias orare coepit, ne enuntiaret,** Nep., Paus., 4. **Postulant enim, non uti ne cogantur statuere,** Cic., Verr., II, 60, 148. **Petis a me, ut id tibi facere ne liceat.** Cic., Verr., II, 60, 148. **Illud pugna et enitere, ne quid nobis temporis prorogetur,** Cic., Fam., III, 10, 3. **Rerum hoc natura non patietur, nec manens nec mutata ratio feret, ut non in causa pari eadem sit et condicio et fortuna omnium,** Cic., Fam., VI, 6, 11, etc. Cf. **Malo non roges,** Cic., Tusc., I, 8, 17 (omission of *ut*).

(a) To be carefully noted is the *negative Final clause* introduced by *ne* (*ut ne*) after verbs of *effecting, doing, etc.* (Vid. 265, 7.)

Ex.—**Audivimus, M. Crassi virtute factum (esse) ne fugitivi ad Messanam transire possent,** Cic., Verr., V, 2, 5. **Perfice ut ne minus res publica tibi quam tu rei publicae debeas,** Cic., Fam., X, 12, 5. **Perfecerat fortuna ne quid tale scribere possem,** Cic., Fam., IV, 13, 1. **Effic ne quem poeniteat rem publicam quam spem praedae sequi maluisse,** Cic., Fam., XII, 12, 3. **Facilitate vellem consequi potuisses, ne eius ordinis rem aut voluntatem offenderes,** Cic., Fam., I, 9, 26. **Postquam ipsa virtus pervicerit, ne in ullo genere hominum inhonorata esset,** etc., Liv., X, 24, 9.

**271.** It has been seen that the positive Final clause of Purpose in which a Comparative is embraced is usually introduced by *quo* with the Subjunctive. The *negative* expression is not *quo ne* with the Subjunctive, but *ne* with the Subjunctive. (The few cases in classical Latin in which *quo ne* occurs with the Comparative and the Subjunctive are not to be referred to this connection.)

Ex.—**HS sexagies allatum ad se Domitio reddidit, ne (not quo ne) contentior in vita hominum quam in pecunia fuisse videatur,** Caes., B. Civ., I, 23. **Sed insequentes nostros, ne longius prosequerentur, Sulla revocavit,** Caes., B. Civ., III, 51. **Quorum omnium, ne sim longior, una ratio est,** Cic., Div., II, 28, 60. **Multa occultant tuae litterae, ne vehementius desperatione perturber.** Cic., Att., III, 15, 6. **Ne diutius teneam, pecunia numerata est,** Cic., Verr., I,

13, 34. **Atque adeo, ne hoc aut longius aut obscurius esse possit**, Cic., Verr., II, 77, 190. **Iumenta, ne longius prosequi possent, convulnerant**, Curt., V, 37. **Coëgit itaque illum uti ferro, ne saepius signum peteret**, Sen., Const., XVIII, 3.

(a) So, too, *ne* with the Comparative after verbs *Voluntatis et Studii*.

Ex.—**Vibius Secundus Italia exigitur, ne graviore poena afficeretur, fratris opibus enisus**, Tac., Ann., XIV, 28. **Nitebantur ne gravius in eum consulere-tur**, Sal., Jug., 13.

REM. The following example shows the office of *quo ne* :

Ex.—**Cautum est de numero gladiatorum, quo ne maiorem cuiquam habere liceret**, Suet., Caes., 10 (here *quo* is Ablative (than which) with the Comparative *maiorem* = *quo numero cautum est ne maiorem*, etc.).

272. In a negative clause of Design or Purpose the negation is made by *ne*—that is, the negation of a wish, which is the basis of a Final clause of Purpose, is made by *ne*. This form of negation remains unchanged. Hence, if a Pronoun is brought under the influence of a negative it must be the *Positive* form of the *Pronoun*. Thus *ne quis* = *in order that not any one* = *in order that no one*; *ne quid*, *ne qui*, *ne quod*, *ne ullus* (*ne quisquam*), *ne unquam*, *ne usquam*, *ne quando*, *necubi*, *necunde*, etc.

1. In a *pure* Final clause of Design.

Ex.—**Eum trahit capite obvoluto Talthybius, ne quis eum possit agnoscere**, Sen., Mort. Claud., XIII, 1. **Quos ego cum bacillis in turbam conieci ad oppidum accedens, ne quis impetus militum fieret**, Cic., Att., XI, 6, 2. **Capita tignorum extrema parietum structura tegebantur, ne quid emineret**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 9. **Ipse neque ullum laborem aut munus despiciens, ne quod subsidium . . . venire posset**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 8. **Monet, ut ignes fieri in castris prohibeat, ne qua eius adventus significatio fiat**, Caes., B. G., VI, 29. **Milites armari iubet, ne quam rei gerendae facultatem dimittat**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 28. **Oppidum, ne cui esset usui Romanis, incenderunt**, Caes., B. G., VII, 55. **Ne quo loco erumperent**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 44. **Ne quem locum nostri intrare possent**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 44. Cf. **Quae causa est cur amicitiam funditus tollamus e vita, ne aliquas propter eam suscipiamus molestias?** Cic., Am., XIII, 48. **Non tamen ei occurrerat, ne fidem ullius nisi regis experiretur**, Curt., VIII, 42. **Ianiculum quoque adiectum, non inopia loci, sed ne quando ea arx hostium esset**, Liv., I, 33, 6. **Traditur eum faciem cotidie rasitare ac pane madido linere consuetum, idque instituisse a prima lanugine, ne barbatus umquam esset**, Suet., Oth., 12. **Necubi tamen aut motus alicuius temere egressi aut fulgor armorum fraudem in valle tam aperta detegeret, missis paucis avertit oculos hostium**, Liv., XXII, 28, 8. **Necubi**, Curt., VIII, 17. **Circumspectans, necunde impetus in frumentarios fieret**, Liv., XXII, 23, 10. Etc.

2. So *ne* with positive form of Pronoun with verbs *Voluntatis et Studii*.

Ex.—**Obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret**, Caes., B. G., I, 20. **Caesar respondit se finitimis imperaturum, ne quam dediticiis populi Romani iniuriam inferrent**, Caes., B. G., II, 32. **Te oro et obsecro, ne quid gravius de salute tua consulas**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 16, 1. Cf. **Interdicit omnibus, ne quemquam interficiant**, Caes., B. G., VII, 40. **Petit ne cui rei parcat ad ea efficienda**, Nep., Paus., 2. **Quanta cura laboratur, ne cuius pantomimi nomen intercidat?** Sen., N. Q., VII, 22, 3. **Dicit se consilium suadentium, ne quid temere faciat, secuturum**, Curt., VII, 36. **Te commoneo, magnitudinem animi tui ne umquam inflectas cuiusquam iniuria**, Cic., Fam., I, 7, 9. **Universi cohortantur, magno sit animo, necubi dubitet proelium committere**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 33. **Existimavi petendum, ne quo progredereis proclinata iam re**, Cic., Att., X, 8, B, 1.

REM. From some of the preceding examples it will be observed that when a Comparative occurs in the dependent clause *ne* and not *quo ne* is the construction.

Ex.—**Obsecrare coepit, ne quid** (not *quo ne quid*) **gravius in fratrem statueret**, Caes., B. G., I, 20. Cf. Cic., Fam., VIII, 16, 1.

(a) When the *negative Pronoun* is the prominent idea in the dependency, and the relation expressed by it is the matter wished, then *ut* with the negative Pronoun is employed. This is not a frequent construction.

Ex.—**Opto ut in hoc iudicio nemo improbus praeter eum, qui iam pridem inventus est, reperiatur**, Cic., Verr., Act. Prim., XVII, 50. **Dedi operam deum benignitate, ut hic discessus nihil fugae simile haberet, non miles ullus. non eques, non quicquam impedimentorum amitteretur**, Cic., Fam., X, 23, 3. **Ingreditur theatrum, cunctis citharae legibus obtemperans, ne fessus resideret, ne sudorem... veste detergeret, ut nulla oris aut narium excrementa viserentur**, Tac., Ann., XVI, 4. Etc.

### The Negative Extension of the Final Clause of Purpose, and of the Complementary Final Clause.

273. In a Final clause of *pure Purpose*, as also in a *Complementary Final* clause, the particle *ut* is continued *negatively* by *neve* (*neu*), less frequently by *neque* (*nec*), particularly in a *Complementary Final* clause.

(a) *Pure Purpose*.

Ex.—**Has munitiones insequentibus auxit diebus, ut pro muro obiectas haberet neu dimicare invitus cogeretur**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 112. **Magni labores et multae impensae opus fuerunt, ut, quae rei publicae polliceremur, exitu praestaremus neque ad auxilium patriae nudi accederemus**, Cic., Fam., X, 8, 3. **Interdum etiam ipse, qui iuvatur, fallendus est, ut habeat nec a quo acceperit sciat**, Sen., Ben., II, 10, 1. **Aeneas ut animos Aboriginum sibi conciliaret, nec**

sub eodem iure solum sed etiam nomine omnes essent, Latinos utramque gentem appellavit, Liv., I, 2, 4.

(b) *Complementary Final clause of Purpose, etc.*

Ex.—Oro atque obsecro, ut summae rei publicae consulatis neve misercordiam nostram sceleris loco ponatis, Cic., Fam., X, 35, 2. Pompeius suis praedixerat, ut Caesaris impetum exciperent neve se loco moverent, Caes., B. Civ., III, 92. Ambiorix pronuntiari iubet ut procul tela coniciant neu propius accedant, Caes., B. G., V, 34. Denuntiari iussit, ut excederet castris neu licentiae barbarae exemplar in Graecorum mores transferret, Curt., VIII, 12. Moneo obtestorque te uti hos... caros habeas neu malis alienos adiungere quam sanguine coniunctos retinere, Sal., Jug., 10. Cf. Suet., Vesp., 11 (ut—neve). Publicani postularunt, quasdam res ut ad legem adderent neque tamen a ceteris censoriis legibus recederent, Cic., Verr., III, 7, 18. His persuaderi, ut diutius morarentur neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat, Caes., B. G., II, 10. Rogemus amicissimum quemque, ut tunc maxime libertate adversus nos utatur, cum minime illam pati poterimus, nec assentiat irae nostrae, Sen., Ira, III, 13, 4.

274. In a negative Final clause of *pure Purpose*, as also in a negative *Complementary Final clause of Purpose*, the negative *ne* is negatively continued by *nere* (*neu*), less frequently by *neque* (*neq*).

(a) *Pure Purpose* (rare).

Ex.—His provocati sermonibus fidem ab imperatore de Petreii atque Afranii vita petunt, ne quod in se scelus concepissem neu suos prodidisse videantur, Caes., B. Civ., I, 74. Sic vos (agitis) interdicto patribus commercio plebis, ne nos comitate ac munificentia nostra provocemus plebem, nec plebs nobis dicto audiens sit, Liv., V, 3, 8.

(b) *Complementary Final clause of Purpose.*

Ex.—Pothinus cum (Achillam) hortaretur, ne negotio desisteret neve animo deficeret, a Caesare est interfectus, Caes., B. Civ., III, 112. Milites cohortatus, uti suae prestinae virtutis memoriam retinerent, neu perturbarentur animo, Caes., B. G., II, 21. Caesar nuntios misit, ne eos frumento neve alia re iuvarent, Caes., B. G., I, 26. Imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio neu Trinobantibus noceat, Caes., B. G., V, 22. Legatos ad Caesarem miserunt oratum, ne se in hostium numero duceret, neve omnium Germanorum... unam esse causam iudicaret, Caes., B. G., VI, 32. Ne quid eis noceatur, neu quis invitus sacramentum dicere cogatur, a Caesare cavetur, Caes., B. Civ., I, 86. Obsecrare, ut per eos Caesar certior fieret, ne labori suo neu periculo parceret, Caes., B. Civ., I, 64. Obsecrare... ne... neu, Caes., B. Civ., II, 28. Hortari, ne... neve, Caes., B. Civ., III, 73. Condiciones pacis... ne... neve, Nep., Thrasyb., 3. Praecipere... ne... neve, Nep., Epam., 1. Conspirasse, ne manus ad os cibum ferrent, nec os acciperet datum, Liv., II, 32, 10. Cur non sancitis, ne vicinus patricio sit plebeius nec eodem itinere eat? Liv., IV, 4, 11. Pausanias orare coepit, ne enuntiaret, nec se... proderet, Nep., Paus., 4. Caven-

dum est, ne assentatoribus patefaciamus aures, nec adulari nos sinamus, Cic., Off., I, 26, 91. Constat ille ambitus et plena comprehensio e quattuor fere partibus...ut et aures impleat et ne brevior quam satis sit neque longior, Cic., Or., LXVI, 221. Veterem ad morem reduxit, ne quis agmine decederet nec pugnam, nisi iussus, iniret, Tac., Ann., XI, 18. Etc.

REM. To be observed is *neu* (*neve*), followed by *neu* (*neve*), = *in order that neither—nor*, and in Complementary Final clauses = *neither—nor*.

EX.—Vercingetorix dicit: Praeterea oppida incendi oportere, neu suis sint ad detrectandam militiam receptacula, neu Romanis proposita ad copiam com-meatus praedamque tollendam, Caes., B. G., VII, 14. Cf. *Neve—neve* (*Complementary clauses*), Caes., B. G., I, 35. Petreius milites appellat, neu se, neu Pompeium imperatorem suum, adversariis ad supplicium tradant, obsecrat, Caes., B. Civ., I, 76.

275. In addition, to be carefully noted are the following forms of expressing Final clauses, positive and negative, particularly in connection with *aut* and *sed*. The elements employed readily suggest the exact meaning of the clauses. Thus—

(a) *Ut—ne*.

EX.—Petunt atque orant ut sibi parcat, ne communi odio Germanorum innocentes pro nocentibus poenas pendant, Caes., B. G., VI, 9.

(b) *Ne—aut, ne aut—aut, ne—aut ut, ne—aut ne*.

EX.—Quia cibos potusque eius delectus ex ministris gustu explorabat, ne omitteretur institutum, aut utriusque morte proderetur scelus, talis dolus repertus est, Tac., Ann., XIII, 16. Remissum id munus, ne inter discordias externa molirentur aut ius fasque exuerent, Tac., Hist., III, 5. Neque ego in senatum (ivi), ne aut de tantis rebus tacerem aut in Pompeio defendendo animos bonorum virorum offenderem, Cic., Q. Frat., II, 3, 2. Caesar magni interesse arbitrabatur quam primum oppido potiri, ne qua aut largitionibus aut animi confirmatione aut falsis nuntiis commutatio fieret voluntatis, Caes., B. Civ., I, 21. Cf. *Ne aut...aut*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 9; III, 1. Senatum litteris deprecatus est, ne sibi beneficium populi adimeretur, aut ut ceteri quoque imperatores ab exercitibus discederent, Suet., Caes., 29. Cf. *Illi veriti, ne noctu impediti sub onere configere cogerentur, aut ne ab equitatu Caesaris in angustiiis tenerentur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 66.

(c) *Ut neve—neve, ut neque—neque, ut—neve ne—quidem*.

EX.—Peto a te, ut id a me neve in hoc reo neve in aliis requiras, Cic., Fam., I, 9, 19. Tantum enitor ut neque amicis neque etiam alienioribus opera, consilio, labore desim, Cic., Fam., I, 9, 17. Haec lex in amicitia sancitur, ut neque rogemus res turpes nec faciamus rogati, Cic., Am., XII, 40. Obtestabantur Romanos, ut sibi parcerent, neu, sicut Avarici fecissent, ne mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinere, Caes., B. G., VII, 47.

(d) *Ut*—*non ut*, *non ut*—*sed ut*, *non ut*—*sed ne*, *ne*—*ne*, *ne*—*ne*—*ut*.

Ex.—*Quidam veniunt ut audiant, non ut discant*, Sen., Ep., XVIII, 5, 6. *Alii cum pugillaribus veniunt, non ut res excipiant, sed ut verba, quae tam sine profectu alieno dicant, quam sine suo audiunt*, Sen., Ep., XVIII, 5, 6. *Caesar dicit: Neque id agere, ut ab illis abductum exercitum teneat ipse, sed ne illi habeant, quo contra se uti possint*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 85. *Non ut... sed ne*, Tac., Ann., XIII, 19. *Monuit Liviam, ne arcana domus, ne consilia amicorum vulgarentur, neve Tiberius vim principatus resolveret*, Tac., Ann., I, 6. *Auctor aliarum rerum fuit, in quis... ne acta senatus publicarentur, ne magistratus... statim in provincias mitterentur, ut proconsulibus... certa pecunia constitueretur*, etc., Suet., Aug., 36.

276. The transition from a negative Final clause with *ne* to an affirmative Final clause with *et*, *-que*, *atque*, is to be observed. In this case the transition from the negative to the affirmative is often best expressed by the adversative (*but*) translation of the conjunction. An emphatic statement of this adversative sense is made by *ut* (*as atque ut*).

Ex.—*Huic ille primum suasit, ne se moveret, et exspectaret quoad Alexandri filius regnum adipisceretur*, Nep., Eum., 6. *Ne ad me iter tibi expeditum sit atque istas copias coniungere optimorum civium possis cum iis legionibus*, etc., Cic., Att., VIII, 12, D, 1. *Tum orant, ne in tam praecipiti ira perseveret, spatiumque potius animo det*, Curt., VIII, 5. *Monere coepit Porum, ne ultima experiri perseveraret dederetque se victori*, Curt., VIII, 50. *Legatos in Bithyniam miserunt, qui ab rege peterent, ne inimicissimum secum haberet, sibi que dederet*, Nep., Han., 12. *Rogo ne cui quicquam luris in tua provincia esse patiari, atque ut omnia referas ad dignitatem, qua nihil esse potest praestantius*, Cic., Fam., XII, 22, 3.

REM. The Final Subjunctive with *quam ut*, *nisi ut*, in which the Subjunctive is decided by the leading verb (*to be supplied*), is to be observed. This is not to be confounded with the *Consecutive Subjunctive* decided by the verb to be supplied.

Ex.—*Quid tibi maiori curae fuit, quam ut essem ego illi quam familiarissimus?* Cic., Fam., XI, 27, 5. *Si nihil esset in animo nisi id, ut per eum viveremus*, etc., Cic., Tusc., I, 24, 56. *Item, si nihil haberet animus hominis nisi ut appeteret aut fugeret, id esset ei commune cum bestiis*, Cic., Tusc., I, 24, 56.

277. The verbs *censere* and *statuere* as verbs of *Thinking* take the Accusative with the Infinitive. Again, the *judgment* or *opinion involved* in the verbs may be expressed with more or less of *authority*, which finds its complement in an action which *has to be done*, *is to be done*, *must be done*. Hence with these verbs we find associated the *Future Passive Participle*, and in a sense approaching that of the *Future Passive Participle* the *Present* or *Imperfect Infinitive*. This is

particularly the case with *censere*, where the Infinitive simply restricts as the complement the sense of the verb *censere*.

Ex.—*Erant sententiae, quae conandum omnibus modis castraque Vari oppugnanda censerent*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 30. *Erant, qui censerent in castra Cornelia recedendum*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 30. *Senatus Coelium ab republica removendum censuit*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 21. (*Erant*), *qui liberandos omni periculo censerent*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 83. *Eos retinendos non censuit*, Caes., B. G., VII, 54. *Statuit expectandam classem*, Caes., B. G., III, 14. *Dixerunt se unum petere, si statuisset Aduaticos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret*, Caes., B. G., II, 31. *De bonis reglis, quae reddi ante censuerant, res integra refertur ad patres*, Liv., II, 5, 1. *Munera mitti legatis ex binis militibus aeris censuerunt*, Liv., XLIII, 5, 8.

278. It has been seen (cf. 266, 3, etc.) that verbs *Voluntatis et Studii* which ordinarily take *ut* and *ne* with the Subjunctive are, as verbs of *Saying* and *Thinking*, construed with the Accusative and Infinitive. On the other hand, verbs of *Saying* and *Thinking*, when they have the force of verbs *Voluntatis et Studii*, require *ut* and *ne* with the Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Dicam tuis, ut eum (librum), si velint, describant ad teque mittant*, Cic., Fam., XII, 17, 2. *Deliberantibus Pythia respondit, ut moenibus ligneis se munirent*, Nep., Them., 2. *Caesar ad suos scripsit, ne occasionem navigandi dimitterent*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 25. *Mittit qui nuntiarent ne hostes proelio lacerarent*, Caes., B. G., IV, 11. *Conclamare ut*, Caes., B. G., V, 26. *Pronuntiare ne*, Caes., B. G., V, 34. *Communicare ut*, Caes., B. G., V, 36. *Cogitare ne*, Caes., B. G., V, 57. *Excogitare ut*, Cic., Att., I, 16, 2. *Colloqui ut*, Cic., Fam., I, 9, 10. *Significare ut*, Cic., Att., X, 10, 6. *Mittere* (*to send orders, word*), Caes., B. Civ., III, 103. Etc.

(a) The transition from a Final clause (*ut, ne*) to the Accusative with the Infinitive decided by a verb of *Saying* or *Thinking* to be supplied, is to be noted.

Ex.—*Plerique censebant, ut noctu iter facerent: posse prius ad angustias venire, quam sentiretur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 67. *His imperat, ut paulatim cedant: sese signum proelii daturum*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 40. *Exaudita vox est a luco Vestae, ut muri et portae reficerentur: futurum esse, nisi provisum esset, ut Roma caperetur*, Cic., Div., I, 45, 101.

#### Final Subjunctive with Substantive and with Adjective Predicates, etc.

279. A Substantive alone and with *est* also a Phrase often express the distinctive sense of a verb *Voluntatis aut Studii*, and hence are construed with *ut* and *ne* and the Subjunctive. Such Final clauses widely prevail in Latin, and the substantives and phrases which require them

can be defined only by their sense. It is difficult to name them, nor is this necessary. In case the substantive is defined by a demonstrative, *is*, *hic*, etc., the presence of the demonstrative does not indicate a Consecutive clause, if the substantive retains the force of a verb *Studii aut Voluntatis*, and thus controls the construction, or if the demonstrative is specific in pointing to the dependency as its explanation, as *Lex haec est*, *ut* = *this is the law, that; the law is this, that* (Final), not *the law is thus* (= *such*), *that* (Consecutive).

(a) *Final Subjunctive with Substantives and with Substantive Predicates.*

Ex.—*Vetus est lex illa verae amicitiae... ut idem amici semper velint*, Cic., Planc., II, 5 (= *that old law (requires, demands) that*, etc.). *Quorum haec est condicio, ut omnibus in vita commodis una cum his fruantur*, Caes., B. G., III, 22. *Exemplum ut*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 12. *Officia partiri ut*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 38. *Tenere propositum ne*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 83. *Haec causa est ut*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 47. *Haec reperire remedia ut*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 50. *Institutum servare ut*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 84. *Edictum propositum uti*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 102. *Id consilium est ut*, Caes., B. G., VII, 5. *Ius est belli ut*, Caes., B. G., I, 36. *Munus est ut ne*, Cic., Off., I, 7, 20. *Cultus deorum est ut*, Cic., N. D., II, 28, 71. *Voluntas ut*, Cic., Fam., VIII, 8, 4. *Tuae partes sunt ut*, Cic., Att., XIV, 13, B, 4. *Tempus est ut*, Pl., M. G., 72, 1101. *Occasio ut*, Pl., M. G., 977. *Est consuetudo ut*, Cic., Verr., II, 52, 129. *Negavit moris esse Graecorum, ut in convivio virorum accumberent mulieres*, Cic., Verr., I, 26, 66. *Tuomst officium ut*, Ter., And., 168. *Ius est ut*, Ter., Heec., 243. Etc. In all such sentences the Substantive is the element which demands the construction (*ut*, *ne*).

(b) *Final Subjunctive after Phrases.* In these also the Substantive is the element which determines the construction (*ut*, *ne*); as, *auctor est*, *consilium capere* (= *to resolve, conclude*), *dare veniam* (= *to grant leave*), *agere cum* with Ablative (= *to beg*), *litteras mittere*, *certior fit*, *certiorem facere*, *dare operam* (= *to aim, to strive*), *legatos mittere*, *nuntios mittere*, *legatos dare*, *id agere* (= *to aim, to intend*), *facultatem dare*, *dare signum*, *occasionem dare*, *esse in fatis*, etc.

Ex.—*Tibi auctor sum, ut eum tibi ordinem reconcilies*, Cic., Fam., I, 9, 26. *Consilium cepi, ut, antequam luceret, exirem*, Cic., Att., VII, 10, 1. *Dabis hanc veniam, ut*, Cic., De Or., I, 6, 23. *Cum tribunis egerunt uti Caesari satisfacerent*, Caes., B. G., I, 41. *Litteras mittere ut*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 9. *Certior fit ut*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 64. *Certiorem facere ut*, Cic., Att., II, 24, 2. *Dare operam ne*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 1, 2. *Legatos mittere ut*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 80. *Nuntios dimittere* (*mittere ne*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 102. *Legatos dare ut*, Caes., B. G., I, 9. *Putabant id actum esse ut*, Cic., Att., II, 24, 3. *Facultatem dare ut*, Cic., Fam., XIII, 4, 4. *Dare signum ut*, Liv., II, 20, 5. *Occasionem dare ut*, Cic., Part. Or., VIII, 30. *Est in fatis ut*, Suet., Vesp., 4. *Negotium dare ut*, Curt., IV, 10. Etc.



(c) *Final Subjunctive after an Adjective Predicate*; as, *rectum est, iustum est, aequum est, integrum est, necessarium est, iniustum est, ini-  
quum est*, etc.

Ex.—*Rectum et verum (=aequum) est, ut eos, qui nobis carissimi esse debeant, aequae ac nosmet ipsos amemus*, Cic., *Tusc.*, III, 29, 73. *Reliquum est, ne quid stulte, ne quid temere dicam*, Cic., *Fam.*, IX, 16, 5. *Dionysio ne integrum quidem erat, ut ad iustitiam remigraret, civibus libertatem et iura redderet*, Cic., *Tusc.*, V, 21, 62. *Iniquum est, ut id exigas*, Lact., VI, 23, 29. *Ut dilucide narremus necessarium est*, Cic., *Part. Or.*, IX, 31.

(d) *Final Subjunctive with interest and refert, necesse est, oportet, opus est, usus est*. With *necesse est* and *oportet ut* is rarely expressed with the Subjunctive. With these Predicates the Subjunctive may be identified by the translation *shall*, which reproduces the idea of *necessity* and *obligation* involved in the verbs.

Ex.—*Illud mea magni interest, te ut videam*, Cic., *Att.*, XI, 22, 2. *Vestra, commilitones, interest, ne imperatorem pessimi faciant*, Tac., *H.*, I, 30. *Illud permagni referre arbitror ut ne scientem sentiat te id sibi dare*, Ter., *Heaut.*, 467. *Corruat iste necesse est*, Cic., *Att.*, X, 8, 8. *Totum negotium tu sustineas oportet*, Cic., *Fam.*, XIII, 11, 5. *Depugnes oportet, nisi concedis*, Cic., *Att.*, VII, 9, 4. *Prospicias oportet*, Cic., *Fam.*, XI, 9, 1. *Consilia Antonii haec sint necesse est*, Cic., *Fam.*, XI, 10, 4. *Quid postea? quos tantopere timeat, eos necesse est ut, quoquo modo possit, veneficio petat*, Cic., *Ad Heren.*, IV, 16, 23. *Ipsae oportet ne caedas*, Sen., *N. Q.*, III, 18, 3. *Necesse est aut ne perveniat aut transeat*, Sen., *Ep.*, I, 4, 3. Cf. *Perfrices frontem oportet et te ipsum non audias*, Sen., *Ep.*, IV, 11, 13 (here *non* attaches to and defines *audias*: *not Consecutive*). *Tibi opus aegram ut te adsimules*, Pl., *Truc.*, 494. *Non est opus affingas aliquid*, Plin. *Min.*, IX, 33, 11 (observe omission of *ut*). *Ad hoc efficiendum intellegebant opus esse non ut in rhetorum scholis declamarent*, Tac., *De Or.*, 31. *Nunc ad me ut veniat usus Acroteleutium*, Pl., *M. G.*, 1132.

REM. 1. After the pure Substantive Predicates and after the Adjective Predicates the dependent Subjunctive may be either *Final* (*ut* positive; *ne* (*ut ne*) negative) or *Consecutive* (*ut* positive; *ut non* negative), according to the sense of the substantive or adjective element and the view of the speaker or writer. Hence when the sense implies *wishing*, *requiring*, or *demanding*, the dependent clause must be *Final* (*ut, ne*) when the sense is such as to point to a *Result* which follows or to that which *happens* or *comes to pass*, or is a simple evolution out of the leading Predicate, the dependent clause is *Consecutive* (*ut, ut non*). Thus, after *ius est* we naturally expect the demand or requirement of *ius*, and hence after such a Predicate *ut* with the Subjunctive is *Final*. So after *rectum est* there is implied the demand, requirement, or injunction of the principle of right, and after such a

Predicate *ut* with the Subjunctive is again *Final*. It is hardly conceivable that after such Predicates the dependent Subjunctive introduces the *Effect* or *Result* of the Predicate, and hence simply what happens characteristic of the Consecutive Subjunctive. There are, however, some Substantive and Adjective Predicates which, in accordance with their sense, naturally point to a *Consecutive dependency*, as *vitium est*. In this case the dependency in keeping with the meaning of *vitium* properly and naturally presents the *Tendency* or *Result* of *vitium*—what follows from it rather than what is intended by its practice. Again, after *rarum est* the dependency properly expresses the *Result* of *rarum est* = it rarely results or happens that. So after *facile est* = it easily happens or occurs that. The conclusion then is that after a Substantive or Adjective Predicate the *dependent* Subjunctive with *ut* may be either *Final* or *Consecutive* according to the sense of the Predicate and the view of the speaker or writer. While the negative form of the dependency would decide the Roman conception of its character, whether Subjective (*Final*) or Objective (*Consecutive*), it occurs so rarely (as far as observed) as apparently to leave some discretion to the speaker or writer whether to express it by *ne* (*ut ne*) or by *ut non*.

REM. 2. For the Accusative with the Infinitive after a Substantive and Adjective Predicate see 83, 1, and 83, 2. Translate the Accusative with the Infinitive by *for*, etc. From it *ut* may be distinguished by the translation *shall*, etc., as

*Tempus est te abire* = it is time for you to depart.

*Tempus est ut abeas* = it is time that you shall depart.

*Optimum est eum nescire* = it is best for him not to know.

*Optimum est ut nesciat* = it is best that he shall not know.

So with *necesse est*, etc.:

*Necesse est te venire* = it is necessary for you to come.

*Necesse est ut venias* = it is necessary that you shall come.

REM. 3. The Subjunctive with *ut*, particularly when *Final*, is not expressed by *-rus sit* nor *-rus esset*, but by the simple Tenses of the Subjunctive. The conception of the dependency is necessarily that of a *Future*.

280. For the forms of expression parallel with *ut* (*Final*) and the Subjunctive see 25. For the Genitive of Attracted Gerund to express the *Final* relation see 32. For the Dative of Gerund to express

End or Purpose see 35. The use of the Future Active Participle to express Purpose (in late Latin) is to be observed.

Ex.—*Igitur Caesar arma classem socios demittere Rheno parat, si imperium detrectetur, bello certaturus*, Tac., Ann., I, 45. *Agrippina dixit: si ad visendum venisset, refotam nuntiaret; sin facinus patraturus, nihil se de filio credere*, Tac., Ann., XIV, 8. *Suasit senatui ut legatos mitterent pacem petituros*, Suet., Vit., 16. *Deterior populus ipsas subiit terras effossurus obruenda*, Sen., N. Q., 1, 17, 6. *Reliquum noctis acquieturus in tabernaculum rediit*, Curt., IV, 48. *Graeci excesserant vallo deliberaturi, quid potissimum a rege peterent*, Curt., V, 18. *Nondum victi erant, cum proficiscerentur tumultus eius principia nuntiaturi*, Curt., VII, 19. *Surgebam (eum), si quiesceret, excitaturus*, Plin. Min., VI, 20, 4. *Deinde cum dormiturus me recepissem nec obreperet somnus, coepi reputare, etc.*, Plin. Min., VII, 4, 4.

The use of the *Infinitive* to express a Final relation is strictly poetical.

Ex.—*Proteus pecus egit altos visere montes*, Hor., Od., I, 2, 7. *Atqui non ego te frangere persequor*, Hor., Od., I, 23, 10.

#### Nedum.

281. To the Negative Final clause must be referred the Subjunctive with *nedum*=*ne* (*prohibitive*) and *dum* as an enclitic, as in *dicendum*. Hence *nedum* = *not yet: not yet (to say), not yet (to mention); not to say; not to mention*. The clause with *nedum* usually follows a negative or quasi-negative (*vix, aegre*) statement or idea. In this case it is indicated that, as the statement in the leading clause is not the fact, the proposition in the *nedum* clause is *not accepted, is not true*, or that the negation of the leading event is *inconsistent with and excludes* the occurrence or realization of the event in the *nedum* clause. The former (*leading*) event is not true—*not to speak of the latter = much less is the latter*. Hence in this connection *nedum* is translated *much less*. *Nedum* occurs often without a Predicate, which, however, may readily be supplied from the context.

Ex.—*Optimis temporibus, nec P. Popilius neque Q. Metellus vim tribuniciam sustinere potuerunt, nedum his temporibus, his moribus, sine vestra sapientia salvi esse possimus*, Cic., Clu., XXXV, 95. *Magna promittitis et quae ne optari quidem, nedum credi possint*, Sen., Const. Sap., III, 1. *Ne Spartaco quidem datum, ut pacto in fidem acciperetur, nedum latro Tacfarinas pace et concessione agrorum redimeretur*, Tac., Ann., III, 73. *Non discessere ab armis in Pharsalia civium legiones: nedum Othonis ac Vitellii exercitus sponte positi bellum fuerint*, Tac., II, 11, 38. *Non voco sapientem, supra quem quicquam est, nedum voluptas*, Sen., Vit. Beat., XI, 1. *Vincam, si ostendero nihil me pati, propter quod ipse dici possim miser, nedum propter quod miseros, quos contingo, faciam*, Sen., Ad Helv. Mat., IV, 1. Cf. *Nedum ab love*, Sen., De Mort. Cl., VIII, 2. *Nedum vincenti*, Sen., Ep., V, 11, 7.

(a) So after *quasi-negative* clauses with *vir*, *aegre*, etc.

Ex.—*Vix in ipsis tectis et oppidis frigus infirma valetudine vitatur, nedum in mari et via sit facile abesse ab iniuria temporis*, Cic., Fam., XVI, 8, 2. *Vix artibus honestis pudor retinetur: nedum, inter certamina vitiorum, pudicitia aut modestia reservaretur*, Tac., Ann., XIV, 15. *Voces auditae... aegre inermem tantam multitudinem, nedum armatam sustineri posse*, Liv., VI, 7, 2 (observe *nedum* with Participle). Cf. *Dixit, ne strepitum quidem tot militum, nedum impetus perluros*, Tac., Ann., XIV, 35.

REM. The particle *ut* is sometimes added to *nedum* (*nedum ut*).

Ex.—*Quae sapientem non mergunt, nedum ut ad singulorum impulsus maereat*, Sen., Const. Sap., VIII, 3. *Plures ex his nondum se scire confessi vita abierunt, nedum ut isti sciant*, Sen., Brev. Vit., VII, 4. *Quando rarissimarum recitationum fama in totam urbem penetrat? nedum ut per tot provincias innotescat*, Tac., Or., 10 (*quando*, etc., is *Rhetorical Question* = *numquam*, etc.). Cf. *Quis mediocri prudentia, nedum Tiberius, inaudito filio exitium offerret?* Tac., Ann., IV, 11 (here *quis*, etc.? = *nemo*, etc.). Cf. *Nedum ut illa vis fieret*, etc., Liv., III, 14, 6.

(b) The *primary* and *fundamental* sense of *nedum*, *not yet*, *not to say*, does not imply the *acceptance* or *non-acceptance* of the matter of the clause introduced by it. It is therefore *ambiguous*. But, while after a *negative* or *quasi-negative* clause as a result of this negative it implies the *non-acceptance* of the matter of its clause and is translated *much less*, after an *affirmative* clause it implies either the *acceptance* or *non-acceptance* of the matter introduced by it and is translated either *much less* or *much more*. The correct translation, in a given case, after an *affirmative* clause is, however, always readily suggested by the elements of the sentence and by the contents of the leading clause and of the *nedum* clause.

1. *Nedum* = *much less*, after an *Affirmative* clause.

Ex.—(*Dicebant*) *Fabium illis Valentem captivum praegravem fuisse, nedum Primus ac Fuscus ullam in Vitellium, nisi occidendi, licentiam habeant*, Tac., H., III, 66. *Mortalia facta peribunt, nedum sermonum stet honos et gratia vivax*, Hor., A. P., 69. (Cf. Sal., Cat., 11.)

2. *Nedum* = *much more*, after an *Affirmative* clause.

Ex.—*Quid est illa conversione mundi citatius? hac omnium ventorum in unum congesta vis dissiparetur et terrae solida fortisque compages, nedum particula aeris torti*, Sen., N. Q., VII, 9, 4. *Non de me nunc tecum loquor, qui multum ab homine tolerabili, nedum a perfecto absum*, Sen., Ep., VI, 5, 3. *Quae tolerabilis homo vitaverit, nedum perfectus ac sapiens*, Sen., Ep., XII, 1, 17. *Movere hic casus quemlibet posset, nedum hominem patriae suae amatissimum*, Sen., Ep., XIV, 3, 1. *Cuicumque mortalium, nedum veteri et provido*

**duci, barbarae astutiae patuissent**, etc., Tac., Ann., XIII, 38. (Cf. Tac., Ann., XI, 27; XIII, 15; XIII, 20.) **Adulationes etiam victis Macedonibus graves, nedum victoribus**, Liv., IX, 18, 4. (Cf. Liv., VII, 40, 3.) **Omnes fatemur plures formas dicendi etiam iisdem saeculis, nedum diversis, exstitisse**, Tac., Or., 25.

(c) To be observed is *ne* alone in the sense of *nedum*.

Ex.—**Quippe secundae res sapientium animos fatigant: ne (much less) illi corruptis moribus victoriae temperarent**, Sal., Cat., 11. **Ne Dareus quidem hereditarium Persarum accepit imperium, sed in sedem Cyri, beneficio Bagoae, admissus: ne (much less) vos magno labore credatis Bessum vacuum regnum occupaturum**, Curt., VI, 8.

REM. The association of *nedum* with a Participle and its occurrence in Accusative and Infinitive construction, as may be seen in some of the preceding examples, is to be carefully noted.

**Ne, Quominus, Quin, with Negative Verbs to Hinder, to Prevent, to Refuse, to Object, etc.**

282. After the negative verbs *to hinder, to prevent*, etc., the Subjunctive which follows is the Negative Complementary *Final*. With such verbs is associated the presence of a verb *to wish*, etc., and hence *to hinder* follows from the *wish that not*. One hinders or prevents because he wishes that a given end shall not occur. Hence the dependent Subjunctive seems to be *Final* and not *Consecutive*. The conception of the dependency as *Final* presupposes primarily and properly a rational and conscious subject proposing to *avert* an end which he wishes shall not be realized. This explanation holds also of an *impersonal* subject, with which, in imitation of a personal subject, the same construction obtains, as *Hiems prohibuit quominus profisceretur*. It is not necessary after an impersonal subject to regard the dependency as an *Objective* conception and *Consecutive*.

283. Of negative verbs may be named *impedire, prohibere, officere, obstare, detertere*, etc. The particles employed are *ne, quominus, and quin*. The particle *quominus*=*quo* + *minus* (negative)=*ut eo minus*. The particle *quin*=*qui* (ablative) + negative *non* (*ne*)=*ut eo + negative non* (*ne*). The Relative element in *quominus* is *Final*; rarely, *Consecutive*. The Relative element in *quin* is more frequently *Consecutive*; sometimes *Final*.

284. After the negative verbs with no negative (*non*, etc.) added, the usage is *ne* or *quominus* with the Subjunctive. With a negative

(*non*, etc.) added, the usage is *quominus* or *quin* with the Subjunctive; also after a Rhetorical Question the equivalent of a negative.

(a) With no negative added, *ne* and *quominus* with Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Abs te peto ut me existimes humanitate esse prohibitum, ne venirem**, Cic., Att., I, 1, 4. **Daturus es (Verri) crimini quod et potuisti prohibere ne fieret et debuisti, an totum id relinques?** Cic., Caecil., X, 33. **Se quaestorem vi prohibitum esse dicebat, quominus suum servum abduceret**, Cic., Verr., I, 33, 85. **Plura ne scribam dolore impediō**, Cic., Att., XI, 13, 5. **Impediti ne triumpharent**, Sal., Cat., 30. **Terruit ne periculo principis famam clementiae affectaret**, Tac., H., II, 63. **Quominus in vallum impingerentur, Italicae legionis virtute deterriti sunt**, Tac., H., II, 41. Cf. **Confessus est se inhibitum quominus in praecipitium propelleret**, Suet., Aug., 79. **Alexander ante prima signa ibat manu suos inhibens, ne suspensi capessere proellum**, Curt., III, 25.

REM. 1. When no negative is added the Subjunctive is rarely introduced by *quin*.

Ex.—**Veranius, quin ultra bellum proferret, morte prohibitus est**, Tac., Ann., XIV, 29.

REM. 2. The very rare use of *ut* after *prohibere* is not to be imitated.

Ex.—**Di prohibeant, iudices, ut hoc praesidium sectorum existimetur**, Cic., Rose. Am., LII, 152.

(b) With a negative added, *quominus* and *quin* with the Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Neque impedio, quominus hisce eum ornes gloriolae insignibus**, Cic., Fam., VII, 5, 3. **Ne quid impedire, quin ad hanc utilitatem pariter nobiscum progredi possis**, Cic., Ad Heren., III, 1, 1. **Nec quin erumperet, ubi vellet, prohiberi poterat**, Liv., XXVI, 40, 4. **Si prohibere, quominus in unum coirent, non posset**, Liv., XXV, 35, 6. **Nec Isocrati quominus haberetur summus orator offecit, quod infirmitate vocis, ne in publico diceret, impediabatur**, Plin. Min., VI, 29, 4. **Neque illis superbia obstabat, quominus aliena instituta imitarentur**, Sal., Cat., 51. **Quem (locum) quominus Ovidius tractaret nihil obstitit**, Sen., Ep., X, 3, 5. **Nihil obstat, quominus sapientia bonum sit**, Sen., Ep., XIX, 8, 15. **Quibus non humana ulla neque divina obstant, quin socios amicos trahant, excendant**, Sal., Hist., IV, 61 (19), 17. **Q. Ciceroni obsisti non potuit, quominus Thyamim videret**, Cic., Att., VII, 2, 3. **Ut ne Suessiones quidem detertere potuerint, quin cum his consentirent**, Caes., B. G., II, 3. **Nec deterrere ea munimenta Romanum ducem, quominus peditem perrumpere iuberet**, Tac., H., IV, 71. Cf. **Id non terruit Galbam, quominus in castra pergeret**, Tac., H., I, 18. **Quid impedit, quominus tot sint, quot, etc.?** Sen., N. Q., I, 13, 1. **Quid prohibet, quominus aliud quidem sit, sed nihilo minus bonum?** Sen., Ep., XIX, 8, 14. **Quantulum amnis obstabat, quominus, ut quaeque gens evaluerat, occuparet permutaretque sedes?** Tac., Germ., 28. With preceding verbs with a negative *quominus* is more frequent than *quin*.

**285.** As the preceding, so the following verbs are construed, with no negative added, with *ne* or *quominus* and the Subjunctive, with a negative added, *quominus* or *quin* with the Subjunctive: *Intercedere*, *interpellare*, *interdicere*, *recusare*, *se tenere* (*continere*), *se retinere*, (*sustinere*), *non praetermittere*, *adversari*, *se interponere*, *se eripere*, *intercludere*, *deprecari*, *deduci*, *vix* (*non*) *reprimere*, *durare*, *desse*, *sibi temperare*, etc.

Ex.—*Sulpicius intercesserat, ne exsules reducerentur*, Cic., Her., II, 28, 45. *Intercessit et quominus in acta sua iuraretur et ne mensis September Tiberius, October Livius vocaretur*, Suet., Tib., 26. *Tribunis interregem interpellantibus, ne senatus consultum de comitiis consularibus faceret*, Liv., IV, 43, 8. *interpellent me, quominus honoratus sim dum ne interpellent, quominus res publica a me commodè administrari possit*, Cic., Fam., XI, 10, 1. *Caesar numquam interpellavit, quin, quibus vellem, iis uterer*, Cic., Fam., XI, 28, 7. *Interdictum, ne quid in popinis cocti praeter legumina veniret*, Suet., Nero, 16. *Res publica mihi videbatur contentionem cum illis viris nolle fieri et, ne fieret. vehementer recusare*, Cic., Fam., I, 9, 12. *Neque recusavit, quominus legis poenam subiret*, Nep., Ep., 8. *Non possumus quin alii a nobis dissentiant recusare*, Cic., Acad., II, 3, 7. *Naves tenebantur, quominus in eundem portum venire possent*, Caes., B. G., IV, 22. *Si te infirmitas valetudinis tuae tenuit. quominus ad ludos venires*, Cic., Fam., VII, 1, 1. *Teneri non potui, quin tibi illud idem his litteris declararem*, Cic., Att., XV, 14, 2. *Monet ut contineant milites, ne longius progrediantur*, Caes., B. G., VII, 45. *Nec Macedones poterant, quin contenderent*, Curt., IV, 46. *Germani retineri non poterant, quin in nostros tela conicerent*, Caes., B. G., I, 47. *Sustineri ira non potuit, quin extemplo configerent*, Liv., II, 19, 4. *Ego nihil praetermisi, quin Pompeium a Caesaris coniunctione vocarem*, Cic., Phil., II, 10, 23. *In urbe mundove communi non adversari ius, quominus suum quidque cuiusque sit*, Cic., Fin., III, 20, 67. *Num quem putes illius gladiatoris similem tribunum plebis posse reperiri, qui se interponat, quominus reus mea lege flas?* Cic., Vat., XV, 37. *Per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit*, Caes., B. G., I, 4. *Intercludor dolore. quominus ad te plura scribam*, Cic., Att., VIII, 8, 2. (*Dixit*) *neque illum se deprecari, quominus pergat ut coeperit*, Liv., III, 9, 10. *Vix reprimor, quin te manere iubeam*, Pl., M. G., 1338. *Quae, fletu reprimor, ne scribam*, Cic., Att., XI, 15, 3. *Indignatiunculam non possum mihi temperare quominus apud te per epistolam effundam*, Plin. Min., VI, 17, 1. *Sed temperare mihi non possum, quominus laudem*, Plin. Min., IX, 5, 3. *Desse mihi nolui, quin te admonerem*, Cic., Fam., V, 12, 2. *Nec durare valuit, quin de condicionibus tractaret*, Suet., Claud., 26. *Neque legis improbissimae poena deductus est, quominus amicitiae officium praestaret*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 2. *Scio quae tibi causa fuerit impedimento, quominus praecurrere adventum meum in Campaniam posses*, Plin. Min., VI, 28, 1. Etc.

**286.** In this connection are to be considered the following verbs and expressions of a negative sense construed with *ne* and *quominus* when no

negative is added, with *quominus* and *quin* when a negative is added: *Morari, remorari, demorari, mora est, pugnare, repugnare, oppugnare, religio est.*

Ex.—*Non iam sanguis neque vulnera morabantur, quin subruerent vallum quaterentque portas*, Tac., H., III, 28. *Nihil moror, quominus tuum revertatur*, Sen., Ben., VI, 41, 2. *Nihil ne ego quidem moror, quominus decemviratu abeam*, Liv., III, 54, 4. *Nox atque praeda castrorum hostes, quominus victoria uterentur, remorata sunt*, Sal., Jug., 38. *Iam Agrippina veram paterni oris effigiem appellare ac variis artibus demorari, ne cubiculo egrederetur*, Tac., Ann., XII, 68. *Nec mora ullast, quin eam uxorem ducam*, Ter., And., 971. *Mora nulla per Histrum Pacuvium, quin illud ebur ducatur ad aras*, Iuv., XII, 110. *Non per nos erit mora, quominus gratissimi simus*, Sen., Ben., V, 5, 4. *Per te non est mora, quominus beneficia, qui acceperunt, ultro repetant*, Sen., Ben., V, 1, 5. *Nec in Rhaeticis copiis mora, quominus statim adiungerentur*, Tac., H., I, 59. *Nulla penes Vitellianos mora, quin totis viribus certarent*, Tac., H., II, 31. *Ne minimam quidem moram interposulsti, quin maximo gaudio frueremur*, Cic., Philip, X, 1, 1. *Proinde pugna, ne turpis inveniar*, Cic., Att., V, 11, 5. *Id ne impetremus oppugnabis*, Cic., Ligar., V, 13. *Ego tecum in eo non pugnabo, quominus, utrum velis, eligas*, Cic., Caecil., XVIII, 58. *Magistratu se abdicavit ut, quae religio C. Mario non fuerat, quominus C. Glauciam praetorem occideret, ea religione*, etc., Cic., Cat., III, 6, 15.

(a) In this connection is to be carefully noted the *Idiom per* with the *Accusative stat (fit)* = *it is owing to*, followed by *ne* and *quominus* when no negative is added and by *quominus* and *quin* when a negative is added. As, *Per te stat (fit), ne (quominus) amicus meus veniat* = *it is owing to you that my friend does not come*. *Non per te stat (fit), quominus (quin) amicus meus veniat* = *it is not owing to you that my friend does not come*.

Ex.—*Caesar cognovit per Afranium stare, quominus proelio dimicaretur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 41. *Stetisse per Trebonium, quominus oppido potirentur, videbatur*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 13. *Memor obiectum sibi, quasi per ipsum staret, ne (respublica) redderetur*, Suet., Aug., 28. *Ne praestaremus, per vos stetit*, Liv., XLV, 23, 6. *Ostenderent prioribus proeliis per duces, non per milites stetisse, ne vincerent*, Liv., III, 61, 2 (*ne* decided by *per duces* (*stetisse*)). *Per quos stetisset, quominus belli finis fieret, adversus eos quid sibi faciendum esset, Rhodios consideraturos esse*, Liv., XLIV, 14, 12. *Adeo graviter est ab consule increpitus, ut per eum stetisse diceretur quominus accepta ad Cannas redderetur hosti clades*, Liv., XXIV, 17, 7. *Si poterit fieri ut ne pater per me stetisse credat, quominus haec fierent nuptiae, uolo*, Ter., And., 700. *Utrisque apparuit nihil per alteros stare, quominus incepta persequerentur*, Liv., VI, 33, 2. *Alia fecisse se secundum decreta legatorum docebat, alia non per se stetisse quominus faceret*, Liv., XXXIX, 47, 5. *Nemo est qui nesciat, quominus discessio fieret, per adversarios tuos esse factum*, Cic., Fam., I, 4, 2. Cf. *Te oro ne quid existimes ab illo factum esse, quominus minus te diligerem*,



Cic., Att., XI, 12, 2 (observe *ab illo* and *quominus* after *factum esse*). *Quoniam per eum non stetisset, quin (fides) praestaretur, decedentem domum cum favore ac laudibus prosecuti sunt*, Liv., II, 31, 11.

REM. After *per* + Accusative and *stat* when the dependency is affirmative = *it is owing to that*, it is introduced by *ut* and the Subjunctive.

Ex.—*De qua ignorantia mea non queror, per quam stetit, ut tibi pro eodem homine saepius obligarer*, Plin. Min., Ep. Plin. et Trai., VI (XXII), 22, 2. *Per te stetit, ut iniuriam hic quoque faceret*, Quint.

(b) With *quominus* is to be compared *quo setius* after verbs of Hindering.

Ex.—*Cur, quo setius omnia scribant, impediuntur modestia?* Cic., Heren., IV, 3, 4. (Cf. Cic., Heren., I, 12, 21; III, 17, 30.)

(c) The verb *prohibere* allows, in the *best prose*, the Accusative with the Infinitive *Passive*, less often the Accusative with the Infinitive *Active*. The Active of *prohibere* takes the simple Infinitive when the subject of the Infinitive is indefinite (and not expressed) or gathered from the context. The Passive of *prohibere* occurs often with the *simple Infinitive* as the complement. The verb *impedire* allows the Accusative with the Infinitive in the *best prose*.

Ex.—*Hiems adhuc rem geri prohibuerat*, Cic., Fam., XII, 5, 2. *Monet ut ignes fieri prohibeat*, Caes., B. G., VI, 29. *Tributum conferri prohibent*, Liv., V, 12, 3. *Eam (turbam) a me diducitis, prohibendo iudicatos adduci*, Liv., VI, 15, 9. Cf. *Ad prohibenda circumdari opera*, Liv., III, 28, 7. *Armari civitatem prohibeant*, Liv., IV, 2, 12. *Armati per secessionem (agros) coli prohibeant*, Liv., II, 34, 11. *Prohibete ius dici*, Liv., VI, 18, 14. (Cf. Liv., XXIV, 46, 5; XXV, 4, 4; XXV, 11, 13; XXIX, 18, 14; XXX, 39, 5.) *Bactrianos festinatio prohibebat acciri*, Curt., III, 4. *Remos aptari prohibebant*, Curt., IX, 35. *Caesarem se appellari victor prohibuit*, Tac., H., I, 62. *Quid prohibet in unum virtutem voluptatemque confundi?* Sen., Ad Gal., Vit. Beat., XV, 1. So with Accusative and Infinitive Active and Deponent: *Iurare tui cives Xenocratem prohibuerunt*, Cic., Att., I, 16, 4. *Germanos transire prohibebant*, Caes., B. G., IV, 4. *Nostros intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant*, Caes., B. G., V, 9. With Indefinite subject of Infinitive: *Circumvallare loci natura prohibebat*, Caes., B. G., VII, 17. *Hic honos credere prohibet servatum eum parvumque ipsum servisse*, Liv., I, 39, 5. *Prohibuit migrari Veios*, Liv., V, 49, 8. The Passive with Complementary Infinitive: *Pugnare prohibebatur*, Cic., Div., II, 8, 21. *Prohibentur adire ad filios*, Cic., Verr., V, 44, 117. *Persequi prohibentur*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 14. *Id facere prohibentur*, Caes., B. G., IV, 16. *Lictor nihil aliud quam prendere prohibitus*, Liv., II, 29, 3. *Omnibus praeter assuetos adire prohibitis*, Curt., IX, 13. *Prohibiti tribuni ius praetorum et consulum praeripere*, Tac., Ann., XIII, 28. Accusative and Infinitive with *impedire*: *Me impedit pudor haec exquirere*, Cic., De Or., I, 35.

163. *Quid est quod me impediat ea, quae probabilia mihi videantur, sequi?* Cic., Off., II, 2, 8.

(d) The verb *recusare* occurs rarely, but in the best prose, with the Infinitive, occasionally with the Accusative and Infinitive. The Passive of *detertere* with the simple Infinitive is to be noted. The verb *interdicere* in a sense approaching that of *vetare* rarely occurs with the Accusative and Infinitive, also with the simple Infinitive. The verb *inhibere* in a sense approaching that of *prohibere* rarely occurs with the Accusative and Infinitive. The verb *obsistere* in a sense approaching that of *vetare* or *recusare* rarely occurs with the Infinitive.

Ex.—*Neque adhuc repertus est quisquam qui eo interfecto, culus se amicitiae devovisset, mori recusaret*, Caes., B. G., III, 22. *Omnem impetum belli in me convertere non recusem*, Cic., Fam., X, 8, 6. *Subire offensas non recusabo*, Plin. Min., IV, 17, 30. *Nec recuso luere poenas*, Plin. Min., IX, 13, 12. *Illo recusante transire ad eum*, etc., Curt., VI, 44. (*Dixit se*) *non recusaturum confodi manibus ipsorum*, Suet., Claud., 26. *Non recuso, quidquid lacrimarum fortunae meae superfuit, tuae fundere*, Sen., Ad Polyb., De Consol., II, 1. So Accusative and Infinitive: *Nec Reatini silebant, Velinum lacum, qua in Narem effunditur, obstrui recusantes*, Tac., Ann., I, 79. *Agere quae ad iudicium pertinebant deterrebar*, Cic., Verr., Prim. Act., IX, 24. *Deterriti id sacrilegium prohibere*, Liv., XLII, 3, 3. *Pari severitate interdixit commeatus peti*, Suet., Galb., 6. *Cum sibi interdixerit habere, interdixit et poscere*, Sen., Ad Gal., Vita. Beat., XVIII, 3. *Volentem loqui inhibebant*, Curt., X, 9. *Sed obstitit in se simul atque in Herculem inquiri*, Tac., Germ., 34.

(e) The verb *cavere* expresses both a positive and a negative sense. It means both *to take care* (*positive*) and *to beware* (*negative*).

1. In the sense of *to take care* it finds its equivalent in *prospicere*, *providere*, or *curare*, and is construed with *ut* and *ne* (*ut ne*) and the Subjunctive.

2. In the sense of *to beware* it is followed by the Subjunctive without *ut*, in which case the *negative* sense of the verb finds its complement in the simple Subjunctive. The negative Imperative relation *cave ne* and the Subjunctive is based on the *positive* sense of the verb (= *take care not to*), while the negative Imperative relation *cave* and the simple Subjunctive is based on the *negative* sense of the verb (= *beware of*).

Ex.—*Caverat sibi ille adulter, ut omnium suorum scelerum socium te praeberes*, Cic., Pis., XII, 28. (*Tribuni dixerunt*) *cavisse deos priore anno, ut tuto libertas defendi posset*, Liv., III, 10, 14. *Cautum erat ut propinqui eorum, qui regi insidiati essent, cum ipsis necarentur*, Curt., VI, 42. *Visum est caveri ab eo ut receptus Croto Bruttiorum esset*, Liv., XXIV, 2, 5. Cal-

**ludus ille ne se insinuet cavendum est**, Cic., Am., XXVI, 99. **Quod ne accidat cavendum est**, Cic., Am., XXVI, 99. **Caveat ne id consideret**, Cic., Off., I, 21, 72. **Id cautum est, ne, si ambo fascēs haberent, duplicatus terror videretur**, Liv., II, 1, 8. **Caveamus ut ne quod in nobis insigne vitium fuisse dicatur**, Cic., Q. Frat., I, 1, 13, 38. **Caue ne tu te usu perdis**, Pl., Amph., 838. **Quae cave ne te perturbent**, Cic., Fam., XVI, 12, 5. **Cave festines aut committas ut hieme naviges**, Cic., Fam., XVI, 12, 6. **Quos viceris, amicos tibi esse cave credas**, Curt., VII, 35.

NOTE. The distinction between *to take care that not* (*cavere ne*) and *to beware of* is very narrow. Hence *cavere ne* with the Subjunctive may be rendered *to beware of*, based on the negative sense of the verb.

Ex.—**Cavebis ne me attingas, si sapis**, Pl., Asin., 370 (= *you will beware of touching me*). Cf. *You will take care not to touch me*.

REM. 1. The simple Infinitive with *cavere* is very rare and not to be imitated.

Ex.—**Caveret id petere a populo Romano, quod illi iure negaretur**, Sal., Jug., 64.

REM. 2. It is sometimes the case that *quominus* (or *ne*) with the Subjunctive is determined by the idea of *preventing* or *hindering not expressed* in the leading Predicate but either *involved in it* or *to be gathered from the context*.

Ex.—**Edixit, ne quis civem Romanum vinctum aut clausum teneret, quominus ei nominis edendi apud consules potestas fieret**, Liv., II, 24, 6. **Nemo impune stulte aliquid aut contrarie dicit, quominus et iudex respuat et adversarius exprobrat**, Tac., Orat., 34. **Lege excipiuntur tabulae publicanorum, quominus Romam deportentur**, Cic., Verr., II, 56, 187. **Si sensero quicquam in his te nuptiis fallaciae conari, quo fiant minus**, Ter., And., 196. **Ipse maiorem Galliae motum expectans, ne ab omnibus civitatibus circumsisteretur, consilia inibat**, etc., Caes., B. G., VII, 43.

REM. 3. There can be no doubt that *quominus* in consequence of its Relative element is *Consecutive*, pointing to a relation of *Result*, and not *Final*, pointing to an *End to be prevented*. How far *quominus* is to be interpreted as *Consecutive* must be decided by the elements of the sentence and its general contents.

Ex.—**Nemo est qui nesciat quominus discessio fieret per adversarios tuos esse factum**, Cic., Fam., I, 4, 2. **Nihil reliqui faciunt, quominus invidiam, misericordiam, metum, et iras permoverent**, Tac., Ann., I, 21.

#### Quin with the Subjunctive.

287. The Particle *quin* = *qui* (ablative) + a negative *non* (*ne*) = *ut eo non* (*ne*). The element *qui* of *quin* is *Relative*, and this is

either the *Final* or *Consecutive Relative*. It is also *Interrogative*: *quin* = *how not?* As a *Final Particle* *quin* = *whereby not; in order thereby not*. As a *Consecutive Particle* *quin* = *so as thereby not*.

### 1. *Quin* as a *Final Particle*.

(a) *Quin* may be accepted as a *Final Particle* in connection with a verb of *Hindering* or *Preventing* with a negative, and particularly when the subject of the verb is a *personal* one. As, *non prohibere, non impedire, se non continere (tenere), nihil (non) praetermittere, sibi non temperare, non abstinere, non interpellare, non ob stare, non deprecari, per me non stare*, etc. (*Vid.* 284, a, b; 286, a.) In such connections compare *quominus* with *quin*.

Ex.—*Nec quin erumperet, ubi vellet, prohiberi poterat*, Liv., XXVI, 40, 4. *Docent non posse milites contineri quin in urbem irrumperent*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 12. *Aegre sunt retenti quin oppidum irrumperent*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 13. *Non desistam quin illum aliquando eruam*, Civ., Fam., V, 10 a, 1. *Neque si uiuit eam uiua umquam quin inueniam desistam*, Pl., Rud., 228. *Numquam deterrebor, quin uiderim quod uiderim*, Pl., M. G., 369. That the idea of *wishing* may be accepted as the basis of the construction may be illustrated as follows: *Non prohibeo quin veniat* = *I do not prevent him from coming* = *I wish him to come*.

(b) The Particle *quin* may again be accepted as *Final* with the following Predicates with a negative: *Mihi non deest; non morari; non me fugit; praetermittere non possum; mihi temperare non possum; non in potestate est*; etc.

Ex.—*Deesse mihi nolui, quin te admonerem*, Cic., Fam., V, 12, 2. *Ne affinem morer quin extemplo filiam ducat domum*, Pl., Aul., 605. *Non est in nostra potestate, quin illa eveniant*, Cic., Fat., XIX, 45. Etc. (Cf. 285, 286.)

### 2. *Quin* as a *Consecutive Particle*.

(a) The Particle *quin* must be interpreted as *Consecutive* after the following Predicates: *Non multum abest; haud multum abest; haud procul abest; haud procul est; non longe abest; paulum (not parum) abest; minimum abest; nihil abest; quid abest?* (= *nihil abest*).

Ex.—*Neque multum afuit, quin etiam castris expellerentur*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 35. *Invenit neque multum abesse ab eo, quin (naves) paucis diebus deduci possent*, Caes., B. G., V, 2. *Ut non multum abesset, quin opera ac vineae desererentur*, Liv., XXI, 7, 10. *Nec multum afuit, quin statim diadema sumeret*, Suet., Cal., 22. *Non multum afuit, quin a Bructero quodam occideretur*, Suet., Tib., 19. *Non multum afuit, quin vitae renuntiaret*, Suet., Galb., 11. *Non multum afuit, quin sutrinum quoque inventum a sapientibus diceret*, Sen., Ep., XIV, 2, 23. *Ut haud multum afuerit, quin impetu populi Kaeso interiret*, Liv., III, 13, 3. *Res repententes legatos nostros haud procul afuit quin viola-*

rent, Liv., V, 4, 14. **Haud procul afit, quin violarentur**, Liv., XXV, 1, 10. **Ut haud procul esset, quin Remum agnosceret**, Liv., I, 5, 6. **Haud procul erat, quin castra urbanae seditionis contagione turparentur**, Liv., V, 12, 7. (**Docet**) **neque longius abesse quin Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educat**, Caes., B. G., III, 18. **Aberit non longe, quin hoc a me decerni velit**, Cic., Att., IX, 9, 3. **Paulum afit, quin Varum interficeret**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 35. **Paulum afit, quin (imagines) ex omnibus bibliothecis amoveret**, Suet., Cal., 34. **Acten libertam paulum afit quin iusto sibi matrimonio coniungeret**, Suet., Nero, 28. **Minimum afit quin periret**, Suet., Aug., 14. **Nihil abest quin sim miserrimus**, Cic., Att., XI, 15, 3. **Nihil afore credunt quin omnem Hisperiam sua sub iuga mittant**, Verg., Aen., VIII, 147. **Quid aberit, quin et ipsi meliora de nobis semper cogitemus?** Val. M., 6, 9.

REM. The association of *minimum abesse quin* rarely occurs. A brief and concise substitute of the phrase may, however, be made by *tantum non* with the *Indicative* or *Subjunctive* according to the context.

Ex.—**Illine ut . . . , cum hostes tantum non arcessierint, exercitus conscribi adversus hostes non patiantur?** Liv., IV, 2, 12 (cf. *cum minimum absit, quin hostes arcessierint*). **Nam cum vineae tantum non iam iniunctae moenibus essent ingens multitudo ignes coniecit**, Liv., V, 7, 2.

(b) The *Relative* element of *quin* as a *Consecutive* particle may, for *practical purposes*, be accepted as not limited to its *proper case* (*ablative*) but as used in the case to be decided by the context under restrictions. This *Consecutive quin* occurs after *negative* and *quasi-negative* Predicates and phrases and *Rhetorical Questions*. For purposes of convenience this may be termed the *adjective* or *attributive quin*. The Predicates are: *Nemo (nullus, nihil) est, vix quisquam, nemo reperitur, nemo (nihil) invenitur, quis est?* etc.

Ex.—**In castello nemo fuit militum, quin vulneraretur**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 53. **Nemo est, quin saepe iactans Venerium iaciat aliquando**, Cic., Div., II, 59, 121. **Nemo est, quin audisse se liquido diceret**, Cic., Verr., III, 59, 136. **Nemo erat Sicilia tota, quin sciret decumas esse praetoris**, Cic., Verr., III, 59, 136. **Nemo erit quin hoc se audisse dicat**, Cic., Verr., IV, 25, 55. **Nihil est, quin male narrando possit deprauarier**, Ter., Ph., 697. **Nihil praetermisi quin ad te perscriberem**, Cic., Q. Frat., III, 3, 1. **Neque erat quisquam omnium, quin . . . existimaret**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 5. **Cum vix in corona quisquam assistat, quin elementis studiorum imbutus sit**, Tac., Or., 19. **Repertus est nemo quin mori diceret satius esse**, Cic., Verr., II, 36, 88. **Quis est quin cernat, quanta vis sit in sensibus?** Cic., Acad., II, 7, 20. **Quis erit quin malit decumanis tuis dare quod poposcerint, quam, etc.?** Cic., Verr., III, 13, 35. Cf. **Quis umquam templum illud aspexit quin avaritiae tuae testis esset?** Cic., Verr., I, 59, 154.

REM. 1. The particle *quin* (*Consecutive*) is the substitute of the *Relative qui* with the negative *non* (= *qui non*), and hence may be

designated as the *adjective* or *attributive quin*, as stated above (b). But it should be carefully noted that the facts in the language authorize the use of *quin* not only as the substitute of the *Nominative*, *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter* of the *Relative* with *non* (*qui non*, *quae non*, *quod non*), but of the *Accusative*, *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter* (*quem non*, *quam non*, *quod non*); also of the *Ablative*, *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter* (*quo non*, *qua non*, *quo non*), particularly in the definition of *Time*, and very rarely of the *Dative* (*cui non*).

Ex.—*Non civis Romanus paulo notior (fuit), quin (= qui non) ad diem conveniret*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 19. *Nulla fuit civitas, quin (= quae non) ad id tempus partem senatus Cordubam mitteret*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 19. *Nulla Thesaliae fuit civitas praeter Larisaeos, quin (= quae non) Caesari pareret*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 81. *Nulla profecto (natura est), quin (= quae non) suam vim retineat*, Cic., Fin., IV, 13, 32. *Horum autem nihil est, quin (= quod non) intereat*, Cic., N. D., III, 12, 30. *Nullum umquam hostem fudit, quin (= quem non) castris quoque exueret*, Suet., Caes., 60. *Nego ullam picturam fuisse, quin (= quam non) adquisierit*, Cic., Verr., IV, 1, 1. *Nego signum ullum fuisse, quin (= quod non) adquisierit*, Cic., Verr., IV, 1, 1. *Nihil contumeliarum defuit, quin (= quod non) subiret*, Suet., Nero, 45. *Treviri atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin (= quo non) trans Rhenum legatos mitterent*, Caes., B. Civ., V, 55. *Nullum intercedebat tempus, quin (= quo non) extremi cum equitibus proeliarentur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 78. *Neque ullum fere diem intermittebat, quin (= quo non) equestri proelio, quid in quoque esset virtutis, periclitaretur*, Caes., B. G., VII, 36. *Dies fere nullus est, quin (= quo non) hic Satyrus domum meam ventitet*, Cic., Att., I, 1, 3. *Neque ullus flare ventus poterat, quin secundum cursum haberent*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 47. (Cf. *Nullam noctem intermittebat quin (= qua non) ad me veniret*.) *Numquam ita quisquam bene subducta ratione ad vitam fuit, quin (= cui non) res, aetas, usus semper aliquid apportet novi*, Ter., Ad., 856.

REM. 2. The proper case of the *Relative* with *non* could be used in any of the preceding case relations expressed by *quin*. Instead of *quin*, however, use the Genitive of the Relative with *non* (*cuius non*); instead of *quin* the Dative of the Relative with *non* (*cui non*) is the regular form; instead of *quin* the Accusative of the Relative with *non* (*quem (quam) non*) is the regular form.

Ex.—*Nullus tam ablectae condicionis fuit, cuius non (not quin) commodis obtrearet*, Suet., Cal., 35. *Nullum rerum aut hominum genus omisum (est), cui non (rather than quin) tributum aliquid imponeret*, Suet., Cal., 40. *Nullus dolor est, quem non (more usual than quin) longinquitas temporis minuat ac molliat*, Cic., Fam., IV, 5, 6. *Toto mense nullus dies, quo non (compare with quin) recitaret aliquis*, Plin. Min., I, 13, 1. *Neque ulla (nox) est fere, qua non (compare with quin) dormiamus*, Cic., Div., II, 59, 121. *Nullus dies temere intercessit, quo non (compare quin) ad eum scriberet*, Nep., Att., 20. Cf. *Dies*

**nullus erat, quo die non melius scirem Romae quid ageretur, quam ii, qui erant Romae**, Cic., Att., II, 11, 1 (the subject *dies* is reproduced by *die* for emphasis).

(c) With the *Conjunctive quin* (= *but, but that*) the subject or object of the leading Predicate may be introduced and defined in the *quin* clause by the Demonstrative or Determinative *is* (*hic, ille*), whose case is determined by the context. It is unnecessary to supply the Demonstrative in all the cases in which it is not expressed. The reproduction of the leading subject by the Demonstrative in the *quin* clause serves only to render more emphatic the reference to it. There is no ellipsis of the Demonstrative in the cases in which it is not expressed.

Ex.—**Cleantes negat ullum cibum esse tam gravem, quin is die et nocte concoquatur**, Cic., N. D., II, 9, 24. **Novus homo nemo tam clarus erat, quin is indignus illo honore haberetur**, Sal., Ing., 63. **Nihil est, quod quidem sensum habeat, quin id intereat**, Cic., N. D., III, 13, 34. **Nihil est in hac provincia quin id venire iubeat**, Cic., Leg. Agr., II, 18, 48. **Quis in circum maximum venit, quin is uno quoque gradu de avaritia tua commoneretur?** Cic., Verr., I, 59, 154. Etc.

(d) In case of an Adjective with a negative and Demonstrative definition (*tam, adeo, (ita)*), then, instead of the Relative with *non* or its substitute *quin, ut non* occurs in the relation of pure *Result*. The *Relative* or *quin* refers to and defines the leading subject or object, while the construction *ut non* is decided by the Demonstrative (*tam, etc.*) in the leading clause. In some cases *quin (conjunctive)* occurs as the substitute of *ut non*.

Ex.—**Ariovistus dixit: Non se tam barbarum ut non sciret**, Caes., B. G., I, 44 (here *ut non sciret* introduces the Result of *tam barbarum*). **Nulli sunt tam feri ut non disciplina perdomentur**, Sen., Ira, II, 12, 3 (by *ut non, etc.*, the Result of *tam feri* is introduced). **Nemo erat adeo tardus quin (= qui non) putaret**, etc., Caes., B. Civ., I, 69 (here *quin* defines the antecedent *nemo*). **Nemo est tam fortis quin (= qui non) rei novitate perturbetur**, Caes., B. G., VI, 39. **Nihil adeo arduum sibi existimabant, quod non (= quin) virtute consequi possent**, Caes., B. G., VII, 47. **Nihil tam praepostere cogitari potest, quod non (= quin) possimus somnare**, Cic., Div., II, 71, 146. **Nihil est tam sanctum quod non (= quin) violari possit**, Cic., Verr., Act. Prim., II, 4. But **Numquam tam male est Siculis quin aliquid facere et commode dicant**, Cic., Verr., IV, 43, 95 (here *quin* seems to substitute *ut non* rather than *qui non*).

288. The term *without*. It is well to note the different Latin expressions by which the English *without* may be translated.

1. By *quin, qui non, ut non*, after a negative clause.

Ex.—Nullo modo posse video stare istum diutius, quin ipse concidat, Cic., Att., X, 8, 6. Tute cogita, non licere praetoribus per edictum de suo iure decedere, quin consul arma minetur, Cic., Fam., XI, 3, 3. L. Metellus statuit non posse Apronium condemnari, quin simul de istius scelere iudicaretur, Cic., Verr., III, 65, 153. Neque (mater) aspexit, quin eum fratricidam compellaret, Nep., Tim., 1. Locum delegit, ut non praeteriret adversarius, quin ancipitibus locis premeretur, Nep., Dat., 7. Cum omnium voces audirentur exspectari diutius non oportere, quin ad castra iretur, ad hostium castra contendit, Caes., B. G., III, 24. Non possunt una in civitate multi fortunas amittere ut non plures secum in eandem trahant calamitatem, Cic., De Imp. Pomp., VII, 19. Nec quisquam alienum servitium et dominationem sibi concupivit, ut non eadem ista vocabula usurparet, Tac., H., IV, 73. Currere non possum, ut pedes non moveam, Sen., Const. Sap., VII, 5. Aiunt nec honeste quemquam vivere, ut non iucunde vivat, Sen., Gal., Vit. Beat., VI, 3. Nemo in eo, quod daturus es, gratiam suam facere potest, ut non tuam minuat, Sen., Ben., II, 4, 3. Numquam epistolam tuam accipio, ut non protinus una simus, Sen., Ep., IV, 11, 1. Nec illa possunt praecedere, ut non haec sequantur, Sen., Ep., XV, 2, 34. Numquam filios suos populo commendavit, ut non adiceret: si merebuntur, Suet., Aug., 56. Nec quisquam rex Persarum potest esse, qui non ante magorum disciplinam perceperit, Cic., Div., I, 41, 91. Cf. Nulli Graeco certamini interfuit, quo non pro merito quemque certantium honorarit, Suet., Aug., 45.

2. By *ut non*, rarely by *qui non*, but not by *quin*, after an affirmative clause.

Ex.—Possum pedes movere, ut non curram, Sen., Const. Sap., VII, 5. Potest esse bellum, ut tumultus non sit, Cic., Phil., VIII, 1, 2. Qua re si, ut ista non disserantur, liberi mortis metu possumus, id agamus, Cic., Tusc., I, 11, 23. Malet existimari vir bonus ut non sit, quam esse, ut non putetur, Cic., Fin., II, 22, 71. Persuasum habeo posse fieri ut sit actio bona, quae non sit bona oratio, non posse non bonam actionem esse quae sit bona oratio, Plin. Min., I, 20, 9. Quod ad me de Varrone scribis, scis me antea orationes aut aliquid id genus solitum scribere, ut Varronem nusquam possem intexere, Cic., Att., XIII, 12, 3 (here *ut nusquam* = *without anywhere*).

3. By an *Adjective* or *Participle* with a negative or involving a negative after an affirmative or negative clause.

Ex.—Quas (voluptates) Epicurus non erubescens (=without blushing) persequitur omnes nominatim, Cic., N. D., I, 40, 111. Sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum (=without expecting it) atque etiam imparatum (=without preparation) incideret, sic, etc., Caes., B. G., VI, 30. Illi inermes (=without arms) telum foris flagitantes vivum tenebant, Nep., Dion, 9. Sperabat se imprudentem hostem oppressurum, Nep., Eum., 8 (imprudentem =without anticipating (knowing) it). Ita ille imprudens ipse suus fuit accusator, Nep., Lys., 4. Quorum pueriles adhuc animos senectus opprimit, ad quam imparati inermesque perveniunt, subito in illam necopinantes inciderunt, Sen., Brev. Vit., IX, 4. Invitus sanatur, Sen., Helv. Mat., X, 3. Aliquando ignorans obligor, Sen., Ben., III, 12, 3. Nesciens an mihi daret, Sen., Ben., VI, 19, 5. Stabit super



**illam voraginem intrepidus** (=without alarm), Sen., N. Q., VI, 32, 4. **Securus videbit maria turbari**, Sen., N. Q., VI, 32, 4 (**securus** = without care (concern)). (Cf. **Non stabit super illam voraginem intrepidus**).

4. By the *Ablative Absolute* with a negative, or with a negative adjective or participle, after an *affirmative* or *negative* clause.

Ex.—**Itaque non castris positis, non expectato hostium exercitu raptam ex agris praedam portantes Veios rediere**, Liv., I, 15, 2. **Multis interfectis reliquos infecta re in oppidum reppulerunt**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 14. **Defendente nullo transcenderunt**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 68 (**defendente nullo** = without any one defending (making defense)). **Quibus oppressis inopinantibus, equitibus imperat. ut**, etc., Caes., B. G., VII, 8. **Ab Romanis, indicta causa, interfecti sunt**, Caes., B. G., VII, 38. **Te suspicari volo nihil per collegam meum, me insciente, esse factum**, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 3 (**me insciente** = without my knowledge). **Cato Siciliam tenere nullo negotio potuit**, Cic., Att., X, 16, 3 (**nullo negotio** = without any trouble). (Cf. **Nullo gemitu**, Cic., Att., VI, 2, 5.) **Ut inimicum meum me invito** (=without my will) **servare nolles**, Cic., Att., XIV, 13, B, 2. **Ita nec Pisoni, qui in eum primus invectus est, nullo assentiente, nec mihi tuto in senatum venire licet**, Cic., Fam., XII, 2, 1.

5. By *neque* (*nec*) introducing a coördinate negative sentence in the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Infinitive. Here *neque* (*nec*) = *and not, but not*, (=without), usually after an *affirmative* clause. This translation of *neque* (*nec*) may be extensively applied.

Ex.—**Ego, si Pompeius manet in Italia nec res ad pactionem venit, longius bellum puto fore**, Cic., Att., IX, 10, 5. **At hoc, quod agimus, turpe, nec tamen tutum**, Cic., Att., X, 1, 5. **Philosophia iacuit usque ad hanc aetatem nec ullum habuit lumen litterarum Latinarum**, etc., Cic., Tusc., I, 3, 5. (**Puer**) **vino epulisque obruebatur, neque ullum tempus sobrio relinquebatur**, Nep., Dion, 4. **Cuius etsi causam mirabatur neque (causa) reperiebatur, tamen**, etc., Nep., Hann., 11. **Voluit ipse ei succedere, neque hoc per senatum efficere potuit**, Nep., Cat., 2. **Putat aliquem donare voluisse nec donasse**, Sen., Ben., VI, 11, 3. **Cum omnes viae obsiderentur, nec pontes perfici possent, imperat militibus Caesar, ut**, etc., Caes., B. Civ., I, 54. **Cum Varus suam fidem ab eo laedi quereretur neque resistere auderet**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 44. Etc.

6. By the Preposition *sine* and the Ablative of a Substantive. It is to be carefully noted that *sine* and the Ablative are often to be interpreted as a negative *adjective* (attributive or Predicate attributive), also sometimes as an *adverb*, suggested by the Substantive in the Ablative. As, *sine armis* = *inermis*; *sine cura* = *securus*; *sine scientia* = *nesciens*.

Ex.—**Levi certamine docet vanam sine viribus iram esse**, Liv., I, 10, 4 (*sine viribus* = strengthless, powerless). **Exercitus sine duce**, Liv., I, 17, 4 (*sine duce* = leaderless). **Augur sedem cepit, dextra manu baculum sine nodo aduncum tenens**, Liv., I, 18, 7 (*sine nodo* = knotless). Cf. **Te sine cura esse iussit**, Cic.,

Att., XII, 6, 4. **L. Antonius litteris sine cura me esse iubet**, Cic., Att., XV, 12, 2. **Haec tu sine ulla bona arte, sine humanitate, sine ingenio, sine litteris intellegis?** Cic., Verr., IV, 44, 98. **Imperatoris uirtutem noueram et uim militum: sine sanguine hoc non posse fieri**, Ter., Eun., 779. **Sine sanguine** adverbially defines **non posse fieri**.

7. After a *negative* clause the English *without* may often be rendered by *nisi* when associated with a finite verb, a participle, or an adjective. Here the translation *except* is to be compared with *without*.

Ex.—**Caesar exercitum neque per insidiosa itinera duxit umquam nisi speculatus locorum situs, neque in Britanniam transvexit nisi** (= *without, except*) **ante: . . . explorasset**, Suet., Caes., 58. **Adversus falsarios tunc primum repertum, ne tabulae nisi pertusae . . . obsignarentur**, Suet., Nero, 17. **In coöptandis per collegia sacerdotibus neminem nisi iuratus nominavit**, Suet., Claud., 22. **Ista exigua sunt nec possunt ad alterum nisi alteri erepta transferri**, Sen., Ira, III, 34, 3. Cf. **iuravit se nisi victorem in castra non reversurum**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 87 (*nisi victorem* = *without being—except as victor*). **Nulla pars usquam, nisi volente propitioque me, floret?** Sen., Ad Nero., Clem., I, 1, 2.

8. The Particle *cum* (*Historical, Causal, and Concessive*) with a negative and the Subjunctive may often be well rendered by *without*, particularly in the second member of a sentence when the former member is affirmative. (Cf. above 5.)

Ex.—**Totiensne me litteras dedisse Romam, cum ad te nullas darem?** Cic., Att., V, 11, 1 (*cum nullas darem* = *without writing any, etc.*). **Attius Clausus, cum pacis ipse auctor a turbatoribus belli premeretur nec** (= *cum nec*) **par factioni esset . . . Romam transfugit**, Liv., II, 16, 4. **Dein, cum meridie dormiturus me recepissem nec obreperet somnus, coepi reputare, etc.**, Plin. Min., VII, 4, 4. **Creditisne elephantorum greges maiores esse, quam usquam armentorum sunt? cum et rarum sit animal, nec** (= *without*) **facile capiatur**, Curt., IX, 8.

289. The Consecutive *quin* and *quin non* occur with the negative phrases *Fieri non posse* (impersonal), as *Fieri non potest*; *Facere non posse* (personal), as *Facere non possum*. The negative in the leading clause, *Facere non possum*; *Fieri non potest*, and the negative in the *quin* clause cancel each other, thus furnishing an affirmative statement. As *quin* after such phrases is Consecutive, so we expect and find Consecutive *ut* and *ut non* identical in meaning with *quin* and *quin non*. The association *quin non* is rare, if it occurs at all.

Ex. { **Fieri non potest quin venerit** = it cannot be but he has come. Asserts a Positive. His coming is affirmatively stated.  
 { **Fieri non potest ut non venerit** = it cannot be that he has *not* come. Denies a Negative. His not coming is denied. His coming is affirmatively stated.

**Fieri non potest quin non venerit** = it cannot be but he has *not* come. Asserts a Negative. His not coming is affirmatively stated.

**Fieri non potest ut venerit** = it cannot be that he has come. Denies a Positive. His coming is negatively stated.

**Facere non possum quin exclamem** = I cannot but exclaim. Asserts a Positive. My exclaiming is affirmatively stated.

**Facere non possum ut non exclamem** = I cannot effect it that I do *not* exclaim. Denies a Negative. My not exclaiming is denied. My exclaiming is affirmatively stated.

**Facere non possum quin non exclamem** = I cannot but not exclaim. Asserts a Negative. My not exclaiming is affirmatively stated.

**Facere non possum ut exclamem** = I cannot effect it that I exclaim. Denies a Positive. My exclaiming is negatively stated.

Ex.—**Fieri nullo modo poterat, quin Cleomeni parceretur**, Cic., Verr., V, 40, 104. **Ut non fieri possit ut non statim alienatio facienda sit**, Cic., Am., XXI, 76. **Fieri non potest, ut non multum ei supersit**, Sen., N. Q., VI, 16, 3. **Non potest fieri, ut non aliquando succedat multa tentanti**, Sen., Ep., III, 8, 2. **Non potest fieri, ut adducar**, Curt., X, 10. **Nec poterat fieri ut ventus bonis viris secundus esset**, Sen., Ben., IV, 28, 3. **Neque fieri potest, ut de ultione agatur animo nesciente**, Sen., Ira, II, 3, 4. **Non potest fieri, ut aer vim igneam usque in aethera elidat**, Sen., N. Q., I, 15, 1. **Fieri non potest, ut aliqua res bona sit, sed optabilis non sit**, Sen., Ep., VII, 5, 5. **Neque fieri potest ut idem sit, quod affectatur et quod affectat**, Sen., Ep., XIV, 1, 6. **Facere non potui quin tibi voluntatem declararem meam**, Cic., Fam., VI, 13, 1. **Ut nihil ad te dem litterarum, facere non possum**, Cic., Att., VIII, 14, 1. **Ut non credam facere non possum**, Cic., Att., II, 20, 1. **Neque ullo modo facere possum ut non et in hoc magistratu et in omni vita sim popularis**, Cic., Leg. Agr., II, 3, 7. **Facere non possum ut veniat (ut pure Result after facere)**. Cf. **Nec effici potest ut mores aliquid ipso homine mortalius esse intellegant**, Plin. Mai., XXXVI, 110.

(a) The verb *nequeo* occurs instead of *non possum*. In colloquial language the Infinitive *facere* is often omitted with the personal *non possum*, as is also the Infinitive *fieri* with the impersonal *non potest*. The dependent Subjunctive, however, must be explained from the standpoint of the omitted Infinitive.

Ex.—**Ille non potuit (=facere non potuit) quin sermone suo aliquem familiarium participauerit de amica eri**, Pl., M. G., 262. **Non possum (=facere non possum) quin exclamem**, Pl., Trin., 705. **Haud possum (=facere haud possum) quin huic operam dem hospiti**, Pl., Pers., 608. **Non possum (=facere non possum), quin loquar**, Pl., Stich., 302. **Neque potest (=neque fieri potest) quin obsit tibi**, Pl., M. G., 602. **Tum plicatricem non potest (=fieri non potest) quin munerem**, Pl., M. G., 693. **Uideo non potesse (=fieri non potesse), quin tibi eius nomen eloquar**, Pl., Barch., 557. Cf. **Potin (=potisne est fieri), ut me ire sinas?** Pl., Trin., 628. **Nequeo (=nequeo facere) quin fleam**, Pl., M. G., 1342. **Nequis (=nequis facere) quin eius aliquid indutus sies**, Pl., Men., 189. **Nequeo quin lacrimem miser**, Ter., Hec., 385.

(b) A *tense* of *facere* or *feri* with *quin* is to be explained by ellipsis of *possum* (in the tense indicated by that of *facere* or *feri*) with the Infinitive of *facere* or *feri*.

Ex.—*Non faciam* (= *facere non potero*) *quin scias*, Pl., M. G., 283. *Numquam quisquam faciet* (= *facere poterit*) *quin soror ista sit germana huius*, Pl., M. G., 473. *Non faciam quin ego illum deseram*, Pl., Amph., 880. Cf. *Tu me viuos hodie numquam facies, quin sim Sosia*, Pl., Amph., 394. *Numquam fiet* (= *numquam fieri poterit*) *hodie haec quin saltet*, Pl., Stich., 752.

(c) Instead of *Fieri non potest quin* or *Facere non possum quin* may be used, and is often used in the best prose, *non possum non* with the Infinitive. The expression *potest ut* with the Subjunctive is explained by supplying *fieri*. Hence, *Fieri potest ut*.

Ex.—*Hic (dolor) non potest non augeri*, Cic., Att., III, 15, 2 (cf. *Fieri non potest quin hic dolor augeatur*). *Non possum eius causam non dolere*, Cic., Att., XI, 6, 5. *Non possum eum non diligere*, Cic., Fam., IX, 17, 2. *Non possum te non accusare*, Cic., Fam., V, 14, 2. *Hoc non potest in te non honorifice esse dictum*, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 2. *Si nato, non possum in aqua non esse*, Sen., Const. Sap., VII, 5. *Iracundus non potest aliquando iratus non esse*, Sen., Ira, I, 4, 1. *Quod non facere non potuit*, Sen., Ben., III, 19, 1. *Non potest non recipere, quod dedit*, Sen., Ben., V, 11, 3. *Vir bonus non potest non facere quod facit*, Sen., Ben., VI, 21, 2. *Alterum pendet et non fieri potest: alterum non potest non fuisse*, Sen., Ep., XVI, 4, 5. *Potest ut alii ita arbitrentur*, Pl., Pseud., 636 (= *fieri potest ut alii ita arbitrentur*). Observe in this connection the irregular *ut ne*: *Potin ut molestus ne sis?* Pl., Epid., 66 (= *potisne est fieri ut molestus ne sis?*)

290. The element *qui* in *quin* is not only *Relative* but *Interrogative*. Hence *quin* is also an Interrogative particle = *how not?* As an Interrogative particle it occurs with *negative verbs* expressing *doubt* and *uncertainty*, strengthened by an additional negative, *non*, etc. It occurs also with such verbs appearing in a Rhetorical Question implying a negative answer; as, *Quis dubitat?* = *nemo dubitat*. The verbs and phrases are: *Non dubito*; *non est dubium*; *nihil dubii est*; *non quicquam dubii est*; *nemo dubitat*; *haud (non) dubius (sum)*; *non venit in dubium*; *quis dubitat?* *quid dubium (dubii) est?* *numquid dubium est?* *num est dubium?* *non ambigitur*; also, *negare non possum*; *negari non potest*; *quis ignorat?* *quid causae?* etc.

Ex.—*Nec dubito, quin exitiosum bellum impendeat*, Cic., Att., IX, 9, 2. *Mihi dubium non est, quin is vetera sua beneficia conservari velit*, Cic., Fam., XIII, 4, 2. *Mihi non est dubium, quin res spectet ad castra*, Cic., Att., XIV, 21, 3. *Alius aiebat nihil esse dubii, quin illa mole vinci Graecia posset*, Sen., Ben., VI, 31, 2. *Mira fulminis opera sunt, nec quicquam dubii relinquentia, quin divina sit illis potentia*, Sen., N. Q., II, 31, 1. *Nemo in Sicilia dubitat*

quin eo sit occisus, quod, etc., Cic., Verr., III, 25, 63. **Dareus assentiebatur** haud dubius, quin vera deferrentur a Graecis, Curt., V, 32. **Alexander haud dubius, quin (hi) eorum opera redigi possent in potestatem**, Curt., VII, 26. **Illud non veniet in dubium, quin se exemerit turbae**, Sen., Ira, III, 25, 3. **Dubitare non possumus, quin nihil sit animis admixtum**, Cic., Tusc., I, 29, 71. **Quis dubitaret, quin ea voluntas fuisset testantis**, etc.? Quint., VII, 6, 10. **Quis dubitare potest, quin deorum immortalium munus sit, quod vivimus?** Sen., Ep., XIV, 2, 1. **Quisquam dubitabit, quin tu istam invidiam pecuniae conciliandae causa susceperis?** Cic., Verr., II, 55, 137. **Num dubitas, quin specimen naturae capi deceat ex optima quaque natura?** Cic., Tusc., I, 14, 31. **Num est dubium quin beneficium aliquando a servo dominus accipiat?** Sen., Ben., III, 28, 1. **Numquid dubium est, quin contraria sit beneficio iniuria**, Sen., Ben., IV, 15, 1. **An dubitas, quin ea me cura vehementissime sollicitet?** Cic., Fam., II, 16, 5. **Ego dubitem** (*Potential Rhetorical Question*) **quin summo in odio sim?** Cic., Att., XIV, 1, 2. Cf. **Neque ambigitur, quin Brutus idem... pessimo publico id facturus fuerit, si, etc.**, Liv., II, 1, 3. **Praetor respondit non contradici, quin... amicitia de integro reconcilietur**, Liv., VIII, 2, 2. **Nec discrepat, quin dictator eo anno A. Cornelius fuerit**, Liv., VIII, 40, 1. **Legatus respondit... negare non posse, quin rectius sit etiam ad pacatos barbaros exercitum mitti**, Liv., XL, 36, 2. **Non potest dici, quin commode fiat**, Cic., Corn., IV, 28, 39. **Quis ignorat quin tria Graecorum genera sint vere?** Cic., Flac., XXVII, 64. Cf. Quint., XII, 7, 8 (*Quis ignorat quin, etc.?*). **Num quid est causae quin amicos nostros Stoicos dimittamus?** Cic., Tusc., I, 32, 78. **Quid causa est quin virgis te usque ad saturitatem sauciem?** Pl., Rud., 758. **Nulla causast quin me condones cruci**, Pl., Rud., 1070.

(a) In some cases with *quin Interrogative*, the dependent Subjunctive takes, instead of the *Simple Tense* (*Present* or *Imperfect*), the forms *-rus sit*, *-rus esset*, when the time (*future*) of the *Simple Tense* would not be clear from the context, or when the future time is to be emphasized. Again, the idea of *objecting* may obtain as the dominant idea of some of the verbs of the above class (as *negare*). In this case *quin* may be accepted as *Final* and then a *Simple Tense*, if the Subjunctive is the only Tense to be used. The line between *quin Interrogative* and *quin Final* and *Consecutive* cannot, in all cases, be clearly identified and expressed in translating. The following examples present cases in which *quin* is properly used with *-rus sit*, *-rus esset*, after *non dubito*, etc.

Ex.—**Non dubito quin in Formiano mansurus sis**, Cic., Att., IX, 10, 8. **Non dubito quin is lenis in illum futurus sit idque iam declaraverit**, Cic., Att., XI, 12, 3. **Non dubito quin de his rebus ante horam quartam Hirtius certiore me sit facturus**, Cic., Fam., XI, 1, 5. **Non dubitabat Minucius, quin iste illo die rem illam quaesiturus non esset**, Cic., Verr., II, 29, 72.

REM. The Subjunctive with *quin* after *non dubito*, etc., may introduce an action imposed as a duty upon and expected of the subject.

Ex.—*Non dubito, quin ad te statim veniam*, Cic., Att., VIII, 11, B, 3 (here *veniam* = *I am to come*, not *I come* nor *I shall come*). *Haud dubium erat, quin cum Aequis alter consulum bellum gereret*, Liv., III, 4, 2. *Haud dubia res visa, quin per Invia circa nec trita antea, quamvis longe ambitu, circumduceret agmen*, Liv., XXI, 36, 4.

(b) After *non dubito*, *non est dubium*, etc., *quin* = *I do not doubt*, there is no doubt, that, the negative *that not* is expressed by *quin* and a pure negative: *Non dubito quin non*; *non est dubium quin non*, etc.

Ex.—(*Dicit*) *de equitibus hostium, quin nemo eorum progredi modo extra agmen audeat, ne ipsos quidem debere dubitare*, Caes., B. G., VII, 66. *Non dubitabat Xeno, quin ab Areopagitis invito Memmio impetrari non posset*, Cic., Att., V, 11, 6. *Mihi non est dubium, quin (legiones) venturae non sint*, Cic., Fam., II, 17, 5. *Et dubitas, quin sensus in morte nullus sit, cum in eius simulacro videas esse nullum sensum?* Cic., Tusc., I, 38, 92. *Numquid dubium esse cuiquam potest, quin nihil sit tam inquietum quam aer?* Sen., N. Q., VI, 16, 4. *Nec ceteri dubitabant, quin coniurationis indicium suppressurus non fuisset, nisi auctor aut particeps*, Curt., VI, 30. *Hoc haud dubium est, quin Chremes tibi non det gnatum*, Ter., And., 391.

(c) *Non dubito, non (haud) dubium est*, etc., allow the Accusative with the Infinitive, rarely in Cicero, quite frequently in Livy and Curtius. In Nepos the Accusative with the Infinitive is the usage.

Ex.—*Gratos tibi esse, qui de me rumores afferuntur, non dubito*, Cic., Fam., XVI, 21, 2. *Cui nos et caritate et amore tuum officium praestatueros non debes dubitare*, Cic., Fam., XII, 16, 2. *Illud me Cordubae pro contione dixisse nemo vocabit in dubium*, Cic., Fam., X, 31, 4. *Nec te dubito eadem prae te ferre*, Liv., I, 23, 7. *Cum haud cuiquam in dubio esset bellum ab Tarquiniiis imminere*, etc., Liv., II, 3, 1. *Quis est, qui dubitet illos... agrum nostrum invasuros?* Liv., V, 5, 3. *Brennus signa convertit haud dubius facilem victoriam fore*, Liv., V, 38, 4. *Plus habiturum me auctoritatis non dubitabam ad excitandum te, si, etc.*, Sen., Ad Polyb., Cons., I, 1. *Talia esse scripta eius non dubito*, Sen., Ep., XVI, 5, 12. *Nec dubito te eadem cogitatione terrori*, Plin. Min., V, 5, 7. *Neque dubito te... reversurum*, Plin. Min., Ep. Plin. et Trai., IX, 1. *Nemo dubitat longe duos ceteris praeferendos*, Quint., X, 1, 73. *Philosophorum quis dubitet Platonem esse praecipuum?* Quint., X, 1, 81. *Ut nemo dubitet potuisse renovari bellum atrox*, Tac., H., II, 46. *Eum deterritum nemo dubitavit*, Suet., Nero, 28. *Nemini dubium erat iustum piumque bellum suscipi*, Suet., Galb., 10. *Non dubito fore plerosque, qui, Nep., Praef. Miltiades non dubitans ad reges aures consilia sua perventura*, Nep., Milt., 3. Cf. Nep., Lys., 3 (*quam (sententiam) ille se habiturum non dubitabat*); Ages., 3 (*barbarus non dubitans hostes impetum facturos*); Alcib., 9 (*neque dubitabat facile se consecuturum*), etc. The Accusative with the Infinitive after *dubito*, etc., not observed in Caesar.

(d) *Dubitare* in the sense of *to hesitate*, with or without a negative, is construed with the Simple Infinitive, while *quin* with the Subjunc-

tive is not excluded with *dubitare* and a negative (*non dubitat quin* = *he does not hesitate to*, etc.).

Ex.—**C. Gracchus multis dixit, sibi in somnis quaesturam petere dubitanti Ti. fratrem visum esse dicere**, Cic., Div., I, 26, 56. **Hic vos dubitabitis tantam istius audaciam vindicare?** Cic., Verr., II, 44, 109. **Quid dubitas uti temporis opportunitate?** Caes., B. Civ., II, 34. **Ipsi transire flumen non dubitarunt**, Caes., B. G., II, 23. **Iisdem mandatum, ut occiderent, si venire dubitaret**, Curt., X, 25. **Non dubitavit, simulac conspexit hostem, configere**. Nep., Pelop., 5. **Venire ne dubitaret**, Nep., Ages., 4. **Tum dubitandum non existimavit, quin ad eos proficisceretur**, Caes., B. G., II, 2. **Domitius sibi dubitandum non putavit, quin productis legionibus proelio decertaret**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 37.

(e) A dependent (Indirect) Question may, of course, follow *dubito* and *dubium est*, with and without a negative. (For *Dubito an* with Subjunctive, in classical Latin, *vid.* 245.)

Ex.—**Qui qualis sit futurus, ne vos quidem dubitatis**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 32. **Quod sine praenomine familiariter ad me epistolam misisti, primum addubitavi num a Volumnio esset**, etc., Cic., Fam., VII, 32, 1. **Dubium illi non erat, quid futurum esset**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 8, 1. **Mihi dubitanti, quid me facere par sit. permagnum pondus affert benevolentia erga illum**, etc., Cic., Att., IX, 9, 2. **Reperies aliquem, qui dubitet utrum malit meis testibus an tuis defensoribus credere**, Cic., Verr., II, 33, 81. **Dubitare virtuti an fidei popularium minus crederet**, Sal., Jug., 74.

(f) *Mirum* with *quin* and the Subjunctive is to be considered and compared with *mirum ni* and the Indicative, or Subjunctive, according to character of the Conditional sentence. The former (*mirum quin* (= it is wonderful (a wonder) *how not*)) expresses a negative idea; the latter (*mirum ni* (= it is wonderful (a wonder) *if not*)) expresses an affirmative idea.

Ex.—**Mirum quin tu illo tecum diuitias feras**, Pl., Trin., 495. **Mirum quin ab auo eius aut proauo acciperem, qui sunt mortui**, Pl., Trin., 967. **Mira sunt, ni illic homost aut dormitor aut sector zonarius**, Pl., Trin., 862. **Mirumque adeost, ni hunc Aetoli sibi fecere agoranomum**, Pl., Capt., 821.

291. The particle *quin* with the Indicative is used *interrogatively* to express an *encouragement*, *incitement*, *exhortation*, or a general *Imperative* sense. (*Vid.* 200, 3, a, etc.) It also occurs with the Imperative in an emphatic presentation of the Imperative. Again, it occurs with the Indicative in making a statement with a *strong assurance* or *confirmation*.

(a) To express an *encouragement*, *exhortation*, etc., *interrogatively*.

Ex.—*Quin urges istam occasionem?* Cic., Fam., VII, 8, 2. *Quin validioris occupas gratiam?* Curt., VII, 16. *Quin potius vitam brevem colligis placidamque et tibi et ceteris praestas?* Sen., Ira, III, 43, 1. *Quin mala vestra circumspicitis?* Sen., Ad Gal., Vit. Beat., XXVII, 6. *Quin quiescis? i directum, cor meum, ac suspende te,* Pl., Capt., 636. *I, quid stas, lapis?* *Quin accipis?* Ter., Heaut., 832. Cf. *Quin, si vigor iuventae inest, conscendimus equos invisimusque praesentes nostrarum ingenia?* Liv., I, 57, 7.

(b) With the Imperative in an *emphatic* statement of the *Imperative*; also with the Indicative in making a statement with strong *assurance* or *confirmation*.

Ex.—*Quin tu otiosus esto,* Ter., Ad., 533. *Quin tu hoc crimen obice ubi licet agere,* Cic., Rosc. Com., IX, 25. *Quin tu uno verbo dic,* Ter., And., 45. *Quin etiam ipsum diem memoria teneo,* Cic., Fam., VII, 3, 1. *Quin etiam ipse (epistolam multis dedi describendam,* Cic., Att., VIII, 9, 1. *Quin potius quaero aliquod usu bonum, quod sentiam,* Sen., Ad Gal., Vit. Beat., II, 4. *Quin etiam ipsi parentes nec probitati neque modestiae parvulos assuefaciunt,* Tac., Or., 29. *Quin et convivium effluvio lacus appositum magna formidine cunctos affecit,* Tac., Ann., XII, 57. *Quin etiam dixit Xenophontem eadem familia ortum,* Tac., Ann., XII, 61. *Quin suum ipse interdum ignorat nomen,* Pl., Capt., 560. *Quin tibi hanc operam dico,* Pl., Pseud., 560. *Quin iam virginem despondi,* Ter., Ad., 735.

### The Subjunctive with Verbs of Fearing.

292. In Latin there is always associated with a verb of Fearing the *presence* of a verb of *Wishing*. The Subjunctive is, therefore, *Final*. The *implied* verb of *Wishing* determines the form in which the dependent Subjunctive is expressed or, more exactly, the *particle* by which it is introduced. Hence, when the dependent Subjunctive action is *wished* or *desired*, coupled with the fear or apprehension that it *will not occur*, it is presented by *ut* and the Subjunctive. Again, when the dependent Subjunctive action is *not wished* or *desired*, coupled with the fear or apprehension that it *will occur*, it is presented by *ne* and the Subjunctive. As the particle (*ut* or *ne*) by which the dependent Subjunctive is introduced is determined by the implied verb of *Wishing* or *Desiring*, the Subjunctive is clearly the *Complementary Final Subjunctive of Design*. In every case, however the dependent Subjunctive may be presented, however the leading verb may be stated, whether with or without a negative, consider whether the dependent action is one *wished* or *not wished*. If *wished*, use *ut*; if *not wished*, use *ne*. In fact, after a verb of Fearing the *construction* is decided by the implied verb of *Wishing*, while the *translation* is decided by the verb of *Fearing*.



- Thus: { I *fear* that your friend *is coming*.  
 = I *wish* your friend *may not come* = I *want* your friend  
 not to come.  
*Vereor ne amicus tuus veniat.*
- Again, { I *fear* that your friend *is not coming*.  
 = I *wish* that your friend *may come* = I *want* your friend  
 to come.  
*Vereor ut amicus tuus veniat.*
- Again, { I *fear* that *some one is doing* the same thing.  
 = I *wish* that *no one may do* the same thing.  
*Vereor ne quis idem faciat.*
- Again, { I *fear* that *no one is doing* the same thing.  
 = I *wish* that *some one may do* the same thing.  
*Vereor ut quis idem faciat.*
- Again, { I *do not fear* that your friend *is not coming*.  
 = I *wish* that your friend *may come*.  
*Non vereor ut amicus tuus veniat.*
- Again, { I *do not fear* that your friend *is coming*.  
 = I *wish* that your friend *may not come*.  
*Non vereor ne amicus tuus veniat.*
- Again, { I *do not fear* that *some one will not do* the same thing.  
 = I *wish* that *some one may do* the same thing.  
*Non vereor ut quis idem faciat.*
- Again, { I *do not fear* that *some one will do* the same thing.  
 = I *wish* that *no one may do* the same thing.  
*Non vereor ne quis idem faciat.*
- Again, { I *do not fear* that *no one will do* the same thing.  
 = I *wish* that *some one may do* the same thing.  
*Non vereor ut quis (ne nemo) idem faciat.*

The realization of the matter apprehended (*feared*), whether desired or not desired, is *future*. Hence we find after a verb of *Fear*ing the *Present* and *Imperfect* Subjunctive, representing, respectively, the *Future First* from the Present and a given Past, and the *Perfect* and *Pluperfect* Subjunctive, representing, respectively, the *Future Second* (*Exactum*) from the Present and a given Past.

Thus, *Timeo ne veniat* = I *fear* that he *is coming* = I *fear* that it *will turn out* that he *is coming*; also, I *fear* that he *will come*.

*Timebam ne veniret* = I *was afraid* that he *was coming* = I *was afraid* that it *would turn out* that he *was coming*; also, I *was afraid* that he *would come*.

*Timeo ne venerit* = I *fear* that he *has come* = I *fear* that it *will turn out* that he *has come*; also, I *fear* that he *will have come*.

*Timebam ne venisset* = I was afraid that he had come = I was afraid that it would turn out that he had come; also, I was afraid that he would have come.

From the English standpoint both renderings (the *Present* (*Coincident*) and *Future*) are given by the Latin simple Tenses. That is, while the ascertainment is essentially and necessarily future, it may apply to an action conceived as *present*, *coincident*, or *antecedent*. The construction obtains—

(a) With verbs to fear, etc.: *Vereri, timere, metuere, pavere, pertimescere, extimescere, horrere, torqueri*. If the *sense* of the verb excludes the *idea* of *wishing*—as *horrere, torqueri*—then *ut* with the Subjunctive does not occur.

Ex.—*Timeo, ut (labores) sustineas*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 2, 3. *Vereor ut satis diligenter actum in senatu sit de litteris meis*, Cic., Att., VI, 4, 2. *Rem frumentariam, ut satis commodè supportari posset, timere dicebant*, Caes., B. G., I, 39. *Veritus ne nocturni temporis licentia oppidum diriperetur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 21. *Maerere hoc eius eventu vereor ne invidi magis quam amici sit*, Cic., Am., IV, 14. *Caesar, timens ne navibus nostri circumvenirentur, duplicem eo loco fecerat vallum*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 63. *Vereor ne putidum sit scribere ad te*, Cic., Att., I, 14, 1. *Metuo ne vexetur Epirus*, Cic., Att., IX, 9, 2. *Nisi eos timere putas, ne sub regno sint, qui, etc.*, Cic., Att., VII, 7, 5. *Charta ipsa ne nos prodat pertimesco*, Cic., Att., II, 20, 3. *Pertimuerunt ne caritate patriae ductus aliquando ab ipsis descisceret*, Nep., Alc., 5. *Unum illud extimescebam, ne quid turpiter facerem, vel dicam, iam effecissem*, Cic., Att., IX, 7, 1. *Quo modo me nunc putas torqueri, ne qua res eorum compositionem impediatur?* Cic., Att., IX, 13, A, 2. *Hic, ne quid mihi prorogetur, horreo*, Cic., Att., V, 21, 3. *Id paues, ne ducas tu illam: tu autem ut ducas*, Ter., And., 349. *Vereor ne quid in ista re minus commodè fiat*, Cic., Att., I, 16, 4. *Timui, ne quis de mea fide dubitaret*, Cic., Verr., I, 6, 17. *Vereor, ne quis haec fingi a me arbitretur*, Cic., Verr., I, 53, 138. *Verebar ne cui obtreclatorum viderer Lepido offensus, etc.*, Cic., Fam., X, 23, 1. *Veritus ne qua seditio oriretur*, Caes., B. G., VII, 28. *Ne metuit quidem quisquam, ne quis ediceret*, Cic., Verr., I, 43, 111. *Non sum veritus ne viderer assentari*, Cic., Att., VIII, 9, 1. *Verendum mihi non erat ne quid invidiae mihi in posteritatem redundaret*, Cic., Cat., I, XII, 29. *Neque verendum est ne quid excidat aut ne quid in terram defluat aut ne plus aequo quid in amicitiam congeratur*, Cic., Am., XVI, 58. *Quicquid ne patiatur timet*, Sen., Ep., IX, 3, 32. *Timuit, ne quam liberiore vocem extremus dolor mitteret*, Sen., Ira, III, 19, 3. *Verendum est, ne quando in muscipula syllabas capiam*, Sen., Ep., V, 8, 1 (V, 7, 6). *Me metuo ne etiam in ceteris rebus honesto otio privarim*, Cic., Fam., IV, 44 (*privarim* = that I have *deprived* = that it will turn out that I have *deprived*). *Iam vereor, ne senectutem post me reliquerim*, Sen., Ep., III, 5, 1. *Eam ueretur, ne perierit*, Pl., Rud., 391. *Ne quid peccasset pertimescebat*, Cic., Sest., XLIX, 105.

**REM.** The particle *ne* (= *that*) is continued by *neve* (*neu*) (= *and that*); by *neque* (*nec*) (= *and that*).

**Ex.**—*Eos nunc homines metuo ne obsint mihi neve* (= *and that*) *obstant uspiam*, Pl., M. G., 996. *Praeter ea, quae denuntiabantur, ne Veientium neu Sabinorum id consilium esset, timere* (= *timebant*), Liv., III, 16, 2. *Non possumus non vereri, ne male comparati sitis, nec* (= *and that*) *tantum rei publicae prosit, quod*, etc., Liv., XL, 46, 4.

(b) With a *substantive* or *phrase* in which the substantive *decides* the construction (*ne, ut*); as *Timor, metus, pavor, formido, periculum, verecundia*, etc.

**Ex.**—*In timorem Afranius Petreiusque perveniunt, ne frumento intercluderentur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 61. *Timore perterriti, ne supplicio afficerentur*, Caes., B. G., I, 27. *Magnus multitudini timor est iniectus, ne qua repentina vis in civitate existeret*, Nep., Alc., 3. *Timore aeger, ne quis relicta (uxore) potiretur*, Tac., Ann., XII, 51. *Timore occulto, ne L. Silanus... imperium invaderet*, Tac., Ann., XV, 52. *Manebat metus, ne quis principum eadem imperitaret*, Tac., Ann., XII, 54. *Metum Neroni fecerat, ne invaderet pavidum*, etc., Tac., Ann., XVI, 15. *Sunt in metu, ne afficiantur aliquando*, Cic., Fin., II, 16, 53. *Senatui metum iniecit, ne tum sustineri nec in urbe seditio nec in castris posset*, Liv., V, 7, 4. *Diu id negatum est Cleandri metu, ne offenderet regem*, Curt., VII, 9. *Nec nisi verecundia, ne obtractare parentis gloriae videretur, destitit*, Suet., Nero, 18. *Summum erat periculum, ne plane alienaretur a senatu*, Cic., Att., I, 17, 9. *Id erat periculum ne eius usitatus honos impeditur*, Cic., Philip., III, 9, 23. *Periculum esse, ne exutum impedimentis exercitum nequiquam incolumem traduxisset*, Liv., XXI, 33, 9. *Sed nec virtuti periculum est, ne admota oculis revilescat*, Sen., Tranq. An., XVII, 2. *Non est periculum, ne quid perdidisse te sentias*, Sen., Polyb., Cons., XII, 3. *Pavor erat, ne extemplo castra hostis aggrediretur*, Liv., XLII, 60, 3. *Ex formidine, ne Germanicus habere imperium quam expectare mallet*, Tac., Ann., I, 7.

(c) With an *adjective* in which is expressed the idea of *fear* or *apprehension*; as, *Sollicitus, anxius, pavidus*, etc.

**Ex.**—*Ille sollicitus, ne quid novi afferrent, percontatur*, etc., Curt., IX, 23. *Tumida res est, tam sollicita est, ne quem ante se videat quam ne post se*, Sen., Ep., XII, 2, 11. *Animus sollicitus est, ut ea, quibus delectatur, ad extremum usque permaneant*, Sen., Ep., XVI, 3, 6. *Ne qua seditio aut bellum oriretur anxius erat*, Sal., Jug., 6. *Bomilcar timore socii anxius, ne omisso vetere consilio novum quaereret*, Sal., Jug., 70. *Pavidi, ne, iam subrutis muris, facta in urbem via esset, fossam intra murum ducere instituunt*, Liv., XXXVIII, 7, 7.

(d) The two negatives *ne—non* (*nullus*), etc., the *non* defining a word of the sentence, occur quite often after the *Predicate*, both *with* and *without* a negative (*non*). The two negatives are a more emphatic representative of *ut*.

Ex.—*Veritus, ne ille Italiam dimittendam non existimaret, instituit, etc.*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 25. *Labienu veritus, ne hostium impetum sustinere non posset, litteras Caesari remittit*, Caes., B. G., V, 47. *Sed unam rem vereor ne non probes*, Cic., Philip, II, 14, 34. *Timuisse respondit, ne ipsi occidendi regis causa non esset*, Curt., VI, 43. *Vereor ne praesenti fortunae tuae sufficere non possis*, Curt., VII, 31. *Vereor ne consolatio nulla possit vera reperiri*, Cic., Fam., VI, 1, 3. *Ex his rebus hoc vereor, ne non putet senatus nos oportere decedere*, Cic., Att., V, 21, 3. *Non vereor ne hoc officium meum P. Servilio iudici non probem*, Cic., Verr., IV, 38, 82. *Non vereor ne tua virtus opinioni hominum non respondeat*, Cic., Fam., II, 5, 2. *Neque veritus sum ne sustinere tua (beneficia) vel innumerabilia non possem*, Cic., Fam., II, 6, 2. (Cf. *Unum vereor, ne senatus Pompeium nolit dimittere*, Cic., Att., V, 18, 1. *Veremur, ne forte non aliorum utilitatibus servisse videamur*, Plin. Min., I, 8, 13. *Respondit veritum, ne iurgium inter amatorem et exoletum non sine risu detulisset*, Curt., VI, 28.

REM. 1. The combination *ut ne* never substitutes *ne* after a verb, etc., of Fearing.

REM. 2. It cannot be accepted that *ut* occurs with a verb of Fearing in a positive sense instead of *ne*. When this is apparently the case *ut* does not introduce the object of the verb of Fearing and does not directly depend upon it. It is rather Consecutive and introduces a Result.

Ex.—*Nam, ut ferula caedas meritum maiora subire verbera, non vereor*, Hor., Sat., I, 3, 120. The object of *vereor* may be supplied by *illud (hoc)*, defined by Consecutive *ut* (= this (*such a thing, such a result as that* (= *ut*) I do not fear it; or, *For as to this that* (= *ut*) I do not fear it).

(e) While the *ascertainment* of the dependent (Subjunctive) action after a verb of Fearing is, as has been stated, *future*, and while the simple Tenses of the Subjunctive are regularly employed to express an action both in the Present and Future *from the English standpoint* (I fear that he *is* coming and I fear that he *will* come = *veniat*), yet it cannot be doubted that the forms *-rus sit*, *-rus esset*, occasionally occur to express a *future* conception of the dependent action when the future time is *emphatically* presented, particularly when a *designation of time* is stated in the dependent clause or when the *Present* is *contrasted* with the *Future* in the same sentence. The sense often well reproduced by the periphrastic translation, *is going to* or *intends to*.

Ex.—*Non timeo ne nunc veniat sed ne venturus sit postea* (in this sentence the action conceived as *present* (*veniat*) is *contrasted* with the action conceived and stated as *future* (*non venturus sit*)). *Sed non vereor ne aut meae vitae modestia parum valitura sit in posterum contra falsos rumores, aut ne ii, qui me non amant propter meam in Caesarem constantiam, non malint mei quam sui amicos*

**similes habere**, Cic., Fam., XI, 28, 8. **Verebatur ne populus Romanus ab isto eas poenas vi repetisse videretur, quas veritus esset ne iste legibus ac vestro iudicio non esset persoluturus**, Cic., Verr., V, 63, 163.

(f) A dependent clause with *ne* is often best interpreted from the standpoint of a verb of Fearing *implied* but not expressed.

**Ex.—Magnam haec res Caesari difficultatem afferebat: si reliquam partem hiemis uno in loco legiones contineret, ne cuncta Gallia deficeret**, Caes., B. G., VII, 10 (here *ne*, etc., = *he was afraid that*, etc.). **Maiores inde mole Sabini bellum parabant. Adversus eos et ne (= and for fear that) quid simul ab Tusculo repentini periculi oriretur**, P. Valerius quatum T. Lucretius iterum consules facti, Liv., II, 16, 2.

**293.** A verb of Fearing is construed with the simple Infinitive as the object, when its subject is the same with that of the *dependent* clause. In this case the idea of *not wishing* (*disinclination*) inhering in the idea of fearing prevails. The verb *to fear* may be here rendered by *to be afraid to* (*to be shy of*) (= *not to wish, to be unwilling*).

**Ex.—Caesar timebat tantae magnitudini fluminis exercitum obicere**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 64. **Veritus sum deesse Pompei salutis, cum ille aliquando non defuisset meae**, Cic., Fam., VI, 6, 6. **Vereor laudare praesentem**, Cic., N. D., I, 21, 58. **Eloqui metuo**, Curt., X, 9. **Non desinere timeo**, Sen., Ep., VII, 3, 24. **Indicta causa, veritus est occidere**, Curt., III, 32. **Liberam vocem innocentis audire metuis**, Curt., VIII, 25. **Non verebor nominare singulos**, Tac., Or., 27.

**294.** A verb to fear (*vereri, timere*, etc.) may be interpreted as a verb *Sentiendi*—that is, as expressing mental state (*disinclination, unwillingness*). Hence a verb of Fearing, in this sense, particularly when the subject of the leading Predicate is different from that of the dependent clause, is construed with the Accusative and Infinitive.

**Ex.—Timet (= he is apprehensive (does not want)) Caesarem consulem designari prius quam exercitum et provinciam traderit**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 11, 3. **Ego me cupiditatis regni crimen subitum timerem?** Liv., II, 7, 9. **Intacti abissent, ni cedenti instaturum alterum timuissent**, Liv., X, 36, 3. **Celebratam Macedonum fortitudinem ad ludibrium recidissee verebantur**, Curt., IX, 29.

(a) In like manner the Accusative with the Infinitive is used after phrases in which a substantive (*metus, timor*) occurs as the *characteristic factor*. Here, also, the substantive expresses an abstract mental state in apposition with which stands the *Accusative with the Infinitive*.

**Ex.—Subest timor ea (utilitate) neglecta ne dignitatem quidem posse retineri**, Cic., De Or., II, 82, 334. **Timor incessit animos consilia sua emanasse**, Liv., VII, 39, 4. **Colonium ingens metus erat defecturam**, Liv., III, 22, 2. **Quos metus ceperat nihil non ausurum eum in summo magistratu concordi et consentiente collega**, Suet., Caes., 19.

**295.** After a verb of Fearing and after a substantive of like sense, *metus*, etc., a *Dependent* or *Indirect Question* follows. This dependency may best be explained by the idea of *uncertainty* or *doubt* implied in that of *Fearing*. But translate the verb of Fearing and the substantive literally.

Ex.—*Pomptinum cupio valere, et, quod scribis in urbem introisse, vereor quid sit*, Cic., Att., VII, 7, 3 (*vereor, I fear (I am anxious, I am uncertain, I am in doubt)*). *Haec quo sint eruptura timeo*, Cic., Att., II, 20, 5. *Quorum evaderent timebat*, Nep., Dion, 8. *Vereor quam in partem iuris consulti quod sum dicturus accipiant*, Plin. Min., V, 7, 2. *Nec tam verentur quid de sua causa quam quid de moribus sentias*, Plin. Min., Pan., 80. *Timeo quid rerum gesserim*, Pl., M. G., 397. *Bassus pudore, seu metu quisnam exitus foret, intra domum opperiebatur*, Tac., H., III, 12.

**296.** The Imperatives *vide*, *videamus*, and the form *videndum est* are construed with *ne* and *ut* and the Subjunctive. Here the verb *videre*, essentially a verb *Studii aut Voluntatis*, assumes the meaning of a verb expressing both *wish* and *apprehension*, with the idea of *apprehension* dominant. Thus *Vide ne* = *see to it that not* (coupled with an applied apprehension *that*) the phrase is idiomatically rendered *perhaps*. Again, *Vide ut* = *see to it that* (coupled with an implied apprehension *that not*). This phrase is idiomatically rendered *perhaps not*. It is to be observed that the dependent clause introduced by *ne* is a matter mildly stated as *not wished*, while that introduced by *ut* is a matter mildly stated as *one wished*. In this connection *ne non* occurs as the equivalent of *ut*.

Ex.—*Vide ne "a malis" dici verius possit*, Cic., Tusc., I, 34, 83 (= *see to it that it cannot be said = perhaps it can be said, etc.*). *Vide ne idem dicant*, Cic., Fat., XIX, 44. *Vide ne ille non solum temperantia, sed etiam intellegentia te atque istos vicerit*, Cic., Verr., IV, 44, 98. *Sed quoniam tantum in ea arte ponitis, videte ne contra vos tota nata sit*, Cic., Acad., II, 28, 92. *Videte ne vobis turpissimum sit id, quod accepistis, etc.*, Cic., Imp. Pomp., V, 12. *Vide ne mea coniectura multo sit verior*, Cic., Cluent., XXXV, 97. *Videamus ne (ratio) nostra superstitione et depravatione superetur*, Cic., Div., II, 67, 136. *Videamus ne haec oratio sit hominum assentantium nostrae imbecillitati*, Cic., Tusc., III, 6, 13. *Videamus ne, ut acervus ex sui generis granis, sic beata vita ex sui similibus partibus effici debeat*, Cic., Tusc., V, 15, 45. *Videndum est ne non satis sit id, quod apud Platonem est in philosophos dictum*, Cic., Off., I, 9, 28 (= *it has to be seen to, that it is enough = perhaps it is not enough*). *Videndum est ut honeste vos (Romae) esse possitis*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 14, 1. *Vide igitur, ne nulla sit divinatio*, Cic., Div., II, 4, 12. *Vide ne neminem reperire possimus*, Cic., Div., II, 64, 131. *Sed credere omnia vide ne non sit necesse*, Cic., Div., II, 13, 31.

REM. The verbs *cogitare*, *vigilare*, in the forms *cogitandum est*, *vigila*, etc., occur in the sense of *videre*.

Ex.—*Caput illud est, ut, si ista vita tibi commodior esse videatur, cogitandum tamen sit ne tutior non sit*, Cic., *Fam.*, IV, 9, 4. *Vigila*, Chrysippe, *ne tuam causam...deseras*, Cic., *Fat.*, VI, 12. Cf. *Visam ne nocte hac quipiam turbauerint*, Pl., *Capt.*, 127.

(a) The verb *videre*, etc., in the sense above given is not to be *confounded* with *videre* as a verb *Studii aut Voluntatis* without the associated idea of apprehension. In the following examples the verb *videre* is best interpreted as a verb *Studii aut Voluntatis* with *ut* and *ne* (= *that (to)*, *that not (not to)*).

Ex.—*Vide ne fortitudo minime sit rabiosa*, Cic., *Tusc.*, IV, 22, 50 (*vide ne* = *see to it that not*, etc.). *Videndum est in utrisque, ne quid humile, summissum, molle faciamus*, Cic., *Tusc.*, IV, 30, 64. *Videndum est ne obsit benignitas*, Cic., *Off.*, I, 14, 42. *Videamus ut, quicquid acciderit, fortiter feramus*, Cic., *Att.*, XIV, 13, 3.

## The Final Sentence of Result or Tendency.

297. In the Final clause of *Result* is expressed the *Result* (End) of the leading action or, more exactly stated, the *Result* (End) to which the leading action *tends*, or, in case of the Relative, to which the *general character* of the subject or object in the leading clause *tends*. The Romans, in most cases, conceived the Result from the standpoint of the leading *Predicate*, as one *not effected* or *attained*, but simply *contemplated* as one *to follow*, as a proper and natural issue of the leading action. Objectively considered from the standpoint of the *speaker* or *writer*, the Result may be one ascertained as accomplished or as historically true, but not so from the time of the leading action. Hence, according to the regular conception by the Romans, the relation of Result is to be considered, in most cases, only in connection with the element in the leading clause which demands it. From this, while it presents a Result (End) to which the leading element *tends*, it does not present a Result *accomplished*. Objectively and historically considered, however, by the speaker or writer, it *may present a fact*; but, *conceived* as the Romans appear to have conceived it, in most cases, from the standpoint of and in connection with the *leading element*, it can be only a Result *not yet attained*—one *regarded as the proper issue* of the leading element, and to which this *tends*.

298. From the preceding explanation it is apparent that the *Result clause* is *subsequent* to and *future* from the *leading clause*, and more exactly reproduced by the translation “*so as to*,” “*so as for*,” than by “*so that*,” the usual translation.

299. The Subjunctive is the Mood in the clause of Result. The dependent action is *subsequent* to and *future* from the leading action, as it is a development out of this. It is *undetermined* from the standpoint of the leading action, because it is *prospective*. The Tenses are the *Present* and *Imperfect*, and, with emphasis on the action conceived as completed from a *Present* or *Past* standpoint, the *Perfect*, *Aorist*, and *Pluperfect*. Translate the *Perfect*, *Aorist*, and *Pluperfect* regularly as a *Perfect*, *Aorist*, and *Pluperfect*. In a sentence of Result the *Imperfect* is, in many cases, parallel with the *Aorist*, and is used in the best prose as an *Aorist*, while in the late Latin the pure *Aorist* is very common.

1. (a) The positive *Consecutive clause* is introduced by *ut*=*so as to*, *so as for*, *so that*.

Ex.—*Pudet tam multa scribere: vereor enim ne re iam desperata legas, ut (= so that) haec mea diligentia miserabilis tibi, aliis irridenda videatur*, Cic., Att., III, 23, 4. *Quod Clodio daturus non sum, ut intellegas, quanti apud me auctoritas tua sit*, Cic., Att., XIV, 13, A, 3. *In virtute multi sunt ascensus, ut is maxime gloria excellat, qui virtute plurimum praestet*, Cic., Planc., XXV, 60. *Tanta vis admonitionis inest in locis, ut ex his memoriae ducta sit disciplina*, Cic., Fin., V, 1, 2. (*Ducta sit* is the pure *Perfect*.) *Multa rumor affngebat, ut paene bellum confectum videretur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 53. *Caesar exercitum in aciem produxit ut paene castris Pompei legiones subiceret*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 56. *Fossam pedum XX directis lateribus duxit ut eius fossae solum tantundem pateret, quantum, etc.*, Caes., B. G., VII, 72. *Fuit animo magno et corpore, imperatoriaque forma, ut ipso aspectu cuius iniceret admirationem sui*, Nep., Iph., 3. *In naturis hominum dissimilitudines sunt, ut alios dulcia, alios subamara delectent*, Cic., Fat., IV, 8. *Iter ita feci, ut undique ad me cum gratulatione legati convenerint (Aorist)*, Cic., Att., IV, 1, 4. *Cui sic fuit deditus, ut adolescens tristem ac severum senem omnibus aequalibus suis in familiaritate anteposuerit*, Nep., Ep., 2. *Sedit immobilis, adeo ut, quid mallet, fuerit incertum*, Curt. IV, 56. *Adulationes adeo aversatus est, ut neminem senatorum ad lecticam suam admiserit*, Suet., Tib., 27. *Tantus ardor certantis exercitus fuit, ut omnes puberes trucidati sint*, Tac., Ann., XIII, 39. *Cum tanta prosperitate usus esset valetudinis, ut annis triginta medicina non indiguisset, nactus est morbum, etc.*, Nep., Att., 21. *Exponit quam in fortunam (eos) deduxisset, ut non solum in pristinum statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dignitatem et gratiam antecessisse viderentur*, Caes., B. G., VII, 54.

(b) The *relation* of Result is expressed by the *Relative* with the *Subjunctive*. This is the *Consecutive Relative*, less accurately defined



as the *Characteristic Relative*. This Relative refers to a *subject* or *object* as possessing *qualities* or *properties* such as tend to a *given Result*. It may well be translated by "that" or "to" = *of such a character, of such a kind that*, or possessing such qualities or properties that. In this connection are to be observed the Consecutive-Relative *Particles* *ubi, quo, unde*, with the Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Sunt, qui discessum animi a corpore putent esse mortem**, Cic., Tusc., I, 9, 18 = *there are those that think, to think, of such character as to think*). **Incidunt multae causae quae conturbent animos utilitatis specie**, Cic., Off., III, 10, 40. **De impudentia singulari, quod adest, quod respondet, sunt qui mirentur**, Cic., Verr., I, 2, 6. **Multa e corpore existunt quae acuant mentem, multa quae obtundant**, Cic., Tusc., I, 33, 80. **Massilia ex tribus oppidi partibus mari alluitur; reliqua quarta est, quae aditum habeat ab terra**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 1. **Ad portas castrorum clamor ortus est, quo clamore significatio victoriae fieret**, Caes., B. G., V, 53 (*quo clamore* = *that by that shout* = *so that by that shout*). **Satis longo spatio temporis a Dyrrachinis proeliis intermisso, quo satis perspectum habere militum animum videretur, tentandum Caesar existimavit**, etc., Caes. B. Civ., III, 84 (*quo* = *that in it, so that in it*). **Habebam quo confugerem, ubi conquiescerem, cuius in sermone omnes curas deponerem**, Cic., Fam., IV., 6, 2 (*habebam quo confugerem, ubi conquiescerem*, etc. = *I had one to escape to, to find a refuge with, etc.*). **Provide, si cui quid debetur, ut sit unde par pari respondeatur**, Cic., Att., XVI, 7, 6.

2. (a) The *negative clause of Result* is introduced by *ut* with a negative *non* (*nemo, nihil, nullus, numquam*, etc.) The negative need not define the Predicate in the dependent clause; it may define *any word* in this clause.

Ex.—**Ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis nascebatur... ab superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspicere posset**, Caes., B. G., II, 18. **Maiore animo pacis opera inchoata, quam quanta mole gesserat bella, ut non quietior populus domi esset, quam militiae fuisset**, Liv., I, 38, 5. **Attici quies tantopere Caesari fuit grata ut victor huic molestus non fuerit**, Nep., Att., 7. **Illi tanta vi in Pompei equites impetum fecerunt, ut eorum nemo consisteret**, Caes., B., Civ., III, 93. **Praefecturas deletas sic accepit, ut neminem in provinciam sit secutus**, Nep., Att., 6. **Nec vero umquam animus hominis naturaliter divinat, nisi cum ita solutus est et vacuus, ut ei plane nihil sit cum corpore**, Cic., Div., I, 50, 113. **Auguriis sacerdotioque augurum tantus honos accessit, ut nihil belli domique postea, nisi auspiciato, gereretur**, Liv., I, 36, 6. **Hoc pugnabatur loco et propter angustias iniquo et quod sub ipsis radicibus montis constiterant, ut nullum frustra telum in eos mitteretur**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 45. **Multa saecula postea sic vixit Pythagoreorum nomen, ut nulli alii docti viderentur**, Cic., Tusc., I, 16, 38. **Tanta tempestas cooritur, ut numquam illis locis maiores aquas fuisse constaret**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 48. (*Dixerunt*) **sic se complures annos illo imperante meruisse, ut nullam ignominiam acciperent, numquam infecta re discederent**, Caes., B. G., VII, 17.

REM. 1. In a negative consecutive clause must be observed the association of *ut ne—quidem* = *that not even*.

EX.—*Tanta militum virtus atque ea praesentia animi fuit ut paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam*, Caes., B. G., V, 43. *Tantum ille honorem habendum Siciliae putavit, ut ne hostium quidem urbem ex sociorum insula tollendam arbitraretur*, Cic., Verr., II, 2, 4.

REM. 2. *Ut ne—quidem* is continued negatively by *neque* (*nec*).

EX.—*Praesidii tantum est ut ne murus quidem cingi possit, neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat*, Caes., B. G., VI, 35. *Tantum opes creverant, ut ne morte quidem Aeneae, nec deinde inter muliebrem tutelam movere arma aut Mezentius Etruscique aut ulli alii accolae ausi sint*, Liv., I, 3, 4.

REM. 3. The translation of *ut non* by *without* is to be noted. (*Vid. 288.*)

EX.—*Non possunt una in civitate multi rem atque fortunas amittere, ut non plures secum in eandem trahant calamitatem*, Cic., Imp. Pomp., VII, 19.

(b) Where the Relative is employed in a positive clause of Result, the Relative with the negative *non*, etc., is used in the *negative* clause.

EX.—*Nihil est apud istos quod non atomorum turba conficiat*, Cic., Tusc., I, 11, 22. *Nemo omnium tam est immanis, cuius mentem non imbuerit deorum opinio*, Cic., Tusc., I, 13, 30.

3. In the translation of *ut* = *so that*, the word *so* is *demonstrative*. The presence of a Demonstrative, either expressed or implied, is necessary to the relation of Result. Hence in the leading clause often occur *Demonstrative Pronouns, Phrases, and Particles*, followed by *ut* or *qui*, introducing a Result clause. Such *Demonstrative Pronouns, Phrases, and Particles* are *is, hic, iste, talis, tantus, eius modi, ita, sic, tam, tantopere, eo, adeo, usque eo, huc, hactenus*.

(a) *Ut* introduces a clause of Result after a *demonstrative* expressed.

EX.—*Animorum est ea vis eaque natura, ut vigeant vigilantes nullo adventicio pulsu*, Cic., Div., II, 67, 139. *Sed haec eius diei praefertur opinio, ut se utrique superiores discessisse existimarent*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 47. *Hunc, nisi talis consul esset, ut omnes cogitationes in rei publicae salute defigeret, consulem non putarem*, Cic., Phil., VII, 2, 5. *Tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur*, Caes., B. G., I, 33. *Illum tanti facio, ut non Caesarem magis diligam*, Cic., Att., VIII, 15, A, 2. *Litterae nostrae non committendae (sunt) eius modi periculo, ut aut interire aut aperiri aut intercipi possint*, Cic., Att., I, 13, 2. *Silentium ita defixit omnium animos, ut deficiente consilio in liminibus starent*, Liv., I, 29, 3. *Reliquis oppidi partibus sic est oppugnatum, ut aequo proelio discederetur*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 112. *Quis tam demens, ut sua voluntate maereat?* Cic., Tusc., III, 29, 71. *Aviae memoriam tantopere*

dilexit, ut festis diebus pocillo quoque eius argenteo potare perseveraverit, Suet., Vesp., 2. Adeo loci opportunitate profecit, uti ad Pompeium litteras mitteret, etc., Caes., B. Civ., III, 23. Adeo erat impedita vallis, ut in ascensu nisi sublevati a suis primi non facile eniterentur, Caes., B. Civ., II, 34. Totum Sempronium usque eo perago, ut Vestorium quoque interponam, Cic., Fam., VIII, 8, 1. Huc iam reduxerat rem, ut equites possent atque auderent flumen transire, Caes., B. Civ., I, 62. Cum domum dedicaret, hactenus comprobavit, ut se diceret, quasi hominem, tandem habitare coepisse, Suet., Nero, 31. Cf. Sciscitando eodem pervenit, ut haud procul esset, quin Remum agnosceret, Liv., I, 5, 6.

(b) The Consecutive Relative *qui* and *Relative Particles* introduce a clause of Result after a *Demonstrative*. Here the Relative may be resolved by *ut is*, but with emphatic definition of the subject or object.

Ex.—Noli te oblivisci esse eum, qui aliis consueris praecipere et dare consilium, Cic., Fam., V, 5, 5 (here *qui* = *ut tu*). Damna nulla tanta sunt, quae (= *ut ea*) non viri fortes ferenda arbitrentur, Cic., Verr., III, 24, 60. Neque is sum, qui gravissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear, Caes., B. G., V, 30. Nomen legati eius modi esse debet, quod inter hostium tela incolume versetur, Cic., Verr., I, 33, 85. Talem te esse oportet, qui primus te ab impiorum civium societate seiungas, Cic. Fam., X, 6, 3. Eo magnitudinis procederent, ubi (= *ut ibi*) pro mortalibus gloria aeterni fierent, Sall., Jug., 1. Quis tam esset amens, qui semper in laboribus et periculis viveret, Cic., Tusc., I, 15, 33. Quae est anus tam delira quae (= *ut ea*) timeat ista, Cic., Tusc., I, 21, 48.

REM. 1. For the substitution of the Relative with *non* by *quin*, *vid.* 287, 2, b, Rem. 1, etc.

REM. 2. Sometimes the demonstrative (*sic, ita, adeo*) is intimately associated with *ut* and expressed in the *ut* clause—not in the leading clause. This usage is perhaps based on the ellipsis of the leading Predicate, which may be supplied with the demonstrative particle.

Ex.—Flumen Arar in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat iudicari non possit, Caes., B. G., I, 12. Sentiant totam urbem muro turribusque circumiri posse, sic ut ipsi consistendi in suis munitionibus locus non esset, Caes., B. Civ., II, 16. Universos frumento donavit, ita ut singulis seni modii tritici darentur, Nep., Att., 2. Alii suos in castra invitandi causa adducunt, alii ab suis abducuntur, adeo ut una castra iam facta ex binis viderentur, Caes., B. Civ., I, 74. Pugnatur acriter ad novissimum agmen, adeo ut paene terga convertant, Caes., B. Civ., I, 80.

(c) The presence of a *Demonstrative Pronoun* or *Particle* in the leading clause does *not, in every case*, decide the dependent (*ut*) clause as *Result*. In some cases the leading verb, when a verb *Studii aut Voluntatis*, maintains its force and the *ut* clause is *Final*. In addition

the leading element in the principal clause involves the idea of a verb *Studii aut Voluntatis*, and the *ut* clause is again *Final*.

Ex.—*Litterae tuae sic me affecerunt, ut non dare tibi beneficium viderer, sed accipere a te ita petente, ut inimicum meum me invito servare nolles*, Cic., Att., XIV, 13, B, 2 (here *petente* maintains its force as a verb *voluntatis*). *Nam sibi hoc sumpsit, ut corrigat mores aliorum*, Cic., Verr., III, 1, 2. *De benevolentia primum illud est in officio, ut ei plurimum tribuamus, a quo plurimum diligamur*, Cic., Off., I, 15, 47 (*primum illud est in officio* = *that is the first duty—first injunction of duty*). *Octavianus cogitat reliquas colonias obire: plane hoc spectat, ut se duce bellum geratur cum Antonio*, Cic., Att., XVI, 8, 1 (*hoc spectat* = *he contemplates, purposes, wishes this, etc.*).

(d) To be carefully noted is *ut* of Result in connection with a preceding *restrictive ita*, rarely *sic*. The restrictive Particle *ita*, in order clearly to indicate the consecutive character of *ut*, is translated by *with such a view, with such a destination, with (under) such a restriction or limitation, on such a condition*. The negative dependency is here *ut non*, etc. Here the demonstrative controls the construction.

Ex.—*Neque ita generati a natura sumus, ut ad ludum et iocum facti esse videamur*, Cic., Off., I, XXIX, 103 (*ita* = *under such a condition, with such a view or destination*). *Accepimus condiciones, sed ita ut removeat praesidia ex iis locis, quae occupavit*, Cic., Fam., XVI, 12, 3. *Mihi si optata contingent, quod reliquum est vitae, in otio Rhodi degam: sin casus aliquis interpellarit, ita ero Romae, ut recte fieri semper cupiam*, Cic., Fam., XI, 28, 8. *Mitto ad te Trebatium atque ita mitto ut invitatu tuo mittendum duxerim*, Cic., Fam., VII, 5, 2. *Hoc te ita rogo ut maiore studio rogare non possim*, Cic., Q. Frat., I, 2, 11. *Ego a patre ita eram deductus ad Scaevolam, sumpta virili toga, ut quoad possem et liceret a senis latere numquam discederem*, Cic., Am., I, 1. Cf. *Egit ille in senatu causam suam, egit autem sic ut deprecaretur*, Plin. Min., IV, 29, 2. *Nos ita te desideramus, ut amemus*, Cic., Fam., XVI, 1, 3.

REM. This restrictive *ita* is sometimes best translated *concessively* (*although*), and *ut* and *its* clause *adversatively* rendered (*yet, etc.*) with *tamen* occasionally associated with *ut*. Here, too, the negative dependent clause is expressed by *ut non*, etc.

Ex.—*Illud (signum) ita ex aede sua sustulit, ut in Capitolio poneret*, Cic., Verr., IV, 58, 129. *Vincere incipit timorem dolor, sed ita (incipit, etc.), ut omnia sint plenissima desperationis*, Cic., Att., II, 18, 2. *Ita probanda est mansuetudo atque clementia, ut adhibeatur rei publicae causa severitas, sine qua administrari civitas non potest*, Cic., Off., I, XXV, 88. *Quem C. Caesar ita reprehendit, ut laudet*, Plin. Min., III, 12, 2. *Ita cetera de oratione mea tollam, ut in causa tamen relinquam*, Cic., Verr., III, 43, 103. *Hi ita non sola virtute finem bonorum contineri putant, ut rebus tamen omnibus virtutem anteponant*, Cic., Fin., IV, 18, 49. *Atque haec Caesar ita administrabat, ut condiciones*

**pacis dimittendas non existimaret**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 26. **Cuius ego ingenium ita laudo, ut non pertimescam**, Cic., Caecil., XIII, 44.

(e) In many cases it cannot readily be decided whether the simple *ut* is to be interpreted as *ut* of *Result* or of *End* (*Design*). In some cases it may be either. This is true, also, when *ut* follows the restrictive *ita*. When, however, the *ut* clause is *negative* it is introduced by *ne* or *ut ne*, when *Final*; but by *ut non*, when *consecutive*. (Cf. 269, 2, Rem. 1.) It may be added, however, that when restrictive *ita*, etc. = *on condition that*, etc., in which the will of the leading subject is expressed, the following *ut* is *Final*.

Ex.—**Peto (librum) ita corrigas, ne mihi noceat**, Cic., Fam., VI, 7, 6 (here *ne noceat* expresses an end not desired and to be prevented). **Vives ita, ut vivis, multis meis et firmis praesidiis oppressus ne commovere te contra rempublicam possis**, Cic., Cat., I, 2, 6. **Sed ita amicitiam institui par est, ne qua vetustior amicitia et societas violetur**, Liv., VII, 31, 2. **Accusatores multos esse in civitate utile est, ut metu contineatur audacia: verum tamen hoc ita est utile. ut ne plane illudamur ab accusatoribus**, Cic., Rose., Am., XX, 55. **Te hoc nunc rogo ut explores ad quam diem hic ita possim esse, ut ne opprimar**, Cic., Att., XII, 23, 2.

REM. Some singular cases occur of the use of *ne* and *ut ne* after a Demonstrative as well as after *verbs*, which authorize a doubt whether the distinction between the relation of negative *Result* (*ut non*) and of negative *Purpose* (*Design*) (*ne* or *ut ne*) was always clearly defined in the Roman mind and distinctly stated.

Ex.—**Tantum a vallo eius prima acies aberat, uti ne telo tormentove adici posset**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 56. **Neroni affertur (Agrippinam) evasisse ictu levi sauciam, et hactenus adito discrimine. ne auctor dubitaretur**, Tac., Ann., XIV, 7. **Potest ut alii ita arbitrentur et ego ut ne credam tibi**, Pl., Pseud., 633. **Ita fit ne decidunt fructus**, Plin. Mai., XVII, 253. **Si poterit fieri ut ne pater per me stetisse credat**, Ter., And., 699.

300. In this connection should be carefully observed the Demonstratives *ita*, *tam*, *adeo*, *usque eo*, and a negative *non*, *nemo*, *nihil*, *nullus*, etc., followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive (*Positive*), and by *ut non*, *ut nihil*, etc., and the Subjunctive (*Negative*). Here the Subjunctive is *Consecutive* in the sense of *pure Result*. The phrases *ita non—ut* may be translated *so not—that = so little—that*; *usque eo non—ut*, *so far not—that = so little—that*; *adeo nihil—ut*, *so far (to such a degree) nothing—that = so little anything—that = so little at all—that*; etc.

Ex.—**Thorius erat ita non superstitiosus, ut illa plurima in sua patria sacri-**

*facia et fana contemneret, ita non timidus ad mortem, ut in acie sit ob rem publicam interfectus*, Cic., Fin., II, 20, 63. *Memoria ita fuit nulla, ut aliquotiens, tria cum proposuisset, quartum adderet*, Cic., Brut., 217. *Ita non—ut*, Cic., Fin., 7, 22. *Ita non nocte, non die umquam cessaverant ab opere, ut murum . . . reficerent*, Liv., XXI, 11, 5. *Tam nihil otiosum (in eo) est, ut nec quod desit in eo nec quod redundet invenias*, Quint., X, 1, 76. *Adeo neminem spe corrumpit, ut contra impendere in se iubeat*, Sen., Ben., IV, 1, 2. *Adeo non est facile consequi beatam vitam, ut eo quisque ab ea longius recedat quo ad illam concitatius fertur*, etc., Sen., Vit. Beat., I, 1. *Adeo non—ut etiam*, Sen., Ben., II, 11, 3. *Adeo non—ut*, Sen., Ben., IV, 15, 4. *Adeo non—ut*, Sen., Ep., VI, 6, 28. *Adeo non—ut*, Sen., Ep. XII, 3, 34. *Adeo non—ut*, Curt., VII, 4. *Oculorum et aurium adeo non egent commendatione ut non tam incitari debeant oratione quam reprimi*, Plin. Min., I, 8, 10. *Saepe adeo iniuriam vindicari non expedit, ut ne fateri quidem expediat*, Sen., Ira., II, 33, 2. *Adeo mors timenda non est, ut beneficio eius nihil timendum sit*, Sen., Ep., III, 3, 11. *Haec dicta adeo nihil moverunt quemquam, ut legati prope violati sint*, Liv., III, 2, 6. *Adeo nihil—ut*, Suet., Vesp., 8. *Adeo nihil—ut*, Sen., Ben., IV, 20, 2. *Adeo nihil—ut*, Sen., N. Q., IV, 2, 10. *Adeo nihil interest, ut non videatur mihi errasse, qui dixit*, Sen., Ep., II, 6, 1. *Adeo nihil—ut non*, Suet., Vesp., 12. *Ambitio usque eo iam se suis non continens terminis, ut per turpitudinem splendeat*, Sen., Tranq. An., XV, 1. *Usque eo non—ut*, Sen., Helv. Mat., VI, 5. *Haec usque eo animum Socratis non moverunt, ut ne vultum quidem moverint*, Sen., Ep., XVIII, 1, 28. *Usque eo non—ut*, Nep., Dion, 4. *Apud quos usque eo nihil ante mortem otiosum est, ut non sit ipsa mors otiosa*, Sen., Ad Seren., De Otio, I, 4.

REM. The particle *contra* is a natural sequence in the *ut* clause.

Ex.—*Adeo non debent nos ista confundere, ut contra maiore perire ratione iuvet*, Sen., N. Q., VI, 2, 7.

(a) To the Consecutive relation must be referred the double *ut* with the Subjunctive after *tantum abest* (impersonal as a rule) *ut—ut*. The verb *abest* has a negative force = *there lacks, there fails*. This verb allows *ut* with the Subjunctive in the statement of a *Result*, as *Quod si geometricis rationibus non est crediturus, quae vim afferunt in docendo, vos ipsi ut dicitis, ne ille longe aberit ut argumentis credat philosophorum*, etc., Cic., Acad., II, 36, 117. Hence *tantum abest ut* = *there lacks or fails of (a Result, ut)*. The word *tantum* is the Accusative of limitation, of indefinite extent or measure. Hence *tantum abest ut* = *there lacks or fails of a Result (first ut) so far, so much (tantum) that (the second ut)*. In its syntactical relation the first *ut* clause is the subject of *abest* (impersonal); the second *ut* clause is demanded by the Demonstrative *tantum*, upon which it depends. The first *ut* clause as a *Result* of the negative force of *abest* is denied; the second *ut* clause depending upon *tantum*, presents a *positive Result*.

Ex.—*Tantum abest ut scribi contra nos nolumus, ut id etiam maxime optemus.* Cic., Tusc., II, 2, 4. *Tantum abest, ut amicitiae propter indigentiam colantur ut il, qui, etc., liberalissimi sint,* Cic., Am., XIV, 51. *Tantum afuit ut periculosum rei publicae M. Bruti putaret exercitum, ut in eo firmissimum rei publicae praesidium poneret,* Cic., Phil., X, 8, 17. *Philosophia quidem tantum abest ut proinde ac de hominum est vita merita laudetur, ut a plerisque neglecta a multis etiam vituperetur,* Cic., Tusc., V, 2, 6. *Iuliae uxori tantum afuit ut relegatae officii aut humanitatis aliquid impertiret ut uno oppido clausam domo quoque egredi vetuerit,* Suet., Tib., 50. *Nam ut suspicione aliqua vel metu ad perniciem cuiusquam compelleretur tantum afuit, ut, monentibus amicis cavendum esse Mettium Pompusianum, insuper consulem fecerit,* Suet., Vesp., 14.

(b) Sometimes the first *ut* is defined by *ab eo*: hence *tantum abest ab eo ut*. The *ablative* with *ab* is justified by *abest*.

Ex.—*Tantum abest ab eo ut malum mors sit ut verear ne homini nihil sit non malum aliud, etc.,* Cic., Tusc., I, 31, 76. *Tantum afuit ab eo, ut ulla ignominia iis exercitibus quaereretur, ut etiam urbs Roma per eum exercitum, qui ab Allia Veios transfugerat, reciperaretur,* Liv., XXV, 6, 11.

REM. The use of the *gerund* with *a (ab)* in the place of the *first ut* is very unusual and need not be imitated.

Ex.—*Tantum afuit a remittendo laxandoque studio, ut conservandae vocis gratia neque milites umquam, nisi absens aut alio verba pronuntiante, appelleret,* Suet., Nero, 25.

1. The *first ut* clause may be represented by *a (ab)* with the *Ablative* of a substantive, in which case *abest* is *personal*; when the *first ut* clause is retained *abest* is *rarely personal*.

Ex.—*Tantum ab equitum suorum auxiliis aberant, ut eos superioribus perterritos proeliis in medium reciperent agmen utroque eos tuerentur,* Caes., B. Civ., I, 79. *Ego tantum illum puto ab isto scelere afuisse, ut maxime doleam, etc.,* Cic., Att., III, 15, 2. *Tantum abes a perfectione operum, ut fundamenta nondum ieceris,* Cic., Marc., VIII, 25. *Tantum afuit a cupiditate bellicam gloriam augendi, ut, etc.,* Suet., Aug., 21. *Tantum afuit ab insolentia gloriae, ut, etc.,* Nep., Ages., 5. *Tantum afuit a societate sceleris, ut, etc.,* Nep., Tim., 1. *Tantum afuit a cupiditate pecuniae, ut nulla in re usus sit ea, nisi, etc.,* Nep., Att., 12. But—*Hoc detrimento milites nostri tantum afuerunt, ut perturbarentur, ut incensi potius magnas accessiones fecerint in operibus hostium expugnandis,* Bel. Alex., XXII.

2. The *second ut* clause may be represented by an *independent* clause.

Ex.—*Is enim, qui occultus et tectus dicitur, tantum abest, ut se indicet, perficiet etiam ut dolere alterius improbo facto videatur,* Cic., Fin., II, 17, 55. *Qua in vita tantum abest ut voluptates consecretur, etiam curas, sollicitudines, vigilias perferunt,* Cic., Fin., V, 20, 57. *Tantum afuit ut inflammare nostros animos, somnum isto loco vix tenebamus,* Cic., Brut., LXXX, 278.

REM. The presence in the *second ut* clause of *etiam*, *maxime*, *contra*, rarely *potius*, is readily presented in the translation.

301. The following combinations and sequences of clauses of Result are to be noted:

The Positive *ut* is *positively* continued by *et* (*atque*, *-que*), as *ut—et* (*atque*, *-que*). The positive *ut* is continued *negatively* by *neque* (*nec*), as *ut—neque* (*nec*). The negative *ut non* is continued *positively* by *et* (*atque*, *-que*), as *ut non—et* (*atque*, *-que*), and in the case of transition from the *negative* to the *positive* the *copulative* may often best be rendered by *but*. The positive *ut* covers two or more negative clauses, as *ut neque—neque = so that neither—nor*. The negative *ut non* is continued *adversatively* by *sed*, as *ut non—sed*. The negative *ut non* is continued by *exclusive aut—aut = so that not—either—or*. The positive *ut* is continued *negatively* by *non—neque—neque = so that not—nor—nor*. The negative *ut non* covers the entire sentence as the *leading negative*, with the secondary and explanatory clauses within the sentence *negatively* and *emphatically* presented by *neque—neque*, as *ut non—neque—neque = so that not—neither—nor (either—or)*.

Ex.—**Sic est pugnatum, ut aequo praelio discederetur et neutri pellerentur**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 112. **Hic dies hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus hostium numerus vulneraretur atque interficeretur**, Caes., B. G., V, 43. (*Caesar dixit*) **quoniam Ariovistus hanc sibi gratiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitatus gravaretur neque . . . putaret**, etc., Caes., B. G., I, 35. **Magna vis est conscientiae, ut neque timeant, qui nihil commiserint, et (but) poenam semper ante oculos versari putent, qui peccarint**, Cic., Mil., XXIII, 61. **Eo illos compuli ut neque pedestri itinere neque navibus commeatu iuvare possint**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 32. **Via lubrica erat, ut neque sustinere se a lapsu possent, nec, qui paulum titubassent, haerere afflicti vestigio suo (possent), alique super alios et lumenta in homines occiderent**, Liv., XXI, 35, 12 (here *-que* may be well translated by *but*). **Tantum fiducia ac spiritus Pompeianis accessit, ut non de ratione belli cogitarent, sed vicisse iam viderentur**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 72. **Exercitui omni tantus incessit ex incommodo dolor, ut nemo aut tribuni aut centurionis imperium desideraret et (but (better)) sibi quisque poenae loco graviore imponeret labores**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 74. **Ut—non—non—nec—nec**, Liv., V, 6, 8. **Impetu facto strage ac ruina fudere Gallos, ut numquam postea nec pars nec universi tentaverint tale pugnae genus**, Liv., V, 43, 3.

302. Thus far the Result clause has been considered in connection with a demonstrative (*ita*, etc.) either expressed or implied. This is the pure result introduced by *ut* or the *Consecutive (characteristic) Relative*. In addition, the idea of Result is *implied* in the leading *verb*, and the Result clause, with *ut*, introduces the exact definition, or



the complement of the leading verb whose sense demands it (*Result*). This Result clause may be properly termed the *Complementary Final Clause of Result*. It bears the same relation to the leading predicate, in a *consecutive definition*, which the Complementary Final Clause of Purpose bears to a verb *Studii aut Voluntatis* (*vid.* 265, etc.). This *Complementary Result Clause* occurs:

1. With the *Active* of a verb of *Doing* and *Effecting*, as *facere*, *efficere*, *committere*. In its *grammatical* relation the Result clause is the *object* of the leading verb. Its *consecutive character* is clearly decided, when positive (*ut*), by the *general context* and *sense* of the sentence, when negative by *ut non*. (For the Final Subjunctive of Purpose after these verbs, *vid.* 265, 7, etc.)

Ex.—*Ut confiderem fecerunt tuae litterae*, Cic., Fam., XII, 18, 1. *Facies ut sciam*, Cic., Att., VII, 11, 4. *Patriae caritas effecit ut tuam vitam anteferebam meae*, Cic., Fam., X, 10, 2. *Sed iam quid opus equitatu? Solvunt enim Salaminii: nisi forte id volumus armis efficere, ut faenus quaternis centesimis ducant*, Cic., Att., VI, 2, 9. *Non puto hoc Gnaeum nostrum commissurum, ut Domitium relinquat*, Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 7. *Visi sunt commisisse, ut hostium loco essent*, Liv., II, 4, 7. *Committendum non putabat, ut dici posset eos ab se per fidem circumventos*, Caes., B. G., I, 46. *Id ut accideret, commissum est Hortensii consilio*, Cic., Att., I, 16, 2. *Non committam ut dolor corporis efficiat, ut, etc.*, Cic., Tusc., II, 25, 61. *Splendor vester facit, ut peccare sine summo rei publicae detrimento non possitis*, Cic., Verr., I, 8, 22. *Mors ut malum non sit, efficies*, Cic., Tusc., I, 8, 16. *Posthac (litteras) frustra potius dabo quam committam ut non dem*, Cic., Att., V, 11, 1. *Vide quam temere committant, ut nulli sint di*, Cic., Div., II, 17, 41.

REM. The verb *facere* with *ut* as an approximate *circumlocution* of the Indicative of the verb in the Result clause is, in fact, only a concise and emphatic presentation of the *Complementary Consecutive Subjunctive* after the verb. In this form of statement, quite frequent in Cicero, there is often associated with *facere* an *adjective* or *adverb*.

Ex.—*Faciam hoc novum, ut testibus utar statim*, Cic., Verr., Act. Prim., XVIII, 55 (quite the equivalent of *utar statim*). *Non faciam, ut enumerem miseras omnes*, Cic., Att., III, 7, 2 (approximately *non enumerabo*). *Invitus facio, ut recorder ruinas rei publicae*, Cic., Vatin., IX, 21 (compare *invitus recorder*). *Faciam illud, ut tibi omnia mea officia pollicear*, Cic., Fam., XI, 5, 3. *Libenter facio, ut gaudeam*, Cic., Fam., XV, 5, 1 (compare *libenter gaudeo*). *Faciendum mihi putavi, ut tuis litteris brevi responderem*, Cic., Fam., III, 8, 1 (compare *putavi respondendum*), etc.

2. With the *Impersonal Passive* of the preceding verbs and with other *impersonal* verbs and *phrases*, prominent among these the verbs of *Happening*, as *fit*, *efficitur*, *accidit*, *incidit*, *cadit*, *contingit*, *obtingit*,

*evenit, est* (= *it is the case*), *usu venit* (*it chances, occurs*), *relinquitur, restat, superest, sequitur, nascitur* (*rare in sense of sequitur*), *fieri potest, fieri non potest, facere non possum* (*personal*), *potest* (= *fieri potest*), *est in eo* (= *it is on the point*), *prope est* (= *it is near the point*), *longe* (*multum*) *abest*, etc. The negative is of course *ut non*, etc. In such connections the *Result* clause is essentially the *subject* of the so-called *impersonal verbs*.

Ex.—Fit ut motus principium ex eo sit, quod ipsum a se movetur, Cic., Tusc., I, 23, 54. Ex quo factum est, ut eum ad se rex Priscus arcesseret, Cic., Div., I, 17, 32. Erat effectum, ut equitum mille etiam apertioribus locis septem milium Pompeianorum impetum sustinere auderent, Caes., B. Civ., III, 84. Ex quo effici putat ille, ut sapiens semper beatus sit, Cic., Tusc., V, 38, 110. Quare acciderit, ut id auspicarere, quod scribis, nescio, Cic., Fam., II, 16, 1. Cum inciderit, ut id apte fieri possit, ut, etc., Cic., Fin., I, 3, 7. Cecidit, ut in istum sermonem delaberemini, Cic., De Or., I, 21, 96. Animadvertis hoc, illi non posse contingere, ut honeste effugere possit, Cic., Fam., IX, 9, 2. Ex eo evenit, ut Tarquinus augure Atto Navio uteretur, Cic., Div., I, 17, 32. M. Metello obtigit, ut is de pecuniis repetundis quaereret, Cic., Verr., Prim. Act., VIII, 21. Non est, ut mirandum sit ea praesentiri a divinantibus, quae nusquam sint, Cic., Div., I, 56, 128. Sed ex eo credo quibusdam usu venire, ut abhorreant a Latinis, quod, etc., Cic., Fin., I, 3, 8. Ita relinquitur, ut ea fortuita divinari possint, quae, etc., Cic., Div., II, 5, 14. Relinquebatur, ut se suis locis oppido teneret, Caes., B. Civ., III, 109. Restat, ut iis respondeam, Cic., Acad., II, 2, 6. Superest, ut nec te consilii nec me paeniteat obsequii, Plin. Min., I, 1, 2. Superest, ut frugi sint, Plin. Min., I, 21, 2. Non sequitur ut, cui cor sapiat, ei non sapiat palatus, Cic., Fin., II, 8, 24. Ex hoc nascitur, ut communis hominum inter homines naturalis sit commendatio, Cic., Fin., III, 19, 63. Fieri potest, ut errem, Cic., Fin., I, 7, 23. Socrates docet nec fieri posse, ut a pueris tot rerum insitas in animis notiones haberemus, nisi, etc., Cic., Tusc., I, 24, 57. At id quoque potest, ut non dent homini, ipsi habeant, Cic., Div., II, 51, 106. Ut nihil ad te dem litterarum facere non possum, Cic., Att., VIII, 14, 1. In eo erat, ut in muros evaderet miles, Liv., II, 17, 5. Prope erat, ut dictator ille idem crearetur, Liv., II, 30, 2. Prope erat ut nec duci milites nec militibus dux satis fideret, Liv., X, 18, 6 (quite frequent in Livy). Cf. Quid proplus fuit quam ut perirem? etc., Pl., M. G., 475. Ille longe aberit ut argumentis credat philosophorum, Cic., Acad., II, 36, 117.

REM. 1. The negative after the preceding Predicates is *ut non*, etc. When *ne* (*ut ne*) occurs, as after a verb of *Happening*, etc., the distinction between a *Final* and *Consecutive Subjunctive* may not have been closely observed, or the context authorizes the *interpretation* from the standpoint of an agent working to a given end.

Ex.—Perfectum est, ut nullum acciperet incommodum, Caes., B. Civ., III, 77. Sequitur ut, cui cor sapiat ei non sapiat palatus, Cic., Fin., II, 8, 24. Ita inciderat, ne duo violenta ingenia matrimonio iungerentur, fortuna, credo, populi

**Romani**, Liv., I, 46, 5 (it so happened by the will, direction of fortune—a subjective *working out of a Result* as an end, rather than the *objective* (*ut non*) *statement* of it).

REM. 2. After *sequitur* and *efficitur* the Accusative with the Infinitive occurs. Here the dependent clause is presented not as a *Result*, but as a *conclusion* (after *sequitur*) or *proof* (after *efficitur*) in argument or reasoning. The verbs involve the *idea* and take the *construction* of verbs of *Saying* or *Thinking*.

Ex.—**Necessario sequitur, omnes sapientes semper feliciter, absolute, fortunato vivere, nulla re impediri**, Cic., Fin., III, 7, 26. **Sequitur nihil deos ignorare, quod omnia sint ab iis constituta**, Cic., Div., II, 51, 105. **Ex quo illud efficitur, qui bene cenent, omnes libenter cenare**, Cic., Fin., II, 8, 24.

REM. 3. The Subjunctive dependency with *ut* after *fore*, *futurum esse*, is consecutive.

Ex.—**Exaudita vox est a luco Vestae futurum esse, nisi provisum esset, ut Roma caperetur**, Cic., Div., I, 45, 101. **Huius me constantiae puto fore ut nunquam paeniteat**, Cic., Fam., II, 16, 3.

(a) The verbs *facere* (*to do, to act*), *evenire*, *fieri*, *cadere*, *accidere*, are construed with *quod*, regularly, with the Indicative in the statement of a Fact. Here *quod* may be best translated by *that* = *the fact that*. It is often the case that an *adverb* or *adjective* is associated with the leading verb.

Ex.—**Facis pro cetera reverentia quam mihi praestas, quod tam sollicitè petis ut**, etc., Plin. Min., III, 8, 1 (*facis—quod* = you *act*, etc., *that* = *in that, in the fact that*, etc.). **Bene fecit Regulus, quod est mortuus**, Plin. Min., VI., 2, 4. **Facis tu quidem fraterne, quod me hortaris**, Cic., Q. Frat., II, 13, 2. **Facis mihi pergratum, quod Serapionis librum ad me misisti**, Cic., Att., II, 4, 1. **Magna me spes tenet bene evenire, quod mittor ad mortem**, Cic., Tusc., I, 41, 97. **Percommode factum est, quod eis de rebus disputatum est**, Cic., Tusc., IV, 30, 64. **Hoc percommode cadit, quod cum eius audacia stultitia coniuncta est**, Cic., Verr., Act. Prim., II, 5. **Accidit perincommode, quod eum nusquam vidisti**, Cic., Att., I, 17, 2.

REM. The verbs to *Happen* are occasionally construed with the Accusative and Infinitive. In this case the dependency is expressed as an *appositive explanation* of the Neuter Pronoun (*id, illud*), the *subject* of the verb, or as the definition, as a matter merely *conceived*, of a verbal *adjective suggested* by the *adverb defining* the leading verb (*incommode accidit* = *incommodum est*), or (as with *accidit*) when the leading verb is *interpreted* as a verb of *thinking* (= *it occurs*).

Ex.—*Illud non fieri potest me diutius in tam misera vita commorari*, Cic., Q. Frat., I, 3, 6. *Nec enim acciderat* (*occurred*) *mihi opus esse*, Cic., Fam., VI, 11, 1. *Turpiter accidit te haec facere* (= *turpe est te haec facere*).

3. The *Complementary Consecutive ut* with the Subjunctive occurs with the verbs of *Adding*, as *accedit* (= *there is added the thought, or conception, or explanatory item*), *adicit*, the Passives Personal, as *id*, (*illud*) *additur, adicitur, adiungitur*. Here the conception of Result is purely and essentially objective.

Ex.—*Accedit etiam, ut minor sit fides, minor auctoritas, multi denique reprehendant et dicant*, Cic., Fam., V, 12, 8. *Accedebat, ut haec tu adolescens queri existimare*, Cic., De Or., II, 48, 198. *Ad hoc detrimentum accessit, ut equitibus per oram maritimam ab Antonio dispositis aquari prohiberentur*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 24. *Ad Appii Claudii senectutem accedebat etiam, ut caecus esset*, Cic., Sen., VI, 16. *Accedebat ut*, Caes., B. G., III, 13. *Accedebat huc, ut nunquam*, Caes., B. G., V, 17. *Appio insectante ambitionem collegae qui ad id, quod de credita pecunia ius non dixisset, adiceret, ut ne dilectum quidem ex senatus consulto haberet*, Liv., II, 27, 10. *Adiuncto vero ut iidem etiam prudentes haberentur, nihil erat quod homines iis auctoribus non posse consequi se arbitrarentur*, Cic., Off., II, 12, 42 (here *ut haberentur* is *objectively conceived and consecutive*). *Additur ad hanc definitionem a Zenone recte, ut illa opinio praestantis mali sit recens*, Cic., Tuscul., III, 31, 75.

(a) When there is associated with the preceding verbs the idea of *commanding, ordering, or wishing*, which is particularly the case with *addere* (as *addere* = *to add with the associated idea of ordering, etc.*), the dependent clause with *ut* is *Final*, not *Consecutive*. Here the negative is *ne*.

Ex.—*Caesar addit, ut, quod quisque eorum in bello amiserit, restituatur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 87. *At etiam, ut media nocte profisciscantur, addunt*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 31. *Tiberius honores memoriae eius ab senatu large decretos imminuit, paucis admodum receptis, et addito, ne caelestis religio decerneretur*, Tac., Ann., V, 2.

It is clear that a verb of *adding* with *ut Final* is really a verb of *saying* associated with an *order, etc.*

(b) When one of the preceding verbs does not convey an *order, etc.*, but means to make an *additional statement*, and, hence, *to add* in this sense, it is to be interpreted as a pure verb of *Saying*, and is followed by the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*.

Ex.—*Si illud addimus, nihil esse quod ad se rem ullam tam alliciat quam ad amicitiam similitudo, concedetur verum esse*, Cic., Am., XIV, 50. *Addis ceteris quoque factum nostrum probari*, Cic., Att., XI, 6, 1. *Illud adiunxi mihi tecum ita dispartitum officium fuisse ut, etc.*, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 1. *Adiecit in domo eius venenum esse, eumque gladio accinctum introire curiam*, Tac., Ann., IV, 21.

**Miles strictum obtulit gladium, addito, acutiores esse, Tac., Ann., I, 35. Secutae insuper litterae grates agentis: adiecit trepidam sibi vitam, suspectas inimicorum insidias, Tac., Ann., IV, 70.**

(c) After the preceding verbs *quod*, regularly with the Indicative, occurs in the statement of a *Fact*. Here *quod* = *that, the fact that*. Hence *accedit quod* = *There is the additional fact that*.

**Ex.—Accedit, quod patrem, ut scire te puto, plus quam non modo tu, sed quam ipse scit, amo, Cic., Att., XIII, 21, 7. Adde quod ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes emollit, mores nec sinit esse feroces, Ov., Pont., II, 9, 47. Adicite ad haec, quod foedus aequum dediticilis, quod leges vestras, quod civitatem nostram magnae parti vestrum dedimus, Liv., XXIII, 5, 9. Etc.**

**303.** After *Substantive Predicates*, *mos est, consuetudo est, vitium est, genus est*, and others, the subjunctive dependency with *ut* may be conceived as *Consecutive*—that is, as expressing what *results or happens* from the *idea or relation* expressed by the Substantive, or as expressing the *tendency* of the *substantive element*. The Subjunctive dependency is here entirely *objective*, and the negative is introduced by *ut non*. Again, the Subjunctive dependency with *ut* may be *Final*, presenting the *Complementary Final relation*, that which is *required or compelled* by the *operation or exercise* of the *substantive element* and that which is *designed, wished, or had in view* by the intelligent agent, which may be *unexpressed*, with whom the substantive is associated—what he *does* in obedience to the requirement of the substantive element. Here the conception of the Subjunctive dependency is *subjective* and the *negative* is introduced by *ne* (*ut ne*). Thus: *The custom is to protect the helpless. The custom requires or enjoins the protection of the helpless—that the helpless shall be protected. Again, they among whom the custom prevails, in obedience to it, as prompted by it, protect the helpless. Whether, then, the Subjunctive with ut after a Substantive Predicate is Consecutive (Objective) or Final (Subjective) is decided by the meaning of the Substantive upon which it depends, and upon the sense to be expressed. (Vul. 279, a.) The exact character of the dependency is clear only in its negative form, as shown in the following examples.*

**Ex.—Sed iustitiae primum munus est, ut ne cui quis noceat nisi lacessitus iniuria, Cic., Off., I, 7, 20. Veterem ad morem reduxit, ne quis agmine decederet, nec pugnam, nisi iussus, iniret, Tac., Ann., XI, 18. Ne plus quam semel certemus, penes me exemplum erit, Tac., H., II, 47 (the preceding examples show the *final* character of the dependency). Est mos hominum, ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus excellere, Cic., Brut., XXI, 84 (the dependency, *ut nolint*,**

may be consecutive, but it is not necessarily so, as the negative *nolle* may be positively presented by *ut*). *Consuetudo eorum omnium est, ut sine utribus ad exercitum non eant*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 48 (the dependency has the full form of a consecutive dependency, and may have been so intended by Caesar, but it may be final, in which the negative *non ire* is positively presented by *ut*). *Est hoc commune vitium in magnis civitatibus, ut invidia gloriae comes sit*, Nep., Chab., 3 (here the dependency, as indicated as well by *hoc* as *vitium*, is consecutive). *Adhuc in hac sum sententia, nihil ut faciamus nisi*, Cic., Fam., IV, 4, 5 (here *ut* is consecutive, demanded by the demonstrative *hac*). *Ego in ista sum sententia, nihil ut fuerit melius*, Cic., Leg., III, 15, 33 (here *ista* decides the consecutive *ut*). *Caput illud est, ut Lysonem recipias in necessitudinem tuam*, Cic., Fam., XIII, 19, 3 (here the demonstrative *illud*, does not decide that Cicero intended the dependency as consecutive; the negative could very properly be *ne*, rather than *ut non*).

(a) With the verb *est* (= it is the case), with or without a demonstrative *id*, *illud*, etc. (*vid.* 302, 2), *ut* is Consecutive.

Ex.—*Est ut plerique philosophi nulla tradant praecepta dicendi*, Cic., De Or., II, 36, 152. *Quando fuit ut quod licet non liceret?* Cic., Cael., XX, 48. *Id est, ut me Siculi maxime velint*, Cic., Caecil., VII, 22.

(b) The *Accusative* with the *Infinitive* occurs after a Substantive Predicate in some cases when the substantive has the force of a verb of *Saying* or *Thinking* (as *opinio est*, etc.), in others as a matter simply conceived, etc. (*Vid.* 83, 2.)

Ex.—*Opinio fuit L. Crassum non plus attigisse doctrinae quam*, etc., Cic., De Or., II, 1, 1. *Vix fides erat ullo modo rem successuram*, Suet., Vesp., 7. *Collegam suffici censori religio erat*, Liv., VI, 27, 4. *Signo sublato ex praetoria nave dispersam classem in unum collegi mos erat*, Liv., XXXVII, 24, 4. *Facilius est vinciri olivem Romanum*, Cic., Verr., V, 65, 170.

(c) The *Simple Infinitive* in apposition with the *Substantive* occurs, but here the *Genitive* of the *Gerund* is more usual. (*Vid.* 34.)

Ex.—*Mos erat patrius Academiae adversari semper omnibus in disputando*, Cic., De Or., I, 18, 84. *Nunc adest occasio benefacta cumulare*, Pl., Capt., 423 (with *benefacta cumulare* compare *benefacta cumulandi*).

(d) A Substantive Predicate is quite often followed by *quod*, explanatory of the Substantive. Here *quod* states a *fact*, and may be rendered *namely* = *the fact that*.

Ex.—*Est vitium, quod quidam nimis magnum studium multamque operam in res obscuras conferunt*, Cic., Off., I, 6, 19 (here *quod* = *namely that* = the fact that). *Causa pavoris fuit, quod mater uxorque Darei regem interfectum esse credebant*, Curt., III, 30. *Una defensio occurrit, quod muneribus tuis obniti non debui*, Tac., Ann., XIV, 53. *Vitae vitium est, quod imperfecta semper est*, Sen., Ep., XVII, 1, 8. *Nega nunc magnum beneficium esse naturae, quod necesse est mori*, Sen., Ep., XVII, 1, 14.

**304.** The Subjunctive with *ut* after an *Adjective Predicate* may in some cases be accepted as the *Complementary Consecutive Subjunctive*, negative *ut non*. This must, however, be decided by the *meaning* of the *adjective*, which demands in the dependency something that *results* or *happens*. Thus: *Rarum est, ut* = It is *rare* that = It rarely *follows* or *happens* or *results* that. *Facile est ut* = It is *easy* that = It easily *happens* or *results* that. Again, the Subjunctive with *ut* may be *Final*, negative *ne (ut ne)*. This, too, must be decided by the *sense* of the *adjective*, when it may be resolved as a verb *Studii aut Voluntatis*. Here the dependency presents a matter *called for*, *demanded*, *wished*, in accordance with the meaning of the adjective. Thus: *Iustum est ut* = It is just that = The *principle* of justice *exacts*, *demands*, *compels* that (*vid.* 279, c). The adjectives among others which, according to their meaning, *naturally point* to the *Consecutive Subjunctive* are *facile est*, *difficile est*, *proximum est*, *magnificum est*, *verisimile est*, *credibile (incredibile) est*, *usitatum (inusitatum) est*, *verum est*, *conveniens est*, *reliquum est* (but *vid.* 279, c, ne).

Ex.—*Facilius est ut esse aliquis successor tuus possit quam ut velit*, Plin. Min., Paneg., 44. *Praeclarum illud est et rectum quoque et verum, ut eos aeque ac nosmet ipsos amemus*, Cic., Tusc., III, 29, 73. *De Roscio potest illud esse falsum, ut circumligatus fuerit angui, sed ut in cunis fuerit non tam est mirum*, etc., Cic. Div., II, 31, 66. *Consentaneum est huic naturae, ut sapiens velit gerere et administrare rem publicam*, Cic., Fin., III, 20, 68. *Verisimile non est, ut, quem in secundis rebus semper secum habuisset, hunc in adversis ab se dimitteret*, Cic., Sull., XX, 57. *Proximum est, ut doceam deorum providentia mundum administrari*, Cic., N. D., II, 29, 73. *Non est integrum ut meum laborem non impertiam*, Cic., Mur., IV, 8. *Reliquum est ut nihil a te petam*. Cic., Fam., VI, 9, 2.

REM. The negative forms of the dependency (*ne, ut non*) occur too rarely, as far as observed, to authorize a positive statement as to the uniform character of the Subjunctive with *ut* after an *Adjective Predicate*, whether *Final* or *Consecutive*. This must be decided by the *meaning* of the *adjective*, and the view of the writer or speaker (cf. *Reliquum est ne*, (Cic., Fam., IX, 16, 5), with *reliquum est ut nihil*, (Cic., Fam., VI, 9, 2) (*vid.* 279, d, Rem. 1)).

(a) After an *Adjective Predicate* the *Accusative with the Infinitive* occurs when the *Adjective Predicate* may be *resolved* as a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, or when the dependency is a matter simply *conceived* and *presented* in the *most general way*.

Ex.—*Accusatores multos esse in civitate utile est, ut metu contineatur audacia*, Cic., Rosc. Am., XX, 55 (here the *Accusative with the Infinitive pre-*

sents a *general statement*, a matter *conceived* as contributing to the advantage of a state). **Turpe tibi erit pantheras Graecas me non habere**, Cic., *Fam.*, VIII, 6, 5 (=for me not to have, etc.). (**Utile est quod accusatores multi in civitate sunt** would state a *fact* = the *fact* that there are many accusers in a state is of service; so, **Turpe tibi erit quod pantheras Graecas non habeo** would state a *fact* = the *fact* that I do not have, etc.). Hence:

**Utile est, ut accusatores multi in civitate sint** = it is useful that there be, that there shall be, etc.

**Utile est, quod multi accusatores in civitate sunt** = it is useful that (= the fact that) there are, etc.

**Turpe est te haec facere** = it is disgraceful that you do (= for you to do), etc.

**305.** To the Subjunctive of Result refer the Subjunctive with the Relative (*qui*), and *ut*, after the *adjectives dignus, indignus, aptus, and idoneus*. After these adjectives the Consecutive *ut* is not the usage in the best prose. The Relative is *Consecutive* and *refers* to its antecedent as *possessing* the quality indicated by the adjective, and the character of which tends to a given Result. The gender and number of the Relative are decided by the *antecedent*: its case by the word, usually the verb, in the consecutive clause upon which it depends.

Ex.—**Qui modeste paret videtur qui aliquando imperet dignus esse**, Cic., *Leg.*, III, 2, 5. **Livianae fabulae non satis dignae sunt, quae iterum legantur**, Cic., *Brut.*, XVIII, 71. **Me profiteor suscepisse magnum onus, verum tamen dignum in quo omnes nervos aetatis industriaeque meae contenderem**, Cic., *Verr.*, *Prim. Act.*, XII, 35. **Quid est dignius in quo omnis nostra diligentia consumatur?** Cic., *Verr.*, I, 44, 112. **Mene et Triarium dignos existimas apud quos turpiter loquare?** Cic., *Fin.*, II, 22, 74. **Non uidere dignus qui liber sis**, Pl., *Pseud.*, 611. **Ne ego quidem indignus (sum) cui copiam scientiae tuae facias**, Plin. *Min.*, VII, 27, 15. **Non indigni sumus, qui nobismet ipsi multam irrogemus**, Liv., XXX, 30, 24. **Properabat Acilius cum iuvene indigno, quem mors tam saeva maneret**, Iuv., IV, 95. **Non sum dignus prae te, ut figam palum in parietem**, Pl., *M. G.*, 1140. **Digna res visa (est) ut simulacrum celebrati eius diei Gracchus pingi iuberet**, Liv., XXIV, 16, 19 (in this sentence the Relative could not be used). **Indigni ut redimeremur (a) vobis visi sumus**, Liv., XXII, 59, 17. **Catonem induxi senem disputantem, quia nulla videbatur aptior persona, quae de illa aetate loqueretur**, Cic., *Am.*, I, 4. **Idonea mihi Laelii persona visa est, quae de amicitia ea ipsa dissereret**, Cic., *Am.*, I, 4. **Si tibi idoneus videor qui de homine Siculo ac Graeculo iudicem**, Cic., *Verr.*, II, 29, 72. **Non quaero quam idoneus (fuerit) propter cuius auctoritatem Sthenius ab omnium Siculo-rum consuetudine discederet**, Cic., *Verr.*, II, 43, 107.

After *aptus* and *idoneus* the usage is the Relative, not *ut*.

(a) The Infinitive with the preceding adjectives belongs to *poetry* and *late Latin*.



Ex.—(*Pecunia*) *tortum digna sequi funem*, H., *Epist.*, I, 10, 49. *Si quis erat dignus describi*, H., *Sat.*, I, 4, 3. *Effutire leves indigna tragoedia versus*, H., *A. P.*, 231. (*Circe*) *apta cantu veteres mutare figuras*, Tib., IV., 1, 62. *Videmur iam idonei spiritum trahere et in aperto durare*, Sen., *Ep.*, XVII, 2, 23.

(b) The Accusative and the Infinitive with *dignus* is very rare (*vid.* 27, 6).

306. After the *Comparative* follows a *Final* clause of *Result* introduced by *quam ut* or *quam* and the *Relative* (*qui*). In the best prose *quam ut* is the *usage* rather than *quam qui*. In this sentence the attributing to the subject or object in the leading clause of a quality in the comparative degree *suspends* the realization of the *Result* in the dependent clause, *renders it impossible of fulfillment*; that is, the *subject* or *object* possesses a *quality in a degree too high* for the realization of the *result*, which is thus presented as *one not to be attained*. Hence the *Result* is *denied*. If a negative, however, occurs in the leading clause, then the existence of the *quality* in the *Comparative* degree is not *inconsistent* with the realization of the *Result* which may be *attained* and is *so affirmed*. In this construction the *Relative qui* = *ut* is. Hence *quam qui* = *quam ut* is; *quam cuius* = *quam ut eius*; *quam cui* = *quam ut ei*; *quam quos* = *quam ut eos*; *quam quibus* = *quam ut iis*; *quam quo* = *quam ut eo*; *quam ubi* = *quam ut ibi*, etc.

Ex.—*Isocrates maiore mihi ingenio videtur esse, quam ut cum orationibus Lysiae comparatur*, Cic., *Or.*, XIII, 41. *Maiore intervallo a contactu inferiorum abductus est, quam ut ulla vis noxia usque ad illum vires suas perferat*, Sen., *Const. Sap.*, IV, 1. *Cogitat omnes inferiores esse, quam ut illis audacia sit tanto excelsiora desplicere*, Sen., *Const. Sap.*, XI, 2. *Minor es, quam ut serenitatem meam obducas*, Sen., *Ira.*, III, 25, 4. *Solidior est haec (opinio) apud eum quam ut a te ipsa concuti possit*, Sen., *Polyb.*, *De Cons.*, II, 5. *Principis maior est fortuna, quam ut solatio egeat*, Sen., *De Clem.*, XXI, 1. *Quaedam minora sunt, quam ut exire a magnis viris debeant*, Sen., *Ben.*, II, 15, 3. *Est minor, quam ut in sinu eius condenda sit civitas*, Sen., *Ben.*, II, 16, 2. *Hannibali res est visa maior quam ut eam capere animo posset*, Liv., XXII, 51, 3. *Agrippina lecti parietibus validioribus quam ut oneri cederent protecta est*, Tac., *Ann.*, XIV, 5. *Urbem corona circumdedit munitiorem quam ut primo impetu capi posset*, Curt., VII, 27. *Non longius hostes aberant, quam quo (= quam ut eo) telum adici posset*, Caes., *B. G.*, II, 21. *Ferocior oratio (Aemilii) visa est, quam quae (quam ut ea) habenda apud regem esset*, Liv., XXXI, 18, 3. *Plus committitur quam quod possit coercitione sanari*, Sen., *Ira*, II, 9, 1. *Plures (servos) habes quam quorum (= quam ut eorum) notitiae memoria sufficiat*, Sen., *Gall.*, *Vit. Beat.*, XVII, 2. *Opes maiores, quam quibus consumendis satis virium habeat fortuna*, Sen., *Gall.*, *Vit. Beat.*, XXVI, 2. *Plura veniunt, quam quibus una vox sufficiat*, Sen., *Ep.*, IV, 11, 2. *Distulerant tamquam maiora meritum, quam quae statim exsolverentur*, Tac., *H.*, III, 51.

**Durum magis et arduum opus, quam quo satis virium obsessis ad tolerandas necessitates superesset**, Tac., H., II, 4. **Malus gaudium fuit quam quod univ-ersum homines acciperent**, Liv., XXXIII, 32, 6. The dependent clause presents the Result as one not to be accomplished, but **Gaudium non maius fuit quam quod univ-ersum homines acciperent**. The effect of the negative is to present the Result as one realized or possible to be realized. Cf. **Non longius hostes aberant quam quo telum adici posset**, Caes., B. G., II, 21. The enemy was *not too far off for a missile to be thrown to them (there)*.

REM. 1. The particle *quam* and the Relative after the Comparative are not always followed by a *Result* clause. A *simple comparison* is made, and hence the *Indicative* is used in the latter member.

Ex.—**Angustiae minore certamine, quam quod animis proposuerant, superatae sunt**, Liv., XXXI, 40, 1. **Senatum consules habent alio se maiore ab tribunis metu ostendente, quam quem nocturnus hostis intulerat**, Liv., III, 16, 6. **Maiora concipere, quam quae effici possunt**, Sen., Gall., Vit. Beat., XX, 2. **Maiorem sonitum formant quam qui ore reddi potest**, Sen., N. Q., II, 6, 5.

REM. 2. In some cases the Relative after the Comparative, instead of *ut*, could not be used. Here the Predicate in the Result clause has its *Subject* in *this clause*.

Ex.—**Peius autem vexabar, quam ut mihi periculum succurreret**, Sen., Ep., VI, 1, 3. **Mori brevius est, quam ut sentiri tanta velocitas possit**, Sen., Prov., VI, 9. Cf. **Quid melius est quam corpore uitam ut secludam**, Pl., Rud., 220.

(a) The Subjunctive occurs with *quam* after the Comparative, with *ut* omitted. This is particularly the case after *potius*, while other Comparatives are not excluded. It must be noted, however, that the omission of *ut* after *potius quam*, etc., is *not a necessary and uniform usage*.

Ex.—**L. Verginius virginem filiam sua manu occidit potius, quam ea App. Claudii lubidini dederetur**, Cic., Fin., II, 20, 66. **Cur novissimum tempus expectemus potius, quam nunc aliquid moliamur?** Cic., Fam., XI, 1, 4. **Quid ego ex te quaero quid defensurus sis potius quam cognoscam ex ipsa civitate quid gestum sit?** Cic., Verr., III, 37, 85. **Aliorum exemplo peccate potius, quam alii vestro recte faciant**, Liv., III, 21, 6. **Cur, quod in sinu vestro est, excuti iubetis potius quam ponatis, nisi aliqua fraus subest?** Liv., VI, 15, 12. **Multi ex plebe potius quam ut cruciarentur... se in Tiberim praecipitaverunt**, Liv., IV, 12, 11. **Potius vituperationem inconstantiae suscipiam quam in te sim crudelis**, Cic., Verr., V, 40, 105. **Clarius exsplendescibat, quam generosi condiscipuli ferre possent**, Nep., Att., 1. **Cum me vehementius putaret intendi, quam gracilitas mea perpeti posset**, Plin. Min., II, 11, 15. **Segestanis imponebat aliquanto amplius, quam ferre possent**, Cic., Verr., IV, 34, 76. Cf. **Cuncta in Mithridatem fluxere atrociorum quam novo regno conduceret**, Tac., Ann., XI, 9. **Quam ut**, Tac., Ann., XII, 44; XIII, 1; XV, 9; Tac., II, 1, 65; I, 74, etc.

REM. 1. In some cases of the simple Subjunctive after the Com-

parative, *ut* could not well be supplied. Here the Subjunctive emphasizes the negative statement in the latter clause, and the use of the Indicative in this clause (in the statement of a mere comparison with the leading clause) is unusual and, as the sense of the clause is negative, seems to be illogical.

Ex.—*Parmenionem, nuper acrius quam vellet increpitum, rursus castigare non sustinebat*, Curt., IV, 47 (here *ut* could not well be used). *Cum magis vellet credere quam auderet*, Liv., XXXII, 11, 5 (*ut* could not well be used). *Stoicorum est oratio contractior, quam aures populi requirunt*, Cic., Brut., XXXI, 120. *Pantomimos fovebat effusius quam principi feminae convenit*, Plin. Min., VII, 24, 4 (observe the *Indicative*).

REM. 2. In some cases *ut* after the comparative is to be explained by the leading *Predicate which covers the ut clause and calls for the ut*, the character of which is decided by the *leading verb*.

Ex.—*Nihil magis praestandum est, quam ut memoria nobis meritorum haereat*, Sen., Ben., II, 24, 1 (*ut* demanded by *praestandum*). *Nihil amplius assecutus eris, quam ut eas difficultates effugeris, in quas licuit non descendere*, Sen., Ben., V, 12, 1 (*ut* called for by *assecutus eris*). *Haud amplius quam ut duo ex tribus filiis secum militarent exegit*, Curt., VIII, 16. *Nihil aliud molitus est, quam ut omnes civitates in sua teneret potestate*, Nep., Lys., I (*ut* called for by *molitus est*). Cf. *Et eius flagitium est, qui pecuniam ob delicta potius dedit, quam ne delinquerent*, Tac., Ann., XIV, 14 (*quam ne* a pure negative Final clause).

REM. 3. In this connection may be considered the Idiom *nihil* and the comparative (notably *amplius*) with *quam* and the Indicative = Nothing more than = *He did nothing more than the act stated in the Indicative*.

Ex.—*Nihil amplius quam magnificas Romam litteras misit*, Suet., Calig., 44 (= *he only sent* = *he did nothing more than send*). *Alium adukeris famosum nihil amplius quam monuit*, Suet., Claud., 16. *Nihil amplius quam continere se statuit*, Suet., Galb., 19. *Nec quicquam amplius quam muscas captare ac stilo praeacuto configere* (*Hist. Infin.*), Suet., Dom., 3. *Nihil amplius quam movet*, Sen., N. Q., VI, 11. Cf. *Quid aliud quam telis me opposui et malevolentiae quod morderet ostendi?* Sen., Gall., Vit. Beat., II, 3.

(b) After *nihil, nullus, quid est?* (= *nihil est*, etc.), with the Comparative, the Consecutive *ut* follows with *quam* (*quam ut*). Here not only is the matter of the second member of the comparison affirmed, but the presence of *nihil*, etc., in the leading clause results in a strong positive presentation of it. In fact, the matter of the second member of the comparison is so far enhanced by *nihil*, etc., and the Comparative that it may be, in effect, accepted as defined by the

*Superlative of the Adjective stated in the Comparative.* Thus: *Nihil facilius est, quam ut haec facias* = *Nothing is easier than that you do these things* = *Nothing is easier; the easiest thing is that you do; that you do these things is the easiest matter; that you do these things is very easy.* In the *ut* clause the matter is presented as *prospective, yet to occur.*

Ex.—*Nihil est in dicendo maius quam ut faveat oratori is, qui audlet*, Cic., *De Or.*, II, 42, 178 (there is nothing more important (greater) than that = the most important matter is that, etc.). *Nec habui quicquam antiquulus, quam ut Pan-sam statim convenirem*, Cic., *Fam.*, XI, 5, 1. *Quid irati gravius de vobis sentire possunt, quam ut eos prodatis qui*, etc.? *Caes.*, *B. Civ.*, II, 32.

REM. 1. In this connection occurs *quod* with the *Indicative* (*quam quod*) introducing a *fact*. Hence *quam quod* = *than that* = *than the fact that*.

Ex.—*Nihil malus (est) quam quod ita stabilis est mundus atque ita cohaeret ad permanendum, ut nihil ne excogitari quidem possit aptius*, Cic., *N. D.*, II, 44, 115. Cf. *Nec maius aliud Veneris Praxiteliae specimen, quam quod inter haec (signa) sola memoratur*, Plin. *Mai.*, XXXVI, 22. *Non alia maior gloria tua quam quod agentibus tibi gratias nihil velandum est, nihil omittendum est*, Plin. *Min.*, Pan., 56.

REM. 2. The *Accusative* and *Infinitive* occurs, in this connection, when it presents simply a matter of *thought* or *conception*. In some cases the leading verb may decide the construction.

Ex.—*Mihi nihil est molestius quam Statium manumissum*, Cic., *Att.*, II, 19, 1. *Theophani facile persuasi nihil esse melius quam illum nusquam discedere*, Cic., *Att.*, V, 11, 3. *An esse ulla maior contumelia potest, quam partem civitatis indignam conubio haberi?* *Liv.*, IV, 4, 5.

REM. 3. The *Simple Infinitive* occurs in the second member of the sentence presenting a matter simply conceived or thought without a subject.

Ex.—*Quid est illis optatius (= nihil illis optatius est), quam nos circumire et vos nefario scelere obstringere?* *Caes.*, *B. Civ.*, II, 32. *Neque illi quicquam deliberatius fuit, quam me vi atque impressione evertere*, Cic., *Fam.*, V, 2, 8.

307. The clause of Result is essentially an *objective* clause from the standpoint of the *Speaker* or *Writer*. Therefore the action may be conceived as *coincident* with the time of the *Speaker* or *Writer* or of a *given past action*, while from the standpoint of the *leading Predicate* it is necessarily subsequent and *future*. Hence, to indicate clearly and emphatically the *future* time of the dependent Subjunctive action from the standpoint of the *Speaker* or *Writer* or from a *given action in*

*the past*, the forms in *-rus sit* and *-rus esset* quite frequently occur both with the *Consecutive ut* and the *Consecutive Relative*. In some cases, perhaps, these forms (*-rus sit* and *-rus esset*) are the Present and Imperfect of the *Periphrastic Active* expressing what *is (was) going to occur*, what *is (was) likely to occur*, what *is (was) intended*, instead of what *will (would) occur*.

Ex.—Intellegit me ita paratum in iudicium venire, ut non modo in auribus vestris, sed in oculis omnium sua furta atque flagitia defixurus sim, Cic., Verr., Act. Prim., III, 7. Quam ob rem id quidem sic susceptum est mihi, ut nihil sim habiturus antiquius, Cic., Att., XV, 2, 1. Ita paratae (copiae) ad depugnandum esse dicuntur, ut, utercumque vicerit, non sit mirum futurum, Cic., Fam., VI, 4, 1. Esset tantum, ut nihil habituri negotii essent, Nep., Eum., 12. Sic vitia virtutibus immixta sunt, ut illas secum tractura sint, Plin. Min., Ep., XIX, 5, 12. Legati dixerunt ea merita populi Romani in Antiochum, ut, si legatos misissent qui, etc., extemplo abscessurus a moenibus Alexandriae abducturusque exercitum in Syriam esset, Liv., XLIV, 19, 11. Apparebat bello intestino cum fratre eum exitum fore, ut victor, fessus certamine, nequaquam par Antiocho futurus esset, Liv., XLV, 11, 5. En umquam ille dies futurus esset, quo vacuum hostibus Italiam bona pace florentem visuri essent! Liv., XXX, 21, 8. Nihil habet, quod ad se transferri sapiens gavisurus sit, Sen., Const. Sap., VIII, 1. Itaque nihil perdet quod perire sensurus sit, Sen., Const. Sap., V, 5.

## Oratio Recta and Oratio Obliqua.

308. When the *statements* or *thoughts* of another person are to be given by a *Reporter* or *Narrator* this may be done in the *exact* words in which they were delivered or expressed by the *Speaker*. In this case it is indicated, generally, by *inquit*, less frequently by *ait*, *dicit*, or by some term of quotation, that the language and thoughts are not those of the *Reporter* or *Narrator*, but of *another*, the *Speaker*. This kind of representation is called *Oratio Recta* or *Direct Discourse*.

Ex.—Tuum est, inquit, si vir es, regnum, non eorum, qui alienis manibus pessimum facinus fecere, Liv., I, 41, 3. Volunt, inquit, principes, Cic., Att., VI, 2, 9. Utinam, ait, tu tam fortiter ferias, Tac., Ann., XV, 67. Dices: Non omnes praetores tam severi (sunt), Plin. Min., IV, 29, 2. Elata vox eius in vulgum hisce verbis: Non sum remissus ad te, sed reversus: vel si non credis, dimitte et quaere, Tac., Ann., XII, 21.

(a) In *Oratio Recta* the verb *inquit* is inserted in the body of the quoted language as *near the beginning as possible without separating words intimately connected*, the subject *preceding the quotation*.

Ex.—Tunc Rebilus: Perterritum, inquit, hostem vides, Curio: quid dubitas uti temporis opportunitate? Caes., B. Civ., II, 34. Aquilifer: Hanc ego, inquit,

**vivus multos per annos magna diligentia defendi**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 64. **De-pugna, inquit, potius quam servias**, Cic., Att., VII, 7, 7. **At sic malo, inquires, quam cum exercitu**, Cic., Att., VII, 9, 3. **Cum hocine igitur, inquires, esse vis?** Cic., Att., IX, 7, 3. **Non multo, inquam, secus possum vaticinari**, Cic., Att., VIII, 11, 3. **Ubi Clitipho hic est?** "Eccum me," Inque, Ter., Heaut., 829. **Ita di faxint inquit**, Pl., Aul., 781.

REM. 1. When the subject of *inquit* is associated with an adverbial, conjunctive, or attributive (adjective or participial) definition, it, with the adverb, conjunction, or attributive, *precedes* the quoted language *as a rule*.

Ex.—**Tum Crassus: Quorsum igitur haec spectat, inquit, tam longa oratio?** Cic., De Or., III, 24, 91. **Tunc Caesar apud suos: Differendum est, inquit, iter in praesentia nobis**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 85. **Tum Crassus arridens: Quid censes, inquit, Cotta, nisi studium et ardorem quemdam amoris**, Cic., De Or., I, 30, 134. **Tum Caesar: Equidem, inquit, Catule, iam mihi videor navasse operam**, Cic., De Or., II, 7, 26. **Et Crassus: Nox te, inquit, nobis, Antoni, expoliavit hominemque reddidit**, Cic., De Or., II, 10, 40. **Caesar prolapsus in egressu navis: Teneo te, inquit, Africa**, Suet., Caes., 59. **Atque ego: Accurate tu quidem, inquam, Stoicorum sententiam defendisti**, Cic., Div., II, 3, 8.

REM. 2. When the subject is inserted in the quoted language it is very rarely separated from *inquit*. It should closely *follow inquit*.

Ex.—**Vincite, inquit, si ita vultis, Sabinus**, Caes., B. G., V, 30. **Provoco te, inquit, ad pugnam, Crispine, Badius: conscendamus equos**, etc., Liv., XXV, 18, 6. **Non potest inquit fieri Theophrastus ut**, etc., Sen., Ira, I, 14, 1. **Mihi vero, inquit Cotta, videtur**, Cic., N. D., I, 7, 17. **Perge vero, Crasse, inquit Mucius**, Cic., De Or., I, 24, 112.

REM. 3. The subject when *inserted* in the *quoted language* should *not precede inquit*. This position of the subject is *rare* and *irregular*.

Ex.—**Equidem probo ista, Crassus inquit, quae vos facere soletis**, Cic., De Or., I, 33, 149. **At non sine meo periculo, Crassus inquit, possum, Sulpici, te reprehendere**, Cic., De Or., III, 12, 47.

REM. 4. In quoting a short phrase or one word *inquit* stands *after* the phrase or word, and hence may close a quotation.

Ex.—**Mox Subrius Flavius: Oderam te, inquit**, Tac., Ann., XV, 67. **Et ille: Audite vero, audite, inquit**, Cic., De Or., II, 7, 28. **Rogat, ut eos ad CC perducam: Optime inquam**, Cic., Att., V, 21, 12. **Metuunt inquires**, Cic., Att., VIII, 16, 1. **Quid opus est? inquam**, Cic., Att., V, 21, 12.

REM. 5. *Inquit* occurs without a definite subject, in an impersonal sense = *it is said, they say*, etc.

Ex.—**Homini, inquit, mortuo ne ossa legito**, Cic., Leg., II, 24, 60. **Sed quidam, inquit, in ira se continent**, Sen., Ira, I, 8, 3. **Ita, inquit, utilis affectus**

**est, si modicus est, Sen., Ira, I, 10, 4. Irascimur, inquit, saepe non illis qui laeserunt, sed iis qui laesuri sunt, Sen., Ira, I, 3, 1. Sed adversus hostes, inquit, ira est necessaria? Sen., Ira, I, 11, 1.**

REM. 6. To express in *Oratio Recta* a Tense relation not supplied by *inquit*, the proper Tense of *dicere* must be used.

EX.—**Milo Crotoniates aspexisse lacertos suos dicitur illacrimansque dixisse: At hi quidem mortui iam sunt, Cic., Sen., IX, 27. Cum quidam dixisset: Huic quidem certe vitam tuam committis, Cic., Tusc., V, 20, 60. Expectas fortasse dum dicat: Patietur, perferet, non succumbet, Cic., Tusc., II, 7, 17. Etc.**

REM. 7. The verb *inquit* is quite frequently omitted in *Oratio Recta*.

EX.—**Si affinitatis inter vos, si conubii piget, in nos vertite iras, Liv., I, 13, 3. Tum Aper: Non desinis, Messala, vetera tantum et antiqua mirari, nostrorum autem temporum studia irridere atque contemnere? Tac., De Or., 15. Tum Messala: Sequar praescriptam a te, Materne, formam, Tac., De Or., 25.**

(b) The verb *ait* is used in *quoting* (*Oratio Recta*). It may precede the quotation, thus differing from *inquit*. It is usually written in the body of the quoted language as *inquit*, with its subject following it. The subject may, however, precede the quotation.

EX.—**Sagmina, inquit, te, rex, posco. Rex ait: Puram tollito, Liv., I, 24, 4. Senex spolia Curiatiorum fixa eo loco ostentans: Huncine, aiebat, sub furca vinctum inter verbera et cruciatus videre potestis? Liv., I, 26, 10. Impedis et ais: Habe meam rationem, Cic., Att., VIII, 9, 4. Ennio delector, ait quispiam, quod non discedit a communi more verborum, Cic., Or., XI, 36. Hoc, ait, in potestatem meam recidat, Sen., Ben., VI, 39, 2. Et quidem, aiebant, pervenimus ad immensas paludes, etc., Sen., N. Q., VI, 8, 4.**

REM. The verb *ait* is preceded by *ut* (*ut ait, ut aiunt*) inserted in the body of the quoted language, and with the subject following *ait*, etc., as a rule. With *ut ait* compare *quod ait*, also inserted in the body of the quoted language.

EX.—**Docebo sus, ut aiunt, oratorem eum quem, etc., Cic., De Or., II, 56, 233. Gladiatores, ut ait Cicero, invisos habemus, Sen., Tranq. An., XI, 4. Delicati vocantur, quod, ut ait Gallio, mane nesciunt surgere, Sen., N. Q., V, 11, 1. Hos, ut ait Salustius, animalium loco numeremus, Sen., Ep., VI, 8, 4. Prima pars hominis est ipsa virtus: huic committitur inutilis caro et fluida, receptandis tantum cibis habilis, ut ait Posidonius, Sen., Ep., XIV, 4, 10 (observe position of *ait*). Ut ait Thucydides, Nep., Them., 1. Dum respicimus, quod aiunt, versamusque nos, immortalitas aderit, Sen., Ira, III, 43, 5.**

(c) *Oratio Recta* is introduced by a Tense of *dicere* (*dicit, dixit, etc.*), quite uniformly preceding the quoted language, by any verb of *Saying*, or by a phrase the equivalent of a verb of *Saying*. Here the

entire statement quoted is the complement of the leading verb, and this relation to the verb is usually, not uniformly, indicated by a colon or semicolon. The insertion of *dicit*, *dixit*, etc., in the body of the *Oratio Recta* is poetical and not to be imitated.

Ex.—**Non dicis : Miser est M. Crassus, sed tantum : Miser M. Crassus**, Cic., Tusc., I, 7, 13. **Dixit : Hanc unam, Caesar, habeo iniuriam tuam**, Sen., Ben., II, 25, 1. **Narrabat ille : Assectabar Domitium Afrum**, Plin. Min., II, 14, 10. **Dicimus : Solus sapiens scit amare**, Sen., Ep., XI, 2, 12. **Rex respondit : Quod sine fraude mea populi que Romani fiat, facio**, Liv., I, 24, 5. **Regem ita rogavit : Rex, facisne me tu regium nuntium populi Romani ?** Liv., I, 24, 5. **Audita est vox : Tu es, Rufe, qui in hanc provinciam pro consule venies**, Tac., Ann., XI, 21. **Pater, O relictum filiae nomen, pietasque, dixit, victa furore !** Hor., Od., III, 27, 35.

309. When the discourse or statements of *another* person is reproduced by a Reporter, *not in the exact words* in which they were delivered but according to their contents as understood by the Reporter, this kind of *Representation* or *Narrative* is called *Oratio Obliqua* or *Indirect Discourse*.

Ex.—**Domitius ad Pompeium mittit, qui orent, ut sibi subveniat : Caesarem duobus exercitibus et locorum angustiis facile intercludi posse frumentoque prohiberi. Quod nisi fecerit, se cohortesque magnumque numerum senatorum atque equitum Romanorum in periculum esse venturum**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 17. **Pompeius rescripserat : sese rem in summum periculum deducturum non esse, neque suo consilio aut voluntate Domitium se in oppidum Corfinium contulisse ; proinde, si qua fuisset facultas, ad se cum omnibus copiis veniret**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 19.

(a) When a person expresses *his own thoughts in his own language*, he does this, of course, in *Oratio Recta*, or *Direct Discourse*. But a *Speaker* may be his own *Reporter*—that is, a person may, and often does, as Reporter, reproduce the contents of what he said or thought on a *previous occasion*. This kind of statement may be termed *Subjective Oratio Obliqua*. It occurs, of course, when the Reporter and Speaker are the same person. Here a person, as Reporter, treats *his own thoughts or statements* as he would the thoughts or statements of *another*. The Speaker in reporting himself retains, of course, the first person.

Ex.—**Quod cum dicerem, illud adiunxi, mihi tecum ita dispertitum officium fuisse in rei publicae salute retinenda, ut ego urbem . . . tu Italiam . . . defenderes, atque hanc nostram societatem a tuis propinquis labefactam, qui, cum tu a me rebus amplissimis ornatus esses, timuissent ne quae mihi pars abs te voluntatis mutuae tribueretur**, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 1. **Neque magno opere dixi esse nobis laborandum, quod nihilo magis ei licitum esset plebeio rem publicam**



*perdere, quam similibus eius me consule patriciis esset licitum*, Cic., Att., II, 1, 5. Cf. *Reliqua sunt eius modi ut meum consilium saepe reprehendam, quod non aliqua ratione ex hoc negotio emersem*, Cic., Att., V, 10, 3.

(b) A second form of *Subjective Oratio Obliqua* occurs when the Speaker reports what is said or thought of himself by another. Here the Speaker retains, of course, the first person in referring to himself.

Ex.—*Scribunt ad me amici eius me illi nullo modo satis fecisse, quod in senatum non venerim*, Cic., Att., X, 8, 3. *Reprehendit, quia non semper quierim*, Cic., Att., II, 16, 3. *Me hic laudat, quod rettulerim, non quod patefecerim, cohortatus sim, quod denique ante quam consulerem ipse iudicarem*, Cic., Att., XII, 21, 1. *Arbitratur me hanc rem publicam non putare, si perpetuo tacerem*, Cic., Fam., IV, 4, 4.

310. The *Oratio Obliqua* (*Indirect Discourse*) by which a *Reporter* or *Narrator* reproduces the contents of what another person (a speaker) has said or thought is introduced by the proper Tense of *any* verb of *Saying* or *Thinking* or of the equivalent of such a verb. The entire dependent sentence is the object of the governing verb of *Saying* or *Thinking*, etc. The governing verb of *Saying* or *Thinking* is not always expressed. The *Oratio Obliqua* sentence in its regular and complete form should be introduced in translating by *that*, which is simply the *index of dependency* and of the relation of the object.

Ex.—*Socrates dicere solebat omnes in eo, quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes*, Cic., De Or., I, 14, 63. *Cato mirari se aiebat, quod non rideret haruspex, haruspem cum vidisset*, Cic., Div., II, 24, 51. *Ennius non censet lugendam esse mortem, quam immortalitas consequatur*, Cic., Sen., XX, 73. *Tarquinius maledicta ab stirpe ultima orsus: (eum) ita natum, ita creatum regem fautorem infimi generis hominum, ex quo ipse sit, odio alienae honestatis ereptum primoribus agrum sordidissimo cuique divisisse*, Liv., I, 47, 10. *Iusiurandum populi recitat: neminem regnare passuros nec esse Romae, unde periculum libertati foret*, Liv., II, 2, 5. (*Mulier dixit*) *non sibi defuisse, cui nupta diceretur nec cum quo tacita serviret: defuisse, qui se regno dignum putaret, etc. (supply saying that, etc.)*, Liv., I, 47, 2. *Responsum, ignosci adolescentibus posse, senibus non posse, qui bella ex bellis sererent*, Liv., II, 18, 10. *Collatinus negat verbis opus esse, paucis id quidem horis posse sciri, quantum ceteris praestet Lucretia sua*, Liv., I, 57, 7.

311. In considering the *Oratio Obliqua* three things are to be observed:

1. *The use of Mood.*
2. *The use of Tense.*
3. *The use of Pronouns.*

## The Use of Mood in Oratio Obliqua.

**312.** The *Oratio Obliqua* is essentially the statement or presentation in an *indirect* way, or *dependent* upon a verb of *Saying* or *Thinking*, etc., of the *Oratio Recta*. The *leading* member of the *Oratio Recta* is expressed in the *Oratio Obliqua* in the *Accusative* with the *Infinitive*, while the *dependent* or *explanatory* member of the *Oratio Recta* is expressed in the *Oratio Obliqua* in the *Subjunctive*. The *Oratio Obliqua*, as has been stated, is introduced by a verb of *Saying* or *Thinking* or its *equivalent*. The *leading* clause of the *Oratio Recta* becomes, in *Oratio Obliqua*, *directly dependent* upon the *leading* or *governing* verb of *Saying* or *Thinking*, and hence is expressed in the *Accusative* with the *Infinitive*. The *explanatory* clause of the *Oratio Recta* is in the *Oratio Obliqua* expressed in the *Subjunctive*, *because* it is given by the *Reporter* or *Narrator* as the *statement* or *thought* of *another* (the *Speaker*) which the *Reporter* or *Narrator* does not think proper to *indorse* as a *fact* by stating it in the *Indicative*.

**313.** The *Time* of the *Speaker*, independently considered, is the *Present*. This is his *Time* from *his own standpoint*, the *Present*. The proper *Time* of the *Reporter* or *Narrator* of the *past statements* or *thoughts* of the *Speaker* is the *Past*. He, therefore, regularly assumes his own proper *Time* (the *Past*) in his narration and employs as its index a *Past Tense* (*dixit*, etc.). He may, however, assume and often does assume the *proper Time* of the *Speaker* (the *Present*) and employs as its index a *Present Tense* (*dicit*, etc.).

Ex.—*Omnes in eo quod sciunt satis eloquentes sunt* (*O. R.*).

*Socrates dicit, omnes in eo quod sciunt satis eloquentes esse* (*O. O.* from the standpoint of the *Speaker*).

*Socrates dicebat, omnes in eo quod scirent satis eloquentes esse* (*O. O.* from the standpoint of the *Reporter*).

*Miror quod non ridet haruspex, haruspicem cum vidit* (*O. R.*).

*Cato dicit: se mirari, quod non rideat haruspex, haruspicem cum viderit* (*O. O.* from the standpoint of the *Speaker*).

*Cato dicebat: se mirari, quod non rideret haruspex, haruspicem cum vidisset* (*O. O.* from the standpoint of the *Reporter*).

*Imperium summum Romae habebit, qui vestrum primus, o iuvenes, osculum matri tulerit*, Liv., I, 56, 10.

*Vox redditur: eum imperium summum Romae habiturum esse, qui iuvenum primus osculum matri (suae) tulerit* (*O. O.* from the standpoint of the *Present* (the *Speaker*)).

*Vox reddita est: eum imperium summum Romae habiturum esse, qui iuvenum primus osculum matri (suae) tulisset* (*O. O.* from the standpoint of the *Reporter* (defined by *reddita est*, *Aorist*)).

Convert into *Oratio Obliqua* from the standpoint of *dicit* (the *Speaker*) and of *dixit* (the *Reporter*) the following:

Ex.—*Tuum est, Servi, si vir es regnum, non eorum, qui alienis manibus pessimum facinus fecere*, Liv., I, 41, 3.

*Non obstabant P. Valerii aedes libertati vestrae, Quirites, tuta erit vobis Vella. Deferam non in planum modo aedes, sed colli etiam subiciam, ut vos supra suspectum me olivem habitetis*, Liv., II, 7, 11.

314. It has been stated that the leading member of an *Oratio Recta* sentence is in *Oratio Obliqua* expressed by the Accusative and the Infinitive, which is the member *directly* and *immediately* dependent upon the *leading* or *governing* verb of *Saying* or *Thinking*. Instead, however, of the Accusative and Infinitive in the leading member of the *Oratio Obliqua* the Subjunctive is used:

1. In the expression of an *Imperative* relation of the *Oratio Recta*. That is, an *Imperative* relation of the *Oratio Recta* becomes the Subjunctive in the *Oratio Obliqua* and the *Present* or *Imperfect* Tense of the Subjunctive according to the time of the *Oratio Obliqua*. In the Positive statement of the Imperative in the *Oratio Obliqua* the Subjunctive is regularly used without *ut* in presenting a pure Imperative. The negative statement is made by *ne* and the Subjunctive. The Imperative relation is continued negatively by *neve* (*neu*), less frequently by *neque* (*nec*). The explanation of the Subjunctive may be stated as follows:

The governing verb in *Oratio Obliqua* is one of *Saying* or *Thinking*. The *Imperative*, as the direct *object* of such a verb, converts it into a verb of *Wishing*, *Ordering*, etc., according to the force of the *Imperative*, and such a verb takes the Subjunctive without *ut* as its *Complementary definition*. Hence, in *Oratio Obliqua*, *Veniat* = *that he shall come* = *he says that he shall come*; *Veniret* = *that he should come* = *he said that he should come*. It follows, of course, that any Imperative relation in *Oratio Recta*, the so-called Hortatory Subjunctive (Imperative of the First and Third Persons), the Third Person Imperative, as well as the Second Person of the Imperative (Person of Direct Address), is expressed in *Oratio Obliqua* in the Subjunctive.

Ex.—*At tu pater deum hominumque, hinc arce hostes, deme terrorem Romanis fugamque foedam siste* (*O. R.*), Liv., I, 12, 5.

{	= <i>At pater deum hominumque hinc arceat hostes, demat terrorem Romanis fugamque foedam sistat</i> ( <i>O. O.</i> from standpoint of <i>Speaker</i> ).
	= <i>At pater deum hominumque hinc (illinc) arceret hostes, demeret terrorem Romanis fugamque foedam sisteret</i> ( <i>O. O.</i> from standpoint of <i>Reporter</i> ).

**Erige te, deosque duces sequere, qui clarum hoc fore caput divino quondam circumfuso igni portenderunt** (*O. R.*), Liv., I, 41, 3.

{ = **Erigat se, deosque duces sequatur, qui clarum hoc fore caput divino quondam circumfuso igni portenderint** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Speaker*).

{ = **Erigeret se, deosque duces sequeretur, qui clarum hoc (illud) caput divino quondam circumfuso igni portendissent** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Reporter*).

**Duumviri perduellionem iudicent** (*O. R.*), Liv., I, 26, 6.

{ = **Duumviri perduellionem iudicent** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Speaker*).

{ = **Duumviri perduellionem iudicarent** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Reporter*).

**Amemus patriam, pareamus senatui, consulamus bonis** (*O. R.*), Cic., Sest., LXVIII, 143.

{ = **Ipsi ament patriam, pareant senatui, consulant bonis** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Speaker*).

{ = **Ipsi amarent patriam, parerent senatui, consulerent bonis** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Reporter*).

**Ne difficilia optemus** (*O. R.*), Cic., Verr., IV, 7, 15.

{ = **Ne ipsi difficilia optent** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Speaker*).

{ = **Ne ipsi difficilia optarent** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Reporter*).

**Ne sis admiratus** (*O. R.*), Cic., Fam., VII, 18, 3.

{ = **Ne admiretur** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Speaker*).

{ = **Ne admiraretur** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Reporter*).

**Noli putare** (*O. R.*), Cic., Fam., XIV, 2, 1.

{ = **Ne putet** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Speaker*).

{ = **Ne putaret** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Reporter*).

**Donis impii ne placare audeant deos** (*O. R.*), Cic., Leg., II, 16, 41.

{ = **Donis impii ne placare audeant deos** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Speaker*).

{ = **Donis impii ne placare auderent deos** (*O. O.* from standpoint of *Reporter*).

REM. If the leading or governing verb is a verb of Saying, etc., with the leading member of *Oratio Obliqua* in the Accusative and Infinitive, a following Imperative relation is expressed by the simple Subjunctive, not by *ut* and the Subjunctive. Again, if the leading or governing verb is a verb *Studii aut Voluntatis*, it, of course, maintains its force and the *Oratio Obliqua* clause depending upon it is introduced by *ut*.

EX.—**Litterae ei redduntur a Pompeio, mare transisse cum legionibus Caesarem: properaret ad se cum exercitu venire omniaque posthaberet**, (Caes., B. Civ., III, 33 (not *ut properaret*). (*Dixit*) **debere illi res suas satis placere: caveret id petere a populo Romano, quod illi iure negaretur**, (Sal., Ing., 64. **Postulabat Caesar, ut legatos sibi ad Pompeium mittere liceret**, etc. **Addit, ut, quod quisque eorum in bello amiserit, restituatur**, (Caes., B. Civ., I, 87.

(a) Convert into *Oratio Obliqua* from the standpoint of the *Speaker* and of the *Reporter* the following:

Ex.—*Abi, nuntia Romanis caelestes ita velle, ut mea Roma caput orbis terrarum sit: proinde rem militarem colant*, Liv., I, 16, 7. *Nuntiate regi vestro regem Romanum deos facere testes*, etc., Liv., I, 22, 7. *Nunc te illa caelestis excitet flamma: nunc expergiscere vere*, Liv., I, 41, 3. *Ne destiteris ad me quicquid tibi in mentem venerit scribere*, Cic., Att., IX, 9, I.

(b) Convert into *Oratio Recta* the following:

Ex.—*Tarquinius Veientes orare: ne se ante oculos suos perire sinerent: ferrent opem, adjuvarent: suas quoque veteres iniurias ultum irent*, Liv., II, 6, 2 (4). *Romulus docebat: mollirent modo iras, et quibus fors corpora dedisset, darent animos*, Liv., I, 9, 15. *Romulus dixit: ne gravarentur homines cum hominibus sanguinem et genus miscere*, Liv., I, 9, 4.

REM. As the *first*, *second*, and *third persons* of the *Oratio Recta* are in the *Oratio Obliqua* expressed by the *third person*, the person in the *Oratio Recta* which is thus stated by the *third person* in the *Oratio Obliqua* must be decided by the context.

(c) The First Future Indicative in an Imperative sense can, in *Oratio Obliqua*, be treated either according to its *form* as a tense of pure predication and expressed in the *Accusative* and (*Future*) *Infinitive*, and this is the usage, or, according to its *Imperative sense*, in the *Subjunctive*.

Ex.—*Mummius iussit praedici conducentibus, si eas statuas perdidissent, novas (eos) reddituros*, Vell., I, 13, 4.

Cf. *Si eas statuas perdidissent, novas redderent*.

*O. R. Si eas statuas perdidissent, novas reddent* (= *reddituros* in *O. O.*).

Ex.—*Quod populus in se ius dederit, eo consulem usurum*, Liv., III, 9, 5.

Cf. *Quod populus in se ius dederit, eo consul utatur*.

*O. R. Quod populus in se ius dederit, eo consul utetur* (= *usurum* in *O. O.*).

Ex.—*Caligula huic misit, qui diceret cenaturum apud Caesarem vocatu ipsius*, Suet., Calig., 39.

Cf. *Caligula huic misit qui diceret: cenaret apud Caesarem*, etc.

*O. R. Cenabit apud Caesarem* or *Cenabis apud Caesarem*, etc.

Ex.—*Rex rursus eos terram legere iussit, donec ad Euphratis ostia appellerent classem, inde adverso amne Babylona subituros*, Curt., X, 2. *Respondit, si quid Brutus de suis facultatibus uti voluisset, usurum, quantum hae paterentur*, Nep., Att., 8.

2. If the leading verb of the *Oratio Recta* is the *Potential Subjunctive* or the *Subjunctive* in *Protestation*, it is reproduced in *Oratio Obliqua* by the *Infinitive* of one of the auxiliary verbs *posse*, *velle*, *licere*, according to the phase of potentiality to be expressed.

**Ex.—***Quaerat quispiam (O. R.). Dicit, quempiam quaerere posse (O. O.). Moriar, si gaudeo (O. R.). Dicit se mori velle, si gaudeat (O. O.). Ne sim salvus, si aliter scribo ac sentio (O. R.). (Cicero dicit) se salvum esse nolle, si aliter scribat ac sentiat (O. O.).*

3. The *wish* impossible to be realized with *utinam*, etc., in the *Oratio Recta* should in an *Oratio Obliqua* connection be *retained* in the form of *Direct Discourse* by *inquit*, or a verb in the *same office*. So when the *wish impossible* to be realized is expressed by *vellem*, *nollem*, *mallem*, and the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect* Subjunctive. The Accusative and Infinitive formed by *velle*, *nolle* + *Perfect* or *Present Infinitive* does not express this relation. The association of *velle*, *nolle*, *mallem*, with the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect* Subjunctive as the statement in *Oratio Obliqua* of *wishes impossible* to be realized does not *probably occur*.

**Ex.—***Utinam posset aliqua ratione hoc crimen defendere, Cic., Verr., III, 97, 224 (retain O. R. by Inquit=utinam, inquit Cicero, posset, etc.). Utinam aliquid perfectum esset, Cic., Att., VIII, 9, 2 (in O. O. connection retain O. R. by inquit = utinam, inquit Cicero, aliquid perfectum esset). Utinam istam calliditatem hominibus dii ne dedissent, Cic., N. D., III, 30, 75. In O. O. connection retain O. R. by inquit = utinam, inquit, istam . . . ne . . . dedissent. Vellem etiam hoc posset dicere, Cic., Verr., III, 97, 225. Retain the O. R. by inquit = vellem, inquit, etiam hoc posset, etc. Cf. Cum sententiae perrogarentur, dixit Iunius Mauricus non esse restituendum Viennensibus agona: adiecit, vellem etiam Romae tolli posset, Plin. Min., IV, 22, 3 (here adiecit introduces O. R. Cf. Vellem, inquit, etiam Romae tolli posset.) Non aliam premendi inimici occasionem futuram ratus, odio suo pietatis praeferens speciem, utinam, inquit in principio quoque huius rei nobiscum deliberasses, Curt., VI, 29.*

4. If the leading verb of the *Oratio Recta* sentence is a *Question* to which an answer is expected, it is in *Oratio Obliqua* expressed in the *Subjunctive*. The governing verb is here, as elsewhere, one of *Saying* or *Thinking*. When an interrogative clause becomes the object of such a verb, the effect of the association is to convert the latter into a verb of *Asking* or *Inquiring*, which finds its complement in a *Dependent* or *Indirect Question* expressed in the Subjunctive (He *said*: What were you doing? = He *asked* what you were doing). If the leading verb is one of *Asking* or *Inquiring* the dependent question is decided by it and follows as its complement.

**Ex.—***Ariovistus respondit: Quid (Caesar) sibi vellet, cur in suas possessiones veniret? (Caes., B. G., I, 44 (= O. R. Quid tibi vis, cur in meas possessiones venis?). Dictator litteras ad senatum misit. Deum immortalium benignitate Veios iam fore in potestate populi Romani: quid de praeda faciendum censerent? Liv., V, 20, 3. (O. R. = Deum immortalium benignitate Veii iam erunt, etc. . . . quid de praeda faciendum censetis?) Equites inter se quaerebant: Quid*

**restaret, si neque ex equis pepulissent hostem neque pedites quicquam momenti facerent? quam tertiam expectarent pugnam? quid ante signa feroces prosiluissent et alieno pugnarent loco?** Liv., VII, 8, 2. *Oratio Obliqua*, from standpoint of Speaker

**= Equites inter se quaerunt: Quid restet, si neque ex equis pepulerint hostem neque pedites quicquam momenti faciant? quam tertiam expectent pugnam? quid ante signa feroces prosiluerint et alieno pugnent loco?**

*Oratio Recta* = **Quid restat, si neque ex equis pepulimus hostem neque pedites quicquam momenti facimus? quam tertiam expectamus pugnam? quid ante signa feroces prosiluimus et alieno pugnamus loco?**

(a) Convert into *Oratio Obliqua* from the standpoint of the *Speaker* and of the *Reporter* the following:

**Estisne vos legati oratoresque missi a populo Collatino? Estne populus Collatinus in sua potestate? Deditisne vos populumque Collatinum in populi Romani dicionem?** Liv., I, 38, 2. **Si ad haec parum est animi, quid frustraris civitatem? quid te ut regium iuvenem conspici sinis?** Liv., I, 47, 5. **Quid hoc, Tarquini, rei est? qua tu audacia me vivo vocare ausus es patres aut in sede considerare mea?** Liv., I, 48, 1. Convert into *Oratio Recta*: **Caesar dixit: Ariovistum se consule populi Romani amicitiam appetisse: cur hunc quisquam ab officio discessurum iudicaret? Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent?** Caes., B. G., I, 40.

**315.** The *Rhetorical Question* or that form of a sentence by which, in *Oratio Recta*, a *statement* is made or an *opinion* is expressed interrogatively, is, in the *Oratio Obliqua*, stated in the *Accusative* with the *Infinitive*. In the *Oratio Obliqua* not the *form* (*interrogative*) of the sentence controls, but its *contents* or the *statement* that is made, and hence, as any other *leading* sentence when dependent upon the governing verb of *Saying* or *Thinking*, it is expressed in the *Accusative* with the *Infinitive*. The Interrogative *Accusative* with the *Infinitive*, introduced by different Interrogative words, occurs extensively in the Latin, and expresses the several kinds of *Rhetorical Questions* in *Oratio Recta*, referred to 224, 225, 226, etc.

EX.—**Cui non apparere, affectare eum imperium in Latinos?** Liv., I, 50, 5 (To whom is it not clear? = It is clear to every one). **Quid attinuisse Hernicis, paulo ante hostibus, capti agri partem tertiam reddi, nisi ut, etc.?** Liv., II, 41, 6. **Quonam haec omnia nisi ad suam perniciem pertinere?** Caes., B. Civ., I, 9. **Quid esse levius aut turpius, quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?** Caes., B. G., V, 28. **Quid esse aliud quam minari se proditurum patriam?** Liv., IV., 2, 13. **Quam aliam vim conubia promiscua habere, nisi ut, etc.?** Liv., IV., 2, 6. **Nam aliter qui credituros eos, non vana ab legatis afferri?** Liv., II, 4, 4. **Quamdiu autem tranquillam, quae secesserit, multitudinem fore?** Liv., II, 32, 6. **An quicquam superbius esse, quam ludificari sic**

**omne nomen Latinum?** Liv., I, 50, 3. **Imperatori quantum ad robur deesse?** Tac., Ann., XIII, 6. **Quanto suo labore perpetratum (esse), ne irrumperet curiam?** Tac., Ann., XIV, 11. **Unde eam pecuniam confici posse, nisi tributo populo indicto?** Liv., IV, 60, 4. **Longinquos motus quonam modo comprimi posse?** Liv., XIV, 57. **Quid tandem? illi non licere, si quid consules superbe in aliquem civium fecerint, diem dicere, etc.?** Liv., III, 9, 9 (observe here the negative **non**. Is it not allowed him? = It is allowed him).

(a) The particle *cur* usually asks for information and a reply, particularly when the question is addressed to the *Second Person* (Predicate in second person). Hence we find the Subjunctive more frequently with *cur*. But the question with *cur* may be rhetorical, and hence, in *Oratio Obliqua*, associated with the Accusative and Infinitive.

Ex.—**Drusus clamore turbatur: Cur venisset?** Tac., Ann., I, 26 (= **Cur venisti?** in *Oratio Recta*). But also, **Agrippina increpare principem: Cur differri nuptias suas?** Tac., Ann., XIV, 1. **Cur enim neminem alium delectum, qui saevienti impudicae vocem praeberet?** Tac., Ann., XIII, 43.

(b) The Accusative with the Infinitive occurs in *Oratio Obliqua* with *-ne? num? nonne?* When the Question with *-ne* is, in *Oratio Recta*, rhetorical, that is, when it implies an affirmative or negative answer, and hence makes an affirmative or negative statement, or when the matter of the Question with *-ne* is insisted upon or is presented with protest or with disinclination to accept it—in any of these cases—the Question in *Oratio Obliqua* is expressed in the Accusative and Infinitive. The Question with *num* in *Oratio Recta* is rhetorical, as it implies a negative statement. The Question with *nonne* in *Oratio Recta* is also rhetorical, as it implies an affirmative statement. Hence, the Question with *num* or *nonne* is, in *Oratio Obliqua*, expressed in the Accusative with the Infinitive. But compare the Subjunctive with *-ne, num, nonne* in the Indirect Question. (*Vid.* 241, a, b, etc.)

Ex.—**Hocine patendum fuisse, si ad nutum dictatoris non responderit vir consularis?** Liv., VI, 17, 3. **Selibrisne farris gratiam servatori patriae relatum?** Liv., VI, 17, 5. **Sequentes clamitant matronae, eamne liberorum procreandum condicionem?** Liv., III, 48, 8 (statement of the matter of the question with disfavor and protest). **Nonne Canuleio duce se superaturos Capitolium atque arcem scandere posse, si, etc.?** Liv., IV, 2, 13. **Magistratum nonne plerosque variis libidinibus obnoxios (esse)?** Tac., Ann., III, 34. **Potuisse patres plebiscito pelli honoribus suis: num etiam in deos immortales inauspicatam legem valuisse?** Liv., VII, 6, 11. **Caesar respondit: Si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam deponere posse?** Caes., B. G., I, 14.

REM. The Apodosis of an unreal conditional, when stated as a



Rhetorical Question, in *Oratio Obliqua*, is expressed in the Accusative and Infinitive (*-rum fuisse*).

Ex.—*Quid passurum fuisse filium suum, si exercitum amisisset, quo ultra iram eius excessuram fuisse, quam ut verberaret necaretque?* Liv., VIII, 33, 19.

(c) The Disjunctive Question *utrum—an? -ne—an?* of *Oratio Recta*, when rhetorical, is expressed in *Oratio Obliqua* by the Accusative with the Infinitive. In this case the translation “*whether—or*” should be retained, but not with the view of ascertaining which of the two alternatives is the fact (= Indirect Question in the Subjunctive), but qualified by the statement or view that one or the other alternative is the fact, in some cases that one alternative is the fact, or is to be accepted, rather than or to the exclusion of the other, or that neither alternative is to be accepted. The Accusative with the Infinitive is to be interpreted from the standpoint of “*either—or*,” implying a governing verb of Saying or Thinking.

Ex.—*Intellexi hominem moveri, utrum Crassum inire eam gratiam, quam ipse praetermisisset, an esse tantas res nostras. quae*, etc., Cic., Att., I, 14, 3 (= I perceived that the person was concerned—whether—or (= *either that—or*) either alternative may be the fact). *Quod naturae damnum utrum nutriendum patri, si quicquam in eo humani esset, an castigandum ac vexatione insigne faciendum fuisse?* Liv., VII, 4, 6 (the latter alternative rejected). *Tiberius egit gratis benevolentiae patrum: sed quos omitti posse? quos deligi? semperne eosdem an subinde alios?* Tac., Ann., VI, 2 (disinclination to accept either alternative). *Privatumne maiorem fratrem an exulem mori iussurum?* Liv., XLV, 19, 15 (disinclination to allow either alternative). *Utrum partem regni petiturum esse, an totum erepturum?* Liv., XLV, 19, 15.

316. The Direct Potential Question expressed in *Oratio Recta* in the Subjunctive is of two kinds, Deliberative and Rhetorical (*vid.* 230). In the *Oratio Obliqua* the Deliberative Question is retained in the Subjunctive. As *Quid faciam?* (*Oratio Recta*) = *Quid faciat?* (*Oratio Obliqua* in the Present); *Quid faceret?* (*Oratio Obliqua* in the Past). In the case of the Rhetorical Question (= *Quis hoc credat?*) the tendency is to express this also, in the *Oratio Obliqua*, in the Subjunctive, while the Accusative with the Infinitive is allowed. It must be observed, however, that the reproduction in *Oratio Obliqua* by the Accusative with the Infinitive, of the Subjunctive Rhetorical Question, is not susceptible of *absolute proof*. The form of the Infinitive which should reproduce in *Oratio Obliqua* the Subjunctive Rhetorical Question is the Future First, *-rum esse*, (rather than the Pres-

ent); but, as this form (*-rum esse*) reproduces as well the Future First Indicative and, in certain connections, the Future First Subjunctive, it cannot be stated with absolute certainty that in a given case the Infinitive is to be explained as the Subjunctive Rhetorical Question reproduced in *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—Caesar dixit: **Cur etiam secundo proelio aliquos ex suis amitteret? Cur vulnerari pateretur optime de se meritos milites?** (Caes., B. Civ., I, 72 (the subjunctives here better as Deliberative Questions = **Cur amittam? cur patiar?** in *O. R.*). **Quod ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id iis eripi quis pati posset?** Caes., B. G., I, 43 (here **posset** is Rhetorical Question = **Quis possit?** in *O. R.*). **Cottae atque eorum, qui dissentirent, consilium quem haberet exitum?** Caes., B. G., V, 29 (here **haberet** is Deliberative Question = **Quem habeat?** in *O. R.*). **Postremo, quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certa re Ambiorigem ad eiusmodi consilium descendisse?** Caes., B. G., V, 29 (here **persuaderet** is Rhetorical Question = **Quis persuadeat?** in *O. R.*). **Eane meritos crederet quisquam hostes repente sine causa factos?** Liv., VII, 20, 5 (here **crederet** is Rhetorical Question = **Credat?** in *O. R.*). **Orant, ne se in rebus tam trepidis deserat: quo enim se repulsos ab Romanis ituros?** Liv., XXXIV, 11, 5 (here **ituros** may well be interpreted as Rhetorical Question = **Quo eamus?** (rather than **quo ibimus?**) in *O. R.*). **Quid ita Marcellus iudicium magistratum pavesceret?** Tac., H., IV, 7 (here **pavesceret** Deliberative Question). **Quem signum daturum fugientibus?** **Quem ausurum Alexandro succedere?** Curt., III, 12 (= **Quis det** rather than **dabit?**) **Quis audeat** (rather than **audebit?**) in *O. R.*). **Quem puellarum acturum esse curam? quem alium futurum Alexandrum?** Curt., X, 17 (here **quis agat** (rather than **aget?**) **quis alius sit Alexander** (rather than **erit?**) in *O. R.*).

317. The Rhetorical Question in *Oratio Recta*, as has been seen, implies *statements* of different kinds, among these protest as to the matter of the question accompanied with the idea that it should not be, when the question is affirmative, as *Cur dubitas?* = *why do you hesitate?* *I am surprised that you hesitate; you should not hesitate;* again, accompanied with the idea that the matter of the question should be, when the question is negative, as *Cur non (quin) venis?* = *why do you not come?* *I am surprised that you do not come; you should come.* Such questions, when expressed in the *Oratio Obliqua* in the Subjunctive, are reproduced by the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive, as *Cur dubitas?* *Cur dubitaret?* *Cur non (quin) veniat?* *Cur non (quin) veniret?* It seems, then, irregular and unnecessary to resolve such questions by, or to associate them with, the Imperative in *Oratio Recta*, as *Cur dubitet (dubitaret)? Oratio Obliqua = Ne dubitaveris, Oratio Recta. Cur non (quin) veniat (veniret)? Oratio Obliqua = veni, Oratio Recta.* It follows that it is very doubtful (it certainly cannot be

proved) that the negative Imperative Second Person (*ne* + Second Person Perfect, Subjunctive) of *Oratio Recta* is to be reproduced in *Oratio Obliqua* by *cur* or *quid* + the Subjunctive (Present or Imperfect), and that the Positive Imperative of *Oratio Recta* may be reproduced by *cur non* (*quin*) and the Subjunctive (Present or Imperfect). It will be observed that the above statements are limited to the questions addressed in *Oratio Recta* to the Second Person (Predicate in second person), which, in *Oratio Obliqua*, are regularly expressed in the Subjunctive.

**Ex.**—*Nec cessabant Sabini rogantes quid tererent tempus et in multa proelia carperent summam unius belli?* Liv., III, 61, 13 (= *quid teritis?* (rather than *ne triveritis*) and *carpitis?* (rather than *ne carperitis*) in *O. R.*). *Quin illi congredierentur acie inclinandamque semel fortunae rem darent?* = *quin congredimini* (Present Indicative)...*datis?* in *O. R.* *Cur tam levia consecraretur?* Tac., Ann., XIII, 49 = *cur consecraris?* *O. R.*

**REM.** It is clearly often a matter of discretion whether in *Oratio Obliqua* a question is treated as rhetorical and expressed in the Accusative with the Infinitive or as an ordinary question in the Subjunctive.

**318.** The Relative clause in *Oratio Obliqua* is to be carefully observed. The Relative, in its regular office, introduces a *dependent* and *explanatory* clause, with its Predicate in the *Subjunctive*. The Relative is, however, often resolved, first, as a *Demonstrative*, as *qui* = *he, this, that*; secondly, as a *Demonstrative* with *et* = *and he*: with *nam* = *for he*: with *sed* = *but he*, etc. = *et is*: *nam is*: *sed is*, etc. As the Relative so are the Relative *Particles* often resolved, as *ubi* = *ibi* (*there*), also *et* (*nam, sed*) *ibi* = *et* (*nam, sed*) *in eo*, etc.: *unde* = *inde* (*thence*), also *et* (*nam, sed*) *inde* = *et* (*nam, sed*) *ex eo*, etc.: *quo* = *eo* (*thither*), also *et* (*nam, sed*) *eo* = *et* (*nam, sed*) *ad eum* etc. In all such cases of the Resolved Relative, it introduces a *leading* clause, and, as such, *requires* in *Oratio Obliqua* the *Accusative with the Infinitive*.

**Ex.**—*Caesar respondit: Quae tamen omnia et se tulisse patienter et esse laturum*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 85 = *that, yet, he had patiently borne all these things, etc.*). *Alii censebant: Quare omni ratione esse interdum perrumpendum*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 67 (*quare* = *ea re* (or *et ea re* = *eam ob rem*)). *Nominavit Lucullum a quo solitum esse ad se mitti C. Fannium*, Cic., Att., II, 24, 3 (*a quo* = *et ab eo* (or *nam ab eo*, etc.)). *Praefectus urbis dixit: non illud consulare imperium sed tribuniciam potestatem invisam facere, quam reconciliatam patribus de integro in antiqua redigi mala*, Liv., III, 9, 10 (*quam* = *nam eam*). *Dixit: quare aequum illos viros bonos nobilesque mittere*, Nep., Them., 7. *Dixit: nam illorum urbem ut propugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam iam bis*

classes regias fecisse naufragium, Nep., Them., 7 (apud quam = et (nam) apud eam). Redditur responsum: esse sibi Vitellium principem, pro quo fidem et arma usque ad supremum spiritum retenturos, Tac., H., IV, 21 (pro quo = et pro eo). Cornutus, quas (feminas) contentas esse admonere senatum Publici Certi cruentae adulationis, Plin. Min., IX, 13, 16. Unumquemque nostrum censent mundi esse partem: ex quo (= et ex eo) illud natura consequi, ut communem utilitatem nostrae anteponamus, Cic., Fin., III, 19, 64. Ferunt (eum) fluxiore cinctura usum: unde (= et ex eo) emanasse Sullae dictum optimates saepius admonentis, ut, etc., Suet., Caes., 45. Commemorat, Sullam inopem, unde praecipuam audaciam, Tac., Ann., XIV, 57.

(a) So the Accusative with the Infinitive occurs with *ut* in the comparison *ut—sic (ita)* when the *ut* clause is resolved as a leading clause; hence *ut—sic (ita)* = *et—et*; so, too, with *quemadmodum* in the comparison, *quemadmodum—sic (ita)*, when the clause with *quemadmodum* is presented as a leading clause; hence *quemadmodum—sic (ita)* = *et—et*; also with *cum*, particularly in the association *cum interim* = *that during this interval—that then in the meanwhile: cum* = *that then*.

Ex.—Fuere qui crederent, Capitonem, ut avaritia foedum (fuisse), ita cogitatione rerum novarum abstinuisse, Tac., H., I, 7 (may be well rendered concessively (although—yet)). Saepe dictum est: ut mare ventorum vi agitari atque turbari, sic populum Romanum hominum seditiosorum vocibus concitari, Cic., Cluent., XLIX, 138. Porsena oratores Romam misit ad Cloeliam obsidem deposcendam: quemadmodum, si non dedatur obses, pro rupto foedus se habiturum: sic deditam inviolatam ad suos remissurum, Liv., II, 13, 8. Ut—ita, Liv., XXIII, 12, 4. Ut—sic, Liv., XXXIII, 45, 6. (Plebs dixit) iacere tam diu irritas actiones, quae de suis commodis ferrentur, cum interim de sanguine et supplicio suo latam legem confestim exerceri et tantam vim habere, Liv., IV, 51, 4. (Tribuni dicebant) fugere senatum testes tabulas publicas census cuiusque, cum interim obaeratam plebem obiectari aliis atque aliis hostibus, Liv., VI, 27, 6.

(b) The Particles *quamquam*, *etsi*, may introduce a leading clause translated *and yet*, *but yet*, and hence, with their Predicates in the Infinitive in *Oratio Obliqua*. Thus: *and (but) yet that*, etc.

Ex.—Narcissus dixit: *quamquam ne impudicitiam quidem nunc abesse, Pallante adultero*, Tac., Ann., XII, 65. (Dictator dixit) *quamquam nullam nobilitatem. nullos honores, nulla merita cuiquam ad dominationem pandere viam*, Liv., IV, 15, 5.

(c) The Particles and Phrases *nam (enim)*, *quippe*, *quin* corroborative (= *nam*, etc.), *quia* = *nam: nisi forte* in irony = *scilicet: nimirum: si non*, followed by *tamen* = *quamquam, sed tamen*, introduce leading clauses with the Predicate in the Infinitive in *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—Ille nihil difficilius esse dicebat quam amicitiam usque ad extremum diem vitae permanere : nam vel ut non idem expediret incidere saepe vel ut de re publica non idem sentiretur, Cic., Am., X, 33. (Is dixit) : Nomine enim tantum (consulare imperium) minus invidiosum. . . quippe duos pro uno dominos acceptos (esse), Liv., III, 9, 3. T. Larcus dixit : quin, si alia aliorum sit condicio, accendi magis discordiam quam sedari, Liv., II, 29, 8. Epicurus dicit : nihil iustum esse natura et crimina vitanda esse ; quia vitari metus non posse, Sen., Ep., XVI, 2, 15. Flaccus dixit ideo se moenibus inclusos tenere eos, quia, si qui evasisent aliqua, velut feras bestias per agros vagari, Liv., XXVI, 27, 12. Gallus Asinius disseruit : Nisi forte clarissimo cuique plures curas, maiora pericula subeunda, Tac., Ann., II, 33. Canuleius disseruit quibus (rogationibus) quid aliud quam admonemus clves nos eorum esse, et si non easdem opes habere, eandem tamen patriam incolere ? Liv., IV, 3, 3 (= and that although—yet that).

319. When a clause introduced by the Relative or a Relative Particle is subordinate and explanatory, it is, of course, expressed in the Subjunctive in *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—Legati dixerunt : Sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos, a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent, Caes., B. G., II, 31. Vercingetorix docet : Vicos atque aedificia incendi oportere hoc spatio a Boia quoquo versus, quo pabulandi causa adire posse videantur, Caes., B. G., VII, 14. So in clauses of comparison, *ut—ita* (sic), etc., when the Relative is dependent and explanatory. *Ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos, quod in suo iure se interpellaremus*, Caes., B. G., I, 44.

320. An *answer* is naturally expected to a question addressed to the *second person*. Hence, a question put to the second person in *Oratio Recta* is, in *Oratio Obliqua*, expressed in the Subjunctive, as a Rule.

Ex.—Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, conclamavit : Quid ad se venirent ? Caes., B. G., I, 47 (= quid ad me venitis ? (*O. R.*)). Quod si furore impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur ? Caes., B. G., I, 40 (= quid veremini ? (*O. R.*)). Scipionem percunctatus est, cur sine uxore discubisset ? Tac., Ann., XI, 2 (= cur discubuisti ? (*O. R.*)). Mox conversus ad singulos : Num secures dolabrasque et cetera expugnandis urbibus secum attulissent rogabat, T., II., III, 20.

321. It is often the case in *Oratio Obliqua* that of two leading clauses the former depends upon a negative verb, as *negare*, etc., and the latter upon an affirmative verb, as *dicere*, etc., which is not expressed. The transition from the *negative* to the *affirmative* verb is sometimes indicated adversatively by *sed* or *autem*, etc.

Ex.—Sacerdos parentem eius negat ullius scelere posse violari. Philippi autem omnes luisse supplicia, Curt., IV, 32. Ille negat a Callicrate fieri sibi insidias. sed illa quae agerentur fieri praecepto suo. Nep., Dion, 8. Stoici ne-

**gant bonum quicquam esse, nisi honestum: virtutem autem nixam hoc honesto nullam requirere voluptatem**, Cic., *Fin.*, I, 18, 61. Cf. **Nolo existimes me adiutorem huic venisse: sed auditorem et quidem aequum** (= *sed volo existimes, etc.*), Cic., *N. D.*, I, 7, 17. **Circumfusa multitudo in contionis modum negare ultra decipi plebem posse: numquam unum militem habituros, ni praestaretur fides publica**, Liv., II, 28, 7.

### Oratio Obliqua in a Sentence of Comparison.

**322.** A Sentence of Comparison consists of two members, the *Former* and *Latter*, or the *Subject* and *Object* of Comparison. The elements of comparison, or things compared, may be *Substantives* or *Predicates*: that is, *two Substantives* or *two Predicates* may be compared.

1. In *Oratio Obliqua* the Subject of Comparison with its Predicate is stated in the Accusative and Infinitive. The Object of Comparison, when its Predicate is the same as that of the Subject of Comparison, is also expressed in the Accusative. This Accusative arises from attraction—that is, the Object of Comparison would be regularly expressed in the Nominative and its Predicate in the proper Tense of the Subjunctive, but the Predicate is dropped and the Nominative is attracted into the Accusative, the case of the Subject. In this case, however, it may be conceived that the governing verb is repeated and covers the second member of the Comparison with the omission of the Infinitive common to both the Subject and Object of Comparison.

**Ex.—Aiebat se frumentum tantidem aestimasse quanti Sacerdotem**, Cic., *Verr.*, III, 92, 215 (= *Aiebat se frumentum tantidem aestimasse quanti Sacerdos* (*aestimasset*)). Drop *aestimasset* and attract *Sacerdos* into the Accusative, the case of the Subject (*se*) of Comparison). Cf. **Aiebat se frumentum tantidem aestimasse, quanti (aiebat) Sacerdotem** (*aestimasse*), an allowable conception. **Noli igitur dicere istum idem fecisse quod Sacerdotem**, Cic., *Verr.*, III, 93, 216. **Ariovistus respondit: Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam sicut illam nostram**, Caes., *B. G.*, I, 44. **Platonem ferunt de animorum aeternitate sensisse idem quod Pythagoram**, Cic., *Tusc.*, I, 17, 39.

2. In like manner when two *clauses* are compared by *quam* and the Comparative, the *quam* clause presenting the latter member or Object of Comparison, is often by attraction stated in the Accusative and Infinitive instead of in the Subjunctive.

(a) *With the same Subject but with different Predicates.*

**Ex.—Vidit satius esse illum in infamia relinqui ac sordibus, quam infirmo iudicio committi**, Cic., *Att.*, I, 16, 2. **Appius Claudius dixit lascivire magis plebem quam saevire**, Liv., II, 29, 9. **Num putatis dixisse Antonium minacius**

quam facturum fuisse? Cic., Phil., V, 8, 21. Servilius concitatos animos flecti quam frangi putabat facilius esse, Liv., II, 23, 15. Scies plura mala contingere nobis quam accidere, Sen., Ep., XIX, 1, 3.

(b) *With different Subjects and the same Predicate.*

Ex.—Ait Callimachus multo saepius lacrimasse Priamum quam Troilum. Cic., Tusc., I, 39, 93. Caesar arrogantiam reprehendebat, quod plus se quam imperatorem de victoria sentire existimarent, Caes., B. G., VII, 52. Dixerunt multas passim manus quam magnam molem unius exercitus rectius bella gerere, Liv., III, 2, 13. Caesar confusus est facilius se veteranos convocaturum, quam Pompeium novos milites, Suet., Caes., 29. Eam rem profuisse sibi confessa est plus quam populum Romanum, Sen., Ad. Marc., IV, 2. (Helvidius dixit): Nul- lum maius boni imperii instrumentum esse, quam bonos amicos, Tac., II, IV, 7.

(c) *With different Subjects and different Predicates.*

Ex.—Dixit: Facilius universos impelli, quam singulos vitari, Tac., II., II, 75. Affirmavit: Facilius se passurum fisco detrahi aliquid, quam civitatis Romanae vulgari honorem, Suet., Aug., 40. Saepius mulam peperisse abitor quam sapientem fuisse, Cic., Tusc., II, 28, 61.

REM. 1. If in the latter member of Comparison there occurs a *different Tense of a Predicate common to the two clauses, the Subjunctive rather than the Infinitive is the usage.*

Ex.—Pompeius dixit se munitiorem ad custodiendam vitam suam fore, quam Africanus fuisset, Cic., Q. Frat., II, 3, 3. Dicit nec in caede principum clementiorem hunc fore, quam Cinna fuerit, Cic., Att., VII, 7, 7.

REM. 2. If the *Predicate and Tense* in the latter member of the Comparison are different from the *Predicate and Tense* in the former member, then the *Subjunctive* should be used in the latter member rather than the *Accusative and Infinitive*.

Ex.—Quidam ex militibus decimae legionis dixit, plus, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere, Caes., B. G., I, 42.

(d) To be carefully noted is the *Accusative with the Infinitive* re- producing the latter member of Comparison, even after *potius quam, prius quam*, etc., where the *Subjunctive, Consecutive or Final*, with *ut* or the *Subjunctive alone* would be the construction in *Oratio Recta*, and would be *regularly retained in Oratio Obliqua*. Of special interest, in this connection, is the *Accusative with the Infinitive* in the *quam* clause, when the matter of this clause is *objected to, is one to be averted or prevented—not desired*, etc.

Ex.—Affirmavi quidvis me potius perperurum, quam ex Italia ad bellum civile exiturum, Cic., Fam., II, 16, 3. (Cf. *Potius quam ut*)....exirem. Voces militum audiebantur, prius se cortice ex arboribus victuros quam Pompeium e

**manibus dimissuros**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 49. Cf. **Prius quam (ut) Pompeium . . . dimitterent**. Pompeius addit se prius occisum iri ab eo quam me violatum iri, Cic., Att., II, 20, 2. Cf. **Prius quam (ut) violer**. Pervenisse se ante sciunt quam appropinquasse, Sen., Brev. Vit., IX, 5. Cf. **Quam appropinquaverint**. **Afirmavit non magis Gaium imperaturum quam per Baianum sinum equis discursurum**, Suet., Calig., 19. Cf. **Constituunt ut omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critognati sententiam descendant**, Caes., B. G., VII, 78. **Dixerunt quamlibet dimicationem subituros fuisse potius, quam eas leges sibi imponi paterentur**, Liv., IV, 2, 10. **Marcellus dixit, facilius perlaturus singula increpantem, quam nunc silentium perferrent omnia damnantis**, Tac., Ann., XVI, 28. **Romani dicunt, locum insignem memoria cladis irritaturum se potius ad delendam memoriam dedecoris, quam ut timorem faciat**, Liv., VI, 28, 8. **Dicunt deceptos potius quodcumque casus ferat passuros, quam ut sprevisse pacis auctores Tarentinos videantur**, Liv., IX, 14, 7. (*Vid.* 306, a.)

### Indicative in Subordinate Sentences in Oratio Obliqua.

**323.** To the Rule that a subordinate or explanatory member of the *Oratio Obliqua* is expressed in the Subjunctive occur the following exceptions:

(a) When a subordinate statement or explanation is made by the Reporter and without reference to the Speaker, though the view of the latter may be embraced in it, the Indicative is used. The Reporter thus makes himself responsible for the correctness of the statement or explanation. It is to be observed that this subjective Indicative statement of the Reporter cannot, in all cases, be distinguished, in the translation, from the objective view of the Speaker referred to by the Reporter and requiring the Subjunctive. This use of the Indicative is frequent in *relative* and *causal* clauses.

**Ex.—Caesar litteris Labieni certior fiebat omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra populum Romanum coniurare**, Caes., B. G., II, 1 (**Caesar** as Reporter makes an independent statement by **dixeramus**, etc.). **Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat, classem iubet convenire**, Caes., B. G., IV, 21. **Quem tumultum si occupavisset Caesar, ab oppido et ponte et commeatu omni, quem in oppidum contulerant, se interclusurum adversarios confidebat**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 43. **Caesar duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit: quarum erat altera quod auxilia contra se Treveris miserant**, Caes., B. G., VI, 9. **Paucae ultimae nationes anni tempore confisae, quod hiems suberat, hoc facere neglexerunt**, Caes., B. G., III, 27. **Caesari nuntiatum Sulmonenses, quod oppidum a Corfinio septem milium intervallo abest, cupere ea facere, quae vellet**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 18. **Cum sensissent ea moveri patres, offerendum ultro rati, quod amissuri erant, ita gratiam ineunt ut, etc.**, Liv., I, 17, 8.

(b) Nearly related to the preceding and, often, not readily to be



distinguished from it, is the use of the Indicative in reproducing a subordinate statement or explanation which distinctly embraces the thought or statement of the Speaker, but which the Reporter chooses to affirm as a fact, to emphasize it as historically true and known to him to be true. This use of the Indicative is frequent in *relative* and *causal* clauses.

Ex.—**Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit, et quod omnibus frugibus amissis domi nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit ut, etc. : ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere iussit.** Caes., B. G., I, 28. **Id ea maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare,** Caes., B. G., I, 28. **Sic placuit oratorem ad plebem mitti Menenium Agrippam, facundum virum, et, quod inde oriundus erat, plebi carum,** Liv., II, 32, 8. **Regnum eum affectare fama ferebat, quia nec collegam surrogaverat in locum Bruti et aedificabat in summa Velia,** Liv., II, 7, 6. **Scio alios existimasse talem a Gaio pontem excogitatum, ut Germaniam et Britanniam, quibus imminabat, alicuius immensi operis fama territaret,** Suet., Calig., 19. **Processerat de eo fama saevitiae atque avaritiae, quod civitates Hispaniarum Galliarumque, quae cunctantius sibi accesserant, gravioribus tributis punisset,** Suet., Galb., 12. **Obstitit respectus cohortis, quae tunc excubabat, ne oneraretur invidia, quod eiusdem statione et Galus fuerat occisus et desertus Nero,** Suet., Otho, 6.

REM. Distinct from the preceding is the use of the Indicative by which the Reporter *inserts* in the body of an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence his own statement or explanation, which forms no part of what the Speaker said or thought.

Ex.—**Dicunt (dicitur) in vadis haesitantis frumenti acervos sedisse illitos limo: insulam inde paulatim et aliis, quae fert temere flumen, eodem investis factam,** Liv., II, 5, 4. **Dicaearchus quidem et Aristoxenus, quia difficilis erat animi quid aut qualis esset intellegentia, nullum omnino animum esse dixerunt,** Cic., Tusc., I, 22, 51. (*Quia difficilis erat* introduces the Reporter's (Cicero's) explanation.)

(c) To be carefully noted is the use of the Indicative in a *Relative* clause of an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence where the Relative and its Predicate express a periphrasis of a Substantive, of an Adjective or Participle. That is, the Relative clause may be resolved as a Substantive, as an Adjective or Participle, and as a periphrasis of either is conceived by the Reporter and stated by him as a fact in the Indicative. The Relative with the Indicative, again, represents a participial relation when the Participle does not occur or is unusual.

Ex.—**Misso ad vesperum senatu omnes, qui sunt eius ordinis, a Pompeio evocantur,** Caes., B. Civ., I, 3 (here *qui sunt eius ordinis* = *senatorii*, hence *omnes senatorii* (senatores)). **Ipsi autem suos ordines servare neque ab**

signis discedere, neque sine gravi causa eum locum, quem ceperant, dimitti censuerant oportere, Caes., B. Civ., I, 44 (here *quem ceperant* = *captum*). Principibus Galliae evocatis Caesar ea, quae cognoverat, dissimulanda sibi existimavit, Caes., B. G., IV, 6 (here *quae cognoverat* = *cognita*). Caesar equites misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur, Caes., B. G., V, 10 (here *qui fugerant* = *fugitivos*). Consul dixit se ex Aequis pacem Romam tulisse, ab Roma Aequis bellum afferre eadem dextera armata, quam pacatam illis antea dederat, Liv., III, 2, 3 (here *quam pacatam antea dederat* = before extended (given) by him in peace). Sin vera sunt, quae dicuntur, migrationem esse mortem in eas oras, quas, qui e vita excesserunt (= mortui), incolunt, Cic., Tusc., I, 41, 98. Caesar per exploratores certior factus est, ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse, Caes., B. G., III, 2, 1 (= ex ea parte concessa). Quis potest esse tam aversus a vero, tam mente captus, qui neget haec omnia, quae videmus, deorum immortalium nutu ac potestate administrari? Cic., Cat., III, 9, 21 (here *quae videmus* = visible things.)

(d) A clause in *Oratio Obliqua* when defined by a word of Time is often stated in the Indicative. The definition of an event by a designation of Time so far gives it the character of one well known as to justify the Reporter in stating it in the Indicative. This is particularly the case with *dum* and the Present Indicative translated as the Imperfect.

Ex.—*Testis exstiterat se haud multo postquam pestilentia in urbe fuerat in iuventutem grassantem in Subura incidisse*, Liv., III, 13, 2. *Menenius Agrippa narrasse fertur, tempore, quo in homine, non ut nunc, omnia in unum consentiebant, sed singulis membris suum cuique consilium, suus sermo fuerat, indignatas reliquas partes sua cura ventri omnia quaeri*, Liv., II, 32, 9. *Id negotii datum ab senioribus patrum, ut iuventus tribuniciam potestatem e re publica tolleret, formaque eadem civitatis esset, quae ante sacrum montem occupatum fuerat*, Liv., III, 15, 3. *Piso oravit, uti traditis armis maneret in castello, dum Caesar, cui Syriam permetteret, consulitur*, Tac., Ann., II, 81. *Fuere qui hortarentur Pisonem: Quanto laudabilius perituum dum amplectitur rempublicam, dum auxilia libertati invocat?* Tac., Ann., XV, 59. Cf. Tac., Hist., III, 70 (*dum iudicatur*), etc. So with *cum*, Cic., Am., III, 12 (= *cum reductus est*).

REM. In any of the preceding cases of the use of the Indicative, the Tense of the Indicative, except the Present Indicative with *dum* regularly representing the relation of the Imperfect, is decided by the *Oratio Obliqua* context or the Tense of the governing verb.

Ex.—*Rex ratus eam urbem, quam in ripa amnis Macedones condiderant, suis impositam esse cervicibus... misit*, Curt., VII, 29 (here *condiderant* = decided by *impositam esse* and *misit*). *Ille Mazaeum ad itinera, quae hostis petiturus erat, occupanda praemisit*, Curt., IV, 45 (here *petiturus erat*, decided by *praemisit*). *In monte ignes iubet fieri, ut ii, qui aegre sequebantur, haud procul castris ipsos abesse cognoscerent*, Curt., VII, 21 (here *sequebantur* decided by *iubet* = *iussit*, and *cognoscerent*). *Hi de exercitu Herculis maiores suos esse*

**memorant: aegros relictos esse, cepisse sedem, quam ipsi obtinebant, Curt., IX, 14.**

(e) The Reporter sometimes gives, in the body of an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence, an explanatory statement of the Speaker and in the exact words of the Speaker. In this case the Indicative is, of course, retained if originally used by the Speaker.

**Ex.—lugurtha Bocchi animum oratione accendit: Romanos iniustos, communes omnium hostes esse: quis omnia regna adversa sunt, Sall., Jug., 81 (here quis omnia regna adversa sunt the exact words of the Speaker). Flavius mihi dixit te ad procuratores suos litteras misisse, quae mihi visae sunt iniquissimae. Cic., Q. Frat., I, 2, 10 (quae mihi visae sunt iniquissimae, words of the Speaker). Consultabat utrum Romam proficisceretur an Capuam teneret an iret ad tres legiones, quae iter secundum mare superum faciunt, Cic., Att., XVI, 8, 2. Dixerunt, iam esse voluntatem omnium, ut, qui libertati erit in illa urbe finis, idem urbi sit, Liv., II, 15, 3 (qui libertati erit, etc., the exact words of the Speakers). Dixit, nec magis ali quam alere ventrem, reddentem in omnes corporis partes hunc, quo vivimus vigemusque, sanguinem, Liv., II, 32, 11. Incolae affirmabant, quicumque demissi essent in cavernam, quae propior est fonti, rursus ubi aliud os amnis aperitur, existere, Curt., VI, 10. Metellus universos in contione laudat: hortatur ad cetera, quae levia sunt, parem animum gerant, Sall., Jug., 54.**

**REM.** When the *Oratio Obliqua* sentence is presented from the standpoint of the Speaker (the Present) and the governing verb is the Present Tense, the Indicative, according to a, b, c, d, is not readily distinguished from the Indicative according to e. In case of a Past Tense of the governing verb, the explanatory Present tense, according to e, remains the Present if this Tense was used by the Speaker, whereas the explanatory Indicative clause, according to a, b, c, d, is determined by its *Oratio Obliqua* connection.

**Ex.—Ibi Scaptius infit, annum se tertium et octogesimum agere, et in eo agro, de quo agitur, militasse: agrum, de quo ambigitur, finium Coriolanorum fuisse, Liv., III, 71, 6. (The Present Tenses, according to a, b, c, d, would be, after a Past Governing Tense, agebatur, ambigebatur; according to e the Present Tenses are retained.**

#### Use of Tenses in *Oratio Obliqua*.

**324.** The Subjunctive Tenses of the *Oratio Obliqua* are determined, in some cases, by the Tense (Present or Past) of the governing verb of Saying or Thinking upon which the *Oratio Obliqua* depends; in other cases they are determined by the Infinitive Tense in the leading member of the *Oratio Obliqua*.

**Ex.—Ii, qui boni sunt, beati sunt (O. R.).**

**= Socrates dicit eos, qui boni sint, beatos esse (are) = the *Oratio Obliqua* in the Time (Present) of the Speaker.**

**Socrates dicebat eos, qui boni essent, beatos esse** (were) = the *Oratio Obliqua* in the Time (Past) of the Reporter.

**Socrates dicit eos, qui boni essent, beatos fuisse** (were). In this form of the sentence the Reporter assumes by **dicat** the Time of the Speaker, while the matter reported is past from the Present (**dicat**). The form **fuisse** (Past) is required by the Present (**dicat**) while the Imperfect **essent** is decided by **fuisse**, with which it is coincident in the Past.

**Is, qui venit, videt** = He who has come sees.

**Dicit eum, qui venerit, videre** (sees) = He says that he who has come sees.

**Dicebat eum, qui venisset, videre** (was seeing) = He said that he who had come was seeing.

**Dicit eum, qui venisset, vidisse** (was seeing) = He says that he who had come was seeing.

In the last sentence the Time of the Speaker (Present) is assumed by **dicat**, while the matter reported is Past.

**325.** From the principles suggested in the preceding it may be gathered that *Oratio Obliqua* statements may be considered from the standpoint of the *Speaker* (the *Present*) or from the standpoint of the *Reporter* (the *Past*). In the former case the governing verb of Saying or Thinking which introduces the *Oratio Obliqua* is a *Present* Tense and the *Oratio Obliqua* Tenses (Infinitive and Subjunctive) are regularly *Present* Tenses and Tenses *Future* from the Present, or Past Tenses and Tenses *Future* from a given Past, indicated by the leading verb, and again *Past* Tenses when the Reporter assumes the Time (*Present*) of the *Speaker* and presents the *Oratio Obliqua* statements in the Past.

1. Hence, after the governing verb in a *Present* Tense (*Present* or *Perfect*), a *Present* and *Future* Tense of the *Oratio Recta* becomes a *Present* and *Future* Infinitive in the leading clause of the *Oratio Obliqua*, and the *Present* and *Future* Subjunctive Tense from the *Present* in the subordinate or explanatory clause—thus:

1. <b>Is, qui venit, videt.</b>	<b>Oratio Obliqua</b> from the Pres- ent (Time of the Speaker):	<b>Dicit eum,</b>	1. <b>qui veniat, videre.</b>
2. <b>Is, qui venit, videt.</b>			2. <b>qui venerit, videre.</b>
3. <b>Is, qui venit, vidit.</b>			3. <b>qui venerit, vidisse.</b>
4. <b>Is qui veniet, videbit.</b>			4. <b>qui veniat, visurum esse.</b>
5. <b>Is, qui venerit, videbit.</b>			5. <b>qui venerit, visurum esse.</b>
6. <b>Is, qui venerit, viderit.</b>			6. <b>qui venerit, visurum esse.</b>
			<b>futurum esse ut, qui venerit, viderit.</b>
			<b>fore ut, qui venerit, viderit.</b>

2. Actions stated in the Present Time of the Speaker (*dicit*) are either coincident with (Present Tense) the Time of the Speaker or while limited to the general Present are antecedent to and past from (Perfect Tense) the immediate Present of the Speaker, or they are future from and subsequent to it. These actions, when transferred to the Past Time and dependent upon *dixit* (Time of the Reporter), are either coincident with (Imperfect Tense) the Time of the Reporter or are antecedent to and past from it (Pluperfect Tense) or they are future from and subsequent to it. Hence:

1. <i>Is, qui venit, videt.</i>	Oratio Obliqua from the Past (Time of the Reporter):	Dixit eum,	1. <i>qui veniret, videre.</i>
2. <i>Is, qui vēnit, videt.</i>			2. <i>qui venisset, videre.</i>
3. <i>Is, qui vēnit, vidit.</i>			3. <i>qui venisset, vidisse.</i>
4. <i>Is, qui veniet, videbit.</i>			4. <i>qui veniret, visurum esse.</i>
5. <i>Is, qui venerit, videbit.</i>			5. <i>qui venisset, visurum esse.</i>
6. <i>Is, qui venerit, videt.</i>			6. <i>qui venisset, visurum esse.</i>
			<i>futurum esse ut, qui venisset, vidisset.</i>
			<i>fore ut, qui venisset, vidisset.</i>

3. Actions past from the Time of the Speaker (*dicit*) cannot become actions coincident with this Time, and hence they cannot be of the same Time with a Present governing Tense (*dicit*). They must be past from it. *Is, qui veniebat, videbat*; *Is, qui vēnit, vidit* (*saw*); *Is, qui venerat, videbat*, as original statements must remain past from the Time of the Speaker (*dicit*). Hence:

1. <i>Is, qui veniebat, videbat.</i>	Oratio Obliqua from the Present (Time of the Speaker):	Dicit eum,	1. <i>qui veniret, vidisse</i> (not <i>videre</i> ).
2. <i>Is, qui vēnit, vidit.</i>			2. <i>qui venisset</i> (not <i>venerit</i> ), <i>vidisse</i> .
3. <i>Is, qui venerat, videbat.</i>			3. <i>qui venisset, vidisse.</i>
4. <i>Is, qui venerat, vidit.</i>			4. <i>qui venisset, vidisse.</i>

4. Actions past from the Time of the Speaker (*dicit*) cannot be conceived and expressed as actions coincident with the Time of the Reporter (*dixit*). They must be antecedent to and past from this Time. Hence:

1. <i>Is, qui veniebat, videbat.</i>	Oratio Obliqua from the Past (Time of the Reporter):	Dixit eum,	1. <i>qui veniret, vidisse</i> (not <i>videre</i> ).
2. <i>Is, qui venit, vidit.</i>			2. <i>qui venisset</i> (not <i>videt</i> ), <i>venisse</i> .
3. <i>Is, qui venerat, videbat.</i>			3. <i>qui venisset, vidisse</i> (not <i>videre</i> ).
4. <i>Is, qui venerat, vidit.</i>			4. <i>qui venisset, vidisse</i> (not <i>videre</i> ).

REM. Instead of the Periphrastic forms of the Future Second (*Exactum*) Infinitive, namely *futurum esse* (*fore*) *ut*, + the Perfect Subjunctive representing the Future *exactum* Infinitive from the Present and *futurum esse* (*fore*) *ut* + Pluperfect Subjunctive representing the Future *Exactum* Infinitive from a given Past, use, in either case, the Future First Infinitive (*-rum esse*) and let the context decide the exact Temporal relation to be expressed. The periphrastic representatives are theoretical rather than practical. (*Vid.* 166, etc.)

NOTE.—When an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence is referred not to the Present, but to the Past, an explanatory clause of the sentence may be, and often is, *subjectively* presented by the writer and expressed by him in the (form of) the *Perfect* Subjunctive. In this case the Tense is decided not by *comparison* with the *leading* member of the *Oratio Obliqua* sentence, namely, the *Infinitive*, which would call for an action either *coincident* (*Imperfect* Subjunctive) with the action of the Infinitive, or an action *antecedent* to it (the *Pluperfect* Subjunctive), but its action is conceived and expressed *subjectively* and *independently* by the writer from his *immediate time*, the *Present*. Hence (the form of) the *Perfect* Subjunctive is used by him in accordance with the principle that a past Subjunctive action from the Present is expressed by the (form of the) *Perfect* Subjunctive. (Cf. 182.)

Ex.—*Oblitumne me putas, qua celeritate, ut primum audieris, ad me Tarrento advolaris?* Cic., Fam., XI, 27, 4. *Invenio A. Postumium, quia collega dubiae fidei fuerit, se consulatu abdicasse*, Liv., II, 21, 3. *Tarquinius dixit, omnia onera, quae communia quondam fuerint, inclinasse in primores civitatis*, Liv., I, 47, 12. *Dixerunt, se, quantum decem hominum ingenis provideri potuerit, omnibus, summis infimisque, lura aequasse*, Liv., III, 34, 3. *Cincius Alimentus scribit (se) ex ipso audisse Hannibalem, postquam Rhodanum transierit, triginta sex milia hominum amisisse*, Liv., XXI, 38, 5.

326. There occurs quite frequently a sudden transition from the *Oratio Obliqua* into the *Oratio Recta*. In this transition the time of the Speaker is assumed and his exact words are given, in vivid and animated Narrative. The transition may be indicated by *inquit*, or *inquit* may be omitted.

Ex.—*Dixit: Non credere populum Romanum solidam libertatem reciperatam esse: regium genus, regium nomen non solum in civitate, sed etiam in imperio esse: id officere, id obstare libertati. Hunc tu, inquit, tua voluntate, L. Tarquini, remove metum. Fatemur, eiecisti reges: absolve beneficium tuum, etc.*, Liv., II, 2, 7. *Tullia dixit: non sibi defuisse, cui nupta diceretur, nec cum quo tacita serviret: defuisse, qui se regno dignum putaret, qui meminisset*

se esse Prisci Tarquinii filium, qui habere quam sperare regnum mallet. Si tu is es, cui nuptam esse me arbitror, et virum et regem appello, etc., Liv., I, 47, 2.

**327.** The Tense of the governing or leading verb is the leading factor in deciding the Tenses in an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence.

1. When the leading or governing Tense is a *Past* Tense, indicating the regular and proper Time of the *Reporter*. Then—

(a) All the Tenses of an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence may be *Past*, or Future from a *Past* (time of the governing verb).

Ex.—Pompelius rescriperat: Se rem in summum periculum deducturum non esse, neque suo consilio aut voluntate Domitium se in oppidum Corfinium contulisse: proinde, si qua fuisset facultas, ad se cum omnibus copiis reveniret. Caes., B. Civ., I, 19. Illi vero duros se negare neque portas consuli praeclusuros neque sibi iudicium sumpturos contra atque omnis Italia populusque Romanus iudicavisset, Caes., B. Civ., III, 12.

(b) All the Tenses of an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence may be *Present* or Future from the *Present* (Time of the *Speaker*). That is, the governing verb conforms to the Time of the *Reporter*, while the *Oratio Obliqua* Tenses conform to the Time of the *Speaker*.

Ex.—Ad ea Caesar respondit: Accidisse his, quod plerumque hominum nimia arrogantia accidere soleat, uti eo recurrant et id petant quod paulo ante contempserint. Neque nunc se illorum humilitate neque aliqua temporis opportunitate postulare, quibus rebus opes augeantur suae, etc., Caes., B. Civ., I, 85. The Time of the *Speaker* should be maintained in the *Oratio Obliqua*, and the translations should be made from this standpoint.

2. The leading or governing Tense may be a *Present* Tense, indicating the regular and proper Time of the *Speaker*. Then—

(a) All the Tenses of an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence may be *Past* or Future from a *Past*, thus conforming to the Time of the *Reporter*. To indicate the *Past* Time of the *Oratio Obliqua* Tenses, the leading or governing Tense is best translated as a *Past* Tense. It should conform to the Time of the *Oratio Obliqua* Tenses (*Past*) and be translated as the *Praesens Historicum*.

Ex.—Queritur in contione sese proiectum ac proditum a Cn. Pompeio, qui omnibus rebus imparatissimis non necessarium bellum suscepisset et ab se in senatu interrogatus omnia sibi esse ad bellum parata confirmasset, Caes., B. Civ., I, 30. Docet se nullum extraordinarium honorem appetisse, sed exspectato legitimo tempore consulatus eo fuisse contentum, quod omnibus civibus pateret, Caes., B. Civ., I, 32. Translate *queritur*, etc., He complained that he had been thrust out, etc., rather than, He complains that he was thrust out, etc.

(b) All the Tenses of an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence may be Present or Future from the Present. In this case, translate the Present Tense of the governing verb as the Present. In other words, the Time of the Speaker is assumed and maintained both in the governing verb and in the *Oratio Obliqua* statements.

Ex.—**Haec Caesari renuntiant: Intellegere se divisum esse populum Romanum in duas partes. Neque sui iudicii neque suarum esse virium discernere, utra pars iustiorē habeat causam. Principes vero esse earum partium Cn. Pompeium et C. Caesarem quorum alter agros Volcarum Arecomicorum et Helviorum publice iis concesserit, etc.,** Caes., B. Civ., I, 35. Cf. Caes., B. G., VII, 14 **Docet longe, etc.**; also Caes., B. G., VII, 37 **Hortatur, ut, etc.**

REM. It quite frequently occurs that after the Present Subjunctive, decided by the Present Tense of the leading verb, there is a transition into the Past and to statements by Past Tenses.

Ex.—**Rogat ut affirmet iureiurando, quae commisisset, silentio esse tecturum.** Curt., VI, 25. **Hac necessitate coactus, domino navis quis sit aperit, multa pollicens si se conservasset,** Nep., Them., 8.

328. When the Tense of the governing verb is a Past Tense, the *Oratio Obliqua* statements may be made, partly in the Past by Past Tenses and Tenses expressing actions Future from a Past, partly in the Present by Present Tenses and Tenses expressing actions Future from the Present. In this transition from the Past (Time of the Reporter) to the Present (Time of the Speaker) the Tenses should be carefully noted and expressed in the translation, as Present Subjunctive Tenses and Tenses expressing actions Future from the Present. They should not be translated as Past Tenses and Tenses expressing actions Future from a Past.

Ex.—**Monebant, ne orientem morem pellendi reges inultum sinerent. Satis libertatem ipsam habere dulcedinis. Nisi, quanta vi civitates eam expetant, tanta regna reges defendant, aequari summa infimis: nihil excelsum, nihil, quod supra cetera emineat, in civitatibus fore,** Liv., II, 9, 2.

1. The transfer of the conception from the Past (indicated by the governing verb) to the Present (indicated by Present Tenses) in the *Oratio Obliqua* sentence occurs quite frequently:

(a) In an Imperative statement. The Present Tense adds to the vividness of statement.

Ex.—**Ad haec Q. Marcius respondit, si quid ab senatu petere vellent, ab armis discedant, Romam supplices proficiscantur,** Sall., Cat., 34. **Proximis comitiis voces senatus expressit, candidati ne conviventur, ne mittant munera, ne pecunias deponant,** Plin. Min., VI, 19, 1.



(b) In a sentence or clause which embodies a general truth, as gathered from personal observation and experience in the Present (Time of the Speaker) and emphasized as holding good for any time.

Ex.—Caesar respondit: Consuesse deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundoires interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere, Caes., B. G., I, 14. Romulus legatos misit qui conubium novo populo peterent. Urbes quoque, ut cetera, ex infimo nasci: dein, quas sua virtus ac dii iuvent, magnas opes sibi magnumque nomen facere: satis scire origini Romanae, et deos affuisse, et non defuturam virtutem: proinde ne gravarentur homines, etc., Liv., I, 9, 3. Affuisse and gravarentur do not belong to the general statement Tribuni multitudinem obiurgaverunt: Desineret mirari, cur nemo de commodis plebis ageret. Eo impendi laborem ac periculum, unde emolumentum atque honos speretur: nihil non aggressuros homines, si magna conatis magna praemia proponantur, Liv., IV, 35, 7. Ipse Romulus docebat, patrum id superbia factum, qui conubium finitimis negassent: illas tamen in matrimonio, in societate fortunarum omnium civitatisque et, quo nihil carius humano generi sit, liberum fore: mollirent modo iras, etc., Liv., I, 9, 14.

(c) In a conditional sentence where, if the Imperfect Subjunctive were used according to the regular *Oratio Obliqua* sequence after a Past governing Tense (*dixit, etc.*), ambiguity would result as to the character of the condition in *Oratio Recta*, that is whether unreal or not.

Ex.—Ariovistus respondit, si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse: si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere, Caes., B. G., I, 34. Ariovistus said in *Oratio Recta*: Si quid mihi a Caesare opus esset, ego ad eum venissem: si quid ille me vult, illum ad me venire oportet. The regular *Oratio Obliqua* statement of the second sentence from *respondit* would be si quid ille se vellet, illum ad se venire oportere—identical in form with the statement in *Oratio Obliqua* of the unreal condition: Si quid ille me vellet, illum ad me venire oportebat. To remove the ambiguity the present sequence (after *dicit*) is adopted, and the Tense *velit* clearly shows that the condition is not unreal. Exitus fuit orationis, licere, si velint, In Ubiorum finibus considerare, Caes., B. G., IV, 8. Expressed in the past sequence from *exitus fuit*, would be *licere, si vellet. in Ubiorum finibus considerare*, identical in form and liable to be confounded with the unreal condition, whereas *si velint, etc.*, points to the *Oratio Recta* form—licet, si vultis in Ubiorum finibus considerare, and not to *licebat, si velletis in Ubiorum finibus considerare* (unreal condition). Ostendit nec, si sit laxamenti quid, aut plebi honestum esse, etc., Liv., II, 24, 5. This form of the sentence forbids the reproduction in *Oratio Obliqua* of the unreal condition, nec, si esset laxamenti quid, aut plebi honestum erat, etc., but points to the *Oratio Recta* form. nec, si est laxamenti quid, aut plebi honestum est, etc. Dixerunt se per vastas solitudines, etiamsi nemo insequi velit, euntes, fame atque inopia debellari posse, Curt., III, 12. Cf. iam se etiam prolaturum omnia in theatrum affirmavit, si per Vindicem liceat, Suet., Nero., 41.

**329.** It may be noted as an *irregularity*, but one which occurs quite frequently, that the leading or governing verb of Saying or Thinking is reproduced and expressed in the Subjunctive as an explanatory *Oratio Obliqua* Predicate. As the Subjunctive in *Oratio Obliqua*, of itself, *implies* what is said or thought by the Speaker and is employed by the Reporter to express this, the *attraction* of the governing verb of Saying or Thinking into the sphere of the *Oratio Obliqua* and the expression of it there is peculiar and unnecessary. Only when the idea of Saying or Thinking is part of the original statement by the Speaker and is to be emphatically expressed, may it be regularly repeated in *Oratio Obliqua*. The statement of the governing verb in the *Oratio Obliqua* sentence *need not* be imitated.

Ex.—Cum ille Hannibalis permissu exisset de castris, rediit paulo post, quod se oblitum nescio quid diceret, Cic., Off., I, 13, 40 (quod nescio quid oblitus esset would answer the requirement of the *Oratio Obliqua* statement). Ille precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur: partim, quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim, quod religionibus sese diceret impediri, Caes., B. G., V, 6 (quod impediretur would suffice). Ex his Bellovaci suum numerum non contulerunt, quod se suo nomine cum Romanis bellum gesturos dicerent, Caes., B. G., VII, 75 (quod suo nomine cum Romanis bellum gesturi essent would suffice). Cf. Caes., B. G., I, 39 (quam diceret, etc.); Caes., B. G., V, 55 (expertos dicerent); Caes., B. Civ., III, 83 (quod gestum—diceret); Cic., Att., I, 1, 3 (quas....diceret); Cic., Att., I, 16, 2 (cum....diceret); Cic., Fam., IV, 12, 3 (quod....diceret); Cic., Tusc., II, 26, 62 (quod diceret); Cic., Acad., II, 4, 11. Cf. Cum abessent consulares, quod tuto se negarent posse sententiam dicere, Cic., Att., IV, 1, 6 (quod tuto non possent sententiam dicere would suffice). Erant sententiae, quae castra Vari oppugnanda censerent, quod in huiusmodi militum consiliis otium maxime contrarium esse arbitrarentur, Caes., B. Civ., II, 30 (=quod in huiusmodi militum consiliis otium....contrarium esset).

**330.** It is a striking irregularity, and one *not to be imitated*, that the leading clause of an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence is sometimes expressed in the Subjunctive instead of, regularly, in the Accusative with the Infinitive. This irregularity may be explained by attraction of the leading clause into the mood (Subjunctive) of the explanatory or subordinate clause of the sentence, both members of which are then stated independently of the governing verb (of Saying, etc.), and, in some cases, as when the sentence is conditional, it assumes the form of an *Oratio Recta* sentence.

Ex.—Caesar dixit: quod si esset factum, detrimentum in bonum verteret, uti ad Gergoviam accidisset, atque ei, qui ante dimicare timuissent, ultro se proelio offerrent, Caes., B. Civ., III, 73. We look for *detrimentum in bonum*

versurum, atque eos... se obluros esse. Diogenes docet, si de artibus concedamus, virtutis tamen non sit eadem ratio, Cic., Fin., III, 15, 50. We look for *virtutis tamen non esse eandem rationem*. Dicebat: Si potuisset honeste scribere se in balneis cum id aetatis filio fuisse, non praeterisset, Cic., Cluent., LI, 141. We look for *praeteritum fuisse*.

### Subordinate Clauses in Oratio Obliqua: So-called Attraction of Mood.

331. A subordinate or explanatory clause of an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence is expressed in the Subjunctive, with the exceptions given above (*vid.* 323), and for the reasons stated. The leading *Oratio Obliqua* clause is expressed in the Accusative with the Infinitive, by *ut* and the Subjunctive, etc. Any explanatory clause as the Relative, or Causal, or Temporal, falling within the limits of these dependencies, is expressed in the Subjunctive because it is a part of the general *Oratio Obliqua* statement, and reproduces what was said or thought by the Speaker or leading actor and is thus given by the Reporter. The pure *Oratio Obliqua* reference in explanatory clauses will explain many cases of the Subjunctive resulting from the *so-called attraction of Mood*. When an explanatory clause occurs in the Subjunctive within the limits stated and is not embraced in the *Oratio Obliqua* conception, it is not to be explained as the Subjunctive by attraction. If such a clause is in the Indicative when regularly expressed and is not embraced within the limits of *Oratio Obliqua*, it cannot be changed into the Subjunctive by mere attraction; it remains in the Indicative. When the Subjunctive occurs the mood is required, *not by attraction*, but in accordance with *fixed principles* of construction, as when it is demanded by the *Consecutive* (characteristic), *Causal*, or *Concessive Relative*, etc. The principle which it is desired to establish is, that when an explanatory clause is associated with the Subjunctive or Infinitive the clause is expressed in the Subjunctive, (a) when it is an *Oratio Obliqua* clause, (b) when the mood is controlled by a word which *requires* the Subjunctive. In neither case is the Subjunctive decided by *mere association* with the Subjunctive or Infinitive, and hence by *attraction*. The explanatory clause in either case is the *Indicative* when not *Oratio Obliqua*, or when the Subjunctive is not required by a word which *demand*s the Subjunctive. Thus:

**Non dubito quin pater doleat quod filium suum amiserit (O. O.).**

**Non dubito quin pater doleat quod filium suum amisit (O. R.).**

In the former case, the Subjunctive *quod amiserit* is assigned as the

ground of the grief of the father, and, as such, is *imputed* to him. In the second, *quod amisit* is the ground of the grief of the father *known to the Speaker* and *affirmed by him as such*.

**Dixit patrem dolere quod filium suum amisisset** (*O. O.*).

**Dixit patrem dolere quod filium suum amiserat.** *Quod amiserat* is the statement of the *Speaker* and assigned by him as the ground of the grief of the father.

The views above presented may be estimated from an examination of a few cases of the Subjunctive explained by some as Subjunctive by attraction.

Ex.—**Sapiens non dubitat, si ita melius sit, migrare de vita**, Cic., Fin., I, 19, 62. *Si ita melius sit* presents the view of *sapiens*, and is *O. O.* The Subjunctive *sit* is not an attraction from an original *est*. In **araneolis aliae quasi rete texunt, ut, si quid inhaeserit, conficiant: aliae autem ex inopinato observant, et si quid incidit arripiunt idque consumunt**, Cic., N. D., II, 48, 123. The purpose expressed by *ut*, as well as the sense of *texunt*, implies *rational* and *conscious* action on the part of the *araneolae*, and the verb *inhaeserit* is the Subjunctive in *pure Oratio Obliqua*. As soon, however, as the *araneolae* cease to be described as acting consciously and their actions are objectively presented as a matter of observation by the *Speaker* or *writer* the Indicative is employed (*observant, si quid incidit, arripiunt*) in simple narrative of facts believed by him and affirmed. **Ille nihil potest malum videri, quod naturae necessitas afferat**, Cic., Sen., II, 4. (*Afferat* is demanded by the *Consecutive Relative* (*quod*) after the negative antecedent (*nihil*). It is *not* the Subjunctive by attraction from *affert*). **Magna laus et grata hominibus unum hominem elaborare in ea scientia, quae sit multis profutura**, Cic., Muren., IX, 19. (*Quae sit profutura* is *pure Oratio Obliqua* from the standpoint of *hominibus*, and, again, *quae* is *Consecutive Relative* after *ea* and the *indefinite antecedent scientia*.) **Isto bono utare, dum adsit: cum absit, ne requiras**, Cic., Sen., X, 33. (*Cum absit* is a general statement and *iterative action*.) **Nescire quid antequam natus sis acciderit, id est semper esse puerum**, Cic., Or., XXXIV, 120. (*Antequam natus sis* is the *Indefinite Second Person* requiring the Subjunctive.) **Nihil est, quod non emi possit, si tantum des, quantum velit venditor**, Cic., Leg. Agr., I, 5, 15. (*Possit* Subjunctive after *Consecutive quod*: *des* *Indefinite Second Person*; *velit* *Potential Subjunctive*.)

(a) It often occurs that a *subordinate* or *explanatory clause alone* presents the *Oratio Obliqua* reference with the governing verb in the Indicative. In this verb, however, is *represented* or *implied* the *idea* of a verb of saying or thinking the complement of which is directly stated in *Oratio Obliqua* and the *Subjunctive*. This may be termed *Partial Oratio Obliqua*, and occurs under the following limitations:

1. The subject of the governing verb, whose *view* is referred to, is definite and expressed.

Ex.—**Phalereus Demetrius Periclem principem Graeciae vituperat, quod tantam pecuniam in praeclara illa propylaea coniecerit**, Cic., Off., II, 17, 60

(coniecērit referred to as view of Demetrius). **Memini gloriari solitum esse Hortensium, quod numquam bello civili interfuisset**, Cic., Fam., II, 18, 3 (interfuisset statement of Hortensius). **Quarum alteris (litteris) mihi gratulabare, quod audisses me meam pristinam dignitatem obtinere**, Cic., Fam., IV, 14, 1 (audisses statement of tu). **Me una haec res torquet, quod non in omnibus labentem Pompeium secutus sim**, Cic. (non secutus sim is Subjective *O. O.* in which the Speaker quotes his own view). **In qua (oratione) Cato obiecit ut probrum M. Nobiliori, quod is in provinciam poetas duxisset (duxisset, the view of Cato).** **Paetus omnes libros, quos frater suus reliquisset, mihi donavit**, Cic., Att., II, 1, 12 (reliquisset statement of Paetus). **Sunt permulti, optimi viri, qui valetudinis causa in haec loca veniant**, Cic., Fam., IX, 14, 1 (qui veniant, the statement of optimi viri).

2. The subject whose view is quoted is not expressed, but is readily gathered from the context.

Ex.—**De agro Veientibus restituendo impetratum, expressaque necessitas obsides dandi Romanis, si laniculo praesidium deduci vellent**, Liv., II, 13, 4 (the context readily suggests *si...vellent* as the view of Porsena.) **Magnus plebem metus incessit, ut intentiores essent ad dicto parendum; neque enim ut in consulibus, qui pari potestate essent, alterius auxilium, neque provocatio erat**, Liv. II, 18, 7 (qui pari potestate essent, the reasoning of the plebs).

(b) From the preceding (2) it may be gathered that the *Oratio Obliqua* reference is often obscure. The provisions of a law, the requirements of a custom or habit, may be cited by an *Oratio Obliqua* reference. In fact, the exact limits of an *Oratio Obliqua* statement cannot be defined.

Ex.—**Novi est in lege hoc, ut, qui nummos in tribus pronuntiavit, si non dederit, impune sit**, Cic., Att., I, 16, 13 (qui...pronuntiavit, si non dederit are cited as the novel provisions (novi hoc) of the law (lex)). **A Caesare inquit, sibi ut sim legatus. Illa (legatio) et munitior est et non impedit quo minus adsim, cum velim**, Cic., Att., II, 18, 3 (cum velim cited as a privilege of the legateship tendered by Caesar). **Ante omnes de provocatione adversus magistratus ad populum sacrandoque cum bonis capite eius, qui regni occupandi consilia inisset, gratae in vulgus leges fuere**, Liv., II, 8, 2 (qui...inisset, a provision of the law). (In rege creando Spartae) **primum ratio habebatur qui maximus natu esset ex liberis eius, qui regnans decessisset, Nep., Ages., 1 (qui esset...qui decessisset, citing a custom at Sparta).**

332. To be carefully noted is the *Double Oratio Obliqua*, or an *Oratio Obliqua* within an *Oratio Obliqua*. In such cases, in addition to the Reporter there are two Speakers. Of these the latter reproduces in *Oratio Obliqua* the statement or thought of the former, and the statement of the latter Speaker is reproduced by the Reporter or Writer.

Ex.—**Legati dixerunt, se, ni res reddantur, bellum indicere iussos**, Liv., I, 22, 6.

**Ni res reddantur, bellum indicere iussi estis** (the statement or instruction of the Albans (First Speaker) to their legati).

**Ni res reddantur, bellum indicere iussi sumus** (the statement of the legati (Second Speaker)).

= **Legati dixerunt, se, ni res reddantur, bellum indicere iussos**, as reported by Livy.

**Caesar dixit: Quod (milites) non fore dicto audientes neque signa laturo dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri**, Caes., B. G., I, 40.

(**Milites**) **non erunt dicto audientes, neque signa ferent** (statement of First Speaker to Caesar).

**Quod (milites) non fore dicto audientes neque signa laturo dicantur, nihil ea re commoveor** (statement of Second Speaker (Caesar)).

= **Caesar dixit: Quod (milites) non fore dicto audientes neque signa laturo dicantur nihil se ea re commoveri** (statement of Caesar as Reporter).

### Pronouns in Oratio Obliqua.

333. I. There are four points of view from which pronominal relations are to be considered—(a) that of the *subject* of the *governing verb*; (b) that of the *subject* of the *predicate* of the *leading* or *primary Oratio Obliqua* clause; (c) that of the *subject* of the *predicate* of the *subordinate* or *secondary clause* of the *Oratio Obliqua*; (d) that of the *Reporter* or *Writer*.

II. The conception of the contents of an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence is *subjective* or *objective*. From the standpoint of the *subject* of the governing verb the conception is regularly *subjective* throughout. From the standpoint of the *subject* of the *leading* or *primary Oratio Obliqua* clause the conception is necessarily *subjective within the limits of this clause*. From the standpoint of the *subject* of the *subordinate* or *secondary Oratio Obliqua* clause the conception is also *subjective within the limits of this clause*. From the standpoint of the *Reporter* or *Writer* the conception of the action in either of the *Oratio Obliqua* clauses is *objective*.

(a) The Reflexive Pronoun *se* and the reflexive possessive *sui* are regularly used in the subjective reference, in the *Oratio Obliqua* clauses, to the *subject* of the governing verb. That is, in an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence a reference to the *subject* of the governing verb from the standpoint of this *subject* is made by the Reflexive Pronoun *se* (*sui*).

**Ex.**—Caesar petit ab utroque, quoniam Pompei mandata ad se detulerint, ne graventur sua quoque ad eum postulata deferre. Sibi semper primam reipublicae fuisse dignitatem vitaeque potioem. Doluisse se, quod populi Romani beneficium sibi ab inimicis extorqueretur. Tamen hanc iacturam honoris sui reipublicae causa aequo animo tulisse. Tota Italia delectus haberi, retineri legiones duas, quae ab se simulatione Parthici belli sint abductae. Quoniam haec omnia nisi ad suam perniciem pertinere? Sed tamen ad omnia se descendere paratum atque omnia pati reipublicae causa, Caes., B. Civ., I, 9. Proinde habeat rationem posteritatis et periculi sui, Caes., B. Civ., I, 13.

(b) A reference to the subject of the leading or primary *Oratio Obliqua* clause, within the limits of this clause, is subjective and made by *se*, *suius*. This is the case whether the subject of the *Oratio Obliqua* clause is the same with that of the governing verb or different.

**Ex.**—De eo praedicarunt: eundem sic duritiae se dedisse, ut parsimonia victus atque cultus omnes Lacedaemonios vinceret, Nep., Alc., 11. Demonstrat: Velle Pompeium se Caesari purgatum, ne ea, quae reipublicae causa egerit, in suam contumeliam vertat, Caes., B. Civ., I, 8. Hortabantur, ut domos suas discederent moenibusque se defenderent, Nep., Them., 4. Increpare omnes: Servitia regum superbiorum suae libertatis immemores alienam oppugnatum venire, Liv., II. 10, 9.

(c) A reference to the subject of the secondary *Oratio Obliqua* clause, within the limits of this clause, is again subjective and made by *se*, *suius*. This is the case whether the subject of the secondary *Oratio Obliqua* clause is the same with the subject of the governing verb, or of the primary *Oratio Obliqua* clause, or different.

**Ex.**—Centuriones tribunique militum dixerunt: Afranios sui timoris signa misisse: quod suis non subvenissent, quod de colle non decederent, Caes., B. Civ., I, 71. Ille dixit: Caesarem pro sua dignitate debere iracundiam suam reipublicae dimittere neque adeo graviter irasci inimicis, ut, cum illis nocere se speret, reipublicae noceat, Caes., B. Civ., I, 8. Caesar respondit, illius exercitus milites officium suum praestitisse, qui per se de concilianda pace egerint, Caes., B. Civ., I, 85. Tullia dixit: Sibi defuisse, qui se regno dignum putaret, qui meminisset se esse Prisci Tarquinii filium, Liv., I, 47, 2.

(d) If the subject of the leading (primary) *Oratio Obliqua* clause is different from the subject of the secondary, a reference in this clause to the subject of the primary *Oratio Obliqua* clause is made regularly by the reflexive.

**Ex.**—Legati dixerunt Attalum orare patres conscriptos, si (patres. c.) sua (= Attalus) classe suaeque opera uti ad Macedonicum bellum vellent, mitterent ipsi praesidium ad regnum eius (= suum) tutandum, Liv., XXXII, 8, 11.

(e) The following uses of the Reflexive both in the *Oratio Obliqua* and apart from it are to be observed :

1. The Reflexive refers to a *logical subject* or *object*.

Ex.—*Sed quid mihi succensent, si id opto, ut paeniteat eos sui facti*, Cic., *Fam.*, XI, 28, 4 (here *sui* reflexive from *eos*). *Ab initio Faustulo spes fuerat, regiam stirpem apud se educari*, Liv., I, 5, 5 (here *se* refers to *Faustulo*). *A Caesare invitior in legationem illam, sibi ut sim legatus*, Cic. *Att.*, II, 18, 3 (here *sibi* reflexive from *a Caesare*). *Catilina admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suae*, Sall., *Cat.*, 21 (here *suae* reflexive from *alium*).

2. The Reflexive refers to *quisque* as subject (in the Nominative) and also in an oblique case.

Ex.—*Romulus dicit, eas eo melioribus usuras viris, quod adnurus pro se quisque sit, ut*, etc., Liv., I, 9, 15 (here *pro se* is entirely regular). *Menenius Agrippa dixit, tempore quo singulis membris suum cuique consilium, suus sermo fuerit, indignatas reliquas partes*, etc., Liv., II, 32, 9 (here *suum*—*suus* reflexive from *singulis* (*membris*)). *Principes fremebant, duas civitates ex una factas, suos cuique parti magistratus, suas leges esse*, Liv., II, 44, 9.

3. The Reflexive again refers to a *logical subject* which becomes *obvious* by a different statement of the elements of a clause, as when it reproduces the *subject* of a *Participle*.

Ex.—*Tunc aggredi Larisam constituit ratus exemplo tot civitatum dedentium sese non ultra in pertinacia mansuros*, Liv., XXXVI, 10, 3 (here *sese* reflexive from *civitatum* = *civitatum quae dederent sese*). *Plato ex materia in se omnia recipientem mundum esse factum censet a deo sempiternum*, Cic., *Acad.*, II, 37, 118 (here *in se* reflexive from *materia* = *quae in se omnia reciperet*). *Caesar dixit se ex provincia egressum, ut tribunos plebis ex civitate expulsos in suam dignitatem restitueret*, *Caes.*, *B. Civ.*, I, 22 (here *in suam dignitatem* is reflexive from *tribunos plebis*). The reflexive *suam* will be apparent from a different statement of the sentence = *ut tribuni plebis ex civitate expulsi in suam dignitatem restituerentur*). *Aliis placebat Octavium Thessalonicam petere, ut, altero ab tergo se ostendente bello, circumactus ad interiorem partem regni tuendam, nudare aliqua parte transitus Enipei cogeretur*, Liv., XLIV, 35, 8.

4. A reference to an implied *aliquem* is, in *Oratio Obliqua*, and elsewhere, made by the Reflexive.

Ex.—*Est honestius alienis iniuriis quam re sua commoveri* (*O. R.*), Cic., *Verr.*, III, 72, 169.

*Cicero dicit, esse honestius alienis iniuriis, quam re sua commoveri* (*O. O.*).

(f) The Pronoun *ipse* in *Oratio Obliqua* reproduces the Speaker with *emphasis*, and, hence, is *emphatically reflexive*—that is, *ego* in *Oratio Recta* becomes *ipse* in *Oratio Obliqua*; *nos* in *Oratio Recta* becomes *ipsi* in *Oratio Obliqua*; *mihi* in *Oratio Recta* becomes *ipsi* (*sibi*) in *Oratio Obliqua*. Again, *ipse* in *Oratio Obliqua* is not only reflex-



ive with *emphasis*, but is strongly *distinctive*, and hence common in *contrasts* both in *Oratio Obliqua* and elsewhere, as *ipse* = he *himself*, he too, he also, he on his part.

Ex.—Divitiacus dixit: Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum posset, per se crevisset, (Caes., B. G., I, 20 (here *ipse* reproduces *ego* in *O. R.*). (Caesar respondet): Proficiscatur Pompeius in suas provincias, ipsi exercitus dimittant Caes., B. Civ., I, 9 (here *ipsi* reproduces *nos* in *O. R.*). Divitiacus dixit: Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum, Caes., B. G., I, 20 (here *ipse* reproduces *ego* in *O. R.*). Iugurtha legatos ad consulem cum suppliciis mittit, qui ipsi liberisque vitam peterent, Sall., Jug., 46 (here *ipsi* in a distinctive sense reproduces *mihī* in the *O. R.*). Cum his collegas suos Themistocles iussit proficisci, hisque praedixit, ut ne prius Lacedaemoniorum legatos dimitterent, quam ipse esset remissus, Nep., Them., 7. Dixit: Lacedaemonios male facere, qui id potius intuerentur, quod ipsorum dominationi, quam quod universae Graeciae utile esset, Nep., Them., 7 (here *ipsorum* is distinctive and in contrast with *universae Galliae*). Pertimuerunt, ne caritate patriae ductus ab ipsis descisceret, et cum suis in gratiam rediret, Nep., Alc., 5 (here *ipsis* emphatically reproduces the subject of *pertimuerunt*, and in contrast with *suis*).

REM. The Pronoun *ipse* seems to occur, particularly in late Prose, in reproducing the Speaker with no special *emphasis* or *contrast*, but in the sense of *se*.

Ex.—Sexaginta dierum inducias pacti, ut, nisi intra eos auxilium Dareus ipsis (= sibi) misisset, dederent urbem, Curt., III, 1. Ergo pro se quisque (dixit), in experta remedia haud iniuria ipsis (= sibi) esse suspecta, Curt., III, 13.

III. From the preceding it may be gathered that the reflexive *se* (*suis*) reproduces *subjectively* the *statements* or *views* of the *Speaker* throughout in an *Oratio Obliqua* sentence, that is, the Reporter or Writer, as it were, allows the Speaker to make his statements or to express his views from his own standpoint subject only to the change of Mood required in the indirect statement and to the use of the Pronoun (*se*) necessary in referring to himself. Again, the Pronoun *ipse*, in its reflexive office, reproduces the *Speaker* with *emphasis*, or, again, refers to the subject of a dependent *Oratio Obliqua* clause *distinctively* or *in contrast*. The Reporter or Writer, however, may, and often does, present the statements or views of the Speaker *objectively* from his own (the Reporter's or Writer's) standpoint. This he does by the Pronoun *is* and *distinctively* or *in contrast* by *ipse*. Whether, then, the Reflexive *se* (*ipse*) or *is* (*ipse*) is used in *Oratio Obliqua* clauses

depends upon the *standpoint* from which they are considered—that is, whether from that of the *Speaker* or that of the *Reporter or Writer*; in the former case the reflexive *se* (*ipse*) is used, in the latter *is* (*ipse*).

**Ex.—Massilienses (dicunt):** *Principes esse earum partium Cn. Pompeium et Caesarem, patronos civitatis, quorum alter agros Volcarum Arecomicorum et Helviorum publice iis concesserit*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 35 (Caesar speaks from his own standpoint as Reporter and not from that of Massilienses: hence *iis* instead of *sibi*). *Ambiorix dixit sese pro Caesaris in se beneficiis plurimum ei confiteri debere: quod ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesare remissi essent*, Caes., B. G., V, 27 (here *ei* = *sibi* from standpoint of Speaker). *Helvetii persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis, uti eodem usi consilio oppidis suis vicisque exustis cum iis profisciscantur*, Caes., B. G., I, 5 (here *cum iis* from standpoint of Writer or Reporter = *secum* from standpoint of Speaker). *Verres Milesios navem poposcit, quae eum praesidii causa Myndum prosequeretur*, Cic., Verr., I, 34, 86 (here *eum* from standpoint of the Reporter = *se* from standpoint of the Speaker (Verres)). *Inde non prius egressus est, quam rex eum data dextra in fidem reciperet*, Nep., Them., 8 (here *se* would be correct from standpoint of subject of *egressus est*). *Haedui veniebant questum, quod Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur*, Caes., B. G., I, 37 (here *suos* instead of *eorum* would be correct from standpoint of Haedui). *Caesar dixit, num recentium iniuriarum, quod, eo invito, iter per provinciam tentassent, memoriam deponere posse?* Caes., B. G., I, 14 (here *se invito* would be correct).

(a) In the Final clause of *Purpose* or *Design* a reference to the subject of the governing verb (the Speaker) is regularly made by the reflexive. In a *Result* clause a reference to the subject of the governing verb (the Speaker) is, in *Oratio Obliqua* as elsewhere, as a rule, *objective* and made from the standpoint of the Reporter or Writer. Hence, in a *Result* clause a reference to the subject of the governing verb (the Speaker) is regularly made by *is* when this subject is *not* the same with the subject of the clause. In a *Result* clause, however, a reference to the subject of this clause within the limits of the same is *subjective* and made by the *Reflexive* (*se*). The limitation which excludes the Reflexive (*se*) in the *Result* clause *does not apply* to the reflexive Possessive (*suus*) which is used in referring to the subject of the governing verb, even when not the same with the subject of the *Result* clause.

**Ex.—Aedui dicunt:** *ita se de populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri liberi eorum in servitutem abduci non debuerint*, Caes., B. G., I, 11. *Barbarus adeo angusto mari conflixit, ut eius multitudo navium explicari non potuerit*, Nep., Them., 4. *Quem quidem adeo sua cepit humanitate, ut eum nemo in amicitia antecederet*, Nep., Alc., 9. *Sic sibi indulsit, ut eius opera in maximum odium Graeciae Lacedaemonii pervenerint*,

Nep., Lys., 1. **Caesar ludos et cum collega et separatim edidit, quo factum est ut communium quoque impensarum solus gratiam caperet, nec dissimularet collega eius Marcus Bibulus, evenisse sibi quod Polluci, Suet., Caes., 10** (observe **eius** referring to Caesar, subject of **edidit**, but **sibi** reproducing subject of **dissimularet**). **Cum matris suae scelere amisisset uxorem, tantum indulsit dolori, ut eum pietas vinceret, Nep., De Reg., 1. Fiebat ut omnium oculos ad se converteret, neque ei par quisquam in civitate poneretur, Nep., Alc., 3** (observe **se** reproducing subject of **converteret**). **Quem Dion adeo adamavit ut se ei totum traderet, Nep., Dion, 2** (observe **se** reproducing the subject of **traderet**). **Athenienses tantam gloriam erant consecuti, ut intellegerent Lacedaemonii de principatu sibi cum his certamen fore, Nep., Them., 6** (observe **sibi** reproducing subject of **intellegerent**). **Miltiades ea erat aetate, ut de eo bene sperare cives possent sui talem eum futurum, etc., Nep., Milt., 1** (observe **sui** in Result clause referring to subject of leading verb (**erat**). In such clauses the Possessive may have been conceived as logically reflexive from standpoint of subject or object of dependent clause = that he could afford his fellow-citizens good hope, etc.). Cf. **Ei sunt nati filii gemini duo, ita foma simili pueri, ut mater sua non internosse posset, Pl., Men., Prol., 17.**

IV. Since in the regular *Subjective Oratio Obliqua* the Reflexive *se* can be used throughout in referring to the subject of the governing verb, and since it is *regularly* employed in referring to the subject of either the leading (primary) or secondary *Oratio Obliqua* clause within the limits of the clause, it is clear that when the subject of the governing verb is not the same with the subject of the *Oratio Obliqua* Predicate the employment of the reflexive in the latter in referring to the subject of the former (governing Predicate) may be entirely *ambiguous*. In such cases the Writer or Reporter adopts the *objective* conception of the *Pronoun* and uses *is* or *ipse* (distinctive) in referring to the subject of the *governing* verb.

Ex.—**Caesar milites incusavit: quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? Caes., B. G., I, 40** (here **de sua diligentia** could refer as well to Caesar as to the **milites** (subject of **desperarent**)). **Miltiades dixit: id si factum esset civibus animum accessurum, cum viderent de eorum virtute non desperari, Nep., Milt., 4** (here not **de sua virtute**; **sua** would reproduce the subject of **viderent**, which would be entirely regular but ambiguous, as it could refer to Miltiades as well as to the subject of **viderent**). **Suetonius dixit: parta victoria, cuncta ipsis cessura, Tac., Ann., XIV, 36** (here **sibi** could refer to Suetonius).

(a) From the preceding statements it may be inferred that when no ambiguity results, the Reflexive *se, suis*, is used in reproducing both the subject of the governing Predicate and of the *Oratio Obliqua* Predicate. The exact limit of the reference by the Reflexive must in such a case be decided by the context and the elements and sense of the sentence.

Ex.—**Ariovistus respondit, magnam Caesarem iniuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret**, Caes., B. G., I, 36 (here the context and sense do not allow **suo** as a reference to Ariovistus, nor **sibi** as a reference to Caesar). **Ariovistus dixit, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse**, Caes., B. G., I, 36 (here the context and sense exclude **secum** as a reference to **neminem**). **Scythi petebant, ut regis sui filiam matrimonio sibi iungeret**, Curt., VIII, 1 (the context and sense exclude **sibi** as a reference to Scythi). **Saepe audita erat vox Alexandri Antipatrum regium affectare fastigium, omnia a se data asserentem sibi**, Curt., X, 31 (the context and sense refer a **se** to Alexander and **sibi** to Antipater). **Themistocles dixit: si suos legatos recipere vellent, quos Athenas miserant, se remitterent, aliter illos numquam in patriam recepturi**, Nep., Them., 7 (the context and sense exclude **se** as a reference to the subject of **remitterent**. It refers to Themistocles. In this sentence observe **recepturi** (cf. 330). We look for **recepturos esse**).

V. (a) From the foregoing it follows that the First Person (*ego—nos*) of *Oratio Recta* becomes in *Oratio Obliqua* the Reflexive (*se*), also the emphatic or distinctive Reflexive (*ipse*).

Ex.—**Ariovistus respondit, si iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse decertare**, Caes., B. G., I, 44 (= **si iterum experiri volunt, iterum paratus sum decertare** (*O. R.*)). **Ubii orabant, ut sibi Caesar auxilium ferret**, Caes., B. G., IV, 16 (= **nobis auxilium fer** (*O. R.*)). **Dixit se nolle beneficia ab eo accipere, cui non posset paria reddere**, Sen., Ben., V, 6, 6 (= **nolo beneficia ab eo accipere, cui non possim paria reddere** (*O. R.*)). Cf. **Iugurtha legatos ad consulem mittit, qui ipsi liberisque vitam peterent**, Sall., Iug., 46 (= **mihi liberisque peto** (*O. R.*)).

(b) When in subjective *Oratio Obliqua* there is a transition from the Singular *ego* of the *Oratio Recta* to the Plural *nos*, that is, when the Speaker in the Singular is reported as speaking not only for himself, but for others of whom he is one or for a party to which he belongs, the use of *se* in the *Oratio Obliqua* clause would be ambiguous in so far as it would not indicate whether the Speaker refers to himself alone or to others whom he represents, including himself. To avoid the ambiguity the Plural *ipsi* may be used in reproducing, in *Oratio Obliqua*, *nos* of the *Oratio Recta*.

Ex.—**Caesar dixit, et reipublicae et ipsis placere oportere. si, etc.**, Caes., B. G., III, 10 (here **sibi** would not necessarily indicate the Plural or **nobis** of *O. R.*). **Caesar docebat, quam veteres causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent**, Caes., B. G., I, 43 (here **sibi** would not necessarily indicate the Plural **nobis** of *O. R.*). **Parmenio censebat, planitiem ipsis camposque esse vitandos**, Curt., III, 17 (here **ipsis** reproduces **nobis** of *O. R.*). **Civilis dicit: Germanos, qui ab ipsis sperentur, non iuberi, non regi, sed cuncta ex libidine agere**, Tac., H., IV, 76 (here **ab ipsis** = **a nobis** of *O. R.*).

REM. The Reflexive *se* may be used in *Oratio Obliqua* in repro-

ducing *nos* of the *Oratio Recta* when the dependent Infinitive has a declinable element, as this element of the Infinitive explains the *se* as Plural. In the absence of this declinable element the use of *se*, referring to the Plural *nos* of the *Oratio Recta*, is rare.

Ex.—*Sisymbis flebat simul mortuos vivosque. Quem enim puellarum acturum esse curam? quem alium futurum Alexandrum? Iterum esse se captas. iterum excidisse regno*, Curt., X, 17 (here *se* reproduces *nos* of *O. R.*). *Civilis dicit, tradi se praefectis centurionibusque*, Tac., H., IV, 14 (here *se* reproduces *nos* of *O. R.*, but this use of *se* with simple Infinitive is very rare.)

(c) A reference by the Reporter or Writer to himself or to what has been said about him, or has been imputed to him, is made by *ego*, *me*, *meus*. A reference by the Reporter or Writer to that in which he, with others, is interested, which he possesses or shares with others, or to a party to which he belongs, is made by *nos*, *noster*.

Ex.—*Istud quidem, inquit, faciam, neque tua causa sed mea, ne, si tibi sit pecunia adempta, aliquis dicat id ad me ereptum pervenisse, quod delatum accipere noluissem*, Nep., Epam., 4. *Scribis te absentia mea non mediocriter affici unumque habere solacium, quod pro me libellos meos teneas, saepe etiam in vestigio meo colloces*, Plin. Min., VI, 7, 1. *Ariovistus respondit, ut ipsi (Ariovisto) concedi non oporteret, si in nostros (Caesaris et Romanorum) fines impetum faceret, sic nos (Caesarem et Romanos) esse iniquos, qui in suo iure se interpellaremus*, Caes., B. G., I, 44. *Caesar docebat, ut omni tempore totius Galliae principatum Aedui tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram (Caesaris et populi Romani) amicitiam appetissent*, etc., Caes., B. G., I, 43. *Caesari nuntiatum est equites Ariovisti tela in nostros conicere*, Caes., B. G., I, 46. *Antonius se neque mihi provinciam dare posse aiebat, neque arbitrari tuto in urbe esse quemquam nostrum*, Cic., Fam., XI, 1, 1.

(d) In a statement, in *Oratio Obliqua*, to the Second Person (*tu*, *vos*) of what he previously said or thought or of what is said about him or of what is imputed to him, the Second Person of the Predicate and the Second Person Pronoun *tu* (*vos*) must be employed.

Ex.—*Scribis te unum habere solacium, quod pro me libellos meos teneas*, Plin. Min., VI, 7, 1. *Aurum et argentum omne ad se iubet deferri; corpora vestra, coniugum ac liberorum vestrorum servat inviolata, si inermes cum binis vestimentis velitis ab Sagunto exire*, Liv., XXI, 13, 7. *Agros vobis relinquit, locum assignaturus, in quo novum oppidum aedificetis*, Liv., XXI, 13, 6.

(e) A reference, in *Oratio Obliqua*, by the Reporter to the Second Person *tu* (*vos*) of the *Oratio Recta* is made by a Pronoun of the Third Person, *ille*, *is*. That is, *tu* (*vos*) of the *Oratio Recta* is reproduced in *Oratio Obliqua* by *ille* (*is*), or the Second Person in *Oratio Recta* becomes in *Oratio Obliqua* the Third Person. Hence, the

Third Person Subjunctive in *Oratio Obliqua* in reproducing the Second Person Imperative of the *Oratio Recta*.

Ex.—*Iugurtha hortari milites, ne deficerent neu paterentur hostes fugientes vincere: neque illis castra esse neque munimentum ullum, quo cedentes tenderent*, Sall., Iug., 51 (= *neque vobis castra sunt neque munimentum ullum, quo cedentes tendatis (O. R.)*). *Iugurtha magna voce Siccenses hortatur, ut cohortes ab tergo circumveniant: fortunam illis praeclari facinoris casum dare: si id fecerint, postea sese in regno, illos in libertate sine metu aetatem acturos*, Sall., Iug., 56 (= *fortuna vobis... casum dat: si id feceritis, postea ego... vos... aetatem agetis (O. R.)*). *Horatius Cocles reprehensans singulos testabatur, nequiquam eos fugere: si transitum pontem reliquissent, iam plus hostium in Palatio Capitoloque quam in Ianiculo fore*, Liv., II, 10, 4 (= *nequiquam fugitis: si transitum... reliqueritis iam plus hostium... quam in Ianiculo erit (O. R.)*).

(f) The Pronouns *hic* and *iste* of the *Oratio Recta* become, in *Oratio Obliqua*, *ille (is)*. The Pronouns *ille* and *is* of *Oratio Recta* remain *ille* and *is* in *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—*Iugurtha dixit: Proinde parati intentique essent signo dato Romanos invadere: illum diem aut omnes labores et victorias confirmaturum aut maximarum aerumnarum initium fore*, Sall., Iug., 49 (= *hic dies aut omnes labores... confirmabit aut... initium erit (O. R.)*). *Civilis dixit: illum diem aut gloriosissimum inter maiores, aut ignominiosum apud posteros fore*, Tac., H., V, 17 (= *hic dies aut gloriosissimus inter maiores, aut ignominiosus apud posteros erit, (O. R.)*). *Caesar dixit: quarum rerum illo tempore nihil factum (esse), ne cogitatum quidem*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 7 (= *quarum rerum hoc tempore nihil factum est, ne cogitatum quidem. (O. R.)*).

REM. 1. It has been seen that the regular reproduction of *hic* in *Oratio Recta* is expressed by *ille* in *Oratio Obliqua*. The Reporter can, however, retain the Pronoun *hic* in *Oratio Obliqua* to express that which is nearest to him. The appropriation by him of *hic* (the Pronoun of the Speaker), while it lends animation to the reference, is often a matter of discretion, as *ille* could as well be used instead of *hic*. The Pronoun *hic* is also employed in *Oratio Obliqua* in contrast. It is obvious that where *hic* is retained by the Reporter he assumes in this pronominal reference the Time of the Speaker, and speaks of that which is nearest to and immediately concerns him.

Ex.—*Marcellus respondit non plura per annos quinquaginta benefacta Hieronis quam paucis his annis maleficia eorum qui Syracusas tenuerint erga populum Romanum esse*, Liv. XXV, 31, 4. *Caesar dixit: Hoc unum esse tempus de pace agendi, dum sibi uterque confideret et pares ambo viderentur*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 10. *Haec quo facilius Pompeio probari possent (se) omnes suas terrestres naviumque copias dimissurum*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 10. *Caesar dixit hanc iacturam honoris sui reipublicae causa aequo animo tulisse*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 9.

**Ariovetus dixit:** Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. *Caes., B. G., I, 44.*

**REM. 2.** The Particle *nunc* of *Oratio Recta* is regularly reproduced in *Oratio Obliqua* by *tum* (*tunc*); that is, *now* (*Oratio Recta*) = *then* (*Oratio Obliqua*). The Particle *nunc*, however, is retained in *Oratio Obliqua* when the Reporter, in animated statement, assumes the Time of the Speaker. Again, *nunc* in *Oratio Obliqua* is retained in contrast when the time nearest the Reporter (*nunc*) is contrasted with a time antecedent or subsequent to this time (*tum*). So *etiam nunc* may be retained in *Oratio Obliqua* instead of *etiam tum*.

**Ex.—Caesar dixit:** Depositis armis auxiliisque, quibus nunc confiderent, necessario populi senatusque iudicio fore utrumque contentum, *Caes., B. Civ., III, 10.* Illi respondent, nunc a tanto rege maioribus suis redditos, honestam mortem, quam fortes viri expeterent, carminibus sui moris celebrare, *Curt., VII, 39.* Rex dixit: Se invitum deteriora credentem, nunc manifestis indicibus victum, iussisse vinciri, *Curt., VII, 2.* Dixit: Tum sollicitudinis causas apparuisse, nunc egregie litatum esse, *Curt., VII, 31.* Fabius dixit dictatorem tunc invidia impedire virtutem alienam voluisse: nunc id furere, id aegre pati, quod se Q. Fabius magistrum equitum duxerit ac non accensum dictatoris. *Liv., VIII, 31, 4.* Sulla dixit: Amicitiam, foedus, Numidiae partem, quam nunc peteret, tunc ultro adventuram, *Sall., Iug., III.* Tubero ostendit debere iis hominem esse contentum, quibus di etiam nunc uterentur, *Sen., Ep., XVI, 3, 13.*

334. *Oratio Obliqua* in Transfers:

## ORATIO RECTA.

ORATIO OBLIQUA FROM  
THE PRESENT.(Standpoint of the  
Speaker.)*Respondet.*

lus est belli, ut, qui  
vicerint, his, quos vice-  
rint, quem ad modum  
velint, imperent: item  
populus Romanus victis  
non ad alterius prae-  
scriptum, sed ad suum  
arbitrium imperare con-  
suevit. Si ego populo  
Romano non praescribo,  
quem ad modum suo iure  
utatur, non oportet me a  
populo Romano in meo  
iure impediri.

Convert into *Oratio Recta*.

lus esse belli, ut, qui  
vicerint, his, quos vice-  
rint, quem ad modum  
velint, imperent: item  
populum Romanum victis  
non ad alterius prae-  
scriptum, sed ad suum  
arbitrium imperare con-  
suesse. Si ipse populo  
Romano non praescribat,  
quem ad modum suo iure  
utatur, non oportere sese  
a populo Romano in suo  
iure impediri.

Convert into *Oratio Obliqua* from  
the standpoint of the  
Speaker).

Caes. B. G., I, 36.

ORATIO OBLIQUA FROM  
THE PAST.(Standpoint of the  
Reporter.)*Respondit.*

lus esse belli, ut, qui  
vicissent, his (illis), quos  
vicissent, quem ad modum  
vellent, imperarent: item  
populum Romanum victis  
non ad alterius prae-  
scriptum, sed ad suum  
arbitrium imperare con-  
suesse. Si ipse populo  
Romano non praescribe-  
ret, quem ad modum suo  
iure uteretur, non opor-  
tere sese a populo Ro-  
mano in suo iure impediri.

Aeduos sibi, quoniam  
belli fortunam tentassent  
et armis congressi ac su-  
perati essent, stipendia-  
rios esse factos. Magnam  
Caesarem iniuriam fa-  
cere, qui suo adventu  
vectigalia sibi deteriora  
faceret. Aeduis se ob-  
sides redditurum non  
esse, neque his neque  
eorum sociis iniuria bel-  
lum illaturum si in eo  
manerent, quod convenis-  
set, stipendiumque quo-  
tannis penderent: si id  
non fecissent, longe his  
fratrum nomen populi  
Romani futurum.

I. (a) Convert into *Oratio Recta* and into *Oratio Obliqua* from  
the standpoint of the Speaker (the Present):

Romulus docebat patrum id superbia factum, qui conubium finitimis negas-  
sent: illas tamen in matrimonio, in societate fortunarum omnium civitatisque,  
et, quo nihil carius humano generi sit, liberum fore; mollirent modo iras, et,



quibus fors corpora dedissent, darent animos. Saepe ex iniuria postmodum gratiam ortam, eoque melioribus usuras viris, quod adniscurus pro se quisque sit, ut, cum suam vicem functus officio sit, parentum etiam patriaeque expleat desiderium, Liv., I, 9, 14.

Explain the Present Subjunctive *sit* (*generi sit*), and where the Reporter assumes the standpoint of the Speaker and uses Present Subjunctive Tenses adopt his proper standpoint (the Past) and employ the proper Past Subjunctive Tenses.

(b) Convert into *Oratio Recta* :

Tarquinius orare Veientes Tarquiniensesque, ne se ortum, eiusdem sanguinis, extorrem egentem ex tanto modo regno cum liberis adolescentibus ante oculos suos perire sinerent. Alios peregre in regnum Romanum accitos ; se regem, augmentem bello Romanum imperium, a proximis scelerata coniuratione pulsum. Eos inter se, quia nemo unus satis dignus regno visus sit, partes regni rapuisse : bona sua diripienda populo dedisse, ne quis expers sceleris esset. Patriam se regnumque suum repetere et persequi ingratos cives velle. Ferrent opem, adiuvarent ; suas quoque veteres iniurias ultum irent, totiens caesas legiones. agrum ademptum, Liv., II, 6, 2.

Explain in the preceding the Tense *visus sit*.

(c) Convert into *Oratio Recta* :

Dareus scripsit : Vereri se, ne (Alexander) avium modo, quas naturalis levitas ageret ad sidera, inani ac puerili mentis affectu efferretur. Nihil difficultius esse, quam in illa aetate tantam capere fortunam. Mediam, Hyrcaniam. Bactra, et Indos Oceani accolas quando aditum ? Curt., IV, 21.

(d) Convert into *Oratio Recta* :

Haec Craterus. Nec ceteri dubitabant. Quem enim pium et bonae mentis, non amicum modo, sed ex ultima plebe, auditis quae ad eum delata erant, non protinus ad regem fuisse cursurum ? Curt., VI, 30. (Explain *delata erant*.)

(e) Convert into *Oratio Recta* :

Rex crus barbaris ostendit. Illi iussi considerare, affirmant, non Macedones, quam ipsos tristiores fuisse cognito vulnere ipsius : cuius si auctorem repperissent, dedituros fuisse, cum diis enim pugnare sacrilegos tantum, Curt., VII, 25.

(f) Convert into *Oratio Recta* :

Fabius in rogationem latoremque ipsum inductus est : Si quem similem eius priore anno irati dii tribunum dedissent, non potuisse sisti. Ad tollendum reipublicae consulare imperium laturum leges fuisse. Quid tandem ? illi non licere, si quid consules superbe in aliquem civium fecerint, diem dicere ? Liv., III, 9, 6.

II. Convert into *Oratio Obliqua*, from the standpoint of the Speaker, the Present (*dicit*), and from the standpoint of the Reporter the Past (*dixit*) :

(a) *Tum Sabinae mulieres: Si affinitatis inter vos (inquiunt), si conubii piget, in nos vertite iras; nos causa belli, nos vulnere ac caedium viris ac parentibus sumus; melius peribimus quam sine alteris vestrum viduae aut orbae vivemus, Liv., I, 13, 3.*

(b) *Ibi inquit Albanus: Memor esto, iam cum signum pugnae dabis, has duas acies spectaculo fore, ut fessos confectosque simul victorem ac victum aggrediantur. Itaque si nos dii amant, quoniam non contenti libertate certa in dubiam imperii servitilique aleam imus, incamus aliquam viam, qua, utri utris imperent, sine magna clade sine multo sanguine utriusque populi decerni possit, Liv., I, 23, 9.*

(c) *Critognatus dicit: Nihil de eorum sententia dicturus sum, qui turpissimam servitutem deditionis nomine appellant; neque hos habendos civium loco neque ad concilium adhibendos censeo. Cum iis mihi res sit, qui eruptionem probant: quorum in consilio omnium vestrum consensu pristinae residere virtutis memoria videtur. Animi est ista mollities, non virtus, inopiam paulisper ferre non posse. Qui se ultro morti offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probarem (nam apud me tantum dignitas potest) si nullam praeterquam vitae nostrae iacturam fieri viderem: sed in consilio capiendo omnem Galliam respiciamus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitavimus, Caes., B. G., VII, 77.*

(d) *Tum Tullus dicit: Nec ea culpa, quam arguo, omnium Albanorum est; ducem secuti sunt, ut et vos, si quo ego inde agmen declinare voluissem, fecissetis. Mettius ille est ductor itineris huius. Audeat (Potential) deinde talia alius, nisi in hunc insigne iam documentum mortalibus dederò, Liv., I, 28, 6.*

(e) *Appius dicit: Quid turres, quid vineas testudinesque loquar (Subjunctive)? Cum tantum laboris exhaustum sit et ad finem iam operis tandem perventum, relinquendane haec censeatis, ut ad aestatem rursus novus de integro his instituendis exsudet labor? Quanto est minus opera tueri facta et instare et perseverare defungique cura? Quid? periculi quod differendo bello adimus, num oblivisci nos haec tam crebra Etruriae concilia de mittendis Veios auxiliis patiuntur? Liv., V, 5, 6, 7.*

(f) *Dicit: Atque utinam pro decore tantum hoc vobis et non pro salute esset certamen! Non de possessione Siciliae ac Sardiniae, de quibus quondam agebatur sed pro Italia vobis est pugnandum. Hic est obstandum, milites, velut si ante Romana moenia pugnemus, Liv., XXI, 41, 14 and 15.*

(g) *Dicit: Quos viceris, amicos tibi esse cave credas: Inter dominum et servum nulla amicitia est: etiam in pace belli tamen iura servantur. Iurando gratiam Scythas sancire ne credideris; colendo fidem, iurant, Curt., VII, 35.*

*Tullius: Quid deinde, (inquit), illud non succurrit vivere nos, quod maturamus proficisci? Si hoc profectio et non fuga est. Et hanc urbem vos non hostium ducitis, ubi si unum diem morati essetis, moriendum omnibus fuit? bellum vobis indictum est, magno eorum malo, qui indixere, si viri estis, Liv., II, 38, 5.*

REM. The transfers called for in the foregoing extracts (I and II) may well be postponed until the Conditional Sentence shall have been thoroughly mastered.

## The Conditional Sentence.

**335.** The Conditional Sentence consists of two members:

- (a) The former member = the Protasis.
- (b) The latter member = the Apodosis.

The former member presents the condition introduced by the Particle *si*. The latter member presents the conclusion springing therefrom. As compared with the Apodosis, the Protasis is first suggested to the mind; it is antecedently supposed or conceived, the latter member denoting that which is coupled with, but springs from the condition, is called the Apodosis. The Protasis decides the character of the Conditional Sentence.

**336.** But, while the Protasis, in the conception of it, is prior to the Apodosis, it is, in its logical relation to it, subordinate, and, hence, may be termed the subordinate member and the Apodosis may be termed the leading member. The subordinate character of the Protasis consists in this, that it furnishes the explanation or restriction under which the leading idea of the sentence presented in the Apodosis may occur or be realized. The explanation or restriction stated in the Protasis is that of procuring cause. Hence, the proper logical relation of the Protasis to the Apodosis is causal.

**337.** The causal relation of the Protasis is peculiar in this, that it is expressed conditionally.

**338.** The word in the Protasis which furnishes the relation of cause is the Particle *si*. The causal character of *si* is, often, clearly seen when there is associated with it the strengthening Particle *quidem*.

Ex.—*Antiquissimum e doctis genus est poetarum, si quidem Homerus fuit et Hesiodus ante Romam conditam*, Cic., Tusc., I, 1, 3 (the ground of the statement, *Antiquissimum . . . est poetarum*, is furnished by the clause *si quidem . . . conditam*). *Ea divinationum ratio ne in barbaris quidem gentibus neglecta est, si quidem et in Gallia Druidae sunt*, etc., Cic., De Div., I, 41, 90. *O praeclarum munus aetatis, si quidem id aufert a nobis, quod est in adolescentia vitiosissimum*, Cic., De Sen., XII, 39. *In agris erant tum senatores, id est, senes, si quidem aranti L. Quinctio Cincinnato nuntiatum est eum dictatorem esse factum*, Cic., De Sen., XVI, 56.

**339.** That a causal force inheres in the Particle *si* is, again, seen in the fact that this force is sometimes prominently reproduced and expressed in the Apodosis by a causal Particle, as *idcirco*, *ideo*.

**Ex.**—*Non, si Opimium defendisti, idcirco te isti bonum civem putabunt*, Cic., *De Or.*, II, 40, 170. *Nec, si te validus iactaverit Auster in alto, idcirco navem trans Aegaeum mare vendas*, Hor., *Ep.*, I, 11, 15. *Si tamen tempestate fuerit abreptus, non ideo minus erit gubernator*, Quint., II, 17, 24. *Non, si voluptatem praestatura virtus est, ideo propter hanc petitur*, Sen., *Ad Gal.*, IX, 1.

**REM.** Sometimes the causal force of the Particle *si* is obvious from the contents of the two members of the sentence.

**Ex.**—*Non est mirum paucis istud contingere in imperio, si nobis ipsi molesti sumus*, Sen., *Nat. Q.*, IV, *Praef.*, 2. *Non enim statim bonum est, si quid necessarium est*, Sen., *Epist.*, V, 4, 10. *Quid ergo est cur perturbetur, si mori fortiter etiam puerile est?* Sen., *Epis.*, X, 1, 15.

**340.** The causal force of *si*, or the causal relation of the Protasis to the Apodosis, is seen, when it serves to enhance the statement in the Apodosis, or, by contrast, to give it prominence. This is the character of the Protasis introduced by *si* with *modo* (*si modo*).

**Ex.**—*Si omnes, qui reipublicae consulunt, cari nobis esse debent, certe imprimis imperatores*, Cic., *De Or.*, II, 40, 168. *Si ferae partus suos diligunt, qua nos in liberos nostros indulgentia esse debemus?* Cic., *De Or.*, II, 40, 168. *Si hoc illi simile est, est illud huic*, Cic., *Nat. De.* I, 32, 90. *Quod summum bonum est, supra se gradum non habet, si modo illi virtus inest, si illam adversa non minuunt*, Sen., *Epist.*, VIII, 2, 18.

**341.** From the preceding it is seen that the Protasis is introduced by the Particle *si*; Negative, *nisi*, *si non*, *ni*. The Particle *si* (*si-c*) = *so* = Ablative of circumstance under which = *in this* or *that way*. Compare *ha-c*, *ea* = *in this*, *in that way*. The term *so* often occurs in English with a conditional force. You need not write to me, *so* (= *if*) you come.

**342.** *Ita* or *sic* occurs as the correlative of *si*, in which case the Apodosis (with *ita* or *sic*) usually precedes the Protasis. In such a sentence the Protasis is presented as the emphatic restriction under which the contents of the Apodosis must occur, and the correctness of its statement is accepted. Hence, *ita* (*sic*)—*si* = *so*—*if* = *under the restriction or limitation*—*if*.

**Ex.**—*Hoc ipsum ita iustum est, quod recte fit, si est voluntarium*, Cic., *Off.*, I, 9, 28. *Ita senectus honesta est, si se ipsa defendit, si ius suum retinet*, Cic., Sen., XI, 38. Cf. Cic., *Att.*, XII, 32, 2; *Att.*, XIII, 12, 3; *Liv.*, I, 8, 2; III, 45, 2; III, 63, 10; XXI, 17, 6; XXI, 19, 3. *Sic (raro) invidiam effugies, si te non ingesseris oculis, si bona tua non iactaveris*, Sen., *Epist.*, XVIII, 2, 3. Cf. *Liv.*, I, 17, 9. But, *Neque enim praetor, si ex eo fundo deiectus essem, ita me restitui iussit: sed eo, unde deiectus essem*, Cic., *Caec.*, XXIX, 82.

**343.** Sometimes a relation of Time is involved in the Condition or, more exactly, the Particle *si* conveys the idea of Time, the correlative of which is expressed by *tum*; thus *si . . . tum* = *If (when)—then*, or *tum . . . si* = *then—if (when)*. The Apodosis with *tum* precedes, but quite often follows, the Protasis.

Ex.—*Tum illud fit, quod ab amico est profectum, lucundum, si cum studio est profectum*, Cic., Am., XIV, 51. *Tum huroule, male gesta res publica est, si (legem) tuleritis*, Liv., III, 19, 11 (*tum* is explained by *si tuleritis*). Cf. Cic., Div., II, 13, 30; II, 28, 62. *Haec si et ages et senties, tum eris non modo consul sed magnus consul*, Cic., Fam., X, 6, 3. *Tunc te admirabor, si non contempseris etiam sordidum panem*, Sen., Epist., XIX, 1, 12.

REM. As the Particle *si* sometimes conveys the idea of Time, so the Temporal Particle *cum* sometimes expresses the force of Condition, that is, the Time of an action is to be interpreted as the Condition under which it occurs.

Ex.—*Nulla est haec amicitia, cum (when = if) alter verum audire non vult alter ad mentiendum paratus est*, Cic., Tusc., II, 21, 47. *Quod cum facies, ex magna parte communi commodo inservieris*, Cic., Fam., XI, 4, 2.

**344.** The relation in which the Protasis stands to the Apodosis may be indicated by *ea conditione*, *sub conditione*, *eo*, *adeo*, *in eo*, and sometimes the Protasis explains a Substantive or phrase in the Apodosis.

Ex.—*Claudius latum clavum etiam libertini filio tribuit, sed sub conditione, si prius ab equite Romano adoptatus esset*, Suet., Claud., 24. *Sub ea conditione filiam eius, neptem suam, instituerat heredem, si esset manu patris emissa*, Plin. Min., VIII, 18, 4. *Atque adeo iudicii mei te iudicem faciam, si mihi ex hoc ipso lemme secundus versus occurrerit*, Plin. Min., IV, 27, 3. *Quorum plerique aut queruntur semper aliquid aut etiam exprobrant, eoque magis, si habere se putant quod officiose factum queant dicere*, Cic., Am., XX, 71. *Maius ex eo decus sperabant, si pacem continuavissent*, Tac., Ann., XIII, 53. *Uno modo multum est quod vivimus, si satis est*, Sen., Ad Marc., XXI, 2. *Laelius Fulviusque adiecerunt, et Scipionem in eo positam habuisse spem pacis, si Hannibal et Mago ex Italia non revocarentur*, Liv., XXX, 23, 6. *Unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur*, Caes., B. G., III, IV.

**345.** *Si non*. In this phrase the Negative *non* attaches to and negatives a single word in the Protasis. It is translated *if not*. It may be substituted by the form *ni*—properly an old form and poetical.

Ex.—*Aequitas tollitur omnis, si habere suum cuique non licet*, Cic., Off., II, 22, 78. *Si non easdem opes habemus, eandem tamen patriam incolimus*, Liv., IV, 3, 2. *Perierat alter filius, si carnifici conviva non placuisset*, Sen., De Ira., II, 33, 6. Cf. *Quod ni fecisset, uno in loco omnes adversariorum copiae convenissent*, Cic., Div., II, 24, 52. *Ni propere agis, tenet urbem maritus*, Tac., Ann., XI, 30.

(a) The Particle *ni*, less frequently *nisi*, *si non* not excluded, occurs in asseverations and imprecations.

Ex.—*Moriar, ni, quae tua gloria est, puto te malle a Caesare consuli quam inaurari*, Cic., Fam., VII, 13, 1. *Di omnes me interficiant, nisi ego illam anum interfecero*, Pl., Most., 187.

(b) The Particle *ni* occurs parallel with *nisi*, less frequently with *si non*, in threats; that is, the Apodosis presents a penalty threatened to be inflicted in case certain conditions or terms stated in the Protasis are not complied with.

Ex.—*Ni (res) reddantur, bellum indicere iussi sumus*, Liv., I, 22, 6 (the penalty threatened is the declaration of war, in case the property is not restored). *Legati Aurunci senatum adeunt, ni decedatur Volsco agro, bellum indicentes*, Liv., II, 26, 4. *Itaque ni propere fit, quod impero, vinciri vos iam iubebo*, Liv., XXXVI, 28, 6. *Quod nisi facis, in vincula te duci iubebo*, Liv., VI, 15, 6. *Quingenta talenta nisi triduo numeras, populationem in agris exspecta*, Liv., XXXVIII, 14, 12. Cf. Pl., Rud., 720, 746, 1057, etc.

(c) The Negative phrase *si non* is regularly employed in case of an antithesis resulting from the repetition of the same verb in two Protases, that is, when in a second Protasis the Predicate of a preceding Protasis is negatively presented.

Ex.—*Si feceris id, quod ostendis, magnam habebō gratiam, si non feceris, ignoscā*, Cic., Fam., I, 19, 2.

**346.** A clear distinction between *nisi* and *si non* may not always be distinctly marked, and perhaps was not uniformly observed by the Roman writers. The essential difference between them may, however, be stated as follows: In the case of *si non* the non-occurrence or non-performance of the action in the Protasis is followed by the occurrence or performance of the action or the realization of the statement in the Apodosis; in the case of *nisi* the Protasis furnishes the exception under which the statement or the action of the Apodosis is realized or occurs. In other words, the occurrence or fulfillment of the action or statement in the Protasis prevents or excludes the realization of the action in the Apodosis. But it must be observed that if the non-occurrence (*si non*) of the Protasis is followed by the occurrence of the Apodosis action, its performance or occurrence naturally and logically prevents or excludes the occurrence of the action of the Apodosis, and hence that the term *si non* properly includes the idea of *nisi*, and is the general term.

Ex.—*Si non facis, quod impero, te interficiam.*

= If you do not do . . . I will kill you.

= Your not doing will be followed by my killing you.

**Ex.—Nisi facis, quod impero, te interficiam.**

= Unless (except) you do... I will kill you.

= Do and I will not kill you = Your doing excludes or prevents my killing you.

(a) The Particle *nisi* occurs frequently in association with a negative or quasi-negative Apodosis.

**Ex.—Negat Epicurus iucunde posse vivi, nisi cum virtute vivatur, Cic., Tusc., III, 20, 49. In urbem mandabat, nullum proelio finem exspectarent, nisi succederetur Suetonio, Tac., Ann., XIV, 38. Quod nisi esset, certe postea non discessisset, Cic., Clu., LXVI, 189. Quis erat (huius) imperii minister, nisi Catilina in omne facinus manus exercens? Sen., De Ira., III, 18, 2.**

(b) To be observed is *si* repeated with *nisi* (= *nisi si* = *unless (except) if*).

**Ex.—Nunc, nisi si quid ex praetereunte viatore exceptum est, scire nihil possumus, Cic., Att., II, 11, 1. Noli putare me ad quemquam longiores epistolas scribere, nisi si quis ad me plura scripsit, cui puto rescribi oportere, Cic., Fam., XIV, 2, 1. Nec copias, nisi si aliquam corde machinor astutiam, Pl., Capt., 525.**

(c) To be carefully noted is *nisi* with a Predicate suggested or supplied by the context. This is, perhaps, the proper conception of *nisi* associated with a Participle or the ablative absolute. Its explanation as an adverbial qualification of the Participle is hardly satisfactory.

**Ex.—Nisi aequo loco aut opportunitate aliqua data legato dimicandum non existimabat, Caes., B. G., III, 17 (with *nisi* may be conceived *dimicandum existimabat*). Ipsum erat oppidum admodum edito loco, ut, nisi obsidione, expugnari non posse videretur, Caes., B. G., VII, 69. Quid illos aliud aut tum timuisse creditis aut hodie turbare velle, nisi concordiam ordinum? Liv., V, 3, 5.**

**REM.** In many cases there is no appreciable difference between *nisi* and *si non*.

**Ex.—Ni (res) reddantur, bellum indicere iussi sumus, Liv., I, 22, 6 (here instead of *ni*, the term *si non* could be used). Nisi feceris, ignoscam, Cic., Fam., V, 19, 2 (here we expect *si non*).**

(d) The full adversative force (= but yet) of *nisi* is to be carefully noted. In this sense it occurs in all periods of the language.

**Ex.—De hac re mihi satis hau liquet: nisi hoc sic faciam, opinor, ut, etc., Plaut., Trin., 233. Namque patria huic alterae quae sit, profecto nescio: nisi scio probiorem hanc esse quam te, impuratissime, Pl., Rud., 740. Quid erat quod Capitonem primum scire voluerit? Nescio: nisi hoc video. Capitonem in his bonis esse socium, Cic., Rose. Am., XXXV, 99.**

(e) To be observed is the transition from the positive *si* to the negative “and if not,” made by *nec* = *et si non*. Thus *si—nec*.

Ex.—*Brevis profecto res est, si uno tenore peragitur, nec (= et si non) ipsi per intermissiones has lentiores spem nostram facimus*, Liv., V, 5, 7.

(f) To be noted is the use of *absque* with the ablative and Imperfect Subjunctive *esset* (*foret*) the equivalent of *si non esset* (*foret*) expressing, properly, an unreal relation in the Present and Past. In the Past context this Imperfect Subjunctive is not used instead of the Pluperfect Subjunctive, but the unreal relation of the negative phrase is the Imperfect Indicative. The idiom belongs to comedy and colloquial language.

Ex.—*Nam absque foret te (= si tu non esses), sat scio in alto distraxissent disque tulissent satellites tui miserum foede*, Pl., Trin., 831. *Quod absque hoc esset, qui mihi hoc fecit palam, suis me ductarent dolis (= quod nisi hic esset)*, Pl., Capt., 751. *Nam exaedificauisset me ex hisce aedibus, absque te foret (= nisi tu esses)*, Pl., Trin., 1127. *Nam absque eo esset, recte ego mihi uidissem et senis essem ultus iracundiam*, Ter., Phorm., 189.

(g) To be observed is the association of *ut* with *nisi* (*nisi ut*) where the *ut* is decided by the context.

Ex.—*Neque enim li sumus quos vituperare ne inimici quidem possint nisi ut* (better = so as to (Result) *laudent*, Plin. Min., III, 12, 4. *Quid nunc ego precer, nisi ut haereat animo tuo gaudium, quod?* etc., Plin. Min., Pan., 75. *Quid erit reliquum, nisi ut illis, qui ea fecere, obedientes vivamus?* Sall., Jug., 31.

(h) To be noted is the association *nisi . . . non*, best translated *not . . . except* or more concisely *only*.

Ex.—*Magnum exemplum nisi mala fortuna non invenit*, Sen., Prov., III, 5. *Quid quisque posset nisi tentando non didicit*, Sen., Prov., IV, 3. *Iniuria in bonos nisi a malis non tentatur*, Sen., Prov., VII, 2.

347. The phrase *si non*, and with less emphasis on the negative, *si minus*, is used when between the Protasis and Apodosis an antithesis or contrast is expressed, which is strengthened by the addition of *at*, *tamen*, *certe*, *at certe*, *saltem*, to the Apodosis.

Ex.—*Hominem si minus supplicio affici, at custodiri oportebat*, Cic., Verr., V, 27, 69. *Si minus id obtinebis . . . docebis carere omni malo mortem*, Cic., Tusc., I, XII, 26. *Perfectionem laudis si non assequimur, at, quid deceat, videmus*, Cic., Orat., XXIX, 104. *Nemo est tam agrestis quem non si ipsa honestas minus, contumelia tamen magnopere moveat*, Cic., Part. Or., XXVI, 92. *Si id minus video, hoc certe, qualis futura sit vel haec vel illa victoria*, Cic., Fam., VI, 3, 2. *Si illud non licet, saltem hoc licebit*, Ter., Eun., IV, 2, 12. *In quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinqua obsidione fames esset pertimescenda*, Caes., B. G., V, 29.



**REM.** The Predicate with *si minus*, *sin minus*, *sin aliter* (rarely *si non*) is often omitted, but readily supplied by the context.

**Ex.**—*Te oro ut me si putas te istic visurum expectes, si minus, invisas, si potes*, Cic., Att., III, 19, 3. *Educ tecum etiam omnes tuos, si minus, quam plurimos*, Cic., Cat., I, 5, 10. *Darent consules operam, ut, si minus omnes, aliquos tamen ex tribunis reipublicae ac senatui conciliarent*, Liv., II, 44, 4. *Quod si assecutus sum, gaudeo: sin minus, hoc me tamen consolor, quod*, etc., Cic., Fam., VII, 1, 6. *Qui si est talis, qualem tibi videri scribis, ego quoque aliquid sum: sin aliter, non recuso quin*, etc., Cic., Fam., VI, 18, 4. *Nunc si haec civitas est, civis sum ego: si non, exsul sum*, Cic., Fam., VII, 3, 5.

(a) As with *si minus*, so a Predicate may be used with *sin minus* and *sin aliter*.

**Ex.**—*Accusator illum primum defendet, si poterit: sin minus poterit, negabit*, etc., Cic., Inv., II, 29, 88. *Spero, si absolutus erit, coniunctiorem illum nobis fore in ratione petitionis: sin aliter acciderit, humaniter feremus*, Cic., Att., I, 2, 1.

**348.** When to a Protasis a second Protasis is opposed by which the former is cancelled and substituted, the latter (Protasis) is introduced by *sin*, *si autem*, *sin autem*, more rarely *sin secus* = but if; if not—but if; if on the contrary. The Predicate is either expressed or readily gathered from the context.

**Ex.**—*Non rogem? opinor, sic agam: si est spes nostri reditus, eam confirmes; sin, ut ego metuo, transactum est, ad me fac venias*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 3. *Mercatura si tenuis est, sordida putanda est: sin magna (est), non est admodum vituperanda*, Cic., Off., I, 42, 151. *Si eventa quaerimus, quae exquiruntur avibus, nullo modo prospera Deiotaro: sin officia, a virtute ipsius, non ab auspiciis petita sunt*, Cic., Div., II, 37, 79. Cf. *Caes.*, B. G., I, 13 (*sin bello persequi perseveraret*); B. G., VII, 10; Cic., Sen., XXI, 81; Div., II, 7, 18; II, 8, 20; II, 22, 49; II, 62, 127; II, 62, 128; *Tusc.*, I, 11, 23; II, 14, 33). *Tu tibi hoc persuade, si commodum valetudinis tuae fieri posset, nihil me malle quam te esse mecum: si autem intelleges opus esse te paulum commorari, nihil me malle quam te valere*, Cic., Fam., XVI, 1, 2. *Haec si tu Metellum cogitare de me nescisti, debes*, etc.; *sin autem aliquid impertivit tibi sui consilii, lenis a te existimari debeo*, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 9. Cf. Cic., Div., I, 50, 113; II, 8, 21; II, 10, 25; *Curt.*, VI, 39. *Si deus es, tribuere mortalibus beneficia debes, non sua eripere: sin autem homo es, id quod es, semper esse te cogita*, *Curt.*, VII, 35. *Si bonust, obnoxius sum, sin secust, faciam, ut mones*, Pl., Trin., 1064.

(a) The terms *sin*, *si autem*, *sin autem*, occur without a preceding Protasis expressed.

**Ex.**—*Sin erunt aliqui reperti qui pecuniam praeferre amicitiae sordidum existiment*, etc., Cic., Am., XVII, 63. *Quocirca maerere hoc eius eventum, vereor ne invidi magis quam amici sit: sin autem illa veriora, ut*, etc., Cic., Am., IV, 14. *Si autem nubium conflictu ardor expressus se emiseric (placet) id esse fulmen*, Cic., Div., II, XIX, 44.

**349.** The terms *nisi forte*, *nisi vero*, usually with the Indicative outside of *Oratio Obliqua*, introduce an exception to a preceding statement or an ironical concession of it, which is the usual sense of *nisi vero*: *nisi forte* = *unless perchance*; *nisi vero* = *unless indeed—unless really*.

Ex.—*Nemo fere saltat sobrius, nisi forte insanit*, Cic., Mur., VI, 13. *Non viribus res magnae geruntur, sed consilio (et) sententia: quibus non orbari senectus solet. Nisi forte ego vobis cessare nunc videor*, Cic., Sen., VI, 18. *Denique isto bono utare, dum adsit, cum absit, ne requiras, nisi forte adolescentes pueritiam, paulum aetate progressi adolescentiam debent requirere*, Cic., Sen., X, 33. *Nihil Romae geritur quod te putem scire curare: nisi forte scire vis me inter Niciam et Vidium iudicem esse*, Cic., Fam., IX, 10, 1. *Nam licet acriora sint quae legas, altius tamen in animo sedent quae pronuntiatio, vultus, gestus dicentis affigit: nisi vero falsum putamus illud Aeschinis, qui, etc., Pl. Min., II, 3, 9. Quo magis miror, quod scribis, fuisse quosdam, qui reprehenderent quod orationes omnino recitarem: nisi vero has solas non putant emendandas*, Pl. Min., VII, 17, 2.

(a) To be observed is the Positive form, *si forte* = *if perchance*, used in the modest statement of a Protasis.

Ex.—*Quod si forte, ut fit plerumque, ceciderunt, tum intellegitur quam fuerint inopes amicorum*, Cic., Am., XV, 53. *Hoc et ego excusator, si forte sum lapsus et tu dignior laude, si potes id quoque docere quod in obscuro est an didiceris*, Pl. Min., VIII, 14, 11.

**350.** The phrase *nisi quod*, and less frequently and less correctly *nisi quia*, tending to causal restriction, introduces a limitation as a fact = *except that, except the fact that, only that*.

Ex.—*Peccatum est nullum, nisi quod non una animam cum ornamentis amismus*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 5. *Neque aliud est quicquam cur incredibilis iis animorum videatur aeternitas, nisi quod nequeunt qualis animus sit vacans corpore intellegere*, Cic., Tusc., I, XXII, 50. *Usque ad supremum diem beatus et felix (fuit), nisi quod minorem ex liberis duobus amisit*, Pl. Min., III, 7, 1. *Paulum differt patiaris adversa an expectes: nisi quod est dolendi modus, non est timendi*, Pl. Min., VIII, 17, 5. *At nesciebam id dicere illam, nisi quia correxit miles, quo intellexi minus*, Ter., Eun., 736.

**351.** By the association *sive—sive: seu—seu: (sive—seu: seu—sive)* it is expressed that, of two or more conditions stated, either may be accepted. Freedom of choice is allowed, “Whether—or, Let it be that—or that.” The Mood is decided by the character of the Condition. A Predicate is not always expressed, and the Particles occur associated with Participles.

Ex.—*Hi sive, vere quam habuerant opinionem, ad eum perferunt, sive etiam auribus Vari serviunt, confirmant quidem certe totius exercitus animos alienos esse a Curione, Caes., B. Civ., II, 27. Dixit: Sive ipsorum perturbatio sive error aliquis, sive etiam fortuna praesentem victoriam interpellavisset, dandam (esse) omnibus operam ut, etc., Caes., B. Civ., III, 73. Veniet tempus et quidem celeriter, sive retractabis sive properabis: volat enim aetas, Cic., Tusc., I, XXXI, 76. Centum creat senatores, sive quia is numerus satis erat, sive quia soli centum erant, qui creari patres possent, Liv., I, 8, 7. Praeconibus circummissis pronuntiari iubent, seu quis Gallus, seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere, Caes., B. G., V, 51. Ad se iubebat convenire, seu quid communicandum, seu quid administrandum videretur, Caes., B. G., VII, 36. (Superstitio) instat et urget et persequitur, sive tu vatem sive tu omen audieris, sive immolaris, sive avem aspexeris, Cic., Div., II, 72, 149. Amici regis, sive timore adducti, sive despecta eius fortuna, his responderunt, Caes., B. Civ., III, 104. Pompeius sive operibus Caesaris permotus (= because moved) sive etiam quod ab initio Italia excedere constituerat protectionem parare incipit, Caes., B. Civ., I, 27.*

(a) The Protasis *si* sometimes passes to *sive* = *or if*; the Particle *sive* occurs alone, by which it is meant that if one idea is accepted the other is rejected. Either may be the fact; both cannot be.

Ex.—*Ut (= in order that) si arborum trunci sive naves deiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, Caes., B. G., IV, 17. Si ista uxor sive amicast, Ter., And., 216. Ascanius Lavinium urbem matri seu novercae reliquit, Liv., I, 3, 3. Quid foedius, quid perturbatus hoc ab urbe discessu sive potius turpissima fuga? Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 3.*

The sequence *sive*—*seu*, *seu*—*sive* occurs in late Latin and in poetry.

352. The Protasis is represented by different forms of expression.

1. By the Relative with the Finite verb. Here *qui* = *si quis* (*si qui*). The Mood and Tense of the verb are determined by the conditional relation to be expressed, and this is decided by the Apodosis.

Ex.—*Erant ea in Philippo, quae, qui sine comparatione (aliorum) spectaret, satis magna diceret, Cic., Brut., 173 (here qui = si quis). Quod qui (= si quis) sequitur, corpore senex esse poterit, animo numquam erit, Cic., Sen., XI, 38. Ea qui (= si quis) consideret quam inconsulte dicantur, venerari Epicurum debeat, Cic., N. Deor., I, 16, 43. Aulus, inquit, ille Verginius minus supplicii meruit? plus hercule aliquanto, qui (= si quis) vere rem aestimare velit, Liv., III, 19, 6. Recens ad Regillum lacum accepta clades Latinos ira odioque eius, quicumque arma suaderet, ne ab legatis quidem violandis abstinuit, Liv., II, 22, 3. Quod qui dubitet, haud sane intellego, cur non idem, sol sit an nullus sit, dubitare possit, Cic., N. Deor., II, 2, 4. Haec qui videat, nonne cogatur confiteri deos esse? Cic., N. Deor., II, 4, 12.*

(a) Instead of *qui* the phrase *si quis* or *si qui* is more regular and frequent.

Ex.—(Dicit), *errare, si qui in bello omnes secundos rerum proventus expectent*, Caes., B. G., VII, 29. *Ut* (= so that), *si qui in praesentia se occultassent, tamen iis, deducto exercitu, rerum omnium inopia pereundum videretur*, Caes., B. G., VI, 43. *Hi aut suam mortem miserabantur aut parentes suos commendabant, si quos ex eo periculo fortuna servare potuisset*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 41. *Si quis oriente Canicula natus est, in mari non morietur*, Cic., Fat., VI, 12.

2. By the Participle representing different forms of the Protasis decided by the context and the expressed Apodosis.

Ex.—*Non igitur potestis voluptate omnia dirigentes* (= *si dirigitis*) *aut tueri aut retinere virtutem*, Cic., Fin., II, 22, 71. *Mendaci homini ne verum quidem dicenti* (= *si dicit*) *credere non solemus*, Cic., Div., II, 71, 146. *Potest poena dilata* (= *si dilata est*) *exigi, non potest exacta* (= *si exacta est*) *revocari*, Sen., Ira., II, 22, 4. *Quod (bellum) vix Romanis fulti* (= *si fulti essent*) *viribus sustinuissem*, Liv., III, 6, 6. *Minus honorato loco positus* (= *si positus es*) *irasci coepisti convivatori: demens quid interest*, etc.? Sen., Ira., III, 37, 4. *Similitudo esset idem docentium* (= *si docerent*), Sen., Epist., XIII, 3, 4. *Quae clam commissa* (= *si commissa essent*) *capite luerentur, quia paludati fecere, laudamus*, Sen., Epist., XV, 3, 31. *Traditum* (= *si traditum esset*) *a proximis memoriae temporum illorum scriptoribus, libens posteris traderem*, Liv., XXIX, 14, 9. Cf. Liv., XXVIII, 34, 5, *servati* = *si servati simus*; Liv., IX, 18, 4, *victis Macedonibus* = *si victi essent Macedones*.

3. By the Ablative Absolute, with or without the participial element representing different forms of the Protasis decided by the context and the expressed Apodosis.

Ex.—*Maximas virtutes iacere necesse est, voluptate dominante* (= *si voluptas dominatur*), Cic., Fin., II, 35, 117. *Et alter: minus homines virtutis cupidos fore, virtutis praemio pervulgato* (= *si pervulgatum esset*), Cic., Inv., II, 39, 114. *Nomen iniuriae non potest recipi, virtute salva* (= *si virtus salva est*), Sen., Const. Sap., XVI, 2. *Vobis salvis* (= *si vos salvi estis*), *orbis esse non possum*, Curt., VI, 33. *Illo* (= *animo*) *sano ac valente* (= *si ille sanus est ac valet* (valens est)), *oratio quoque robusta est*, Sen., Epist., XIX, 5, 22. *Hoc est in illa* (= *sapientia*) *pretiosissimum, quo detracto* (= *quod si detractum est*) *supervacua fit*, Sen., Epist., XIX, 7, 16. *Patres Romani, quamquam inclinari opes ad Sabinos rege inde sumpto* (= *si rex inde sumptus esset*) *videbantur, tamen decernunt*, Liv., I, 18, 5. *Appius censebat, uno aut altero arrepto* (= *si unus aut alter arreptus esset*), *quieturos alios*, Liv., II, 23, 15. *Nam culus integra re consilium exquirere optassem, huius peracta iudicium nosse mire concupisco*, Plin. Min., III, 4, 2.

(a) With a negative sentence preceding, *nisi* occurs associated with the representative of the Protasis. In this connection *nisi* is perhaps, sometimes, better explained by supplying the Predicate furnished by the context than by accepting it as an adverbial qualification.

Ex.—*Nihil potest evenire, nisi causa antecedente*, Cic., *Fat.*, 34 (*nisi evenit causa antecedente*). *Ipse autem Antigonus adeo erat incensus, ut nisi magna spe maximarum rerum leniri non posset*, Nep., *Eum.*, 10. Cf. *Nullo nisi consciis noscente, quod caedis initium*, Tac., *Ann.*, I, 48. *Quae tibi exponere, nisi coram, non possum*, Cic., *Fam.*, VIII, 15, 1.

4. It must be carefully noted that the Infinitive sometimes substitutes the Protasis, to be interpreted according to the context and the expressed Apodosis.

Ex.—*Studeo interdum, quod non interdum sed solum semperque facere (= si facerem), non audeo dicere rectius, certe beatius erat*, Pl., *Epist.*, VII, 15, 1 (the use here of the simple Infinitive *facere* in connection with *beatius erat* is peculiar). *Quam bellum erat, Vellei, confiteri (= si confitereris) potius nescire quod nescires, quam, etc.*! Cic. *N. Deor.*, I, 30, 84. *Nam contra reputando, neque maius aliud neque praestabilius invenias*, Sall., *Iug.*, 1 (here *reputando = si reputes*).

5. By the predicate-attributive adjective, by a word or phrase. Here the form of the Protasis is decided by the context and the expressed Apodosis.

Ex.—*Quantum praesens (= si praesens fuisses) me adjuvare potueris, ex eo intellego, quod, etc.*, Cic., *Fam.*, IV, 6, 1. *Quid hunc paucorum annorum accessio iuvare potuisset?* Cic., *Am.*, III, 11 (*= quid . . . si pauci anni accessissent . . . iuvare potuissent?*). *Meo unius funere elata res respublica esset?* Liv., XXVIII, 28, 12. *Stantes plaudebant in re ficta: quid arbitramur in vera facturos fuisse?* Cic., *Am.*, VII, 24. *Senatus praetorem (= si praetor fuisset) eum circumscripsisset*, Cic., *Mil.*, XXXIII, 88. *Quod imperium sub uno stare potuisset, dum a pluribus sustinetur, ruit*, Curt., X, 28 (*= si unus fuisset*). *Quid hic rex fecisset?* Sen., *Ira.*, II, 5, 5 (*= si rex fuisset*). *Titurius clamitabat, Caesarem (eos) arbitrari profectum in Italiam: neque aliter (= nisi arbitrarentur) Carnutes interficiendi Tasgeti consilium fuisse capturos*, Caes., *B. G.*, V, 29.

6. By the Preposition *sine* and the Ablative (parallel with *nisi* and a Finite verb). Here the form of the Protasis is determined by the context and the expressed Apodosis.

Ex.—*Nemo sine magna spe immortalitatis se pro patria offerret ad mortem*. Cic., *Tusc.*, I, 15, 31 (*= nisi magnam spem immortalitatis haberet*). *Nihil enim viveret sine calore*, Sen., *N. Quae.*, II, 10, 4. *Optimum quidam putant id retinere sine quo (= quod nisi erit) languebit actio*, Sen., *Ira.*, I, 7, 1. *Ira, inquit Aristoteles, necessaria est. Nec quicquam sine illa (= nisi illa adest) expugnari potest*, Sen., *Ira.*, I, 9, 2.

7. By the Imperative Mood or the Imperative Subjunctive. The form of the Protasis is determined by the context and the expressed Apodosis.

Ex.—*Aniculae saepe inediā triduum ferunt: Subduc (=si subducas) cibum unum diem athletae: Iovem Olympium implorabit, ferre non posse clamabit, Cic., Tusc., II, 17, 40. Tolle hanc opinionem: luctum sustuleris, Cic., Tusc., I, 13, 30. Confer nostram aetatem cum aeternitate: in eadem brevitate quae illae bestiolae reperiemur, Cic., Tusc., I, 39, 94. Lege orationes Gracchi: patrum aerarii esse dices, Cic., Tusc., III, 20, 48. Sic iracundus non semper iratus est: lacesse: iam videbis furentem, Cic., Tusc., IV, 24, 54. Genus animadversionis videte: quaeritis quo genere hominem istum iudicetis, Cic., Verr., I, 17, 45. Attendite: iam intellegitis, Cic., Verr., II, 23, 57. Haec reputent isti: videbunt quem (animum) in ipso corpore intellegant, Cic., Tusc., I, 22, 51.*

8. By an Interrogative clause. The form of the substituted Protasis is determined by the context and the Apodosis expressed.

Ex.—*Opusne erit tibi aduocato leni? (me) leniorem dices quam mutum est mare, Pl., Mil., 665. Disertior ipse es? tanto magis, ne invideris: nam qui invidet, minor est, Plin. Min., Ep., VI, 17, 4. Vis illud tribunal maiestati suae reddere? ascende, Plin. Min., Paneg., 60. Tam molliter tu fers mortem filii? quid faceres, si amicum perdidisses? Sen., Ep., XVI, 4, 2. Des agros? ut publici neglegentur, Plin. Min., Epist., VII, 18, 1.*

9. The Protasis is sometimes introduced by temporal *cum*. The form of the Protasis is determined by the context and expressed Apodosis. (Cf. 343, Rem.)

Ex.—*Quid mihi, inquit Pompeius, aut vita aut civitate opus est, quam beneficio Caesaris habere videbor? cuius rei opinio tolli non poterit, cum in Italiam, ex qua profectus sum, reductus existimabor, Caes., B. Civ., III, 18.*

353. The Protasis is often presented in the form of an independent sentence, with the Conditional Particle omitted. The Protasis (or Conditional character of the sentence) is involved in its mere statement. This form of expression belongs, particularly, to rhetorical and animated language.

Ex.—*Ira exardescit, libido concitatur: in eandem arcem confugiendum est, eadem sunt arma sumenda, Cic., Tusc., II, 24, 58. Pater caedetur: defendam. Caesus est: exaequar, quia oportet, non quia dolet, Sen., Ira., I, 12, 3. Tibi fortius aliquid et quod sentias inurendum est: in exilium mitteris, Sen., Ira., I, 16, 2. Nunc primum offendit: cogitemus quamdiu placuerit, Sen., Ira., III, 24, 3. Militare non licet: honores petat, Sen., Tran. An., IV, 3. Ingratus est adversus unum beneficium: adversus alterum non erit, Sen., Ben., I, 2, 5. Vis illum fatum vocare: non errabis, Sen., Nat. Quaest., II, 45, 2. Vis illum naturam vocare: non falleris, Sen., N. Q., II, 45, 3.*

(a) Of like character with the preceding, in effect identical with it, is the case in which the Conditional Particle *si* is omitted with the Protasis.

Ex.—*Roges (= Si roges) me, qualem naturam deorum esse ducam, nihil fortasse respondeam*, Cic., Nat. Deor., I, 21, 57. *Vim volumus extinguere, ius valeat necesse est*, Cic., Sest., XLII, 92. *Decies centena dedisses huic parco (= si... dedisses), quinque diebus nil erat in oculis*, Hor., Sat., I, 3, 15. *At dares hanc vim M. Crasso... in foro, crede mihi, saltaret*, Cic., Off., III, 19, 75.

### 354. The Predicate of the Protasis is sometimes omitted.

(a) The form of the omitted Predicate of the Protasis is clearly indicated by the context and the Apodosis.

Ex.—*Aut nemo, quod quidem magis credo, aut, si quisquam, Cato sapiens fuit*, Cic., Am., II, 9. (*Si quisquam = si quisquam (sapienter) fuit.*) *M. Cicero si illo tempore, quo Catilinae sicas devitavit, concidisset liberata republica servator eius*, Sen., Marc., XX, 5 (= *si illo tempore concidisset*). *Si vivere vellet, Seianus rogandus erat, si mori (= si mori vellet), filia*, Sen., Marc., XXII, 6. *Si hoc (= hoc est), et bonum et intellegibile est*, Sen., Epist., XX, 7, 12. *Parmenio et Philotas, nisi palam sotes (= nisi palam sotes fuissent), sine indignatione totius exercitus non potuissent damnari*, Curt., VI, 44. *Si potero, revocabo: si minus (= si minus potero (te revocare)), non adiuvo scelus*, Sen., Benef., II, 14, 4. *Hoc ab homine exigitur, ut prosit hominibus, si fieri potest, multis, si minus (= si minus potest multis prodesse), paucis, si minus, proximis, si minus, sibi*, Sen., Seren., III, 5.

(b) The Predicate is often omitted in a Protasis introduced by *sin*, *si minus*, *sin minus*, *sin aliter*, *si non*, *si nihil aliud*, *sin secus*. (Cf. 347, Rem.) The Predicate to the Protasis is readily supplied by the context.

Ex.—*Hunc mihi timorem eripe: si est verus, ne opprimar, sin falsus (= sin falsus est), ut tandem aliquando timere desinam*, Cic., Cat., I, 7, 18. *Nec periculum, si animus hosti redisset, (eos) cogere potuit gradum accelerare, aut si nihil aliud (= si nihil aliud fecissent), instare instructos*, Liv., II, 43, 8. *Si illud, quod volumus, eveniet, gaudebimus, sin secus, patiemur animis aequis*, Pl., Cas., 355.

### 355. The entire Protasis is sometimes omitted. In this case the Protasis is readily suggested by the context.

Ex.—*Et non, si (di) significant futura, nullas dant vias nobis ad significationum scientiam, frustra enim significarent (= frustra enim significarent si non nullas darent vias, etc.)*, Cic., Div., II, 49, 102. *Me in illa causa admiratus esses (= si affuisses)*, Cic., Att., I, 16, 1. *Horreo, atque eo magis, quod tu abes qui consilio, gratia, studio multis rebus occurreres (= si adesses)*, Cic., Att., V, 21, 3. *In hac fortuna perutilis eius et opera et fidelitas esset (= si adesset)*, Cic., Att., IX, 17, 2. *Eloquentia nescio an Gracchus habuisset parem neminem (= si diutius vixisset)*, Cic., Br., XXXIII, 126.

**356.** The Potential Subjunctive is by some unnecessarily explained by the ellipsis of a Protasis, the character and form of which is fixed by the context, or assumed Apodosis (Potential Subjunctive). As the sense, however, of the Potential Subjunctive is of itself complete, it is quite obvious that a Roman writer used the Mood with no conscious reference to a Protasis to be supplied.

Ex.—*Pervelim scire (= si possim or liceat), utrum qui discedunt, an qui retinentur, de me querantur*, Curt., X, 9. *Crederes uno ore omnes sustulisse clamorem (= si adesses)*, Curt., X, 9. *Macte virtute! Ego enim ipse cum eodem isto non invitus erraverim (= si acciderit ut errem)*, Cic., Tusc., I, 17, 40.

**357.** The Apodosis is omitted. This occurs in the following connections:

(a) The Apodosis is clearly indicated by the Protasis.

Ex.—*Sic gemmas et vestes et dignitatis insignia dedi, quomodo, si sanguinem et vitam poposcissent (= quomodo dedissem)*, Tac., Ann., XVI, 31. *Hoc tale est quale, si quis (= quale sit si quis) pulcherrimorum corporum naevos aut verrucas derideat*, Sen., Vit. Beat., XXVII, 4. *Parens tuus hanc ante vos principes arcem publicarum aedium nomine inscripserat: frustra tamen, (= frustra tamen inscripsisset), nisi adoptasset qui habitare ut in publicis posset*, Plin. Min., Pan., XLVII. Cf. Cic., Tusc., I, 17, 40. It will be observed that in some cases only the Predicate in the Apodosis is to be supplied.

(b) Sometimes what seems to be, is not the real Apodosis, but only suggestive of this, the proper form of which is decided by the context or derived from the expressed Protasis.

Ex.—*Occasio egregie rei gerendae fuit (et res egregie gesta esset), si Furius protinus de via ad castra oppugnanda duxisset*, Liv., XXXI, 21, 3. *Volsci comparaverant (= et comparassent) auxilia, quae mitterent Latinis, ni maturatum ab dictatore Romano esset*, Liv., II, 22, 1. *Vincebat auxilio loci paucitas, ni iugo circummissus Veiens in verticem collis evasisset*, Liv., II, 50, 10 (here *vincebat et vicisset auxilio loci paucitas*).

(c) The Apodosis is lacking in a sentence introduced by *si, o si*, expressing a wish. The Apodosis expresses the result of the fulfillment of the wish. The character of the wish implied in the Protasis suggests the form of the Apodosis to be supplied.

Ex.—*Si nunc se nobis ille aureus arbore ramus ostendat nemore in tanto*, Verg., Aen., VI, 187 (the Apodosis supplied by *laetus sim* or equivalent). *O si urnam argenti fors quae mihi monstret*, Hor., Sat., II, 6, 10. (Apodosis may be supplied by *O quam gaudeam* or equivalent). Cf. Verg., Aen., VIII, 560, *O mihi praeteritis referat si Iuppiter annos. O si angulus ille proximus accedat, qui nunc denormat agellum*, Hor., Sat., II, 6, 8.



(d) The Conditional Particle *si* often occurs associated with Particles of comparison *ut*, *velut*, *atque* (*ac*), *quam*, *qua*, *tamquam*, (*ut si*, *velut si*, *atque* (*ac*) *si*, *quam si*, *qua si*, *tamquam si*). In these combinations an Apodosis is to be supplied. The Protasis is always ideal or unreal. Hence, the Mood is the Subjunctive and the Tense decided by the character of the Conditional statement. The Mood in the Apodosis, which is to be supplied, as also the Tense, is decided by Mood and Tense in the Protasis.

Ex.—*Milites, quibus impugnandus agger, ut si murum succederent, gravibus superne ictibus conflictabantur*, Tac., Ann., II, 20 (= *ut conflictarentur si murum succederent*). *Tantus patres metus de summa rerum cepit velut si iam ad portas hostis esset*, Liv., XXI, 16, 2 (= *velut caperet, si . . . hostis esset*). *Mucius sic tractavit ignem quasi illam manum tractatori praestitisset*, Sen., Ep., VII, 4, 53 (= *ea ratione qua tractavisset, si . . . praestitisset*). *Non aliter audiam, quam si ad tactum vitiorum vestrorum ingemiscatis*, Sen., Ep., V, 12, 10 (= *quam audiam, si . . . ingemiscatis*). *Egnatii absentis rem ut tuare aequae te peto, ac si mea negotia essent*, Cic., Fam., XIII, 43, 2 (= *ac peterem, si . . . essent*). *Qui, tamquam si offusa rei publicae sempiterna nox esset, ruebant in tenebris*, Cic., Ros. Am., XXXII, 91 (= *tamquam ruissent, si offusa . . . esset*).

REM. 1. The Particle *si* is often omitted with *tamquam* and *velut* = *tamquam si*, *velut si*.

Ex.—*Moritur Blaesus et tamquam omnia audisset, Regulo ne tantulum quidem (dedit)* (= *tamquam fecisset, si audisset*), Plin. Min., Ep., II, 20, 8. *Coepti inde ludi velut ea res nihil ad religionem pertinuisset*, Liv., II, 36, 1 (= *velut coepti essent, si ea res nihil pertinuisset*).

REM. 2. When the idea of simple comparison prevails, the Indicative, particularly with *tamquam* and *velut*, is used.

Ex.—*Tamquam levia quaedam vina nihil valent in aqua, sic Stoicorum ista magis gustata quam potata delectant*, Cic., Tusc., V, 5, 13. (*Dicit*) *velut in cantu et fidibus, quae harmonia dicitur sic ex corporis totius natura et figura varios motus cieri tamquam in cantu sonos*, Cic., Tusc., I, 10, 20 (the idea of comparison is indicated by *sic, ita*).

(e) The Apodosis is sometimes, more or less clearly, involved in a word or phrase.

Ex.—*Carpentanorum centum milia fuere, invicta acies, si aequo dimicaretur campo*, Liv., XXI, 5, 11 (= *acies quae invicta esset, si dimicaretur*). *Tum vidimus merulas poni et sine clune palumbes. suaves res, si non causas narraret earum et naturas dominus*, Hor., Sat., II, 8, 91. *In amorem virgunculae, si regiae stirpi compararetur ignobilis* (= *quae ignobilis esset*), *ita effusus est, ut*, etc., Curt., VIII, 16.

### Classification of Conditional Propositions.

**358.** The Mood in the Protasis generally gives the character of the Conditional Proposition. It is decided according to the relation in which its action is conceived by the Speaker or Writer to stand to the action in the Apodosis.

(a) The Indicative is used in the Protasis with the Indicative in the Apodosis. We cannot say, however, that the Indicative is employed in the Protasis, because the action is affirmed as actually occurring or as a fact. The action, as a result of its association with the Conditional Particle *si* is presented as an action simply assumed, and upon which, as such, the action in the Apodosis is predicated. While the action in the Apodosis follows as a logical result of the action in the Protasis, if this be true, it is not affirmed that it is true, or that it is a fact. In the sentence, *si hoc dicis, erras*, there is no positive affirmation that *you do say*, and, hence, that *you err*; there is affirmed or declared only the logical relation between your statement and error, without affirming either as an actual occurrence or fact. The fact may be that you do not say this, and, hence, you do not err. The matter, then, affirmed is, as stated, only the logical relation between the action of the Protasis and that of the Apodosis. In accordance with this view the sentence may be termed the Logical Conditional Sentence with Predicates in the Indicative.

(b) The Speaker or Writer represents the action in the Protasis as repeated in the different spheres of Time (Present, Past, and Future). The action in the Apodosis is also represented as repeated in the same spheres of Time. The Mood in the Protasis and Apodosis is regularly the Indicative. While from the Indefinite repetition the Subjunctive is allowed in the Protasis, the Indicative is retained in the Apodosis. This may be termed the Iterative Conditional Sentence. The repetition of the actions implies uniformity of sequence in the different spheres of Time, and the sentence may be termed a General Conditional or Iterative Conditional. The Particle *si* is best translated "if ever."

(c) The Speaker or Writer represents the action in the Protasis as one conceived indefinitely in the future, as one to be determined, as possible, as probable. The action in the Apodosis is represented in the same relation. In such a conditional sentence the Subjunctive is used in the Protasis and Apodosis, and the sentence may be termed

the Ideal Conditional with the Predicates in the Subjunctive, more exactly restricted by the Tenses employed.

(d) The Speaker represents as a fact the opposite of the action expressed in the Protasis. The opposite of the action expressed in the Apodosis is also presented as a fact. The Mood in both the Protasis and Apodosis is, as a rule, the Subjunctive, more exactly restricted by the Tenses employed, and the sentence is called the Unreal Conditional.

#### **The Logical or Indicative Conditional Sentence.**

**359.** In this form of the conditional sentence the Indicative is used in both the Protasis and Apodosis with any Tense of the Indicative. When the sense requires it different Tenses may be employed in the Protasis and Apodosis. While the action in the Apodosis is regularly subsequent to and follows the action in the Protasis, its sequence upon the action of the Protasis is often so intimate and instantaneous that it may be said to be, and is, in effect, coincident; that is, that one action involves the other. It must be carefully noted that the hypothetical character of the sentence forbids reasoning as to the reality of the actions, that is, whether they are affirmed or not. The safe rule is, to translate the Latin Indicative Tenses, in the Protasis and Apodosis, by the corresponding Tenses in English, and to reproduce the English Tenses in the Protasis and Apodosis by the corresponding Tenses in Latin. The only exception to this rule worthy of notice is the English Perfect Tense, which, as a Future Tense, is regularly reproduced in Latin by the Future Perfect.

The Logical Conditional Sentence independently stated and in *Oratio Obliqua*:

1. <i>Si hoc dicis, erras.</i> = If you say this, you err.	1. <i>Si hoc dicas, errare.</i>	1. <i>Si hoc diceres, errare.</i>
2. <i>Si hoc dixisti, erravisti.</i> = If you have said this, you have erred.	2. <i>Si hoc dixeris, errare.</i>	2. <i>Si hoc dixisses, errasse.</i>
3. <i>Si hoc dicebas, errabas.</i> = If you were saying this, you were erring.	3. <i>Si hoc diceres, errasse.</i>	3. <i>Si hoc diceres, errasse.</i>
4. <i>Si hoc dicēs, errabis.</i> = If ever you said this, you would err.	4. <i>Si hoc dicas, erraturum esse.</i>	4. <i>Si hoc diceres, erraturum esse.</i>
5. <i>Si hoc dixeris, errabis.</i> = If you shall have said this, you will err.	5. <i>Si hoc dixeris, erraturum esse.</i>	5. <i>Si hoc dixisses, erraturum esse.</i>
6. <i>Si hoc dixeris, erraveris.</i> = If you shall have said this, you will have erred.	6. <i>Si hoc dixeris, erraturum esse (or), fore (futurum esse) ut erraveris.</i>	6. <i>Si hoc dixisses, erraturum esse (or), fore (futurum esse) ut errasses.</i>
7. <i>Si hoc dicis, errabis.</i> = If you say this, you will err.	7. <i>Si hoc dicas, erraturum esse.</i>	7. <i>Si hoc diceres, erraturum esse.</i>
8. <i>Si hoc dixisti, erras.</i> = If you have said this you err.	8. <i>Si hoc dixeris, errare.</i>	8. <i>Si hoc dixisses, errare.</i>
9. <i>Si hoc dixeris, erraveras.</i> = If you had said this, you had erred.	9. <i>Si hoc dixeris, errasse.</i>	9. <i>Si hoc dixisses, errasse.</i>
10. <i>Si hoc dixeris, errabas.</i> = If you had said this, you were erring. = If ever you (had) said this, you erred (were erring).	10. <i>Si hoc dixisses, errasse.</i>	10. <i>Si hoc dixisses, errasse.</i>
11. <i>Si hoc dixeris, errasti.</i> = If you had said this, you erred.	11. <i>Si hoc dixisses, errasse.</i>	11. <i>Si hoc dixisses, errasse.</i>

Ex.—**Si Parthi vos nihil calfaciunt, nos hic frigore rigescimus**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 6, 4. **Cuius (nominis) si vos paenitet, vestrum vobis beneficium remitto**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 32. **Quod si tibi persuasum est, reliquum est ut tute tibi imperes**, Cic., Tusc., II, 20, 47. **Caletam, si quando abundare coepero, ornabo**, Cic., Att., I, 4, 3. **Si umquam ante alias ullo in bello fuit (Perfect) quod, etc., hesternum id proelium fuit (Aorist)**, Liv., I, 28, 4. **Aves vero si prosperos eventus ostenderunt (Perfect), certe fefellerunt (Perfect)**, Cic., Div., II, 37, 79. **Si Daphitae fatum fuit (Aorist) ex equo cadere, ex hocne equo nomen habebat alienum?** Cic., Fat., III, 5. **Reliqui si quid fuerat, Caesar superioribus diebus consumpserat**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 48. **Si quaeris causam absolutionis, egestas iudicum fuit (Aorist)**, Cic., Att., I, 16, 2. **Si quos imbellis sexus aut fessa aetas vel loci dulcedo attinuerat, ab hoste oppressi sunt (Aorist)**, Tac., Ann., XIV, 33. **Si voles in me esse durior, ambitionem putabis mihi obstitisse**, Cic., Att., I, 1, 4. **Si mehercule neminem occiderit, ab iis... maxime diligitur**, Cic., Att., VIII, 13, 1. **Gratissimum nobis feceris, si a te didicerimus, etc.**, Cic., Sen., II, 6. **Respiravero, si te videro**, Cic., Att., II, 24, 5. (**Dicit**) **nisi, quanta vi civitates eam (= libertatem) expetant (expetunt in Oratio Recta), tanta regna reges defendant, aequari (= aequantur in Oratio Recta) summa infimis**, Liv., II, 9, 2. **Dixit: Si non omnia caderent (= cadunt in Oratio Recta) secunda, fortunam esse industria sublevandam**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 73 (= est... sublevanda in Oratio Recta). (**Dicit**), **si Allobrogibus satisfaciant (= satisfaciunt or satisfacient in Oratio Recta), sese cum iis pacem esse facturum (= ego... faciam in Oratio Recta)**, Caes., B. G., I, 14. (**Dicit**), **si eum interfecerit (= si interfecero in Oratio Recta), sese principibus populi Romani gratum esse facturum (= faciam, perhaps fecero, in Oratio Recta)**, Caes., B. G., I, 44. (**Dixit**), **si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret (= faciet in Oratio Recta), in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros (= ibunt et erunt in Oratio Recta), ubi, etc.**, Caes., B. G., I, 13. (**Dixit**), **si id ita fecisset (= fecerit in Oratio Recta), sibi populoque Romano perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram (= erit in Oratio Recta)**, Caes., B. G., I, 35.

REM. The *Present Tense* in the *Protasis* is often associated with a *Future Tense* or its representative in the *Apodosis*. In this connection the *Present Tense*, while used in anticipation of the *Future*, should be reproduced in Latin by the *Present Tense*.

Ex.—(**Bellum**) **perficietur autem, si urgemus obsessos**, Liv., V, 4, 10. **Cives tui, si quid deest, magnifice augebunt**, Liv., II, 2, 7. **Necesse est enim, si in conspectum veneris (Future *Eractum*), venerari te regem**, Nep., Con., 3. **Si nihil te coegerit, insigne prodis exemplum**, Sen., Ep., X, 2, 21.

(a) The *Present* in this connection as a *logical Future* must not be confounded with the *Present* when its action is limited to the *Present*.

Ex.—**Si dediticius est, iussis vestris oboediens erit**, Sall., Iug., 31.

REM. The substitution of the *Protasis* by the *Imperative* is to be kept in view. (Cf. 352, 7.)

Ex.—*Roga hoc idem Epicurum, maius dicet esse malum mediocrem dolorem quam maximum dedecus*, Cic., Tusc., II, 12, 28. (*Roga* = *si rogaveris*.) *Evolve eius eum librum, qui est de animo, amplius quod desideres nihil erit*, Cic., Tusc., I, 11, 24. *Tolle hanc opinionem, luctum sustuleris*, Cic., Tusc., I, 13, 30.

360. A *Protasis* in the Indicative may be associated with an *Apodosis* in the Subjunctive, when the Subjunctive is independently demanded. This occurs in the following cases :

1. The Mood is Potential (Potential Subjunctive).

Ex.—*Audeat deinde talia alius, nisi in hunc insigne iam documentum mortalibus dedero*, Liv., I, 28, 6. *Quae si alia falsa, alia vera (sunt), qua nota internoscantur, scire sane velim*, Cic., Div., II, 62, 128. *Ego quidem tibi non sim auctor, si Pompeius Italiam relinquit, te quoque profugere*, Cic., Att., IX, 10, 5. *Si quid habes certius, velim scire*, Cic., Att., IV, 10, 1. *Mirer, si vana nostra, patres conscripti, auctoritas ad plebem est?* Liv., III, 21, 4.

2. The *Imperative Subjunctive*, and the *Imperative Mood*.

Ex.—*Quam (rationem), nisi quid dicis, praetermittamus*, Cic., Tusc., I, 17, 39. *Causam investigato in re nova, si poteris*, Cic., Div., II, 28, 60. *Perfice, si potes, ut ne moriendum quidem esse miserum putem*, Cic., Tusc., I, 8, 15. *Si dormis, expergiscere : si stas, ingredere : si ingrederis, curre : si curris, advola*, Cic., Att., II, 23, 3. *Si sciens fallo, tum me, Iuppiter, pessimo leto afficias*, Liv., XXII, 53, 11. *Si ego iniuste illas res dedier mihi exposco, tum patriae compotem me numquam siris (= siveris) esse*, Liv., I, 32, 7. *Si me audietis, solem alterum ne metueritis*, Cic., Rep., I, 19, 32. *Si meis incommodis laetabantur, urbis tamen periculo commoverentur*, Cic., Sest., XXIV, 54.

3. Subjunctive in the *Potential-Rhetorical Question*, and in a *Question of Deliberation, Doubt, or Embarrassment*.

Ex.—*Si nulla (nota) est, quid istos interpretes audiamus?* Cic., Div., II, 62, 128. *Quid igitur timeam, si aut non miser post mortem aut beatus etiam futurus sum?* Cic., Sen., XIX, 67. *Si nocere, inquit, mihi possum, quare non et beneficium mihi dare possim?* *Praeterea quae, si in alium contulissem, beneficia vocarentur, quare, si in me contuli, non sint?* Sen., Ben., V, 7, 3.

361. The Indefinite Second Person translated *you* (= *one* or *we*) regularly requires the Subjunctive, as a distinct affirmation cannot properly be made of an indefinite subject. Hence we find the Subjunctive with such a subject either in the *Protasis* or *Apodosis*, or in both:

Ex.—*Memoria minuitur. Credo, nisi eam exerceas*, Cic., Sen., VII, 21. (*Se-nectus*) *plena est voluptatis, si illa scias uti*, Sen., Ep., I, 12, 4. *Nulla est excusatio peccati, si amici causa peccaveris. Difficile est amicitiam manere, si a virtute defeceris*, Cic., Am., XI, 37. *Feras bestias, rabie concitatas, si ad catulos earum ire pergas, ad opem suis ferendam avertas*, Liv., XXVI, 13, 12.

**Aequabilitatem vitae conservare non possis, si aliorum naturam imitans omittas tuam, Cic., Off., I, 31, 111.**

**362.** The Apodosis of a Logical Conditional Sentence may be interrogative.

**Ex.—Quid mihi prodest, si fatum est? quid prodest, si deus rector est? quid prodest, si casus imperat? Sen., Ep., II, 4, 4.**

### The General or Iterative Conditional Sentence.

**363.** The Mood is regularly the Indicative in the *Protasis* and *Apodosis*, while, particularly in Late Latin, the Subjunctive is more usual, in fact the rule, in the *Protasis*. This association of mood, beyond doubt, must be accepted as a distinct form of the Conditional sentence. It is used in describing *habits, customs*, and the general *effect of actions*, in the different spheres of time. While the *Indicative* is not excluded in the *Protasis*, and is more frequent in *classical* Latin than the Subjunctive, the use of the Subjunctive in the *Protasis* is the fact which distinguishes the sentences from other forms of the Conditional sentence. The Tenses are, in the *Present* time, the *Present* and *Present* when the actions are *coincident*, the *Perfect* and *Present* when one action distinctly precedes, as a completed action, the other; in the *Past Time* the *Imperfect* and *Imperfect* when the actions are coincident, the *Pluperfect* and *Imperfect*, less frequently the *Aorist*, when one action is completed and precedes the other; in the *Future Time* the *Future First* and *Future First* when the actions are coincident, and the *Future Exactum* and *Future First* when one action is completed and precedes the other. The Particle *si*, in this connection, may be translated as before stated, *if ever*. This form of the Conditional sentence in the *Future* is rare.

**Ex.—Si hastati profigare hostem non possent, pede presso eos retro cedentes in intervalla ordinum principes recipiebant. Si apud principes quoque haud satis prospere esset pugnatum, a prima acie ad triarios sensim referebantur. Si ordines turbati non essent, concurrendum sibi esse sciebat, Liv., VIII, 8, 9, 11, 15. Sed id, etiam si haesisset in scuto nec penetrasset in corpus, pavorem faciebat, Liv., XXI, 8, 12. Lex morte multabat, si quis imperium diutius retinisset, quam, etc., Nep., Ep., 7. Erat contra maiestatem senatus, si ferreis (anulis) praetorius uteretur, Plin. Min., VIII, 6, 4. In audiendi officio perit gratia, si repositur, Plin. Min., I, 13, 6. Si bene aliquis provinciam rexerit; huic dignitas offertur, Plin. Min., Pan., 70. Quem (locum) si qui vitare voluerit, sex milium circuitu in oppidum pervenit, Caes., B. Civ., II, 24. Si nubes ut vellera lanæ spargentur multae ab oriente, aquam in triduum prae-sagient. Si cacumina (montium) pura flent, disserenabit, Plin. Mai., XVIII,**

356. **Si ferventia os intus exusserint, lacte canino statim sanabuntur**, Plin. Mai., XXX, 27. **Viperam mulier praegnas si transcenderit, abortum faciet**, Plin. Mai., XXX, 128. **Si quis (ova) surripiat, pariunt, donec rumpantur**, Plin. Mai., X, 162. **Cancrorum etiam odore, si quis iuxta coquat, exanimantur**, Plin. Mai., XI, 62. **Si quis a domino prehenderetur, consensu militum eripiebatur**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 110. Cf. Plin. Mai., XIII, 123 (**si teratur**); XII, 126 (**si uratur**); XVI, 54 (**si decoquatur**); XVII, 87 (**si seratur**); XVII, 117 (**si inserantur**); XVIII, 66 (**si obstet**); XX, 112 (**si aegrotent**); XX, 154 (**si bibendae sint**); XXII, 59 (**si adiciatur**); XI, 64 (**tunc quoque, ni subveniatur, fame moriuntur**); XIX, 176 (**et necatur cuminum a limodoro, nisi repurgetur**); XVI, 109 (**si fuerint**, Perfect); XVII, 235 (**si quis detraxerit**, Perfect); XX, 51 (**si intumuerint**); XXII, 153 (**si quis biberit**); XXIV, 41, (**si laeserit**); XXVI, 125, (**si fecerint**); XXVII, 138 (**si effluerint**); XXVIII, 34 (**si terram non attigerit**); XXVIII, 225 (**si pepererint**); XXI, 88 (**si momorderit**); XXIX, 134 (**si intraverit**); XVI, 169 (**si extendisset** + Imperfect Indicative in Apodosis); XXIX, 29 (**si liberet** + Imperfect Indicative); Plin. Min., VII, 17, 11 (**si arbitraretur** + Imperfect Indicative).

### The Ideal Or Subjunctive Conditional Sentence.

364. In the Ideal or Subjunctive Conditional Sentence, when regularly formed, the Subjunctive Mood is used in the Protasis and Apodosis. The Tenses are the Present and Perfect, the Time of the actions is Future; hence, the Present and Perfect are Future Tenses of the Subjunctive. The Present represents a progressive action or action stated aoristically in the Future; the Perfect represents the action as completed in the Future. As compared with the Future action, stated by the form of the Present Tense, the action of the Perfect is *antedeently completed* in the Future. Here the Future is the *indefinite Future* characteristic of the Subjunctive. To express this indefinite Future the translation of the Tenses is to be carefully noted. The Present Tense is translated *were to* or *should* in the Protasis, and *would* in the Apodosis; the Perfect Tense is translated, *should have*, *should prove to (have)*, *should turn out to (have)*, *should come to*, in the Protasis, and *would have* in the Apodosis. While these translations exactly express the temporal relations and character of the actions, we may often best translate the Perfect Subjunctive in the Protasis by *should* (just as the Present) and leave its essential, logical relation to the action of the Apodosis to be decided by the latter and general sense of the sentence. The forms in which the sentence occurs are presented in the following order, both in the independent forms and *Oratio Obliqua*:



1. <b>Si hoc dicas, erres.</b> = <i>If you were to (should) say this, you would err.</i>	Dicit te,	1. <b>Si hoc dicas, erraturum esse.</b>
2. <b>Si hoc dixeris, erres.</b> = <i>If you should have said, should prove to have said, should turn out to have said, should come to say (should say) this, you would err.</i>		2. <b>Si hoc dixeris, erraturum esse.</b>
		3. <b>Si hoc dixeris, erraturum esse, or, fore (futurum esse) ut erraveris.</b>
		4. <b>Si hoc dicas, erraturum esse, or, fore (futurum esse) ut erraveris.</b>
3. <b>Si hoc dixeris, erraveris.</b> = <i>If you should have said, should prove to have said, etc., you would err (= would have erred, etc.).</i>	Dixit te,	1. <b>Si hoc diceris, erraturum esse.</b>
4. <b>Si hoc dicas, erraveris rare.</b> = <i>If you should say, were to say this, you would have erred, prove to have erred, etc.</i>		2. <b>Si hoc dixisses, erraturum esse.</b>
		3. <b>Si hoc dixisses, erraturum esse, or, fore (futurum esse) ut dixisses.</b>
		4. <b>Si hoc diceris, erraturum esse, or, fore (futurum esse) ut dixisses.</b>

Ex.—**Dies deficiat, si velim numerare quibus bonis male evenerit**, Cic., N. Deor., III, 32, 81. **Si a corona relictus sim, non queam dicere**, Cic., Brut., LI, 192. **Si hoc dicam, tibi ipse levior videar esse**, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 3. **Si abs te summa officia desiderem, mirum nemini videri debeat**, Cic., Fam., V, 5, 2. **Si quid ob eam causam alteri detraxeris, non sit reprehendendum**, Cic., Off., III, 6, 30. **Si significatio ulla intercesserit, clarius, quam deceat aut expediat, fiat**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 6, 2. **Si cui naviganti deus qui dixerit... omnem omittat timorem**, Cic., Tusc., II, 27, 67. **Quo mihi acciderit optatius, si in hac sententia fueris**, Cic., Fam., V, 12, 6. **Si quid ab homine ad nullam partem utili utilitatis tuae causa detraxeris, inhumane feceris**, Cic., Off., III, 6, 30. **Si quis rem, quam e villa mea surripuit, in domo mea ponat, ille furtum fecerit, ego nihil perdidirim**, Sen., Const. Sap., VII, 3. **Si tempus in studia conferas, quod subduxeris officiis, non deserueris nec munus detractaveris**, Sen., Tranq. An., III, 5. **Si cui permittat deus terrena formare et dare gentibus mores, aliud probaverit, quam quod, etc.**, Sen., Ep., XIV, 2, 37.

REM 1. The Protasis may be represented by the Participle or Ablative Absolute.

Ex.—**Sed ea sumitis, quibus concessis (= quae si concessa sint), nihilo magis efficiatur, quod velitis**, Cic., Div., II, 50, 104.

REM. 2. The Apodosis may be Potential Subjunctive and Interrogative.

Ex.—**Num quis satis constare sibi videatur, si mulam calcibus repetat et canem morsu?** Sen., Ira., III, 27, 1. **Si quis pecuniam creditam solvisse se moleste ferat, nonne iniustus vir habeatur?** Sen., Ad. Pol., Cons., X, 5. **Si quis despoliatus amissa unica tunica complorare se malit quam circumspicere quomodo frigus effugiat, nonne tibi videatur stultissimus?** Sen., Ep., VII, 1, 11.

**REM. 3.** The Periphrastic Present Subjunctive to be regularly translated *would likely*, etc. may represent either the Protasis or Apodosis.

**Ex.**—*Pro patria quis bonus dubitet mortem oppetere, si ei profuturus sit?* Off., I, 17, 57.

**365.** The Imperfect Subjunctive, except in the case of unreality, does not present an action in the Present Time. It does occur, however, as the Potential of the Past, in the Protasis or Apodosis, or in both. Again, it presents in the Protasis or Apodosis, or in both, an unreal, incomplete or continuing action in the Past (to be more fully considered later).

**Ex.**—*Quem concursum in oppido factum putatis? Qui (= si quis) videret, urbem captam diceret* (Potential), Cic., Verr., IV, 23, 52. *Putares omnes illius esse liberos* (Protasis omitted), Sen., Mort. Cl., VI, 2. *Haec illius severitas acerba videretur, nisi multis condimentis humanitatis leniretur*, Cic., Q. Fr., I, 1, 21.

**REM.** The association of the Imperfect Subjunctive in both the Protasis and Apodosis, and of the Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Protasis and Imperfect Subjunctive in the Apodosis, presents a form of the Iterative Conditional Sentence which rarely occurs, but which should be carefully noted. The peculiarity consists in the use of the Subjunctive in the Apodosis. If, however, indefinite repetition justifies the use of the Subjunctive in the Protasis, the same reason would allow the Subjunctive in the Apodosis, while the Indicative is, as has been stated (cf. 363), the rule and the usage. In such cases the Subjunctive in the Apodosis can be explained, satisfactorily, only on the theory of indefinite repetition of the action.

**Ex.**—*Caesar, qui (Concessive) cogere posset, si (= if ever) peteret per amicitiam patris atque suam, non quicquam proficeret: si (= if ever) collibuisset, ab ovo usque ad mala citaret: Io Bacchae! Hor., Sat., I, 3, 5. Cf. Pl., Bacch., 430, Quom librum legeres, si unam peccauisses syllabam, fieret corium maculosum. Cf. Mil., 720, Si ei forte fuisset febris, censerem emori: (si) cecidisset ebrius metuerem ne defregisset crura. Plin. Mai., XXXIV, 119, Si duae partes chalcitidis tertia cadmeae temperentur, acrius hoc idem fiat* (observe Present Tenses).

**366.** An Indicative Apodosis is associated with a Subjunctive Protasis when the action in the Apodosis is presented as a *fact*, and the action in the Protasis is presented as a *conception* in the Future. Translate the Tense in the Apodosis regularly, as an Indicative Tense, and the Tense in the Protasis, as in the Ideal Conditional.

Ex.—**Transire Tiberim, patres, et intrare, si possim** (= *should I be able*) **castra hostium volo** (= *I wish*), Liv., II, 12, 5. **Si comparer** (= *if I should be compared*) **illi, sum desidiosissimus**, Plin. Min., III, 5, 19. **Sententia omnium si perrogetur** (= *if should be asked*) **una erit**, Sen., Ep., XVII, 2, 13. **Qui (rivi) si colligantur, augebunt illud quod lacus dederit**, Plin. Min., Ad. Trai., 61, 3.

This form of the Conditional Sentence is not to be confounded with the Iterative or General Conditional.

(a) Nearly related to the preceding is the frequent recurrence of the Indicative (particularly with the negative) of the potential verbs, *posse, velle, debere*, etc. (*non possum*, etc.), in the Apodosis, with the Subjunctive (particularly when negative), in the Protasis (*nisi, si non* + the Subjunctive). Such verbs, on account of their potential sense, cannot be restricted to the same rules, as to the use of Mood, as other verbs. Their potential force seems, in the Roman mind, to have justified the Indicative where we look for the Subjunctive. It is proper, however, to translate the Indicative where it occurs, regularly, as the Indicative and not as the Ideal Subjunctive. Hence, *non possum* = *I am not able*, and not *I would not be able*.

Ex.—**Neque amicitiam tueri possumus** (= *are we able*), **nisi aequae amicos et nosmet ipsos diligamus**, Cic., Fin., I, 20, 67. **Quae lex, quod foedus aut pactio non infirmari ac convelli potest, si ad verba rem deflectere velimus?** Cic., Caec., XVIII, 51. **Nec iustitia nec amicitia esse omnino poterunt, nisi ipsae per se expetantur**, Cic., Fin., III, 21, 70.

**367.** The Time of the Ideal Conditional is Future. Hence, in *Oratio Obliqua* (or the Accusative with the Infinitive), with the Protasis in the Subjunctive, or, when the Apodosis is dependently stated in the Subjunctive (as with *ut*, etc.), the context and general sense of the sentence can alone decide whether the independent form of the sentence should be Logical (Future First Indicative with Future First Indicative) or Ideal.

Si hoc dicas, errabis.	Dicit te,	Si hoc dicas, erratu- rum esse.	Sequitur ut,	{ Si hoc dicas, erras. O. O. conception.
Si hoc dicas, erres.		Si hoc dicas, erratu- rum esse.		Si hoc dicas, erras.

So, too, *si* and Future Perfect Indicative (Protasis) with the Future First Indicative (Apodosis) (= Logical Conditional) as compared with *si* and Perfect Subjunctive (Protasis), and Present Subjunctive (Apodosis) (Ideal Conditional).

Si hoc dixe- ris, errabis.	Dicit te,	Si hoc dixeris, er- raturum esse.	Sequitur ut,	{ Si hoc dixeris, erres. O. O. conception.
Si hoc dixe- ris, erres.		Si hoc dixeris, er- raturum esse.		Si hoc dixeris, erres.

**Ex.—Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittatur, libenter sese recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam,** Caes., B. G., I, 41 (compare *si remittatur, recusabo* with *si remittatur, recusem*). **Nega me ei iratum fore, si ad mea comitia non venerit,** Cic., Att., I, 1, 2 (compare *iratus ero. . . ei non venerit* with *iratus sim. . . si non venerit*). (*Dicit*), **si paeniteat, tutum receptum ad expertam clementiam fore,** Liv., III, 2, 5. **Epicurus videbat, si atomi ferrentur in locum inferiorem suo pte pondere, nihil fore in nostra potestate quod,** etc., Cic., N. Deor., I, 25, 69. Cf. **Patriciorum clientes (sentiant) se, si perlata lex sit, maiore quam venerint silentio abituros,** Liv., III, 16, 5. Cf. **Sequitur ut patriciorum clientes, si perlata lex sit. . . abeant.**

### The Unreal Conditional.

368. The Unreal Conditional Sentence is constructed as follows:

1. In the Protasis is presented the negation of a *progressive* action (affirmative or negative) in the Present Time; in the Apodosis is presented the negation of a *progressive* action (affirmative or negative) in the Present Time. In this sentence the Imperfect Subjunctive is used in both the Protasis and Apodosis. If the actions as presented are *positive*, the negative is the fact. If the actions as presented are negative, the positive is the fact. Hence, in either case, the Present Indicative, either positive or negative, is the *fact stated* from the standpoint of the Imperfect Subjunctive. Again, as the opposite of the action of the Imperfect Subjunctive is the fact in Present Time, we may say that the Imperfect Subjunctive denies the action of the Present Tense, Indicative, or that the Time for the occurrence of a Present action has passed.

**Ex.—Si scirem, dicerem** (= *if I knew, I would say* = *non scio, non dico*). **Nisi scirem, non dicerem** (= *if I did not know, I would not say* = *scio, dico*). **Sapientia non expeteretur** (= *wisdom were not sought after* = *expetitur* (*it is sought after*)), **si nihil efficeret** (= *if it effected nothing* = *aliquid efficit* (= *it effects something*)). **Quae multo plura evenirent, si ad quietem integri iremus,** Cic., Div., I, 29, 60. **Disertus esse possem si contra ista dicerem,** Cic., Tusc., I, 6, 10. **In acie stares nisi cura te sepulturae eius moraretur,** Curt., IV, 43 (= *non stas. . . cura moratur*). **Ego pecuniam quam gloriam mallet, si Parmenio essem,** Curt., IV., 44. **Si nihil esset aliud, nihil esset homine deformius,** Cic., Tusc., II, 21, 47.

We should bear in mind that the Imperfect Subjunctive, in the relation of Unreal Present, denies the Present Indicative.

2. In the Protasis is presented the negation of a completed action (affirmative or negative) in the Past Time; in the Apodosis is presented the negation of a completed action in the Past Time. In this sentence the Pluperfect Subjunctive is used in both the Protasis and

Apodosis. The completed action denied is the Aorist (not the Pluperfect) Indicative, that is, the Time for the occurrence or realization of an Aoristic action had passed.

Ex.—*Si affuisset, eum vidissem* (= *If he had been present, I would have seen him* = *non affuit, non vidi*). *Nisi affuisset, eum non vidissem* (= *unless he had been present, I would not have seen him* = *affuit, vidi*). *Si voluisset, paruissem*, Cic., Am., XI, 37. *Pax impetrata foret, si praestare (impensam) Sabini in animum induxissent*, Liv., II, 18, 11. *Nec temperatum manibus foret, ni consules intervenissent*, Liv., II, 23, 10. *Nisi tu (Tarentum) amisisses, numquam recepissem*, Cic., Sen., IV, 11. *Olim fugissemus ex Asia, si nos fabulae debellare potuissent*, Curt., IX, 8.

3. In this kind of unreal representation the Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Protasis (Unreal Past) with the Imperfect Subjunctive (Unreal Present) in the Apodosis is an association of Tenses quite common and entirely logical.

Ex.—*Si affuisset, tibi dicerem* (= *if he had been present, I would tell you* = *non affuit, non dico*). *Nisi affuisset, non dicerem* (= *if he had not been present, I would not say it* = *affuit, dico*). *Hac continentia animi si ad ultimum vitae perseverare potuisset, feliciorem fuisse crederem*, Curt., III, 32. *Quattuor milia librorum Didymus scripsit: misererer, si tam multa supervacua legisset*, Sen., Ep., XIII, 3, 37. *Quae numquam timeretis, nisi fama iussisset*, Sen., Ep., XIV, 3, 20. *Quarum rerum memoria si cum illo cecidisset, desiderium amantissimi viri ferre nullo modo possem*, Cic., Am., XXVII, 104. *Ex eo ipso plurimae curae metusque nascuntur: qui ipsi per se minus valerent et magis contemnerentur, nisi somniorum patrocinium philosophi suscepissent*, Cic., Div., II, 72, 150.

4. *Si* with the Imperfect Subjunctive (as an Unreal Present) associated with the Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Apodosis (Unreal Past), is an association of Tenses impossible and illogical. It can only occur when the Imperfect Subjunctive in the Protasis applies to and embraces the Time of the Apodosis (the Past) as well as the Present, or when the statement made by it is true of the Present and Past.

Ex.—*Consilium, ratio, sententia nisi essent* (= *sunt et erant*) *in senibus, non summum consilium maiores nostri appellassent senatum*, Cic., Sen., VI, 19. *Quod non fecissent, si nihil ad eos pertinere arbitrarentur*, Cic., Am., IV, 13. *Nisi ego cum tabernariis et aquariis pugnarem, veteranus civitatem occupasset*, Cic., Fam., VIII, 6, 4. *A quibus, si quid esset laetius, certior factus essem*, Cic., Att., XI, 14, 2. *Numquam huc venissent nisi ad res alias pestíferas aditus sibi compararent*, Cic., Att., II, 17, 1.

(a) The Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence may be interrogative.

Ex.—*Quid tu fecisses, si te Tarentum misissem?* Cic., Fam., VII, 12, 1. *Huius ego temeritati si non restitissem, quis esset qui me in consulatu non casu*

*potius existimaret quam consilio fortem fuisse?* Cic., Fam., V, 2, 8. *Quo te modo accepissem, nisi iratus essem?* Cic., Tusc., IV, 36, 78.

(b) To be observed is the association of the Present Subjunctive in the Protasis with the Present Subjunctive in the Apodosis to express, in effect, unreal relations in the Present Time. The Subjunctive Present in a Conditional Sentence expresses an action incomplete or Aoristic in an indefinite Future. If this conception of the Time of the action is maintained, then the action as regards the Present Time is *not occurring* and essentially *unreal*. The unreality of the action, then, in the Present is a direct result of the Future, which is insisted upon. In other words, the Future Time is here used by the Speaker or Writer (as he may use it at his discretion) as the negation of the action in the Present. He may restrict the conception of the action to the Future. In doing this it necessarily follows that the action is one of unreality in the Present. This peculiar use of the Present Subjunctive to state an Unreal Present obtains rarely in the classical Latin, is quite usual in the early Latin, and occurs everywhere in the Conditional Sentence of Comparison.

Ex.—*Si exsistat hodie ab inferis Lycurgus, gaudeat*, Liv., XXXIX, 37, 3 (the actions are future, but when considered in connection with the Present they are unreal). *Haec si tecum patria loquatur, nonne impetrare debeat?* Cic., Cat., I, 8, 19. *Non est intus, quem ego volo. Qui scis? Scio edepol facile. Nam odore nasum sentiat, si intus sit*, Pl., Mil. G., 1249. *Alium alio pacto propter amorem ni sciam fecisse multa nequiter, uerear magis me amoris causa hoc ornatu incedere*, Pl., Mil. G., 1277. *Pol ego te, si audeam, meum patrem nomen*, Pl., Capt., 237. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*, Ter., And., 310.

(c) To be noted is the rare occurrence of the Present Subjunctive in the Apodosis with an Unreal Present (Imperfect Subjunctive) and an Unreal Past (Pluperfect Subjunctive) in the Protasis.

Ex.—*Et si ita tibi sententia esset, tibi seruire mauelim*, Pl., Mil. G., 1355. *Vocem ego te ad me ad cenam, frater tuus ni dixisset mihi te apud se cenaturum esse hodie*, Pl., Stich., 512. Cf. (Cat., 6), *Flavi, delicias tuas Catullo, ni sint illepidae atque inelegantes, velles dicere nec tacere posses*.

REM. 1. The explanation of the Imperfect Subjunctive, apart from statements above made, to express an unreal relation in the Present may be given as follows: The negation of a Present action is a Past action; of a Present *progressive* action is a Past *progressive* action (= an Imperfect action). Hence, in an unreal relation, we have the Imperfect Tense presenting, when positively stated, an action which is *not occurring*; when negatively stated, an action which is *occurring*.

The Subjunctive Mood is used because of the hypothetical conception of the action and its indefinite statement. The definite statement of an action positive or negative must be made by the Indicative. The Indicative Tense relation denied is the Present.

REM. 2. The Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Conditional Sentence denotes an unreal action in the Past. In fact, it is the negation of a definite Past action. The time for the realization of this had passed. The Indicative Tense relation denied is the Aorist. The Subjunctive Mood is used because of the hypothetical conception of the action and its indefinite affirmation. The definite statement of an action positive or negative must be made by the Indicative.

REM. 3. When an action is conceived in the indefinite Future and limited thereto, it logically follows that *it is not true and is not occurring* in the Present, and that this fact may be emphasized by the Speaker or Writer. Hence, the Present Subjunctive in the Ideal Conditional may be used as the negation of an action in the Present (= the Present Indicative).

369. The Periphrastic Imperfect (*-rus esset*) and Pluperfect (*-rus fuisset*) cannot be accepted as the substitutes and exact equivalents of the simple Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Unreal Conditional Sentences. They are not elsewhere so interpreted, and there is no reason why they should be thus regarded in the Unreal Conditional. When they occur in the Protasis or Apodosis of such a Conditional sentence the sense of the periphrastic should be retained. Hence:

**Si venturus esset, adesset.**

= If he were going to come, if he intended to come, he were present.

**Si venturus fuisset, affuisset.**

= If he had intended to come, he would have been present.

Ex.—**Quem si vicisset, habiturus esset impunitatem**, Cic., Mil., XXXI, 84 (here **habiturus esset** is not the substitute of **haberet**; the matter denied is not **habet** (= **non habet**), but **habiturus est**). **Si obtemperasset auspiciis, idem eventurus fuisset** (not the exact equivalent of **evenisset**), Cic., Div., II, 8, 21. **Si Siciliam tantum ac Sardiniam parentibus nostris ereptas nostra virtute recuperaturi essemus, satis ampla pretia essent**, Liv., XXI, 43, 6. **C. Caesar humanum sanguinem non aliter fluere in conspectu suo lubet, quam si ore excepturus esset**, Sen., Ben., IV, 31, 2. **Non viveret, si foret sine homine victurus**, Sen., Ep., I, 9, 17. **Vos hominibus sceleratissimis ignoscere aequo animo paterer, ni misericordia in perniciem casura esset**, Sall., Jug., 31.

370. The Imperfect Subjunctive occurs in either the Protasis or Apodosis, or in both, of the Unreal Conditional Sentence to denote oppo-

sition to an incomplete or continuing action in the Past. The Imperfect Subjunctive in this connection should not be accepted as the full equivalent of the Pluperfect Subjunctive. The Imperfect Tense cannot be regarded as the substitute of the Pluperfect. As the Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Unreal Conditional is the negation of the Aorist Indicative, and the Imperfect Subjunctive in the unreal Present relation denies the Present Indicative, so the Imperfect Subjunctive in a Past Unreal Condition denies the *Imperfect Indicative*, not the Aorist Indicative.

Ex.—Non iam Troicis temporibus tantum laudis in dicendo Ulixi tribuisset Homerus et Nestori, nisi iam tum esset honos eloquentiae, Cic., Brut., X, 40 (here *nisi esset* = *erat*, not *fuit*). Etiamne (fecisses), si te in Capotolium faces ferre vellet? Cic., Am., XI, 37. Numne, si Coriolanus haberet amicos, ferre contra patriam arma illi cum Coriolano debuerunt? Cic., Am., XI, 36. Quas (caerimonias) maximis ingeniis praediti nec tanta cura coluissent, nec violatas tam inexpressibilibus relligione sanxissent, nisi haereret in eorum mentibus mortem non interitum esse, Cic., Tusc., I, 12, 27. Aberat omnis dolor qui si adesset (Epicurus) nec molliter ferret et tamen medicis plus quam philosophis uteretur, Cic., Fin., II, 20, 64. Si ex ea familia legi dictatorem vellent, patrem M. Valerium legissent, Liv., II, 18, 7. Violatus esset tribunus ni concursus hominum in forum ex tota urbe fieret, Liv., II, 56, 14. Nec sustinuissent primum impetum Romanorum, ni potentior alius metus insidens pectoribus a fuga retineret, Liv., X, 41, 2.

In some cases the Imperfect Subjunctive in an unreal Past relation is not readily distinguished from an unreal Present relation. The context must decide the Time.

(a) It occurs quite often that the Protasis is characterized by the *concessive* sense, responded to, as a Rule, by *tamen* in the Apodosis. In such a sentence the action in the Apodosis is not denied; but the idea is that the action in the Apodosis *is the fact*, or *is not the fact* (when defined by a negation) and would still hold or not hold if the action of the Protasis were true. Very frequent with Imperfect Subjunctive in the Apodosis.

Ex.—Cuius rei si exemplum non haberemus, tamen libertatis causa institui et prodi posteris pulcherrimum iudicarem (= *I judge and would judge*), Caes., B. G., VII, 77. Quae si exsequi nequirem, tamen me lectulus meus oblectaret ea ipsa cogitantem, Cic., Sen., XI, 38. Qui si perniciosum sciret esse loqui de hac re, vix tamen se contineret, Cic., Fam., VIII, 6, 2. Si illis plane orbatus essem, magnum tamen afferret mihi aetas ipsa solacium, Cic., Am., XXVII, 104. Ac si dubium fuisset forte casuque rectores terris an aliquo numine darentur, principem tamen nostrum liqueret divinitus constitutum, Plin. Min., Pan., 1. Alius labores, si non continuo se desidia ac voluptati dedisset, otio tamen et quiete recreasset, Plin. Min., Pan., 79.



**371.** With an Unreal Present in the Protasis (*si* with the Imperfect Subjunctive) is occasionally associated, in the Apodosis, the Present Indicative, less frequently the Perfect Indicative, in the statement of a fact. Translate regularly the Protasis and Apodosis.

Ex.—*Si copiae convenirent, quantum iis committendum sit, qui inter se ne noti quidem sunt, contra veteranas legiones, non te praeterit, Cic., Att., VIII, 12, D, 2. Sed me vera pro gratis loqui, etsi meum ingenium non moneret, necessitas cogit, Liv., III, 68, 9. Quidam si possent, ne sibi quidem credituri, interius premunt omne secretum, Sen., Ep., I, 3, 4. Quanto plus spei ostenditis, si vivere placeret, tanto pulchrior mors erit, Tac., Hist., II, 47. Satis longa vita data est, si tota bene collocaretur, Sen., Brev. Vit., I, 3.*

**372.** The Potential of the Past (Imperfect Subjunctive) may present an unreal relation in the Past. The idea of unreality is the logical outcome of the potentiality.

Ex.—*Si quis urbem videret, captam videret. Si urbem videres, captam diceres* (= *if you could have seen, you could (might) have said, etc.*).

**373.** The Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence is sometimes to be supplied from the context. (Cf. 357, a, b, c.)

Ex.—*Ita digreditur Demetrius cum infestioribus, quam si solus iret, praesidiis, Liv., XL, 21, 11 (= quam digrederetur si iret). Nulla maior res mihi occurrebat cogitanti, quam (occurreret) si optimarum artium vias traderem meis civibus, Cic., Div., I, 1, 1. Admiraris amentiam; immo si actionem stultissimasque de se, nefarias de patre confessiones audisses, Cic., Fam., VIII, 8, 2 (= immo admirareris). Utinam minus vitae cupidi fuissetus! certe nihil aut non multum in vita mali vidissemus, Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 1. Contentus est, ut si picturam aliquam vidisset, Tac., Or., 10. Faenus agitare et in usuras extendere, ignotum: ideoque magis servatur quam si vetitum esset, Tac., Germ., 26.*

**374.** The Protasis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence is represented by *sine* with the Ablative, by an expression, etc. (Cf. 352, 6.) The exact form of the Protasis thus represented is clearly suggested by the context.

Ex.—*Ne in sphaera quidem eosdem motus Archimedes sine divino ingenio (= nisi divinum ingenium habuisset) potuisset imitari, Cic., Tus., I, 25, 63. Numquam tu sine iustissima causa tam longe a tot tuis abesse voluisses, Cic., Att., IV, 15, 2 (= nisi causa iustissima fuisset). A victore Dareo plura mater non impetrasset, Curt., V, 11. Pro imperio vestro sanguinem fundunt qui superbe habiti rebellassent, Curt., VIII, 27. Testis sine lrejurando non valeret, Sen., Ira., II, 29, 3. Omnibus iis nocet quibus melior factus prodesse potuisset, Sen., Ser., De Otio, III (30), 5. Ignosce, non mehercule scivi hoc te desiderare, alioquin ultro obtulissem, Sen., Ben., V, 22, 1. Vera aestimatione fides oraculi vana ei videri potuisset, Curt., IV, 32. Britannia Galliaque et Hispania*

**auxilia Vitellius acciverat, immensam belli luem, ni Antonius festinato proello victoriam praecepisset, Tac., Hist., III, 15.**

**375.** With any of the forms of the Conditional sentence there occasionally occur two Protases with the same Apodosis.

**Ex.—***Quare, si quid amice de Romanis cogitabis, non imprudenter feceris, si me celaris, Nep., Han., 2. Quod si rectum statuerimus, perfecta quidem sapientia simus, si nihil habeat res vitii, Cic., Am., XI, 38. Si hoc Sempromius diceret, nec viros nec Romanos vos ducerem, si nemo tantae virtutis exstisset comes, Liv., XXII, 60, 12.*

**376.** To be carefully noted is the adjective Predicate, translated as an unreal Apodosis, but consisting of a neuter adjective with *est*. The relation of the Protasis is generally furnished by the Infinitive. The adjectives most frequently used are *longum*, *supervacuum*, *immensum*, *superbum* (*est*). Translated, *it were tedious* (*longum est*) etc. The Protasis when fully expressed is decided by the regular rules for the construction of the same.

**Ex.—***Quid inter nostram et hanc finitionem intersit, exsequi longum est, Sen., Ira., I, 3, 3. Enumerare omnes fatorum vias longum est, Sen., Ep., XIV, 3, 12. Longum est altius repetere, Plin. Min., II, 6, 1. Longum est omnia recensere, Plin. Min., IX, 13, 8. Longum est enumerare proelia, Nep., Han., 5. Supervacuum est commemorare plures, qui, etc., Sen., Brev. Vit., VI, 3. Supervacuum est, in quod imus, impelli, Sen., Ben., IV, 17, 1. Consilium diutius exsequi supervacuum est, Curt., VII, 16. De timore supervacaneum est dissuadere, Sal., Cat., 51. Supervacaneum est pro potentia paucorum pugnare, Sal., Cat., 58. Immensum est, si velim singula referre, Sen., Const. Sap., XVIII, 1. Superbum id quidem est, sed, nisi quid necesse erit, malo non roges, Cic., Tusc., I, 8, 17.*

**The Unreal Conditional Sentence Dependent Upon a Verb of Saying, Thinking, etc., and in Oratio Obliqua.**

**377.** When an Unreal Conditional Sentence is stated as dependent upon a verb of Saying, Thinking, etc., the Protasis is unchanged.

1. The Apodosis in the Active Voice of the Present Unreal Conditional Sentence (*si* with the Imperfect Subjunctive with the Imperfect Subjunctive Active in the Apodosis) becomes *-rum* (*-ros*) *fuisse* (rarely *-rum* (*-ros*) *esse*).

(a) The Time of the Conditional Sentence is Present (Time of the Speaker) and the governing verb is the Present Tense.

**Ex.—***Si hoc crederes, errares. Dicit te, si hoc crederes, erraturum fuisse. An tu censes ullam anum tam deliram futuram fuisse, ut somniis crederet, nisi*

**ista casu non numquam forte temere concurrerent?** Cic., Div., II, 68, 141. (Independent form—*delira esset, nisi...concurrerent?*) **Censes, si ratio esset in beluis, non suo quasque generi plurimum tributuras fuisse?** Cic., Nat. D., I, 27, 78. **Recitat: Invitum se dicere hominis causa, nec dicturum fuisse, si caritas reipublicae vinceret,** Liv., II, 2, 5. (Independent form—*nec dicerem. ni...vinceret.*) **Utrum censes: Imperiosum illum, si nostra verba audiret, tuamne de se orationem lubentius auditurum fuisse an meam?** Cic., Fin., II, 19, 60. **Si id explanare velles apertiusque diceres nihil eum fecisse nisi voluptatis causa, quomodo eum laturum fuisse existimas?** Cic., Fin., II, 19, 60. **Quid putamus (eum) passurum fuisse, si viveret?** Plin. Min., IV, 22, 6.

(b) The Unreal Present Conditional, when transferred to the Past, becomes an Unreal Past Conditional of the same Time with the governing verb of Saying or Thinking in a Past Tense. It is not antecedent to the Time of the governing verb. In fact it is referred to the Time of the Reporter and is coincident with it. In this case also the Protasis (*si* and the Imperfect Subjunctive) is unchanged, while the Apodosis (Imperfect Subjunctive) becomes *-rum (-ros) fuisse*.

**Ex.—Si hoc crederes errares. Dixit te, si hoc crederes, erraturum fuisse.** **Demonstravi haec Caecilio: simul et illud ostendi, si ipse unus cum illo uno contenderet, me ei satisfacturum fuisse,** Cic., Att., I, 1, 4 (= *Si contenderet—satisfacerem*). **Pater proclamabat, se filiam iure caesam iudicare: ni ita esset, patrio iure in filium animadversurum fuisse,** Liv., I, 26, 9. **Contendebat, se rectius viduam futuram fuisse, quam cum impari iungi,** Liv., I, 46, 7 (= *rectius vidua essem, etc.*). **Si sibi eum, quo digna esset, dii dedissent, domi se propediem visuram regnum fuisse** (= *si...dedissent...viderem*), Liv., I, 46, 8. **Dixit: Haec se fortibus viris dicere. Si qui dissimiles eorum essent, illa fuisse dicturum: pervenisse eo, unde fugere non possent,** Curt., IV, 52. **Patres dixerunt: Profecto, si essent in republica magistratus, nullum futurum fuisse Romae nisi publicum concilium. Unum hercule virum, qualis Ap. Claudius fuerit, momento temporis discussurum illos coetus fuisse,** Liv., II, 28, 4 (= *nullum esset Romae, etc.—discuteret, etc.*).

REM. 1. The form *-rum esse* reproducing, in *Oratio Obliqua*, the Unreal Present Apodosis instead of *-rum fuisse* is rare and the exception.

**Ex.—Titurius clamitabat, neque Eburones, si ille adisset, tanta cum contemptione nostri ad castra venturos esse,** Caes., B. G., V, 29. The text is questioned.

REM. 2. If the verb in the Apodosis of the Unreal Conditional has *no supine*, and hence no form in *-rus*, then the theoretical periphrasis of *-rum (-ros) fuisse*, namely, *futurum fuisse ut* with the Imperfect Subjunctive would substitute it. The absence, however, of this theoretical

periphrasis of the Active form suggests that the Roman writers used instead a Tense of *posse* (or *velle*) with a slight difference in meaning.

Ex.—*Puer, si vellet, disceret. Dicit, puerum, si vellet, discere posse, instead of Dicit, si puer vellet, futurum fuisse ut disceret. So, Dixit, puerum, si vellet, discere posse, instead of Dixit, si puer vellet, futurum fuisse ut disceret.*

2. In case of the Unreal Past Conditional Sentence (*si* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive associated with the Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Apodosis), the Protasis remains unchanged, and the Apodosis, when in the Active Voice, becomes *-rum (-ros) fuisse*.

(a) The Governing Verb of Saying or Thinking is the Present Tense. In this case we have the Unreal Past Conditional dependently stated from the Present (Time of the Speaker).

Ex.—*Si hoc dixisses, errasses. Dicit te, si hoc dixisses, erratum fuisse. Puto, etiamsi Icdius in spelunca non fuisset, saxum tamen illud casurum fuisse, Cic., Fat., III, 6. Dicamus Crassum non fuisse peritum si omni paruisset, Cic., Div., II, 40, 84. Num censes his nuntiis Thalen aut Anaxagoran aut quemquam physicum creditum fuisse? Cic., Div., II, 27, 58. An Cn. Pompeium censes tribus suis consulatibus laetatum fuisse, si sciret se in solitudine Aegyptiorum trucidatum iri? Cic., Div., II, 9, 22. Hoc in talibus viris quid attinet dicere, si contendisset, impetratum non fuisse? Cic., Am., XI, 39. Non immerito quis dixerit rerum naturam melius acturam fuisse nobiscum, si ventos flare vetuisset, Sen., Nat. Q., V, 18, 11. Eloqui timeo, invicti corporis spolia inertissimas manus fuisse infecturas, nisi te interceptum misericors fortuna servasset, Curt., IX, 24.*

(b) When the Unreal Past Conditional Sentence depends upon a Past Tense of a verb of Saying or Thinking, the Protasis is unchanged. The Apodosis is expressed by *-rum (-ros) fuisse*. Such a Conditional Sentence cannot be coincident with the Time of the governing verb.

Ex.—*Si hoc dixisses, errasses. Dixit te, si hoc dixisses, erratum fuisse. Eo tempore omnibus apparuit, nisi ille fuisset, Spartam futuram non fuisse, Nep., Ages., 6. Neque vero non fuit apertum, si ille non fuisset, Agesilaum Asiam Tauro tenus regi fuisse ereptum, Nep., Con., 2. Itaque nemini erat dubium, si affuisset, illam Athenienses calamitatem accepturos non fuisse, Nep., Con., 1. Dixit, qui si (=for if he) cessasset, alium fuisse regnum accepturum, Curt., VII, 24. Respondent (=responderunt) si quis ipsos beneficio experiri maluisset, certaturos fuisse, ne vincerentur officio, Curt., VII, 39. Docebat, si hoc fuisset edictum Ligurem hereditatem aditum non fuisse, Cic., Verr., I, 48, 125. Dixit maiores poenas Graecis Persas daturum fuisse, si ipsum in solio Xerxis conspiciere coacti essent, Curt., V, 23.*

REM. 1. It must be observed that instead of the Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Protasis, the Imperfect Subjunctive occurs in opposi-

tion to continuance in the Past, and that when the Imperfect Subjunctive in this office occurs in the Apodosis it also must be expressed in *Oratio Obliqua* by *-rum (-ros) fuisse*.

REM. 2. It is to be carefully noted that when the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence is presented as a Rhetorical question, this becomes, in *Oratio Obliqua*, *-rum (-ros) fuisse*.

Ex.—*Quem enim pium et bonae mentis non protinus ad regem fuisse cursurum?* Curt., VI, 30.

REM. 3. If the verb in the Apodosis has no supine, and hence no form in *-rus*, then the theoretical periphrasis, *futurum fuisse ut* with the Imperfect Subjunctive would substitute it. The absence, however, of this theoretical periphrasis of the Active form allows the strong presumption that the Roman writers used instead a Tense of *posse* (or *velle*) with a slight difference in meaning.

Ex.—*Puer, si voluisset, didicisset. Dicit puerum, si voluisset, discere potuisse*, instead of *Dicit, si puer voluisset, futurum fuisse ut disceret*. So, *Dixit, puerum, si voluisset, discere potuisse*, instead of *Dixit, si puer voluisset, futurum fuisse ut disceret*.

REM. 4. Of the phrase, *-rum fuisse*, the latter element, *fuisse*, is sometimes omitted. In such a case, however, the relation of unreality is clearly indicated by the Protasis and the context.

Ex.—*Credebant plerique non mansurum (= mansurum fuisse) Tiberio imperium, si lis quoque legionibus cupido novandi fuisset*, Tac., Ann., IV, 18. *Aristander, peritissimus vatum, si extrinsecus cruor fluxisset, Macedonibus id triste futurum (= futurum fuisse), ait*, Curt., IV, 9. *Rex cognita causa pronuntiavit, numquam talia ausuros (= ausuros fuisse), qui ipsum ex India sospitem optassent reverti*, Curt., X, 1.

CAUTION. The association of *-rum (-ros)* alone, with omission of *fuisse*, with *si* and the Pluperfect Subjunctive, presenting unreal Past relations in *Oratio Obliqua*, is not to be confounded with *-rum (-ros)* alone, with the omission of *esse*, which is frequent, denoting a simple Future relation (Future First *-rum (esse)*) and Future Second (*si* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive).

(a) The perfect form, *-rum fuisse*, of the periphrastic Active, and in which the sense of the Periphrastic is retained, is not to be confounded with the same form used in reproducing the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional.

Ex.—*Pollio Asinius existimat (Caesarem commentarios) rescripturum et correcturum fuisse* (= intended to rewrite and to correct), Suet., Caes., 56.

3. Thus far the statement in *Oratio Obliqua*, in the construction of the Accusative and the Infinitive, of the Apodosis, when Active, of an Unreal Conditional Sentence, has been considered. This, it has been seen, is *-rum (-ros) fuisse*. There is no Passive form exactly corresponding with the Active *-rum (-ros) fuisse*. To express, then, the corresponding Passive form a Periphrasis is necessary. Hence:

(a) If the Apodosis is a Passive verb, then, in the case of the Unreal Present Conditional Sentence, the Apodosis is represented by *futurum fuisse ut* and the Imperfect Subjunctive. The Protasis remains the Imperfect Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Si hoc fieret, mihi nuntiaretur. Dicit, si hoc fieret, futurum fuisse ut mihi nuntiaretur* (in Present Time). *Dixit, si hoc fieret, futurum fuisse ut mihi nuntiaretur* (Past Time).

REM. As there is no clear case known of this periphrastic representation of the Passive Apodosis of the Present Unreal Conditional Sentence, the probability is that the Roman writers used the approximate representation of it, namely, the Infinitive *posse* and the Infinitive Passive. But this is not certain.

Ex.—*At mehercule ego arbitrabar posse id populo nostro probari si te ad ius respondendum dedisses*, Cic., Leg., I, 4, 12 (possibly *probaretur si dedisses*).

(b) If the Apodosis is a Passive verb, then, in the case of the Unreal Past Conditional Sentence, the Apodosis is represented by *futurum fuisse ut* and the Imperfect Subjunctive. The same form is used for the Active when the verb has no supine, and, hence, no participial form in *-rus*. The Protasis remains unchanged (Pluperfect Subjunctive or the Imperfect Subjunctive in opposition to a state continuing in the Past).

Ex.—*Nisi eo ipso tempore quidam nuntii de Caesaris victoria per dispositos equites essent allati, existimabant plerique futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 101. *Quorum si aetas potuisset esse longinquior futurum fuisse ut omnibus perfectis artibus omni doctrina hominum vita erudiretur*, Cic., Tusc., III, 28, 69.

REM. The reproduction of the Apodosis, Passive, of the Unreal Past Conditional Sentence by the periphrasis *futurum fuisse ut* and the Imperfect Subjunctive is rare, so much so, in fact, as to authorize the assumption that the Apodosis was generally represented by a Tense of *potuisse* and the Infinitive Passive in an approximate statement of the relation.

Ex.—**Senatus dixit : Si quem similem eius priore anno inter morbum bellumque irati dii tribunum dedissent, non potuisse sisti**, Liv., III, 9, 7.

CAUTION. In *Oratio Obliqua* the Apodosis Passive of the Unreal Present Conditional Sentence is not reproduced by *-tum (-sum) iri*, which expresses the simple Future First Infinitive Passive; nor is the Apodosis Passive of the Unreal Past Conditional Sentence reproduced by *-tum (-tos)*, *-sum (-sos)*, *fore*, which expresses the Future Second (*Exactum*) Infinitive Passive.

### The Indicative Mood in the Unreal Conditional Sentence.

378. 1. The Pluperfect Indicative occurs in the Apodosis of an Unreal Past Conditional Sentence with the Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Protasis. In such a case the Apodosis is presented, so to speak, as a fact and independently of the Protasis, but as a fact which is denied by the Protasis. It obtains in brevity of statement and in diction more or less rhetorical. It is quite frequent in late and early Latin and in poetry.

Ex.—**Praeclare viceramus, nisi spoliatum, inermem, fugientem Lepidus recepisset Antonium**, Cic., Fam., XII, 10, 3. **Volsci comparaverant auxilia, quae mitterent Latinis, ni maturatum ab dictatore Romano esset**, Liv., II, 22, 1. **Nisi Latini sua sponte arma sumpsisset, capti et deleti eramus**, Liv., III, 19, 8. **Si modum orationi posuisset, misericordia sui animos audientium impleverat**, Tac., Ann., IV, 9. **Contremuerant patres, ni Celsus Appium discrimini exemisset**, Tac., Ann., VI, 9. **Ni caedem eius Narcissus properavisset, verterat perniciem in accusatorem**, Tac., Ann., XI, 37. Cf. Tac., Hist., III, 28; Plin. Min., Pan., 8 and 31; Sen., Ira., I, 11, 5; Sen., Marc., XX, 4; Sen., Ben., II, 12, 2; Sen., Ben., IV, 38, 2; Sen., Nat. Q., I, 17, 6; Sen., Ep., XIX, 5, 4; Hor., Od., II, 17, 27, **Me truncus illapsus cerebro sustulerat, nisi Faunus lotum dextra levasset**.

2. The Aorist Indicative occurs in the Apodosis of an Unreal Past Conditional Sentence with the Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Protasis. In such a sentence the Indicative Apodosis may be explained by a two-fold conception.

(a) As in the preceding examples, the Apodosis rhetorically expresses a fact which is denied or whose unreality is indicated by association with the Subjunctive Protasis.

Ex.—**Apud victores orta seditio (est), nisi numerus caesorum invidiam bello auxisset**, Tac., Hist., II, 67. **Gloriae et praedae nonnihil partum (est), si aut gloriam cum modo aut praedam cum cura habuisset**, Tac., Ann., XV, 8. **Nec veni, nisi fata locum sedemque dedissent**, Verg., Aen., XI, 112.

(b) The Apodosis in the Aorist Indicative states a fact, but suggests

the real Apodosis (Pluperfect Subjunctive) responsive to the unreal Protasis (Pluperfect Subjunctive). This latter explanation may well be applied, in some cases, to the Pluperfect Indicative Apodosis (378, 1).

Ex.—*Occasio egregie rei gerendae fuit, si Furius protinus de via ad castra oppugnanda duxisset*, Liv., XXXI, 21, 3. (In this sentence *occasio fuit* expresses a fact (= *there was the opportunity*), and suggests *et egregie res gesta esset, si*, etc. The sense of the sentence may be thus given: *Occasio egregie rei gerendae fuit et egregie res gesta esset, si Furius . . . duxisset.*) *Non modo sequi recusarunt bene monentem, sed obsistere ac retinere conati sunt, ni viri fortissimi inertes summovissent*, Liv., XXII, 60, 17 (= *obsistere ac retinere conati sunt et obstitissent ac retinuisent ni . . . summovissent*). *Sponsio facta est cum Apronio, ni socium te sibi in decumis esse dicitaret*, Cic., Verr., III, 60, 137.

3. The Imperfect Indicative occurs, quite frequently, in the Apodosis of a Past Unreal Conditional Sentence. The action of the Imperfect is presented as *commenced, in progress*, etc., but suspended or interrupted by the introduction of the unreal relation in the Protasis. The action as stated by the Imperfect Indicative in the Apodosis is a *fact*. The completed action to which it tends and which is suggested by it is the unreal relation conditioned.

Ex.—*Caecina circumveniebatur, ni prima legio sese opposuisset*, Tac., Ann., I, 65 (= *circumveniebatur* (the fact) *et circumventus esset, ni . . . opposuisset*). *Vincebat auxilio loci paucitas, ni Veiens in verticem collis evasisset*, Liv., II, 50, 10 (= *vincebat et vicisset, ni . . . evasisset*). *Atrox certamen aderat, ni Fabius rem expedisset*, Liv., III, 1, 4. Cf. Liv., VI, 21, 6; IV, 52, 5; III, 43, 7; VII, 7, 9; VII, 14, 5; XXV, 31, 15; XXVIII, 33, 5; XXXIV, 29, 10; Tac., Ann., I, 23; XI, 10; XI, 34; XII, 39; XIII, 2; Tac., Hist., III, 46; III, 55, 81; IV, 15, 36, etc.

REM. The same explanation applies to the Imperfect Indicative in the Apodosis associated with the Imperfect Subjunctive expressing opposition to continuance, etc., in the Past.

Ex.—*Oppidi murus ab planitie atque initio ascensus, si nullus anfractus intercederet, septingentos passus aberat*, Caes., B. G., VII, 46.

4. The Indicative Mood in the Protasis of an Unreal Past Conditional Sentence associated with the Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Apodosis is a rare association, explained as the direct affirmation of the Speaker or Writer or quoted view of another (= *if as was said, if as I said, if as you said*).

(a) Pluperfect Indicative in the Protasis.

Ex.—*Atque id neque, si fatum fuerat, effugisset nec, si non fuerat, in eum casum incidisset*, Cic., Div., II, 8, 20.



## (b) Aorist Indicative in the Protasis.

Ex.—**Si fatum fuit classes interire, etiamsi tripudium solistumum pulli fecissent, classes tamen interissent**, Cic., Div., II, 8, 20 (observe the double Protasis<sup>1</sup>. Cf. Cic., Div., II, 8, 21.

## (c) Imperfect Indicative in the Protasis.

Ex.—**Quod si Caesaris causa in provinciam veniebatis, ad eum profecto exclusi provincia venissetis**, Cic., Lig., VIII, 25 (here **si veniebatis** (= *if you were coming, or were trying to come, as you say*)). The Indicative accepts or allows as a fact the allegation of a second party.

**379.** It is to be observed that occasionally the Protasis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence passes over into an adversative statement introduced by *sed* and the Indicative in a sense approximating *nisi* and the Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Quae (discordia) profecto orta esset. . . . sed externus timor quamvis suspectos infensosque inter se iungebat animos**, Liv., II, 39, 7 (compare *nisi . . . .lungeret*). **Ego libenter experirer, quam non plus in his iuris quam in vobis animi esset, sed nefas est tendere adversus auctoritatem senatus**, Liv., V, 9, 5. (compare *nisi nefas esset*, etc.).

### The Indicative of the Periphrastic Active in Unreal Conditional Sentences.

**380.** 1. The Indicative of the Periphrastic Active Conjugation occurs in the Apodosis of an Unreal Past Conditional Sentence.

(a) The Periphrastic Aorist Indicative occurs in the Apodosis of an Unreal Past Conditional Sentence. The sense of the Periphrastic Conjugation (*was going to, intended to, was likely to, was about to*) is retained. The Tense (Aorist), while it states a single, definite fact, suggests the simple Tense of the Subjunctive as the real Apodosis.

Ex.—**Mazeus, si transeuntibus flumen Macedonibus supervenisset, haud dubie oppressurus fuit incompressos**, Curt., IV, 9 (here **oppressurus fuit** = *was likely to have*, etc.; hence, **oppressurus fuit** (a fact) **et oppressisset, si . . . supervenisset**). **Quid iniquius est, quam me, qui, si tibi non paruissem, iure daturus poenas fui, nunc perire, quia parui?** Curt., VII, 5. **Fillium mihi donasti et si hic perisset, victurus non fui?** Sen., Ben., V, 19, 4. **E quo intellegi potest quam acuti natura sint, quoniam haec sine doctrina** (= *si docti non essent*) **creditori fuerunt**, Cic., Tusc., I, 21, 48. Cf. Liv., II, 1, 4.

(b) The Periphrastic Imperfect Indicative occurs in the Apodosis of an Unreal Past Conditional Sentence. The sense of the periphrastic conjugation (= *was going to, was likely to, was intending to*) is retained. The Tense (Imperfect), while it states a progressive

relation in the Past (*was intending*, etc.), also suggests the simple Tense of the Subjunctive as the real Apodosis.

Ex.—**Conclave illud, ubi erat mansurus, si ire perrexisset, proxima nocte corruit**, Cic., Div., I, 15, 26 (here **erat mansurus** = *was intending to lodge* (the fact); hence, **erat mansurus et mansisset, si perrexisset**). **Si agendo armentum in speluncam compulisset, ipsa vestigia quaerentem dominum eo deductura erant (et deduxissent)**, Liv., 1, 7, 5. **Quorum (militum) pars me secutura non erat (nec secuta esset) si militiam detrectantibus indulgere voluissem**, Curt., VII, 5. **Quod si factum esset, Caesaris futura erat cognitio, non patris**, Sen., Clem., XV, 3. Cf. Liv., XXVIII, 28, 11; Liv., XXII, 24, 6.

(c) The Periphrastic Pluperfect Indicative occurs so rarely in the Apodosis of an Unreal Past Conditional that it is necessary only to refer to it (use instead the Periphrastic Aorist Indicative.)

Ex.—**Maiores aliquanto Romanorum gratia fuit in re pari quam quanta futura Carthaginensium fuerat**, Liv., XXII, 22, 19.

2. The Periphrastic Imperfect Indicative rarely occurs in the Protasis of an Unreal Past Conditional Sentence. It is found only when the Speaker or Writer accepts or allows the statement of a second party. (Cf. 378, 4, c.)

Ex.—**Si domum tuam expugnaturus, capta domo dominum interfecturus eram** (= *if I had been intending, as you charge*), **non temperassem vino in unum diem, non milites meos abstinuissem?** Liv., XL, 14, 4.

381. When the Predicate in the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence is a verb expressing *willingness, ability, permission, obligation*, etc., as *posse, velle, licere, necesse esse, debere, decere, convenire*, etc.; or a Substantive Predicate, *fas esse, nefas esse, officium esse, beneficium esse*, etc.; or an Adjective Predicate, as *rectum esse, par esse, aequum esse, iniquum esse, iustum esse, dignum esse, decorum esse*, etc.; also the Future Passive Participle with a Tense of *esse* (Periphrastic Passive)—the Indicative Mood of such a Predicate is frequent in the Apodosis of the Unreal Conditional Sentence.

1. The Imperfect Indicative, in the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Present, is frequent, instead of the Imperfect Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Quid poterat Heius respondere, si esset improbus**, Cic., Verr., IV, 7, 16. **Quae si dubia essent, tamen omnes bonos reipublicae subvenire decebat**, Sall., Jug., 85. **Quod contra oportebat, delicto dolere, correctione gaudere**, Cic., Am., XXIV, 90. **Oculorum fallacissimo sensu iudicant ea, quae ratione videre debebant**, Cic., Div., II, 43, 91. **Non erat tanti, si ad pacem per ista veheremur**, Sen., Nat. Q., V, 18, 7. **Ni mihi destinatum foret suum quaeque in annum referre, aiebat animus anteire**, etc., Tac., Ann., IV, 71. **Si apud Vitellii**

legatum defenderer, neque facto meo venia neque dictis fides debebatur, Tac., H., V, 26. *Magnas vero agere gratias Thais mihi? Satis erat respondere magnas (gratias), Cic., Am., XXVI, 98. Si ita esset, quid opus erat te gradatim istuc pervenire? Cic., N. De., I, 32, 89. Alioqui quocumque loco et quocumque modo (beneficium) daretur, beneficium erat, Sen., Ben., IV., 9, 3. Horum temporum oratores ea consecuti sunt quae composita et quieti republica tribui fas erat, Tac., Or., 36. Si ad hoc bellum nihil pertineret, ad disciplinam militiae plurimum intererat insuescere militem nostrum victoria frui, etc., Liv., V, 6, 1. Quam bellum erat confiteri potius nescire quod nescires quam, etc.? Cic., N. De., I, 30, 84. At satius erat neminem esse qui facere vellet, Sen., Const. Sap., IV, 3. Non erat ipse sol idoneum oculis spectaculum dignusque adorari, si tantum praeteriret? Sen., Ben., IV, 23, 2. Non erat digna suspectu luna, etiamsi otiosum sidus transcurreret? Sen., Ben., IV, 23, 2. Quid erat stultius quam mortem contemnere? Sen., Ep., VIII, 1, 9. Cf. Tac., Hist., I, 15 (egregium erat insigne erat); Liv., XLII, 34, 12 (aequum erat), etc. Tacendum erat et exspectandum, si inter sapientes viveremus, Sen., Ben., V, 25. 3. Mors ad te venit: timenda erat, si tecum esse posset, Sen., Ep., I, 4, 3. Alia quaeruntur, quae erant dediscenda si scires, Sen., Ep., XIII, 3, 37. Si Romae Pompeius privatus esset hoc tempore, tamen ad tantum bellum is erat deligendus, Cic., Imp. Pomp., XVII, 50, etc.*

(a) While the Imperfect Indicative is frequent in the Apodosis of the preceding Predicates, the Imperfect Subjunctive in the Apodosis of the Unreal Present Conditional is not excluded.

Ex.—*Possem de singulis ad te rebus scribere, si Tullius, scriba meus, adesset, Cic., Fam., V, 20, 1. Si unus satis omnia consequi posset, nihil opus esset pluribus, Cic., Rep., I, 34, 52. Non est quod indigneris, tamquam aliquid novi acciderit: magis mirari deberes, si non accidisset, Sen., Ben., VII, 26, 2. Magis esset pudendum, si in sententia permaneres, Cic., Tusc., II, 5, 14. Quaeritis, cui detis beneficium: quod non esset faciendum, si per se beneficium dare expetenda res esset, Sen., Ben., IV, 9, 2. Vix auderem, si mihi mea sententia proferenda, ac non disertissimorum hominum sermo repetendus esset, Tac., Or., I. Cf. Sen., Ep., V, 2, 7 (nollemus); IX, 4, 2 (mallem). Cf. Sall., Cat., 7 (possem).*

2. In case of the Unreal Past Conditional Sentence the Apodosis is frequently expressed in the Indicative, when one of the preceding Predicates.

(a) The Imperfect Indicative occurs when the idea is prominent of a continuing action in the Past (opposition to continuance, etc., in the Past).

Ex.—*Hostes sustineri non poterant, ni extraordinariae cohortes pari corporum animorumque robore se obieissent, Liv., VII, 7, 9. Hypsides poterat quidem effugere, sed amisso amico mori statuit, Curt., VII, 32. Quid faceret? Si vivere vellet, Seianus rogandus erat, si mori, Alia, uterque innoxabilis, Sen., Marc., XXII, 6. Opprimi poterant, si hinc Hordeonius, inde Gallus, medios clausissent, Tac., II, IV, 19.*

(b) The Aorist Indicative of the preceding verbs is frequent in the Apodosis of an Unreal Past Conditional. It refers to a single, definite, completed relation in the Past.

Ex.—Num id vitari potuit, si Flaminius auspiciis paruisset? Cic., Div., II, 8, 21. Nam si mihi non dedisset eas (bestias) quae ad ludos ei advectae erant Africanæ, potuit supersederi, Cic., Fam., VIII, 8, 10. Antonii gladios potuit contemnere, si sic omnia dixisset, Iuv., X, 123. Hostes nulla vi sustineri potuere, ni T. Quinctius peregrinis copiis subvenisset, Liv., III, 5, 8. Si unum diem morati essetis, moriendum omnibus fuit, Liv., II, 38, 5. Nec vero non omni supplicio digni P. Claudius L. Iunius, qui contra auspicia navigaverunt: parendum enim religioni fuit, nec patrius mos tam contumaciter repudiandus, Cic., Div., II, 33, 71. Si conscius Dimno tanti sceleris fuissem, dissimulare non debui, Curt., VI, 39. Alius iudicia patris accusat, quae mereri satius fuit, Sen., Ira., II, 7, 3. Quod, nisi nominatim mecum agi coeptum esset, fieri periculosum fuit, Cic., Att., III, 15, 5. Quanto non nasci melius fuit, quam numerari inter publico malo natos? Sen., Clem., XVIII, 3.

(c) The Pluperfect Indicative of the verbs above referred to very rarely occurs in the Apodosis of a Past Unreal Conditional Sentence.

Ex.—Hoc, etiamsi senex non essem, fuerat sentiendum, Sen., Ep., X, 1, 3. At ille uno verbo: Testudo. Non potueras hoc igitur a principio, citharista, dicere? Cic., Div., II, 64, 133. Quibus (nuptiis) quam facile potuerat quiesci, si hic quiesset, Ter., And., 691.

1. While the Imperfect, Aorist, and Pluperfect Indicative of the verbs above mentioned occur in the Apodosis of an Unreal Past Conditional Sentence, the Subjunctive is not excluded. The Pluperfect Subjunctive, when the Subjunctive is used, covers the relation of both the Aorist and Pluperfect Indicative, that is, it represents the relation of both the Aorist and Pluperfect Indicative. In this connection it is not easy to recognize the Imperfect Subjunctive as an Unreal Apodosis in the Past.

Ex.—Nisi tu aliquid dixisses, nihil ex me audire potuisses, Cic., N. De., I, 21, 57. Debuisses velle, si scisses omnia ex decreto dei fieri, Sen., N. Q., III, 1, 12. Quanto consequi plura potuissem, si illum colere maluissem? Sen., Ben., II, 26. (Deiotarus) nisi revertisset, in eo conclavi ei cubandum fuisset, quod proxima nocte corruit, Cic., Div., II, 8, 20. Qui diu quaerendus fuisset, nisi paratus et quasi provisus esset Minucius Acilianus, Plin. Min., I, 14, 3. Qui ex bestiis fructus, nisi homines adiuvarent, percipi posset? Cic., Off., II, 4, 14. (As a Past conception, *percipi posset*? = *could have been derived*?)

REM. From the examples quoted it is seen that the auxiliary verbs, *posse*, etc., and the Passive Periphrastic most frequently occur in the Indicative Apodosis of the Unreal Conditional Sentence. The char-

acteristic sense of such verbs approaches very nearly a Subjunctive conception.

**CAUTION.** The difference between the Indicative and Subjunctive of the verbs stated (381) in the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence may, in most cases, be thus explained: When the Indicative is used, the matter denied, or the unreal relation, is the dependent Infinitive; when the Subjunctive is used, the matter denied, or the unreal relation, is the Predicate in the Subjunctive.

**Ex.**—**Multum haec vox valere deberet eius hominis**, Cic., Sul., V, 14 (= *sed non multum valere debet*). **Trinobantes exurere coloniam, expugnare castra, ac, nisi felicitas in socordiam vertisset, exurere iugum potuere**, Tac., Agr., 31 (= *sed coloniam non exusserunt, etc.*). **Si Catilina in urbe ad hanc diem remansisset . . . dimicandum cum illo fuisset**, Cic., Cat., III, 7, 17 (= *sed cum illo dimicandum non fuit*). **Nisi tu aliquid dixisses nihil ex me audire potuisses**, Cic., N. De., I, 21, 57 (= *sed aliquid ex me audire potuisti*).

**382.** When the Apodosis of an Unreal Past Conditional Sentence is defined by *paene* or *prope*, it is expressed in the Indicative. The explanation of the Indicative is obvious. The action of the Predicate qualified by either of these particles is a fact, as *he had almost conquered*, or *he almost conquered*. This is not an unreal relation, but a fact. Hence the Indicative. But while the action almost realized is the fact, the full realization is not the fact. Hence, the Indicative with *paene* or *prope* suggests as the unreal relation or the action not realized the Pluperfect Subjunctive, calling for the Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Protasis.

**Ex.**—**Prope in proelium exarsere (et exarsissent), ni Valens animadversione paucorum oblitos iam Batavos imperii admonuisset**, Tac., Hist., I, 64. **Prope oneratum est (et oneratum esset) sinistrum Romanis cornu, ni referentibus iam gradum consul pudore metum excussisset**, Liv., II, 65, 4. **Pons sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit (et dedisset), ni unus fuisset Horatius Cocles**, Liv., II, 10, 2. **Caesar paene Aethiopia tenus Aegyptum penetravit (et penetrasset), nisi exercitus sequi recusasset**, Suet., Caes., 52.

**REM.** The Predicate defined by *paene* (and *prope*) may be presented as an unreal relation, and hence in the Subjunctive.

**Ex.**—**Et, hercule, nisi nostri equites acutius vidissent, paene concedente adversario superasset (= sed non superavit)**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 4, 1 (= *he would almost have won from his adversary retiring*).

The distinction between the Indicative and Subjunctive in this connection can be clearly expressed in the translation, as *he almost, nearly won* (Indicative), and *he would almost, or nearly have won* (Subjunctive).

**The Indicative Apodosis of the Unreal Conditional Sentence in the Accusative and the Infinitive (*Oratio Obliqua*).**

**383. 1.** The Pluperfect Indicative Apodosis of the Unreal Past Conditional cannot be reproduced in the Infinitive by *-rum (-ros) fuisse* (Active) nor by *futurum fuisse ut* and the Imperfect Subjunctive (Passive). These forms reproduce the Pluperfect Subjunctive and Imperfect Subjunctive, depending upon either a Present or Past Tense. Hence, the Pluperfect Indicative is stated by the Perfect form of the Infinitive. Protasis unchanged.

Ex.—*Volsci comparaverant auxilia, ni maturatum esset*, etc., Liv., II, 22, 1.

**Dicit:** *Volscos comparasse auxilia, ni maturatum esset.*

**Dixit:** *Volscos comparasse auxilia, ni maturatum esset.*

**2.** The Aorist Indicative in the Apodosis of a Past Unreal Conditional Sentence is likewise reproduced in the Infinitive by the Perfect form of the Infinitive after a Present or Past governing Tense. The Protasis is unchanged; so, also, the Aorist Indicative with *prope* and *paene*.

Ex.—*Seditio orta est, nisi numerus caesorum invidiam bello auxisset*, Tac., Hist., II, 67.

**Dicit:** *Seditionem ortam esse, nisi numerus caesorum invidiam bello auxisset.*

**Dixit:** *Seditionem ortam esse, nisi numerus caesorum invidiam bello auxisset.*

**Pons sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, ni unus fuisset.**

**Dicit (dixit):** *Pontem sublicium ita paene hostibus dedisse, ni unus fuisset.*

**3.** The Imperfect Indicative in the Apodosis of an Unreal Past Conditional Sentence, after a Present or Past governing Tense, becomes, in the Infinitive, the Perfect form of the Infinitive. The Protasis is unchanged. Only the context and general sense of the sentence can decide that the Perfect form of the Infinitive is in the independent sentence, or *Oratio Recta*, the Imperfect Indicative. With a Past governing Tense the action of the Apodosis is still antecedent to it, and not coincident with it.

Ex.—*Vincebat auxilio loci paucitas, ni Veiens in verticem collis evasisset*, Liv., II, 50, 6.

**Dicit:** *Vicisse auxilio loci paucitatem, ni Veiens in verticem collis evasisset.*

**Dixit:** *Vicisse auxilio loci paucitatem, ni Veiens in verticem collis evasisset.*

**Ex.**—*Solitus est narrare, se in prima iuventa studium philosophiae acrius, quam concessum Romano, hausisse* (perhaps *hauriebat* in *Oratio Recta*), *ni prudentia matris flagrantem animum coercuisset*, Tac., Agr., 4. *Nemo mihi persuadebit aut tuum patrem Paullum aut duos avos.... tanta esse conatos* (perhaps *conabantur* in *Oratio Recta*), *nisi animo cernerent posteritatem ad se pertinere*, Cic., Sen., XXIII, 82. *Dixit, sibi vitam filiae sua cariorum fuisse, si pudicae vivere licitum fuisset*, Liv., III, 50, 6. *Quod totum irrisum est, Vettio pugionem defuisse* (perhaps *defuit* in *Oratio Recta*), *nisi ei consul dedisset*, Cic., Att., II, 24, 2). *Dixit non se caedem principis et res novas uno socio cogitasse* (perhaps *cogitaverat* in *Oratio Recta*), Tac., Ann., IV, 28.

**The Periphrastic Indicative Active in the Apodosis of an Unreal Past Conditional Sentence Expressed in the Accusative and Infinitive or in Oratio Obliqua.**

**384.** Each Past Tense becomes a Past Infinitive from a Present leading or governing Tense, also a Past Infinitive from a Past leading or governing Tense, and hence the form *-rum (-ros) fuisse*. As this form *-rum (-ros) fuisse* is also the regular reproduction of the Apodosis when a simple Tense of the Past Unreal Conditional, only the context and general sense of the sentence can decide whether the independent form of the Apodosis should be a Periphrastic Indicative Tense or a simple Tense of the Subjunctive. The Protasis is unchanged.

**1. Periphrastic Aorist *-rus fuit*.**

**Ex.**—*Si filius perisset, victurus non fui*, Sen., Ben., V, 19, 4.

**Dicit:** *Si filius perisset, se victurum non fuisse.*

**Dixit:** *Si filius perisset, se victurum non fuisse.*

**2. Periphrastic Imperfect *-rus erat*.**

**Ex.**—*Si agendo armentum....compulisset, vestigia dominum eo deductura erant*, Liv., I, 7, 5.

**Dicit:** *Si agendo armentum....compulisset, vestigia dominum eo deductura fuisse.*

**Dixit:** *Si agendo armentum....compulisset, vestigia dominum eo deductura fuisse.*

**385.** When the Predicate in the Apodosis of the Unreal Conditional Sentence is one expressing *ability, obligation*, etc. (cf. **381**), then—

**1.** The Imperfect Indicative in the Apodosis of an Unreal Present Conditional is expressed in the Infinitive by the Present form of the Infinitive. The Protasis is unchanged.

Ex.—**Quae si dubia essent, tamen omnes bonos reipublicae subvenire decebat**, Sall., Jug., 85.

**Dicit : Quae si dubia essent, tamen omnes bonos reipublicae subvenire decere.**

**Dixit : Quae si dubia essent, tamen omnes bonos reipublicae subvenire decere. Satius erat neminem esse qui facere vellet**, Sen., Const. Sap., IV, 3.

**Dicit : Satius esse neminem esse qui facere vellet.**

**Dixit : Satius esse neminem esse qui facere vellet.**

2. The Aorist Indicative of the verbs named becomes in the Infinitive the Perfect form.

Ex.—**Hostes nulla vi sustineri potuere, ni Quinctius subvenisset**, Liv., III, 5, 8.

**Dicit : Hostes nulla vi sustineri potuisse, ni Quinctius subvenisset.**

**Dixit : Hostes nulla vi sustineri potuisse, ni Quinctius subvenisset.**

3. The Pluperfect Indicative of the verbs named becomes the Perfect form of the Infinitive.

Ex.—**Hoc, etiamsi senex non essem, fuerat sentiendum**, Sen., Ep., X, 1, 3.

**Dicit : Hoc, etiamsi senex non esset, fuissé sentiendum.**

**Dixit : Hoc, etiamsi senex non esset, fuisse sentiendum.**

REM. The same forms of the Infinitive are used in *Oratio Obliqua* to reproduce the Subjunctive of the verbs named in the Apodosis of the independent Conditional.

Ex.—**Dixit : Si quem similem eius priore anno dii tribunum dedissent, non potuisse sisti**, Liv., III, 9, 7 (**non potuisse** reproduces perhaps **non posset** (**poterat?**)). **Plerique existimant, si acrius insequi voluisset, bellum eo die potuisse finire**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 51 (here **potuisse** may reproduce **potuisset**). **Hic aliter obsistere fato fatetur se non potuisse, nisi ad has commenticias declinationes confugisset**, Cic., Fat., XX, 48 (here **potuisse** may reproduce **potuissem**). **Si spatium ad dicendum nostro commodo habuissemus, tamen oratione longa nihil opus fuisse**, Cic., Verr., Prim. Act., XVIII, 56. **Marco Crasso putas utile fuisse scire, etc.?** Cic., Div., II, 9, 22. Cf. Tac., Ann., XI, 16 (**posse extimesci**); Tac., Or., 26 (**posse oratorem vocari**); Tac., Ann., XI, 36 (**pereundum fuisse**); Sen., Tran. An., I, 16 (**potuisse**); Nep., Tim., 3 (**proclive fuisse**).

It cannot, in all cases, be certainly decided whether the Infinitive reproduces the Indicative or Subjunctive of the *Oratio Recta*.



**The Unreal Conditional Sentence Dependently Stated in the Subjunctive.**

**386.** When the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence becomes a dependency in the Subjunctive, that is, occurs as an Indirect Question, is dependent with *ut* Final or Consecutive, with *quin*, *cum* Causal or Concessive, with the Final Causal or Consecutive Relative, etc., then—

1. In case of an Unreal Present Conditional the Apodosis and Protasis, when the verb in the Apodosis is either Active or Passive, remain unchanged, that is, in the Imperfect Subjunctive; and this after a Present or Past governing Tense.

Ex.—*Si hoc diceret, erraret. Non dubito (dubitabam) quin, si hoc diceret, erraret.*

*Si sapiens esset, hoc fieret. Nemo dubitat (dubitabat) quin, si sapiens esset, hoc fieret.*

*Caederem te, nisi irascerer, Sen., Ira., I, XV, 3.*

*Fieri non potest quin te caederem, nisi irascerer.*

*Vereor ne te caederem, nisi irascerer.*

*Non dubito quin, si modo esset in republica senatus, statua P. Sextio in foro statueretur, Cic., Sest., XXXVIII, 83.*

2. In case of an Unreal Past Conditional Sentence, the Apodosis, when dependent in the Subjunctive, after either a Present or Past governing Tense, becomes,

(a) If the dependent verb (Apodosis) is in the Active Voice, *-rus fuerim*. Protasis unchanged.

Ex.—*Quaerere libet, quinam eventus Romanis rebus, si cum Alexandro foret bellatum, futurus fuerit, Liv., IX, 17, 2. Neque ambigitur, quin Brutus idem pessimo publico id facturus fuerit, si priorum regum alicui regnum extorsisset. Liv., II, 1, 3. Adeo inopia est coactus Hannibal, ut nisi cum fugae specie abeundum timuisset, Galliam repetiturus fuerit, Liv., XXII, 32, 3. Cf. Liv., XLI, 24, 4-5 (futura fuerint, facturus fuerit); Liv., XLI, 20, 1 (vocaturi fuerint); Cic., Phil., IX, 1, 1 (futurus fuerit).*

(b) If the Apodosis is in the Passive Voice, it is unchanged or remains the Pluperfect Subjunctive. The Protasis is unchanged.

Ex.—*Id ille si repudiasset, dubitatis. quin ei vis esset allata? Cic., Sest., XXIX, 62.*

REM. 1. When the governing verb is a Past Tense instead of *-rus fuerim* in the Apodosis, there occurs quite frequently the Periphrastic

Pluperfect Subjunctive *-rus fuisset*. This form, perhaps, is based upon and reproduces the Indicative *-rus fui* (or *fueram*) in the independent form.

EX.—*Subibat cogitatio animum, quonam modo tolerabilis futura Etruria fuisset, si quid in Samnio adversi evenisset*, Liv., X, 45, 3. *At iidem nos, admonente fortuna, quid, si hostem habuissemus, casurum fuisset, fugati sumus*, Liv., XXXVIII, 46, 6. *Apparuit quantam excitatura molem vera (= si vera fuisset) fuisset clades*, Liv., XXVIII, 24, 2. *Nec ceteri dubitabant quin coniurationis indicium non suppressurus fuisset, nisi auctor*, Curt., VI, 30.

REM. 2. In the Apodosis of a Past Unreal Conditional Sentence, when presented as a Subjunctive dependency, the simple Pluperfect Subjunctive very rarely occurs. This form is, perhaps, based upon and reproduces the Aorist or Pluperfect Indicative in the independent form.

EX.—*Tantum sua laude obstitit famae consulis Marcius, ut, nisi foedus cum Latinis columna aenea insculptum monumento esset, Postumium Cominium bellum gessisse cum Volscis memoria cessisset*, Liv., II, 33, 9.

3. If the verb in the Apodosis is an Indicative Tense, then,

(1) The Pluperfect or Aorist Indicative becomes—

(a) From a Present (leading Tense), the Aorist Subjunctive.

EX.—*Praeclare viceramus, nisi fugientem Lepidus recepisset Antonium. Non dubitant quin praeclare vicerint, nisi. . . Lepidus recepisset*, etc.  
*Occasio egregie rei gerendae fuit, si Furius protinus de via ad castra oppugnanda duxisset. Non dubitant quin egregie rei gerendae fuerit, si Furius. . . duxisset.*

(b) From a Past (leading Tense), the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

EX.—*Praeclare viceramus, nisi fugientem Lepidus recepisset Antonium. Non dubitabant quin. . . vicissent, nisi Lepidus. . . recepisset*, etc.  
*Occasio egregie rei gerendae fuit, si Furius. . . duxisset. Non dubitabant quin egregie rei gerendae fuisset si Furius. . . duxisset.*

(2) The Imperfect Indicative becomes—

(a) From the Present (leading Tense), the perfect form of the Subjunctive.

EX.—*Certamen erat, nisi equites supervenissent. Non dubitant quin certamen fuerit, nisi equites supervenissent.*

(b) From a Past governing Tense remains, perhaps, the Imperfect Tense (Subjunctive).

EX.—*Non dubitabant quin certamen esset, nisi equites supervenissent.*

4. The Periphrastic Indicative Tenses Imperfect *-rus erat* and Aorist *-rus fuit* in the Apodosis, when a Subjunctive dependency, become—

(a) The Imperfect *-rus erat* (a Past relation), when depending on a Present governing Tense, becomes *-rus fuerit*; on a Past Tense, *-rus fuerit* (*fuisse*). It cannot express a coincident relation with the governing verb, which must be *-rus esset*.

Ex.—*In eo conclavi mansurus erat, si ire perrexisset.*

*Dubium non est quin in eo conclavi mansurus fuerit, si ire perrexisset.*

*Dubium non erat quin in eo conclavi mansurus fuerit (fuisse?), si ire perrexisset.*

5. If the verb in the Apodosis denotes *ability, obligation, etc.* (cf. 381), then—

(a) In case of the Unreal Present relation the Imperfect Indicative Apodosis is reproduced as a Subjunctive dependency by the Imperfect Subjunctive after either a Present or Past governing Tense. The Protasis is unchanged.

Ex.—*Honestum tale est ut, vel si ignorarent id homines, sua tamen pulchritudine esset laudabile, Cic., Fin., II, 15, 49. Omnes hoc intellegunt clementiam esse, quae se flectit citra id, quod (consecutive) merito constitui posset, Sen., Clem., II, 3, 2. Ipse autem Antigonus adeo erat incensus, ut nisi magna spe maximarum rerum leniri non posset, Nep., Eum., 10.*

In these examples the Apodoses are coincident with and not antecedent to the governing verbs.

(b) In case of the Unreal Past Conditional, the Apodosis, when a dependent Subjunctive, is expressed by the Aorist Subjunctive after either a Present or Past governing Tense. The Protasis is unchanged.

Ex.—*Quid est aliud casus, nisi cum sic aliquid evenit, ut vel aliter cadere atque evenire potuerit? Cic., Div., II, 6, 15. Quantum praesens me adjuvare potueris, facile ex eo intellego, etc., Cic., Fam., IV, 6, 1. Quae res tam nefaria est, ut, etiamsi lex non esset, magnopere vitanda fuerit, Cic., Verr., I, 42, 108. Peditum acies haud dubium fecit, quin, nisi firmata extrema agminis fuissent, ingens in eo saltu accipienda clades fuerit, Liv., XXI, 34, 7. Quaeris quid amplius potuerit assequi Plancius, si Cn. Scipionis fuisset filius, Cic., Plane., XXIV, 60. Affertis aliquid quod ne fieri quidem possit, ut satius fuerit illud concedere, Cic., N. D., I, 25, 69. Id periculum erat, ne maiestatem nominis Alexandri sustineri non potuerit populus Romanus, Liv., X, 18, 6. Quantum periculum ab illis populis fuerit (Substantive Predicate), si Capitolium ab exsulis obsessum scissent, suspicari de praeterito quam re ipsa experiri est melius, Liv., III, 19, 12.*

NOTE 1. The Imperfect Tense Subjunctive or Indicative in a Past

Unreal Conditional Sentence is not the equivalent of the Pluperfect Subjunctive. It expresses the opposite of a continuing state or progressive action in the Past, indicatively stated by the Imperfect Tense, that is, the Indicative Imperfect is the matter denied. It is not entirely susceptible of proof how this Imperfect Tense is expressed in the Infinitive, or in *Oratio Obliqua*, nor when dependently stated with *ut*, etc. The following, however, may be suggested as the reproduction of the Tense in the Infinitive and as a dependent Subjunctive.

(1) The Imperfect Subjunctive, expressing opposition to continuance in the Past, becomes, when depending, in the Infinitive, on a Present or Past governing verb, *-rum fuisse*. The simple Infinitive would not meet the conditions, as the idea of unreality (*-rum fuisse*) must be expressed. Protasis unchanged.

Ex.—*Aberat omnis dolor, qui si adesset, non molliter ferret*, Cic., Fin., II, 20, 64.

*Dicit (dicebat) afuisse omnem dolorem, qui si adesset, (eum) non molliter laturum fuisse.*

(2) If the verb be one of potentiality, etc., the Imperfect Indicative or Subjunctive becomes the perfect form of the Infinitive after either a Present or Past Tense.

Ex.—*Hostes sustineri non poterant, ni cohortes se obieciissent*, Liv., VIII, 7, 1.

*Dicit (dixit) hostes sustineri non potuisse, ni cohortes se obieciissent.*

NOTE 2. The Imperfect Subjunctive denoting opposition to continuance in the Past,

(1) When dependent in the Subjunctive with *ut*, *quin*, etc., upon a Present or Past Tense, becomes *-rus fuerit*.

Ex.—*Dolor si adesset, non molliter ferret.*

*Non dubitat (dubitabat) quin dolor si adesset, non molliter laturus fuerit.*

(2) If the Apodosis be a potential verb, etc., it becomes the Perfect form of Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Hostes sustineri non poterant, ni cohortes se obieciissent.*

*Non dubitat (dubitabat) quin hostes sustineri non potuerint, ni cohortes se obieciissent.*

NOTE 3. It has been seen that the Unreal Past Apodosis (Pluperfect Subjunctive), when dependent with *ut* *quin*, etc., is expressed by the Perfect form of the Periphrastic Active (*-rus fuerit*). If the verb

has no form in *-rus*, the periphrasis *futurum fuerit ut* with the Imperfect Subjunctive would reproduce the relation to be expressed. This periphrasis is, however, theoretical, and no example of it has been observed. Instead of the periphrasis use the Perfect form of the Subjunctive of *posse*.

Ex.—*Si puer voluisset didicisset.*

**Non dubito (dubitabam) quin si puer voluisset futurum fuerit ut disceret** (theoretical).

Cf. **Non dubito (dubitabam) quin si puer voluisset discere potuerit.**

NOTE 4. It must be observed that the Indicative or Subjunctive Tense of the verbs, referred to in 381, may not always be identified as the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional, particularly when no Protasis is expressed. The general sense of the sentence alone can decide that it is the Apodosis of a Conditional Sentence.

387. If with an Unreal Present Conditional Sentence a second Subjunctive is associated depending upon either the Protasis or Apodosis of the Unreal Conditional, this dependent Subjunctive is, with very rare exceptions, written in the Imperfect Subjunctive, though its logical Time is either Present (same with that of the Conditional Sentence) or Future. This use of the Imperfect Subjunctive (instead of the Present) is the result of *attraction* of Tense; that is, the relation which would regularly and logically be expressed by the Present Subjunctive is attracted into the sphere of unreality, and becomes the Imperfect Subjunctive. The translation of this dependent Imperfect Subjunctive is often best made by a Present or Future First from the Present.

(a) Subjunctive depending on the Unreal Present Protasis.

Ex.—*Quis esset tantus fructus in prosperis rebus, nisi haberes qui illis aequae ac tu ipse gauderet?* Cic., Am., VI, 22. *Quod si ita esset, ut quisque minimum in se esse arbitraretur, ita ad amicitiam esset aptissimus,* etc., Cic., Am., IX, 29. *Si nihil haberet animus hominis, nisi ut appeteret aut fugeret, id quoque esset ei commune cum bestiis,* Cic., Tusc., I, 25, 56. *Quod si vultum tibi, si incessum fingeres, quo gravior viderere, non esses tui similis,* Cic., Fin., II, 24, 77. Cf. Cic., Fam., XV, 16, 1 (*cui darem*); Cic., Verr., IV, 25, 55 (*ne diceretis*); Liv., V, 4, 2 (*quod dicerem*); Sen., Ben., VI, 35, 4 (*ut solveres*); Sen., Ep., V, 1, 2 (*quid esset*); Curt., VII, 3 (*ne crederes*); Plin. Min., IV, 13, 6 (*ne corrumpetur*).

(b) Subjunctive depending on Unreal Present Apodosis.

Ex.—*Quis tam esset ferreus qui eam vitam ferre posset?* Cic., Am., XXIII, 87. *Hoc intellegerem quale esset, si in ceris fingeretur,* Cic., N. D., I, 26, 71. *Non videremus nec scire possemus quid esset, nisi... videremus,* Sen., N. Q.,

I, 17, 3. Cf. Sen., Ep., XII, 3, 7 (*qui haberet*); Sen., Ep., XIV, 2, 2 (*quod suspiceret*); Curt., V, 24 (*tacerem potius quam consumerem*); Curt., VI, 7 (*ut fruerer*); Curt., VIII, 19 (*ne cogeres, neu contraheres*); Plin. Min., VII, 3, 5 (*excitaretur*).

REM. So when Apodosis is Imperfect Indicative of verbs named, 381.

Ex.—*Intellegi a nobis di velle debebant ea, quae nostra causa nos monerent*, Cic., Div., II, 64, 132. *Satius erat ista in oblivionem ire, ne quis postea disceret*, Sen., Brev. Vit., XIII, 7. *Nec poterat lex casuris imbris dici, ne in malorum improborumque rura defluerent*, Sen., Ben., IV, 28, 3. Cf. *Nec poterat fieri ut ventus bonis viris secundus esset, contrarius malis*, Sen., Ben., IV, 28, 3.

(c) Subjunctive depending on both Protasis and Apodosis of an Unreal Present Conditional is expressed by Imperfect Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Si solos eos diceret miseris, quibus moriendum esset, neminem tu quidem eorum, qui viverent, exciperes*, Cic., Tusc., I, 5, 9. *Si ut prodessemus sola nos invitaret utilitas, minime beneficia distribuere deberent, qui facillime possent*, Sen., Ben., IV, 3, 2. *Non dubitarent quid conveniret forti viro, si scirent quid esset fortitudo*, Sen., Ep., XII, 3, 28.

(d) In this connection an explanatory Perfect Subjunctive becomes, by attraction of Tense, the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Dicerem, quae ante futura dixissem, ni vererer ne ex eventis fingere viderer*, Cic., Fam., VI, 6, 4.

REM. 1. The failure to attract the Tense of a Subjunctive dependency expressing a Present or Future relation when associated with an Unreal Present Conditional Sentence is rare.

Ex.—*Mirareris, si interesses, qua patientia hanc valetudinem toleret*, Plin. Min., I, 22, 7.

REM. 2. It may be well to observe that a Past Subjunctive relation after an Unreal Present Conditional follows the rule for the Past Subjunctive sequence after a Present Tense, and is expressed by the Perfect form of the Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Memorare possem quibus in locis hostium maxumas copias populus Romanus parva manus fuderit, quas urbes . . . ceperit, ni ea res longius nos ab incepto traheret*, Sall., Cat., 7.

REM. 3. When the Future Time of the clause depending on the Unreal Present Conditional is not clear from the context or nature of the dependency the ambiguity is removed and the Time emphasized by the form *-rus esset*.

Ex.—*Quamvis copiose haec diceremus, si res postularet, quam multa, quanta spectacula animus in locis caelestibus esset habiturus*, Cic., Tusc., I, 21, 47.

**Nam Pulcellum nostrum facillime teneremus aut certe quid esset facturum scire possemus**, Cic., Att., II, 22, 1. **Remissius istud contenderemus, si adhuc non sciremus qualis esses futurus**, Plin. Min., Paneg., 79.

**CAUTION.** The use of the Imperfect Subjunctive as a dependency upon the Protasis or Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence is not limited to this association, but is the usage wherever the Subjunctive depends upon the Unreal relation expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive, as in the wish impossible to be realized (Unreal Wish), in the Present Time.

**Ex.—Utinam quidem eadem homini lex esset ut ira cum telo suo frangeretur nec saepius liceret nocere quam semel**, Sen., Clem., XIX, 4. **Vellem tam ferax saeculum bonis artibus haberemus ut aliquos Basso praeferre deberes**, Plin. Min., IV, 15, 8. **Utinam mihi aliquid esset hic, quo nunc me praecipitem darem**, Ter., And., 606. Cf. Ter., Eun., 91.

(e) The principle which requires the Imperfect Subjunctive to express a logical Present or Future from the Present, when it depends upon the Unreal Present Conditional Sentence, does not apply to a Subjunctive when depending upon an Unreal Past Conditional. In this case the Imperfect Subjunctive is used to express an incomplete action coincident with the Time of the Unreal Condition or Future from it.

**Ex.—Numquam enim statua facta esset, nisi fuisset id, ex quo funderetur ducereturve**, Sen., Ep., VII, 3, 5. **Si dii, Philippe, tibi permisissent, quo modo velles, animum experiri meum, alio profecto voluisses**, Curt., III, 15. **Quid si (mater te) heredem instituisset ex asse, sed legatis ita exhausisset ut non amplius apud te quam quarta remaneret?** Plin. Min., V, 1, 9. **Responderunt, si quis ipsos beneficio, quam iniuria experiri maluisset, certaturos fuisse, ne vincerentur officio**, Curt., VII, 39.

**REM.** If the dependent Subjunctive is limited to a time antecedent to the time of the Unreal Past Conditional, it is, of course, expressed by the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

**Ex.—Nonne manere ille intra vallum maluisset, quod in unam noctem manu sua ipse duxisset?** Sen., Ep., V, 11, 12.

388. In the Concessive relation (Subjunctive (alone and) with *ut*) and in the Conditional wish (*modo*, etc.), the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive may express Unreal relations.

**Ex.—Ut rationem Plato nullam afferret, ipsa auctoritate me frangeret**, Cic., Tusc., I, 21, 49. **Qui ut rationem non redderent, auctoritate tamen hos minutos philosophos vincerent**, Cic., Div., I, 30, 62. **Ut cetera paria Tiberoni cum Vare fuissent: hoc certe praecipuum Tiberonis fuit**, Cic., Lig., IX, 27.

**389.** It may not be unnecessary to repeat that the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Protasis, associated with the Future Infinitives, *-rum (-ros) esse*, *-tum (-sum) iri*, and *-tum (-sum) fore*, is not to be confounded with the Unreal Conditional Sentence in the Accusative with the Infinitive or in *Oratio Obliqua*. The form *-rum (-ros) esse* represents in the Infinitive the Future First Indicative, or the Present Subjunctive of the Ideal Conditional Sentence. The form *-um iri* represents the Future First Indicative or the Present Subjunctive in the Ideal Conditional; the form *-tum (-sum) fore* represents the Future *Exactum* Indicative or the Future *Exactum* Subjunctive (Perfect form) Passive of the Ideal Conditional.

Ex.—*Si hoc dixeris, errabis. Dicit te, si hoc dixeris, erraturum esse. Si hoc dicas, erres. Dicit te, si hoc dicas, erraturum esse. Si veneris, apprehenderis. Dicit te, si veneris, apprehensum iri. Si veneris, apprehendaris. Dicit te, si veneris, apprehensum iri. Si veneris, apprehensus eris. Dicit te, si veneris, apprehensum fore. Si veneris, apprehensus sis. Dicit te, si veneris, apprehensum fore.*

#### The Conditional Sentence of Comparison.

**390.** The Conditional Sentence of Comparison is characterized by the fact that the second member of the Comparison is furnished by the Ideal or Unreal Condition, while the former member presents, as a rule, a distinct statement in the Indicative. Hence, it follows that while the former member embodies, generally, a fact, the latter member is stated as a probability, possibility, or unreality, according to the character of the condition which supplies it. The second member is, in fact, an Ideal or Unreal Conditional Sentence, with the Predicate of the Apodosis not expressed, but readily suggested by the expressed Protasis. Thus, *As—if = As would be the case—if; As were the case—if; As had been the case—if*. The latter is the characteristic member of the Comparison, and from it is derived the designation of the sentence. The Mood in this member is always the Subjunctive. The Tense is determined by the principle of the sequence of Tenses from the standpoint of the leading Predicate, that is, the Predicate in the former member of the Comparison. They are the Present and Perfect (in a Past connection the Imperfect and Pluperfect); in Unreal Conditional relations, the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

1. The latter member of the Comparison is introduced by *quasi (= qua ratione si = ea ratione qua si); tamquam si*, oftener *tamquam* alone; *quam si; tam . . . quam si* (rare); *quam si* (rare); *ut si* (rarely *ut*



(= *ut si*)); *velut si*, less frequently *velut* alone; *ac si*; *et si*; *cœu* (late and poetical); *sicut* (rare) = *sicut si*.

Ex.—*Quamquam hoc nescio quo modo dicatur, quasi duo simus, ut alter imperet, alter pareat, non inscite tamen dicitur*, Cic., *Tusc.*, II, 20, 47. *Simile est, inquam, quasi dicas in operto fuisse*, Cic., *Att.*, I, 16, 10. *Id est, inquires, ostentum. Magnum vero, quasi pisces, non Galli cecinerint*, Cic., *Div.*, II, 26, 56. *Quod idem Scipioni videbatur, qui, quasi praesagiret, triduum disseruit de re publica*, Cic., *Am.*, IV, 14 (here *praesagiret* is rather *praesagiat* stated in the Past, than an Unreal Past—*praesagiret*). *Quicquid fieri potest, quasi futurum sit, prospiciendo malorum omnium impetus molliet*, Sen., *Tranq. Anim.*, XI, 6 (observe periphrastic *futurum sit*). *Ingrati adversus percepta spe futuri sumus, quasi non quod futurum est, cito in praeterita transiturum sit*, Sen., *Ep.*, XVI, 4, 5. *Haec ego sic accipi volo, non tamquam assecutum me esse credam, sed tamquam assequi laboraverim*, Plin. *Min.*, II, 5, 9. *Quis hoc? inquis, tamquam nescias, cui imperem*, Sen., *Ep.*, III, 8, 10. *Tamquam malum aliquod aut noxium animal e cubili prosilierit, diffugiunt*, Sen., *Clem.*, III, 3. *Iulius Frontinus me nominabat tamquam in locum suum cooptaret* (Plin. *Min.*, IV, 8, 3 (here *cooptaret* reproduces *cooptet* in a Present context). *Moritur Blaesus, et tamquam omnia audisset, Regulo ne tantulum quidem*, Plin. *Min.*, II, 20, 8 (here *audisset* reproduces the Perfect in the Present Time). *Noli, Marcelline, torqueri, tamquam de re magna deliberes*, Sen., *Ep.*, X, 1, 6. *Nihilo minus tamen, tamquam sit eadem omnium futura sententia, hac severitate aurium laetor*, Plin. *Min.*, III, 18, 9. *Ille scripsit, tamquam essent futura*, Plin. *Min.*, III, 21, 6. *Suadeo videas, tamquam si tua res agatur*, Cic., *Fam.*, II, 16, 7. *Intellegere nos oportet posse evenire, ut faciat aliquis iniuriam mihi et ego non accipiam: tamquam si quis rem, quam e villa mea surripuit, in domo mea ponat, ille furtum fecerit, ego nihil perdiderim*, Sen., *Const. Sap.*, VII, 3. *Occupatorum animi, velut sub iugo sint, flectere se ac respicere non possunt*, Sen., *Brev. Vit.*, X, 5. *Strepitu, velut hostes adventaret, alteri apud alteros formidinem et tumultum facere*, Sall., *Jug.*, 53 (here *adventaret* represents *adventet* of the Present, or it may be accepted as an Unreal Past Progressive Action.) *Itaque vos ego, milites, pugnare velim, velut si servos videatis vestros arma repente contra vos ferentes*, Liv., XXI, 41, 11. (III) *in eadem sunt iniustitia, ut si in suam rem aliena convertant*, Cic., *Off.*, I, 14, 42. *Haec precatus, velut si sensisset auditas preces: Hinc, inquit, Iuppiter resistere iubet*, Liv., I, 12, 7 (here *sensisset* reproduces in the Past the relation of the Perfect in the Present, rather than states an Unreal Past Condition). *Tumes alto Drusorum stemmate, ut (= ut si) te conciperet, quae*, Iuv., VIII, 42.

(a) With the leading member of the Comparison often occur *ita*, *sic*, *proinde*, *perinde*, *tam* (rare), *similiter*, *aeque* (*aeque ac si*), *haud* (*non*) *secus*.

Ex.—*Ita iocaris, quasi ego dicam eos miseros, qui nati non sint*, etc., Cic., *Tusc.*, I, 7, 13. *Ita de meo facto loquor, quasi ego illud mea voluntate fecerim*, Cic., *Verr.*, I, 11, 29. *Ego optimum existimo qui ceteris ita ignoscit, tamquam ipse cotidie peccet*, Plin. *Min.*, VIII, 22, 2. *Sic aliorum vitii irascuntur*.

quasi inuideant, Plin. Min., VIII, 22, 1. Sic eas (disputationes) exponam, quasi agatur res, non quasi narretur, Cic., Tusc., I, 4, 8. Sic ago, tamquam omnia subacta sint armis, Curt., VI, 8. Metelli sperat sibi quisque fortunam, proinde quasi plures fortunati sint quam infelices, Cic., Tusc., I, 36, 86. Aiunt patriam amicitiae praeponendam esse, proinde ac si iam vicerint obitum eius reipublicae fuisse utilem, Cic., Fam., XI, 28, 2. Incedunt per ora vostra magnifici, sacerdotia et consulatus suos ostentantes, proinde quasi ea honori habeant, Sall., Jug., 31. Sic consequemur ut nec vicino videatur flumini mixtus et sit perinde ac si misceatur, Plin. et Trai., LXI, 2. Xenomenes hospēs tam te diligit, quam si vixerit tecum, Cic., Fam., XVI, 5, 1. Tam ridiculam rem facitis, quam si affirmetis meum esse, quod alius bene valeat, Sen., Ep., XVII, 2, 10. Similiter facis, ac si me roges, cur te duobus contuear oculis et non altero coniveam, Cic., N. D., III, 3, 8. Oppium praesentem ut diligas, Egnatii absentis rem ut tueare, aequae a te peto ac si mea negotia essent (Unreal Present), Cic., Fam., XIII, 43, 2. Velim domum ad te scribas, ut mihi tui libri pateant non secus ac si ipse adesses (Unreal Present), Cic., Att., IV, 14, 1.

## 2. (a) Imperfect Subjunctive Unreal Present.

When the condition in which the latter member of the Comparison is embraced is Unreal, the Imperfect or Pluperfect must be used in the Protasis. The Predicate-relation of the Apodosis is also Unreal, and hence the Predicate to be supplied must be the Imperfect or Pluperfect, as indicated by the expressed Protasis. The Imperfect Subjunctive expresses the Unreal Present and the Pluperfect Subjunctive the Unreal Past relation.

Ex.—*Similes sunt dei, si ea nobis obiciunt, quorum nec scientiam neque explanatorem habeamus, tamquam si Poeni in senatu nostro loquerentur sine interprete*, Cic., Div., II, 64, 131. *Eius negotium sic velim suscipias, ut si esset res mea*, Cic., Fam., II, 14. *At accusat C. Corneli filius et id aequae valere debet ac si pater indicaret*, Cic., Sull., XVIII, 51. *Massilienses in eo honore audimus apud Romanos esse ac si medium umbilicum Graeciae incolerent*, Liv., XXXVII, 54, 2. *Dares nunc Buccillum: perinde esset, ac si hircum oleret*, Sen., Ep., XIII, 1, 13. *Apparet non esse ad actiones rerum necessariam iram, quam vos, quasi fortius aliquid ratione haberet, advocabitis*, Sen., Ira., I, 8, 4. *In multas pecunias alienissimorum hominum vi electis veris heredibus, tamquam heres esset, invasit* (Perfect), Cic., Phil., II, 16, 41. *Impetrat a senatu, ut dies sibi prorogaretur, quod tabulas suas ab accusatoribus Dolabellae obsignatas diceret, proinde quasi exscribendi potestatem non haberet*, Cic., Verr., I, 38, 98 (here *haberet* Unreal Past Progressive Action). *Vinctum ante se Thuynem agebat, ut si feram bestiam captam duceret* (Unreal), Nep., Dat., 3. *Sequani absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrebant*, Caes., B. G., I, 32 (here *adesset* not to be construed, perhaps, as Unreal, but rather as the expression of an action in the Past, corresponding with *adsit* in the Present). So, too, *Et, ut si in sua navi esset Fortuna, quo contenderat, pervenit*, Nep., Tim., 3.

## (b) Pluperfect Subjunctive Unreal Past.

Ex.—Itaque aedificiis omnibus, publicis privatis, sic pepercit quasi ad ea defendenda cum exercitu, non oppugnanda venisset, Cic., Verr., IV., 54, 120. Mea in te omnia officia constabunt non secus ac si te vidissem, Cic., Fam., III, 5, 4. Qua de re proinde habeo ac si scripsisses nihil esse, Cic., Att., III, 13, 1. Sed proinde ac si virtute vicissent neque ulla commutatio rerum posset accidere, per orbem terrarum fama ac litteris victoriam eius diei concelebrabant (observe association of Pluperfect and Imperfect), Caes., B. Civ., III, 72. Frater Xenarchi ita disseruit, primum omnium, tamquam non hic nobiscum fuisset, sed aut ex curia populi Romani veniret aut regum arcanis interesset, omnia scit et nuntiat, etc., Liv., XLI, 24, 3. Nihil reliquisse nisi tibi videbatur, qui tam multa excogitasti, ut si ante te nihil esset inventum, Plin. Min., Paneg., 35. Postremo dissimulandi causa aut sui expurgandi, sicut iurgio lacessitus foret, in senatum venit, Sall., Cat., 31. Haec precatus velut si sensisset auditas preces: Hinc, inquit, Iuppiter resistere iubet, Liv., I, 12, 7.

REM. 1. As in the last example, the Pluperfect Subjunctive may, in some cases, best be interpreted as the reproduction in the Past of the Perfect Subjunctive in a Present context, rather than as the Unreal Past. This, however, must be decided by the context. (Cf. 391, 1, Examples.)

REM. 2. It will be seen from the examples given above (2, a), that the Imperfect Subjunctive is regularly employed in the Conditional Sentence of Comparison to express an Unreal Present Condition. It must be observed, however, that the Present Subjunctive expresses, in effect, the same relation. But it cannot be maintained that the Present Subjunctive is identical with the Imperfect Subjunctive. The Present Subjunctive expresses the Future as the Time of the action, and if this Time is emphasized, then it denies the Present as the Time of its occurrence. So, likewise, *si* with the Present Subjunctive occasionally expresses, in fact, an Unreal Present relation.

Ex.—Nec erile hic negotium plus curat quasi (= quam si) non servitutum seruiat, Pl., M. G., 482 (compare quasi . . . serviret). Nam si honeste censeam te facere posse, suadeam, Pl., M. G., 1371. Cf. Si censerem . . . suaderem. Magis id dicas, si scias quod ego scio, Pl., M. G., 1429. Cf. Diceres, si scires.

(c) By *quasi vero*, less frequently by *quasi* alone, a statement is made ironically, always characterized by an objection, more or less explicit, to the matter of the statement. The Mood is, of course, the Subjunctive, and the Tenses the same as in the ordinary Conditional Sentence of Comparison.

Ex.—Conclamant Aedui et Litavicum, ut sibi consulat, obsecrant: Quasi vero, inquit ille, consilii sit res, ac non necesse sit nobis Gergoviam contendere.

Caes., B. G., VII, 38. Quia sunt haec cotidiana, angues non item; quasi vero referat, quod fieri potest, quam id saepe fiat, Cic., Div., II, 29, 62. At omnes reges, populi, nationes utuntur auspiciis. Quasi vero quicquam sit tam valde quam nihil sapere vulgare, aut quasi tibi ipsi in iudicando placeat multitudo, Cic., Div., II, 39, 81. Faba quidem Pythagorei utique abstinere (iubent), quasi vero eo cibo mens, non venter infletur, Cic., Div., II, 58, 119. Multa verba fecisti te, cum res videres, rationem causamque non quaerere; quid fieret, non cur fieret, ad rem pertinere. Quasi ego aut fieri concederem aut esset philosophi causam, cur quidque fieret, non quaerere, Cic., Div., II, 20, 46.

391. The Particles *tamquam*, *quasi*, occur in simple comparisons with the correlatives (*ita* and) *sic*, and occasionally without a correlative. To be observed, too, are *tamquam*, *velut*, in the office of illustration = *for example*, *as for example*.

Ex.—*Tamquam* a magistratu aut ab aliqua potestate legitima, *sic* a deo evocatus atque emissus exierit, Cic., Tusc., I, 30, 74. *Tamquam* levia quaedam vina nihil valent in aqua, *sic* Stoicorum ista magis gustata quam potata delectant, Cic., Tusc., V, 5, 13. Pythagoras respondit, nos quasi in mercatus quantam celebritatem ex urbe aliqua, *sic* in hanc vitam ex alia vita et natura profectos, alios gloriae servire, alios pecuniae, Cic., Tusc., V, 3, 9. Quasi poma ex arboribus, cruda si sunt vix evelluntur, si matura et cocta, decidunt, *sic* vitam adolescentibus vis aufert, senibus maturitas, Cic., Sen., XIX, 71. Mutum animas sensu comprehendit praesentia. Praeteritorum reminiscitur, cum id incidit, quo sensu admoneretur: *tamquam* (= *as, for example*) equus reminiscitur viae, cum, etc., Sen., Ep., XX, 7, 16. Est admiratio non nulla in bestiis aquatilibus iis, quae gignuntur in terra; *velut* (= *as, for example*) crocodili, simul ac primum nati possunt, aquam persequuntur, Cic., N. D., II, 48, 124. *Velut* (= *as, just as*) cum otium superat, senator sententiam dicit, alii Quirites suffragium ineunt, Liv., III, 17, 4.

392. The Particles *quasi* and *tamquam*, with the Subjunctive, are employed in the sense of *on the ground that*, *on the charge that*, *on the pretext that*, and in this office they occur even after verbs or words expressing statement (what is said) or thought. In some cases the Particles are parallel with *quod*.

Ex.—Hi variis criminationibus Senecam adoriuntur, *tamquam* ingentes et privatum supra modum evectas opes adhuc augeret, quodque studia civium in se verteret, Tac., Ann., XIV, 52 (observe *tamquam*—*quod*). Ipsum Silanum increpuit iisdem quibus patruum eius Torquatum, *tamquam* disponderet iam imperii curas praeficeretque rationibus libertos, Tac., Ann., XVI, 8. Agitur in exsilium, *tamquam* non siluisset, quae viderat pertuleratque, Tac., Ann., XVI, 20. Etenim crebro vulgi rumore lacerabatur, *tamquam* viros insontes ob invidiam aut metum exstinxisset, Tac., Ann., XV, 73. Ferebant Vespasianum, *tamquam* somno coniveret, a Phoebo liberto increpitum (esse), Tac., Ann., XVI, 5. Rumore ab obrectatoribus dilato, quasi eundem mox et discruciatum necasset, minimum auit, quin periret, etc., Suet., Aug., 14. Alii dictum factumque

eius criminantur, quasi classibus tempestate perditis exclamaverit, etiam invito Neptuno victoriam se adepturum, Suet., Aug., 16. Sed increbrescente rumore quasi ad occasionem maioris spei commoraretur, tantum non adversis tempestatibus Rhodum enavigavit, Suet., Tib., 11. Furius Scribonianus in exilium agitur, quasi finem per Chaldeos scrutaretur, Tac., Ann., XII, 52.

393. (a) The Particles *quasi*, *tamquam*, *velut*, *ceu* (rare), translated as *if*, are used as adverbial qualifications of a Participle and Adjective.

Ex.—Ex tuis litteris intellexi te subita re quasi debilitatum novas rationes tuendi mei quaerere, Cic., Att., XI, 5, 1. Ea nos quasi cogitata ab illo probamus, Cic., Fam., XII, 1, 1. Tum Mucius quasi remunerans meritum: Quandoquidem, inquit, est apud te virtuti honos, etc., Liv., II, 12, 15. Vitium corporis (sui) posita veste detexit, ne quasi ignaram fallere videretur, Suet., Galb., 3. Restitere Romani tamquam caelesti voce iussi, Liv., I, 12, 7. Antonius tamquam victor castra putavit se posse capere, Cic., Fam., X, 30, 4. Quae princeps tamquam necessaria reliquit, Plin. Min., Pan., 51. Dies iste, quem tamquam extremum reformidas, Sen., Ep., XVII, 2, 26. Quicquid fieri potest quasi futurum cogitemus, Sen., Ep., III, 3, 15. Nos tamen cupimus tamquam aut semper futura aut semper habituri, Sen., Ep., VI, 6, 27. Adventus eius tamquam nihil ad eos pertinens, Liv., XXXIII, 39, 7. Ita, velut defuncti regis imperio, in proxima eluvie pueros exponunt, Liv., I, 4, 5. Tertio die proelio abstinuit, degressus ad imam partem castrorum, veluti per devexum in mare brachium transitum tentaturus, Liv., XXXIV, 35, 23. Quaedam remedia aliis partibus corporis salutaria velut foeda et indecora adhiberi aliis nequeunt, Sen., Ep., XVI, 4, 29. Divitiae, velut unicum vitae decus, laudantur, Sen., Ep., XIX, 6, 12. Germanico usque adeo obtrectavit, ut gloriosissimas victorias (eius) ceu damnosas reipublicae increparet, Suet., Tib., 52. Papirius perinde ac motus dictis eorum respondit, Liv., IX, 14, 2. Haud secus quam pestifero sidere icti pavebant, Liv., VIII, 9, 12.

REM. These Particles are to be observed in connection with a Substantive.

Ex.—Dissilio risu, cum aptas illis facies tamquam (= *as if*) pictor assigno, Sen., Ep., XIX, 4, 26. Omnes homines summa ope niti decet, ne vitam silentio transeant veluti (= *as if*) pecora, Sall., Cat., I.

(b) The Particles *quasi*, *tamquam*, *velut*, occur with a Participle and Adjective in the sense of *on the ground that*, *on the charge that*, *on the pretext that* (see 392). To this connection is to be referred *ut*, *sicut* (= *as, as if*), with a Participle, always introducing a subjective ground.

Ex.—Dabant operam consiliis clandestinis, ut Hannibalem in suspicionem regi adducerent, tamquam ab ipsis corruptum, Nep., Han., 2. Quasi venalem domum inspecturus abscessit, Suet., Otho, 6. Posita brevi ratione quasi raptus de publico et suscipere imperium vi coactus, Palatium petit, Suet., Otho, 7. Matrem Liviam gravatus velut partes sibi aequas potentiae vindicantem con-

gressum eius assiduum vitavit, Suet., Tib., 50. Volitabant per fora, per domos, rura quoque, pedites equitesque permixti Germanis, quibus fidebat princeps, quasi externis, Tac., Ann., XV, 58. Quorum fiducia Monam insulam, ut vires rebellibus ministrantem, aggressus, terga occasione patefecit, Tac., Agr., 14. Ut re confecta, omnes curam et diligentiam remittunt, Caes., B. Civ., II, 13. Hostes maximo clamore, sicuti parta iam atque explorata victoria, turres testudinesque agere coeperunt, Caes., B. G., V, 43.

394. The Particles *quasi*, *tamquam*, and *velut* are often employed to introduce a qualifying or modifying term, as a figurative illustration. In this office they are translated *so to speak*; *as it were*.

Ex.—Causa vero mirifica quidam intervenit quasi vel testis opinionis meae vel sponsor humanitatis tuae, Cic., Fam., VII, 5, 2. Nobis opus est eorum ventorum moderator quidam et quasi gubernator, Cic., Fam., II, 6, 4. Quod autem quasi vereri videris, ne mihi tua consilia displiceant, Cic., Att., IX, 9, 1. Quod in eo quasi lumen aliquod probitatis et virtutis perspicere videamur, Cic., Am., VIII, 27. Viae quasi quaedam sunt ad oculos a sede animi perforatae, Cic., Tusc., I, 20, 46. Narrabat eum, cum quasi faces ei doloris admoventur, saepe dixisse, etc., Cic., Tusc., II, 25, 61. Quasi avem albam videntur bene sentientem civem videre, Cic., Fam., VII, 28, 2. Mors est quaedam quasi migratio commutatioque vitae, Cic., Tusc., I, 12, 27. Perturbationes, quas in vitam hominum stultitia quasi quasdam furias immittit, Cic., Tusc., III, 11, 25. Omnes artes quasi cognatione quadam inter se continentur, Cic., Arch. Poet., I, 2. Repentino quodam, quasi vento, impetu animi incitati, Cic., Off., I, 15, 49. Dissensio civilis quasi permixtio terrae oriri coepit, Sall., Ing., 41. Flumen, quasi in artum coeuntibus ripis, torrens ferebatur, Curt., VIII, 45. Dies et noctes, tamquam avis illa, mare prospecto, evolare cupio, Cic., Att., IX, 10, 2. Nam haec quoque, nisi tamquam lumini oleum instilles, extinguuntur senectute, Cic., Sen., XI, 36. Ea est sola officii tamquam custodia, Cic., Tusc., II, 23, 55. Omnium flagitiorum atque facinorum circum se tamquam stipatorum catervas habebat, Sall., Cat., 14. Romana pubes velut orbitatis metu icta maestum aliquamdiu silentium obtinuit, Liv., I, 16, 2. Quo se persaepe Numa sine arbitris velut ad congressum deae inferebat, Liv., I, 21, 3. Velut acies terni iuvenes magnorum exercituum animos gerentes concurrunt, Liv., I, 25, 3. Transmisso per viam tigillo capite adoperto velut sub iugum misit iuvenem, Liv., I, 26, 13. Tanta vis avaritiae in animos eorum veluti tabes invaserat, Sall., Jug., 32. Callisthenes veluti vindex publicae libertatis audiebat, Curt., VIII, 20. Haec est velut imperatoria virtus, Quint., VII, 10, 13.

## The Concessive Sentence.

**395.** The Concessive is related to the Conditional Sentence. The basis of the Concessive relation is essentially an adversative causal idea; that is, while, as a consequence of the statement in the Concessive subordinate clause (Protasis), a given conclusion is looked for in the leading clause (Apodosis), a different conclusion follows, or there is stated in the leading clause (Apodosis) a conclusion different from that suggested by the subordinate clause, which would naturally follow upon the statement in this clause, and which we expect. Thus, *Gaudeo, etsi nihil habeo, quod gaudeam*. The natural conclusion from *nihil habeo, quod gaudeam* is *non gaudeo*, but the Concessive form of the sentence *Etsi nihil habeo, quod gaudeam* gives the opposite result, *gaudeo*, as the fact, notwithstanding the statement in the Concessive or subordinate clause.

**396.** The Concessive member is introduced by—

(a) *Quamquam* (= *quam* + *quam* = to any extent), *quamvis* (= *quam* + *vis* = as far as you will (wish)), *quamlibet* (= *quam* + *libet* = as far as may be), *quantumvis* (= *quantum* + *vis* = to the extent you wish).

(b) *Etsi* (= *et* + *si* = even if, albeit), *etiamsi* (= *etiam* + *si* = even if), *tametsi* (= *tamen* + *etsi* = yet even if).

(c) *Ut* (see 213), *licet*, *cum* (as seen later), *si*.

**397.** In the leading clause occur the correlatives *tamen*, *attamen*, *sed*, *sed tamen*, *at*, *nihilominus*; also, *certe*, *saltem*, in a restrictive sense.

**398.** (a) The Particles *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *quamlibet*, *quantumvis*, the last two in late Latin, while retaining their regular translations, occur as adverbial qualifications of a Participle, Adjective, and Adverb.

Ex.—*Pallas Claudium stimulabat, sic apud Augustum, quamquam* (= *though*) *nepotibus subnixum, viguisse privignos*, Tac., Ann., XII, 25. *Iniit epulas, somno indulsit, ut quamquam coacta mors fortuitae similis esset*, Tac., Ann., XVI, 19. *Et patres quamquam rem parvam, tamen laeti acceperunt*, Liv., IV, 8, 5. *Multi prodiderunt, villam, quia non tota ad animum ei responderat (eum), totam diruisse, quamquam tenuem adhuc et obaeratum*, Suet., Caes., 46. *Philippense bellum, quamquam invalidus atque aeger, duplici proelio transegit*, Suet., Aug., 13. *Utinam posset aliqua ratione hoc crimen, quamvis falsa, modo humana atque usitata defendere*, Cic., Verr., III, 97, 224. *Haud dubia res visa*,

quin per invia circa nec trita antea quamvis longo ambitu circumduceret agmen, Liv., XXI, 36, 4. Octavia, quamvis rudibus annis, dolorem, caritatem, omnes affectus abscondere didicerat, Tac., Ann., XIII, 16. Quae fato manent, quamvis significata, non vitantur, Tac., H., I, 18. Quamvis iurato metuam tibi credere testi, Iuv., V, 5. Sed quamvis improbus annis atque mero fervens cavet hunc, quem, etc., Iuv., III, 282. Paulatim principem exheruit, praestititque etsi varium diu commodiorem tamen saepius et ad utilitates publicas praeiorem, Suet., Tib., 33. Nam, etsi commotus ingenio simulationum tamen falsa in sinu avi perdiderat, Tac., Ann., VI, 45. Saluberrimas putant medici in caelesti aqua servatas, etiamsi minime iucundas, Plin. Mai., XXIII, 12. (Villa) accipit ab hoc auras quamlibet sereno et placido die, Plin. Min., V, 6, 14. Nec mediocriter haesitavi sitne aliquod discrimen aetatum an quamlibet teneri nihil a robustioribus differant, Plin. Min., Plin. et Trai., 96, 2. Quamlibet opaco, Septentrionalique et praefrigido situ, Plin. Mai., XVII, 147. Simplex recti cura est, multiplex pravi et quantumvis novas declinationes capit, Sen., Ep., XX, 5, 17.

(b) The Particles *quamvis* (frequent), *quamquam*, *quamlibet*, *quantumvis*, occur with an Adjective and Adverb (less frequently with a Participle used adjectively), and indicate an enhancement (*however, ever so, as much as you will, as much as may be*) of the (Participle), Adjective, and Adverb. In some cases the Particles in this office are not readily distinguished from them as simple Concessive Particles (although).

Ex.—Omitto divitias, quas quivis, quamvis indignus, habere potest, Cic., Tusc., V, 16, 46. Ager, quamvis fertilis, sine cultura fructuosus esse non potest, Cic., Tusc., II, 5, 13. Videmus rudem illum et inexercitatum quamvis levi ictu ploratus turpissimos edere, Cic., Tusc., II, 16, 38. Magni sua putabant interesse (decumas) publice potius quamvis magno emi quam in aliquem istius emissarium inciderent, Cic., Verr., III, 42, 99. Vestra virtus expectatur, apud quos omne honestis consiliis robur, et sine quibus, quamvis egregia, invalida sunt, Tac., H., I, 38. Quamvis magno exercitu, Nep., Dat., 4. Quamvis egregius homo novus, Sall., Cat., 24. Quamvis languida aqua, Liv., I, 4, 4. Quamvis sera spes, Liv., V, 6, 2. Quamvis longa gens, Iuv., XIII, 207. Quamvis improbe, Cic., Verr., III, 85, 195. Quamvis callide, Cic., Verr., II, 54, 134. Stultitiam accusare quamvis copiose licet, Cic., Tusc., III, 30, 73. Multa dici quamvis fuse lateque possunt, Cic., Tusc., IV, 26, 57. Alii putant multos, qui confictari adversis videantur, beatos, ac plerosque, quamquam magnas per opes, miserimos, Tac., Ann., VI, 22. Quamlibet abundans rerum copia, Quint., VII, Prooem., 1. Oratio quamlibet clara, Quint., VIII, 6, 4. Navigatur quamlibet magnis navigiis, Plin. Mai., VI, 13. Vanus et Euganea quantumvis mollior agna? Iuv., VIII, 15. Quantumvis facundus et promptus, Suet., Cal., 53. Quinquagesimo anno imperium cepit quantumvis mirabili casu, Suet., Claud., 10. Quantumvis salubritur et in tempore, Suet., Cl., 21.



### Mood in the Concessive Member of the Sentence.

399. In the Concessive member of the Sentence occur both the Indicative and the Subjunctive. In some cases the Mood is, to a certain extent, determined by the Particle which introduces the member.

1. The Indicative is the regular Mood with *quamquam*. Any Tense.

Ex.—*Quamquam omnis virtus nos ad se allicit facitque, ut eos diligamus, in quibus ipsa inesse videatur, tamen iustitia et liberalitas id maxime efficit*, Cic., Off., I, 17, 56. *Mihi quidem Scipio, quamquam est subito ereptus, vivit tamen semperque vivet*, Cic., Am., XXVII, 102. *Quamquam dudum nihil habeo, quod ad te scribam, scribo tamen*, Cic., Att., XIV, 12, 3. *Ea munimenta dux Romanus, quamquam sine robore legionum sociales copias ducebat, perumpere aggreditur*, Tac., Ann., XII, 31. *Quamquam adeo excellebat Aristides abstinentia, tamen exsilio decem annorum multatus est*, Nep., Arist., 1. *Graeci quamquam solvendarum legum id principium esse censebant bona quoque, quae exstarent, restituere damnatis*, Curt., X, 7.

(a) The Subjunctive rarely occurs with *quamquam* in Cicero, while it is quite frequently found with this Particle in late Latin and in poetry.

Ex.—*Atque id in poetis cerni licet, quam sint inter sese Ennius, Pacuvius Acciusque dissimiles, quamquam omnibus par paene laus in dissimili scribendi genere tribuatur* (perhaps Potential), Cic., De Or., III, 7, 27. *Quae quamquam ita sint in promptu, ut res disputatione non egeat, tamen sunt a nobis alio loco disputata*, Cic., Off., I, 2, 6. *Me impulit tui caritas ut, quamquam tibi consilium deesset, etc.*, Cic., Fam., X, 6, 2 (Subjective *Oratio Obliqua*?) *Terret me haec tua tam pertinax valetudo, et quamquam te temperantissimum noverim, vereor tamen ne, etc.*, Plin. Min., VII, 1, 1. *Nec praeteribo, quamquam nonnullis leve visum iri putem*, Nep., Att., 13 (here *putem* may be accepted as Potential). *Quamquam sciret*, Suet., Cl., 20. *Quamquam in armis Pompeius esset*, Suet., Caes., 69. *Quamquam responderit*, Suet., Caes., 79. *Quamquam essent*, Iuv., X, 34. *Quamquam dormisset*, Iuv., VI, 88. *Quamquam faciant*, Iuv., VII, 15. *Quamquam non essent*, Iuv., X, 34. *Quamquam sint*, Iuv., XII, 25.

REM. With *quamquam* the Potential Subjunctive regularly occurs, also the Subjunctive with the Indefinite Second Person and in *Oratio Obliqua*. In these cases the Mood is decided without reference to the Particle.

Ex.—*Nam scelus, a Pyrrha quamquam omnia syrmata volvas, nullus apud tragicos populus facit*, Iuv., XV, 30. *Quamquam plena omnia gypso Chrysippi invenias*, Iuv., II, 5. *Nam vi quidem regere patriam aut parentes, quamquam et possis et delicta corrigas, tamen importunum est*, Sall., Iug., 3. *Imperatores quamquam paratissimos milites ad proeliandum videant, eos tamen adhortantur*, Cic., Phil., IV, 5, 11.

2. The Subjunctive is the regular Mood with *quamvis*. Any Tense. Here the verbal element *vis* influences the Mood.

Ex.—*Nihil agis, dolor, quamvis sis molestus, numquam te esse confitebor malum*, Cic., Tusc., II, 25, 61. *Senectus quamvis non sit gravis, tamen aufert eam viriditatem, in qua etiam nunc erat Scipio*, Cic., Am., III, 11. *Illæ, quamvis ridicula essent, mihi tamen risum non moverunt*, Cic., Fam., VII, 32, 3. *Quamvis nunc tuum consilium sit et votum celeriter me reverti, tamen optare potius debes, ut Nerone dignus revertar*, Suet., Nero, 23. *Tacitis quoque et brutis, quamvis in cetera torpeant, ad vivendum sollertia est*, Sen., Ep., XX, 4, 24. *Poppaea mortem obiit. Neque venenum crediderim, quamvis quidam scriptores tradant*, Tac., Ann., XVI, 6. *Quamvis gratia vicerit*, Iuv., XIII, 4.

REM. 1. In late Latin and in poetry the Indicative occurs with *quamvis* (= *however much*, etc.).

Ex.—*Erat inter eos dignitate regia, quamvis carebat nomine*, Nep., Milt., 2. *Quamvis est omnis hyperbole ultra fidem, non tamen esse debet ultra modum*, Quint., VIII, 6, 73. *Non tibi, quamvis infesto animo et minaci perveneras, ingrediendi fines ira cecidit?* Liv., II, 40, 7 (here, however, *quamvis* may be construed as defining *infesto* and *minaci*). *Quamvis concesserat*, Hor., Od., I, 28, 14. *Quamvis conspicitur*, Hor., Od., III, 7, 26.

REM. 2. The verbal element (*vis*) of *quamvis* is occasionally inflected. The Tense of the verb is determined by the context and at the same time decides the Time of the dependent Subjunctive in the translation.

Ex.—*Quam volent illi cedant, otio consulentes, tamen a re publica revocantur*, Cic., Phil., II, 44, 113 (translate, *Although they shall retire (cedant) as demanded by volent*). *Hic quam volet Epicurus locetur, tamen ex hoc, quod etiam ipse probat, numquam me movebit*, Cic., N. D., II, 17, 46. *Quam volent in conviviis faceti dicaces, non numquam etiam ad vinum disertis sint*, etc., Cic., Cael., XXVIII, 67.

REM. 3. The verbal element of *quamvis* is inflected even as an adverbial qualification of an Adjective. (Cf. *quamvis* with an Adjective.)

Ex.—*Quod commodum est expectate facinus quam vultis improbum*, Cic., Verr., V, 5, 11. *Et hac actione quam voletis multi dicent*, Cic., Verr., II, 42, 102. *Esse quam vellet iniquus poterat impune*, Cic., Fin., II, 18, 57.

3. In late Latin *quamlibet* quite frequently and *quantumvis* rarely occur as conjunctions with the Subjunctive. In some cases the Particles may be accepted as adverbial qualifications of an Adjective, or alone, with the Potential Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Quamlibet parvum sit, quod contulerit aetas prior, maiora tamen aliqua discet puer illo anno, quo minora didicisset*, Quint., I, 1, 18. *Quamlibet sint ad dicendum, quod volumus, accommodata, ieiuna tamen erunt et infirma, nisi*,

etc., Quint., V, 13, 56. **Prodit se, quamlibet custodiatur, simulatio**, Quint., XII, 1, 29. **Adice nunc, quod ista, quantumvis exigua sint, in maius excedunt**, Sen., Ep., XII, 3, 12 (but *quantumvis* is doubtful reading; perhaps *quamvis* is correct reading).

4. The Particle *licet* (= *although*) is construed with the Subjunctive. The form *licit* retains its verbal force (a verb of *allowing, permitting*) in the Subjunctive and Tense sequence. As the Present Tense, it is followed by the Present and Perfect Subjunctive. It is rarely followed by a Past Subjunctive Tense. In such cases *licet* assumes fully the character of a Conjunction. In connection with a Past Tense *quamvis* rather than *licet* should be used.

Ex.—**Licet iste dicat emisse se, credite hoc mihi, iudices**, etc., Cic., Verr., IV, 59, 133. **Licet felicitas (ei) aspirare videatur, tamen ad ultimum temeritati non sufficit**, Curt., IV, 54. **Licet strenuum metum putes esse, velocior tamen spes est**, Curt., VII, 16. **Licet cessaverint illae (bestiae) tempestate detentae, tu tamen meruisti ut**, etc., Plin. Min., VI, 34, 3. **Nam si (aedes) facta est, licet collapsa sit, religio eius occupavit solum**, Plin. et Trai., LXXI. **Licet ipse videret plura domi fraga et maiores glandis acervos**, Iuv., XIII, 56.

REM. The form *licet*, as a pure verb with the Subjunctive and without *ut*, is not to be confounded with *licet* as a Conjunction.

Ex.—**Clodium praesentem fregi in senatu oratione perpetua, ex qua licet pauca degustes**, Cic., Att., I, 16, 8. **Studium deponat licebit**, Cic., Rosc. Am., XVII, 49.

(a) The form *licet*, while retaining its conjunctive force (*although*), is sometimes inflected. The Time of the Subjunctive dependency is reproduced in the translation by the Tense of *licet*.

Ex.—**Detrahat auctori multum fortuna licebit, tu tamen ingenio clara ferere meo**, Ov., Tr., V, 14, 3.

(b) The conjunctive *licet* (= *although*) occurs associated with *quamvis* (= *ever so much, as much as you will*), the adverbial qualification of the Subjunctive dependent upon *licet*.

Ex.—**Quamvis licet insectemur istos, ut Carneades solebat, metuo ne soli philosophi sint**, Cic., Tusc., IV, 24, 53. **Quamvis licet Menti delubra et Virtuti et Fidei consecremus, tamen haec in nobis ipsis sita videmus**, Cic., N. D., III, 36, 88. **Et praeter eos quamvis enumeres multos licet, quom deni creentur, non nullos in omni memoria reperies perniciosos tribunos**, Cic., Leg., III, 10, 24.

(c) The adverbial qualification of an Adjective and Participle by *licet* and the Indicative with conjunctive *licet* (= *although*) is late Latin.

Ex.—(*Dolorem*) *licet contumacissimum, cotidie insurgentem et contra remedia effervescentem, tamen illum efficacissimum mitigandae ferociae tempus enervat*, Sen., *Ad Marc.*, VIII, 1. *Isque, licet caeli regione remotos, mente deos adiit*, Ov., *Met.*, XV, 62. *Licet inter gesta et facta videtur quaedam esse subtilis differentia, attamen*, etc., Dig., I., 16, 58.

5. *Si, etsi, etiamsi, tametsi*. While with these Particles in a Concessive sense the Indicative or Subjunctive is employed according to the principles controlling the use of Mood in the Conditional Sentence, yet, as a matter of fact, with *etsi* and *tametsi* the Indicative is oftener found than the Subjunctive, while with *etiamsi* the Subjunctive occurs, perhaps, as often as the Indicative. But it must be borne in mind that the Conditional relation to be expressed is the controlling principle by which the use of Mood is determined.

(a) *Si* occurs in a Concessive sense, but not frequently.

Ex.—*Si Massilienses per delectos et principes cives summa iustitia reguntur, inest tamen in ea condicione populi similitudo quaedam servitutis*, Cic., *Rep.*, I, 27, 43. *Non possum disposite istum accusare, si cupiam*, Cic., *Verr.*, IV, 40, 87 (here *si cupiam* = *though (if) I should desire it*). *Cum legati admonerent, si ipse his (muneribus) facile careret, liberis tamen suis prospiceret*, Nep., *Ph.*, 1.

(b) *Etsi*, usually with the correlative *tamen* in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Etsi multis rebus significat se nobis esse amicum... tamen utrumque considerandum est*, etc., Cic., *Att.*, VIII, 3, 2. *Etsi scio non iucundissimum me nuntium vobis allaturum, tamen visum est, quoquo modo res se haberet, vos certiores facere*, Cic., *Fam.*, IV, 12, 1. *Etsi satis ex Furnio nostro cognoram, quae tua voluntas esset, tamen tuis litteris lectis liquidius de toto sensu tuo iudicavi*, Cic., *Fam.*, X, 10, 1. *Nos etsi graviter ab iis laesi eramus... tamen nostrae humanitatis causa eorum salutis rationem habuimus*, Cic., *Fam.*, X, 34, 2. *Ubi etsi adiectum aliquid numero sit, magna certe caedes fuit*, Liv., III, 8, 10 (here interpret *adiectum sit* from the standpoint of the Perfect Subjunctive in an Ideal Condition (= *although (albeit, even if) there should prove to be some exaggeration of number*); or, perhaps, better as Potential Subjunctive). Cf. *Etsi optimum sit*, Cic., *Off.*, I, 24, 84. *Etsi staretur*, Liv., XXI, 19, 4.

(c) *Tametsi*, often with the correlative *tamen* in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Tametsi de absoluteione istius, neque ipse iam sperat nec populus Romanus metuit, de impudentia singulari, quod adest, quod respondet, sunt qui mirentur*, Cic., *Verr.*, I, 2, 6. *Hoc quam nihil sit, tametsi ex multis Siciliae civitatibus didicisti, tamen etiam in hac ipsa sativitate cognosce*, Cic., *Verr.*, I, 35, 88. *Iste, tametsi singulari est audacia, tamen ad pupillae matrem summitebat*, Cic., *Verr.*, I, 41, 105. *Caesar decimam legionem in dextro cornu collocaverat, tametsi erat Dyrrhachinis proeliis vehementer attenuata*, Caes., *B. Civ.*, III, 89. *Tametsi erant munitiones castrorum magnae, tamen celeriter aggressus Pompeianos ex vallo deturbavit*, Caes., *B. Civ.*, III, 58. *Quae tametsi*

**Caesar intellegebat, tamen legatos appellat**, *Caes., B. G., VII, 43.* **Memini, tametsi nullus moneas**, *Ter., Eun., 216.*

(d) *Etiamsi*, quite often with the Indicative, with the Subjunctive, when the condition demands it. Here, too, the correlative is quite usual in the leading clause.

**Ex.—Quibus in rebus, etiamsi fidelitas summa est...tamen species ipsa tam gratiosi liberti aut servi dignitatem habere nullam potest**, *Cic., Q. Frat., I, 2, 3.* **Sed haec, etiamsi non prudenter acta (sunt), tamen sine culpa sunt (culpa carent)**, *Cic., Att., XVI, 7, 2.* **Etiamsi quid scribas non habebis, scribito tamen**, *Cic., Fam., XVI, 26, 2.* **Quibus ex rebus confiat et efficitur id honestum, quod etiamsi nobilitatum non sit, tamen honestum est**, *Cic., Off., I, 5, 17.* **Etiamsi...arbitretur**, *Cic., Off., I, 43, 154.*

**REM.** In the association *etiam si*, if *etiam* points to a preceding statement or thought and not to what follows, the elements, *etiam si*, are to be taken separately. They do not indicate a Concessive Relation, but a pure Conditional Sentence, with the Apodosis either expressed or to be supplied with *etiam*.

**Ex.—Etiam, si hoc natura praescribit ut, etc., necesse est, etc.**, *Cic., Off., III, 6, 27.* **Mox etiam, si vacas, sequere et procul audi**, *Hor., Epist., II, 2, 95.*

6. It should be remembered that in the statement of Unreal Relations any of the Concessive Particles require the Subjunctive and the Tenses of unreality, the Imperfect (Unreal Present) and Pluperfect or Imperfect (Unreal Past), the Imperfect representing an Unreal Progressive action or state in the Past; also in connection with the Indefinite Second Person.

**400.** A Concessive relation may be implied in a sentence, indicated by *tamen* in the leading member; in a sentence formed by *ita (sic)* and *ut* (Consecutive) and the Subjunctive; in a sentence of Comparison, *ut...ita (sic)*; or in a clause formed by the Preposition *in* and the Ablative, as indicated by *tamen* in the leading clause.

**Ex.—Locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum: tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare coepit**, *Caes., B. G., V, 21.* **Hic dies nostris longe gravissimus fuit: sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut, etc.**, *Caes., B. G., V, 43.* **Pompeius omnia pollicetur et Caesar: quibus ego ita credo, ut nihil de mea comparatione deminuum**, *Cic., Q. Frat., I, 2, 16.* **Quod a me ita praecautum atque ita provisum est, non ut ego de optima illa mea ratione decederem**, *Cic., Att., II, 1, 6.* **Habenda ratio est rei familiaris, sed ita ut avaritiae absit suspicio**, *Cic., Off., II, 18, 64.* **Forte is integer fuit, ut universis solus nequaquam par, sic adversus singulos ferox**, *Liv., I, 25, 7.* **Ut cetera extinguuntur, sic sepulcra sanctiora fiunt vetustate**, *Cic., Phil., IX, 6, 14.* **Hoc principium belli ut summae rerum prosperum eventum, ita haud sane incruentam victoriam Ro-**

manis portendit, Liv., XXI, 29, 4. So, too, *sicut...ita*. Convenerant duces sicuti inter se nondum satis noti, ita iam imbutus uterque quadam admiratione alterius, Liv., XXI, 39, 7. In variis voluntatibus regnari tamen omnes volebant, Liv., I, 17, 3. Noscitabatur tamen in tanta deformitate, Liv., II, 23, 4. Anseres non fefeller, quibus sacris lunonis in summa inopia tamen abstinebatur, Liv., V, 47, 4.

401. The Particles *quamquam* and *etsi*, less frequently *tametsi*, and very rarely *quasi*, introduce a sentence or leading clause which serves to restrict or limit the statement of a preceding sentence or clause. In this office the Particles are translated *however*, *and yet*, *but yet*. They occupy the first place in the sentence or clause introduced by them. The proposition thus introduced may be presented parenthetically; it is always a leading proposition and embodies a leading thought.

(a) *Quamquam* (very frequent).

Ex.—Haec vides quanto illustriora futura sint, cum aliquantum ex provincia atque ex imperio laudis accesserit. *Quamquam* te ita gerere volo, quae, etc., Cic., Fam., I, 7, 9. Amo etiam Pisonem, cuius iudicium de genere suspicor visum iri grave. *Quamquam* genus belli quod sit vides, Cic., Att., VII, 13, 1. Reliqua magna sunt ac multa, sed posita omnia in vobis: *quamquam* primum quidque explicemus, Cic., Fam., XII, 1, 1. Si ego tuum (commentarium) ante legissem, furatum me abs te esse diceres. *Quamquam* tua illa mihi incompta visa sunt, Cic., Att., II, 1, 1. Non tantum mali est peccare principes: *quamquam* est magnum hoc per se ipsum malum: quantum illud, quod permulti imitatores principum existunt, Cic., Leg., III, 13, 31. *Quamquam* (= *however*) eum dilexit Cicero, ut ne frater quidem ei carior fuerit, Cic.

(b) *Etsi*, quite as frequent as *quamquam*.

Ex.—Do, do poenas temeritatis meae. *Etsi* quae fuit illa temeritas? Cic., Att., IX, 10, 2. Noli putare tolerabiles horum insanias nec unius modi fore: *etsi* quid te horum fugit? Cic., Att., IX, 7, 5. Ciceroni meo Arpini potissimum togam puram dedi, idque municipibus nostris fuit gratum. *Etsi* omnes et illos et qua iter feci maestos vidi, Cic., Att., IX, 19, 1. *Etsi* (= *however*) ille domestico summo genere erat, Nep., Eum., 1.

(c) *Tametsi*.

Ex.—*Tametsi* ita de meo facto loquor, quasi ego illud mea voluntate potius quam vestra iniuria adductus fecerim, Cic., Verr., I, 11, 29. *Tametsi* quae est ista laudatio, cum laudator interrogatus laedat necesse est? Cic., Verr., IV, 9, 19. Est Herennius quidam tribunus, quem tu fortasse ne nosti quidem. *Tametsi* potes nosse, is ad plebem P. Clodium traducit, Cic., Att., I, 18, 4. *Tametsi* (= *but (and) yet*) quid homini potest dari maius quam gloria et laus et aeternitas? Plin. Min., III, 21, 6.

(d) *Quamvis* (rare).

Ex.—*Quamvis* (= *however*) ante haec sponsalia numquam ad suorum quem-

quam litteras misit, quin Attico mitteret quid ageret, Nep., Att., 20. Non possum ferre, Quirites, Graecam urbem. Quamvis quota portio faecis Achaei? Iuv., III, 61.

**REM.** Sometimes the context alone can decide whether *quamquam*, *etsi*, etc., are restrictive, introducing a leading proposition, or Concessive, introducing a subordinate relation. Sometimes the difference is unessential.

**Ex.**—*Nihil necesse est mihi de me ipso dicere, quamquam* (may be *however*) *est id quidem senile aetatique nostrae conceditur*, Cic., Sen., IX, 30. *Habet res deliberationem, etsi* (may be rendered *but yet*) *ex parte magna tibi assentior*, Cic., Att., VII, 3, 3.

## The Relative and Relative Clause.

**402.** The Relative is a subordinate or explanatory clause. It is introduced by the Relative Pronoun *qui*=*who*, *which*, referring to an antecedent, and serving to define it. In its explanatory office it stands in a Predicate Attributive relation to the Substantive idea (= antecedent) expressed in a preceding and leading clause. The antecedent is presented—

(a) By a Substantive Demonstrative.

(b) By a Substantive in connection with an Attributive (Adjective) Demonstrative.

(c) By a simple Substantive.

(d) Sometimes the antecedent is not expressed.

**Ex.**—(a) *Is, hic, ille, iste, qui venit.*

(b) *Laudo illum militem, qui fortiter pugnat.*

(c) *Laudo militem, qui fortiter pugnat.*

(d) *Qui fortiter pugnat, laudatur.*

**403.** The Relative clause, as may be gathered from the preceding, is introduced by *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, etc. The correlative Demonstrative is *is*, *hic*, *ille*, etc. The gender and number of the Relative are decided by the gender and number of its antecedent; its case is decided by the context. Translate the simple Relative *qui* by *who*, *which*, etc.

**Ex.**—*Est iucunda laus quae* (=which) *ab iis proficiscitur, qui* (=who) *ipsi in laude vixerunt*, Cic., Fam., XV, 6, 1. *Si hoc imperium mihi molestum erit, utar ea porta, quam primam videro*, Cic., Att., VII, 7, 4. *Sunt, qui putant posse te non decedere*, Cic., Fam., I, 9, 25.

REM. The Mood with the simple Relative, translated *who*, *which*, is the Indicative outside of the *Oratio Obliqua*.

404. The Relative clause is introduced by the Relative Particles *ubi*, expressing a general *at* or *where* relation, *quo*, expressing a general *whither* relation, *unde*, expressing a general *whence* relation. The regular and simplest correlatives are *ibi*, *eo*, *inde* = *there*, *thither*, *thence*.

(a) The Relative Particles define relations in space, time, and abstract conceptions; they refer also to passages in a book, to parts of a speech, and generally to things and even to persons. In these offices they represent the Relative Pronoun in the proper case with or without a Preposition. The Particles *unde* and *quo* are oftener used than the rest in referring to persons.

Ex.—*Ubi* (= *quo loco*) *nunc Vicae Potae est, domus in infimo clivo aedificata*, Liv., II, 7, 12. *Neque nobis adhuc praeter te quisquam fuit, ubi* (= *apud quem*) *nostrum ius contra illos obtineremus*, Cic., Quinct., IX, 34. *Novus populus, ubi omnis repentina atque ex virtute nobilitas est*, Liv., I, 34, 6. *Ibi quaeratis socios censeo, ubi Saguntina clades ignota est*, Liv., XXI, 19, 10. *Habebam quo confugerem, ubi* (= *in quo*) *conquiescerem*, Cic., Fam., IV, 6, 2. *Ubi est dignitas, nisi ubi honestas?* Cic., Att., VII, 11, 1. *Ubi* (= *quo tempore*) *gallum cantum audivit, avum suum revixisse putat: mensam tolli iubet*, Cic., Pis., XXVII, 67. *Colonia, quo* (= *in quam*) *tria milia civium Romanorum scriberentur*, Liv., V, 24, 4. *Lucus erat, quo se deferebat*, Liv., I, 21, 3. *Flumen quo* (= *ad quod*) *fuga inclinavit*, Liv., I, 27, 11. *Mortuus est Cumis quo* (= *quam in urbem*) *se contulerat*, Liv., II, 21, 5. *Mare, quo* (= *in quod*) *Rhenus influit*, Caes., B. G., IV, 1. *Locus, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset*, Caes., B. G., II, 16. *Quo* (= *in quem*) *temere traxit fortuna facinus, scribam pro rege obtruncat*, Liv., II, 12, 7. *Tesseram dari iubet: armati ad se convenirent. Quo* (= *ad quem*) *ubi taciti convenerunt*, etc., Liv., VII, 35, 1. *Vincit sententia, ut legati ad Hannibalem mitterentur. Quo* (= *ad quem*) *priusquam iretur*, etc., Liv., XXIII, 6, 6. *Pars maxima ad Syphacem, quo intenderant iter, pervenerunt*, Liv., XXIX, 30, 6. *Inde ex sociis circa populis, quo aestate comportatum erat, devehit frumentum in castra iussit*, Liv., XXV, 13, 5. *Ut esset, quo* (= *ad quem*) *consultum plebes iret*, Liv., I, 20, 6. *Ea, quo* (= *in quae*) *innupserat*, Liv., I, 34, 4. *Nominavit L. Domitium, cuius domum constitutam fuisse, unde* (= *ex qua*) *eruptio fieret*, Cic., Att., II, 24, 2. *Adversus eos et ne quid simul ab Tusculo, unde suspectum bellum erat, repentini periculi oriretur, P. Valerius consul factus est*, Liv., II, 16, 2. *Iusiurandum populi recitat; neminem regnare passuros nec esse Romae, unde* (= *a quo*) *periculum libertati foret*, Liv., II, 2, 5. *Legatus ubi ad fines eorum venit, unde* (= *a quibus*) *res repetuntur*, etc., Liv., I, 32, 6. *Dicunt ibi imperium fore, unde victoria fuerit*, Liv., I, 24, 2. *Hem, mea lux, meum desiderium, unde omnes opem petere solebant!* Cic., Fam., XIV, 2, 2. *Qua re eo, unde discedere non oportuit, aliquando revertamur*, Cic., Att., II, 16, 3.



**405.** The Relative in its Predicate-Attributive office, in the beginning of a sentence or clause, reproduces a distinctly stated antecedent in different relations, to be determined by the context. The relations are those of a simple Demonstrative (Determinative) = *he, she, it*; of a Demonstrative with a Copulative = *and he, and she, and it*; of a Demonstrative with an Adversative = *but he, etc.*; of a Demonstrative in contrast = *yet he, etc.*; of a Demonstrative with a causal Particle = *for (as) he, etc.*; of a Demonstrative with condition = *if he, etc.*: that is, the Relative in the beginning of a sentence or clause may, in its translation, reproduce its antecedent by a Demonstrative (*he, she, it*) = *is, ea, id, etc.*; by *et is*; by *sed (autem) is, etc.*; by *nam is, etc.*; by *is, etc., tamen*; by *si is, etc.*

**Ex.**—*Quem (=him) ingressum in sermonem Pompeius interpellavit et loqui plura prohibuit, Caes., B. Civ., III, 18. Quos omnes (=all these) conservatos Caesar domum remisit, Caes., B. Civ., III, 27. Quibus litteris acceptis (=when this letter was received) consilium Scipio iterque commutat, Caes., B. Civ., III, 36. Quod (=and this) vobis brevi probassem, nisi mihi fortuna proprium consilium extorsisset, Cic., Fam., X, 35, 1. Quos (=and these) adaequare apud Caesarem gratia intellegebatur, Caes., B. G., VI, 12. Caesar in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui (=and they) se dediderunt, Caes., B. G., II, 15. Crebrae eruptiones fiebant ex oppido, ignesque aggeri et turribus inferebantur: quae (=but these) facile nostri milites repellebant, Caes., B. Civ., II, 2. Quod (=but this) fore suspicatus Caesar... mane Dyrrhachium venit, Caes., B. Civ., III, 41. Centuriones nutu vocibusque hostes, si introire (in castra) vellent, vocare coeperunt: quorum (=but of them) progredi ausus est nemo, Caes., B. G., V, 43. Tu a certo sensu et vero iudicas de nobis: quod (=but this) isti ne faciant, summa malevolentia et livore impediuntur, Cic., Fam., XI, 10, 1. Oculorum, inquit Plato, est in nobis sensus acerrimus: quibus (=yet by them, but by them = tamen illis, sed illis) sapientiam non cernimus, Cic., Fin., II, 16, 52. Nicanor Piraeo est potitus. Ad quem recuperandum ille neminem ad arma vocavit. Sine quo (=but (and) yet without it, in a sense approaching the restrictive quamquam) Athenae omnino esse non possunt, Nep., Phoc., 2. Neque frustra antiquitus institutum est, ut signa undique concinerent clamoremque universi tollerent: quibus (=for by these (nam his (iis)) rebus et hostes terreri et suos incitari existimaverunt, Caes., B. Civ., III, 92. Sed adversus hostes, inquit, ira est necessaria? Nusquam minus: ubi (=for there, for in their case) non effusus esse oportet impetus, sed temperatos et oboedientes, Sen., Ira., I, 11, 1. Virtuti opera danda est, sine qua (=for without it = nam sine ea) amicitiam consequi non possumus, Cic., Am., XXII, 84. Quid mihi aut vita aut civitate opus est, quam (=if it = si eam) beneficio Caesaris habere videbor? Caes., B. Civ., III, 18. Non est diuturna possessio, in quam (=if into it = si in eam) gladio inducimur, Curt., VIII, 27. Cf. Multas ad res peritiles Xenophontis libri sunt, quos legite, Cic., Sen., XVII, 59 (here quos = itaque eos, or, stronger, eos igitur).*

## Mood in the Relative Clause.

**406.** The simple Relative *qui* takes, as stated (403, Rem.), the Indicative, as do also the Indefinite Relative Pronouns, Substantive and Adjective. These, while indefinite, so far imply a reality or the real existence of the person or thing defined, that a positive predication is made of them. Hence, with *quicumque*, *qualiscumque*, *quantuscumque*, *quisquis*, *quotquot*, *quotcumque*, *ubicumque*, *utcumque*, etc., the Mood is regularly the Indicative.

Ex.—*Hi, quamcumque in partem impetum fecerant, hostes loco cedere cogeabant*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 41. *Quaecumque ad proximi diei oppugnationem opus sunt, noctu comparantur*, Caes., B. G., V, 40. *Quaecumque iter feci, perfeci, ut*, etc., Cic., Att., V, 21, 3. *Ubicumque es, in eadem es navi*, Cic., Fam., II, 5, 1. *Utcumque res sese habet, magis verecundia nostra adversus regem nobis obstat, quam*, etc., Liv., XXXVII, 54, 7. (*Oculi*) *qui, quocumque inciderunt, consuetudinem fori et pristinum morem iudiciorum requirunt*, Cic., Mil., I, 1. *Quantumcumque itineris equitatu efficere poterat, cotidie progrediebatur*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 102. *Te rogo, ut memineris, quantaecumque tibi accessiones fient et fortunae et dignitatis, eas te non potuisse consequi, nisi*, etc., Cic., Fam., II, 1, 2. *Tu cura ut litteras ad me mittas, quotienscumque habebis cui des*, Cic., Fam., XVI, 11, 3. *Homines benevolos, qualescumque sunt, grave est insequi contumelia*, Cic., Att., XIV, 14, 5. *Dum ades, quidquid provideri potest, provide*, Cic., Att., V, 11, 1. *Quidquid citra Collatiam agri erat Sabinis ademptum*, Liv., I, 38, 1. *Quoquo sese verterint Stoici, iaceat necesse est omnis eorum sollertia*, Cic., Div., II, 9, 24. *Ex quo conficitur, ut, si leges duae, aut si plures erunt, aut quotquot erunt, conservari non possint*, Cic., Inv., II, 49, 145. *Quodsi quaelibet vel minima res reperietur*, etc., Cic., Rosc. Amer., III, 8.

**407.** The Relative takes the Predicate in the Subjunctive in the following cases. Tense decided by the Rules for Sequence of Tenses.

1. In *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—*Apud Hypanim fluvium, Aristoteles ait, bestiolas quasdam nasci, quae unum diem vivant*, Cic., Tusc., I, 39, 94. *Dicunt omnes omnium ortus, quicumque gignantur in omni terra, quae incolatur, eosdem esse*, Cic., Div., II, 44, 92. *Spes victoriae augetur adeo ut, quidquid intercederet temporis, id morari reditum in Italiam videretur*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 82. *Mihi maximus laborum meorum erit, si Olympias mater immortalitati consecratur, quandocumque excesserit vita* (Subjective *Oratio Obliqua*) Curt., IX, 26.

(a) In this connection is to be noted the translation of the Relative with the Subjunctive in presenting the duty or destination of the subject, what is imposed upon and expected of him = *who is to* (*was to*), *who shall* (*should*).

Ex.—**L. Quinctius Cincinnatus pater Kaesonis consul creatur, qui magistratum statim occiperet** (= *who was to enter upon*), Liv., III, 19, 2. **Primores patrum censuere, extemplo novos tribunos militum creandos esse qui Kalendis Octobribus magistratum occiperent**, Liv., V, 9, 1. Cf. Liv., V, 9, 8 (*qui magistratum occiperent*).

(b) For the retention of the Indicative in a Relative Clause of *Oratio Obliqua*, see 323, c.

Ex.—**Edicit suis, postero die frequentes porta Esquilina, quae adversissima ab hoste erat** (language of Reporter), **expellerent pecus**, Liv., II, 11, 5. **Principibus Galliae evocatis Caesar ea, quae cognoverat, dissimulanda sibi existimavit**, Caes., B. G., IV, 6.

2. The Relative allows the Subjunctive in Iterative actions.

Ex.—**Mediis diebus, quibus tribuni de lege non agerent, nihil eisdem illis placidius aut quietius erat**, Liv., III, 14, 5. **Quemcumque lictorprehendisset, tribunus mitti iubebat**, Liv., III, 11, 2. **Elephanti tutum ab hostibus, quacumque incederent, agmen praebebant**, Liv., XXI, 35, 3. **Quae regi portarentur abripiebat**, Nep., Dat., 4.

3. The Relative occurs with the Subjunctive in wishes.

Ex.—**Quae (sapientia mea) utinam digna esset opinione vestra**, Cic., Sen., II, 5. **Promissis oneratum armari iubet Macedonum more et, quod bene verteret, monstrare iter**, Curt., V, 14. Cf. **Quae res bene uortat**, Pl., Trin., 500.

4. The Relative occurs with the Subjunctive and the Indefinite Second Person.

Ex.—**Quid dulcius quam habere quicum omnia audeas sic loqui, ut tecum?** Cic., Am., VI, 22. **Manu obtinendum erat, quod intenderes**, Liv., III, 11, 2. **Non intemperanter concupiscere quod a plurimis (fieri) videas, continentis debet duci**, Nep., Att., 13. **Cogere ad militiam eos, quos nolis offendere, domi forisque omnia curare, opinione asperius est**, Sall., Jug., 85. **Nec promissa servanda sunt ea, quae sint iis, quibus promiseris, inutilia, nec, etc.**, Cic., Off., I, 10, 32.

5. The Relative occurs with the pure Potential Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Prorsus haec divina mihi videtur vis, quae tot res efficiat et tantas**, Cic., Tusc., I, 26, 65. **Erat non oppidum, non praesidium, quod se armis defenderet**, Caes., B. G., VI, 34. **Ea cum animo habere, quibus Hiempsal per dolum caperetur**, Sall., Jug., 11. **Rationem ostendam, qua tanta ista mala effugiatis**, Sall., Cat., 40. **In hoc fuit numero Miltiades, cui illa custodia crederetur**, Nep., Milt., 3. **Exercitum, quem paene immensa planities vix caperetur, comparavi**, Curt., IV, 53.

6. The Subjunctive is the Mood with the Restrictive Relative *qui*, etc., = *who at least*, etc. The explanation of the Subjunctive may be referred to the Consecutive (so-called characteristic) force of the Rela-

tive. In some cases the Subjunctive may be Potential. To this connection refer the Subjunctive with *quod* as *quod sciam* = *as far as I know, as far at least as I know*; *quod meminerim* = *as far as I remember, as far at least as I remember*.

Ex.—*M. Antonius omnium eloquentissimus quos ego audierim*, Cic., Tusc., V, 19, 55. *Credo equidem etiam alios tot saeculis, sed, quod litteris exstet, Pherecydes Syrius primum dixit animos esse hominum sempiternos*, Cic., Tusc., I, 16, 38. *Tantas moles nulla ope, quae cerneretur, adductas, deorum numine agi credebant*, Curt., VIII, 38. *Legationes omnes, quae essent illustriores, per Dionem administrabantur*, Nep., Dion., 1. *Nec est quod te pudeat sapienti assentiri, qui se unus, quod sciam, sapientem proferri sit ausus*, Cic., Fin., II, 3, 7. *Ita est homo non modo prudens, verum etiam, quod iuvet, curiosus*, Cic., Fam., III, 1, 1. *Mihi quidem praeter hoc Marianum somnium nihil sane, quod meminerim*, Cic., Div., II, 68, 141.

(a) The Restrictive Relative is often emphatically presented by the addition of *quidem* (*qui quidem*).

Ex.—*Antiquissimi fere sunt, quorum quidem scripta constant, Pericles atque Alcibiades et eadem aetate Thucydides*, Cic., De Or., II, 22, 93. *Omnium oratorum, quos quidem ego cognoverim, solutissimum in dicendo et acutissimum iudico Q. Sertorium*, Cic., Brut., XLVIII, 180. *Aristides unus post hominum memoriam, quod quidem nos audierimus, cognomine lustus est appellatus*, Nep., Arist., 1. *Nec quid potius, quod quidem me dignum esset, agerem reperiebam*, Cic., Div., II, 2, 6.

REM. It should be carefully noted that the Relative and *quod*, with and without *quidem*, are sometimes not so much restrictive as purely consecutive or causal.

Ex.—*Hic autem odium paternum erga Romanos sic conservavit, ut prius animam quam id deposuerit, qui quidem* (= *since he or as he was such a man that he*) *numquam destiterit animo bellare cum Romanis*, Nep., Han., 1. *Haec aetas nostra, quod interdum pudeat, iuris ignara est*, Cic., De Or., I, 10, 40. The Potential Subjunctive is not inconsistent with this restrictive use of the Relative. Cf. *Litterae tuae, quas proxime miseras, quod facile intellexerim, pericundae fuerunt*, Cic., Fam., I, 7, 3.

(b) The Restrictive Relative is sometimes associated with *modo* (*qui modo*) in a sense approaching that of a Conditional Wish (*only if*). The Relative alone in this sense is rare.

Ex.—*Nemo aliter philosophus sensit, in quo modo esset auctoritas*, Cic., Div., I, 39, 86. *Hoc aut innocens homo perpeti potuisset aut quamvis nocens, qui modo iudicia Romae fore putaret, etc.*, Cic., Verr., III, 58, 132. *An hoc, si unus Quiritium quilibet sim, qui modo me vivere in libera civitate sciam, reticere possim?* Liv., VI, 40, 6. *Quae (gloria) modo non sua contumelia splendeat*, Liv., X, 24, 11. *Primi, qua modo praeirent duces, signa sequebantur*, Liv., XXII, 2, 5. *Philippus omnia castella expugnari posse dicebat, in quae*

modo asellus onustus auro posset ascendere, Cic., Att., I, 16, 12. Instituit ut lege maiestatis facta dictaque omnia, quibus modo delator non deesset, tenerentur, Suet., Nero, 32. Neque facto ullo neque dicto abstinere, quod modo ambitiosum foret, Sall., Iug., 64. Lentulus cuiusque modi genus hominum sollicitabat, quod modo bello usui foret, Sall., Cat., 39. Nullum his ornatum, qui modo non obscureretur, subtrahendum puto, Quint., V, 14, 33. Omnia incommoda suo iure bona vocabuntur, quae modo virtus honestaverit, Sen., Ep., VII, 2, 5.

So, rarely the Relative without *modo*.

Ex.—Transeat deinde ad tristitiorem orationem, qua moneat adhuc et exprobet, Sen., Ira, I, 6, 3. Quod cum salute eius fiat, ita se defatigarit velim, ut triduo hoc perpetuo prorsum e lecto nequeat surgere, Ter., Ad., 519.

(c) The Relatives *quod* Objective and introducing a matter to be explained = *as to this, namely*, also, *quantum* = *as far as this, namely*, and in *quantum* = *to this extent, namely*, express Accusative relations of quantity or limit, and are construed with the Indicative, also with the Potential Subjunctive.

Ex.—Quod invicem se obrectaverunt, non est oratorum vitium, sed hominum, Tac., Or., 25. Nam quod ad voluptatem pertinet, etc., Sen., Vit. Beat., V, 4. Quod ad me quidem pertinet, intellego me non opes, sed occupationes perdidisse, Sen., Helv. Matr., X, 2. Nam pater, quantum in se fuit, Thracem me genuit, Nep., Iph., 3. Cupiditates tuas quantum potes vexas, Sen., Ep., XIV, 1, 18. Quantum cura, labore, vigiliis, auctoritate efficere potero, nihil praetermittam, quod, etc., Cic., Phil., IV, 6, 16. Debes illorum imitari firmitatem in perferendis doloribus, in quantum modo homini fas est per divina ire vestigia, Sen., De Cons., XVII, 1. Qui nationem eam regebant, in quantum Germani regnantur, Tac., Ann., XIII, 54. O infelicem aegrum! Edet, quantum concoquat, Sen., Ep., X, 2, 24. Tam immodice fleui, ut, quod minime velim, inter exempla sim eorum, quos dolor vicit, Sen., Ep., VII, 1, 14.

7. The Relative, retaining its regular translation, *who*, etc., is associated with the Subjunctive as the Apodosis of an Ideal or Unreal Conditional Proposition. It is also associated with the Protasis of an Ideal or Unreal Conditional when it is resolved by *si* + a Demonstrative (= *si is*, etc.).

Ex.—Summa est, in quo mihi gratissimum facere possis (= *you would be able*), si curaris ut Avianus me a te amari sciat, Cic., Fam., XIII, 75, 2. Fecerunt id servi Milonis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset, Cic., Mil., X, 29. Nulla est tam facilis res, quin difficilis sit, quam (= *si eam*) invitus facias. Nec enim esset id principium, quod (= *si id*) gigneretur aliunde, Cic., Tusc., I, 23, 54.

REM. The preceding *qui* (= *si is*) is not to be confounded with the frequently recurring *qui* (= *si quis (qui)*) with either the Indicative or Subjunctive according to the character of the condition.

Ex.—*Qui* (= *si quis*) *teneat causas rerum futurarum, idem necesse est omnia teneat, quae futura sint*, Cic., Div., I, 56, 127. *Quae qui* (= *si quis*) *legat, non multum desideret historiam contextam eorum temporum*, Nep., Att., 16. *Numquam laudari satis digne philosophia poterit, cui qui* (= *si quis*) *pareat, omne tempus aetatis sine molestia possit degere*, Cic., Sen., I, 2.

8. The Subjunctive is the Mood with the Relative expressing purpose, object, or end. Here the Relative *qui*, etc., = *ut is*, etc. (*Vid.* 264, 2, etc.).

Ex.—*Data tibi est pecunia, Verres, una qua* (= *ut ea*) *frumentum tibi emeris in cellam, altera qua* (= *ut ea*) *frumentum emeris a civitatibus, quod* (= *ut id*) *Romam mitteres*, Cic., Verr., III, 87, 202. *Ea qui* (= *ut is*) *conficeret, C. Trebonium legatum relinquit*, Caes., B. G., VII, 11.

REM. To be noted in this connection is *quo* (= *ut eo*) referring to a preceding statement and when associated with the Comparative (*Vid.* 264, 2, b).

Ex.—*Sed ego vos, quo* (= *ut eo*) *pauca monerem, advocavi*, Sall., Cat., 58. *Corrupisse dicitur A. Cluentius iudicium pecunia, quo* (= *ut eo*) *inimicum suum condemnaret*, Cic., Cluent., IV, 9. *Ager non semel aratus, sed novatus, quo* (= *ut eo*) *mellores fetus possit et grandiores edere*, Cic., De Or., II, 30, 131.

(a) The Final Relative often occurs with the Subjunctive in connection with verbs *to give, to send, to choose, to go, to come, to assemble*, etc., as *dare, mittere, legere, ire, venire, convenire*, etc. The Relative emphasizes the agent employed in executing a given purpose or end, as also a subject as suited to a given purpose or object.

Ex.—*Appius turmas aliquot equitum dederat Scaptio, per quas* (= *ut per eas*) *Salaminios coerceret*, Cic., Att., V, 21, 10. *Legatos ad eum mittunt, qui dicerent*, etc., Caes., B. G., I, 7. *Ad praefectos mittit qui nuntiarent*, Caes., B. G., IV, 11. *Mittitur L. Decidius, qui loci naturam perspiciat*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 66. *Centuriones praemittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant*, Caes., B. G., II, 17. *Ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare*, Caes., B. G., IV, 21. *Ad eum legati venerunt, qui se . . . excusarent*, Caes., B. G., IV, 22. *Lectae sunt quae nomina curiis darent*, Liv., I, 13, 7. (With verbs *to choose*, however, the Relative may be conceived as Consecutive.) *Magnus navium numerus conveniebat, quae commeatum supportarent*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 47.

9. The Relative introducing the ground of an action or statement is regularly construed with the Subjunctive. This may be termed the Causal Relative and is parallel with *cum* Causal and a Demonstrative, etc. Hence *qui* Causal = *cum is*, etc.

Ex.—*Volusenus, qui* (= *cum is* = *since he*) *navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur*, Caes., B. G., IV, 21. *Eorum factionum principes sunt, qui summam auctoritatem eorum iudicio*

habere existimantur, quorum (= cum eorum) ad arbitrium summa omnium rerum redeat, Caes., B. G., VI, 11. Ego ineptus, qui (= cum ego = *since I*) scripserim, Cic., Att., IV, 15, 6. Qui enim Flavio legionem et Siciliam dari scribas, quae scelera parari censes? Cic., Att., X, 1, 2. (Qui enim scribas = cum enim tu scribas = *for since you write*, etc.). Res, multis consciis quae (= cum ea) gereretur, elata deferitur ad Aristomachen, Nep., Dion, 8. At Tyril, qui (= cum ii) capere eos quam interficere mallerent, natantium manus stiptibus saxisque lacerabant, Curt., IV, 12. Evenit facile, quod (= cum id) diis cordi esset, Liv., I, 39, 4. Numquam assumet ratio in adiutorium violentos impetus, apud quos (= cum apud eos) nihil ipsa auctoritatis habeat, Sen., Ira, I, 10, 1. Vide hominis crudelitatem, qui se non dissimulet exsuli nocere voluisse, Plin. Min., I, 5, 13. Qui (= cum ego) mihi nullius umquam delicti gratiam fecissem, haud facile alterius lubrici malefacta condonabam, Sall., Cat., 52. Ego sum insipientior, qui egomet unde redeam hunc regitem, quae ego sciam atque hic nesciat, Pl., Trin., 936.

(a) The action or statement of which the Relative introduces the ground is emphasized by *praesertim* (*praesertim qui*), while the causal force of the Relative is prominently presented by the addition of *praesertim* (*qui praesertim*), by *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe* (*ut qui*, *utpote qui*, *quippe qui*). Hence *praesertim qui* = *especially since he*; *qui praesertim* = *since he especially, since he certainly*; *ut qui*, *utpote qui* = *as (since) he*; *quippe qui* = *as he, inasmuch as he*. It is probable that the basis of the Subjunctive with the Causal Relative may be referred to the Consecutive character of the Relative. Hence *qui* = *since he is such a man as to*, etc.

Ex.—Intelleges ferendam esse fortunam praesertim quae (= praesertim cum ea) absit a culpa, Cic., Fam., VI, 2, 3. Praesertim quos victoria efferrī sciret, Caes., B. G., V, 47. Quia video magis legionibus opus esse quam provinciis, quae praesertim (= cum eae praesertim) recipiari nullo negotio possint, constitui cum exercitu proficisci, Cic., Fam., X, 31, 6. A me non potest argentum auferri, qui praesertim senserim, Pl., Pseud., 505. Cum unum sit iudicium ex tam multis quod reprehendatur, ut quod una sententia eaque dubia potentiae alicuius condonatum existimetur debes, etc., Cic., Fam., V, 18, 2. Cf. Ut qui obtinuerit, Cic., Phil., XI, 12, 30. Hic ille omnia, quae voluit, de re publica dixit, ut qui institutus venisset, Cic., Att., II, 24, 3. Magna pars Fidenatum, ut qui coloni additi Romanis essent, Latine sciebant, Liv., I, 27, 9. Ibi egressi Troiani, ut quibus ab immenso prope errore nihil praeter arma et naves superessent, etc., Liv., I, 1, 5. Itaque, ut quae nec prohibere possent nec admittere auderent, tacitae opperiebantur victoris arbitrium, Curt., III, 30. Donabit dignissimos eligens, ut qui meminerit tam expensorum quam acceptorum rationem esse reddendam, Sen., Vit. Beat., XXIII, 5. Caeso, ut cui sine labore ditissimi belli victoria evenisset, etc., Tac., H., I, 51. His nulla mors non repentina est, ut quae semper inchoatum aliquid abruptat, Plin. Min., V, 5, 4. Ad liquidum confessumque perducunt, ut qui sibi et inveniendi et iudicandi vindicent partes, Quint., V, 14, 28. Societates ac regna pretio

*dedit, ut qui uni Ptolemaeo prope sex milia talentorum suo Pompeique nomine abtulerit*, Suet., Caes., 54. *Umrerum gens antiquissima Italiae existimatur, ut quos Ombrios a Graecis putent dictos, quod, etc.*, Plin. Mai., III, 112. *Caseus non fit ex utrimque dentatis, quoniam eorum lac non coit. Tenuissimum camelis, mox equis, crassissimum asinae, ut quo coaguli vice utantur*, Plin. Mai., XI, 237 (and so very frequent in this writer). *Non demutabo, ut quod certo sciam*, Pl., Pseud., 566. *Ea nos, utpote qui nihil contemnere soleamus, non contemnebamus sed non pertimescebamus*, Cic., Att., II, 24, 4. *Lucius quidem frater eius, utpote qui peregre depugnarit, familiam ducit*, Cic., Phil., V, 11, 30. *Neque tamen Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui magno exercitu locis aequioribus expeditus in fuga sequeretur*, Sall., Cat., 57. *Quem etsi nihil a me impetrare oportebat, utpote qui ne belli quidem in me iura servaveris, tamen... promitto*, Curt., IV, 2. *Utpote qui... recepissent*, Curt., IV, 29. *Satin nequam sum, utpote qui hodie amare inceperim?* Pl., Rud., 462. *Ego incaute feci nec in ulla sum spe, quippe qui exceptionibus edictorum retinear*, Cic., Att., XI, 9, 1. *Quippe qui in odium venerit*, Cic., Att., X, 8, 6. *Quippe cui nec quae accidunt nec quae aguntur ullo modo probentur*, Cic., Att., XI, 4, 1. *Quippe quae nulla sit*, Cic., Tusc., I, 10, 21. *Quippe quos (libros) numquam legerim*, Cic., Tusc., II, 3, 7. *Nec fere seniores rei intererant, quippe quae non consilio regenda esset*, Liv., III, 11, 4. *Quippe quibus nec domi spes prolis nec cum finitimis conubia essent*, Liv., I, 9, 1. *Quippe qui... affectet*, Liv., I, 35, 3. *Quippe cui ingredienti provinciam... labor et periculum placuisset*, Tac., Agr., 18. *Itaque cum a tyranno crudeliter violatus esset, quippe quem venundari iussisset, tamen eo rediit, etc.*, Nep., Dion., 2. *Quippe quod prope nudam praeceptorum traditionem desideret*, Quint., III, 1, 2.

(b) In Sallust the usage with *quippe qui* is the Indicative. In Livy the Indicative occurs quite often with *quippe qui*.

Ex.—*Quippe cuius neque consilium neque inceptum ullum frustra erat*, Sall., Jug., 7. *Quippe quis hostis nullus erat*, Sall., Jug., 14. *Quippe qui invaserat*, Sall., Jug., 20. *Quippe cui... in animo haeserat*, Sall., Jug., 28. *Quippe cui pax nuntiabatur*, Sall., Jug., 48. *Quippe qui vicerat*, Sall., Jug., 76. *Quippe quae nulla sunt*, Sall., Jug., 86. *Quippe cui omnes copiae... erant*, Sall., Cat., 48. *Discessere socii pro tristi nuntio tristiores domum referentes, quippe quibus per se sustinendum bellum erat*, Liv., III, 6, 6. *Quippe quibus... occursum est*, Liv., V, 37, 7. *Quippe qui inermes... rediere*, Liv., VIII, 26, 5. *Quippe cui pater et patruus... interfecti sunt*, Liv., XXVI, 41, 8.

(c) The Subjunctive is, of course, the Mood used with the Relative Particles with a causal force, and when in this sense associated with the strengthening forms, particularly *ut* and *quippe*.

Ex.—*Castra repetunt pavoris et tumultus iam plena, ut ubi (= as in them) feminae puerique et alia imbellis turba permixta esset*, Liv., XXXVIII, 21, 14. *Si vis absit, nihilo minus detestabili exemplo rem agi, quippe ubi fraude ac periurio decus petatur virtutis*, Liv., XXVI, 48, 11.

(d) There is no doubt that the Indicative also occurs with the



Relative in its causal sense—that is, when the Relative introduces the ground, reason, and specific cause of a definite fact or statement, it is construed with the Indicative. This use of the Causal Relative with the Indicative obtains chiefly in late prose and in poetry.

Ex.—*Neque tamen ille prius fortunam quam se ipse finxit: qui cavit, ne qua in re lure plecteretur*, Nep., Att., 11. (*Qui cavit*, etc., assigns the ground, reason, of the preceding statement.) *Vobis animus ab ignavia corruptus est, qui (= as you, since you) ne nunc quidem... exsurgitis*, etc., Sall., Jug., 31. *Sed hostibus irrisui fuit, apud quos (= as with them), flagrante etiam tum libertate, nondum cognita libertinorum potentia erat*, Tac., Ann., XIV, 39. *Non omni puero stultiores sumus, qui in luce timemus?* Sen., Ep., XIX, 1. 6. (*Rex Pyllus*) *felix nimirum, qui (= as he, in that he) tot per secula mortem distulit*, etc., Iuv., X, 248.

REM. To this connection refer the Relative with the Indicative parallel with the objective *quod* (= *that, the fact that*) and with verbs of emotion, feeling, etc.

Ex.—*Sed honori summo nuper nostro Miloni fuit, qui... omnes P. Clodii conatus furoresque compressit*, Cic., Off., II, 17, 58 (here *qui* = *the fact that he* = *quod*). *Habeo senectuti magnam gratiam, quae (= quod ea) mihi sermonis aviditatem auxit, potionis et cibi sustulit*, Cic., Sen., XIV, 46. *Qua re maximas gratias et ago et habeo Pisoni, qui (= quod is) non quid efficere posset in re publica cogitavit, sed quid facere ipse deberet*, Cic., Phil., I, 7, 15. *Numquam sum magis de occupationibus meis questus, quae (= quod eae) me non sunt passae proficiscentem te valetudinis causa in Campaniam prosequi*, Plin. Min., VI, 4, 1. Cf. *Stulte feci, qui hunc amisi*, Pl., M. G., 1376.

(c) To be observed is the causal force of the Relative with its Predicate in the Subjunctive when the Relative refers to a subject presented in an exclamation.

Ex.—*O magna vis veritatis, quae (= since it) contra fictas omnium insidias facile se per se ipsa defendat!* Cic., Cael., XXVI, 63. *O miserum senem, qui mortem contemnendam esse in tam longa aetate non viderit!* Cic., Sen., XIX, 66. *Agrum iis divisit. O sordidos, qui acceperint!* Cic., Phil., VI, 5, 14. *Alexander cum in Sigeo ad Achillis tumulum astitisset: O fortunatus, inquit, adulescens qui tuae virtutis Homerum praeconem inveneris!* Cic., Arch., X, 24. *Impudentiam hominis, qui venerit ad aegram, cuius marito inimicissimus, ipsi invisissimus fuerat!* Plin. Min., II, 20, 2. *Hominem te patientem vel potius durum qui tam insignes libros tam diu teneas!* Plin. Min., II, 10, 1. *O hominem miserum, qui ne umbram quidem umquam honesti viderit!* Cic., Att., VII, 11, 1.

REM. In this connection is to be noted the Relative with the Indicative when the Relative simply describes a subject and does not introduce a causal explanation of a fact or statement. Translate, here, the Relative by *who*, etc.

Ex.—*O nox illa, quae paene aeternas huic urbi tenebras attulisti!* Cic., Flac., XL, 102. *O fortunata mors, quae naturae debita pro patria est potissimum reddita!* Cic., Phil., XIV, 12, 31. *O miserabiles, quorum palatum nisi ad pretiosos cibos non excitatur!* Sen., Helv. Mat., X, 5. *O felices viros puellarum, quibus populus Romanus loco soceri fuit!* Sen., Helv. Mat., XII, 6. *O felix paupertas, quae tanto titulo locum fecit!* Sen., N. Q., I, 17, 9.

10. The Relative with the Subjunctive expresses a relation parallel with that expressed by *cum* Concessive with the Subjunctive—that is, by the Relative and Subjunctive the dependent clause is presented in a Concessive relation to the leading clause. This Concessive relation may or may not be indicated by *tamen* in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Tanta huius belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab his nationibus, quae (= though they = cum eae) trans Rhenum incolerent, mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, etc.,* Caes., B. G., II, 35. *At Cotta, qui (= though he) cogitasset haec posse in itinere accidere, nulla in re communi saluti deerat,* Caes., B. G., V, 33. *Quis est qui C. Fabricii non cum caritate aliqua benevola memoriam usurpet, quem numquam viderit?* Cic., Am., VIII, 28. *Nosmet ipsi, qui Lycurgei a principio fuisset, cotidie demitigamur,* Cic., Att., I, 13, 3. *Efficiebat, ut, inter quos (= cum inter eos) tantae laudis esset aemulatio, nulla intercederet obtrectatio,* Nep., Att., 5. *Qui (= cum is) nihil ante ratus esset minus regium quam sacris dedere animum, repente, etc.,* Liv., I, 31, 6. *Nam qui (= cum is) deos tanto opere contemneret, ad minima tonitrua et fulgura conivere solebat,* Suet., Cal., 51. *Namque egomet, qui (= cum ego) sero ac leviter Graecas litteras attigissem, tamen cum venissem Athenas complures ibi dies sum commoratus,* Cic., De Or., I, 18, 82.

(a) The Concessive Relative may take the Indicative when it concessively introduces a fact (= *who, etc. = although he, etc.*).

Ex.—*Contio, quae ex imperitissimis constat, tamen iudicare solet quid intersit inter popularem, id est, levem civem et inter constantem, id est, gravem,* Cic., Am., XXV, 95. *His consulibus cum Ardeatibus foedus renovatum est. Idque monumenti est consules eos illo anno fuisse, qui (= though they) neque in annalibus priscis neque in libris magistratuum inveniuntur,* Liv., IV, 7, 10.

11. The Relative with the Subjunctive occurs in several connections in which the Relative is to be interpreted as the Consecutive (so-called Characteristic) Relative and the Mood as the Consecutive Subjunctive.

(1) The Relative Clause presents the Result or End to which the properties or qualities of a general or indefinite subject or object (antecedent) tend. Translate this (Consecutive Relative) by *that* or *to = such that, such as to*. As *Sunt qui dicant = there are those that say, there are those to say = there are such persons as to say.*

Ex.—**Sunt qui discessum animi a corpore putent esse mortem**, Cic., *Tusc.*, I, 9, 18. **Fuerunt qui crederent M. Crassum non ignarum Catillinae consilii fuisse**, Sall., *Cat.*, 17.

REM. This Consecutive Relative is employed in presenting the qualities, etc., of a definite and expressed antecedent.

Ex.—**Soli centum erant, qui creari patres possent**, Liv., I, 8, 7. **Latae leges, non solum quae regni suspicione consulem absoverent, sed quae adeo in contrarium verterent, ut popularem etiam facerent**, Liv., II, 8, 1. **Hic ego tibi templum Statori Iovi, quod monumentum sit posteris tua praesenti ope servatam urbem esse, voveo**, Liv., I, 12, 6. (*Quod sit* = *such as to be, to be*, Consecutive rather than Final.)

(a) The Consecutive character of the Relative is seen when it follows a demonstrative *is*, *talis*, *tantus*, *eiusmodi*, etc. Here the Relative has the force of *ut is*, etc.

Ex.—**Non sum ego is consul, qui nefas esse arbitrer Gracchos laudare**, Cic., *Leg. Agr.*, II, 5, 10 (here *qui* has the force of *ut ego*). **Videndum est ut ea liberalitate utamur, quae prosit amicis, noceat nemini**, Cic., *Off.*, I, 14, 43 (with *quae* compare *ut ea*). **Nam est innocentia affectio talis animi quae noceat nemini**, Cic., *Tusc.*, III, 8, 16. **Talem igitur te esse oportet qui te ab impiorum civium societate seiungas**, Cic., *Fam.*, X, 6, 3. **Fuit illa cupiditas tanta, quae tantam exstingeret religionem?** Cic., *Verr.*, I, 18, 48. **Is apud te fuit, cuius gratiam expetere, et iram timere possemus**, Curt., VII, 4. **Numquam in campo sui fecit potestatem et his locis manum conseruit, quibus plus pedestres copiae valerent**, Nep., *Ages.*, 3.

(b) The Consecutive character of the Relative with the Subjunctive is seen when it refers to a preceding subject with *tam* and an adjective. Here *qui* with the Subjunctive may be compared with *ut is* and the Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Illud miror adduci potuisse te, ut existimares me tam improvidum, qui (= ut ego) . . . desciscerem**, etc., Cic., *Fam.*, II, 16, 1. **Nemo fuit tam impudens qui (= ut is), cum frumentum deberetur, pecuniam posceret**, Cic., *Verr.*, III, 82, 189. **Quis erit tam amens qui te . . . arcessat?** Cic., *Verr.*, II, 58, 142. **Nemo est tam senex qui se annum non putet posse vivere**, Cic., *Sen.*, VII, 24. **Quis tam esset ferreus qui eam vitam ferre posset?** Cic., *Am.*, XXIII, 87. **Quae est anus tam delira, quae timeat ista?** Cic., *Tusc.*, I, 21, 48. **Qui locus est tam inhumanus, qui illos non affari atque appetere videatur?** Cic., *Phil.*, II, 13, 33.

REM. 1. In this connection observe *ut* with the Subjunctive as compared with Consecutive *qui* and the Subjunctive. The Relative refers to the antecedent as possessing a quality in a sense modified by *tam* (*adeo*), in consequence of which the tendency of his action is to a Result expressed in the Relative clause, while *ut* introduces, with em-

phasis, the Result as a purely objective conception. When the Result of a preceding action modified by *ita* or *sic* is to be expressed, the Result is necessarily objective and introduced by *ut* (not *qui*).

Ex.—*Quis tam demens (est), ut sua voluntate maereat?* Cic., Tusc., III, 28, 71. *Adeo gravi morbo afficitur, ut numquam dextro aeque bene usus sit*, Nep., Hann., 4. *Atticus ita vixit, ut universis Atheniensibus esset carissimus*, Nep., Att., 2 (here *ut* introduces the result of *ita vixit*). *Sic dicet ille (orator), quem expetimus, ut verset saepe multis modis eadem*, Cic., Or., XL, 137.

REM. 2. After a Demonstrative the Relative, when it refers to a definite antecedent and explains it by stating a fact, requires the Indicative.

Ex.—*De iis, qui nunc petunt, Caesar certus putatur*, Cic., Att., I, 1, 2. *Quid irati gravius de vobis sentire possunt, quam ut eos prodatis, qui se vobis omnia debere iudicant, in eorum potestatem veniatis, qui se per vos perisse existimant?* Caes., B. Civ., II, 32.

(c) To the Consecutive Subjunctive refer the Subjunctive with the Relative after *esse* (407, 11), *reperire*, *invenire*, *quaerere*, *nancisci*, *adesse*, *desse*, *existere*; also, with the Passives *reperiri*, *inveniri*, *quaeri*. With the Active of the preceding the object, usually indefinite, may be expressed. So, also, the subject with the Passive. The relation expressed by the Relative is *such as to*, *of such a kind as to—to—that*.

Ex.—*Sunt enim qui putent*, Cic., Fam., VII, 3, 6. *Fuit cui ad te litteras darem*, Cic., Att., IV, 1, 1. *Fuere qui auro corrupti elephantos lugurthae traderent*, Sall., Jug., 32. *Erunt qui voluptates laudent*, Sen., Ep., XI, 2, 31. *Eos inveniemus qui honores, magistratus, imperia amicitiae non anteponant*, Cic., Am., XVII, 63. *Si invenimus, qui nos bonos viros dicat*, Sen., Ep., VI, 7, 11. *Reperiemus, quibus probemus istum pecuniam...avertisse*, Cic., Verr., I, 4, 11. *Reperies aliquem qui quaerat quid tu occulte egeris*, Cic., Verr., II, 23, 81. *Quaere quod agas*, Plin. Min., IV, 14, 10. *Quaerit quod suum faciat*, Sen., Ep., XX, 2, 6. *Si aliquem nacti sumus cuius cum moribus et natura congruamus*, Cic., Am., VIII, 27. *Nactus sum qui Xenophontis similem esse se cuperet*, Cic., Or., IX, 32. *Adsunt, qui vos hortentur, ut a nobis desciscatis*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 32. *Scito desse qui me amet, qui sapiat*, Cic., Att., I, 18, 1. *Deerant (iumenta) quae sarcinas veherent*, Curt., IX, 40. *Deesse nobis terra in qua vivamus, in qua moriamur, non potest*, Tac., Ann., XIII, 56. *Exsistat, qui cohortes in urbe tentatas arguat*, Tac., Ann., XIII, 21. *Iste unus inventus est, qui e complexu parentum abreptos filios ad necem duceret*, Cic., Verr., I, 3, 7. *Inventus est, qui flammis imponeret manum*, Sen., Ep., IX, 5, 20. *Verres tot annis inventus est qui haec non commutaret, sed verteret*, Cic., Verr., III, 8, 21. *Erunt aliqui reperti qui pecuniam praeferre amicitiae sordidum existiment*, Cic., Am., XVII, 63. *Sed, qui mitterentur, non reperiebantur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 33. *Multi inveniuntur, qui ignem inferant urbibus*, Sen., Ep., XV, 2, 61.

**REM.** When the Relative clause in connection with the preceding Predicates does not express a Result proceeding from the general character of the Subject or Object, but a fact, the Indicative is the Mood. Translate the Relative by *who*, *which*.

**Ex.—***Ex quibus (nationibus) sunt qui piscibus atque ovium vivere existimantur*, Caes., B. G., IV, 10. *Sunt qui, quod sentiunt, non audent dicere*, Cic., Off., I, 24, 84. *Reperta sunt quae per tot annos rem publicam exedere*, Tac., Ann., II, 27. *Quod si non invenitur illa respublica, quam nos fingimus*, etc., Sen., ad Ser. De Ot., VIII, 3.

(d) To the Consecutive Subjunctive refer, again, the Subjunctive with the Relative defining the indefinite words, *multi*, *quidam*, *nonnulli*, *alii*, *pauci*, etc., and the Appellatives *philosophus*, *orator*, etc., the indefinite numerals, and the phrase *si quis est*. Here, too, the Relative is Consecutive.

**Ex.—***Pauci (sunt) cum quibus iuvat dicere*, Plin. Min., II, 14, 2. *Pauci sunt qui consilio se suaque disponant*, Sen., Ep., III, 2, 8. *Cetera, quae quibusdam admirabilia videntur, permulti sunt qui pro nihilo putent*, Cic., Am., XXIII, 86. *Quosdam tibi dabo, quibus (vitia) profuerint*, Sen., Ep., XIX, 5, 12. *Intelleges te aliquid habere, quod speres*, Cic., Fam., VI, 2, 3. *Desiderat uterque aliquem, cum quo conferat*, Sen., Ep., XVIII, 6, 1. *Illis aliqua, quae possint prodesse, conscribo*, Sen., Ep., I, 8, 2. *Alia sunt quae negare soleam*, Cic., Fam., XI, 27, 7. *Quorum studio teneretur, omnibus ad insaniam favit*, Suet., Cal., 55. *Nonnulli sunt in hoc ordine, qui aut ea quae imminet non videant aut ea quae vident dissimulent*, Cic., Cat., I, 12, 30. *Tria sunt quae sint efficienda dicendo*, Cic., Brut., XLIX, 185. *(Ille) inter tot annos unus inventus est quem socii in urbes suas cum exercitu venisse gaudeant*, Cic., Imp. Pomp., XXIII, 68. *Virtutis magistri, philosophi, inventi sunt, qui summum malum dolorem dicerent*, Cic., Tusc., II, 12, 28. *Si quis est qui...confidat*, etc., Liv., XLIV, 22, 13. *Si quid est firmitus, quod speremus*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 2, 4. *Si qui sunt qui velint*, etc., Cic., Fam., I, 1, 1.

**REM.** After the preceding antecedents the Relative is used with the Indicative in the statement of a fact. Translate the Relative by *who*, *which*.

**Ex.—***Multi et sunt et fuerunt qui a negotiis publicis se removerunt ad otiumque perfugerunt*, Cic., Off., I, 20, 69. *Multi sunt qui non donant, sed proiciunt*, Sen., Ep., XX, 3, 8. *Sunt quidam, qui molestas amicitias faciunt, cum ipsi se contemni putant*, Cic., Am., XX, 72. *Sunt plurimi, qui similitudinem pessimi cuiusque concupierunt*, Quint., X, 2, 14. *Duae sunt artes, quae possunt locare homines in amplissimo gradu dignitatis*, Cic., Mur., XIV, 30. *Si quid est, quod vitam beatam potest facere, id bonum est suo iure*, Sen., Ep., V, 3, 6.

(e) The Subjunctive is Consecutive with *cur* (*quare*), *quod*, *ubi*, *quo*, *unde*, after *est*; as *est cur*, *est quod*, etc. *Est cur* = *there is rea-*

*non why, there is reason for; est quod = there is ground for; with cur (quare), quamobrem, after causa est = there is reason for, there is reason why; with the simple Relative and the Relative forms quod, ubi, quo, unde, after habeo; as habeo quod = I have ground (reason) for. The word quod in the preceding connections is to be carefully noted. It is the Accusative of the Complement, and, when not the simple Relative defining an antecedent, approaches the sense of cur and explains the following Subjunctive. It may be termed quod Conjunctional. The Indirect Question quid and the Subjunctive after habeo is not to be confounded with quod and the Subjunctive. Habeo quid dicam = I have (= I know) what to say, while habeo quod dicam = I have reason (ground) for saying. Habeo quod (simple Relative) dicam = I have something to say. In this connection may be considered est ut and the Subjunctive = it is the case that.*

Ex.—*Est cur quis lunonem laedere nolit, Ov., M., II, 518. Si umquam ullo in bello fuit, quod dis immortalibus gratias ageretis, hesternum id proelium fuit, Liv., I, 28, 4. Magis est quod gratuler tibi, quam quod te rogem, etc., Cic., Att., XVI, 5, 2. Est quod gaudeas, Pl., Trin., 310. Est ubi id isto modo valeat, Cic., Tusc., V, 8, 23. Si rem servassem, fuit ubi negotiosus essem, Pl., Truc., 138. Est unde ius civile discatur, Cic., Verr., I, 45, 115. Est unde haec fiant, Ter., Ad., 122. Causa est quare... praeludicetur, Cic., Inv., II, 20, 60. Quibus in ipsis inest causa, cur diligentur, Cic., Am., XXI, 79. Eadem est causa, cur nos mancipiorum nostrorum urbanitas in dominos contumeliosos delectet, Sen., Const. Sap., XI, 3. Multae sunt causae, quamobrem cupiam abducere, Ter., Eun., 145. Respondi te habere, quod reipublicae nomine movereris, Sen., Const. Sap., II, 1 (here te habere quod = that you had ground for, etc.). Habebam quo confugerem, ubi conquiescerem, Cic., Fam., IV, 6, 2. Alterum putabo regem, si habuerit unde tibi solvat quod ei per syngrapham credidisti, Cic., Har. Resp., XIII, 29. Habebat quod daret, Nep., Cim., 4 (here quod is the pure Relative). Habes quod agas, Plin. Min., IV, 14, 10 (here quod is the pure Relative). Cf. Habet qui sibi aegro assideat, Sen., Ep., I, 9, 8. Habet quod iactet, quod proferat, Sen., Ben., IV, 21, 1. Habeo hic quos legam non minus disertos, Plin. Min., II, 3, 9. Habes quid timeam, quid optem, quid etiam in posterum destinem, Plin. Min., I, 22, 12 (here habes quid = you have = you know, what, etc.). Est ut plerique philosophi nulla tradant praecepta dicendi, Cic., De Or., II, 36, 152.*

REM. With *esse* and *habere* the Relative with the Indicative follows in the statement of a fact. When, however, the antecedent is indefinite, the use of the Indicative is chiefly poetical.

Ex.—*Est quod volo = there is that which I wish. Habeo quod volo = I have that which I wish. Habeo quod volui, quod petii, Sen., Ben., IV, 21, 6. Cf. Est qui... spernit, Hor., Od., I, 1, 19. Sunt qui dant quique accipiunt fenore, Pl., Cure., 479. Sunt quae te volumus percontari, quae quasi per nebulam nosmet*

**scimus atque audivimus**, Pl., Pseud., 462. Translate the Relative with the Indicative by *who*, *which*, etc.

(f) The Consecutive Relative and the Subjunctive are used after the Predicates named in (c) when modified by a negative or a *quasi*-negative.

Ex.—**Nemo est qui aut possit aut conetur corrumpere**, Cic., Verr., Act. Prim., XVI, 46. **Nemo erat aratorum, qui iniuriam sibi factam queri posset**, Cic., Verr., III, 12, 29. **Qui mihi non assentiretur, inveni neminem**, Cic., Fam., XI, 27, 8. **Itaque, hoc qui postularet, reperiebatur nemo**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 20. **Vix invenitur, qui laboribus susceptis, non quasi mercedem rerum gestarum desideret gloriam**, Cic., Off., I, 19, 65. **Nemo reperietur, qui... dicat**, Cic., Font., II, 3. **Neque aderat alius qui defunctae pudorem tueretur**, Plin. Min., V, 1, 6. **Nec quicquam exstat, ex quo appareat illas (urbes) fuisse**, Sen., Ep., XIV, 3, 10. **Nec defuere, qui arguerent**, etc., Tac., Ann., XIII, 18. **Nec deerant, qui haec Senecae deferrent**, Tac., Ann., XIII, 43.

(g) After the negative phrases *non est, nihil est, non (nec) quicquam est, non habeo, nihil habeo, non (nec) quicquam habeo*, follow *quod, ubi, unde, quo, cur*, and the Subjunctive. Here *quod* may be either the simple Relative or the Conjunctional *quod*. As, *non est quod* = *there is not that (what) to (Relative)*; also, *there is not reason (ground) to (Conjunctional quod)*. *Non habeo quod* = *I have not that (what) to (Relative)*; also, *I have not a reason (ground) for (Conjunctional quod)*. *Nihil habeo quod* = *I have nothing to (Relative)*; also, *I have no reason (ground) for (Conjunctional quod)*. So, too, after the negative clauses *non est causa, nulla est causa, non (neque) ulla causa est, nihil est causae, non (nec) quicquam est causae*, follows the Subjunctive with *cur (quamobrem)*. To be observed also is *quid* interrogative with *non habeo*. As, *Non habeo quid* = *I have not what to* = *I do not know what to*; *non habeo quid dicam* = *I have not what to say* = *I do not know what to say*.

Ex.—**Non est quod contemnas hoc studendi genus**, Plin. Min., I, 6, 2. **Non est quod ab homine desidioso aliquid novi operis exspectes**, Plin. Min., I, 8, 2. **Nec est quod existimes eum venia posse mutari**, Curt., VI, 29. **Nec est quod mireris**, Sen., Const. Sap., VIII, 1. **Non est quod paupertas nos a philosophia revocet**, Sen., Ep., II, 5, 6. **Ubi consistamus non habemus**, Cic., Fam., XI, 1, 4. **Quo se recipere non habebant**, Caes., B. G., IV, 38. **Neque quicquam est unde queat nova vis irrumperere**, etc., Lucr., II, 306. **Nihil est quod me non assecutum putem**, Cic., Fam., XV, 6, 1 (here *quod* Relative). **Nihil est quod (Relative) non timendum sit**, Cic., Att., II, 17, 1. **Nihil est quod (Relative) magis alliciat**, Cic., Am., VIII, 28. **Nihil est quod illi non persequantur argutiis**, Cic., Am., XIII, 45. **Nihil est, quod filium meum exspectes**, Cic., Fam., VI, 7, 5 (here *quod* is Conjunctional). **Nihil est, quod quisquam magnitudinem**

**artium ex eo, quod senes discunt, pertimescat**, Cic., De Or., III, 23, 89. **Nec, quod** (Relative) **nos ex conubio vestro petamus, quicquam est, praeterquam ut**, etc., Liv., IV, 4, 12. **Nec enim habeo quod** (Relative) **scribam**, Cic., Fam., XIV, 2, 1. **Nihil quod** (Relative) **magis gavisurum te putem habeo quam hoc**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 8, 1. **Tu, Verres, hic quod** (Relative) **moliare non habes**, Cic., Verr., I, 51, 133. **Non habeo quod** (Conjunctive) **quem accusem meorum**, Cic., Att., V, 11, 5. **Nihil habeo, quod** (Conjunctive) **accusem senectutem**, Cic., Sen., V, 13. **Non est cur eorum spes infringatur**, Cic., Or., II, 6. **Nec est, quare hoc inter nostra placita mireris**, Sen., Ep., VII, 4, 45. **Non est, quare tu multum tibi facere videaris**, Sen., Ep., II, 6, 8. **Non erit, quare gratoletur sibi**, Sen., Ep., IX, 4, 6. **Erat nihil cur properato opus esset**, Cic., Mil., XIX, 49. **Sed doleo me tam firma mente ubi utar non habere**, Cic., Att., III, 15, 2. **Nihil habere se vociferatus est, quare eos demereatur**, Suet., Claud., 40. **Nec praeceptorem quidem habeo cur venerer**, Sen., Ben., VI, 16, 3. **Neque erant causae fatales, cur ita accideret**, Cic., Fat., IX, 19. **Tibi causa nulla est cur hunc miserum tanta calamitate affici velis**, Cic., Rosc. Am., L, 146. **Neque ulla alia causa est, cur iracundissimi sint flavi rubentesque**, Sen., Ira., II, 19, 5. **Nec quicquam fuit causae cur ea (atomus) non e regione ferretur**, Cic., Fat., XX, 47. **Nihil causae est, cur non illam vocis modulationem fidibus ac tibiis adiuvemus**, Quint., XI, 3, 59. **Quid diceret non habebat**, Nep., Epam., 8. **De pueris quid agam non habeo**, Cic., Att., VII, 19. **Nec quid faceret habebat**, Cic., Verr., IV, 23, 51. **Quid arguas non habes**, Cic., Rosc. Am., XV, 45.

(h) To the Consecutive Subjunctive refer the Subjunctive with the Consecutive Relative after the Rhetorical Questions *quis est? quid est? qui . . . est? quae . . . est? quod . . . est? quantum est?* also, the Subjunctive with *quod* (Relative and Conjunctive), with *cur* (*quare*), after *quid est? quid causae est? quae causa est?* after *quotusquisque est?* (usually separated) (*quotus . . . quisque est?*) (*quotusquisque* occurs sometimes with the Indicative and without the Relative); also, with *cur* after *quid habet?*

Ex.—**Quis est qui hanc naturam animis esse tributam neget?** Cic., Tusc., I, 23, 54. **Quis erat qui putaret, etc.?** Cic., Fam., IX, 14, 5. **Quis est qui tueri possit liberorum nostrorum pueritiam, etc.?** Cic., Verr., I, 58, 153. **Quis est quem non moveat antiquitas?** Cic., Div., I, 40, 87. **Quae nova causa in natura est, quae declinet atomum?** Cic., Fat., XX, 46. **Quod tempus est, quo non innumerabiles nascentur?** Cic., Div., II, 47, 97. **Quantulum est, quod in tutelam hominis necessarium sit?** Sen., Ad Helv. Matr., X, 1. **Quid refert, quantum sit, quod tibi possit negare fortuna?** Sen., Ep., XIX, 1, 19. **Quod quaeris quid sit quod te arcessam, etc.**, Cic., Att., II, 1, 4. **Quid est quod ego te hortor, ut dignitati et gloriae servias?** Cic., Fam., IX, 14, 6. **Quid est quod tu alios accuses?** Cic., Verr., II, 20, 49. **Certe audiam quid sit quod Epicurum nostrum non tu quidem oderis**, Cic., Fin., I, 5, 14. **Quid est quod dubitemus?** Suet., Claud., 4. **Quid fuit quod illam ad vivendum invitare posset?** Cic., Fam., IV, 5, 3. **Quid est quod ab eo non metuas?** Cic., Att., VII, 13, 1. **Quid est quod declarari possit habitu extorum et colore?** Cic., Div., II, 13, 30. **Quid est quod**



**non statim sciat?** Plin. Min., I, 22, 2. **Quid est, quo colligas iustitiam animal esse?** Sen., Ep., XIX, 4, 10. **Quid est cur dubitandum sit, etc.?** Cic., Div., I, 39, 84. **Quid est, cur deus somniis moneat eos?** Cic., Div., II, 60, 125. **Quid est cur rogetis ut sitis?** Plin. Min., Pan., 39. **Quid est, quare indignor aut doleam?** Sen., Ep., VIII, 2, 15. **Quid est, cur perturberis?** Sen., Ep., X, 1, 15. **Quid est causae cur mihi non in optatis sit complecti hominem florentem aetate?** Cic., Fam., II, 13, 2. **Quid causae est, cur Cassandra furens futura prospiciat, Priamus sapiens hoc facere non queat?** Cic., Div., I, 39, 85. **Quid est causae, cur defuerint omnia?** Plin. Min., Pan., 41. **Quae causa est cur amicitiam funditus tollamus e vita?** Cic., Am., XIII, 48. **Quae causa cur Romam properaret?** Cic., Mil., XIX, 49. **Quotusquisque est qui istam (famam) effugere possit in tam maledica civitate?** Cic., Cael., XVI, 38. **Quotusquisque, qui voluptatem neget esse bonum?** Cic., Div., II, 39, 81. **Quotusquisque tam rectus auditor, quem non potius dulcia haec quam austera delectent?** Plin. Min., II, 19, 6. **Quotusquisque ex quaestoribus est, qui non ex ipsa lege teneatur, qua quaerit?** Sen., De Clem., I, 6, 2. **Quotus igitur est quisque, qui somniis pareat?** Cic., Div., II, 60, 125. **Quotus enim quisque est, qui epistolam paulo graviolem ferre possit nisi, etc.?** Cic., Att., I, 13, 1. **Quota enim quaeque domus usque ad exitum omnibus partibus suis constitit, in qua non aliquid turbatum sit?** Sen., Ad Marc., Cons., XIV, 1. **Quota quaeque felicitatem civitas pertulit?** Sen., Ep., XIV, 3, 7. **Quotus enim quisque philosophorum invenitur, qui sit ita moratus ut, etc.?** Cic., Tusc., II, 4, 11. Observe Indicative with *quotusquisque* without *est* qui, etc. **Quid habet haruspex, cur pulmo incisus etiam in bonis extis dirimat tempus et proferat diem?** Cic., Div., I, 39, 85. **Tu vero quid habes, quare putes, etc.?** Cic., Div., II, 16, 37. **Quid habes, cur ignoscas, etc.?** Sen., Tranq. An., IX, 6.

REM. After the preceding phrases, *quis est?* *quid est?* etc., the Relative occurs with the Indicative. Here a fact is stated in the Relative clause about which an inquiry is made in the leading clause. As, *Quis est qui id censet?* = *who is he who thinks that?* = *he who thinks that, who is he?*

EX.—**Quis est, qui facit nihil nisi sua causa?** Cic., Fam., VII, 12, 2. **Ille vis quae tandem est, quae investigat occulta?** Cic., Tusc., I, 25, 61. **Quid est quod audiui de Bruto?** Cic., Att., XVI, 7, 8. **Quid est, quod nos facit pigros inertesque?** Sen., Ep., VIII, 1, 16.

(i) From the preceding examples it may be gathered that the Relative referring to a negative antecedent or to a *quasi*-negative relation or statement is uniformly construed with the Subjunctive. This use of the Subjunctive is consistent and logical, as a positive affirmation (Indicative) cannot be made of a negative antecedent whose reality and existence is excluded by the negative. The Relative is Consecutive, and hence the Subjunctive is the Consecutive Subjunctive. The negative antecedent covers the dependent (Relative) clause and excludes it as a fact. As, *Nemo est, qui sciat* = *there is no one to know* =

*there is no one such as to know* = *there is no one that knows* = *no one knows* (*nemo scit*).

Ex.—*Nemo est, qui nesclat, quominus discessio fieret, per adversarios tuos esse factum*, Cic., Fam., I, 4, 2. *Nulla est acerbitas, quae non omnibus impendere videatur*, Cic., Fam., II, 16, 4. *Nihil mihi venit in mentem, quod scribendum putem*, Cic., Att., XI, 12, 4. *Loquitur nihil, quod quemquam bonum offendat*, Cic., Att., XIV, 1, 1. *Neque naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent*, Caes., B. G., IV, 29. *Nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committebant*, Caes., B. G., V, 35. *Quorum generum nullum est ex quo non aliquid evaserit*, Cic., Div., II, 53, 109. *Nec cognovi quemquam, qui maiore auctoritate nihil diceret*, Cic., Div., II, 67, 139. *Sed tauri iecur aut cor aut pulmo quid habet naturale, quod declarare possit, quid futurum sit?* Cic., Div., II, 12, 29. *An mihi potest quicquam esse molestum quod tibi gratum futurum sit?* Cic., Fat., II, 4.

REM. While a positive (Indicative) affirmation in a Relative clause may not be made of a negative antecedent, yet a negative statement may be made in the leading (antecedent) clause about a fact in the Relative clause. As, *Nemo est qui hoc dicit* = *he is no one who says this* = *he who says this is a nobody*.

Ex.—*Nihil honestum esse potest, quod iustitia vacat*, Cic., Off., I, 19, 62 (= *nothing can be honorable, which is without justice* = *that, which is without justice, cannot be anything honorable*). *Nihil est stabile, quod infidum est*, Cic., Am., XVIII, 65. *Non est bonum quod incremento malum fit*, Sen., Ira, I, 13, 2. *In corporibus aegris, nihil, quod nociturum est, medici relinquunt*, Curt., VI, 8. *Nihil potest esse diuturnum, cui non subest ratio*, Curt., IV, 54. *Nullum bonum putamus esse, quod ex distantibus constat*, Sen., Ep., XVII, 2, 7. *Nec ulla dura videtur curatio, cuius salutaris effectus est*, Sen., Ira., I, 6, 3. *Non resistet offensis, cui nihil umquam negatum est*, Sen., Ira., II, 21, 6. *Non est bonum, quod magnitudine laborat sua*, Sen., Vit. Beat., XIII, 5. Cf. *Quis iniuriam non potest ferre, qui potest (ferre) iram?* Sen., Ira, III, 26, 1.

(j) The particle *cum*, as a result of its Relative origin, may be Consecutive (= *at a time such as, at a time such that*) and construed with the Subjunctive. The antecedent may be either indefinite, not expressed, or it may be definite and expressed. As, *Fuit cum; fuit tempus cum; tum cum*, etc.

Ex.—*Fuit cum mihi initium requiescendi fore arbitrarer*, Cic., De Or., I, 1, 1 (= *there was a time that I thought, such a time that I thought, etc.*) *Fuit tempus cum rura colerent homines neque urbem haberent*, Varro, R. R., III, 1, 1 (= *there was a time that then = there was such a time that then, etc.*). *In id saeculum Romuli cecidit aetas, cum iam plena Graecia poetarum et musicorum esset*, Cic., Rep., II, 10, 18. *Iam tum, cum bello sociorum tota Italia arderet, homo non acerrimus nec fortissimus, C. Norbanus, in summo otio fuit*, Cic., Verr., V, 4, 8 (*cum* is Consecutive after demonstrative *tum*).

(k) To the Consecutive Subjunctive refer the Subjunctive with *quam* and the Relative (Consecutive) after the comparative (= *he (it) is too great for him (it) = greater than that he (it)*). The case of the Relative is decided by the word in the Relative clause upon which it depends. Instead of *quam qui* and the Subjunctive *quam ut* and the Subjunctive is most frequent in the best prose.

Ex.—*Audita voce praeconis malus gaudium fuit, quam quod universum homines caperent*, Liv., XXXIII, 32, 6. *Maiores sum, quam cui possit fortuna nocere*, Ov., M., VI, 195. *Ferocior oratio visa est, quam quae habenda apud regem esset*, Liv., XXXI, 18, 3.

REM. When the Relative clause is not Consecutive but states the latter member of the comparison as a fact the Indicative is used in this clause.

Ex.—*Senatum consules habent alio se maiore ab tribunis metu ostendente, quam quem nocturnus hostis intulerat*, Liv., III, 16, 6 (here *quam quem* = *than that which*, etc.).

(l) To the Consecutive Subjunctive refer the Subjunctive with the Relative (Consecutive) after *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, *idoneus*.

Ex.—*Litteras tuas legimus minime dignas, quae a te nobis mitterentur*, Cic., Fam., XI, 3, 1. *Me profiteor suscepisse onus dignum, in quo omnes nervos aetatis meae contenderem*, Cic., Verr., Prim. Act., XII, 35. *Non es dignus tu qui habeas quae tam bene facta sunt*, Cic., Verr., IV, 20, 45. *Quid est dignius in quo omnis nostra diligentia consumatur?* Cic., Verr., I, 44, 112. *Patres (vos) indignos ducebant, qui una secum urbe intra eadem moenia viveretis*, Liv., IV, 3, 2. *Digna res est, quam diu multumque consideres: ne ego quidem indignus cui copiam scientiae tuae facias*, Plin. Min., VII, 27, 15. *Nulla videbatur aptior persona, quae de illa aetate loqueretur*, Cic., Am., I, 4. *Non habebam idoneum cui (litteras) darem*, Cic., Att., I, 16, 16. *Si tibi idoneus videor, qui de homine Siculo ac Graeculo iudicem*, Cic., Verr., II, 29, 72. *Non quaero quis hic sit Claudius, quam idoneus propter cuius auctoritatem et dignitatem Sthenius ab omnium Siculorum consuetudine discederet*, Cic., Verr., II, 43, 107. *Hunc Caesar idoneum iudicaverat, quem cum mandatis ad Pompeium mitteret*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 10.

REM. The case of the Relative after the adjectives is decided by the word in the Relative clause upon which the Relative depends. With *qui* after the adjectives compare *ut* and the Subjunctive; but *qui* is the usage in the best prose.

(m) To be carefully noted is the Idiom *pro* (= *according to*) with the Ablative parallel with the Relative and a Tense of *esse*. Thus: *Pro tua prudentia* = *quae tua est prudentia* = *according to your usual foresight* = *with your usual foresight*. This Idiom is again less often

expressed by the Relative and Substantive in the Ablative = *qua es prudentia*, *qua est prudentia*. This is really the Descriptive Ablative defining the subject of *est*. Hence, *pro tua prudentia*; *quae tua est prudentia*; *qua es (est) prudentia*.

Ex.—*Tibi sunt omnia commendata, quae commendationis meae pro tuo in nos amore non indigent*, Cic., Att., X, 8, 9. *Omnino pro tua prudentia sentis, qua consolatione levare possim*, Cic., Att., XI, 6, 1. *Tu pro tua sapientia debebis optare optima*, Cic., Fam., IX, 17, 3. *Tu pro tua prudentia, quibus rebus gaudeat Caesar, tenes*, Cic., Fam., VI, 7, 5. *Si esset factum, quae tua est humanitas, ascripsisses*, Cic., Att., VII, 7, 1. *Audisses comoedos vel, quae mea liberalitas, omnes*, Plin. Min., I, 15, 2. *Sed quae facilitas tua, hoc magis dabis veniam quod, etc.*, Plin. Min., V, 2, 2. *Imaginer omnia, quaeque natura metuentium est, ea maxime mihi, quae maxime abominor, fingo*, Plin. Min., VI, 4, 4. *Boni provehantur, mali, qui est tranquillissimus status civitatis, nec timent nec timentur*, Plin., Pan., 46. *Qua prudentia es, nihil te fugiet*, Cic., Fam., XI, 13 a, 1. *Qua est ipse sagacitate in his rebus*, Cic., Verr., I, 41, 105. *Qua est humanitate Caesar*, Cic., Fam., IX, 9, 3. Cf. *Non dubito quin sine mea commendatione, quod tuum est iudicium de hominibus, Lamiae causa omnia facturum sis*, Cic., Fam., XII, 29, 2. *Alax, quo animo traditur (fuisse), milles oppetere mortem quam illa perpeti maluisset*, Cic., Off., I, 31, 113. *Et, cuius lenitatis est Galba, iam fortasse promisit*, Tac., H., I, 37 (observe the Genitive *lenitatis*).

408. The participle often represents the Relative and a finite verb (*vid.* 55, I). The clause represented by the participle is either the simple Relative with the Indicative or the Consecutive Relative with the Subjunctive to be decided by the context.

Ex.—*Lex est recta ratio, imperans honesta, prohibens contraria*, Cic., Phil., XI, 12, 28. *Omnes, aliud agentes, aliud simulant, perfidi, improbi, maligni sunt*, Cic., Off., III, 14, 60. *Hae sunt divitiae certae in quacumque sortis humanae levitate uno loco permansurae*, Sen., Ben., VI, 3, 1.

## The Causal Clause.

409. The Causal clause is introduced by:

- (a) *Quod* and *quia*.
- (b) *Quoniam*; *quando* and its strengthened forms, *quandoque*, *quandoquidem*; *quatenus*.
- (c) *Cum*.
- (d) The Relative alone and with *ut*, *utpote*, *quippe*.
- (e) The Participle.

410. The particle *quod* is the Complementary neuter Accusative singular, as, perhaps, *quia* is the Complementary neuter Accusative plural of the Relative.

The facts in the language indicate that the Romans employed *quod* and *quia* as Causal particles without conscious reference to a clearly defined difference in their meaning, while *quod* rather than *quia* was used in the introduction of an objective relation after verbs of Emotion and Feeling and their equivalents. According to their origin and form *quod* as the Accusative of limitation may be interpreted, *as to this that, as to the fact that, in this that = because; quia = as to this that, in this that = because.* Thus, *Gaudeo, quod venit = as to this that, as to the fact that, in this that—he has come I rejoice = I rejoice as to this that, as to the fact that, in that he has come = I rejoice because he has come; abiit, quia venisti = as to this that you have come, in that you have come, he has departed = he has departed because you have come.* In the statement of the sentences, as given, it is implied and logically follows that the *quod* or the *quia* clause stands in an explanatory Causal relation to the leading clause.

*Quoniam = quom (cum) + iam*, originally a particle of time=*when now (now when)*, so *quando, quandoque, quandoquidem*, as Causal particles, express a ground or reason known to the speaker or writer to be true, and hence a Subjective Causal relation = *since. Quatenus = in so far as = since.*

Hence, *quod = as to this that, as to the fact that, in this that = because; quia = as to this that, in this that = because; quoniam, quando, quandoque, quandoquidem = since; quatenus = in so far as = since.*

#### Mood in the Causal Clause.

411. 1. The Mood with *quod* and *quia* is the Indicative, outside of *Oratio Obliqua*. They introduce a real ground or cause and one indorsed as such by the speaker or writer.

Ex.—*Haec Scipionis oratio, quod senatus in urbe habebatur Pompeiusque aderat, ex ipsius ore Pompeii mitti videbatur*, *Caes., B. Civ., I, 2. Caesar, quod neque colloquium tolli volebat neque salutem suam equitatu committere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit*, etc., *Caes., B. G., I, 42. Ne Pherecydes quidem divinus habebitur, quod cum vidisset haustam aquam de iugi puteo, terrae motus dixit instare*, *Cic., Div., I, 50, 112. Eventus belli minus miserabilem dimicationem fecit, quod non acie certatum est*, *Liv., I, 23, 2. Uterque alio quodam modo (appellatus est sapiens). Acilius, quia prudens esse in*

iure civili putabatur, Cato, quia multarum rerum usum habebat, Cic., Am., II, 6. *Latinus dux, quia suos percussos videbat, arcessit cohortem exsulum Romanorum, cui L. Tarquinii filius praeerat*, Liv., II, 19, 10.

(a) With *quod* and *quia* causal, are associated the following correlative Demonstratives: *Hoc, eo, ita* (rare), *ideo, idcirco, ob hoc* (*id*), *ob id ipsum, ob eam rem, ob eam causam, qua de causa, propter id, propterea, ea gratia, eo nomine, ergo* (not observed in classical Latin).

Ex.—*Nostri hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant*, Caes., B. G., III, 4. *Accidit ut ille hoc quod sedent quasi debilitentur et deprimantur*, Plin. Min., II, 19, 3. *Eo feci studiosius, quod iudicabam duriores partes mihi impositas esse*, Cic., Att., X, 8, A, 1. *Eo non accidit, quod numquam cum fortiore sum congressus*, Nep., Eum., 11. *Eo ante omnia insignis publica maestitia (fuit), quia matronae annum ut parentem eum luxerunt*, Liv., II, 7, 4. *Eo—quia, Tac., Agr., 22. Eo—quia, Tac., Ann., XV, 28. Eo—quia, Tac., H., III, 25. Cum Caesar ita inita hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat, bellum in Gallia coërtum est*, Caes., B. G., III, 7. *In Epirum ideo non veni, quod subito mihi universi nuntii venerant, etc.*, Cic., Att., III, 14, 2. *Ideo admiror dementia nostram quod tantopere amamus rem fugacissimam, corpus*, Sen., Ep., VI, 6, 23. *Ex quo magis emergit quale sit decorum illud, ideo quia nihil decet invita Minerva*, Cic., Off., I, 31, 110. *Ideo—quia, Plin. Min., Plin. et Trai., LXV, 3. Ideo—quia, Sen., Ira, I, 11, 6. Ideo—quia, Sen., Ira, II, 11, 4. Ideo—quia, Sen., Tranq. An., XI, 2, and often. Quod eum tibi quaestoris in loco constitueras, idcirco . . . putasti*, Cic., Verr., I, 30, 77. *Idcirco quidam comoedia necne poema esset quaesivere, quod acer spiritus ac vis nec verbis nec rebus inest*, Hor., Sat., I, 4, 46. *Quae omnia quia Cato laudibus extulerat in caelum, idcirco in elus sententiam est facta discessio*, Cic., Att., XII, 21, 1. *Quia natura mutari non potest idcirco verae amicitiae sempiternae sunt*, Cic., Am., IX, 32. *Idcirco sum tardior, quod non invenio fidelem tabellarium*, Cic., Att., I, 13, 1. *Quae fama non idcirco solum emanarat, quod iste statuerat, etc.*, Cic., Verr., I, 1, 1. *Te ob hoc maxime delectat auguratus meus, quod M. Tullius augur fuit*, Plin. Min., IV, 8, 4. *Laxata vis morbi ob hoc solum videbatur, quia magnitudinem mali sentiebat*, Curt., III, 13. *In conspectu erat nepos parvulus ob id ipsum miserabilis, quod nondum sentiebat calamitatem*, Curt., IV, 41. *Nihil scripsi ad te ob eam rem, quod aedificationis tuae consilium commendatione mea nolebam impediri*, Cic., Fam., XIII, 1, 3. *Ob eam causam quod regnum appetebat, ab civitate erat interfectus*, Caes., B. G., VII, 4. *Ob eam causam . . . quod*, Cic., Fam., XIII, 1, 3. *Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt*, Caes., B. G., I, 1. *Ager ipse, propter id quod vectigal large supercurrit, semper dominum . . . inveniet*, Plin. Min., VII, 18, 3. *Quod nobis nulla ratione factum a Pompeio videtur, propterea quod est quaedam animi incitatio innata omnibus, quae studio pugnae incenditur*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 92. *Inimicus est propterea quod arator est*, Cic., Verr., II, 60, 149. *Propterea—quod*, Cic., Fam., IX, 18, 1. *Propterea quod*, Cic., Tusc., I, 19, 44. *Propterea quod*, Caes., B. G., I, 6. *Propterea quod*, Plin. Min., Pan., 68. *Num*

propterea nulla est rei publicae gerendae ratio, quia multa Cn. Pompeium fefellerunt? Cic., Div., I, 14, 24. Res mirabilis, propterea quia non saepe fit, Cic., Div., II, 22, 49. Id ea gratia eveniebat, quod... nemo Numida ex fuga regem sequitur, Sall., Jug., 54. Id ea gratia facilius fuit, quod Bocchus... legatos Romam miserat, Sall., Jug., 80. Grates ago habeoque, non solum eo nomine, quod hodie salutem meam vestrae praeponitis, sed, etc., Curt., IX, 25. Ergo quia sum tangere ausus, haud causificor, quin eam ego habeam potissimum, Pl., Aul., 748. Cf. Id ea ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare, Caes., B. G., I, 28.

REM. The clause with *quod* or *quia*, with and without a Correlative Demonstrative, takes the Subjunctive in *Oratio Obliqua*. In this connection observe the attraction of the leading verb of Saying or Thinking into the explanatory Causal clause. This attraction also occurs in an explanatory clause with the Relative (*vid.* 329).

Ex.—Centuriones tribunique militum (dixerunt): Afranianos contra multis rebus sui timoris signa misisse, quod suis non subvenissent, quod de colle non decederent, etc., Caes., B. Civ., I, 71. Caesar in eam spem venerat, se sine pugna et sine vulnere suorum rem conficere posse, quod re frumentaria adversarios interclusisset, Caes., B. Civ., I, 72. Apud quosdam invenio: A. Postumium, quia collega dubiae fidei fuerit, se consulatu abdicasse, Liv., II, 21, 3. Sed recordatione nostrae amicitiae sic fruor, ut beate vixisse videar, quia cum Scipione vixerim (Subjective *Oratio Obliqua*), Cic., Am., IV, 15. Divitiacus dixit... nec quemquam ex eo plus, quam se, doloris, propterea quod ille per se crevisset, Caes., B. G., I, 20. Posthac non ita dicam miseros esse, sed tantum miseros, ob id ipsum quia non sint, Cic., Tusc., I, 7, 13. Ab Atheniensibus, locum sepulturae intra urbem ut darent, impetrare non potui, quod religione se impediri dicerent (cf. quod impedirentur), Cic., F., IV, 12, 3. Nominat iste servum, quem magistrum pecoris esse diceret (cf. qui magister pecoris esset), Cic., Verr., V, 7, 17.

2. The Mood with *quoniam*, *quando*, *quandoquidem*, *quandoque*, *quatenus* (= *quoniam*), as Causal particles, is the Indicative, outside of *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—Oratiunculas mittam, quoniam quidem ea, quae nos scribimus adolescentulorum studiis excitati, te etiam delectant, Cic., Att., II, 1, 3. Quod prorsus credo, quoniam tu ita iudicas, Cic., Q. Fr., I, 2, 3. Tempus est me ipsum a me amari, quando ab illis nullo modo possum, Cic., Att., IV, 5, 3. Quod motum affert alicui quodque ipsum agitur alicunde, quando finem habet motus, vivendi finem habeat necesse est, Cic., Tusc., I, 23, 53. Quandoque hisce homines iniussu populi Romani foedus ictum iri sponponderunt... hosce homines vobis dedo, Liv., IX, 10, 9 (quandoque is rare). Sequitur ut liberatores tuo iudicio sint, quandoquidem tertium nihil potest esse, Cic., Phil., II, 13, 31. Quandoquidem, inquit, est apud te virtuti honos, ut beneficio tuleris a me, quod minis nequisti, trecenti coniuravimus, etc., Liv., II, 12, 15. Ad quae discutenda valent sterilis mala robora fici, quandoquidem data sunt ipsis quoque

**fata sepulchris**, Iuv., X, 146. **Et quatenus etiam forte quadam pervenimus ad difficilius narrationum genus**, iam de his loquamur in quibus, etc., Quint., IV, 2, 66. **Et quatenus nobis denegatur diu vivere, relinquamus aliquid quo nos vixisse testemur**, Plin. Min., III, 7, 14. **lubeas miserum esse, libenter quatenus id facit**, Hor., Sat., I, 1, 64 (*quatenus* in poetry and late Latin).

(a) With *quoniam* are associated the Correlative Demonstratives *propterea*, *ideo*, etc., in the leading clause.

Ex.—**Propterea, inquit Plutarchus, in certaminibus palmam signum esse placuit victoriae, quoniam ingenium ligni eiusdem est, ut urgentibus opprimentibusque non cedat**, Gell., III, 6, 3. **Ideo... quoniam**, Plin. Mai., XX, 35.

REM. 1. *Quoniam*, *quando*, *quandoque*, *quandoquidem*, *quatenus*, take the Subjunctive in *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—**Petit ab utroque, quoniam Pompeli mandata ad se deluterint, ne graventur sua quoque ad eum postulata deferre**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 9. **Quidam (dixerunt) omnium id ducum consilium fuisse, ostentare potius urbi bellum quam inferre, quando validissimae cohortes a Vitellio descivissent**, etc., Tac., H., III, 78.

REM. 2. *Quoniam* and *quando* as particles of time should be kept in view. The Mood is the Indicative outside of *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—**Ego quoniam inspexi mulieris sententiam, cepi tabellas**, Pl., M. G., 129. **Ubi satur sum, nulla (intestina) crepitant, quando esurio, tum crepant**, Pl., Men., 910.

REM. 3. It should be borne in mind that *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, etc., are construed with the Potential Subjunctive and when the subject is the Indefinite Second Person. In such cases the Subjunctive is determined without reference to the particle.

412. A leading statement is explained by a Causal sentence of two members, the former of which is Negative, the latter Adversative. This Causal sentence is, in its pure form, introduced by *non quod* or *non quia*, followed by *sed quod*, *sed quia* = *not because, but because*.

1. In the Negative member the action or general condition upon which the cause is based does not exist, is not a fact, and hence the cause is not real and does not exist. In this case the Subjunctive is the usage in the Negative member of the Causal sentence.

Ex.—**Pugiles in iactandis caestibus ingemescunt, non quod doleant animove succumbant, sed quia profundenda voce omne corpus intenditur venitque plaga vehementior**, Cic., Tusc., II, 23, 56. (The leading fact (statement) is *ingemescunt*; *doleant* and *succumbant* are presented as *not facts, as not existing*; the *pugiles* are *not in pain*, etc., while the real cause is *corpus intenditur*, etc.). **Cum quibus omnis fere nobis disceptatio contentioque est, non quod eos maxime**



contemnamus, sed quod videntur acutissime sententias suas defendere, Cic., Div., II, 72, 150. Sexaginta tres postero die comprehensi sunt, a quibus praetor vim arcuerat, non quia salvos vellet, sed quia perire causa indicta nolebat, Liv., XXXVIII, 33, 11. Quis exitus est melior quam in finem suum natura solvente dilabi? Non quia aliquid mali sit ictus et e vita repentinus excessus, sed quia lenis haec est via, subduci, Sen., Ep., III, 5, 4. Causa est ita vivendi quibusdam, non quia aliquid existiment noctem ipsam habere iucundius, sed quia gravis malae conscientiae lux est, Sen., Ep., XX, 5, 14.

2. The explicit negation by the Indicative of the contents of the former member of the Causal sentence is to be carefully noted. While this use of the Indicative is quite frequent, the Subjunctive implying the non-existence of the action in the clause is the usage (*vid.* 1 above).

Ex.—Id a Quinctio facile impetratum (est), non quia satis dignos esse credebatur, sed quia Antiocho rege iam suspecto favor conciliandus nomini Romano apud civitates erat, Liv., XXXIII, 27, 6 (here non quia satis dignos esse credebatur = non satis dignos esse credebatur). Nec nunc illi, quia audent, sed quia necesse est, pugnaturi sunt, Liv., XXI, 40, 7. Si cadendum est, cadam orbe concusso, non quia fas est optare publicam cladem, sed quia ingens mortis solacium est terram quoque videre mortalem, Sen., N. Q., VI, 2, 9. Manent enim cuncta, non quia aeterna sunt, sed quia defenduntur cura regentis, Sen., Ep., VI, 6, 28. Potest hoc accidere, non quia montis altitudo descendit, sed quia ignis evanuit et minus vehemens ac largus effertur, Sen., Ep., X, 3, 2. (In such sentences the Subjunctive would be more usual in the Negative clause).

3. In the Negative member of the Causal sentence the action or condition is stated as a fact in the Indicative, but rejected as the cause or reason.

Ex.—Exercitus sum, non quia multis debeo, sed quia saepe concurrunt propter aliquorum bene de me meritorum inter ipsos contentiones. Cic., Planc., XXXII, 78 (here multis debeo states a fact, but one rejected as the cause or ground of exercitus sum). Catus Aelius Sextus ab Ennio dictus est, non quod ea quaerebat, quae numquam inveniret, sed quod ea respondebat, quae, etc., Cic., Rep., I, 18, 30. Neque vero hoc, quia sum ipse augur, ita sentio, sed quia sic existimare nos est necesse, Cic., Leg., II, 12, 31. Virtus ista, quam affectamus, magnifica est, non quia per se beatum est malo caruisse, sed quia animum laxat, etc., Sen., N. Q., I, Prolog., 6. Peto bonam valetudinem et quietem et dolorum vacationem, non quia bona sunt, sed quia secundum naturam sunt, Sen., Ep., XIV, 4, 11. Gratus sum, non quia expedit, sed quia iuvat, Sen., Ep., XI, 2, 20. Morieris, non quia aegrotas, sed quia vivis, Sen., Ep., X, 2, 6. Ego Rufum laudo non quia tu ut ita facerem petisti, sed quia est ille dignissimus, Plin. Min., IX, 39, 1.

4. Instead of *non quod* (*quia*) and the Subjunctive *non quo* with the Subjunctive frequently occurs, particularly in Cicero. *Non quo* presents, perhaps, an attraction from *non eo quod* = *not therefore that*,

*not therefore because, or not because, parallel with non quod (quia) and the Subjunctive.*

Ex.—In quo ego, non quo libenter male audiam, sed quia causam non libenter relinquo, nimium patiens et lentus existimor, Cic., De Or., II, 65, 305. Quae in mentem mihi venerunt, decrevi brevi ad te perscribere, non quo ea te fugere existimem, sed quod forsitan dolore impeditus minus ea perspicias, Cic., Fam., IV, 5, 1. Non, mehercule, quo quidquam desit, sed quia valde cupio, non videor nimium laborare, Cic., Fam., VII, 32, 3.

(a) The association *non quia (quod)* and *sed quoniam* is very rare.

Ex.—Placet autem duodecim ventos esse, non quia ubique tot sint, quosdam enim inclinatio terrarum excludit, sed quoniam nusquam plures sunt, Sen., N. Q., V, 17, 1.

(b) The former (negative clause) may be substituted by a negative with a participle or adjective with a causal force, or any word of cause. Observed in late Latin.

Ex.—Non aere captus, nec arte, unam tantum Zenonis statuum Cypria expeditione non vendidit Cato, sed quia philosophi erat, Plin. Mai., XXXIV, 92 (here *non aere captus, nec arte* = *non quia aere esset captus, etc.*). Aurum nec pondere aut facilitate materiae praelatum est ceteris metallis, cum cedat per utrumque plumbo, sed quia rerum uni nihil igne deperit etiam in incendiis rogisque, Plin. Mai., XXXIII, 58. Columnis utebantur in templis, nec lautitiae causa, nondum enim ista intellegebantur, sed quia firmiores aliter statui non poterant, Plin. Mai., XXXVI, 45.

(c) In the phrase *non quo* with the Subjunctive *quo* is sometimes to be interpreted as Final = *in order thereby* (= *ut eo*). This *quo* is not to be confounded with the Causal *quo*.

Ex.—Introducebat Carneades, non quo (ut eo: eo consilio ut) probaret, sed ut opponeret Stoicis, summum bonum esse frui iis rebus, quas, etc., Cic., Acad., II, 42, 131. Cf. *Non quo te celem*, etc., Cic., Att., V, 10, 3.

(d) To be noted is the association *non idcirco . . . quod; non ideo . . . quod; non eo . . . quod (quo)* and the Subjunctive. The particles *idcirco*, *ideo*, *eo*, stand in the leading statement.

Ex.—Neque haec idcirco tibi scribo, quod te non eadem animadvertere sciam, sed quod mihi persuasissimum est Lepidum recte facturum numquam, si, etc., Cic., Fam., XI, 9, 2. Non idcirco eorum (librorum) usum dimiseram, quod iis succenserem, sed quod eorum me suppudebat, Cic., Fam., IX, 1, 2. Non eo . . . quo, Cic., Quinct., II, 5. Il qui benefacta sua verbis adornant non ideo praedicare quia fecerint, sed ut praedicarent fecisse creduntur, Plin. Min., I, 8, 15.

5. To the negative clauses *non quia (quod)*, *non quo*, the negative *non* is added. As, *Non quia non*, *non quo non*. The repetition of

the negative by *non* gives an affirmative conclusion. Instead of *non quia non*, *non quo non*, occurs *non quin*. The Mood with the negative repeated is regularly the Subjunctive. The Indicative (rarely occurring) emphasizes an affirmative statement.

Ex.—*Maiores nostri in dominum de servo quaeri noluerunt, non quia non posset verum inveniri, sed quia videbatur indignum esse*, etc., Cic., Mil., XXII, 59. *Non quia non fuerint . . . verum*, etc., Plin. Min., III, 19, 7. *Augustus in domo successorem quaesivit, ego in republica, non quia propinquos aut socios belli non habeam, sed neque ipse imperium ambitione accepi*, etc., Tac., H., I, 15. *Non quia non . . . sed quia*, Quint., VIII, 3, 42. *Actor rerum illarum fuit, non quo periculum suum non videret, sed in tanta reipublicae tempestate nihil sibi nisi de patriae periculis cogitandum putabat*, Cic., *Sest.*, XXVIII, 61. *Pauca dicemus, non quo non latus locus sit, sed paulo ante iacta sunt fundamenta*, Cic., *Acad.*, II, 12, 37. *Ego me ducem in civili bello nolui esse, non quin rectum esset, sed quia, quod multo rectius fuit, id mihi fraudem tulit*, Cic., *Att.*, VII, 26, 2. *Non quin iidem sint*, sed, etc., Cic., *Or.*, LXVIII, 227. *Non ideo quin, sed ut*, etc., Liv., II, 15, 2. *Non quin . . . sed quia*, Q., IX, 4, 25. *Non quin . . . sed quod*, Sall., *Cat.*, 35.

6. It is obvious that the latter member of the Causal sentence introduced by *sed quia*, *sed quod*, furnishes the *real* cause or ground of the leading statement. In addition, however, to *sed quia*, *sed quod*, this member may be introduced by *sed ut* (Final) and the Subjunctive; it may, again, be an independent clause with *sed* or *verum* without a Causal particle, or any form of expression which presents the true explanation of the leading statement.

Ex.—*Puero hoc a me dabis, non quo aetas nostra ab illius aetate quicquam debeat periculi suspicari, sed ut nosmet ipsi inter nos coniunctiores simus. quam adhuc fuimus*, Cic., *Att.*, XIV, 13, B, 5. *Non quo . . . putarem . . . sed ut posset*, Cic., *Verr.*, II, 77, 188. *Non quo probaret—sed ut opponeret*, Cic., *Acad.*, II, 42, 131. *Veni domum, non quo optima vivendi condicio esset, sed tamen, si esset aliqua forma rei publicae, tamquam in patria ut essem*, Cic., *Fam.*, VII, 3, 4. *Utar oratione perpetua, non quo iam hoc sit necesse, verum ut experiar utrum ille ferat molestius me tunc tacuisse an nunc dicere*, Cic., *Verr.*, I, 9, 24. *Statueram commendaticias ad te litteras mittere, non quo eas intellegerem apud te valere, sed ne iis, qui me rogarent, aliquid de nostra coniunctione imminutum esse ostenderem*, Cic., *Fam.*, V, 5, 1. *Rex id celatum voluerat, non quo quicquam metueret aut suspicaretur, sed ut ne multi ante praeciperent quam populus Romanus*, Cic., *Verr.*, IV, 28, 64. *Proditores in urbibus meis regnant, non quia tanto honore digni habentur, sed ut praemiis eorum vestri sollicitentur animi*, Curt., V, 24. *Totos dies scribo, non quo proficiam quid, sed tantisper impediatur*, Cic., *Att.*, XII, 14, 3. *Sensim progrediens extenuatur dolor, non quo ipsa res immutari soleat aut possit, sed id, quod ratio debuerat, usus docet*, etc., Cic., *Tusc.*, III, 22, 54. *Mihi quidem laudabiliora videntur omnia, quae sine venditione et sine populo teste fiunt, non*

quo fugiendus sit, sed tamen nullum theatrum virtuti conscientia maius est, Cic., Tusc., II, 26, 64. Non soleo temere contra Stoicos, non quo illis admodum assentiar, sed pudore impediō, Cic., Fin., IV, 1, 2. Neque haec eo scribo, quo te non meo casu maximo dolore esse affectum sciam, sed profecto, si, quantum me amas, tantum amare deberes, numquam esses passus, etc., Cic., Att., III, 15, 4 (observe here *sed* and the Conditional sentence). Ad urbem Scipioni maiore resistitur vi, non quia plus animi victis est, sed melius muri quam vallum armatos arcent, Liv., X, 41, 12.

REM. 1. It sometimes occurs that there is no second member of the Causal sentence while *non quo* or *non quia* with the Subjunctive retain their regular sense.

Ex.—Non eo dico, quo mihi veniat in dubium tua fides aut quo non in iis, quos tibi advocasti, spem summam habere P. Quinctius debeat, Cic., Quinct., II, 5.

REM. 2. The second member of the sentence may be represented by *sed* and a participle (Causal) instead of *sed* and a finite verb.

Ex.—Postero die profectus adversa ripa Rhodani mediterranea Galliae petit, non quia rectior ad Alpes via esset, sed, quantum a mari recessisset, minus obvium fore Romanum credens, cum quo, priusquam in Italiam ventum foret, non erat in animo manus conserere, Liv., XXI, 31, 3.

413. The foregoing association *non quod*, *non quia*, etc., followed by *sed quod*, *sed quia*, etc., presents the cause or ground not existing, or rejected, followed by the real cause or ground. This order of cause or ground is reversed by *magis quia*, *magis quod*, and the Indicative; by *magis* and a participle in the Causal sense or some other Causal relation; by *magis ut* (Final) and the Subjunctive, followed by *quam quod*, *quam quo* (*quam quia*) and the Subjunctive. In the *magis* member the Causal relation is modestly assented to or affirmed, while it is denied in the *quam quod* or *quam quo* member. In its simplest form the sentence is *magis quia* (*quod*) + the Indicative, followed by *quam quod* or *quam quo* + the Subjunctive. English: *Rather because, than because.*

Ex.—lactatum in condicionibus nequiquam de Tarquinis in regnum restituendis, magis quia negare ipse nequiverat Tarquinis, quam quod negatum iri sibi ab Romanis ignoraret, Liv., II, 13, 3. Libertatis originem inde magis, quia annuum imperium consulare factum est, quam quod deminutum quidquam sit ex regia potestate, numeres, Liv., II, 1, 7. Primo magis quia improvise id fecerat, quam quod par viribus esset, anceps certamen erat, Liv., XXVII, 28, 16. Haec amore magis impulsus scribenda ad te putavi, quam quo te arbitrarer monitis et praeceptis egere, Cic., Fam., X, 3, 4 (observe Causal force of participle *impulsus*). Ex aliis rebus magis, quam quod cuiquam id compertum foret, haec fama valebat, Sall., Cat., 14 (observe Causal force of *ex aliis rebus*).

**Superioribus litteris benevolentia magis adductus, quam quo res ita postularet, fui longior, Cic., Fam., VI, 3, 1. Urbi ingens praebitus terror, magis re subita quam quod parum virium esset, Liv., III, 8, 7. Tu conservabis amorem tuum, etsi more magis hoc quidem scribo quam quo te admonendum putem, Cic., Fam., XI, 29, 3. Profligavit bellum Iudaicum Vespasianus; oppugnatione Hierosolymorum reliqua, duro magis et arduo opere, ob ingenium montis et pervicaciam superstitionis, quam quo satis virium obsessis ad tolerandas necessitates superesset, Tac., H., II, 4 (observe the Causal force of *duro*... opere = because the work was trying, etc.). Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderant, Caes., B. G., IV, 2. Quod equidem magis ne praetermitterem rettuli, quam quia verum aut veri simile putem, Suet., Claud., 1. Tum e seditiosis unum vinciri iubet, magis usurpandi iuris, quam quia unius culpa foret, Tac., H., IV, 25 (observe the Final force of *usurpandi iuris*).**

**REM.** In the second (*quam quia*) member the Indicative in an emphatic denial if the cause is allowed. The use of the Indicative, however, is very rare.

**Ex.**—Tandem silentio facto, magis quia motum esse credebant, quam quia ipsi moveri poterant, quidnam acturus esset, expectabant, Curt., X, 9.

#### **Quod with Verbs of Emotion and Feeling and with Expressions Involving a Like Sense.**

**414.** *Quod* in this connection presents a phase of cause—namely, the ground. Translate *quod* by *that* = *on the ground that*. Instead of *quod* the particle *quia* occasionally occurs in the classical Latin, while in the early Latin *quia* is the usage rather than *quod*. The particle *quod* (*quia*) introduces a ground known to the speaker or writer as real, and hence the Mood used with it is the Indicative. *Quod* (*quia*) in the office stated occurs extensively in Latin. Some of the verbs and expressions with which it is used are: *Accusare, angere, consolari, delectari, dolere, gaudere, gloriarī, gratulari, irasci, indignari, invidere, luctari, laudare, mirari, queri, reprehendere, vituperare, aequo animo ferre, gratias agere, moleste (aegre, graviter) ferre*, etc.

**Ex.**—*Consolare te, quod omnium mentes improborum mihi uni maxime sunt infensae et adversae, Cic., Sull., X, 29. Doleo quod nullam partem per aetatem sanae et salvae rei publicae gustare potuisti, Cic., Fam., XII, 23, 3. Bonis viris quod ais probari, quae adhuc fecerimus, valde gaudeo, Cic., Att., IX, 7, 6. Gratulor tibi, quod ex provincia salvum te ad tuos recepisti, Cic., Fam., XIII, 73, 1. Quod a te seductus est tuoque beneficio adhuc vivit haec pestis, interdum, quod mihi vix fas est, tibi subirascor, Cic., Fam., X, 28, 1. Quod spirantis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formas hominum habetis, indignantur, Liv., IV, 3, 8.*

**Quod animadversum est in eos non debeo reprehendere**, Cic., Rosc. Am., XLVII, 137. **Quod viris fortibus honos habitus est, laudo**, Cic., Rosc. Am., XLVII, 137. **Quod admones gratias ago, quod rogas queror**, Plin. Min., IV, 17, 1. **Epistolam meam quod pervolgatam scribis esse, non fero moleste**, Cic., Att., VIII, 9, 1. **Graviter eam rem tulerunt quod stetisse per Trebonium, quo minus oppido potirentur, videbatur**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 14. Cf. **Hoc unum consolatur me quia qui nil aliud nisi quod sibi soli placet consulit aduersum filium, nugas agit**, Pl., Trin., 396. **Lacrimas mi haec eliciunt, quia ego ad hoc genus duravi hominum**, Pl., Trin., 290. **Suscensui, meum corrumpi quia perpessus's filium**, Pl., Trin., 1165. **Romae quia postea non fuisti quam discesseras miratus sum**, Cic., Fam., V, 14, 1. **Doleo quia doles et angere**, Cic., Fam., V, 14, 2. But, again, in comedy: **Nimis beat, quod commeatus transtinet trans parietem**, Pl., M. G., 468. **Ne miremini quod non triumpho**, Pl., Bacch., 1072.

REM. In connection with the classes of verbs named *quod* (*quia*) takes, of course, the Subjunctive in *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—**Memini gloriari solitum esse Hortensium, quod numquam bello civili interfuisset**, Cic., Fam., II, 16, 3. **Mihi gratulabare, quod audisses**, etc., Cic., Fam., IV, 14, 1. **Laetabantur, quod eam vituperationem effugissem**, Cic., Att., XVI, 7, 5. **Me autem hic laudat, quod rettulerim, non quod patefecerim, cohortatus sim**, etc., Cic., Att., XII, 21, 1. **Dixit: doluisse se, quod populi Romani beneficium sibi extorqueretur**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 9. **Laelium et Scipionem facimus admirantes, quod is tam facile senectutem ferat**, Cic., Sen., I, 3. **A te peto, ut iis significes te non moleste ferre, quod intellegas ea, quae facias, mihi quoque grata esse**, Cic., Fam., XIII, 28 b, 2. **Non dubito quin mirare atque stomachare, quod tecum de eadem re agam saepius**, Cic., Att., XVI, 16, F, 1.

(a) There are many verbs and expressions implying Emotion or Feeling and, hence, construed with *quod* and the Indicative (Subjunctive in *Oratio Obliqua*).

Ex.—**Caesar Aeduos accusat, quod ab iis non levetur**, Caes., B., G., I, 16. **Confusus, quod**, Curt., VII, 31. **Corripere, quod**, Suet., Tib., 32. **Collaudare, quod**, Suet., Tib., 32. **Delinquere, quod**, Curt., IX, 11. **Exacerbari, quod**, Plin. Min., VIII, 5, 2. **Falli, quod**, Nep., Ep., 5. **Incusare, quod**, Plin. Min., VI, 20, 12. **Obicere, quod**, Cic., Tusc., I, 2, 3. **Maerere, quod**, Sen., Ep., XIX, 5, 25. **Laudibus ferre, quod**, Plin. Min., VIII, 18, 3. **Illacrimare, quod**, Plin. Min., III, 7, 13. **Imputare, quod**, Plin. Min., Ep., VIII, 21, 4. **Tribuere veniam, quod**, Plin. Min., Paneg., 91. **Perhorrescere, quod**, Plin. Min., VIII, 11, 1. **Placere, quod**, Nep., Arist., 1. **Aspergere, quod**, Nep., Alc., 3. **Reum facere, quod**, Nep., Alc., 4. **Obiurgare, quod**, Cic., Fam., XI, 27, 1. **Vituperare, quod**, Cic., Fam., XII, 4, 2. **Invidere, quod**, Cic., Fam., X, 31, 6. **Torquere, quod**, Plin. Min., VII, 30, 1. **Probare, quod**, Plin. Min., VIII, 13, 1. Etc.

(b) The Time of an event may serve as the ground of it. In this case, after a verb of Emotion or Feeling, *cum* is used. Translate *cum* by *when* = *in that*.

**Ex.**—*Gratulor tibi, cum tantum vales apud Dolabellam*, Cic., Fam., IX, 14, 3. *Ita sensurus es, ut me referre gratiam putes, cum memoria tenebo*, Cic., Fam., X, 11, 1. *Te quidem, cum isto animo es, satis laudare non possum*, Cic., Mil., XXXVI, 99. *Tibi maximas gratias ago, cum tantum litterae meae potuerunt, ut, etc.*, Cic., Fam., XIII, 24, 2. *Habeo gratiam tibi, quom copiam istam mi facis*, Pl., Capt., 373. *Quom istaec res tibi ex sententiâ pulcre euenit, gaudeo*, Pl., Rud., 1366.

(c) The ground of an action or statement may be conditionally stated by *si*. This is particularly the case after verbs and expressions implying embarrassment, astonishment, and doubt, as *mirari*, etc.; rarely with verbs expressing displeasure, as *indignari*; and joy, as *gaudere*. Translate *si* by *if*.

**Ex.**—*Miror, si quemquam amicum habere potuit*, Cic., Am., XV, 54. *Miraris, si liberi homines superbiam tuam ferre non possumus?* Curt., VIII, 25. *Non debes admirari, si tantas invenis vitiorum proprietates*, Sen., Ep., XX, 5, 17. *Rex indignatus, si una gens posset efficere, ne invictus esset, invicta manu comitante procedit*, Curt., VI, 16. *Gaudemus, si quid invasimus, invadendique aliquos spes vana delusit*, Sen., Ep., IX, 3, 9. *Nos mirabimur, si oratio . . . pluribus artibus egeat*, Quint., I, 10, 9. *Gaudebimus, si hoc adversarius facit*, Quint., VI, 4, 13. *Minime miror, si (ille) te fugitat*, Pl., Capt., 545. Cf. *Minime mirum, si ista res adhuc nostra lingua illustrata non est*, Cic., De Or., II, 13, 55. *Nec mirum, si ista . . . tantum in animis valent*, Quint., XI, 3, 67. *Quid mirum in senibus, si infirmi sunt aliquando?* Cic., Sen., XI, 35. *Minime est mirandum, si vita eius fuit segura*, Nep., Cim., 4.

**REM.** To be noted in this connection is *ni (nisi)* with *mirum est* in the statement of an affirmative relation. (For the force of *ni* as compared with *quin vid.* 290, f.)

**Ex.**—*Mirum adeost ni hunc Aetoli sibi fecere agoranomum*, Pl., Capt., 821. *Mira sunt, ni illic homost aut dormitator aut sector zonarius*, Pl., Trin., 862.

**415.** With the verbs and phrases expressing Emotion and Feeling the Accusative and Infinitive occurs. With the Accusative and Infinitive the verb or phrase is to be interpreted as a verb of Saying or Thinking—that is, the substantive element of the verb is affirmed or, again, it is presented as representing a simple mental state (= verb *sentiendi*). In Latin, while the principle upon which the Accusative with the Infinitive is based is obvious, in the translation it is not easy to distinguish it from *quod (quia)* and a finite verb. Thus, *Gaudeo te venisse* = *I express my joy that you have come, I am glad that you have come*; *gratulor amicum tuum venisse* = *I tender (express) my congratulation that your friend has come, I congratulate you that your friend has come*.

Ex.—*Gaudeo te mansisse*, Cic., Att., IX, 10, 8. *Laetor tibi probari sententiam et orationem meam*, Cic., Fam., XII, 2, 1. *Lentulus se alterum fore Sullam inter suos gloriatur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 4. *Caesar deductum ac depravatum (esse) Pompeium queritur*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 7. *Caesar magnopere admirabatur Magium ad se non remitti*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 26. *Te non esse Romae submoleste fero*, Cic., Att., V, 21, 1. *Aegrius, quam dignum erat, tulere Valerii necessarii dedicationem templi*. Horatio dari, Liv., II, 8, 7. *Laetor tandem longi erroris vobis finem factum esse*, Liv., V, 3, 3. *Quonam modo indignari possunt, quibus aliquid novi adiectum commodi sit, eis laborem etiam novum pro portione iniungi?* Liv., V, 4, 3.

REM. Verbs of the above classes which imply outward manifestation rather than inner mental state, as *laudare* and the opposite, *gratias agere*, *queri*, *accusare*, *criminari*, greatly tend to *quod* with the finite verb, rather than to the Accusative with the Infinitive.

416. *Quod (quia)* occurs with the so-called impersonal verbs and adjective Predicates of like sense with verbs of Emotion and Feeling. In such cases the *quod (quia)* clause presenting the ground of Feeling, etc., and so conceived, becomes the grammatical subject of the leading Predicate. Again, the Impersonal verb may be rendered as a Personal verb with the grammatical personal object conceived, and translated as the Logical subject. In this case the *quod* clause furnishes, as in the case of a personal Predicate, the ground of the Emotion or Feeling.

Ex.—*Me iuvat quod in causis agendis non modo pactione, dono, munere verum etiam xenii semper abstinui*, Plin. Min., V, 13, 8 (here *quod abstinui*, while the grammatical subject, is at the same time the ground of *iuvat*, or *me iuvat* = *I am delighted that (quod)*, etc.).

Again, with a personal adjective Predicate involving emotion or feeling, *quod* may follow introducing the ground of the substantive idea of the adjective. In addition, a substantive Predicate, when the substantive expresses emotion or feeling (as *consolatio est*), may be followed by *quod* introducing the explanation of the substantive and stating the ground of it.

Ex.—*An paenitet vos, quod saluum atque incolumem exercitum nulla omnino nave desiderata traduxerim?* Caes., B. Civ., II, 32. *Dolet mihi quod tu nunc stomacharis*, etc., Cic., Ad Brut., I, 17, 6. *Ait se ex litteris tuis intellegere tibi non placere, quod ad multos de me asperius scripserit, itaque se paenitere, quod animum tuum offenderit*, Cic., Att., XI, 13, 2. *Respondit sibi non placere, quod tam cupide elaborasset, ut praeter ceteros lustus appellaretur*, Nep., Arist., 1. *Quod familiarem meum in tuorum numero habes, opinione tua mihi gratus est*, Cic., Fam., X, 31, 6. *Mirum videri potest, quod extemporalis actio auditorum frequentia, ut miles concentu signorum, excitatur*, Quint., X, 7,



16. *Alexis quod totiens salutem ascripsit, est gratum*, Cic., Att., V, 20, 9. *Dixit Licinius Crassus orator, non esse mirandum quod aeneam barbam haberet, cui os ferreum, cor plumbeum esset*, Suet., Nero, 2. *Gratum est quod nos requiris, gratum quod his fomentis acquiescis*, Plin. Min., VI, 7, 1. *Est mihi periuicundum, quod viri optimi adeo cohaesistis, ut, etc.*, Plin. Min., VII, 7, 1. *Quam laetum tibi quod comparatus filio tuo vinceris!* Plin. Min., Paneg., 89. *Achaeae civitates felices sunt, quod iis tu praesis*, Cic., Fam., XIII, 28 b, 2. *Triste illud quod Iulius Valens graviter iacet*, Plin. Min., V, 21, 2. *Tristis et conturbatus quod*, Cic., Verr., IV, 14, 32. *Unum habes solacium, quod pro me libellos meos teneas*, Plin. Min., VI, 7, 1 (*quod* introduces the ground of *solacium*). Cf. *Laus...quod*, Plin. Min., Paneg., 89. *Furor est, quod*, Sen., Ep., XIX, 5, 25. *Liberis consolatio est, quod habebunt domestica exempla virtutis, coniugibus, quod iis viris carebunt, quos, etc.*, Cic., Phil., XIV, 13, 34.

(a) An impersonal verb, an impersonal or personal adjective Predicate or a substantive Predicate, a substantive or adjective expressing Emotion or Feeling, may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive. In such cases the leading Predicate may be resolved as a verb of Saying or Thinking with the Accusative and Infinitive as the object. The Accusative and Infinitive is based on the idea of Saying or Thinking involved in the leading verb, though its grammatical relation to this verb be subject or object or the appositive definition, as in the case of the substantive Predicate.

Ex.—*Te hilari animo esse et prompto ad iocandum valde me iuvat*, Cic., Q. Frat., II, 11, 1. *Si hoc fuit liberis nostris gratius nos vivere, cetera feramus*, Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 5. *Abeo maestus, me illo frustra deuenisse*, Pl., Curc., 336. *Nobis miserum, invidiosum vobis est desertam rem publicam invadi*, Liv., III, 9, 12. *Maximum solacium erit propinquorum eodem monumento declarari et virtutem suorum et populi Romani pietatem et senatus fidem*, Cic., Phil., XIV, 13, 35.

417. As has been seen *quod* is used to introduce the cause of an action, statement, or fact; also, with verbs of Emotion or Feeling to introduce the ground of the emotion or feeling. In addition, *quod* serves to introduce an Appositive definition as subject or object of an idea or statement. In this office, also, *quod* is the Accusative of the Relative and may be translated: *as to this, namely; this namely; the fact that*. The Mood with this explanatory *quod* is regularly the Indicative (Subjunctive in *Oratio Obliqua*). It occurs—

(a) With verbs *to omit, to pass by, as omittere, praeterire, etc.* As, *Omitto quod* = *I omit this, namely that; I omit the fact that*. It often happens that *quod* explains a stated demonstrative, *id, illud, etc.*

Ex.—*Mitto quod invidiam, quod pericula, quod omnes meas tempestates subieris*, Cic., Fam., XV, 4, 12. *Mitto quod Pallanti servo praetoria orna-*

**menta offeruntur**, Plin. Min., VIII, 6, 4. **Mitto, quod quaedam nullis simulacris significari possunt**, Quint., XI, 2, 25. **Praetereo quod hanc sibi domum sedem elegit**, Cic., Cluent., LXVI, 188. **Illud non quo praeterire, quod una voce senatus frequens retinendum me in urbe censuit**, Cic., Att., I, 19, 3. **Transeamus id quod grammaticae quondam ac musicae iunctae fuerunt**, Quint., I, 10, 17. **Transeamus, quod Archimedes unus obsidionem Syracusarum in longius traxit**, Quint., I, 10, 48.

(b) With verbs *to add*, as *addere, adicere*. Hence *addere quod* = *to add the fact that*.

Ex.—**Adde huc, quod perferri litterae nulla condicione potuerunt**, Cic., Fam., X, 31, 4. **Addere quod difficile est tenere quae acceperis, nisi exerceas**, Plin. Min., VIII, 14, 3. **Addiderunt Baetici, quod simul socios ministrosque Classici detulerunt**, Plin. Min., III, 9, 6. **Adicite ad haec, quod foedus aequum dediticiis, quod leges vestras, quod civitatem nostram magnae parti vestrum dedimus**, Liv., XXIII, 5, 9. **Adice quod (indignatio) pusilla est et angusta**, Sen., Ira, III, 5, 7. **Adice quod id agas, ut, etc.**, Sen., Ira, III, 26, 1. **Adice quod**, Sen., Ira, III, 27, 5. **Adice quod voluptas etiam ad vitam turpissimam venit**, Sen., Vit. Beat., VII, 2. **Adice quod, etc.**, Sen., Tranq. An., XV, 3. **Adice quod**, Sen., Ep., IX, 2, 3. **Adice quod, etc.**, Sen., Ep., IX, 5, 25. Etc.

REM. 1. The verbs *addere, adicere*, and *adiungere*, as verbs of Saying = *to make an additional statement, to say in addition, to subjoin*—are construed with the Accusative and Infinitive; in the sense of a verb *Studii aut Voluntatis*, implying order and authority, they are construed with *ut* and *ne* and the Subjunctive.

Ex.—**Addo nihil actum esse nisi contra consilium meum**, Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 3. **Addis ceteris quoque factum nostrum probari**, Cic., Att., XI, 5, 1. **Adiecit se consilium silentio esse tecturum**, Curt., VI, 43. **Adiecit canem timidum vehementius latrare**, Curt., VII, 16. **Illud adiunxi mihi tecum ita dispertitum officium fuisse in rei publicae salute retinenda, ut, etc.**, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 1. **Addit, ut, quod quisque eorum in bello amiserit, restituatur**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 87. **Adiceret ut ne dilectum quidem ex senatus consulto haberet**, Liv., II, 27, 10.

REM. 2. To be noted in this connection is *accedit quod* = *there is added the fact that, there is the additional fact that*; also, *huc (eo) accedit quod* = *there is added to this (that) the fact that, there is this (that) additional fact that*. In such cases the *quod* clause is the grammatical subject of *accedit*. Again, *accedit* may be personal with *id* (*illud*) as subject. In this case the *quod* clause is the appositive definition of the subject *id, illud*, etc.

Ex.—**Accedit, quod patrem plus, etiam quam non modo tu, sed quam ipse scit, amo**, Cic., Att., XIII, 21, 7. **Accedit eo, quod mihi . . . non est**, Cic., Att., I, 13, 1. **Eo accedebat quod iudices ex lege Rupilia dati non erant**, Cic., Verr., II, 17, 42. **Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixerat, etc.**

Caes., B. G., V, 6. **Accedit illud, quod illa contionalis hirudo aerarii. . . me ab hoc Magno unice diligere putat**, Cic., Att., I, 16, 11. **Accedit illud, quod in metu et periculo cum creduntur facilius tum finguntur impunius**, Cic., Div., II, 27, 58. (For **accedit** with **ut** and the Subjunctive, *vid.* 302, 3.)

(c) With verbs *to do, to act, to happen*, as *accidere, cadere, evenire, facere*, particularly when defined by an adverb. The Predicate may be defined by an ablative relation as well as by an adverb. The *quod* clause is the subject of the leading Predicate when a so-called Impersonal Predicate, or it presents an appositive definition as subject or object of the verb when Active or of an expressed indefinite subject or object (as *id, illud, hoc*) of the verb.

Ex.—**Sed accidit perincommode, quod eum nusquam vidistis**, Cic., Att., I, 17, 2. **Hoc cecidit mihi peropportune, quod ad Antonium audiendum venistis**, Cic., De Or., II, 4, 15. **Hoc perincommode cadit, quod cum incredibili eius audacia singularis stultitia coniuncta est**, Cic., Verr., Act. Pr., II, 5. **Magna me, inquit, spes tenet bene mihi evenire, quod mittar ad mortem**, Cic., Tusc., I, 41, 97. **Fecit humaniter Licinius, quod ad me misso senatu vesperi venit**, Cic., Q. Fr., II, 1, 1. **Facis tu quidem fraterne, quod me hortaris**, Cic., Q. Fr., II, 13, 2. **Bene facis, inquit, quod me iuvas**, Cic., Fin., III, 4, 16. **Honeste fecit Caesar, quod ignovit**, Sen., Ben., III, 27, 4. **Bene fecit Regulus, quod est mortuus**, Plin. Min., VI, 2, 4. **Recte fecisti quod . . . promisisti**, Plin. Min., VI, 34, 1. **Optime facis quod . . . scribere paras**, Plin. Min., VIII, 4, 1. **Facis iucunde quod . . . flagitas**, Plin. Min., IX, 2, 1. **Providentissime fecisti quod praecepisti**, Plin. Min., Plin. et Trai., LXXVII, 1. **Percommode factum est, quod eis de rebus . . . disputatum est**, Cic., Tusc., IV, 30, 64. **Curio noster sapienter id, quod remisit de stipendio Pompeii, fecisse existimatur**, Cic. **Fecit hoc impudentissime, quod . . . vindicavit**, Plin. Min., IV, 9, 14. **Noli putare pigritia me facere. . . quod, etc.**, Cic., Att., XVI, 15, 1. **Facis pro cetera reverentia quam mihi praestas, quod . . . petis, etc.**, Plin. Min., III, 8, 1. Cf. **Eodem pertinet, quod causam eius probo**, Cic., Att., VIII, 9, 1. Translate **quod** by *that, in that* = *in (by) the fact that*.

418. *Quod* with the Indicative (the Subjunctive in *Oratio Obliqua*) thus far introduces the appositive explanation or general periphrastic definition of a Nominative or Accusative relation. In addition, it introduces the appositive explanation—

1. Of a Demonstrative or Determinative in the leading clause, when this is in the Ablative.

Ex.—**Sed tua illa erant ornata hoc ipso, quod ornamenta neglexerant**, Cic., Att., II, 1, 1. **Hoc uno praestamus feris, quod colloquimur inter nos et quod exprimere dicendo sensa possumus**, Cic., De Or., I, 8, 32. **Uno te vicimus, quod de Marcelli, collegae tui, salute paulo ante quam tu cognovimus**, Cic., Fam., IV, 4, 3. **Hoc ipso melior est tua quam nostra condicio, quod tu, quid**

**doleat, scribere audes**, Cic., Fam., IV, 4, 3 (**quod** in this connection is not **quod** Causal). Translate it by *that*, *in that*.

2. Of a Demonstrative with a Substantive.

Ex.—**Non ea res me deterruit, quod tu ad me nullas (litteras) miseras**, Cic., Fam., VI, 22, 1. **Hac re permovebantur, quod . . . vix erat credendum**, Caes., B. G., V, 28. **Haec ratio eos deduxit, quod . . . cognoverant**, Caes., B. G., II, 10.

3. Of a Substantive without a Demonstrative.

Ex.—**Quo facto duas res consecutus est, quod pignore animos centurionum devinxit et largitione militum voluntates redemit**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 39. **Preme-  
bat reum crimen unum, quod Volscius Fictor . . . testis exstiterat se**, etc., Liv., III, 13, 1. **Huius voluntatis initium et causa est, quod eum Caesar valde con-  
tempnit**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 4, 2.

4. Of a Demonstrative alone.

Ex.—**Neque illud me movet, quod ii, qui a me dimissi sunt, discessisse di-  
cuntur**, Cic., Att., IX, 16, 2. **Illud admirari satis non potui, quod scripsisti his  
verbis**, etc., Cic., Att., XVI, 7, 3. **Illud non ferendum, quod est, qui vestro  
anno filium suum consulem futurum putet**, Cic., Fam., XII, 2, 2.

5. Of a preceding clause.

Ex.—**Multum eorum opinionem adiuwabatur, quod sine iumentis impedimen-  
tisque ad iter profectos videbant**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 69. **Eumeni multum detraxit,  
inter Macedones viventi, quod alienae erat civitatis**, Nep., Eum., 1.

6. Of an adverbial relation.

Ex.—**Sed ibi plurimum profectum est, quod modo quodam temperavere im-  
petus suos**, Liv., III, 13, 3.

(a) Apart from the limitations above stated *quod*, translated *that*, *the fact that*, occurs as a general appositive definition of the subject or object of a leading Predicate.

Ex.—**Sed cum loci natura et munitio castrorum aditum prohibebant tum  
quod (= the fact that) ad proelium egressi Curionis milites iis rebus indigebant,  
quae**, etc., Caes., B. Civ., II, 35.

(b) To this office of *quod* (introducing an appositive definition of an idea or statement) must be referred its rare occurrence after a verb of Saying or Thinking when the Accusative and Infinitive would be the regular and proper usage. This substitution of the Accusative and Infinitive by a *quod* clause is not to be imitated. It is found, clearly defined, in early and late Latin, in poetry, but rarely, if ever, in standard prose.

Ex.—**Equidem scio iam filius quod amet meus istanc meretricem e proximo  
Philaenium**, Pl., Asin., 52. **Nox et tua testis dextera, quod nequeam lacrimas**

**perferre parentis**, Verg., Aen., IX, 289. **Dum haec geruntur legati Carteienses renuntiaverunt, quod Pompelum in potestate haberent**, Bel. Hisp., XXXVI, 1. Cf. **An mihi de te nihil esse dictum umquam putas? ne hoc quidem, quod Taurum ipse transisti?** Cic., Fam., III, 8, 6 (here *quod* may be justified by *hoc* = *this, namely the fact that*). **Pauca apud eos loquitur, quod sibi a parte eorum gratia relata non sit pro suis in eos maximis beneficiis**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 23 (here *quod* may be explained by ellipsis of *de eo* = *de eo quod*, etc.). Cf. the elliptical sentence **quid quod? = quid dicam de eo quod?** as, **Quid quod eadem mente res dissimillimas comprehendimus?** Cic., Tusc., I, 20, 46.

REM. The presence of a Demonstrative does not always imply a following *quod* clause. This may be a Final clause or the Accusative with the Infinitive, as *Hoc te moneo ut abeas*, *Hoc dico eum venisse*.

#### 419. *Quod* is again employed—

1. To introduce a statement or proposition of a second party and, even, of the writer, in order to reply to it or to explain it. In this office *quod* is frequent in letter-writing. As, *Quod scribis* = *as to this, namely, your writing; as to your writing*. *Quod scribo* = *as to this, namely, my writing; as to my writing*. Here the matter replied to or explained follows *quod*.

Ex.—**Quod stellas aureas Castoris et Pollucis Delphis positas decidisse neque eas usquam repertas esse dixisti, furum id magis factum quam deorum videtur**, Cic., Div., II, 32, 68 (*quod dixisti* = *as to your having said*, etc.). **Quod aiunt quadringenta septuaginta milia annorum in periclitandis experiundisque pueris, quicumque essent nati, Babylonios posuisse, fallunt**, Cic., Div., II, 46, 97. **Quod scribis de reconciliata gratia nostra, non intellego, cur reconciliatam esse dicas, quae numquam imminuta est**, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 15. **Quod quaeris, quid sit, quod te arcessam, ac simul impeditum te negotiis esse significas, neque recusas quin, si velim, accurras, nihil sane est necesse**, Cic., Att., II, 1, 4. **Quod mihi de nostro statu gratularis, minime miramur te tuis ut egregium artificem praeclaris operibus laetari**, Cic., Fam., I, 7, 7. **Quod scribis te confidere auctoritate et eloquentia nostra aliquid profici posse, non nihil, ut in tantis malis, est profectum**, Cic., Fam., XII, 2, 2.

REM. 1. This *quod* is used in preambles = *whereas*.

Ex.—**Quod M. Marcellus, consul, verba fecit de provinciis consularibus, de ea re ita consuerunt, uti L. Paulus, C. Marcellus consules, etc.**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 8, 5.

REM. 2. Refer to this connection the so-called restrictive *quod* with the Subjunctive, *optener* with the Indicative.

Ex.—**Nam quod ad Phalarim attinet, perfacile iudicium est**, Cic., Off., III, 6, 32. Cf. **Quod sciam, etc.**, Cic., Fin., II, 26, 82.

(a) With *quod* in this connection the Indicative is the regular

mood, but the Subjunctive also occurs in a supposed or assumed case. As, *Quod dicat* = *as to his assuming or undertaking to say, in case he say*. It is unnecessary to interpret the Subjunctive here, as, in all cases, the Potential Subjunctive = *assuming that he may say, in case he may say*. The Subjunctive provides for a supposed or assumed case in the future and is not frequent outside of *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—*Quod te liberatum iam existimationis metu, defunctum honoribus, designatum consulem cogites, mihi crede, ornamenta ista et beneficia populi Romani non minore negotio retinentur quam comparantur*, Cic., Verr., V, 68, 175. *Quod ille gallinam aut columbam se sectari aut simiam dicat: disperistis, ni usque ad mortem male mulcassitis*, Pl., M. G., 163. *Quod quispiam ignem quaerat, exstingui uolo, ne causae quid sit, quod te quisquam quaeritet*, Pl., Aul., 91. *Tu quod te posterius purges, hanc iniuriam mihi nolle factam esse, huius non faciam*, Ter., Ad., 162. *Si te in platea offendero hac post umquam, quod dicas mihi: "Alium quaerebam, iter hac habui" periisti*, Ter., Eun., 1064.

2. This *quod* in the beginning of a sentence occasionally refers not to a following, but to a preceding, statement. Here *quod* = *as to this, namely* (a preceding statement or proposition).

Ex.—*Qui interpretes iuris vituperat, si imperitos iuris esse dicit, de hominibus, non de iure civili detrahit: sin peritis non putat esse obtemperandum, non homines laedit, sed leges ac iura labefactat. Quod (= as to this) vobis venire in mentem profecto necesse est, nihil esse in civitate tam diligenter quam ius civile retinendum*, Cic., Caccin., XXV, 70.

3. To be carefully noted is *quod* associated with different particles, *si* (*quod si*), *nisi*, *ni* (*quod nisi, quod ni*), *cum* (*quod cum*), *ubi* (*quod ubi*), *quoniam* (*quod quoniam*), *ut*, *ne* (*quod ut, quod ne*), *utinam* (*quod utinam*); also, occasionally with the Relative (*quod qui*). Here *quod* as a particle of definition is translated *as to this, and, now, then, but, therefore*. As, *Quod si* = *as to this if, etc.* = *and if, now if, then if, therefore if, etc.*

Ex.—*Quod si timor vestrae crudelitatis esset, eiecti iam pridem hinc essemus*, Cic., Fam., VIII, 17, 2. *Quod si nihil profecero, nihilo minus maximo sum animo et maiore fortasse cum mea gloria vobis satis faciam*, Cic., Fam., X, 11, 3. *Quod nisi res urbanas actaque omnia ad te perferri arbitrarer, ipse perscriberem*, Cic., Fam., X, 28, 3. *Quod nisi domi civium suorum invidia debilitatus esset, Romanos videtur superare potuisse*, Nep., Hann., 1. *Quod ni ita fuisset, alterum illud exstitisset lumen civitatis, etc.*, Cic., Sen., XI, 35. *Quod ni Catilina maturasset pro curia signum dare, eo die pessimum facinus patratum foret*, Sall., Cat., 18. *Quod cum audivisset adulescens filius negotium exhiberi patri, accurrisse Romam dicitur*, Cic., Off., III, 31, 112. *Quod cum perspicuum sit benevolentiae vim esse magnam, metus imbecillam, sequitur ut, etc.*, Cic., Off., II, 8, 20. *Quod ubi ille intellexit id agi, suos servos ad se vocat*, Cic., Verr., I, 26, 67. *Quod ubi intellexi multum apud illum recentes*

nuntios, multum tabellas non commendaticias, sed tributarias valuisse, impetum in eas tabulas facio, etc., Cic., Verr., IV, 66, 148. **Quod ut hanc quoque curam determinemus, iustum est**, etc., Plin. Mai., XVIII, 194. **Quod ne id facere posses, idcirco. . . tam multa dixeram**, Cic., Ac., II, 25, 79. **Sapiens iudicat, cum agit officium illud esse. Quod quoniam numquam fallitur in iudicando, erit in mediis rebus officium**, Cic., Fin., III, 18, 59. **Quod utinam Appius Claudius in hac parte fuisset**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 17, 1. **Quod utinam minus vitae cupidi fuissetus!** Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 1. **Quod utinam illum. . . eadem haec simultantem videam**, Sall., Iug., 14. Cf. **Quod quia nullo modo sine amicitia firmam iucunditatem vitae tenere possumus, idcirco hoc ipsum efficitur in amicitia**, etc., Cic., Fin., I, 20, 67. **Quod quia. . . non videtis**, etc., Cic., N. D., I, 20, 53. **Quod absque hoc esset. . . suis me ductarent dolis**, Pl., Capt., 751 (= **quod si hic non esset**). **Quod tamen si quis exstiterit qui putet**, etc., Plin. Min., II, 5, 6.

REM. The preceding *quod* is not to be confounded with the pure Relative *quod* = *this*, and (*but*, *for*) *this*. In some cases it is difficult to distinguish it from the pure Relative. In the associations *quod cum*, *quod ubi*, followed by the Accusative and Infinitive, as in the preceding examples (*vid.* 3) *quod* may be accepted as the Relative of which the Accusative with the Infinitive furnishes the Appositive definition.

Ex.—**Eundem in Hispaniam censui: quod si fecisset, civile bellum nullum omnino fuisset**, Cic., Fam., VI, 6, 5 (here *quod* is the pure Relative = *if he had done this; and if he had done this*, etc.). **Quod ni ita putarem, ipse perscriberem**, Cic., Fam., XII, 23, 2 (here *quod* is the pure Relative = *and unless I thought this was so*). **Quod ubi regi nuntiatum est, oratores Romam misit**, Liv., II, 13, 7 (here *quod* is the Relative = *when (or and when) this was announced to the king*). **Quod cum speraret te quoque ita existimare, in Hispaniam ad te ille est profectus**, Cic., Fam., XIII, 16, 3 (here *quod* may be accepted as the Relative defined by the Accusative and Infinitive *te ita existimare* = *and when he hoped for this, namely, that you thus thought*). Cf. example above cited (3). **Quod cum audisset adolescens filius, negotium exhiberi patri, accurrisse Romam dicitur**, Cic., Off., III, 31, 112.

420. The phrases *nisi quod*, *praeterquam quod*, less usual *super quam quod*, *praeter hoc (id) quod*, *super hoc (id) quod*, *excepto quod* (= *excepto eo quod*), introduce a fact as a limitation or restriction. Hence *nisi quod* = *except the fact that*; *praeterquam quod* = *beyond the fact that*, etc. The Mood is the Indicative—the Subjunctive when Potential and in *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—**Tusculanum et Pompeianum valde me delectant, nisi quod me aere non Corinthio sed hoc circumforaneo obruerunt**, Cic., Att., II, 1, 11. **Neque aliud est quicquam cur incredibilis iis animorum videatur aeternitas nisi quod nequeunt qualis animus sit vacans corpore intellegere**, Cic., Tusc., I, 22, 50. **Usus est firma valetudine, nisi quod solebant ei manus tremere**, Plin. Min., II,

1, 4. **Non faciam, neque quod displiceat committam, praeterquam quod hominis mihi coniunctissimi doleo gravem casum**, Cic., Fam., XI, 28, 5. **At id, praeterquam quod fieri non potuit, ne fingi quidem potest**, Cic., Div., II, 12, 28. **Praeterquam quod viribus creverat Romanus exercitus**, etc., Liv., I, 37, 1. **Praeterquam quod credebat**, etc., Liv., I, 32, 4. **Incedere agmen coepit primoribus, super quam quod dissenserant ab consilio, territis etiam duplici prodigio**, Liv., XXII, 3, 14. **Ego, praeterquam quod nihil haustum ex vano velim, quo nimis inclinant ferme scribentium animi, Fabium potissimum auctorem habui**, Liv., XXII, 7, 4 (*velim* Potential Subjunctive). **Praeter hoc quod omne futurum incertum est**, etc., Sen., Marc., De Cons., XXIII, 1. **Praeter id quod his levissimi cuiusque animus facillime terretur, nescio an**, etc., Quint., III, 8, 40. **Haec vulgo iactata, super id quod nullo auctore certo firmantur, prompte refutaveris**, Tac., Ann., IV, 11. **Et quidem Ciceronem sequar, excepto quod pes mihi tres syllabas non videtur excedere**, Quint., IX, 4, 79.

REM. 1. Parallel with *nisi quod* occurs *praeter quod* in late Latin, but not to be imitated. In a sense nearly related to *nisi quod* occurs *tantum quod* = *only that, except that*; with a negative *tantum quod non* = *only that not, except that not*. *Tantum quod* occurs also in a temporal sense = *hardly, scarcely, just, but just*. Rare but classical.

Ex.—**Componit edictum iis verbis, ut quivis intellegere posset unius hominis causa conscriptum esse: tantum quod hominem non nominat**, Cic., Verr., I, 45, 116 (= *except that (only that) he does not name him*). **Tantum quod ex Arpinati veneram, cum mihi a te litterae redditae sunt**, Cic., Fam., VII, 23, 1 (= *I had hardly (scarcely, just, but just) arrived, etc.*). **Forte Puteolanum sinum praetervehenti nautae de navi Alexandrina, quae tantum quod appulerat, candidati coronatique eximias laudes congesserant**, etc., Suet., Aug., 98.

REM. 2. The phrase *tantum quod* in the temporal sense may be accepted as an adverbial qualification of the Predicate, and hence occurs associated with a Participle.

Ex.—**Nero natus est...tantum quod exoriente sole**, etc., Suet., Nero, 6. **Evenit ut sequenti die progressus in atrium medicus dentem ei ostenderet, tantumque quod exemptum**, Suet., Vesp., 5.

REM. 3. From *tantum quod* in the sense above given must be distinguished *tantum quod* when *quod* is causal = *only because*.

Ex.—**Romanis ferme par numerus erat: equitum copiis, tantum quod Aetoli accesserant, superabant**, Liv., XXXIII, 4, 5.



## The Clause with Cum.

421. 1. *Cum* (the early form *quom*) is Relative in its origin, with the correlative *tum* (*tunc*), in the Present time *nunc*. Hence *tum* (*tunc*)—*cum* : *nunc*—*cum* = *then*—*when* : *now*—*when*. The translation of *cum* is locative = *when*.

2. In the case of two actions expressed by the same Tense in the different spheres of Time (Present, Past, and Future) the actions in the *cum* clause and in the other (leading) clause are concurrent and independent—that is, one action does not involve the other. This is true regardless of the extent of the actions, and even if they cover the least extent of Time.

3. One action may involve the other—that is, one action implies the other, and the statement of the one is the statement of the other.

4. When the Tenses are different the action in the *cum* clause is antecedent to and completed before the action in the leading clause. In this case, however, the antecedent and completed action may represent, not an independent fact, but the state or condition resulting from the antecedently completed action. This resulting state or condition is the equivalent of a progressive relation, and is properly reproduced by a Tense of incomplete, progressive action or state (the Imperfect, Present, and Future First). Therefore *cum* and the Pluperfect are in many cases the equivalent of *cum* with the Imperfect, *cum* with the Perfect the equivalent of *cum* with the Present, and *cum* with the Future *Exactum* the equivalent of *cum* with the Future First. Hence:

*Cum* with the Pluperfect (expressing resulting state) + the Imperfect = *cum* with the Imperfect + the Imperfect (in leading clause).

*Cum* with the Perfect (expressing resulting state) + the Present = *cum* with the Present + the Present (in the leading clause).

*Cum* with the Future *Exactum* (expressing resulting state) + the Future First = *cum* with the Future First + the Future First (in the leading clause).

5. The action in the *cum* clause is represented as in progress when the leading action occurs. In other words, the leading action takes place during the progress of the action in the *cum* clause.

6. It has been stated that *cum* is Relative. As the Relative Pronoun occurs in a causal sense, so does *cum* as a result of its Relative origin.

7. Nearly related to the Causal is the Concessive relation, which conveys an adversative causal idea. As the Relative Pronoun occurs in a concessive sense, so does *cum* as a result of its Relative origin.

422. The following may be given as a summary of the meanings and offices of *cum* :

1. *Cum* defining the time of an action or event = *Cum Temporal*. Translate *cum* by *when*. The Mood is uniformly the Indicative with a Present or Future Tense.

Ex.—*Is propulsat iniuriam, cum potest* (cf. Cic., Off., III, 18, 74). Cf. *Is propulsabit iniuriam, cum poterit*.

2. *Cum Explanatory (Explicative)* in which *cum* defines the leading clause or word in the same, including also the case where one action is involved in the other. The Mood is the Indicative. Translate *cum* by *when* = *in that, thereby that, by*.

Ex.—*Hoc cum scribit, illud ostendit*, Cic., Verr., III, 55, 127. *Quae, cum taces, nulla esse concedis*, Cic., Rosc. Am., XIX, 54.

3. *Cum Inversum*. Here *cum* introduces the leading thought or event. Mood, the Indicative. Tense, as a rule, the Aorist, Historical Present, and Historical Infinitive. Translate *cum* by *when*.

Ex.—*Iam hoc facere noctu apparabant, cum matres familiae repente in publicum procurrerunt, fientesque petierunt*, etc., Caes., B. G., VII, 28.

4. *Cum Historical* or *Cum Narrative*, describing the temporal particulars or circumstances under which the leading event occurs. The Mood is the Subjunctive. Tenses, the Imperfect and Pluperfect. Translate *cum* by *when*.

Ex.—*Cum contionem haberet, tempestas regem operuit nimbo*, Liv., I, 16, 1. *Diu cum esset pugnatum, castris nostri potiti sunt*, Caes., B. G., I, 26.

5. *Cum Causal*, expressing a logical cause or reason. Mood is the Subjunctive. Any Tense. Translate *cum* by *as, since*.

Ex.—*Quae cum ita sint, effectum est nihil esse malum, quod turpe non sit*, Cic., Fin., III, 8, 29.

6. *Cum Concessive*, expressing a concessive relation. Mood is the Subjunctive. Any Tense. Translate *cum* by *although, though*.

Ex.—*Quod non nulli cum probarent, periculi causa sequi non potuerunt*, Cic., Att., X, 8, B, 2. *Hos cum Suevi finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt*, Caes., B. G., IV, 3.

7. *Cum Conditional*. Here the idea of condition is implied in

Time. Mood, usually the Indicative. Tense, Future as a rule. Translate *cum* by *when* = *if*.

Ex.—**Cuius rei opinio tolli non poterit, cum in Italiam, ex qua profectus sum, reductus existimabor**, Caes., B. Civ., III, 18.

### Cum Temporal.

423. I. *Cum* defining Time is translated *when*. The Mood is the Indicative, with a Present or Future Tense; also, with a Past Tense (Imperfect or Pluperfect) less usual and under restrictions. For practical purposes it may be stated that the English *when*, with a Present or Future Tense, is reproduced in Latin by *cum* and the corresponding Indicative Tense. Hence *cum temporal* occurs in the following combinations:

1. With the same Tense in the *cum* clause and in the leading clause. The actions are independent and concurrent.

(a) Present Indicative with the Present Indicative.

Ex.—**Cum bellum civitas defendit, magistratus, qui ei bello praesint, deliguntur**, Caes., B. G., VI, 23. **Cum tabellarii a me discedunt, flagitant litteras**, Cic., Fam., XV, 17, 1.

(b) The Future First with the Future First.

Ex.—**Poteritis exploratam habere pacem, cum in civitate Antonium videbitis?** Cic., Phil., VII, 5, 16.

(c) The Future *Exactum* with the Future *Exactum*.

Ex.—**Salutem cum utrisque his dederis, tres fratres optimos rei publicae condonaveris**, Cic., Lig., XII, 36.

(d) The Imperfect with the Imperfect, emphasizing the fact in the *cum* clause and the independence of the actions in the two clauses.

Ex.—**Res agitur per eosdem creditores, per quos, cum tu aderas, agebatur**, Cic., Fam., I, 1, 1 (= *tu aderas et res agebatur*). **Fulgentes gladios hostium videbant, cum in aciem eorum irruebant**, Cic., Tusc., II, 24, 59 (the *cum* clause following gives prominence to the event or fact in this clause).

(e) The Aorist with the Aorist present, two independent facts in the Past, not one in progress when the other occurs.

Ex.—**Quo cum venit, complures ibi amisit**, Cic., Fam., X, 30, 4 (= *venit et amisit*). **Cum tempus est visum rei gerendae communiter cum iis, qui Thebis idem sentiebant, diem delegerunt ad inimicos opprimendos**, Nep., Pel., 2.

REM. 1. In the case of two Future relations, the Tense in the leading clause may be expressed by the Imperative or other representative of the Future.

Ex.—**Cum de bello Romano cogitabis, inter primos amicos Hannibalem habeto**, Liv., XXXV, 19, 6. **Formam mihi totius rei publicae, cum Romae eris, velim mittas**, Cic., Att., VI, 3, 4.

REM. 2. When the Pluperfect is associated with the Imperfect the Pluperfect generally expresses, when not an Iterative action, a resulting state or condition rather than an antecedently completed action.

Ex.—**Cum ad gubernacula rei publicae temerarii homines accesserant, maxima naufragia fiebant**, Cic., Inv., I, 3, 4 (here **accesserant** is the equivalent of the Imperfect (**gubernacula habebant**)).

2. Different Tenses in the same sphere of Time. One action is completed before and precedes the other, both stated as facts.

(a) *Cum* and the Perfect, with the Present in the leading clause (generally in Iterative relations).

Ex.—**Aves cum stridore magno inanes nidos circumfremuerunt, intra momentum tamen quietae volatus suos repetunt**, Sen., Ad Marc., VII, 2.

(b) *Cum* and the Aorist (or Historical Present), with the Imperfect in the leading clause. Here the Imperfect expresses a state of things, an action in progress, when the action or event in the *cum* clause occurs. This *cum* cannot be confounded with *cum Historicum*, as the action with the former is not one completed before the leading action or event, nor one in progress when the leading action occurs. The leading clause gives the state of things, or the action in progress, when the action or event in the *cum* clause occurs, and this action or event presents the leading idea.

Ex.—**Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequani**, Caes., B. G., VI, 12 (= *the Aedui were the leaders of one faction, the Sequani of the other, and, while this was the state of things, Caesar arrived in Gaul*). **Cum haec accepta clades est, iam Horatius et T. Menenius consules erant**, Liv., II, 51, 1.

(c) *Cum* and the Aorist, with the Pluperfect in the leading clause. Here the Pluperfect expresses a fact already realized, an action already completed (not in progress), when the leading action occurs. The *cum* clause expresses the leading thought.

Ex.—**Bis consul P. Africanus Carthaginem Numantiamque deleverat, cum accusavit L. Cottam**, Cic., Mur., XXVIII, 58.

(d) *Cum* and the Imperfect, with the Aorist in the leading clause. In the *cum* clause is expressed an event or action emphasized as a fact in progress when the leading action or event occurs.

Ex.—**Cum consulatum petebam, nulli me vobis auctores generis mei commendarunt**, Cic., Agr., II, 36, 100.

(e) *Cum* and the Pluperfect, with the Aorist in the leading clause (rare). The *cum* clause presents an event realized and antecedent and emphasized as a fact. Here the Pluperfect often expresses resulting state.

Ex.—**Tum, cum in Asia res magnas permulti amiserant, solutione impedita fides concidit**, Cic., Imp. Pomp., VII, 19.

REM. *Cum* and the Pluperfect (expressing resulting state), with the Imperfect in the leading clause. (Often Iterative also.) The *cum* clause embodies the leading thought.

Ex.—**Sulla tunc erat violentissimus, cum faciem eius sanguis invaserat**, Sen., Ep., I, 11, 4.

(f) *Cum* and the Future *Exactum*, with the Future First in the leading clause.

Ex.—**Cum perspexero voluntates nobilium, scribam ad te**, Cic., Att., I, 1, 2. **Hic illum, cum se confirmaverit et omnibus vitiis exuerit, sapientem sequetur**, Sen., Ep., I, 11, 1.

3. *Cum* in Iterative relations. Here *cum* is purely temporal. The Mood greatly inclines to the Indicative in standard prose. Translate *cum* by *when* = *whenever* (= *as often as*). The Tenses are those of incomplete or progressive action in the several spheres of Time, and the actions in the two clauses are concurrent. Hence—

(a) *Cum* and the Present, with the Present in the leading clause.

Ex.—**Ad equos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt**, Caes., B. G., IV, 2. **Plerique, cum aere alieno premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus**, Caes., B. G., VI, 13. **Quam (laudationem) cum legimus, quem philosophum non contemnimus?** Cic., Sen., IV, 12.

(b) *Cum* and the Imperfect with the Imperfect.

Ex.—**Philosophiae praecepta renovabam, cum licebat, legendo**, Cic., Ac., I, 3, 11. **Cum vallis aut locus declivis suberat, neque ii, qui antecesserant, morantibus opem ferre poterant, equites vero ex loco superiore in aversos tela coniciebant, tum magno erat in periculo res**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 79.

(c) *Cum* and the Future First, with the Future First in the leading clause.

Ex.—**Cum in cacuminibus montium nubes consident, hlemabit**, Plin. Mai., XVIII, 356. **Cum (sole) oriente radii non illustres eminebunt, pluviam portentent**, Plin. Mai., XVIII, 344. **Cum meridiem adesse senties, pastor, pecudem e sole in opaca cogito**, Plin. Mai., XVIII, 330. (The time of the Imperative is Future.)

4. In Iterative relations one action may precede and be completed before the other in the several spheres of Time. Hence—

(a) *Cum* and the Perfect, with the Present in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Oppidum Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa muni-  
erunt*, Caes., B. G., V, 21. *Huic (Marti), cum proelio dimicare constituerunt,  
ea, quae bello ceperint, devovent*, Caes., B. G., VI, 17. *Cum praecoces excur-  
rere germinationes evocatae indulgentia caeli, secutis frigoribus exuruntur*,  
Plin. Mai., XVII, 16.

(b) *Cum* and the Pluperfect, with the Imperfect (rarely Aorist) in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Cum propius erat ventum, ab scientia gubernatorum atque artificibus  
ad virtutem montanorum confugiebant*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 58. *His (faucibus)  
cum funes comprehensi adductique erant, praerumpebantur*, Caes., B. G., III,  
14. *Cum rosam viderat, tum incipere ver arbitrabatur, dabat se labori*, Cic.,  
Verr., V, 10, 27. *Cum comminus venerant, gladiis a velitibus trucidabantur*,  
Liv., XXXVIII, 21, 12. *Cum haec alimenta defecerant, ne equis quidem ab-  
stinebant*, Curt., IX, 40.

(c) *Cum* and the Future *Exactum*, with the Future First in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Luna erit in coitu, quod interlunium vocant, cum apparere desierit*,  
Plin. Mai., XVIII, 324.

REM. In Iterative relations, while the Indicative is the usage in the *cum* clause in the best prose, the Subjunctive also occurs, both in the Iterative concurrent (Iterative coincident) relations and when the action in the *cum* clause is completed and precedes that in the leading clause (Iterative antecedent relations). In the late Latin, however, the Subjunctive in the *cum* clause and the Indicative in the leading clause is the usage. This is true whether the actions be Iterative concurrent (coincident) or Iterative antecedent. Hence—

(a) *Cum* and the Present Subjunctive, with the Present Indicative in leading clause.

Ex.—*Papilio, pestis maior, lucernis tollitur vere, cum maturescat malva*,  
Plin. Mai., XXI, 81. *Alvorum, cum mei eximatur, illini oportet exitus melis-  
sophyllo aut genista tritis*, Plin. Mai., XXI, 82.

(b) *Cum* and the Imperfect Subjunctive, with the Imperfect Indicative in leading clause.

Ex.—*Cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi causa se in agros effunderet,  
essedarios ex silvis emittebat*, Caes., B. G., V, 19. *Tuba, cum castra movere  
vellet, signum dabat*, Curt., V, 7. *Transiliebant in vehicula strenuo saltu, cum  
succurrere laborantibus suis vellent*, Curt., IX, 3. *Timoleon veniebat in thea-*

trum, cum ibi concilium populi haberetur, propter valetudinem vectus iumentis iunctis, Nep., Tim., 4.

(c) *Cum* and the Perfect Subjunctive, with the Present Indicative in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Quae cum acciderint, vis maior appellatur*, Plin. Mai., XVIII, 278. *Cum (ramus) attigerit terram, statim radicatur*, Plin. Mai., XIX, 157. *Hoc fit vel incipiente culmo, cum iam is ad bina ternave emisit folia*, Plin. Mai., XVIII, 183.

(d) *Cum* and the Pluperfect Subjunctive, with the Imperfect (rarely the Aorist) Indicative in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Cum cohortes ex acie procucurrissent, Numidae integri celeritate impetum nostrorum effugiebant*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 41. *Cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commode pugnare poterant*, Caes., B. G., I, 25. *Cum in ius duci debitorem vidissent, undique convolabant*, Liv., II, 27, 8. *Initium erat rixae, cum discedere populum iussissent tribuni*, Liv., III, 11, 4. *Cum in circulum venisset, in quo de re publica disputaretur, numquam inde prius discessit, quam ad finem sermo esset adductus*, Nep., Ep., 3 (*discedebat* is looked for).

## II. *Cum* Explanatory—*Explicative*.

1. *Cum* refers to and defines a word or designation of Time expressed, as *tum—cum: eo die—cum*. Here *cum* is purely temporal and translated *when*. The decided tendency is to the Indicative, any Tense of the Indicative. The word of time is sometimes qualified by a Demonstrative Pronoun.

Ex.—*Eadem (causa) tum fuit, cum ab eorum consiliis abesse iudicasti*, Cic., Att., X, 8, B, 1. *Expertus es istius perfidiam tum, cum ipse se ad inimicos tuos contulit*, Cic., Verr., I, 30, 77. *Ius id, quod erat tum, cum Asellus est mortuus*, Cic., Verr., I, 41, 104. *Non nihil me consolatur, cum recordor haec me tum vidisse, cum secundas etiam res nostras, non modo adversas, pertimescebam*, Cic., Fam., IV, 14, 2. *Eum exitum M. Antonius iam tum timebat, cum tantum instare malorum suspicabatur*, Cic., Fam., VI, 2, 2. *Sententiam meam tu perspicere potuisti iam ab illo tempore, cum in Cumanum mihi obviam venisti*, Cic., Fam., II, 16, 3. *Postea vero, cum Caesarem ad Massiliam detineri cognovit... se quoque ad motus fortunae movere coepit*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 17. *Media nocte erat, cum classem circumire muros iubet*, Curt., IV, 14. *Tunc vero impotentis fortunae species conspici potuit, cum ii... eadem illa Alexandro reservabant*, Curt., III, 28. (*Conon*) *fuit extremo Peloponnesio bello praetor, cum apud Aegios flumen copiae Atheniensium a Lysandro sunt devictae*, Nep., Con., 1. *Ille eo tempore paruit, cum parere senatui necesse erat: vos tunc parvistis, cum paruit nemo, qui noluit*, Cic., Lig., VII, 20. *Secutum illud tempus est, cum me ad Pompeium proficisci pudor meus coegit*, Cic., Fam., XI, 27, 4.

(a) *Cum* referring to a designation of Time is often associated with the Subjunctive. Here *cum* gives the temporal qualification or cir-

cumstances in narrative, *under which*; it is explanatory and introduces a subordinate relation, whereas *cum* with the Indicative more explicitly and exclusively defines the term of time, and serves to introduce the leading thought and to refer specifically to the time at which (when) a fact occurs.

Ex.—A. d. X. Kal. Iun. *cum* navi Piraeum advectus essem, ibi Marcellum conveni, Cic., Fam., IV, 12, 1. Deinde VII. Idus Febr. *cum* iam plura audires de Pompeii consilio, etc., Cic., Att., IX, 10, 5. Sed meridie, *cum* Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, Caes., B. G., V, 17. Non nulli illum diem memoria tenebant, *cum* illa eadem Diana victoriam populi Romani reditu suo nuntiasset, Cic., Verr., IV, XXXV, 77. Eo anno, *cum* foris quiescente omnia a bello essent, aliud multo gravius malum civitatem invasit, Liv., II, 34, 1. Postero die, *cum* Romanus... complisset, non prius descenderunt in aequum, quam, etc., Liv., I, 12, 1.

REM. When the word of Time follows *cum* in the same clause the Mood is generally the Subjunctive.

Ex.—Flaminius *cum* pridie solis occasu ad lacum pervenisset, etc., Liv., XXII, 4, 4.

(b) *Cum*, as has been stated, is Relative in its origin. Hence, as a particle of Time, it may take the Predicate in the Subjunctive (as does the Relative Pronoun), when, as a result of its Relative origin, it is Consecutive = *when* = *at such a time as*. This force of *cum* is seen when referring to such clauses as *Fuit (cum) = there was a time (that)*; more distinctly when referring to a word of time with a demonstrative or indefinite pronoun, as *Id tempus (cum* with the Subjunctive); *quoddam tempus (cum* with the Subjunctive). Compare with this force of *cum* with the Subjunctive that of the simple Relative (Consecutive) with the Subjunctive. As, *Est (sunt) qui* and the Subjunctive; *is est qui* and the Subjunctive; *quidam est (sunt) qui* and the Subjunctive.

Ex.—Ac fuit *cum* mihi initium requiescendi ab omnibus concessum arbitrarer, Cic., De Or., I, 1, 1. Fuit tempus, *cum* rura colerent homines neque urbem haberent, Var., R. R., III, 1, 1. Erit illud profecto tempus et illucescet ille dies, *cum* fortissimi viri magnitudinem desideres, Cic., Mil., XXVI, 69. Utinam eum diem videam, *cum* ista oratio ita libere vagetur, ut etiam in Siccae domum introeat, Cic., Att., XVI, 11, 1. (*Cum* may be Consecutive after *tum*). Epistolae tum datae sunt, *cum* ego me non belle haberem, Cic., Att., V, 11, 7 (here *tum...cum* ego me non belle haberem = *then (= at a time) when I was not well*). Ac ne tum quidem cogitati sceleris paenituit, *cum* intuerentur, qualem et regem et virum fallerent, Curt., V, 29. Nunc illud est, quom me fuisse quam esse nimio mauelim, Pl., Capt., 516.



REM. The particle *cum* is distinctly Consecutive when it refers to a word of time with the Interrogative Pronoun with the force of a Rhetorical Question implying a Negative.

Ex.—*Quod tempus, qui dies, quae nox, cum ego non ex istorum insidiis divino consilio eripiar atque evolem?* Cic., Mur., XXXVIII, 82 (= *there is no time, no day, no night that, etc.*).

2. The explanatory or explicative office of *cum* is distinctly seen in the following connections:

(a) When one action is implied in another; when one action involves another. Here the same Tense generally occurs in the *cum* clause and in the leading clause. The Mood is the Indicative. Translate *cum when* = *in that, thereby that, by (in)*.

Ex.—*Quae, cum taces, nulla esse concedis*, Cic., R. Am., XIX, 54. *Haec cum illi dico, tibi dico*, Ter., Ad., 97. *Occidis me, quom istuc rogas*, Pl., Pseud., 931. *Satis mihi dedisti, cum respondisti malus tibi videri malum dedecus quam dolorem*, Cic., Tusc., II, 12, 28. *C. Marius cum aestu magno ducebat agmen, laborabat*, Cic., Tusc., II, 15, 35. *Id cum impetrabatur, hoc impetrabatur*, Cic., Verr., III, 48, 115. *Improbis fuisti, cum remisisti, quod non oportebat*, Cic., Verr., V, 23, 59. *Expectationem nobis non parvam attuleras, cum scripseras*, etc., Cic., Att., III, 18, 1. *Non facies fidem, cum haec disputabis*, Cic., Pis., XXV, 59.

REM. The explicative office of *cum* extends even to the case of actions in different Times. The force of *cum* is shown in the translation, *in that, etc.*

Ex.—*Numa maior vir habendus est, cum illam sapientiam constituendae civitatis duobus prope seculis ante cognovit, quam, etc.*, Cic., De Or., II, 37, 154.

(b) The *cum* clause gives the explanation of a preceding clause or statement.

Ex.—*Maximum exemplum est iustitiae in hostem a maioribus nostris constitutum, cum a Pyrrho perfuga senatus est pollicitus se venenum regi daturum et eum necaturum, senatus et C. Fabricius perfugam Pyrrho dedit*, Cic., Off., I, 13, 40. Cf. Liv., XXI, 18, 4 (*legatio fuit, cum deposcebatis*).

(c) The *cum* clause is explanatory of a preceding word.

Ex.—*Quae est ista laudatio, cum laudator interrogatus laedat necesse est?* Cic., Verr., IV, 9, 19. *Purgatio est, cum factum conceditur, culpa removetur*, Cic., Inv., I, 11, 15. *Deprecatio est, cum peccasse reus se confitetur et tamen, ut ignoscatur, postulat*, Cic., Inv., I, 11, 15. *Comparatio est, cum... contenditur, etc.*, Cic., Inv., I, 11, 15.

(d) To the explicative or explanatory office of *cum* must be referred its use after a verb of Emotion or Feeling and after an expression of

like sense. The Mood is the Indicative. Any Tense. Here, while *cum* is strictly temporal, the time of one action is construed as the ground of a second. As, *I rejoiced when you came* = *I rejoiced in that you came*. Translate *cum when* = *in that, that*. In this connection *quod* (*quia*) is more regular and more usual than *cum*.

Ex.—*Te quidem, cum isto animo es, satis laudare non possum*, Cic., Mil., XXXVI, 99. *Tibi maximas gratias ago, cum tantum litterae meae potuerunt*, Cic., Fam., XIII, 24, 2. *Gratulor tibi, cum tantum vales apud Dolabellam*, Cic., Fam., IX, 14, 3. *Praeclare facis, cum eorum memoriam tenes*, Cic., Fin., III, 2, 9. *Bene agis, cum eo nos deduci iussisti, quo, etc.*, Liv., VIII, 33, 10. *Idem admiratur, cum dicimus: "solus sapiens scit amare,"* Sen., Ep., XI, 2, 12. *Nepotuno ago gratias quom me ex suis locis expediuit*, Pl., Rud., 908. *Uolup est, quom istuc vobis contigit*, Pl., Rud., 1176. *Di tibi omnes omnia optata offerant, quom me tanto honore honestas*, Pl., Capt., 355. *Iovi disque ago gratias quom te reducem tuo patri reddiderunt*, Pl., Capt., 922. *Tu insanis quom id me interrogas*, Pl., Amph., 746. Cf. *Hei mihi, quom nihil est, qui illi homini diminuat caput*, Pl., Men., 300.

III. The particle *cum* is purely temporal in the following connections:

(a) After the verb *memini*. This verb implies a definite time and well known to the speaker or writer. Hence the Mood after *memini* is the Indicative.

Ex.—*Memini cum mihi desipere videbare, quod cum istis potius viveres quam nobiscum*, Cic., Fam., VII, 28, 1.

REM. After *memini* when *cum* is Consecutive the Mood is, of course, the Subjunctive = *I remember the time that, such that*.

Ex.—*Memini cum hominem portare ad Balas, etc.*, Cic., Q. Fr., II, 8, 2.

(b) After *audire*, *cum* is temporal and construed regularly with the Subjunctive. The Mood is to be explained as *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—*L. Flaccum ego audiui cum diceret Caeciliam Metelli...exisse in quoddam sacellum omnis capiendi causa, etc.*, Cic., Div., I, 46, 104. *Equidem e Cn. Aufidio, oculis capto, saepe audiebam, cum se lucis magis quam utilitatis desiderio moveri diceret*, Cic., Fin., V, 19, 54. *Saepe de familiari illo videor audisse, cum te togatis omnibus sine dubio anteferebat*, Cic., N. D., I, 21, 58. *Hoc dicam, quod ostendam, multos ex te viros audisse, cum diceret ignosci tibi oportere*, Cic., Verr., I, 61, 157.

IV. To *cum temporal* is to be referred its use after a period or designation of time throughout which, or at the beginning of which, the action in the *cum* clause occurs or holds good. Translate *cum*, *since* or *that*. The Mood is the Indicative. The Tenses are—

1. The Present with the period or designation of time followed by *cum* and the Present, the equivalent of the Present with a designation of time in the sense of an English Progressive Perfect.

Ex.—**Multi anni sunt, cum ille in aere meo est**, Cic., Fam., XV, 14, 1 (= *ille multos annos in aere meo est* = *has been and is in my debt*). Cf. **Decem anni sunt, cum ille in aere meo est** = *decem annos* (= *decimum iam annum*) *ille in aere meo est*. **Vicesimus annus est, cum omnes scelerati me unum petunt**, Cic., Phil., XII, 10, 24. **Apud Graecos quidem iam anni prope quadringenti sunt, cum hoc probatur**, Cic., Or., II, 171. **Hanc domum, iam multos annos est, quom possideo et colo**, Pl., Aul., Prolog., 4. **Iam bienniumst, quom habet rem tecum**, Pl., Merc., 527. **Multi anni sunt, cum bella a proconsulibus administrantur, qui, etc.**, Cic., Div., II, 36, 76. **Iam pridem scito esse, cum unum te pluris quam omnes illos putem** (*Oratio Obliqua*), Cic., Att., XII, 21, 5.

2. The Present (rarely Perfect) with the period or designation of time followed by *cum* and a negative with the Perfect. Here the action in the *cum* clause is denied for the entire period of time, including the immediate Present of the writer or speaker.

Ex.—**Decem anni sunt cum ille in aere meo non fuit** (= *since (that) he has not been (and is not) in my debt* = *his decem annis in aere meo non fuit, nec est*). **Septem menses sunt, quom in hasce aedes pedes nemo intro tetulit**, Pl., Most., 460. **Tertius iam praeteriit annus, cum interim nihil ex primo impetu cecidit**, Sen., Marc., De Cons., I, 7.

REM. The preceding relation is substantially expressed by *cum* with *non* and the Present.

Ex.—**Decem anni sunt, cum ille in aere meo non est.**  
**Iam diust, quom ventri victum non datis**, Plaut., Amp., 298.

3. The Present (rarely the Perfect) with a period or designation of time followed by *cum* and the Aorist. By this association of Tenses it is expressed that the action in the *cum* clause occurs at the beginning of the period or designation of time.

Ex.—**Decem anni sunt, cum ille in aere meo fuit** = *abhinc decem annos* (= *ante hos decem annos*) *ille in aere meo fuit* = *ten years ago he was in my debt*. **Aliquot sunt anni, cum vos duo delegi, quos praecipue colerem**, Cic., Att., IX, 11, A, 2. **Biennium est, cum virtuti nuntium remisisti delenitus illecebris voluptatis**, Cic., Fam., XV, 16, 3. **Iam diust factum quom discesti ab ero**, Pl., Asin., 249.

REM. A negative with the Present denies that the action in the *cum* clause occurs at the beginning of the period or designation of time.

Ex.—**Nondum centum et decem anni sunt, cum de pecuniis repetundis a L. Pisone lata lex est**, Cic., Off., II, 21, 75. **Illi quidem haud sane diust, quom dentes exciderunt**, Plaut., Merc., 533.

(a) Exactly parallel temporal relations occur in the Past. This is obvious if it be borne in mind that the force of the Present Tense when transferred to the Past is reproduced by the Imperfect, and that the force of the Perfect and the Aorist, considered from the Present, is reproduced by the Pluperfect. Hence—

1. The Imperfect with a period or denomination of time followed by *cum* and the Imperfect furnish the equivalent of the Imperfect with a period or denomination of time in the sense of an English Progressive Pluperfect.

Ex.—**Decem anni erant, cum ille in aere meo erat = decem annos (decimum iam annum) ille in aere meo erat** = *he had been in my debt for ten years and was at the time of the statement.*

2. The Imperfect with a period or designation of time followed by *cum* and a negative with the Pluperfect. Here the action in the *cum* clause is denied for the entire period of time, including the time of the main proposition (in the *cum* member) or the time of the statement.

Ex.—**Decem anni erant, cum ille in aere meo non fuerat = (illis) decem annis ille in aere meo non fuerat, nec erat** = *he had not been in my debt for ten years and was not.* **Permuli anni iam erant, cum inter patricios magistratus tribunosque nulla certamina fuerant**, Liv., IX, 33, 3.

3. The Imperfect with a period or designation of time followed by *cum* and the Pluperfect. By this association of Tense it is expressed that the action in the *cum* clause occurs at the beginning of the period or designation of time.

Ex.—**Decem anni erant, cum ille in aere meo fuerat = abhinc decem annis (ante decem annos) ille in aere meo fuerat** = *ten years before he had been in my debt.*

(a) A similar sense is expressed by other Particles—

1. By *quod* (observed in late Latin).

Ex.—**Tertius dies est, quod audiavi recitantem Sentium Augurinum**, Plin. Min., IV, 27, 1. Cf. **Tertius iam dies erat, quod non inveniebat exordium**, Quint., X, 3, 14.

2. By *ut* (observed in late Latin).

Ex.—**Octavus annus est, ut imperium obtines**, Tac., Ann., XIV, 53. **Quintus dies erat, ut in eam regionem pervenerat**, Curt., VII, 11.

3. By *ex quo*.

Ex.—**Quartus decimus annus est, Caesar, ex quo spei tue admotus sum**, Tac., Ann., XIV, 53. **Octavus annus est, commilitones, ex quo fide atque opera vestra Britanniam vicistis**, Tac., Agr., 33. **Annus sexagesimus et quartus est**,

**ex quo cum anima luctatur**, Sen., *Lud. de Mort Cl.*, III, 1. **Nondum sunt anni mille quingenti, ex quo Graecia stellis numeros et nomina fecit**, Sen., *N. Q.*, VII, 25, 3. **Quintum iam diem habeo, ex quo in scholam eo et ab octava (philosophum) disputantem audio**, Sen., *Ep.*, IX, 5, 1.

V. To *cum temporal* should be referred the use of this particle in a Conditional sense, *when = if*. The Mood, while generally the Indicative, is decided by the Conditional relation to be expressed—that is, the *cum* clause may represent the protasis of a logical, ideal, or unreal Conditional sentence. The Indicative Tenses are generally the Future, less frequently the Present. The Mood and Tense in the leading clause is decided by the general Conditional sentence. Here, as in any Conditional sentence, the Present Indicative, used in anticipation of the Future, should be kept in view. The explanation of *cum* Conditional must be referred to the conception of Time as a Conditional qualification.

1. (a) Present with the Present.

Ex.—**Male se res habet, cum, quod virtute effici debet, id tentatur pecunia**, Cic., *Off.*, II, 6, 22 (here *cum = when = if*).

(b) The Present Indicative with the Perfect Indicative.

Ex.—**Hoc dico, cum ab inferioribus petitus est**, Sen., *Clem.*, I, 21, 1.

(c) A Future Indicative with a Future Indicative.

Ex.—**Quod cum facies, ex magna parte communi commodo inservieris**, Cic., *Fam.*, XI, 4, 2. **Cognosces, cum legeris**, Cic., *Att.*, XV, 29, 1. **Omnibus temporibus formosius erit, cum illo iustitia conspecta fuerit**, Sen., *Helv. Mat.*, IX, 3. **Nihil debebis mihi, cum te servitute ac vinculis liberavero**, Sen., *Ben.*, VI, 13, 3. **Idem faciet, cum idem potuerit**, Sen., *Ep.*, V, 1, 3. **Cum volueris, approbabo**, Sen., *Ep.*, XIII, 2, 1. **Cum omnia feceris, a mutis animalibus decore vinceris**, Sen., *Ep.*, XX, 7, 22. **Cum esset damnatus, erat indicium postulaturus** (epistolary composition) = **cum erit damnatus, indicium postulabit**, Cic., *Att.*, II, 24, 4. **Equidem haud despero, cum omnium potestas ei facta sit** (*Oratio Obliqua*), **aliquid ex his rebus remissurum**, Liv., XXI, 13, 8 (= *cum...facta erit, aliquid...remittet* (*Oratio Recta*)). **Cuius rei opinio tolli non poterit, cum in Italiam, ex qua profectus sum, reductus existimabor**, Caes., *B. Civ.*, III, 18.

REM. The Present, anticipating or looking to the future, with a Future Tense.

Ex.—**Ad cuius igitur fidem confugiet, cum per eius fidem laeditur cui se commiserit?** Cic., *Am.*, XI, 116. **Cum deni creantur, nonnullos in omni memoria reperies perniciosos tribunos**, Cic., *Leg.*, III, 10, 24. **Etiam cum (beneficia) recepero, danda sunt**, Sen., *Ben.*, IV, 13, 3.

2. The Conditional *cum* approximately represents *si* in the Protasis of an Ideal Conditional sentence.

Ex.—**Quis non, cum haec viderit, irriserit?** Cic., Leg., II, 1, 2. Cf. **Cum haec adsint, beata vita sit, et sine his esse non possit**, Cic., Am., XXII, 84.

3. The Conditional *cum* occurs in the Protasis of an Unreal Conditional sentence, particularly the Unreal Present.

Ex.—**Ea cum (= when, if) dixissent, quid talibus viris responderes?** **Haec cum viderent, profecto deos esse arbitrarentur**, Cic. **Si Seriphi natus esses . . . non crederes leones et pantheras esse, cum tibi, quales essent, diceretur**, Cic., N. D., I, 31, 88. **Quis dubitare posset, cum istius in quaestura fugam et furtum recognosceret. . . qualis iste in quarto actu improbitalis futurus esset?** Cic., Verr., II, 6, 18. **Haec neque cum ego dicerem neque cum tu negares, magni momenti nostra esset oratio**, Cic., Verr., I, 10, 28.

4. The Explicative or Explanatory *cum* may sometimes be interpreted as Conditional.

Ex.—**Nulla est haec amicitia, cum (= when=if) alter verum audire non vult alter ad mentiendum paratus est**, Cic., Am., XXVI, 98.

REM. Observe *cum* Conditional with Indefinite Second Person.

Ex.—**Cum illum in multa mutaveris, unus est**, Sen., Ben., V, 8, 4. **Addo etiam, cum ea urbe careas, in qua nihil sit, quod videre possis sine dolore**, Cic., Fam., VII, 3, 10.

## VI. *Cum Inversum*.

In the preceding uses of *cum* the particle defines or states the time when the event in the leading member occurs. It thus explains the leading member by stating the time of its occurrence. The *cum* member is therefore the subordinate and explanatory member. But by this particle an event is introduced (generally unexpected or not looked for) as occurring or taking place at the time of or after that stated in the leading member. The event thus introduced by *cum* is the leading event or expresses the leading idea of the sentence. In the statement of the sentence the *cum* member, as a rule, follows the other member. The particle *cum* in this office—that is, in introducing the leading idea of the sentence—is called *Cum Inversum*. The Mood is the Indicative. The Tenses are—

1. The Imperfect or Pluperfect, rarely the Aorist, in the logically subordinate clause, with the Aorist, Historical Present, the Historical Infinitive, and rarely the Imperfect, in the logically leading clause (the *cum* clause).

Ex.—**Proxima erat Hortensii sententia, cum Lupus tribunus pl. intendere coepit, ante se oportere discessionem facere quam consules**, Cic., Fam., I, 2, 2. **Legeram tuas litteras, cum mihi epistola affertur a Lepta, circumvallatum esse Pompeium**, Cic., Att., IX, 12, 1. **Cedebat Romanus, cum M. Fabius consul transi-**

luit iacentis corpus, etc., Liv., II, 46, 5. **Pars reliqua (turris) consequens procumbebat, cum hostes inermes se porta foras universi proripiunt**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 11. **Victor Romanus promissa consulis fidemque senatus exspectabat, cum Appius, quam asperrime poterat, ius de creditis pecuniis dicere**, Liv., II, 27, 1. **Hoc nondum fecerat, cum priorem partem epistolae scripsi**, Cic., Fam., VIII, 6, 5.

2. *Cum Inversum* is often clearly indicated by the particles *iam*, *vix* (*aegre*), *vixdum*, *commodum*, *nondum*, in the logically subordinate clause, with *subito* or *repente* in the *cum* clause. The Tenses in the former are the Imperfect, Pluperfect, rarely the Aorist; with the Aorist, Historical Present, Historical Infinitive, rarely the Imperfect, in the *cum* clause.

Ex.—**iam ab eo non longius bidui via aberant, cum duas venisse legiones missu Caesaris cognoscunt**, Caes., B. G., VI, 7. **Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones processerat, cum Galli... flumen transire et proelium committere non dubitant**, Caes., B. G., V, 8. **Vixdum omnes conscenderant, cum alii resolutis oris in ancoras evehuntur, alii ancoralia incidunt**, Liv., XXII, 19, 10. **Commodum ad te dederam litteras, cum ad me bene mane Dionysius fuit**, Cic., Att., X, 16, 1. **Nondum ab Roma profectus erat C. Flaminius praetor, cum haec in Hispania gerebantur**, Liv., XXXV, 2, 1. **Dies nondum decem intercesserant, cum ille alter filius infans necatur**, Cic., Clu., IX, 28. **Libelli nominum vestrorum consiliique huius in manibus erant omnium... cum iste repente ex alacri atque laeto sic erat humilis atque demissus ut**, Cic., Verr., Prim. Act., 6, 17. **Iam naves urbi undique admovebantur et Tyrri desperatione torpebant, cum subito spissae nubes intendere se coelo**, Curt., IV, 14. **Omnes hostes in acie cecidisse credebant, cum repente ex adverso apparuit agmen equitum qui, etc.**, Curt., IV, 62. **Opus nondum aquae fastigium aequabat, cum Tyrri per ludibrium exprobrabant** (action commenced), Curt., IV, 10. **In possessionem omnis aevi transiturus eram, cum subito expergefactus sum et tam bellum somnium perdidici**, Sen., Ep., XVII, 2, 2. **Mihi facta statim est gratulatio, cum subito ille in contionem ascendit**, Cic., Att., IV, 2, 3. **Iam Sulla pariter cum ortu solis castra metabatur, cum equites Mauri nuntiant lugurtham... ante eos consedissee**, Sall., Jug., 106. **Emerseram commodum ex Antiati in Appiam ad Tris Tabernas, cum in me incurrit Roma veniens Curio meus**, Cic., Att., II, 12, 2.

3. The character of *Cum Inversum* is yet more explicitly and emphatically presented when the particles *interim*, *interea*, *etiam tunc*, *tamen*, occur in the *cum* clause. Here *cum* is best translated *while*. The Mood is regularly the Indicative. The presence of *tamen* in the *cum* clause implies the concessive character of the sentence in which facts are stated. While the same Tenses are used as in the preceding (pure *cum Inversum*), the occurrence of the Present with the Present in the two clauses is to be noted—and, in fact, the Tenses in some cases are decided by the context and general sense of the sentence.

Ex.—*Caedebatur virgis civis Romanus, cum interea nullus gemitus audiebatur*, etc., Cic., Verr., V, 42, 162. *Post Leuctricam pugnam Lacedaemonii se numquam refecerunt, cum interim Agesilaus non destitit . . . patriam iuvare*, Nep., Ages., 7. *Cotidie te ipsum expectabam, cum interea ne litteras quidem ullas accepi*, Cic., Fam., III, 6, 5. *Evolarat iam e conspectu fere fugiens quadriremis, cum etiam tum ceterae naves uno in loco moliebantur*, Cic., Verr., V, 34, 88. *Neque ille intermisit affirmare se sine mora venire, cum interim aversum illum ab hac cogitatione ad alia consilia video se contulisse*, Cic., Fam., X, 24, 4. *Iam dies consumptus erat, cum tamen barbari nihil remittere*, etc., Sall., Jug., 98. *Aeterna volutat animo et in nepotes disponit, cum interim longa conantem eum mors opprimit*, Sen., Marc. De Cons., XI, 5. *Totus (animus) est ratio, cum interim tantus error mortalia tenet ut*, etc., Sen., N. Q., I, Prolog., 14. *Idem crediderant, qui Tiberio superstites fuerunt, cum interim intestabilior et saevior exortus est*, Tac., H., IV, 42. *Utraque ex illis (sententiis) vitam relinquit, haec adimit, cum interim et qui morte puniebant et qui relegabant una sedebant*, etc., Plin. Min., VIII, 14, 13.

(a) The Pluperfect Indicative in the *cum* clause is to be noted. By this use of the Pluperfect there is expressed not only an unexpected but speedily realized event, in effect—one that occurs almost before the action in the logically leading clause. The language is rhetorical and energetic.

Ex.—*Vix explicandi ordines spatium Etruscis fuit, cum pilis inter primam trepidationem abiectis temere magis quam emissis pugna iam in manus, iam ad gladios venerat*, Liv., II, 46, 3. *Tria milia ferme aberat, cum haudum ququam hostium senserat*, Liv., XXVIII, 2, 1. *Ver primum ex domo Gallos excivit: iamque Synnada pervenerant, cum Eumenes ad Sardis undique exercitum contraxerat*, Liv., XLIV, 34, 11.

(b) When the Subjunctive occurs with *cum Inversum* the particle is Concessive, and the Mood is decided by the concessive force of the particle.

Ex.—*Simulat se eorum praesidio confidere, cum interea aliud quiddam iam diu machinetur*, Cic., Verr., Act. Pr., VI, 15. *Sed condito odio, eandem utilitatem fovere, crebris epistolis probra Othoni obiectantes, cum duces partium Othonis abstinerent*, Tac., H., II, 30. *Conviciis postremo ac probris causam et initium caedis quaerebant, cum alius insuper metus senatoribus instaret*, ne, etc., Tac., H., II, 52. *Eumenes quodam modo latebat, cum tamen per eum unum gererentur omnia*, Nep., Eum., 7.

REM. It cannot be doubted that, while the action in the *cum* clause expresses the leading idea of the sentence, the Subjunctive is occasionally used to present this action simply in its historical connection and with the temporal circumstances surrounding it (compare *cum Historicum*) when neither a causal nor concessive conception applies.



Ex.—Iam Piso egressum Galbam et foro appropinquantem assecutus erat, iam Marius Celsus haud laeta retulerat, cum alii in palatium redire, alii Capitolium petere, plerique rostra occupanda censerent, etc., Tac., H., I, 39.

VII. The particles *cum*—*tum* often occur in the sense of *et*—*et* with the restriction that *cum*, which precedes, introduces the general and less important fact, while the *tum* clause, which follows, presents the special and more important fact. The particles are rendered *both . . . and especially*; *both . . . and more particularly*; *not only . . . but also*. The Mood is usually the Indicative, with the same Predicate and Tense. The particle *tum* is strengthened by *vero*, *etiam*, *praecipue*, *certe*, *maxime*, *multo magis*, *inprimis*, etc.

Ex.—Magnus animorum motus est factus cum eorum, quorum oportuit, tum eorum etiam, quorum, etc., Cic., Fam., I, 9, 8. Sed in Miltiade erat cum summa humanitas, tum mira communitas, Nep., Milt., 8. Medebor cum satietati tum ignorantiae lectorum, Nep., Pel., 1. Rex cum virtute tum gratia viri permotus flexit animum suum, Sall., Jug., 9. Quae res Marium cum pro honore, quem affectabat, tum contra Metellum vehementer accenderat, Sall., Jug., 64. Incipiamus ab eo, qui cum frequentissimus est tum longe pulcherrimus, Quint., VIII, 6, 4. Sollicitum esse te cum de tuis communibusque fortune, tum maxime de me ac de dolore meo sentio, Cic., Att., XI, 6, 1. Sollicitum autem te habebat cogitatio cum officii, tum etiam periculi mei, Cic., Fam., VII, 3, 1. Agesilaus cum a ceteris scriptoribus, tum eximie a Xenophonte Socratico colaudatus est, Nep., Ages., 1. Te cum semper valere cupio, tum certe, dum hic sumus, Cic., Fam., VII, 4. Scio, patres conscripti, cum ceteros cives tum praecipue consules oportere sic affici ut se publice magis quam privatim obligatos putent, Plin. Min., Pan., 90. Utriusque cum multa non probo tum illud inprimis, quod, etc., Cic., Fin., I, 6, 18.

(a) The Predicates in the two clauses may be different, while the Tense is the same.

Ex.—Ego cum ex ipsa re magnam capio voluptatem, tum meum factum probari abs te triumpho gaudio, Cic., Att., IX, 16, 2. Cum omnia mihi tempora sunt misera, tum vero, cum aut scribo ad vos aut vestras lego, conficior lacrimis, Cic., Fam., XIV, 4, 1. In quo cum divitiis onavit, tum etiam peritissimos belli navalis fecit Athenienses, Nep., Them., 2. Id cum est apud oratores frequentissimum, tum etiam in usu cotidiano quasdam reliquias habet, Quint., VIII, 5, 1. Qui mihi cum semper tuae laudi favere visus est, tum vero . . . perspectus est, etc., Cic., Fam., I, 7, 3.

(b) The Subjunctive occurs in the *cum* clause when the particle is Concessive or Causal. This is particularly the case when the times of the actions in the two clauses are different. The Predicates may be the same or different.

Ex.—Ex eo cum ab ineunte eius aetate bene speravissem, tum perbene existimare coepi iis iudiciis, quae de eo feceras, cognitis, Cic., Fam., XIII, 16, 1.

Quae cum sint gravia, tum illud acerbissimum est, quod habet eos accusatores, etc., Cic., Mur., XXVII, 56. Siennae historia cum facile omnes vincat superiores, tum indicat tamen, quantum absit a summo, Cic., Brut., LXIV, 228. Cum te semper tantum dilexerim, quantum tu intellegere potuisti, tum his tuis factis sic incensus sum, ut nihil umquam in amore fuerit ardentius, Cic., Fam., IX, 14, 4. Tratorium nostrum cum semper probassem, tum maxime in tuis rebus summam eius fidem cognovi, Cic., Fam., XII, 23, 4. Quae cum res tota ficta sit pueriliter, tum ne efficit quidem quod vult, Cic., Fin., I, 6, 19. Cum multae res in philosophia nequaquam satis adhuc explicatae sint, tum perdifficilis et perobscura quaestio est de natura deorum, Cic., N. D., I, 1, 1.

### Cum in Historical Narrative—Cum Historicum.

424. 1. *Cum Historicum* is *cum* temporal. It is translated *when*. It serves to present the relation either of coincidence or of antecedence of historical events—that is, it introduces an action as progressing or already completed in the Past at the time of the occurrence of the leading event or action. It follows, then, that the leading event occurs during the progress of the action in the *cum* clause or after the completion of the action in this clause. Hence, the time of the action in the *cum* clause is coincident with or before that of the leading action. The Mood with *cum Historicum* is the Subjunctive. The Tenses are the Imperfect and Pluperfect, expressing, respectively, actions in progress and coincident with or completed before and antecedent to the action in the leading clause. From the preceding statements it is obvious that *cum Historicum* gives the temporal qualifications or circumstances under which the leading action occurs. The clause, therefore, which it introduces is explanatory and subordinate. The fact of subordination or circumstantial definition can hardly be accepted as explaining the Subjunctive in the *cum* clause. This seems to be obvious from the fact that in early Latin this *cum* is used with the Indicative and rarely with the Subjunctive, where, in the later Latin, *cum Historicum* with the Subjunctive is the uniform usage. The consideration upon which this departure (in the employment of Mood) from the early usage is based, may hardly be referred to simple subordination or circumstantial explanation.

An action in Historical Narrative may be stated by the speaker or writer as a fact in the Past for the actual occurrence of which he makes himself responsible. In this case the Indicative is used. The speaker or writer may again present an action in the Past with any qualification or modification, temporal or other, which, in his judgment,

authorizes him to withhold the explicit declaration or affirmation of it. In this form of statement the Subjunctive is used and there is presented a phase of Subjective *Oratio Obliqua*. Such may have been the conception in the Roman mind of an action with *cum Historicum*. Whatever explanation of the Mood is accepted, for practical purposes it may be stated as a rule representing the uniform usage in the best Latin that the English "when," with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense, is regularly reproduced in Latin by *cum Historicum* with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive. With *cum Historicum* there occurs in the leading clause the Aorist, Historical Present, the Imperfect, and, very rarely, the Pluperfect, particularly in expressing resulting state or condition. The Mood in this (leading) clause is regularly the Indicative, but the Subjunctive occurs when demanded by the context, as after *ut*, *ne*, etc.

Ex.—*Cum una navis appropinquaret urbi, omnis sese multitudo effudit.* Caes., B. Civ., II, 7. *Cum civitas armis ius suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est.* Caes., B. G., I, 4. *Cimon cum domum reverteretur, (insulas) bene animatas confirmavit, alienatas ad officium redire coëgit.* Nep., Cim., 2. *Cum populum in curias triginta divideret, nomina earum curiis imposuit.* Liv., I, 13, 6. *Varro, cum sese Italicam venturum praemisisset, certior ab suis factus est praeclusas esse portas.* Caes., B. Civ., II, 20. *Quas (leges) cum solus pertulisset, tum demum comitia collegae surrogando habuit.* Liv., II, 8, 3. *Tubero, cum in Africam venisset, invenit in provincia cum imperio Attium Varum.* Caes., B. Civ., I, 31. *Quo cum venisset, cognoscit missum in Hispaniam a Pompeio Vibullium Rufum.* Caes., B. Civ., I, 34. *Cum in his angustiis res esset, imperat militibus Caesar, ut, etc.* Caes., B. Civ., I, 54. *Cum captum Ianiculum atque inde citatos decurrere hostes vidisset, trepidamque turbam suorum ordines relinquere, reprehensans singulos, obsistens obtestansque deum et hominum fidem testabatur, etc.* Liv., II, 10, 3. *Ad quorum casum cum conclamasset gaudio Albanus exercitus, Romanas legiones iam spes tota, nondum tamen cura, deseruerat.* Liv., I, 25, 6. *Regulus, cum retineretur (attempted action) a propinquis, ad supplicium redire maluit.* Cic., Off., I, 13, 39.

REM. Both the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are often associated with *cum Historicum* in the same clause.

Ex.—*Cum legiones Fabianae duae flumen transissent, impedimenta et omnis equitatus sequeretur, subito vi ventorum pons est interruptus.* Caes., B. Civ., I, 40. *Aristides, cum intellegeret reprimi concitatum multitudinem non posse, cedensque animadvertisset quemdam scribentem ut patria pelleretur, quaesisse ab eo dicitur quare id faceret.* Nep., Arist., 1. *Cum quidam adolescentuli ad Thebanos transfugere vellent et locum extra urbem editum cepissent, Agesilaus cum suis eo venit.* Nep., Ages., 6. *Agesilaus cum ex Aegypto reverteretur venissetque in portum, qui Menelai vocatur, decessit.* Nep., Ages., 8.

(a) *Cum Historicum* is continued negatively by *neque, nec*.

Ex.—*Quae (tela) cum in obiecto cuncta scuto haesissent, neque ille minus obstinatus ingenti pontem obtineret gradu, iam impetu conabantur detrudere virum, etc., Liv., II, 10, 10. Attius Clausus, cum pacis ipse auctor a turbatoribus belli premeretur nec par factioni esset. . . Romam transfugit, Liv., II, 16, 4.*

(b) The use of *cum Historicum* with the First Person is not inconsistent with the explanation of the Subjunctive as Subjective *Oratio Obliqua*, as in such a case the speaker or writer treats the First Person as the Third, and simply gives his conception and recollection of the action in the past as he recalls it.

Ex.—*Cum non longe a Piraeo abessem, puer Acidini obviam mihi venit, Cic., Fam., IV, 12, 2. Cum ab Epidauro Piraeum navi advectus essem, ibi M. Marcellum conveni, Cic., Fam., IV, 12, 1. Cf. Memini cum ego essem una et pauci admodum familiares, in eum sermonem illum incidere, qui tum fere multis erat in ore, Cic., Am., I, 2.*

(c) It has been stated above (424, 1) that in early Latin *cum* with the Indicative is the usage reproduced in the best prose by *cum Historicum* with the Subjunctive. Instances of this early usage occasionally occur in the later and best prose, in that *cum* with the Indicative is found where *cum Historicum* with the Subjunctive is looked for.

Ex.—*Cum varices secabantur C. Mario, dolebat, Cic., Tusc., II, 15, 35. Cf. Num P. Decius, cum se devoveret et in mediam aciem irruebat, aliquid de voluptatibus suis cogitabat? Cic., Fin., II, 19, 61.* In such sentences it is difficult to distinguish *cum* with the Indicative, defining the time of a fact, from *cum Historicum* with the Subjunctive, narrating the circumstances under which an action occurs. It is also not always easy to distinguish *cum* Causal from *cum Historicum*.

#### Cum Causal.

425. 1. *Cum* as a causal particle is translated *as, since*. It introduces the logical ground or reason—that is, a ground reached by reasoning. The Mood is the Subjunctive; any Tense demanded by the context.

Ex.—*Quae cum ita sint, effectum est nihil esse malum quod turpe non sit, Cic., Fin., III, 8, 29. Quae cum ita sint, ab love ceterisque dis pacem ac veniam peto, Cic., Cat., I, 2, 5. Cum sint in nobis consilium, ratio, prudentia, necesse est deos haec ipsa habere maiora, Cic., N. D., II, 31, 79. Regem appellas, cum Rex tui mentionem nullam fecerit? Cic., Att., I, 16, 10. Cum fides tota Italia esset angustior neque creditae pecuniae solverentur, constituit, ut arbitri darentur, Caes., B. Civ., III, 1. Aebutius cum saucio brachio tenere telum non posset, pugna excessit, Liv., II, 19, 9. Illi cum ferro aggredi*

non auderent, noctu ligna contulerunt circa casam eam, in qua quiescebat, Nep., Alc., 10. Primum Delphos corrumpere est conatus. Cum id non potuisset, Dodonam adortus est, Nep., Lys., 3.

REM. 1. As may be gathered from one of the preceding examples, *cum* Causal is continued negatively by *nec*, *neque*.

REM. 2. The *cum* clause may follow.

Ex.—Venit ad nos Cicero tuus ad cenam, cum Pomponia foras cenaret, Cic., Q. Frat., III, 1, 19.

(a) To *cum* causal refer the rare use of the particle with the Subjunctive in reciting reasons in a preamble. Here *cum* is not identical in sense with *quod* in the introduction of preambles. It is stronger than *quod*. Translate *cum* *whereas*.

Ex.—Censeo : cum Ser. Sulpicius, gravi periculosoque morbo affectus, salutem rei publicae vitae suae praeposuerit, contraque vim gravitatemque morbi contenderit. . . . cum talis vir ob rem publicam mortem obierit, senatui placere Ser. Sulpicio statuam pedestrem aëneam in rostris statui, Cic., Phil., IX, 7, 15.

(b) With *cum* causal the particle *praesertim* (preceding and following *cum*) is associated. The particle *praesertim* emphasizes the causal force of *cum*, and gives prominence to the statement, the ground or reason of which is introduced by *cum*.

Ex.—Intellego te ipsum ita existimare, praesertim cum adiungatur ad Africam etiam Hispania, Cic., Att., XI, 12, 3. Sed tamen vacare culpa magnum est solacium, praesertim cum habeam duas res, quibus me sustentem, Cic., Fam., VII, 3, 4. Epigrammatis tuis, quae in Amaltheo posuisti, contenti erimus, praesertim cum et Thyllus nos reliquerit et Archias nihil de me scripserit, Cic., Att., I, 16, 15. Miltiades non videbatur posse esse privatus, praesertim cum consuetudine ad imperii cupiditatem trahi videretur, Nep., Milt., 8. Cf. Suet., Calig., 8 (praesertim cum dilexerit, etc.); Plin. Min., IX, 37, 1 (praesertim cum . . . detineat). So, also, cum praesertim. Nisi te valde amarem, non extimuissem rumorem, qui de te prolatus est, cum praesertim falsum esse existimarem, Cic., Att., X, 8, A, 1. Possum igitur eum perisse non indignari? cum praesertim iidem homines illi et invidiae et exitio fuerint, Cic., Fam., XI, 28, 3. Nam vi quidem regere patriam aut parentes importunum est, cum praesertim omnes rerum mutationes, caedem, fugam, aliaque hostilia portendant, Sall., Iug., 3. De timore supervacaneum est disserere, cum praesertim diligentia clarissimi viri, consulis, tanta praesidia sint in armis, Sall., Cat., 51.

(c) The causal force of *cum* is strengthened by the addition of *quippe*, *utpote*, and *ut*. Cf. The Relative with these particles.

Ex.—Sed de hoc tu videbis, quippe cum de me ipso ac de meis te considerare velim, Cic., Att., VII, 13, 3. Nihil est virtute amabilius quippe cum propter virtutem, etiam eos, quos numquam vidimus, quodam modo diligamus,

Cic., Am., VIII, 28. **Quod me admones, tu vero etiam si reprehenderes, laetarer, quippe cum in reprehensione sit prudentia cum benevolentia,** Cic., Att., XVI, 11, 2. **Neque Cimoni fuit turpe, sororem germanam habere in matrimonio, quippe cum cives eius eodem uterentur instituto,** Nep., Praef. **Quippe cum omnia profana spoliassent, ne sacris quidem abstinerant,** Curt., X, 1. **Me incommoda valetudo, qua iam emergeram, utpote cum sine febris laborassem, tenebat duodecimum iam diem Brundisii,** Cic., Att., V, 8, 1. **Tum ille, non hercule, inquit, potest fieri, ut adducar, querendi omnibus hanc causam esse, quam ostenditis, in qua maior pars exercitus non est, utpote cum plures dimiserim, quam retenturus sum,** Curt., X, 10. **Sequitur oratorum ingens manus, ut cum decem simul Athenis aetas una tulerit,** Quint., X, 1, 76. Cf. Quint., V, 10, 44 (ut cum . . . afferat); also, Quint., VI, 1, 51 (ut cum ex his sit res eruenda).

(d) To be noted is the occurrence in early Latin of the Indicative with *cum* causal. In the later and better Latin the Indicative is doubtful.

Ex.—**Nemost quem iam dehinc metuam mihi, nequid nocere possit, quom tu mihi tua oratione omnem animum ostendisti tuum,** Pl., Asin., 110. **Ego mitto omnia haec, praesertim quom is me dignum quoi concrederet habuit,** Pl., Asin., 79. Cf. **Quae cum erant loca Caesari capienda, etsi prohibere Pompeius totis copiis et dimicare non constituerat, tamen suis locis sagittarios funditoresque mittebat,** etc., Caes., B. Civ., III, 44 (here *cum*, if the text be correct, represents very nearly the sense of *quoniam*).

### Cum Concessive.

426. 1. The Concessive is a phase of the causal relation. It is really an adversative causal relation—that is, a given cause or ground is not followed by the natural and looked-for result, and is, in a given case, inadequate to produce it. Hence, the result is different from that expected from the cause, and occurs notwithstanding this. *Cum* Concessive is translated *although*. It takes the Subjunctive. Any Tense, according to the context.

Ex.—**Dubium habebis etiam, sancte quom ego iurem tibi?** Pl., Capt., 893. **Cum multa sint in philosophia gravia et utilia, latissime patere videntur ea,** etc., Cic., Off., I, 1, 4. **Non sentio in animo aetatis iniuriam, cum sentiam in corpore,** Sen., Ep., III, 5, 2. **Optimos nos esse, sapientissimos affirmantibus assentimur, cum sciamus illos saepe multa mentiri,** Sen., Ep., VI, 7, 11. **Innumerable discrimina summi boni facies, cum summum bonum intellegam, quod supra se gradum non habet,** Sen., Ep., XII, 3, 20. **Non tu homo ridiculus es, qui, cum Balbus noster apud te fuerit, ex me quaeras, quid . . . putem?** Cic., Fam., IX, 17, 1. **Tanto se odio esse intellegit, ut, cum interfectores suos domi comprehenderit, rem proferre non audeat,** Cic., Fam., XII, 23, 2. **Quod nonnulli cum probarent, periculi causa sequi non potuerunt,** Cic., Att., X, 8, B, 2.

**Cum** ab Atheniensibus et Lacedaemoniis exposceretur publice, supplicem non prodidit, Nep., Them., 8. **Cum** eum nemo anteiret his virtutibus, multi nobilitate praecurrerunt, Nep., Thras., 1. **Cum** interficere posset, noluit, Nep., Tim., 2. **Nam cum** esset pecuniosus, nemo illo minus fuit emax, minus aedificator, Nep., Att., 13. **Neque in eo loco** hostis est visus, sed, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant, Caes., B. G., V, 8. **Atque hunc** Antigonus, cum ei fuisset infestissimus, conservasset, si per suos esset licitum, Nep., Eum., 10. **Neque in tam multis annis** cuiusquam ex sua stirpe funus vidit, cum ex tribus uxoribus liberos procreasset, multique ei nati essent nepotes, Nep., Reg., 2.

(a) The adversative relation is prominently presented by *tamen* in the leading clause.

Ex.—Ego, cum antea tibi de Lentulo gratias egissem...tamen lectis eius litteris, putavi, etc., Cic., Att., IX, 11, A, 3. Milites, cum toto tempore frigore et assiduis imbris tardarentur, tamen continenti labore omnia haec superaverunt, Caes., B. G., VII, 24. Cum Romani sub ipso constitissent vallo haud dubie aequiore loco, successit tamen Poenus ad lacessendum hostem, Liv., XXII, 16, 1.

The particle *cum*, in a concessive sense, rarely occurs with the Indicative.

Ex.—Cum tabulas signa toreumata emunt...tamen summa lubidine divitias suas vincere nequeunt, Sall., Cat., 20.

## Temporal Clauses.

**427.** 1. A temporal sentence, in its proper form, consists of two clauses and, consequently, of two actions, which stand to each other in a relation of time. The clause in which the temporal particle occurs is subordinate and explanatory, the other is the leading clause. The particle of time defines not only the action with which it is associated, but the time of the leading action as well. Hence, the force of the particle of time in a temporal sentence is to be carefully noted. Thus *venit, vidit* = *he came, he saw*. In this sentence there is nothing, except the order in which the words occur, that defines the relative times of the two actions, or their temporal relation to each other. It does not necessarily follow that *venit* is antecedent to *vidit*. But the association of *postquam* with *venit* indicates clearly that the action of *venit* precedes that of *vidit* = *after he came, he saw* = *he first came, he afterwards saw* = *he saw after he came*. The particle *postquam* distinctly implies that the action with which it is associated precedes that in the

leading clause, and hence its action stands to that in the leading clause in the relation of priority. It is clear that if the particle decides the relation of antecedence, the Tense (Pluperfect) by which antecedence is ordinarily expressed is not demanded.

2. The temporal relation of one action to another is that (a) of Priority (antecedence), (b) of Contemporaneousness (coincidence), (c) of Posteriority (subsequence) in the several spheres of Time.

### The Relation of Priority (Antecedence).

428. 1. The relation of Priority or Antecedence is introduced by *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *ut primum*, *ubi primum*, *cum primum*, *simulatque*, *simulac*, *simul*; less frequently, but in a similar if not identical sense, by *simul ut*, *continuo ut*, *statim ut*, *ut semel*, *simul et*, *confestim ut*.

2. By *postquam* (*posteaquam*) it is clearly implied that the action of the explanatory (*postquam*) clause precedes that of the leading clause. The priority of the former is indefinite—that is, the interval between the actions is not limited—while with *ut* and *ubi* the interval between the actions is distinct, and the succession of one action upon the other is generally rapid. This, however, is not always the case. Hence, with *ut* and *ubi* the interval between the actions may be considerable or not. With *ut primum*, *ubi primum*, *cum primum*, *simulatque* (*simulac*), etc., there is implied immediate priority of the explanatory action. The relation of Priority is often clearly defined by *continuo*, *ilico*, *statim*, in the leading clause.

3. The Tense with the preceding particles, in the Past, is the Aorist or Historical Present, as a rule. The Tense in the leading clause is decided by the Tense relation to be expressed. The Mood is generally the Indicative.

Ex.—**Postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, exercitum traducere maturavit**, *Caes.*, B. G., II, 5. **Posteaquam Verres magistratum iniit, Sulpicii patroni filia sextam partem hereditatis ab Ligure petere coepit**, *Cic.*, *Verr.*, I, 48, 125. **Caesar, ut Brundisium venit, contionatus (est) apud milites**, *Caes.*, B. Civ., III, 6. **Ut Idibus Maiis in senatum convenimus, multa dixi de summa re publica**, *Cic.*, *Att.*, I, 16, 9. **Is ut magistratum iniit...vehementior fuit**, *Liv.*, III, 19, 4. **Huc ut rediit, praetor factus est**, *Nep.*, *Hann.*, 7. **Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar sua in eum beneficia commemoravit**, *Caes.*, B. G., I, 43. **Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit...castris idoneum locum delegit**, *Caes.*, B. G., I, 49. **Ut primum iudices consederunt, valde diffidere boni coeperunt**, *Cic.*, *Att.*, I, 16, 3. **Ut primum dispexit, quaesivit salvusne esset**



*clipeus*, Cic., Fin., II, 30, 97. *Hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, impetu facto celeriter nostros perturbaverunt*, Caes., B. G., IV, 12. *Cum primum potui, pacis auctor fui*, Cic., Att., IX, 11, A, 2. *Cum primum Romam veni, nihil prius faciendum mihi putavi, quam, etc.*, Cic., Att., IV, 1, 1. *At ego, simul atque audiui, invocatus ad subsellia rei occorro*, Cic., Fam., VIII, 8, 1. *Appius, simul atque Dolabella accessit ad tribunal, introierat (epistolary) in urbem triumphique postulationem abiecerat*, Cic., Fam., VIII, 6, 1. *Verres simul ac tetigit provinciam, statim Messana litteras dedit*, Cic., Verr., I, 10, 27. *Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, in hostes impetum fecerunt*, Caes., B. G., IV, 26. *Caralitani, simul ad se Valerium mitti audiverunt, Cottam ex oppido eiciunt*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 30. *Quod simul conspexit, primos equites in hostem emisit*, Liv., IV, 18, 7. *Simul ut hoc audierunt . . . ad aedem noctu conveniunt*, Cic., Verr., I, 26, 67. *Iste continuo ut vidit, non dubitavit, etc.*, Cic., Verr., IV, 22, 48. *Posteaquam propius Galli successerunt, aut se stimulis induerant aut transfodiebantur*, Caes., B. G., VII, 82. *Statim ut imperium adeptus est, Terpnium citharoedum arcessiit*, Suet., Nero, 20. *Confestim ut Apollonia rediit, Brutum Cassiumque legibus aggredi statuit*, Suet., Aug., 10. *Ut semel e Piraeo eloquentia evecta est, omnes peragravit insulas*, Cic., Brut., XIII, 51 ( *ut semel* properly = *when once*). *Cogitavi eadem illa Caeliana, quae legi in epistola tua, quam accepi simul et in Cumanum veni*, Cic., Att., X, 16, 4. *Principio ut illo aduenimus, ubi primum terram tetigimus, continuo Amphitruo delegit viros primorum principes*, Pl., Amph., 201. *Ut Hostius cecidit, confestim Romana inclinatur acies, fusaque est ad veterem portam Palatii*, Liv., I, 12, 3.

REM. 1. The elements of *posteaquam* (*postquam*) may be separated (*postea . . . quam*).

Ex.—*Postea vero quam equitatus in conspectum venit, hostes terga vertierunt*, Caes., B. G., IV, 37.

REM. 2. A sense similar to that of *ubi primum*, *cum primum*, is expressed by *ubi* or *cum* with the adjective *primus*.

Ex.—*Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his, qui in silvis abditi latebant, visa sunt, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt*, Caes., B. G., II, 19. *Hannibal cum prima quies silentiumque ab hostibus fuit, amnem vado traiecit*, Liv., XXI, 5, 9.

429. In addition to the Aorist and Historical Present other Tenses are used with *postquam*, etc.

1. The Imperfect in the temporal clause. The fundamental sense of the Imperfect with *postquam*, etc., is that it expresses an action in progress, a state or condition of things existing at the time of the occurrence of the leading action. The character of the leading action may be such as to terminate the action in the *postquam* clause, or the action in this clause may still continue after the introduction of the leading action. In the latter case the action in the *postquam* clause embraces and is not cut short by the leading action. The Aorist or

Historical Present is the usage in the leading clause; also, the Imperfect when the sense demands it. With the Imperfect occur *postquam* (rare in early Latin), *ut*, *ubi* (not observed in Cicero, rare in Caesar), *simulatque* (observed neither in Cicero nor in Caesar).

Ex.—*Posteaquam Pompeii commoratio diuturnior erat, quam putaram, vide, quid mihi sumpserim*, Cic., Fam., VII, 5, 1. *Labienuus, postquam neque aggeres neque fossae vim hostium sustinere poterant, Caesarem facit certiorum*, etc., Caes., B. G., VII, 87. *Alco, postquam nihil lacrimae movebant, condicionesque tristes ut ab irato victore ferebantur, transfuga ex oratore factus apud hostem mansit*, Liv., XXI, 12, 4. *Postquam instructi utrimque stabant, cum paucis procerum in medium duces procedunt*, Liv., I, 23, 6. *Postquam satis apparebat ingens ardor, militem avidum certaminis emittit*, Liv., II, 25, 3. *Postquam victor Romanus aderat, id munimentum relictum (est)*, Liv., VI, 29, 5. *Iugurtha, postquam omnis Numidiae potiebatur, timere populum Romanum*, Sall., Jug., 13. *Postquam res eorum prospera videbatur, invidia orta est*, Sall., Jug., 28. *Postquam in conspectu Padus et nox appetebat, vallari castra placuit*, Tac., H., II, 19. *Caesar, postquam instabat virginum aetas, L. Cassium, M. Vinicium legit*, Tac., Ann., VI, 15. *Postquam corpus ictus ferre non poterat, dicturum se pollicetur*, Curt., VI, 42. *Ut Hortensius domum reducebatur cum maxima multitudine, fit obviam casu ei multitudini C. Curio*, Cic., Verr., Prim. Act., VII, 18. *Ut exurebatur amoenissimus Italiae ager villaeque passim incendiis fumabant, tum prope de integro seditio accensa (est)*, Liv., XXII, 14, 1. *Ut cuncta victi patiebantur, subito recordatio illos esse, qui, etc.*, Tac., H., III, 31. *Ubi res postulabat, insidias tendit*, Sall., Jug., 35. *Ubi diei vesper erat, Maurus ad Sullam accurrit*, Sall., Jug., 106. *Ubi pleraque telorum turribus pinnisque moenium irrita haerebant et desuper saxis vulnerabantur* (rather iterative actions), *clamore atque impetu invasere vallum*, Tac., H., IV, 23. *Ubi duces exercitusque Romanus propinquabant, honesto transfugio rediere*, Tac., H., IV, 70. *Iuventus, simul ac belli patiens erat, in castris per laborem usu militiam discebat*, Sall., Cat., 7 (rather iterative actions).

(a) In the temporal clause occur, quite frequently, both the Aorist and the Imperfect, and again the Imperfect and the Aorist. In such cases each Tense retains its characteristic sense.

Ex.—*Sed postquam non modo hordeum pabulumque omnibus locis herbaeque desectae (sunt), sed etiam frons ex arboribus deficiebat, conandum sibi aliquid Pompeius de eruptione existimavit*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 58. *Postquam id difficilium visum est neque facultas perficiendi dabatur, ad Pompeium transierunt*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 60. *Postquam illuxit, nec quisquam hostium in conspectu erat, P. Valerius consul spolia legit*, Liv., II, 7, 3. *Postquam resedit terror et prodi et deseri non patriam modo sed etiam Romanorum societatem cernebant, consilio tali animum adiecerunt*, Liv., XXXV, 38, 2. *Postquam quietae res ex Volscis afferebantur et apparuit nescire eos victoria et tempore uti otium fuit*, Liv., VI, 30, 7.

(b) In the temporal clause the Imperfect expresses iterative action, with the Imperfect (less often the Aorist) in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Ut* (= *whenever*) *quaeque res ad consilium referebatur, incredibilis erat severitas*, Cic., Att., I, 16, 4 (*ut* may be interpreted as a particle of comparison = *as*). *Ut equitum clamor exire iubentium instabat, fragor tectorum, quae diruebantur, audiebatur*, Liv., I, 29, 4. *Ubi comminus proeliandum erat, in hostem ingerebant*, Curt., VIII, 47. *Ubi vi opus erat, cuncti aderant*, Sall., Jug., 55. *Ubi frumento aut pabulo opus erat, cohortes cum omni equitatu praesidium agitabant*, Sall., Jug., 52. Cf. Tac., H., IV, 23 (Imperfect with Aorist in leading clause). It is always easy to distinguish *ubi* temporal from *ubi* locative (= *where, wherever*).

2. The Pluperfect Tense, particularly with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, occurs in the following relations:

(a) To express the state or condition resulting from the previously completed action of the Tense. This resulting state or condition is the equivalent of the Imperfect. In the leading clause occurs generally the Aorist or Historical Present.

Ex.—*Posteaquam tantam multitudinem collegerat emblematum, instituit officinam Syracusis in regia maximam*, Cic., Verr., IV, 24, 54. *M. Servilius postquam omnibus in rebus turbabat nec quod non venderet quicquam reliquerat...* *Q. Pilius de repetundis eum postulavit*, Cic., Fam., VIII, 8, 2. *Is tumultus momento temporis, postquam liberata itinera fuga montanorum erant, sedatur*, Liv., XXI, 33, 10. *Albinus, postquam decreverat non egredi provincia, plerumque milites stativis castris habebat*, Sall., Jug., 44. *Metellus laetissimis animis excipitur, plebi patribusque, postquam invidia decesserat, iuxta carus*, Sall., Jug., 88. *Legio, postquam propius suggestus hostis certo iactu tela exhauserat, erupit*, Tac., Ann., XIV, 37. *Is fuit Anicetus, praepotens olim, et, postquam regnum in formam provinciae verterat, mutationis impatiens*, Tac., H., III, 47. *Quod ubi senserant hostes, crevit ex metu alieno audacia*, Liv., III, 26, 4 (*ubi* not often observed in this connection). *Ut ad mare duae cohortes nonae legionis excubuerant, accessere subito prima luce Pompeiani*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 63. *Ut Athenas veneram, exspectabam ibi quartum diem Pomptinum*, Cic., Att., V, 10, 1. *Ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant atque ipsi se confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt*, Caes., B. G., II, 19. *Ut resederat impetus animorum ardorque, silentium subito ortum est*, Liv., XXVI, 18, 10.

REM. In the temporal clause occur quite frequently both the Aorist and the Pluperfect, the Pluperfect and the Imperfect, the Imperfect and the Pluperfect. In these cases the Pluperfect maintains itself as expressing resulting state or condition.

Ex.—*Ubi spectaculi tempus venit, deditaeque eo mentes cum oculis erant, tum ex composito orta (est) vis*, Liv., I, 9, 10. *Sed postquam paucae e proximis castellis turmae advenerant pugnamque imperitia poscebant, congressus cum hoste funditur*, Tac., Ann., XIII, 36. *Postquam lux certior erat et Romani in arcem confugerant, tum Hannibal Tarentinos sine armis convocare iubet*, Liv., XXV, 10, 6.

(b) The Pluperfect occurs with temporal particles, usually *ut*, *ubi*, less frequently *simulatque*, to express repeated action, repeated and completed before the leading action—that is, to express an antecedent, repeated action. In the leading clause occurs, as a rule, the Imperfect.

Ex.—*Ut quisque me viderat, narrabat*, Cic., Verr., Prim. Act., VII, 19. *Messanam ut quisque nostrum venerat, haec visere solebat*, Cic., Verr., IV, 3, 5. *Ut quidquid ego apprehenderam, statim accusator extorquebat e manibus*, Cic., Clu., XIX, 52. *Transire pontem non potuit, ut extrema resoluta erant tota rate in secundam aquam labente*, Liv., XXI, 47, 3 (labente expresses the Imperfect relation). *Ut quisque domum aut villam concupiverat, dabat operam*, etc., Sall., Cat., 51. *Hoc ubi uno auctore ad plures permanerat atque alius alii tradiderat, plures auctores eius rei videbantur*, Caes., B. Civ., II, 29. *Ubi ad pecuniae mentionem ventum erat, ibi haesitabat*, Liv., XLIV, 25, 9. *Duabus his artibus, audacia in bello, ubi pax evenerat, aequitate seque remque publicam curabant*, Sall., Cat., 9. *Haec iuventutem, ubi familiares opes defecerant, ad facinora incendebat*, Sall., Cat., 13. *Ubi a viris militaribus adversus urgentes casus firmatus erat, in diversa ac deteriora transibat*, Tac., Ann., XV, 10. *Ubi lorica corpusque fervens harena penetraverat, nec ulla vi excuti poterat, quidquid attigerat, perurebat*, Curt., IV, 16. *Stupebam, ubi aliquid ex illis alio atque alio loco fulserat*, Sen., Ep., XIX, 1, 14. *Qui simulatque in oppidum quoddam venerat, immittebantur illi continuo Cibyratci canes, qui, etc.*, Cic., Verr., IV, 21, 47. *Idem, simul ac remisera neque ulla causa suberat, quare animi laborem perferret, luxuriosus . . . reperiabatur*, Nep., Alc., 1 (observe the Imperfect *suberat* associated with the Pluperfect *remiserat*).

(c) The Pluperfect Tense is used with *postquam* when the Priority of the dependent action is defined by a specific, not only definite, interval of time expressed. In this case the elements of *postquam* are usually separated (*post . . . quam*), with *post* as a Preposition with the Accusative but preceding the case, or standing between the substantive expressing the time and the numeral, or as an adverbial definition with the Ablative, but following the case or standing between the substantive expressing the time and the numeral. *Postquam*, when its elements are not separately written, follows the Ablative.

Ex.—*Decessit fere post annum quartum quam Themistocles Athenis erat expulsus*, Nep., Arist., 3. *Itaque, post annum quintum quam expulsus erat, in patriam revocatus est*, Nep., Cim., 3. *Diem obiit quartum post annum quam ex Peloponneso in Siciliam redierat*, Nep., Dion, 10. *Epistulam tuam accepi post multos menses quam miserat*, Sen., Ep., V, 10, 1. *Romani post dies quadraginta quam eo ventum erat, oppido potiti (sunt)*, Sall., Jug., 76. *Post diem quintum quam iterum barbari male pugnaverant, legati a Boccho veniunt*, Sall., Jug., 102. *Habonio opus in acceptum rettulit quadriennio postquam diem operi dixerat*, Cic., Verr., I, 57, 149. *Signum Iovis biennio, postquam erat locatum, in Capitolio collocabatur*, Cic., Div., II, 20, 46. *At Hannibal anno tertio postquam*

**domo profugerat, Africam accessit**, Nep., Hann., 8. **Die quinto postquam id consilium inierat, decessit**, Nep., Att., 22. **Nono anno postquam in Hispaniam venerat, occisus est**, Nep., Hann., 3. (With the Ablative the usage is the undivided **postquam** following the term of time.)

REM. 1. The element *post* of the compound *postquam* is sometimes omitted.

Ex.—**Nam Aristides sexto fere anno quam erat expulsus, populi scito in patriam restitutus est**, Nep., Arist., 1. **Anno trecentesimo decimo quam urbs Roma condita erat, primum tribuni militum pro consulibus magistratum ineunt**, Liv., IV, 7, 1. **Lilybaeum tertio die quam inde profectus erat cum centum XXX onerariis navibus praeda onustis redit**, Liv., XXV, 31, 14. **Opus tanta celeritate perfectum est, ut decimo septimo die, quam munimenta excitata erant, tecta urbis absolverentur**, Curt., VII, 28. **Sexto quam profectus erat mense, Romam rediit**, Suet., Claud., 17.

REM. 2. Observe *intra* with a designation of time followed by *quam* and the Pluperfect, as *intra annum quam* = English *within a year after* = *less than a year after*, etc.

Ex.—**Nam femina splendide nata, nupta praetorio viro, exheredata ab octogenario patre intra undecim dies quam illi novercam amore captus induxerat, quadruplici iudicio bona paterna repetebat**, Plin. Min., VI, 33, 2. **Quem, intra quintum quam affuerat diem, profigavit acie**, Suet., Caes., 35. **Non ad lugurtham te mittam, quem populus Romanus intra annum quam timuerat spectavit**, Sen., Tranq. An., XI, 12.

(d) While the Pluperfect is the decided usage in the temporal clause when a period of time (definite or indefinite) is expressed, yet the Aorist instead of the Pluperfect is occasionally found, and in the best prose.

Ex.—**Se mihi Pindenissae dederunt septimo et quadragesimo die, postquam oppugnare eos coepimus**, Cic., Att., V, 20, 1. **Centum et octo annis postquam Lycurgus leges scribere instituit, prima posita est Olympias**, Cic., Rep., II, 10, 18. **His rebus pace confirmata post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum naves ex superiore portu solverunt**, Caes., B. G., IV, 28. **P. Cornelius consul triduo fere, postquam Hannibal a ripa Rhodani movit, quadrato agmine ad castra hostium venerat**, Liv., XXI, 32, 1. **Tertio mense, quam (magistratum) inierunt, honore abiere**, Liv., IV, 7, 3.

(e) To be carefully noted is the Ablative of the Relative referring to an expressed period of time. The Relative here is the equivalent of *postquam*. The Tense is the Pluperfect, the Aorist less usual. Cf. the preceding statement (d).

Ex.—**Accidit repentinum incommodum biduo quo haec gesta sunt**, Caes., B. Civ., I, 48. **Tum barbari commoti, quod oppidum, paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum erat, expugnatum cognoverant, legatos quoquoaversum dimittere coepe-**

**runt**, Caes., B. G., III, 23. **Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto exercitus traducitur**, Caes., B. G., IV, 18. **Diebus quindecim, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est**, Caes., B. G., V, 26. (There is no appreciable difference in sense between the Relative and **postquam**.)

#### 430. Present Tenses in the relation of Priority.

1. In the relation of Priority the Present Tense occurs with *postquam*, *ubi*, *cum primum*, *simulatque* (*simul*), rarely with *ut*. Here the Present Tense presents an action which commences before the leading action but continues into the time of the leading action, and in some cases embraces it. In the leading clause occurs the Present Tense. The actions in the two clauses are, as a rule, repeated, or present a general statement. They rarely express single actions.

##### (a) Single actions.

Ex.—**Narro tibi: plane relegatus mihi videor, posteaquam in Formiano sum**, Cic., Att., II, 11, 1. **Illi postquam maiorem legionum partem in officio vident, de sententia legati statuunt tempus, quo, etc.**, Tac., Ann., I, 48. **Gaudio affectus sum meo nomine, quod aliquanto magis me delectat mandatum mihi officium, postquam par Cornuto datum video**, Plin. Min., V, 15, 2. **Hi, postquam pauciores sunt, metuimus, ne sint superiores**, Cic., Her., IV, 18, 25. **Poenus postquam obstinatos videt, obsidere atque oppugnare parat**, Liv., XXIII, 17, 4. Cf. **Octavus annus est, ut imperium obtines**, Tac., Ann., XIV, 53 (here *ut* = *when*, *since* = *ex quo*).

(b) A sentence with the particles of Priority and the Present Tense in each clause presents, as a rule, a general statement, and hence the actions are iterative.

Ex.—**Numquid iam ulla repudio erubescit, postquam nobiles feminae exeunt matrimonii causa, nubunt repudii?** Sen., Ben., III, 16, 2. **Fac quod medici solent, qui ubi usitata remedia non procedunt, tentant contraria**, Sen., De Clem., I, 9, 6. **Gubernator, ubi naufragium timet, iactura quidquid servari potest redimit**, Curt., V, 26. **Ubi manu agitur, modestia ac probitas nomina superioris sunt**, Tac., Ger., 36. **Facile est affectus suos, cum primum oriuntur, deprehendere**, Sen., Ira, III, 10, 2. **Cum primum illi coepit suspecta esse fortuna, diligenter circumspicit, etc.**, Sen., Ep., VIII, 1, 5. **Sed simulatque occurrunt molesta et tranquillitatem turbantia, emittit se**, Sen., Ep., VIII, 1, 5. **Mihi plaudo ipse domi, simul ac nummos contemplor in arca**, Hor., Sat., I, 1, 67.

2. The particles of Priority occur with the Perfect in the temporal clause and the Present in the leading clause. Here the dependent action is completed and antecedent to the action in the leading clause. Such a sentence presents, as a rule, a general statement, and the actions are iterative; they, however, may be single.

##### (a) Single actions.

Ex.—*Minime mirum tibi debet videri nihil me scripsisse de re publica, posteaquam itum est ad arma, Cic., Fam., X, 31, 1. Iam fert in oculis, posteaquam ipsum Trebellium vidit sine tabulis novis salvum esse non posse, Cic., Phil., VI, 4, 11. Itaque postquam adamavi hanc quasi senilem declamationem, studiose equidem utor nostris poetis, Cic., Tusc., II, 11, 26. Revertor, postquam quae opus fuere ad nuptias gnatae paraui, ut lubeam accersi, Ter., And., 740. Sed postquam egressast, illis quae sunt intus clamat de uia, Ter., And., 491.*

(b) Iterative actions involved in a general statement.

Ex.—*Simulatque natum animal est, gaudet voluptate et eam appetit, ut bonum, Cic., Fin., II, 10, 31. Sunt illi dicto audientes, quam diu adsunt illi, qui imperant: simulac discesserunt, non solum illud perscribunt quod tum prohibiti sunt, etc., Cic., Verr., I, 35, 88. Summus dolor plures dies manere non potest? Vide ne etiam menses! Nisi forte eum dicis, qui, simulatque arripuit, interficit, Cic., Fin., II, 28, 93. Ubi maior atque illustrior incidit res, clamore per agros regionesque significant, Caes., B. G., VII, 3. Ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit se ducem fore, qui sequi velint, profiteantur: consurgunt illi, qui, etc., Caes., B. G., VI, 23. Multitudo, ubi vana religione capta est, melius vatibus, quam ducibus suis parat, Curt., IV, 39. Ubi per socordiam vires, tempus, ingenium diffuxere, naturae infirmitas accusatur, Sall., Jug., 1. Ubi pro labore desidia, pro continentia et aequitate libido atque superbia invasere, fortuna simul cum moribus immutatur, Sall., Cat., 2.*

3. In some cases the temporal force of the particles of Priority, particularly *postquam* with Present or Perfect, is characterized by a causal sense—that is, the time primarily expressed by the particle may be resolved as the cause or ground of an action. Cf. *Cum* (temporal) = *quod*. Again, *ubi* may in some cases be construed in a conditional sense, particularly in iterative relations. Hence *ubi* = *whenever* = *if at any time*.

Ex.—*Plane relegatus mihi videor, posteaquam in Formiano sum, Cic., Att., II, 11, 1 (posteaquam sum = after I am = as (since) I am). Fac quod medici solent, qui ubi (= whenever = if ever) usitata remedia non procedunt tentant contraria, Sen., De Clem., I, 9, 6. Tremo horreoque postquam aspexi hanc, Ter., Eun., 84 (here postquam aspexi = after I have beheld = since (as) I have beheld, etc.).*

#### 431. Future Tenses in the relation of Priority.

1. In the relation of Priority the Future First rarely occurs in the temporal clause with the Future First or the representative of the Future (Imperative, etc.) in the leading clause. The actions are single (but may be repeated).

Ex.—*Nam ubi me adspiciet, ad carnificem rapiet continuo senex, Pl., Bacch., 685.*

2. The Future *Exactum* in the temporal clause with the Future First or representative of the Future in the leading clause.

## (a) Single actions.

Ex.—**Simul aliquid audiero, scribam ad te**, Cic., Att., VIII, 11, 7. **Simul et constituero, scribam**, Cic., Att., XVI, 11, 6. **Tam bona cervix simul ac iussero demetur**, Suet., Cal., 33. **Hoc verius dices, simul ac te ad has latebras perduxero**, Sen., Ben., V, 12, 1. **Omnes hi, simul terga nostra viderint, sequentur**, Curt., VI, 8. **Cum primum exploratum habuero, faciam te certiores**, Cic., Fam., XI, 10, 5. **Tunc tamen (fortuna) erit agenda, cum primum aequiores te illi iudicem dies fecerit**, Sen., Ad Polyb., De Cons., XVIII, 3. **Ostendam hunc animum cum primum tempus advenerit**, Sen., Ben., VI, 41, 2. **Tu, ut primum fuerit occasio, ineptos labores relinque**, Plin. Min., I, 9, 7. **Hanc ego vitam voto et cogitatione praesumo, ingressurus avidissime, ut primum ratio aetatis receptui canere permiserit**, Plin. Min., III, 1, 11. **Ad hunc gustum totum librum repromitto, quem tibi, ut primum publicaverit, exhibebo**, Plin. Min., IV, 27, 5. **Ubi hoc exemplo consul gladium eduxerit, quis illi finem statuet aut quis moderabitur?** Sall., Cat., 51.

(b) General statement involving iterative actions. In the nature of the case not frequent.

Ex.—**Tum genu ut quemque icero, ad terram dabo**, Pl., Capt., 797. **Ceteri, ut (sors) culusque ceciderit primi, suo quisque tempore aderunt**, Liv., II, 12, 16 (the particle *ut* may be interpreted as a particle of comparison (= *as*), but such an interpretation is not imperative in such sentences).

## 432. The Subjunctive Mood in clauses of Priority.

1. The particles of Priority take the Subjunctive in *Oratio Obliqua*.

(a) The Aorist Indicative of the *Oratio Recta* becomes in the *Oratio Obliqua* the Pluperfect Subjunctive—quite often the Aorist Subjunctive. The Pluperfect Subjunctive is the result of the comparison of actions from the standpoint of the speaker or writer—that is, from the time of the speaker the action in the temporal clause is completed before that in the leading clause. If the comparison of the actions and their times are not insisted on by the speaker or writer, but if the action in the temporal clause is subjectively stated as one completed in the Past from his standpoint, the Aorist must be used.

Ex.—**Locutus est Divitiacus... posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassent, traductos esse plures**, Caes., B. G., I, 31. (*Oratio Recta* = **Posteaquam adamaverunt, traducti sunt**. From the standpoint of the writer *adamaverunt* is, in *Oratio Obliqua*, completed before *traducti sunt* and expressed by the Pluperfect Subjunctive). **Fama est, postquam audierit multitudinem Troianos esse, eum fidem futurae amicitiae sanxisse**, Liv., I, 1, 8. Cf. Tac., Ann., I, 9 (*postquam senuerit*).

(b) The Present (and Future First) of *Oratio Recta* become the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive according to the time of the sentence.



Ex.—*Tu ad me scripsisti, posteaquam non auderet reprehendere... laudare coepisse*, Cic., Att., I, 13, 4. *Cum primum posset, in Venetos proficisci iubet*, Caes., B. G., III, 11. (*Dicit*), *ubi bellum ingruat, innocentes ac noxios iuxta cadere*, Tac., Ann., I, 48.

(c) The Future *Eractum* of the *Oratio Recta* becomes the Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, representing the Future *Eractum* of the Subjunctive according to the time of the sentence.

Ex.—*Respondit, ubi primum potuisset per negotia publica, facturum (esse) sese, quae peteret*, Sall., Jug., 64. (From the Present: *Respondet, ubi primum potuerit per negotia publica, facturum (esse) sese quae petat*). *M. Cato denuntiavit delaturum se nomen eius, simul ac primum exercitum dimisisset*, Suet., Caes., 30. *In Achaia somniavit, initium sibi felicitatis futurum, simul ac dens Neroni exemptus esset*, Suet., Vesp., 5. (*Dixit*), *ubi primum a luctu requiesset animus, acturum apud patres de postulatis eorum*, Tac., Ann., I, 25. *Ubi primum congredi licuisset, nullam proelio moram facturum*, Tac., H., IV, 71.

REM. As to the use of the Indicative in *Oratio Obliqua* in a temporal clause *vid.* 323, d.

Ex.—*Nisi forte existimatis, posteaquam iudicia severa Romae fieri desiderunt, Graecos haec venditare coepisse*, Cic., Verr., IV, 59, 133. *Dicitur eo tempore matrem Pausaniae vixisse eamque iam magno natu, posteaquam de scelere filii comperit, in primis ad filium claudendum lapidem ad introitum aedis attulisse*, Nep., Paus., 5.

2. The particles of Priority take the Subjunctive with the Indefinite Second Person.

Ex.—*Nam et prius quam incipias, consulto, et ubi consulueris, mature facto opus est*, Sall., Cat., 1. *Bonus tantum modo segnior fit, ubi negligas, at malus improbius*, Sall., Jug., 31. Cf. Sall., Cat., 3 (*ubi memores*). *Nonne emori per virtutem praestat quam vitam miseram atque inhonestam, ubi alienae superbiae ludibrio fueris, per dedecus amittere?* Sall., Cat., 20. *Ubi intenderis ingenium, valet*, Sall., Cat., 51.

3. The particles of Priority *ubi, ut*, occur with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, associated generally with the Imperfect Indicative in the leading member to represent actions repeated in past time. The Imperfect Tenses denote actions with no reference to an interval between them. The dependent actions, while necessarily commencing before, extend up to and may embrace the leading actions. In the association of the Pluperfect Subjunctive and the Imperfect Indicative the dependent action is distinctly presented as completed before the leading action. The Subjunctive Mood may be explained as partial *Oratio Obliqua*, perhaps better by indefinite repetition. The Indicative is the usage in Cicero and Caesar.

Ex.—*Id ubi (fetialis) dixisset, hastam in fines eorum emittebat*, Liv., I, 32, 13. *Ubi rixae committendae causa clamor ortus esset, principes senatus primi se peti feriri iuebant*, Liv., V, 25, 2. *Triarii consurgentes, ubi in intervalla ordinum suorum principes et hastatos receperant, extemplo compressis ordinibus velut claudebant vias*, Liv., VIII, 8, 12. *Ubi his ordinibus exercitus instructus esset, hastati omnium primi pugnam inibant*, Liv., VIII, 8, 9. *Ubi avaritiam aut crudelitatem consensu obiectavissent, solvebatur militia*, Tac., Ann., I, 44. *Ubi quid strenue agendum esset, neque milites alio duce confidere aut audere*, Liv., XXI, 4, 4. *Ubi dimicarent, is habitus animorum inter eiusdem condicionis homines erat*, Liv., XXI, 42, 4. *Ubi res posceret, priores erant*, Liv., III, 19, 3. Cf. *Ut quisque veniret*, Liv., II, 38, 1. *Ut quemque timentem altitudinem destitueret vadum*, Liv., XXI, 28, 5. *Ut cuiusque populi finis transiret*, Liv., XXVII, 17, 9.

4. In the few cases in which *postquam* occurs with the Pluperfect and Imperfect Subjunctive where the actions are not repeated the correctness of the texts is questioned. Instead of *posteaquam* (*postquam*) *postea cum* are suggested. If the texts be correct, then, *postquam* may be interpreted as *cum Historicum*, in some cases as *cum Causal*.

Ex.—*Posteaquam maximas aedificasset ornassetque classes exercitusque permagnos et se Bosphorani bellum inferre simularet, litteras misit ad eos duces*, Cic., Imp. Pomp., IV, 9 (here *postea, cum*, etc., suggested as the correct reading). *Quae postquam sunt audita et undique primores patrum et prioris anni consules increparent*, Liv., IV, 13, 10 (here *postquam sunt audita, cum undique... increparent*, etc., suggested).

#### Relation of Concurrence in Time, or of the Equal Extension of Two Actions.

433. By the relation of Concurrence in Time we mean that of two progressive actions one finds its measure in Time in the other—that is, one is coextensive with the other. The Concurrence is, of course, complete when the two actions begin and continue together without reference to their end. It is incomplete or partial when one action occurs during the progress of the other. Sometimes the progressiveness of the two actions is not their characteristic sense, but one action involves the other. In this case the actions may be defined as coincident (*vid.* 157, etc.).

434. The particles *dum*, *quamdiu*, *quoad*, *donec* (abbreviated form of the Archaic *donecum*), *cum* (rare), in the sense of *while, so long as*, express the relation of Concurrence. In the case of *quoad* = *to the time that (when)* the relation of extent prevails over that of *terminus*.

1. The particles named occur, in the expression of Concurrence, with the Indicative and Tenses of incomplete, progressive action in the different spheres of Time. The same Tense is employed in the leading and subordinate member.

Ex.—*Fruor, dum licet*, Cic., Fam., IX, 17, 2. *Dum anima est, spes esse dicitur*, Cic., Att., IX, 10, 3. *Nec mihi hunc errorem, quo delector, dum vivo, extorqueri volo*, Cic., Senect., XXIII, 85. *Manent istae litterae Miletii, et dum erit illa civitas manebunt*, Cic., Verr., I, 35, 89. *Immortales ago tibi gratias agamque dum vivam*, Cic., Fam., X, 11, 1. *Dum hominum genus erit, qui accuset non deerit: dum civitas erit, iudicia fient*, Cic., Rosc. Am., XXXII, 91. *Neque enim, dum eram vobiscum, animum meum videbatis*, Cic., Senect., XXII, 79. *Dum longius ab munitione aberant Galli, plus multitudine telorum proficiebant*, Caes., B. G., VII, 82. *Stimulabat occasio in se unum vertendae gloriae, dum aeger collega erat*, Liv., XXI, 53, 6. *Sunt illi quidem dicto audientes, quam diu adsunt illi, qui imperant*, Cic., Verr., I, 35, 88. *Manebit amicitia tam diu, quam diu sequetur utilitas*, Cic., Fin., II, 25, 78 (*tam diu* may be omitted). *Quam diu imperium populi Romani beneficiis tenebatur, non iniuriis, bella aut pro sociis aut de imperio gerebantur, exitus erant bellorum aut mites aut necessarii*, Cic., Off., II, 8, 26. *Maneo in voluntate et, quoad voles tu, per-manebo*, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 10. *Disces quam diu voles, tam diu autem velle debebis, quoad te quantum proficias non paenitebit*, Cic., Off., I, 1, 2. *Haerebit tumor, quamdiu superbo conversaberis*, Sen., Ep., XVIII, 1, 20. *Quoad licebat latiore uti spatio... contendebant*, Caes., B. Civ., I, 59. *Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos*, Ov., Tr., I, 9, 5. *Vestrum quoque nomen in incerto erit, donec dubitabitur imperatorem populi Romani in castris an hostem habeatis*, Tac., H., I, 37. *Ipsa, donec mediae Pisoni spes (erant), sociam se cuiuscumque fortunae promittebat*, Tac., Ann., III, 15.

REM. 1. *Quoad* as a particle of restriction in a general quantitative sense = *as far as*, is not to be confounded with *quoad* as a particle of Time.

Ex.—*Illud profecto (faciam), quoad (= as far as) potero*, Cic., Fam., XII, 22, 2.

REM. 2. It should be carefully noted that, when *dum* with the Present is associated with the Present in the leading clause, the two actions are sometimes not concurrent or coextensive, but that the Present in the leading clause is Aoristic and occurs during the progress of the action in the temporal clause.

Ex.—*Dum sordes eluere vult, venas sibi omnes et viscera aperit*, Cic., Fam., VIII, 14, 4. *Eligas censeo aliquod oppidum vacuum a bello, dum haec decernuntur*, Cic., Fam., VII, 16, 5.

2. Different Tenses occur in the two members of the sentence. The association of the Imperfect in the explanatory (temporal) member

with the Aorist or Historical Present in the leading member is frequent. By this association of Tenses is furnished the relation of partial concurrence.

**Ex.**—*Dionysio, dum existimabam vagos nos fore, nolui molestus esse, Cic., Att., VII, 26, 3. Fuit haec gens fortis, dum Lycurgi leges vigeant, Cic., Tusc., I, 42, 101. Dum haec in Apulia gerebantur, Samnites Interamnam, coloniam Romanam, occupare conati urbem non tenuerunt, Liv., X, 36, 16. Neque, dum Nero rerum potiebatur, congesta aut clausa (est) humus, Tac., Ann., XIV, 9. Dum vigeat aetas, militari laude apud Germanias floruit, Tac., H., I, 49. Quae divina res dum conficiebatur, quaesivit a me, vellemne secum in castra proficisci, Nep., Hann., 2. Libros exuri iussit, donec cum periculo parabantur, Tac., Ann., XIV, 50. Batavi, donec trans Rhenum agebant.... occupavere, Tac., H., IV, 12. Quoad eius modi mihi litterae a vobis afferbantur (rather repeated action)....spe et cupiditate Thessalonicae retentus sum, Cic., Att., III, 19, 1.*

3. Again, the Imperfect occurs in the clause of Time with the Pluperfect (expressing resulting state or condition) in the leading clause.

**Ex.**—*Dum impendere Parthi videbantur, statueram fratrem relinquere, etc., Cic., Att., VI, 6, 3. Hi dum remos aptari prohibebant, consederant, Curt., IX, 35.*

4. Again, the Pluperfect (expressing resulting state or condition) occurs in the clause of Time with the Imperfect or Aorist in the leading clause. (The resulting state or condition of the Pluperfect is the equivalent of the Imperfect.)

**Ex.**—*Dum in unam partem oculos animosque hostium certamen averterat, pluribus locis scalis capitur murus, armatique in urbem transcenderunt, Liv., XXXII, 24, 5 (avertat = aversos tenebat). Dum is in aliis rebus erat occupatus, qui summam rerum administrabat, erant interea qui suis vulneribus mederentur, Cic., Rosc. Am., XXXII, 91. Bactriani, quamdiu propter caeli intemperiem Indiam potius Macedones petitueros crediderant, obedienter imperata fecerunt, Curt., VII, 17.*

5. Other associations of Tenses are to be noted, namely, the Present in the clause of Time, with the Future First in the leading clause; the Future First in the clause of Time, with the Present in the leading clause; the Present in the clause of Time, with the Perfect in the leading clause; and, again, the Present and Future First in the clause of Time, with the Imperative in the leading clause.

**Ex.**—*Tu, si quid de Hispaniis (audieris) et si quid aliud, dum adsumus, scribes, Cic., Att., X, 8, 10. Quamdiu vobiscum in acie stabo, nec mei nec hostium exercitus numero, Curt., IX, 10. Habes quae, dum tu abes, locuti sunt, Cic., Att., XII, 2, 1. Ego ipse, dum loquor mutari ista, mutatus sum, Sen., Ep., VI, 6, 22. Dum est unde ius civile discatur, adolescentes in disciplinam ei tra-*

dite, Cic., Verr., I, 45, 115. *De quo dum certa et pauca et magna dicam breviter attendite*, Cic., Verr., III, 70, 163.

6. As seen above (2) the Imperfect in the temporal clause is often associated with the Aorist in the leading clause. This relation of Tense is sometimes reversed, with the Aorist in the temporal clause and the Imperfect in the leading clause. This association of Tenses is rare and peculiar. It presents an aoristic relation and states a fact (of any extent) in the temporal clause, measured by a progressive action or state in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Dum Carthaginienses incolumes fuere, iure omnia saeva patiebamur*, Sall., Jug., 14. *Aemilia Lepida impunita agebat, dum superfuit pater Lepidus*, Tac., Ann., VI, 40. *Dum initiatus est facinus, crudeliter torqueri videbatur*, Curt., VI, 44. *Donec stetit ante signa Mago, gradum sensim referentes ordines et tenorem pugnæ servabant*, Liv., XXX, 18, 12.

7. In Narrative, *dum*, as a rule, takes the Present Tense when the sense clearly demands the Imperfect. In this connection the Present with *dum* is not the Historical Present, as this Tense represents the Aorist. This *dum* may be designated as the Narrative or Historical *dum*. The use of the Present Tense with it is anomalous. It retains the progressive action characteristic of the Tense, but seems to have lost the element of Time which is supplied by the (past) context.

Ex.—*Dum mihi pacis mandata das ad Caesarem et mirificum civem agis, amici officium neglexisti*, Cic., Fam., VIII, 17, 1. *Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est equites Ariovisti propius tumultum accedere*, Caes., B. G., I, 46. *Haec dum apud hostes geruntur, Pothinus est interfectus*, Caes., B. Civ., III, 112. *Dum in his locis Caesar moratur, ad eum legati venerunt*, Caes., B. G., IV, 22. *Dum ea Romani parant, iam Saguntum summa vi oppugnabatur*, Liv., XXI, 7, 1. *Haec dum aguntur, interea Cleomenes iam ad Helori litus pervenerat* Cic., Verr., V, 35, 91 (*pervenerat* expressing resulting state or condition).

8. The particle *dum* sometimes occurs in a sense distinctly causal—that is, the predicate defined by it approximates the sense expressed by the causal participle. In such a case the temporal member, while it states the time of the leading member, furnishes the causal explanation of it.

Ex.—*Dum verbis utitur suis, delabitur in eas difficultates, ut, etc.*, Cic., Fat., XVII, 39 (here *dum utitur* = *while using, by using, etc.*). *Verum ego liberius altiusque processi, dum me civitatis morum piget*, Sall., Jug., 4 (here *dum* = *while as, for, etc.*). *Itaque dum equum mutat, tardius insecutus est*, Curt., VIII, 50. *Nam dum pro se quisque certat evadere, oneravere scalas*, Curt., IX, 18. *Togonius, dum ignobilitatem suam magnis nominibus inserit, per deri-*

**diculum auditur**, Tac., Ann., VI, 2. **Quod ducibus nostris parum provisum erat, dum amoenitati prius quam usui consulitur**, Tac., Ann., XIV, 31.

**435.** Thus far in the sentence of concurrent or coextensive actions the Tenses in the temporal clause are those generally of incomplete or progressive action. In this clause, however, the Tenses of completed action also occur.

1. The Perfect in the temporal clause with the Perfect in the leading clause; also the Perfect in the temporal clause with the Present in the leading clause. This association of Tenses is not frequent. In such cases the Perfect regularly expresses resulting state or condition.

Ex.—**Dum te fidelem facere ero uoluisti, assumptu's paene**, Plaut., M. G., 409. **Dum sumus inclusi in his compagibus corporis, munere quodam necessitatis et gravi opere perfungimur**, Cic., Sen., XXI, 77.

2. The Aorist in the temporal clause, with the Aorist in the leading clause.

Ex.—**Hortensius, dum veritus est ne Fufius ei legi intercederet, non vidit illud**, etc., Cic., Att., I, 16, 2. **Neque, dum auxilia a Romanis sperastis, pacis umquam apud vos mentionem feci**, Liv., XXI, 13, 3. **Nec quisquam tibi fidelior militum fuit, dum amari meruisti**, Tac., Ann., XV, 67. **Quoad Pompeius in Italia fuit, sperare non destiti**, Cic., Att., IX, 10, 3. **De Chelidone reticuit, quoad potuit**, Cic., Verr., I, 53, 139. **Cato, quoad vixit, virtutum laude crevit**, Nep., Cat., 2. **Quamdiu senatus auctoritas mihi defendenda fuit, acriter et vehementer proeliatum sum**, Cic., Att., I, 16, 1. **Tenuit se uno loco, quamdiu hiems fuit**, Nep., Eum., 5. **Quamdiu in Italia fuit, nemo ei in acie restitit**, Nep., Hann., 5.

3. The Future *Exactum* in the temporal clause, with the Future First in the leading clause. Observed in Seneca chiefly with *quamdiu*. The Future *Exactum* expresses resulting state.

Ex.—**Quamdiu tibi satis nihil fuerit, ipse aliis non eris**, Sen., Ep., II, 7, 8. **Quamdiu (pudor) in animo eius duraverit, aliquis erit bonae spei locus**, Sen., Ep., III, 4, 2. **Quamdiu virtus salva fuerit, non senties, quid abscesserit**, Sen., Ep., IX, 3, 25. **Quamdiu nescieris, quid fugiendum, quid petendum, quid iustum sit, non erit hoc peregrinari, sed errare**, Sen., Ep., XVIII, 1, 16. **Haerebit tibi avaritia, quamdiu avaro convixeris**, Sen., Ep., XVIII, 1, 20.

**436.** In *Oratio Obliqua* the Subjunctive is, of course, regularly used in the temporal clause of a sentence of concurrence.

Ex.—**Eius adventus, quod ita scripsisti direptum iri te a tuis, dum is abesset, molestus mihi fuit**, Cic., Quint. Frat., I, 2, 1. **Reminiscere illam, quamdiu ei opus fuerit, vixisse**, Cic., Fam., IV, 5, 5. **Edixit ne quis militis, donec in castris esset, bona possideret aut venderet**, Liv., II, 24, 6.

(a) The Indicative may be retained in the temporal clause of the *Oratio Obliqua* (*vid.* 323, d) with *dum*.

Ex.—Cf. *Dio, hospes, Spartae nos te hlc vidisse iacentes, dum sanctis patriae legibus obsequimur*, Cic., Tusc., I, 42, 101.

437. In narrative the Subjunctive occurs with *dum* where the Indicative is looked for. The Subjunctive may be explained as partial *Oratio Obliqua* or the particle *dum* may be accepted as giving the temporal particulars as *cum Historicum*.

Ex.—*Dum intentus in eum se rex totus averteret (averterat), alter elatum securim in caput deiecit*, Liv., I, 40, 7. Cf. *Dum...tererent*, Liv., II, 47, 5. *Dum foris otium esset*, Liv., IV, 25, 9. *Dum ea in Samnio...gererentur*, Liv., X, 18, 1. Cf. *Donec lictores missi essent (sunt?)*, Liv., XLV, 7, 4. Cf. *Donec timor...fecisset*, Liv., XXI, 28, 11.

(a) In some cases the Subjunctive, in the temporal clause, may be best explained as the Subjunctive in the statement of an action repeated.

Ex.—*Nihil sane trepidabant, donec continenti velut ponte agerentur*, Liv., XXI, 28, 10. (It is possible to conceive the Subjunctive as expressing the ground of *nihil sane trepidabant*, and hence as partial *Oratio Obliqua*, but the action is at the same time repeated.) Cf. *Augustus, saepe indigens somni, et dum per vicos deportaretur et deposita lectica inter aliquas moras condormiebat*, Suet., Aug., 78. *Constat a scorplone percussos, quamdiu teneant eam herbam, non sentire cruciatum*, Plin. Mai., XXI, 184 (= *quamdiu teneant...non sentiunt* in the independent form).

#### The Extension of an Action in Time to a Given Point Defined by a Second Action = Until.

438. With the particles of concurrence, particularly *dum*, while the conception of an action and its concurrence with a second action may, often, not be ignored, the leading idea is that of a limit up to which a second action extends. Thus, *Hic maneo, dum redit* = *I remain (am remaining) here while he is returning or I remain (am remaining) here until he returns*.

439. The association of Tenses is to be noted.

1. *Dum* with the Present Indicative in the temporal clause, with the Present Indicative in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Ego in Arcano opperior, dum ista cognosco*, Cic., Att., X, 3. *Tempore, milites, opus est, dum (barbari) mitioribus ingeniis imbuuntur*, Curt., VI, 7.

2. *Dum* with the Present Indicative in the temporal clause, with the Imperative in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Dum, quid de Hispaniis agamus, scitur, exspecta*, Cic., Att., X, 9, A, 3. *Retinete me in vinculis, dum consulitur Hammon arcanum et occultum scelus*, Curt., VI, 39. *Ibidem ilico manete, dum ego huc redeo*, Pl., Rud., 879. *Paulisper remitte restem, dum concedo et consulo*, Pl., Rud., 1036. *Tace, dum tabellas pellego*, Pl., Pseud., 40. *Delibera hoc, dum ego redeo, leno*, Ter., Ad., 196. *Tityre, dum redeo, pasce capellas*, Verg., Ecl., IX, 23.

3. *Dum* with the Present Indicative in the temporal clause, with the Future First in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Concedam hinc intro atque expectabo, dum uenit*, Ter., Eun., 207. *Obsides, dum hoc peragis, erunt fratres tui*, Curt., VII, 7.

4. *Dum* and *donec* with the Future First Indicative in the temporal clause, with the Future First in the leading clause. Here the action in the temporal clause presents the limit, Aoristically presented, to which the action in the leading clause extends.

Ex.—*Ego illos et dementiae complebo atque omnem Amphitruonis familiam, adeo usque satietatem dum capiet pater illius*, Pl., Amph., 468. *Hic iam tercentum totos regnabitur annos...donec regina sacerdos Marte gravis geminam partu dabit illa prolem*, Verg., Aen., I, 273.

5. *Dum, donec, quoad*, and rarely *donecum* (in early Latin) with the Future *Exactum* in the temporal clause, with the Future First or the representative of a Future relation in the leading clause. Here the action in the leading clause continues to the completion and realization of that in the temporal clause.

Ex.—*Mihi usque curae erit quid agas, dum quid egeris sciero*, Cic., Fam., XII, 19, 3. Cf. *Dum in illum portum, quem tibi studiâ promittunt, perveneris, adminiculis quibus innitaris, opus est*, Sen., Helv. Matr., XVIII, 1 (here *opus est* implies a future). *Si ita non reperio, ibo odorans quasi canis uenaticus, usque donec persecutus uolpem ero uestigiis*, Pl., M. G., 269. *Haud desinam, donec perfecero hoc*, Ter., Phorm., 419. *Neque defetiscar usque adeo experier donec tibi quod pollicitus sum effecero*, Ter., Phorm., 590. *Ne quoquam exurgatis, donec a me erit signum datum*, Pl., Bacch., 758. *Aequomst aetatem ibi te usque habitare, donec totum carcerem contriueris*, Pl., Rud., 716. *Nunc uero domi certum obsidere est usque, donec redierit*, Ter., Ad., 718. *Non faciam finem rogandi, quoad nobis nuntiatum erit te id fecisse, quod exspectamus*, Cic., Att., XVI, 16, E, 16. *Ceteri, ut (sors) cuiusque ceciderit primi, quoad te opportunum fortuna dederit, suo quisque tempore aderunt*, Liv., II, 12, 16. Cf. *Ego me amitti, donecum ille huc redierit, non postulo*, Pl., Capt., 339.

6. Other associations of Tenses with *dum*, etc. (= *until*) occur which may be readily and clearly expressed in translation, as *dum*



with the Present in the temporal clause, with the Perfect (expressing resulting state) in the leading clause; also, the Perfect in the temporal clause with the Present in the leading clause (generally in general statements); also, the Perfect (in anticipation of the Future, and hence the equivalent of the Future *Exactum*), with the Imperative in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Ille totus excessit paulumque supra nos commoratus (est), dum expurgatur*, etc., Sen., Ad Marc., XXV, 1. *Sanguis, cum percussa est vena, tamdiu manat, donec omnis effluxit*, Sen., N. Q., III, 15, 5. Cf. *Divellit repugnancia, donec nactus est viam exeundi*, Sen., N. Q., VI, 9, 1. *Fastigia tam diu deferuntur atque incerta sunt, donec in solido resederunt*, Sen., N. Q., VI, 9, 3. *Hanc spem, dum ad verum pervenistis, alite in animis*, Sen., Const. Sap., XIX, 4.

440. The particles *dum* (not frequent), *donec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of *until*, occur with the Past Tenses.

1. The Aorist in the temporal clause with the Aorist in the leading clause. Here two facts are presented and aoristically stated.

Ex.—*Mansit in condicione atque pacto usque ad eum finem, dum iudices relecti sunt*, Cic., Verr., Pr. Act., VI, 16. *Usque eo timui ne quis de mea fide dubitaret, donec ad reiiciendos iudices venimus*, Cic., Verr., I, 6, 17. *Neque volui progredi longius... dum Mauricus venit*, Plin. Min., I, 5, 15. *Potitii antistites per multas aetates fuerunt, donec genus omne Potitiorum interiiit*, Liv., I, 7, 14. *Fossa Cluilia appellata est, donec cum re nomen quoque vetustate abolevit*, Liv., I, 23, 4. *Arrogantiam oris et contumacem animum incusavit, donec pauci postulavere*, etc., Tac., Ann., V, 3. *Ignem late fudere, donec omnia solo aequata sunt*, Curt., VIII, 34. *Totus populus ad eiciendum actorem consurrexit uno impetu, donec Euripides in medium ipse prosillvit*, Sen., Ep., XIX, 6, 15. *Aliquamdiu iacuit, donec lecticae impositum tres servuli retulerunt*, Suet., Caes., 82. *Nostri repulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad praecipites hostes egerunt*, Caes., B. G., V, 17. *Epaminondas (ferrum in corpore) usque eo retinuit, quoad renuntiatum est vicisse Boeotios*, Nep., Epam., 9.

2. The association of the Imperfect, Pluperfect, and, less often, the Historical Present, with *donec* and the Aorist, Historical Present, and Historical Infinitive in the temporal clause, is quite common. The sentence has all the characteristics of that with *cum Inversum*, with prominence given to the statement in the *donec* clause. Hence *donec* in this connection may be termed *donec Inversum*.

Ex.—*Eversio rei familiaris dignitatem ac famam praeceps dabat, donec tulit opem Caesar*, Tac., Ann., VI, 17. *Pulsum in extremam fori partem vi urgebant, donec militum globo infensos perrupit*, Tac., Ann., XII, 43. *Iam magna ex parte ad pedes pugna venerat, donec Numidae... ab tergo se ostenderunt*, Liv., XXI, 46, 6. *Reliquas (legiones) promiscuis militum com meatibus infirmaverat, donec... auditum est*, Tac., Ann., XV, 10. *Affluere ingens mul-*

titudo, atque, ut ad gratandum, sese expedire, donec aspectu armati agminis disiecti sunt, Tac., Ann., XIV, 8. Neque (ignes) exstingui poterant. . . donec agrestes quidam eminus saxa iacere, etc., Tac., Ann., XIII, 57. Ceteri domos abeunt, vel in castra Artabani, donec Tiridates. . . pudore proditiōnis omnes exsolvit, Tac., Ann., VI, 44.

The Subjunctive Mood with *Dum*, etc. = *Until*.

441. The Subjunctive Mood occurs with *dum*, etc., defining a limit to which, and translated *until*.

1. In *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—Caesar ex eo tempore, dum ad flumen Varum veniatur, se frumentum daturum pollicetur, Caes., B. Civ., I, 87. Profectus sum in Pompeianum, ut ibi essem, dum quae ad navigandum opus essent pararentur, Cic., Att., X, 16, 4. Barbarus occurrisse se dixit cum exercitu, nec exspectasse, dum per nuntios daretur fides, Curt., VIII, 42. Illic agitavere, placeretne obstrui Pannoniae Alpes, donec a tergo vires universae consurgerent, Tac., H., III, 1.

(a) The Future *Exactum* of *Oratio Recta* becomes, of course, the Subjunctive, Pluperfect form, of the *Oratio Obliqua* when the Time is Past; when the context is Present, the Perfect form of the Subjunctive.

Ex.—Respondent, quoad fides esset data, Caesarem facturum quae polliceatur, Caes., B. Civ., I, 10 (maintaining the Present context = quoad fides sit data, Caesarem facturum quae polliceatur). Mittit qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent, et si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset, Caes., B. G., IV, 11. Appius dictitabat, se, quoniam ex senatus consulto provinciam haberet, lege Cornelia imperium habiturum, quoad in urbem introisset, Cic., Fam., I, 9, 25. Ex quo omnes conieceraut eum regnum ei commisisse, quoad liberi eius in suam tutelam pervenissent, Nep., Eum., 2. Hamilcar mente agitabat Romanos armis persequi, donec aut virtute vicissent aut victi manus dedissent, Nep., Ham., 1.

2. The particles *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, in the sense of *until*, occur with the Subjunctive Present and Imperfect in the statement of an action as a limit or end desired, awaited, contemplated, had in view. Here the Subjunctive is, of course, Final. In most cases the idea of *Oratio Obliqua* cannot be excluded from the Subjunctive.

Ex.—Sic omne opus contextitur, dum iusta muri altitudo expleatur, Caes., B. G., VII, 23. Subsedi in ipsa via, dum haec tibi perscriberem, Cic., Att., V, 16, 1. Obsidio per paucos dies magis quam oppugnatō fuit, dum vulnus ducis curaretur, Liv., XXI, 8, 1. Usque mihi temperavi, dum perducerem eo rem, ut, etc., Cic., Fam., X, 7, 2. Tempus petere coepit, dum reciperet spiritum, Curt., VI, 42. Ego, inquit, pusillum temporis adicere illi volebam, dum hos pauculos, qui supersunt, civitate donaret, Sen., Lud., Mort. Claud., III, 3.

**Thraces nihil se moverunt, donec armati transirent, Liv., XXXVIII, 40, 9. Mors eius celata est, donec circa successorem omnia ordinarentur, Suet., Claud., 45. Rectorem solitus apponere aetate parvis aut mente lapsis, donec adolescerent aut resipiscerent, Suet., Aug., 48. In oppido aliquo mallem resedisse quoad arcesserer, Cic., Att., XI, 6, 2. Cf. Nota res... nec licendi finem factum, quoad tredecim gladiatores sestertio nonagies ignoranti addicerentur, Suet., Calig., 38. Quoad primarius uir dicat, conprime hunc sis, si tuus est, Pl., Rud., 1073.**

(a) The Final character of the Subjunctive is clearly seen when used with *dum* and *quoad* after *expectare* and *morari*.

**Ex.—Nollite expectare, dum omnes obeam oratione mea civitates, Cic., Verr., II, 51, 125. Quid dicam? expecta dum Atticum conveniam? Cic., Att., VII, 1, 4. Quid expectas? an dum ab inferis ipse Malleolus exsistat? Cic., Verr., I, 37, 94. Quid expectas? an dum in foro nobiscum di immortales, dum in viis versentur? Cic., Div., I, 36, 79. Stabant expectantes, dum ab hostibus prius impetus, prius clamor inciperet, Liv., X, 36, 2. Cum expectarem sedens, quoad vocarer, etc., Cic., Att., XIV, 1, 2. Huic ille suasit, ne se moveret et expectaret quoad Alexandri filius regnum adipisceretur, Nep., Eum., 6. Ego, dum mihi a te litterae veniant, in Italia morabor, Cic., Fam., XI, 23, 2.**

3. With *dum*, and particularly with *donec*, while the Indicative cannot be excluded, the Subjunctive occurs in general statements involving actions repeated. This fact is strikingly presented in the elder Pliny in describing the habits and characteristics of animals and plants and the uses and effects of medicines.

**Ex.—Cameli lac habent, donec iterum gravescant, Plin. Mai., XI, 236. Perdix procurrit prehensurum effugiens spemque frustrans, donec in diversum abducat a nidis, Plin. Mai., X, 103. Cauda crescit uni (bovi), donec ad vestigia ima perveniat, Plin. Mai., VIII, 183. (Folia) siccantur sub tecto quaternis diebus, mox in sole expanduntur et noctibus relictas, donec candore inarescant, Plin. Mai., XVI, 89. Haec genera torrentur, usque dum rubeant, postea operiuntur in vasis donec acescant, Plin. Mai., XVIII, 103. A kalendis Novembr. gallinis ova supponere nollito, donec bruma conficiatur, Plin. Mai., XVIII, 231. Rostra eorum nigrescunt, donec aliqui abluant imbres, Plin. Mai., VIII, 112.**

(a) In most cases, while the statement is general and the actions repeated, the idea of an end proposed, had in view, or contemplated, often involving the *Oratio Obliqua*, cannot be excluded. The elder Pliny abounds in this general and iterative relation, with the Subjunctive in the temporal clause and Indicative in the leading clause, while in the earlier Latin the Indicative in both clauses is the usage where simple repetition is expressed.

**Ex.—Quinis lana potat horis rursusque mergitur carminata, donec omnem ebibat saniem, Plin. Mai., IX, 134. Quidam... faciunt siccantes sole, donec**

paulo amplius dimidium pondus supersit, Plin. Mai., XIV, 81. Mergunt e iacu protinus in aqua cados, donec bruma transeat, Plin. Mai., IX, 83. Aegyptii, donec (bovem) invenerint, maerent derasis etiam capitibus, Plin. Mai., VIII, 184. Libram in tribus musti congiis defervefaciunt, donec duo supersint, Plin. Mai., XIV, 104. Si evicerint herbae, remedium unicum aratio (est) saepius vertendo, donec omnes aliae radices intereant, Plin. Mai., XVIII, 147. Et ipsa (stuppa) pectitur ferreis hamis, donec omnis membrana decorticetur, Plin. Mai., XIX, 17. Circa dentem qui doleat pungito, donec desinat dolor, Plin. Mai., XX, 224. Contra pituitam tenetur in ore, donec liquescat, Plin. Mai., XX, 236. Apes pastae ad naves cotidie remeant, donec pondere ipso pressis navibus pleni alvi intellegantur, Plin. Mai., XXI, 73. Leni igni sucus coquitur, donec fiat crassitudo mellis, Plin. Mai., XXI, 122. Bubus infusus per nares, donec ructent, inflationem sedat, Plin. Mai., XXIII, 81. Quidam contunsum in aqua decoquant, donec nihil innatet, Plin. Mai., XXIV, 11. Diu decoquitur, donec amaritudo desinat, Plin. Mai., XXIV, 188. Quidam decoquant in novo fictili cum heliotropio et duabus spicis, donec excoquatur, Plin. Mai., XXV, 39. Alii decoquant eam donec aqua dulcis fiat, Plin. Mai., XXVII, 118. Id saepius (faciunt) mutantes aquam, donec linguam astringat leniter nec mordeat, Plin. Mai., XXIX, 39.

442. In the preceding examples the Final character of the Subjunctive is prominent. As may be gathered from some of the examples in the preceding, the sense of *dum*, etc., presenting a limit, and translated *until*, is strengthened by *usque adeo*, *adeo usque*, *tamdiu*, *usque ad eum finem*. These strengthening additions may be readily expressed in translating.

443. *Dum*, etc., in the sense of *while*, also in the sense of *until*, is construed with the Potential Subjunctive and the Indefinite Second Person. For *dum* in the expression of a Conditional Wish, *vid.* 212, etc.

#### The Relation of Posteriority or Subsequence.

444. The relation of Posteriority or Subsequence is introduced by *antequam* (*antequam*), *priusquam*. As the conjunction *postquam*, etc., indicates that the action introduced by and associated with it occurs *before* the leading action, so do the conjunctions *antequam* (*antequam*) and *priusquam* indicate that the action introduced by and associated with them is *subsequent* to the leading action. The clause introduced by *antequam* (*antequam*), *priusquam*, is explanatory of the leading clause in representing the dependent action as occurring after it. As, *Priusquam abiit, conveni* = *before he left, I visited him* = *he left after I visited him* = *I first visited him, he then (afterwards) left*.

**445.** The elements of *priusquam* and *antequam* (*antequam*) are often written separately, with *ante* (*antea*) and *prius* expressed in the leading clause.

**446.** The particles *antequam* (*antequam*) and *priusquam* occur with the Indicative when the action which they introduce and which stands in the relation of Subsequence or Posteriority to the leading action is presented as a fact but separated from the leading action by a distinct but indefinite interval of time. It is not implied that it follows immediately the leading action. There is an interval of time greater or less between the actions in the two clauses. This is the case, uniformly, when the leading clause is positive or not defined by a negative.

**447.** Then, when the leading clause is not modified by a negative, and hence when there is an interval between the actions—

1. The particles *priusquam*, etc., are associated with the Present Indicative, with the Present Indicative in the leading clause.

(a) The actions may be single.

Ex.—*Atque antequam de incommodis Siciliae dico, pauca mihi videntur esse de provinciae dignitate dicenda*, Cic., Verr., II, 1, 2. *Etiam nunc saluto te, (Lar) familiaris, priusquam eo*, Pl., M. G., 1339. *Omnia experiri certumst, priusquam pereō*, Ter., And., 311.

(b) The actions belong to a general statement and are iterative.

Ex.—*Animal omne ea ante efficit paene, quam cogitat*, Cic., Div., 1, 53, 120. *Paulo antequam debet, faciendum est, ne cum fieri debebit, facere non possis*, Sen., Ep., VI, 6, 34. *Ideo non est ante edendum quam illa (fames) imperat*, Sen., Ep., XX, 6, 2. *Priusquam lucet adsunt, rogitant noctu ut somnum ceperim*, Pl., M. G., 709. *Nam semper occant priusquam sariunt rustici*, Pl., Capt., 663. *Ante rorat, quam pluit*, Varr., L. L., VII, 58.

2. The particles occur with the Present Indicative, with the Future First Indicative or the representative of a Future in the leading clause—that is, with an Imperative relation, etc., in the leading clause.

Ex.—*Detulit ad me querelam tuam, de qua priusquam respondeo pauca proponam*, Cic., Fam., XI, 27, 1 (2). *Si nostri oblitus es, dabo operam, ut istuc veniam antequam plane ex animo tuo effluo*, Cic., Fam., VII, 14, 1. *Nunc antequam ad sententiam redeo, de me pauca dicam*, Cic., Cat., IV, 10, 20. *Priusquam de re publica dicere incipio, pauca querar de hesterni Antonii iniuria*, Cic., Phil., I, 4, 11 (so with an Imperative relation, etc., in the leading clause; also, a Potential relation). *Antequam opprimit lux maioraque hostium agmina*

**obaeipiunt, erumpamus**, Liv., XXII, 50, 8. **Sine, priusquam complexum accipio, sciam**, Inquit, **ad hostem an ad filium venerim**, Liv., II, 40, 5. **Quare, antequam discedis, Othonem, si Romae est, convenias pervelim**, Cic., Att., XII, 37, 2.

**REM.** It must be noted that when the Present occurs with *priusquam*, etc., the Present does not express a present progressive action, but implies future time or is the Present used in anticipation of the Future.

3. The particles occur with the Perfect Indicative, with the Present Indicative in the leading clause.

**Ex.**—**Membris utimur priusquam didicimus cuius ea utilitatis causa habeamus**, Cic., Fin., III, 20, 66. **Is, qui ante sagit, quam oblata res est, dicitur praesagire, id est, futura ante sentire**, Cic., Div., I, 30, 65. **Ceteri ante tenentur astricti quam quid esset optimum iudicare potuerunt**, Cic., Acad., II, 3, 8. **Ante occupatur animus ab iracundia, quam providere ratio potuit, ne occuparetur**, Cic., Q. Frat., I, 1, 13, 38. **Docilliora sunt ingenia, priusquam obduerunt**, Quint., I, 12, 9.

**REM.** While, as may be gathered from the preceding examples, the Perfect in the temporal clause, with the Present in the leading clause, occurs in a sentence of general import, and hence the actions are iterative, there is no reason why the actions may not be single when the sentence states a single fact. As, *Prius venit quam arcessitus est* = *he comes (is coming) before he has been summoned*.

(a) The association of the Perfect in the temporal clause with the Perfect in the leading clause is allowable but rare.

**Ex.**—**Quid horum fuit quod non, priusquam datum est, ademptum sit?** Cic., Fam., IV, 5, 3.

4. The particles occur with the Aorist Indicative, with the Aorist or Historical Present in the leading clause.

**Ex.**—**Haec Antiochus (disputavit), paulo antequam est mortuus**, Cic., Acad., II, 19, 61. **L. Caesar, antequam me plane salutavit, O mi Cicero, inquit, gratulor tibi, etc.**, Cic., Fam., IX, 14, 3. **Omnia ista ante facta sunt, quam iste Italiam attigit**, Cic., Verr., II, 66, 161. **Ante iudicasti Epiourem te esse oportere, quam ista cognovisti**, Cic., N. D., I, 24, 66. **Priusquam plane aspexit illico eum esse dixit**, Pl., Rud., 1131. **Nympho, antequam constitit, condemnatur (Present Historical)**, Cic., Verr., III, 21, 54. **Ante in provinciam iste proficiscitur, quam opus effectum est**, Cic., Verr., I, 57, 149.

5. The particles occur with the Aorist Indicative, associated with the Imperfect in the leading clause. This is an association quite frequent.

Ex.—**Equidem ante, quam tuas legi litteras, hominem ire cupiebam**, Cic., Att., II, 7, 2. **Quae quidem aliquid habebant solacii antequam eo venisti a Pompeio**, Cic., Att., III, 9, 2. **Phaedrus nobis, antequam Philonem cognovimus, ut vir bonus probabatur**, Cic., Fam., XIII, 1, 2. **Quod viximus tempus eo loco est, quo erat antequam viximus**, Sen., Ep., XX, 3, 18.

REM. The particle *semper* with the Aorist associated with the Aorist in the temporal clause is to be noted. The qualification of the Aorist by *semper* does not change the sense of the Tense.

Ex.—**Cui quidem ego semper amicus fui, antequam illum intellexi non modo aperte sed etiam libenter cum re publica bellum gerere**, Cic., Fam., XI, 5, 2.

6. The particles occur with the Aorist Indicative associated with the Pluperfect Indicative in the leading clause. In this association of Tenses observe the Pluperfect expressing resulting state or condition.

Ex.—**Is erat ante manumissus quam productus (est)**, Cic., Att., IV, 15, 6. **Quae bona is ante aliquanto, quam est mortuus, omnia utenda ac possidenda tradiderat**, Cic., Verr., II, 18, 46. **Ante, quam delectata est Atheniensium civitas hac laude dicendi, multa iam memorabilia et in domesticis et in bellicis rebus effecerat**, Cic., Brut., XIII, 49. **Obsessis, priusquam alter consul victore exercitu advenit, et commeatus invecti erant et auxilia intromissa**, Liv., IX, 13, 10. **Et priusquam hinc abiit quindecim milia minas dederat**, Pl., Pseud., 54.

(a) To be noted is the Aorist of the same Predicate in the clause of Time and in the leading clause.

Ex.—**Non ipsa (legio) suis decretis priusquam senatus hostem iudicavit Antonium?** Cic., Phil., IV, 2, 5. Cf. **Hora ante praesidium meum Pollentiam venit quam Trebellius cum equitibus**, Cic., Fam., XI, 13, 4.

7. The Imperfect in the temporal clause associated with the Imperfect in the leading clause is very rare.

Ex.—**Inde honores petitori assistebant curiae foribus et consilii publici spectatores antequam consortes erant**, Plin. Min., VIII, 14, 5 (the same Tense, *erant*, common to the two clauses).

8. The particles occur, very rarely in the early Latin, with the Future First Indicative associated with the Future First.

Ex.—**Priusquam istam pugnam pugnabo, ego etiam prius dabo aliam pugnam claram**, Pl., Pseud., 525.

(a) While the particles may be considered as not allowed with the Future First Indicative in standard Latin, they are found with this Tense when the Tense and Predicate are common to both clauses.

Ex.—**Quare prius hic te nos quam istic tu nos videbis**, Cic., Fam., VI, 18, 5. **Ante Salamina ipsam Neptunus obruet quam Salaminii tropaei memo-**

**riam, priusque Boeotia Leuctra tollentur quam pugnae Leuctricae gloria**, Cic., Tusc., I, 46, 110. **Ante ille agmen, quam tu mensam istam movebis**, Curt. Cf. **Alter te docebit mori, si necesse erit, alter, antequam necesse erit**, Sen., Ep., XVIII, 1, 21.

9. The particles occur with the Future *Exactum* associated with the Future First in the leading clause. This association of Tenses is very rare in the absence of a negative in the leading clause. Instead of the Future First a representative of the Future may be used in the leading clause. As a rule of practical utility it may be stated that the English *before* with a Future Tense is in Latin reproduced by *antequam* or *priusquam* with the Future *Exactum*, not the Future First. The Future *Exactum* with the Future *Exactum* in the leading clause is also to be noted.

**Ex.—Contemno magnitudinem doloris, a qua me brevitās vindicabit antequam venerit**, Cic., Tusc., II, 19, 44. Cf. **Hic prius se indicaverit, quam ego argentum confecero** (Future *Exactum* with Future *Exactum*). **Sic autem componetur, si, quid humanarum rerum varietas possit, cogitaverit, antequam senserit**, Sen., Ep., XVI, 3, 5.

448. When there is no negative in the leading clause an interval of time is allowed between the actions. With a negative or its equivalent in the leading clause there is no appreciable interval between the actions. The negative forbids an interval. The leading action negatively presented continues up to the introduction of the dependent or temporal action and is suspended by it. It is parallel with the construction with *dum* = *until*. Again, as the negative postpones the occurrence or realization of the leading action until the dependent action occurs, the negative, in effect, changes the relation of Posteriority into the relation of Priority, and the result finds its equivalent in the positive *postquam*, etc. Thus:

*Non venit, priusquam arcessitus est* = *he did not come before he was summoned.*

Cf. *Non venit, dum arcessitus est* = *he did not come until he was summoned.*

Cf. *Venit, postquam arcessitus est* = *he came after he was summoned.*

The following examples will show the force of the negative in the leading clause.

**Ex.—Nec eorum ante sepulcrum est, quam iusta facta et porcus caesus est**, Cic., Leg., II, 22, 57. **Nec prius pestilentia desinit quam spiritum gravem exercuit laxitas caeli**, Sen., N. Q., VI, 28, 3. **Alii ignes manent nec ante discedunt quam consumptum est omne, quo pascebatur, alimentum**, Sen., N. Q.,



VII, 20, 2. *Omnes hostes terga verterunt neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum pervenerunt*, Caes., B. G., I, 53. *Iugurtha non prius omisit contra verum niti, quam animum advortit supra gratiam atque pecuniam suam invidiam facti esse*, Sall., Jug., 35. *Non ante se recepit in castra, quam cuncta perspexit*, Curt., VIII, 37. *Non prius descenderunt in aequum, quam in adversum Romani subiere*, Liv., I, 12, 1. *Neque prius bellare destitit, quam urbem eorum obsidione clausit*, Nep., Epam., 8. *Neque prius pugna excesserunt, quam repugnantes profligarunt*, Nep., Epam., 9. *Prius non tu is eras, quam auri feci mentionem*, Pl., Trin., 976. *De qua (Carthagine) vereri non ante desinam quam illam excisam esse cognovero*, Cic., Sen., VI, 18. *Numquam conquiescam neque defatigabor antequam rationes disputandi percepero*, Cic., De Or., III, 36, 145. *Neque prius, quam debellavero, absistam*, Liv., XLIV, 39, 9. *Nec ante edam quam bonum panem habere coepero*, Sen., Ep., XX, 6, 2. *Perficietur, si non ante abscedimus, quam spei nostrae finem imposuerimus*, Liv., V, 4, 9 (abscedimus in anticipation of Future). *Neque respondeo prius quam gnatum uidero*, Ter., Phorm., 1044. Cf. *Quas (litteras) ante, quam te videro, attingere non possum*, Cic., Fam., XVI, 14, 1. *Tibi de nostris rebus nihil sum ante mandaturus per litteras, quam desperaro coram me tecum agere posse*, Cic., Fam., III, 5, 4. *Qui locus erit nobis tutus, antequam ad illum venerimus?* Cic., Att., VIII, 3, 5 (qui locus erit, etc., Rhetorical Question). *Nec ante nos hinc moverimus, quam C. Flaminium ab Arretio patres acciverint*, Liv., XXII, 3, 10.

(a) In connection with a negative in the leading clause are to be carefully noted *antequam*, *priusquam*, with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Indicative. These Tenses in the temporal clause have not been observed in the absence of a negative in the leading clause (cf. 447, 7). The negative postpones the occurrence or realization of the action in the leading clause until the occurrence of the action or state in the dependent or temporal clause. The Imperfect retains its ordinary sense of progressive action or state, action commenced and insisted on, etc.; the Pluperfect expresses resulting state or condition. The equivalents may be positively expressed by *postquam* with the Imperfect and *postquam* with the Pluperfect expressing resulting state. The Imperfect and Pluperfect occur so rarely with *antequam* and *priusquam* as to be virtually excluded as a usage in the language. As—

*Hostes non prius acie excesserunt, quam equites nostri a tergo aggrediebantur* (= commenced attacking, etc.).

*Hostes non prius acie excesserunt, quam equitatus noster aderat.*

*Hostes non prius acie excesserunt, quam equitatus noster advenerat* (= aderat).

Cf. *Hostes acie excesserunt, postquam equites nostri a tergo aggrediebantur.*

Cf. *Hostes acie excesserunt, postquam equitatus noster aderat.*

Cf. *Hostes acie excesserunt, postquam equitatus noster advenerat.*

Ex.—Nec, antequam vires ad standum in muris ferendaque arma deerant, expugnati sunt, Liv., XXIII, 30, 4. Nec ante violavit agrum Campanum, quam iam altae in segetibus herbae pabulum praebere poterant, Liv., XXIII, 48, 1. Nec ante ad curandum corpus recessit, quam praeterierat agmen, Curtius. Cf. Qui erant rerum capitalium condemnati, non prius hanc civitatem amittebant, quam erant in eam recepti, quo vertendi, hoc est mutandi soli causa venerant, Cic., De Dom. Sua, XXX, 78.

### Subjunctive Mood in the Clause of Posteriority (Subsequence).

449. 1. The Subjunctive Mood occurs with *antequam* and *priusquam* in *Oratio Obliqua*. Here the Subjunctive Tenses are to be carefully noted. The Present Indicative (anticipating the future) becomes the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive according to the time of the sentence. The Future *Exactum* Indicative becomes the Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive (Future Subjunctive Tenses) according to the time of the sentence.

Ex.—(Dicit) se huc iter facturum per fines Remorum, eorumque agros populaturum ac, priusquam id faciat, Labieni castra oppugnaturum, Caes., B. G., V, 56 (priusquam id facio *Oratio Recta*). Eius imprimis rationem habendam dicunt, priusquam eorum clandestina consilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitu intercludatur, Caes., B. G., VII, 1 (priusquam efferuntur *Oratio Recta*). Rogat ut, quantum potest, fugiat et properet, antequam aliqua vis maior interveniat et auferat libertatem recedendi, Sen., Ep., III, 1, 5 (antequam... intervenit (?) *Oratio Recta*). Haec prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat, quam ipsum bello lacesseret, Caes., B. G., VI, 5 (priusquam... lacessit *Oratio Recta*). Ante puto (eum) tramissurum, quam potuerit conveniri, Cic., Att., VIII, 11, 5. Praecepit ne quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, Caes., B. G., V, 58 (priusquam... viderit, *Oratio Recta*). De ceteris rebus decernebat, ut, antequam rogatio lata esset, ne quid ageretur, Cic., Att., I, 14, 5 (antequam rogatio lata erit, *Oratio Recta*). Dixit se renunciaturum senatui, nisi prius sibi respondisset, quid facturus esset, quam ex illa circumscriptione exisset, Cic., Phil., VIII, 8, 23. Caesar respondit se eorum civitatem conservaturum, si, priusquam murum aries attigisset, se dedidissent, Caes., B. G., II, 32. Consul, antequam collegam sibi surrogasset, negare passurum agi de lege, Liv., III, 19, 1. C. Canuleius (dixit) numquam eos se vivo dilectum habituros, antequam ea, quae promulgata ab se collegisque essent, plebes scivisset, Liv., IV, 1, 6. Neque prius vim adhibendam putaverunt, quam se ipse indicasset, Nep., Paus., 4. Intellegebat prius adversarios rescituros de suo adventu, quam ipse tertiam partem confecisset itineris, Nep., Eum., 8.

(a) The Perfect Indicative (*Oratio Recta*) becomes the Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive according to the time of the sentence. The

Aorist Indicative (*Oratio Recta*) becomes the Pluperfect Subjunctive or the Aorist Subjunctive when the action is conceived and stated as Subjective *Oratio Obliqua*—that is, absolutely from the time of the speaker or writer. We have seen that the Pluperfect Indicative with *antequam* and *priusquam* is rare (see 448, a). Hence the Pluperfect Subjunctive, expressing an action completed before a second action, should rarely occur. It is, however, very frequent. This fact is striking and must be based upon a different but logically correct conception of the two actions which authorizes their comparison. As—

*Amicus meus me convenit, priusquam profectus est.*

*Dixit amicum suum se convenisse, priusquam profectus esset* = *I visited my friend, before he set out* = *I visited my friend, when he had not set out* = *my friend had not set out, when I visited him*. Upon the last conception of the actions may be based the use of the Pluperfect Subjunctive in *Oratio Obliqua* = *he said that his friend had not set out, when he visited him*.

Ex.—*Ventidio fui amicus antequam ille reipublicae est factus inimicus*, Cic., Phil., XII, 9, 23.

*Dixit se Ventidio fuisse amicum, antequam ille reipublicae esset (sit) factus inimicus* = *he said that he was a friend of Ventidius, before he had become hostile to the state* = *he said that Ventidius had not become hostile to the state, when he was a friend to him*.

Cf. (*Narravit*), *antequam ipse ad te venisset, nullum delectum litterarum fuisse*, Cic., Q. Frat., I, 2, 8. (*Docet*) *nec fieri ullo modo posse ut a pueris tot rerum insitas in animis notiones haberemus, nisi animus, antequam in corpus intrasset, in rerum cognitione viguisset*, Cic., Tusc., I, 24, 57 (*animus, antequam...intravit, in rerum cognitione vigit, Oratio Recta*). *Quidam negaverunt in ignem quicquam posse mutari, priusquam mutatum esset in aquam*, Sen., N. Q., II, 26, 2 (*priusquam mutatum est* (Perfect), *Oratio Recta*).

REM. It is not always easy to distinguish the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive from these same forms of Tense representing Future *Exactum* of the Subjunctive. This is particularly the case when the future time is not clearly indicated in the leading clause or suggested by the context.

Ex.—*Litteras reddi vetui, priusquam tibi recitatae essent*, Cic., Fam., XII, 12, 1 (here the Future time of *recitatae essent* is indicated by *reddi vetui*). *Non prius Viridovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum, arma uti capiant*, Caes., B. G., III, 18 (the general context indicates that *sit concessum* is future from *dimittunt*, expressing what is looked to and contemplated).

2. The Subjunctive occurs with *antequam* and *priusquam* when the subject is the Indefinite Second Person.

Ex.—*Hoc occultum intestinum ac domesticum malum non modo existit, verum etiam opprimit antequam prospicere atque explorare potueris*, Cic., Verr., I, 15, 39. *Qua re quid habent eorum inimititiae periculi, quorum animos iam ante habueris inimicos quam ullas inimititias susceperis?* Cic., Verr., V, 61, 182. *In omnibus negotiis priusquam aggrediare adhibenda est praeparatio diligens*, Cic., Offic., I, 21, 73. *Ante circumspiciendum est, cum quibus edas et bibas, quam quid edas et bibas*, Sen., Ep., II, 7, 10. *Ad hoc quidem, sed sine hoc nascimur et in optimis quoque, antequam erudias, virtutis materia, non virtus est*, Sen., Ep., XIV, 2, 46. *Iustum est (fimi) vehes octodecim iugero tribui, dispergere autem priusquam ares*, Plin. Mai., XVIII, 193.

3. The Subjunctive is, again, used with *antequam* and *priusquam* when the action of the predicate is presented as an ideal limit, in the future, possible to be attained or as one aimed at. The Subjunctive in this office covers both the Subjunctive Potential and Final. It may often be best reproduced in English by the verbal in *-ing*. Hence for practical purposes it may be accepted as a rule that *before* with the verbal in *-ing* is, in Latin, expressed by *antequam*, *priusquam*, with the Subjunctive, generally the Present or Imperfect, according to the time of the sentence. As—

*Priusquam proficiscatur, equitatum praemittit* = *before setting out, he sends forward his cavalry*.

*Priusquam proficisceretur, equitatum praemisit* = *before setting out, he sent forward his cavalry*.

Ex.—*Romae et ad urbem, antequam proficisceretur, quaerere ipse secum et agitare cum suis coepit*, etc., Cic., Verr., II, 6, 17. *Quas (statuas) tu, antequam ad urbem venires, poni inscribique iussisti*, Cic., Verr., II, 69, 167. *Nam antequam verbum facerem, de sella surrexit*, Cic., Verr., IV, 65, 147. *Priusquam dimicaret, foedus ictum est his legibus*, etc., Liv., I, 24, 3. *Priusquam ultima experirentur, senatum iterum consulere placuit*, Liv., II, 28, 9. *Videamus, priusquam aggrediamur ad leges singulas, vim naturamque legis*, Cic., Leg., II, 4, 8. *Antequam ad populares leges venias, vim istius caelestis legis explana*, Cic., Leg., II, 4, 9. *De cuius hominis moribus pauca prius explananda sunt, quam initium narrandi faciam*, Sall., Cat., 4. *Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, Calum Volusenum praemittit*, Caes., B. G., IV, 21. *M. Cato priusquam honoribus operam daret, versatus est in Sabinis*, Nep., Cat., 1. *De qua (morte) priusquam dicam non alienum erit exponere, etc.*, Suet., Caes., 44. *Tiberius Caesar inter initia dicenti cuidam: "Meministi," antequam plures notas familiaritatis veteris proferret, "non memini," inquit, quid fuerim*, Sen., Ben., V, 25, 2. *Prius ad continentem visus est Caesar, quam de eius adventu fama omnino in eas regiones perferretur* (Potential), Caes., B. Civ., III, 7.

4. In a general statement the particles *antequam* and *priusquam* take the Subjunctive, with the Present, Future First, or the representative of the Future in the leading clause. As the statement is general, the actions are repeated (iterative). The Tenses with *antequam* and *priusquam* are the Present and Perfect. The general statement is strikingly presented in the elder Pliny in describing the habits of animals, the peculiarities of plants, and the effects of medicines, etc. It should be remembered that the Subjunctive is not uniformly the usage in such statements. In the best prose the Indicative is more frequent than the Subjunctive. Indefinite repetition may account for the Subjunctive. But as a fact or real occurrence may be indefinitely repeated, the Indicative is more logical than the Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Tragoedi (Graeci) annos complures sedentes declamitant et cotidie, antequam pronuntient, vocem cubantes sensim excitant*, Cic., *De Or.*, I, 59, 251. *Quamquam illud est egregium, quod hac lege ante omnia veneunt, ante pecuniae coguntur et coacervantur, quam glæba una ematur*, Cic., *L. Agr.*, II, 27, 71. *Ante videmus fulgorem, quam sonum audiamus*, Sen., *N. Q.*, II, 12, 6. *Corvi ante solstitium generant, iidem aegrescunt sexagenis diebus, antequam fici coquantur autumno*, Plin. Mai., X, 32. *Non omnes (pisces) eadem esca capiuntur et priusquam appetant odorantur*, Plin. Mai., X, 194. *Infantis in nascendo nulla (vox) auditur antequam totus emergatur utero*, Plin. Mai., XI, 270. *Hae, priusquam dehiscant decerptae tostaeque sole, faciunt quod vocatur piper longum*, Plin. Mai., XII, 26. *Huius folia sicuti labruscae priusquam decidant sanguineo colore mutantur*, Plin. Mai., XIV, 37. *Folia antequam decidunt rubescunt*, Plin. Mai., XV, 84. *Salix amittit semen, antequam omnino maturitatem sentiat*, Plin. Mai., XVI, 110. *Siliquae eius virides priusquam indurescant cum suo caule folisque contritae capillos nigro colore inficiunt*, Plin. Mai., XXII, 153. *Folia ex aceto imposita panos per se vel cum melle discutunt, item furunculos, priusquam capita faciant*, Plin. Mai., XXII, 159. *Epinyctidas ex aqua sanat, vulnera recentia priusquam aqua tangantur impositum, praeterea capitis ulcera*, Plin. Mai., XXVII, 51. *Castor hominis parte comprehensa non antequam fracta concrepuerint ossa morsus resolvit*, Plin. Mai., VIII, 109. *Capnios et buconiatias in Thurinis collibus non ante demetuntur quam gelaverit*, Plin. Mai., XIV, 39.

(a) In general statements with repeated (iterative) actions the Subjunctive may often be explained as presenting an action had in view or intended, and, again, as *Oratio Obliqua*.

Ex.—*Sin id aut non erit aut erit obscurius, sicut medico diligenti, priusquam conetur aegro adhibere medicinam, non solum morbus eius, cui mederi volet, sed etiam consuetudo valentis et natura corporis cognoscenda est*, etc., Cic., *De Or.*, II, 44, 186 (here *priusquam* . . . *conetur* expresses the view of the medicus, while the statement is a general one). *Sunt qui vehementius tostum rursus exigua aqua aspergant et siccent priusquam molant*, Plin. Mai., XVIII,

73 (here *priusquam* *molant* expresses not only *Oratio Obliqua* but what is not intended or desired before the *sprinkling* and *drying*). *Nunc fermentum fit ex ipsa farina quæ subigitur priusquam addatur sal*, Plin. Mai., XVIII, 104. *Colligitur antequam incipiat maturescere*, Plin. Mai., XII, 103. (*Radix*) *ambustis cruda illinitur, sed saepius mutatur priusquam arescat*, Plin. Mai., XX, 259. *Hic antequam floreat contensus atque expressus illito suco alopecias replet*, Plin. Mai., XX, 263. *Sacerdos Terræ vaticinatura sanguinem tauri bibit priusquam in specus descendat*, Plin. Mai., XXVIII, 147.

5. As suggested in several of the preceding statements and examples the action in the *antequam* and *priusquam* clause is often presented as a matter desired, aimed at, or intended by the expressed or logical subject of the leading predicate. The Subjunctive is in this case Optative and Final. But here, as elsewhere, the Final and Consecutive are often parallel in sense, and, while the former may not be excluded, the latter, in some cases, furnishes the simpler and more direct explanation of the Mood. The Tenses are the Present and Imperfect, less frequently the Perfect and Pluperfect, according to the time of the sentence. In addition, it is to be carefully noted—

(a) When the leading clause is Positive—that is, is not defined by a negative—the *antequam* or *priusquam* clause is to be negatively interpreted; in other words, the action in this clause is one not desired, and to be averted.

Ex.—*Priusquam quicquam conaretur Divitiacum ad se vocare iubet*, Caes., B. G., I, 19 (= *he ordered Divitiacus to be summoned unto himself, before attempting anything = before he should attempt anything = in order that he should not (first) attempt anything*. Cf. *So that he should not (first) attempt anything*). *Ardentesque avertit equos in castra, priusquam pabula gustassent Trolae*, Verg., Aen., 472 (here *priusquam* . . . *gustassent*, from the standpoint of the subject of *avertit*, is the Future *Eractum* = *before they should taste (should have tasted)*, in order that they should not first taste—should not first come to taste—too soon for them to come to taste, etc.). *Postridie eius diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines SueSSIONUM exercitum duxit*, Caes., B. G., II, 12. *His interceptis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quæ citra Rhenum quæta in suis sedibus erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt*, Caes., B. G., IV, 4. *Visus est petere, ut mane ad portam adesset, priusquam plaustrum ex oppido exiret*, Cic., Div., I, 27, 57. *Da operam ut huc quam primum venias, antequam omnes copiae ad adversarium convenient*, Cic., Att., VIII, 12, D, 2. *Vercingetorix priusquam munitiones ab Romanis perficiantur capit consilium omnem ab se equitatum noctu dimittere*, Caes., B. G., VII, 71. *Caesar maturandum sibi censuit, si esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum, ut, priusquam essent maiores eo coactae copiae, dimicaret*, Caes., B. G., VII, 56. *Priusquam a pavore reciperent animos, Hannibal fugam ex ripa fecit*, Liv., XXI, 5, 16. *Principio anni censuit, priusquam quisquam agrariae legis auctor tribunus existeret, occuparent patres ipsi suum munus facere*, Liv., II, 48, 2

(*priusquam quisquam...exsistat*, *Oratio Recta*). **Priusquam semen maturum sit, seca** (*priusquam semen maturum sit* = *before the seed is ripe* = *in order that it shall not (first) ripen*).

(b) When the leading clause is defined by a negative the *antequam* or *priusquam* clause is to be positively interpreted; in other words, the action in this clause is one desired, aimed at, and to be brought about.

Ex.—**Inde non prius egressus est, quam rex eum, data dextra, in fidem reciperet**, Nep., Them., 8 (here *priusquam rex...reciperet* = *before the king should receive him*, etc. = *in order that the king should first receive him*, etc. = *desiring, waiting for, the king to receive him*, etc. **Neque prius finem sequendi fecerunt, quam muro oppidi portisque appropinquarent**, Caes., B. G., VII, 47. **Nullo haec pacto potest prius in aedis recipi, quam illam amiserim**, Pl., M. G., 1096. **Traiecturus Rhenum, commeatum omnem non ante transmisit, quam consistens apud Rhenum explorasset vehiculorum onera**, Suet., Tib., 18.

#### 6. The Subjunctive is the Mood with *antequam* or *priusquam* :

(a) When the action in the leading clause is such as to prevent the occurrence or realization of the action in the *antequam* or *priusquam* clause.

Ex.—**Prius in hostium castris constiterunt, quam plane ab his videri aut, quid rei gereretur, cognosci posset**, Caes., B. G., III, 26. **Priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent in deditionem venire coëgit**, Caes., B. G., VI, 3. **Prius omnes in unum locum cogit, quam de eius adventu Arvernīs nuntiari posset**, Caes., B. G., VII, 9. **Priusquam plane legiones explicari et consistere possent auxilia regis in fugam coniciunt**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 26. **Priusquam telum abici posset aut nostri propius accederent, omnis Vari acies terga vertit**, Caes., B. Civ., II, 34. **Haerens in terga Romanus, priusquam fores portarum obicerentur, velut agmine uno irrumpit**, Liv., I, 14, 11. **Priusquam alter, qui nec procul aberat, consequi posset, et alterum Curiatium conficit**, Liv., I, 25, 10. **Adeo ea subita res fuit, ut prius Anienem transirent, quam obviam ire ac prohibere exercitus Romanus posset**, Liv., I, 36, 1. **Quae inviti audimus, libenter credimus et antequam iudicemus irascimur**, Sen., Ira, II, 22, 3. **Hoc antequam videret occisus est**, Sen., N. Q., I, 16, 9. **Saxa evoluta rupesque partim illaesae, quas spiritus, antequam urerentur, expulerat**, Sen., N. Q., II, 26, 5. **Quidam ante vivere desierunt quam inciperent**, Sen., Ep., III, 2, 11. In this connection is to be observed the frequent occurrence of the Subjunctive of *posse* in the temporal clause.

(b) Related to the preceding, but not identical with it, is the Subjunctive with *antequam* or *priusquam* when the context or general sense of the sentence implies that the action in the *antequam* or *priusquam* clause was not the fact—did not occur at the time of the leading action, though it may have occurred afterwards.

Ex.—**Hunc (collem) celeriter, priusquam ab adversariis sentiatur, communit**, *Caes., B. Civ., I, 54* (the action or state expressed in *sentiatur* is not true, does not exist at the time of *communit*, though it is not denied as an after-occurrence or fact). **Hunc (ignem) sic distulit ventus, ut prius haec omnia consumerentur, quam, quemadmodum accidisset, animadverti posset**, *Caes., B. Civ., II, 14*. **Miles prius vicit, quam se pugnare sine duce sentiret**, *Liv., III, 18, 9*.

REM. 1. In most of the cases covered by the preceding (a, b) *antequam* or *priusquam* may well be translated by *too soon for*, implying the prevention or postponement of the action in the temporal clause by that in the leading clause.

Ex.—**Antequam iudicemus, irascimur** = *we are angry before we judge* = *we are angry too soon for us to judge*.

**Miles prius vicit, quam se pugnare sine duce sentiret** = *the soldiery conquered before they perceived* = *too soon to perceive*, etc.

REM. 2. While the Subjunctive is the Mood with *antequam* or *priusquam* when the leading action is such as to prevent the occurrence of the action in the *antequam* or *priusquam* clause, and when the occurrence of this action is not the fact, yet it rarely happens that the two actions are stated independently or without reference to the influence of the one upon the other, and that the Indicative is found with *antequam* or *priusquam* where the Subjunctive is looked for as expressing an action inconsistent with the leading action.

Ex.—**Itaque ante implicatur aliquo certo genere cursuque vivendi quam potuit quod optimum esset iudicare**, *Cic., Off., I, 32, 117*. **Phaethon antequam constitit, ictu fulminis deflagavit**, *Cic., Off., III, 25, 94*. **Tum vinum priusquam coctumst pendet putidum**, *Pl., Trin., 526*.

REM. 3. The Subjunctive occurs with *potius quam* and *citius quam* in a sense similar to that expressed by *antequam* or *priusquam*. The Mood is Final, but in the objective conception of the action it is Consecutive (*vid. 322, 2, d*).

Ex.—**Depugna potius quam servias**, *Cic., Att., VII, 7, 7* (= *fight it out, before being a slave* = *rather than be a slave, in order not to be a slave (so as not to be a slave)*). **Tantus in adolescente pudor fuit, ut omnia potius responderet, quam Chelidonem nominaret**, *Cic., Verr., I, 53, 139*. **Potius istius culpa crimen suscipiam quam in te sim crudelis**, *Cic., Verr., V, 40, 105*. **L. Verginius virginem filiam sua manu occidit potius quam ea App. Claudii lubidini dederetur**, *Cic., Fin., II, 20, 66*. **Inueniet inopem potius, quam te corrumpi sinat**, *Ter., And., 396*. **Adversus quae cum optimates ita tenderent, ut morituros se citius dicerent, quam quicquam earum rerum rogaretur**, etc., *Liv., V, 24, 9*.

REM. 4. To *priusquam ut* is added, so also to *potius quam*. In this case the *ut* is in some cases decided by the leading verb, in others the Mood is Consecutive or Final.



Ex.—*Nihil prius faciendum mihi putavi, quam ut tibi absenti de reditu nostro gratularer*, Cic., Att., IV, 1, 1 (here *faciendum* is implied and calls for *ut*). *Prius velim tibi persuadeas, ut hoc mea causa libenter facias, quam ut facias*, Cic., Fam., XIII, 1, 6 (here *persuadeas* to be supplied with *quam ut facias*). (*Dicunt*) *se miliens morituros potius, quam ut tantum dedecoris admitti patiantur*, Liv., IV, 2, 8 (here *quam ut... patiantur* is Consecutive, or it may be interpreted as Final, expressing a matter not desired).

REM. 5. For the Accusative and Infinitive with *priusquam*, compare 322, 2, d.

Ex.—*Ariovistus respondit se prius in Galliam venisse quam populum Romanum*, Caes., B. G., I, 44.

450. With *priusquam* compare *prior quam* when two subjects are considered. This form of expression is rare.

Ex.—*Arruns prior quam pater moritur uxore gravida relicta*, Liv., I, 34, 2. Cf. *Arruns priusquam pater moritur*.

451. To be observed is *pridie quam* with the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the sense of the dependent clause.

Ex.—*Memmius pridie, quam ego Athenas veni, Mytilenas profectus erat*, Cic., Att., V, 11, 6. *P. Scipio domum ad vesperum reductus est a patribus, pridie quam excessit e vita*, Cic., Am., III, 12. *Nam cum pridie, quam legati proficiscerentur, sermonem eorum ex servis unus excepit*, Liv., II, 4, 5 (here *pridie, quam proficiscerentur*=*the day before they were to depart, the day before they should depart*). *Pridie quam Siciliensem pugnam classe committeret, deambulanti in litore piscis e mari exsilivit et ad pedes iacuit*, Suet., Aug., 96. *Pridie quam de reditu certior fieret, vestimenta mutanti tunica ardere visa est*, Suet., Tib., 14. *Pridie quam periret somniavit*, etc., Suet., Calig., 57.

(a) And so, likewise, the Indicative or Subjunctive (according to the sense to be expressed) occurs with *antequam* or *priusquam*, with any interval of time stated.

Ex.—*Dux, decem diebus antequam consul factus est, graviter vulneratus est.*  
*Dux, decem ante diebus quam consul factus est, graviter vulneratus est.*  
*Dux, ante decem dies quam consul factus est, graviter vulneratus est.*  
*Dux, decem ante dies quam consul factus est, graviter vulneratus est.*

Ex.—*Senectus quamvis non sit gravis, ut memini Catonem anno, antequam est mortuus, mecum disserere*, etc., Cic., Am., III, 11. *Ante paucos dies quam aedilitatem iniret, venit in suspicionem*, etc., Suet., Caes., 9. *Ante paucos quam revocaretur dies, aquila, numquam antea Rhodi conspecta, in culmine domus eius assedit*, Suet., Tib., 14.

452. Peculiar is the use of *antequam* and *priusquam* with a participle (Ablative Absolute) instead of the finite verb. The explanation may be by ellipsis of the leading predicate.

Ex.—*Decemviri querentes se in ordinem cogi non antequam perlatis legibus, quarum causa creati essent, deposituros imperium se aiebant*, Liv., III, 51, 13 (the use of a Finite verb would be more regular = *non antequam perlatae essent leges*). *Negant se inde priusquam capta urbe hostium redituros esse*, Liv., V, 7, 7. Cf. *Priusquam capta esset urbs hostium*.

453. When the action with *antequam* or *priusquam* is one that must not occur—that must be prevented at any cost—or is not to be entertained, this action is expressed in the Subjunctive. Here strong opposition to the dependent action as a Result is the dominant idea. Hence the Subjunctive is Consecutive, but, as the will of the subject may not be ignored, the Mood may be interpreted as Final. When a negative action in the temporal clause is objected to, and is one to be prevented, the opposite of the negated action, or the positive, is assented to and insisted upon. The extravagance of the statement in the leading clause, the realization of which must be antecedent to the occurrence of the action in the *antequam* or *priusquam* clause, gives prominence to the opposition to this action and emphasizes the improbability or impossibility of its occurrence. In this connection *antequam* or *priusquam* may best be rendered *sooner than* (*that*); *rather than* (*that*).

Ex.—*Ante leves pascentur in aethere cervi, quam nostro illius labatur pectore vultus*, Verg., Ecl., I, 60. *Sed prius Apulis iungentur Capreae lupis, quam turpi Pholoë peccet adultero*, Hor., Od., I, 33, 8. *Prius caelum sidet inferius mari, quam non amore sic meo flagres, uti bitumen atris ignibus*, Hor., Epod., V, 79.

(a) In the preceding examples (453) the explanation of the Subjunctive with *antequam* or *priusquam* is twofold. In the first place, the dependent action (positive or negative) is one to be averted; in the second place, the action in the leading clause is one difficult or impossible to be realized but which must take place before the action in the dependent clause can occur. In such a relation of the actions in the leading and dependent clauses *potius quam* and *citius quam* also occur with the Subjunctive.

Ex.—*Si hunc uidebo non dare argentum tibi, quod dixit, potius quam id non fiat, ego dabo*, Pl., Pseud., 553. *Citius amore tui fratrem tuum odisse desinam, quam illius odio quicquam de nostra benevolentia detraham*, Cic., Fam., V, 2, 10. *Eripiet quisvis oculos citius mihi, quam te contemptum cassa nuce pauperet*, Hor., Sat., II, 5, 35. *Mater morituram se ante denuntiabat, quam in ullius veniret potestatem*, Curt., VIII, 9.

REM. It is, however, sometimes the case that, even when the leading action is one that is not desired and difficult to allow, and the dependent action is one not acceptable and to be averted, the latter is

expressed in the Indicative. Here the simple temporal relation (subsequence) of the dependent to the leading action is expressed with more or less of rhetorical emphasis.

Ex.—*Omnia experiri certumst prius quam pereo*, Ter., And., 311. *Multo citius meam salutem pro te abiecero, quam Cn. Plancii salutem tradidero contentioni tuae*, Cic., Planc., XXXIII, 79. *Hiscite, commordete: citius multo frangetis dentes quam imprimetis*, Sen., Gall., Vit. Beat., XX, 6.

454. From the preceding statements it may be gathered that the Subjunctive is used with *antequam* and *priusquam* in *Oratio Obliqua*; also, when the dependent action is one desired, aimed at, or as a Result to be averted; again, when its occurrence is prevented by the leading action, or is not the fact (did not occur). In addition there is a case of the Subjunctive with these particles which deserves careful attention and in which the Mood cannot be explained by any of the principles and restrictions stated. In this case the time of the dependent action is to be considered in connection with the time of the leading action in Historical Narrative. It is clear that the time of the dependent action is subsequent to and future from that of the leading action. It is equally clear that there is no Indicative Tense by which a future from a given Past (the time of the leading action) can be clearly and exactly expressed. This time, however, can be expressed by the Imperfect (Future First) and Pluperfect (Future *Exactum*) of the Subjunctive. Hence, after a past leading Tense the Imperfect Subjunctive (less frequently the Pluperfect Subjunctive) occurs with *antequam* and *priusquam* to express an action subsequent to and future from the time of the action in the leading clause = *before—should be*; *before—was to* (involving a phase of *Oratio Obliqua*). Such an action, however, considered in its historical connection from the standpoint of the writer, may, and often is, one of actual occurrence. Hence, in Historical Narrative, we find particularly the Imperfect Subjunctive, with *antequam* or *priusquam*, expressing an action subsequent to and future from the action in the leading clause, but which from the time of the writer is to be accepted as one historically true. Therefore it follows that a writer may use with *antequam* or *priusquam* either the Subjunctive or Indicative, as he may conceive and express the dependent action from the standpoint of the Tense in the leading clause or from his own standpoint. In the former, the conception of the dependent action is of one yet to take place (hence the Subjunctive); in the latter, it is a matter of fact known to the writer to be historically true (hence the Indicative). There results, then, a

license in the employment of the Mood according to the conception of the dependent action. To explain such cases of the Subjunctive by the principle of mere subordination is entirely unsatisfactory and illogical.

Ex.—**Priusquam** consules in provincias proficiscerentur, legationes in senatum introduxerunt, Liv., XXXIX, 46, 6 (here **proficiscerentur** is conceived and expressed as subsequent to and future from **introduxerunt** (= *before the consuls should, were to, set out*). The **priusquam** clause, however, treated as a matter of historical fact from the standpoint of the writer would be: **Priusquam consules profecti sunt**). Cf. **Cn. Sicinius priusquam magistratu abiret, Brundisium ad exercitum praemissus est**, Liv., XLII, 36, 8. So, **Carpinatus, antequam in istius tantam familiaritatem pervenisset, ad socios litteras de istius iniuriis miserat**, Cic., Verr., II, 70, 171 (from **miserat** the time of **pervenisset** is subsequent and future (*Eractum*) = *before it turned out that he had come, before it should turn out that he came*).

REM. The Pluperfect Tense considered in the preceding is the Pluperfect used as Future *Eractum* from a given Past, and not the Pluperfect in *Oratio Obliqua*, reproducing the Aorist or Perfect of the *Oratio Recta*.



## GENERAL INDEX.

**ABBREVIATIONS.**—Abl., ablative; abs., absolute; acc., accusative; act., active; adj., adjective; adv., adverb; attrib., attributive; app., apposition; comp., comparison, comparative; const., construction; cop., copula; epd., compound; dat., dative; decl., declension; def., definite; dem., demonstrative; fem., feminine; fut., future; fut. pf., future perfect; gen., genitive; ger., gerund; impf., imperfect; impr., imperative; indef., indefinite; indic., indicative; inf., infinitive; interrog., interrogative; neg., negative; neut., neuter; nom., nominative; obj., object; part., participle; pass., passive; pl., plural; poss., possessive; pred., predicate; prep., preposition; pron., pronoun; rel., relative; sg., singular; subj., subject; subjv., subjunctive; subst., substantive; sup., supine; vb., verb; voc., vocative.

**Ab** (ā)—with abl. of ger., 37, II; with pf. pass. part., 54, I, rem. 3.

**Abesse**—non multum abest, etc., with quin, 287, 2, a; tantum abest ut—ut, 300, a, b, r. 1, 2.

**Ability**—adjs. of, with inf., 17.

**Ablative Absolute**—defined, 62; translation of, 63; subordinate relations expressed by, 63; subst. or pred. attrib. in, 63, V; neut. of pf. pass. part. in, 64; phrase as subj. of, 65; fut. part. in, 66; force and translation of pf. pass. part., 68; when excluded, 69; nisi with, 70; quasi, tanquam, ut, etc., with, 71; with negative translated "without," 288, 4.

**Abl. Gerund**—37; in abl. abs., 37, II, d.

**Above mentioned**—how expressed, 55, I, d.

**Absiste**—with inf. for impr., 204, r. 5, b.

**Absorption of correlative**—102, d.

**Absque** + abl. and esset (foret) equivalent of si non + impf. subjv., 346, f.

**Ac**—see atque; ac si with subjv., in cond. sentences of comparison, 390, 1.

**Accedere**—with quod, 417, b, r. 2; with ut, 302, 3.

**Accidit**—sequence after, 180; with ut, 302, 2; with quod, 302, 2, a; 417, c.

**Accipere**—with fut. pass. part., 51.

**Accommodatus**—with dat. ger., 35, I.

**Accusative**—of gerund, with preps., 36; of fut. pass. part., 51; of supine, 20-25; two accusatives with inf., 91; subj. of inf. when same as subj. of governing vb., 92; with inf. as obj., 84-88; with inf. as subj., 81-83; with inf. after vbs. of emotion, 99, 415; after non dubito, 290, c; after vbs. of fearing, 294; after various vbs., 93-99; in exclamations and exclamatory questions, 102; 258, 7; in O. O., 312; in rel. clauses, 318; in dependent comparative clauses, 322.

**Admirari**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.

**Action**—defined, 111. See *Tenses*.

**Active Voice**—3; periphrastic, 168-173.

**Ad**—with acc. ger., 36; with acc. ger. for abl. sup., 27, 1; for purpose clause, 25, 3; with pf. pass. part., 54, I, rem. 3.

**Adaptation**—words of, with dat. ger., 35, I.

- Addere**—with quod, 417, b; with ut, 302, 3.  
**Adding**—vbs. of, with ut, 302, 3; with quod, 417, b.  
**Adeo**—correl. with ut, 299, 3; with neg.,—ut, 300.  
**Adduci**—constrs. with, 265, 3; 267.  
**Adferre**—constrs. with, 265, 3; with fut. pass. part., 51.  
**Adhortari**—with ut, 265, 2.  
**Adicere**—with ut, 302, 3; with quod, 417, b.  
**Adigere**—with ut, 265, 3.  
**Adipisci**—with ut, 265, 7.  
**Adivare**—with ut, 265, 3; with acc. and inf., 87.  
**Adjectives**—in abl. abs., 63, V; with inf., 17; with abl. ger., 37, I; with abl. sup., 26, a; adj. predicates, with acc. and inf., 83, 1; with ut, 279, c; 304; in apodosis unreal condition, 381.  
**Admirari**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.  
**Admonere**—with ut, 265, 2; with acc. and inf., 267.  
**Admodum**—yes, 259, 1, d.  
**Adoriri**—with inf., 77, 2.  
**Adverb**—substituting relative and prep., 404.  
**Adversative Sentences**—395–400; cum, 426.  
**Aequum**—with est and ut + subjv., 279, c; 304; with acc. and inf., 83, 1.  
**Afirmare**—with acc. and inf., 84.  
**Age**—with impr., 198, a; id ago, with ut, 265, 3; 279, b; agere, cum + abl., with ut, 279, b.  
**Aegre ferre**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.  
**Agent**—with fut. pass. part., 49.  
**Aggredi**—with inf., 77, 2.  
**Aio**—introduces O. R., 308, b; O. O., 310; ut ait, 308, b, rem.  
**Aliquis**—per aliquem stare, constrs. with, 286, a and rem.  
**Aliquem (aliquos)**—omitted before inf., 101; referred to by reflexive, 101, r. 1.  
**Aliter**—strengthens sui, 347, r.  
**Amabo**—strengthens impr., 198, a.  
**An**—in 2nd. part. of disjunctive question with 1st member omitted, 232; in direct disjunctive questions, 233–236; strengthened by—ne, 232, rem. 2; an = nonne, 232, rem. 1; annon = then not, 232, rem. 3; num—**an**, 236; whether—or not, 237; in phrases (haud scio an, etc.), 245; annon and necne, 249; in indirect simple questions for num, 242; indirect disjunctive question, 247.  
**Angi**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.  
**Animadvertere**—with acc. and inf., 84; with part., 56.  
**Animus**—in phrases with ut, 279, a; 303; in animo esse with inf., 76.  
**Answers**—to questions, 259, 260.  
**Ante**—with acc. ger., 36; with pf. pass. part., 54, I, rem. 3.  
**Antequam**—see *Antequam*.  
**Antecedent Action**—156; iterative antecedence, 156, II. See *Priority, relation of*.  
**Antequam**—444–454; with indic., 447, 448; with subjv., 449; prior quam, 450; pridiequam, 451; with part., 452; final or consecutive, 453; O. O., 454.  
**Anxius**—with ne, etc., 292, c.  
**Aorist**—definition of, 130; associated with impf., 136.

- Apodosis**—definition of, 335; omission of, 357; involution of, 357, e; in indic. in unreal conditions, 378; in O. O., 359, 367, 377, 384; after vbs. requiring subjv., 386; with two protases, 375.
- Apparere**—with nom. and inf., 104, a; with ut, 302, 2; apparet, with acc. and inf., 83, 3.
- Appellari**—with double nom., 104, c.
- Appointing**—vbs. of, with dat. ger., 35, III.
- Aptus**—constrs. with, dat. ger., 35, I; with relative and subjv., 35, I, rem. 2; with ut and subjv., 35, I, rem. 2; 305.
- Arbitrari**—with acc. and inf., 84.
- Ardere**—with ut, 265, 3; with inf., 77, 2.
- Ardor**—in phrases with ut, 279, a; 304.
- Arguere**—with acc. and inf., 84; nom. and inf., pass. voice, 105, c, rem. 1.
- Asking**—vbs. of, with ut, 265, 2; 266, 3.
- Aspicere**—with acc. and inf., 84; with part., 56.
- Assequi**—with ut, 265, 7.
- Asseverations**—in subjv., forms of, 211; matter denied by si, 211; matter affirmed by ni, nisi, etc., ut + ind., indic. alone, 211.
- Assuefacere**—constr. with, 98.
- Assuescere**—constr. with, 98.
- At (certe)**—adversative, 347, 400.
- Atque**—see *Comparative Sentence*.
- Attinet**—with acc. and inf., 83, 3.
- Attraction**—of vb. of saying, etc. in subjv., 329; of mood (so-called), 331.
- Attracted Gerund**—see *Gerund*.
- Attribuere**—with fut. pass. part., 51.
- Attributive**—with inf., 19, 73; with part., 53.
- Auctor**—in phrases with acc. and inf., 83, 2; 86; with ut, 279, b; 303.
- Auctoritas**—in phrases with ut, 279, a; 303.
- Audere**—with inf., 77, 1; with nom. and inf., 105, b.
- Audire**—with part., 56; with acc. and inf., 84; with cum and subjv., 423, III, b; auditu, 26, b.
- Aut**—force of, in interrog. sentences, 235.
- Autem**—strengthens sin, 348.
- Auxiliary Vbs.**—with inf., 77, 1, 2.
- Avere**—with inf., 77, 1.
- Beginning**—vbs. of, with inf., 77, 1.
- Believing**—vbs. of, with acc. and inf., 84; with nom. and inf., passive voice, 105, c.
- Beseeching**—vbs. of, with ut, 265, 2.
- Bewaring**—vbs. of, constrs. with, 186, e, 1, 2.
- Boards**—with dat. ger., 35, V.
- Cadit**—with ut, 302, 2; with quod, 302, 2, a; 417, c.
- Capability**—adjs. of, with inf., 17.
- Capacity**—adjs. of, with dat. ger., 35, 1.
- Caput est**—with inf., 73; 83, 2.



- Causa**—with gen. ger., 30; in phrases with ut, 279, a, b; 303.
- Causal Sentences**—syntax of, 409–413; with quia, quod, etc., moods, 411; rejected reason, 412, 413; with vbs. of emotion, 414; si, for quod, 414, c; with cum, 425; with tamquam, etc., 393, b; repr. by part., 55, II; relative, 407, 9; in O. O., 411.
- Causation**—vbs. of, with pf. pass. part., 57; with ut, 265, 7.
- Cause**—repr. by participle, 55, II.
- Cavere**—constrs. with, 286, e, 1, 2; cave (ne), with subjv. for impr. 204, 3.
- Censere**—with acc. and inf., 84; with ut, 265, 4; with fut. pass. part., 277; censeo, yes, 259, 1, c; non censeo, no, 259, 2, c.
- Cernere**—with part., 56; with acc. and inf., 84.
- Certe**—yes, 259, 1, d; certo, yes, 259, 1, d.
- Certum est**—with acc. and inf., 83, 1; certiorum facere, with acc. and inf., 86.
- Cessare**—with inf., 77, 1.
- Ceu**—390, 1.
- Choosing**—vbs. of, with dat. ger., 35, III; with ad. + acc. ger., 35, III, r. 2; with final relative, 407, 8, a.
- Circa**—with acc. ger., 36; with pf. pass. part., 54, I, rem. 3.
- Circumstantial Cum**—see *Cum Historicum*.
- Citius quam**—constr. with, 449, 6, b, rem. 3.
- Cluere**—with nom. and inf., 105, c.
- Coepi**—with inf., 105, b, rem. 1; with nom. and inf., 105, b; coeptus esse, 105, b, rem. 1.
- Cogere**—with acc. and inf., 98; with ut, 265, 3; = conclude, 267.
- Cogitare**—with acc. and inf., 84.
- Cogitatio**—in phrases with ut, 279, a, b; 303.
- Cognitio**—in phrases with ut, 279, a, b; 303.
- Cognoscere**—with part., 56; with acc. and inf., 84; cognitu, 26, b.
- Coincidence**—relation of, 157.
- Colligere**—with acc. and inf., 84.
- Committere**—with fut. pass. part., 51; with ut, 302, 1.
- Commovere**—with ut, 265, 3.
- Commune**—in phrases with ut, 304.
- Comparative**—with abl. ger., 37, II, c; with quam ut, quam qui, and the subjv., 306; with quam quod, 306, b, rem. 1; with quam and acc. and inf., 306, b, rem. 2.
- Comparative Sentences**—in O. O., 322.
- Comparison**—conditional sentences of, 390–394.
- Compelling**—vbs. of, with ut, 265, 3.
- Comperire**—with acc. and inf., 84.
- Conari**—with inf., 77, 1; with si, 244.
- Concedere**—with fut. pass. part., 51; with dat. and inf., 95; with dat. and ut + subjv., 95; with consec. ut, 265; with acc. and inf., 267.
- Conception**—vbs. of, constrs. with, 56, 84, 103.
- Concessive**—subjv., tenses with, 213.
- Concessive Sentences**—395–400; particles, 396; correlatives, 397; participle, 55, IV; 398; moods, 399; with quamquam, 399, 1; with quamvis, 399, 2; with quamlibet, 399, 3; with licet, 399, 4; with etsi, etc., 399, 5; with cum, 426; relative, 407; with ut (ne), 213.

**Concludere**—with acc. and inf., 84.

**Concurrence**—relation of, 154; partial, 155; with dum, etc., 433-448. See *Dum*, etc.

**Condecet**—with acc. and inf., 83, 3.

**Condicio**—in phrases with ut, 279, a, b; 303; ea conditione correl. of ut, 264, 1, a; correl. of si, 344.

**Conditional Sentences**—335-389; causal relation of prot. to apodosis, 336-340; sign, 335; si quidem, 338; si modo, 340; neg. of si, 341; ita (sic) correl. of si, 342; tum, 343; ea conditione, 344; si non, 345; si non and nisi, 346; ni, 345, a, b; si minus, etc., 347; sin, 348; nisi forte, 349; nisi quod, 350; sive—sive, 351; substitution of protasis, 352; conditional sign omitted, 353; predicate of protasis omitted, 354; omission of protasis, 355; omission of apodosis, 357; classification of, 358; logical, 359; subjv. in apod., 360; ideal second person, 361; interrogative, 362; iterative, 363; ideal, 364-367; impf. as potential of past, 365; indic. apodosis, 366; in O. O., 367; unreal, 368-376; periphr. impf. subjv., 369; impf. denying continued past action, 370; pres. indic. in apodosis, 371; potential of the past, 372; apodosis supplied from context, 373; protasis repr. by sine + abl., 374; in O. O., 377; indic. mood in, 378; indic. of periphr. act. in, 380; with adj. and subst. predicates, 381; paene (prope) with. aor. indic. in apod., 382; indic. apod. in O. O., 383; periphr. indic. act. in O. O., 384; after vbs. requiring subjv. mood, 386; sequence after unreal pr., 387; unreal concessive, 388; distinguished from logical in O. O., 389; of comparison, 390-394.

**Conducere**—with fut. pass. part., 51.

**Confidere**—with acc. and fut. inf., 87.

**Confirmare**—with acc. and inf., 84.

**Conjugation**—periphrastic act., 168; pass., 43-45.

**Conqueri**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.

**Consecutive Sentences**—297-307; defined, 297; time of, 298; mood and tenses, 299; particles, 299, 1, a, b; 2, a, b; 3, a, b, c, d, e; 300; correl. of ut, 299, 3; restrictive ita (sic), 299, 3, d; ita (adeo)—non,—ut, 300; ut, how continued, 301; complementary, 302-306; with vbs. of doing and effecting, 302, 1; with impersonals, 302, 2; with vbs. of adding, 302, 3; with substantive predicates, 303; with adjective predicates, 304; with dignus, etc., 305; with quam ut (qui), 306; objectively considered, 307; -rus forms in, 307; exceptional sequence in, 178; tantum abest ut,—ut, 300, a; exclamatory questions in, 102; ut non = without, 288; relative, 407, 11; quin, 287, 2; 289; antequam, 449, 3-5; 454.

**Consentaneum**—with ut, 279, a; with inf., 73, 8, a.

**Consequi**—with ut, 302, 1; consequens est, with ut, 304.

**Consilium**—in phrases with ut, 279, b; eo consilio, correl. of ut, 264, 1, a.

**Conspicari**—with acc. and inf., 84.

**Conspicere**—with part., 56; with acc. and inf., 84.

**Constare**—with nom. and inf., 84; constat (impers.), with acc. and inf., 83, 3.

**Constituere**—with inf., 93; 266; with ut, 265, 4; 266.

**Consuefacere**—constr. with, 98.

**Consuescere**—constr. with, 98.

- Consuetudo**—in phrases, with *ut*, 303.
- Contemporaneous Action**—154. See *Temporal Clauses*.
- Contendere**—with *inf.*, 77, 2; with *ut*, 265, 5; with *acc.* and *inf.*, 267.
- Contingit**—with *ut*, 302, 2; with *quod*, 302, 3; 417, c; *contigit*, sequence after, 180.
- Continuance**—*vbs.* of, with *inf.*, 77.
- Contrasting**—*vbs.* of, with *fut. pass. part.*, 51.
- Convenire**—with *part.*, 56; *convenit*, with *acc.* and *inf.*, 83, 3; *conveniens*—in phrases with *ut*, 304.
- Coördination**—of *part.* in translation, 54, II.
- Copia**—in phrases, with *gen. ger.*, 29; with *inf.*, 33.
- Copulative Vbs.**—with *nom.* and *inf.*, 105.
- Correlatives**—omission of, 402, d.
- Creation**—*vbs.* of, with *inf.*, 77, 1, 2.
- Credere**—with *acc.* and *inf.*, 84; *constr.* of, in passive, 105, c.
- Credibile**—in phrases, with *ut*, 304.
- Cum (quum)**—421–426; temporal, 423; in iterative actions, 423, I, 3; explicative, 423, II; *fuit cum*, 423, II, b; *memini cum*, 423, III, a; *audire cum*, 423, III, b; with lapses of time, 423, IV; conditional, 423, V; *inversum*, 423, VI; *interim*, 423, VI, 3; *cum—tum*, both—and especially, 423, VII; historical, 424; causal, 425; concessive, 426; as *prep.* with *abl. ger.*, 37, II; *cum primum*, 428–432.
- Cunctari**—with *inf.*, 77, 2.
- Cupere**—with *pf. pass. part.*, 58; *constrs.* with, 93, a, b.
- Cupiditas**—in phrases with *ut*, 279, a; 303.
- Cura (curato)**—with *ut (ne)*, *pheriphr.* for *impr.*, 203, 1; 204, 1.
- Curare**—with *inf.*, 77, 1; with *part.*, 57; with *ut*, 265, 5.
- Dare**—with *fut. pass. part.*, 51; with *perf. pass. part.*, 57; with *sup. nuptum*, 22; = permit, with *ut*, 265, 6; with final relative, 407, 8, a; *operam dare*, with *dat. ger.*, 35, II, a; with *ut*, 279, b.
- Dative**—of *ger.*, 35; with *adjs.*, 35, I; with *vbs.*, 35, II; as indirect obj., 35, III; with boards, 35, V; with *esse*, 35, IV; with *inf.*, 106–107.
- De**—with *abl. ger.*, 37, II; with *perf. pass. part.*, 54, I, rem. 3.
- Debere**—with *inf.*, 77, 2; *impf.* as tense of disappointment, 131; with *nom.* and *inf.*, 105, b.
- Decet**—with *acc.* and *inf.*, 83, 3.
- Decernere**—with *inf.*, 93; 266; with *ut*, 265, 4; 266.
- Decreeing**—*vbs.* of, with *dat. ger.*, 35, III; with *ut*, 265, 4.
- Dedecet**—with *acc.* and *inf.*, 83, 3.
- Defessus**—with *inf.*, 17.
- Deliberative Question**—230, a; in O. O., 316. See *Interrogative Sentence*.
- Deligere**—with *fut. pass. part.*, 51; with final relative, 407, 8, a.
- Demanding**—*vbs.* of, with *ut*, 265, 2.
- Demirari**—with *quod*, 414; with *acc.* and *inf.*, 99, 415.
- Demonstratives**—*correl.* of *ut*, 299, 3; *attrib.* of *inf.*, 19.
- Demonstrare**—with *acc.* and *inf.*, 84.
- Demorari**—*constrs.* with, 286.
- Deponents**—defined, 3.

- Desiderare**—with inf., 77, 1.  
**Design**—see *Final Clause*.  
**Desinere**—with inf., 77, 2; *desitus esse*, 105, b., rem. 1.  
**Desire**—vbs. of, with part. 58; contrs. with, 93, a, 1, 2.  
**Desperare**—with acc. and fut. inf., 87.  
**Detertere**—with ne, etc., 284; with inf., 286, d.  
**Dicere**—with acc. and inf., 84; with nom. and inf., 105, c; with ut, 314, 1; dic, with direct questions, 255, a; dictu, 26, b.  
**Difficuly**—adjs. of, with abl. sup., 26.  
**Difficile est**—with acc. and inf., 83, 1; with abl. sup., 26, a; with ut, 304.  
**Dignus**—with abl. sup., 26, a; with ad + ger., 27, 1; constrs. with, 305.  
**Dimittere**—with acc. sup., 23, b; with fut. pass. part., 51.  
**Discere**—with inf., 77, 1; with acc. and inf., 84.  
**Disjunctive Questions**—direct, 233-236; 237-239; indirect, 247-248; 249-253.  
**Displeasure**—adjs. of, with abl. sup., 26.  
**Displicet**—with acc. and inf., 83, 3.  
**Disproportion**—by quam ut, quam qui, and subjv., 306; ut omitted, 306, a.  
**Dispudet**—with abl. sup., 26; with acc. and inf., 83, 3.  
**Dissimulare**—with acc. and inf., 83.  
**Docere**—with acc. and inf., 84.  
**Doing**—vbs. of, with ut, 302, 1; with quod, 417, c.  
**Dolere**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.  
**Donec**—ind. tenses, 434-437; = until, 438; tenses, 439, 440; subjv. 441-443.  
**Donicum**—see *Donce*.  
**Doubt**—vbs. of, with quin, 290.  
**Dropping**—vbs. of, with quod, 417, a; with ut, 302, 2.  
**Dubitare**—with neg. + inf., 290, d; non dubito quin, 290, b; with acc. and inf., 290, c; with interrog., 290, e; dubito an = perhaps, 245.  
**Dubium est**—constrs. with, 290, a, b, c, d, e; dubium est an = perhaps, 245.  
**Ducere**—with ut, 265, 7; = deem, with acc. and infin., 84, 267.  
**Dum**—enclitic, with impr., 198; with pres. ind., 123; in conditional wishes, 212; with indic., tenses, 434-437; dum historicum, 437; = until, 438; tenses, 439-440; subjv., 441-443.  
**Dum modo**—provided only, 212.  
**Duty**—vbs. of, with inf., 77, 2; 105, b.  
  
**Ease**—adjs. of, with abl. sup., 26.  
**Ecquis**—223, III, b, 6.  
**Edicere**—with acc. and inf., 84; with ut, 314.  
**Effecting**—vbs. of, with ut, 265, 7; with acc. and inf., 267.  
**Efficere**—with ut, 265, 7; with acc. and inf., 267.  
**Emotion**—vbs. of, with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414; with si, 414, c; with quia, 416.  
**Endeavor**—vbs. of, with inf., 77; with ut, 265, 5.  
**Ending**—vbs. of, with inf., 77.  
**Enim**—in answers to questions, 261.  
**Enti**—with inf., 77.  
**Epistolary Composition**—tenses in, 158.

- Erga**—with acc. ger., 36.
- Esse**—with gen. ger., 32, rem. 2; with dat. ger., 36, IV; with fut. pass. part., 43; with double nom., 104; with fut. act. part., 168; futurum esse ut, 115, III; futurum fuisse ut, 377, 3, a; -rum fuisse, 377, 1, a, b; in eo est ut, 174, a; est (= it is the case) ut, 302, 2; sunt qui + subjv., 407, 11, 1; fuit cum + subjv., 423, II, b.
- Etiam**—yes, 259, 1, d.
- Etiamsi**—concessive, 396; moods with, 399, 5; with part., etc., 398.
- Etsi**—concessive, 396; moods with, 399, 5; with part., etc., 398; = and yet, 401; = as if, 390, 1.
- Evadere**—with double nom., 104.
- Evenit**—with ut, 302, 2; with quod., 302, 2, a; 417, c.
- Ex**—with abl. ger., 37, II.
- Exclamations**—in acc. and inf., 102; exclamatory questions, 102; 258, 7, a.
- Exemplum**—in phrases with ut, 279, a; 303.
- Exhibere**—with part., 56.
- Existimare**—with acc. and inf., 84; with nom. and inf., 105, c.
- Exorare**—with ut, 265, 2.
- Exordiri**—with inf., 77.
- Experiri**—with si, 244.
- Explicative cum**—423, II.
- Exprimere**—with ut, 265, 7.
- Expugnare**—with ut, 265, 7.
- Exsequias ire**—22, rem. 1.
- Exsistere**—with double nom., 104.
- Expectare**—with si, 244.
- Extimescere**—constr. with, 292, a.
- Extorquere**—with ut, 265, 7.
- Extremum**—in phrases with ut, 304.
- Facere**—with finem and dat. ger., 35, III; with pres. part., 56; with perf. pass. part., 57; fac (ut) + subjv. for impr., 203, 2; fac ne + subjv. for impr., 204, 2; with ut, 265, 7; = represent, with acc. and inf., 267; facere non possum, etc., with ut non, etc., 289; factu, 26, b.
- Facilis**—with supine, 26, a; in phrases, with acc. and inf., 83, 1; with ut, 304.
- Facinus**—in phrases, with ut, 303; 279, a.
- Falsus**—in phrases, with ut, 304.
- Fama**—in phrases, with acc. and inf., 83, 2.
- Fas**—in phrases, with acc. and inf., 83, 2; with abl. sup., 26.
- Fateri**—with acc. and inf., 84.
- Fatum**—in phrases, with acc. and inf., 83, 2; with ut, 279, a; 304.
- Fearing**—vbs. of, 292-296; with inf., 293; with acc. and inf., 294; with indir. question, 295; vide, etc., 296.
- Ferox**—in phrases, with acc. and inf., 83, 2.
- Ferre**—with legem, etc., acc. and inf., 84; with ut, 279, b; in phrases with ut, 265, 7.
- Festinare**—with inf., 24.
- Fidere**—with acc. and fut. inf., 87.

- Fieri**—with double nominative, 104; with *ut*, 302, 2; *fieri non potest*, etc., *ut non*, etc., 289.
- Final Sentences**—262–286; two kinds, 263; pure, 264; particles in, 264, 1, 2; complementary, 265; substitutes, *inf.*, 266, 1; *acc.* and *inf.*, 266, 2, 3; 267; omission of *ut*, 268; negatives, 269; neg. complementary final, 270; negative of *quo*, 271; negative of pronouns, 272; negative extension of, 273; 274; negative with *aut*, *sed*, etc., 275; transition from negative to positive, 276; with adjective and substantive predicates and phrases, 279; parallel constrs., 25, 280; *nedum*, 281; *vbs.* of preventing, etc., 282; *quin*, 287, 1; *vbs.* of fearing, 292; *dum*, 441, 2; *antequam*, 449, 3, 5; relative, 407, 8, a.
- Fingere**—with *part.*, 56.
- Fitness**—*adjs.* of, with *dat. ger.*, 35, 1; with *rel.*, 407, 11, 1.
- Flagitare**—with *ut*, 265, 2.
- Foedus**—in phrases, with *ut*, 279, a, b; 303.
- Following**—*vbs.* of, with *ut*, 302, 2.
- Fore (futurum esse) ut**—115, III.
- Formidare**—with *inf.*, 77.
- Formido**—in phrases, with *ne*, 292, b.
- Forte**—*nisi forte*, 349.
- Fremere**—with *acc.* and *inf.*, 84.
- Frui**—*Attr. ger.*, 42; *fut. pass. part.*, 50.
- Fugere**—with *inf.* for *impr.*, 203, 5, b; *fugit me*, with *inf.*, 77.
- Function**—words of, with *dat. ger.*, 35, 1.
- Future**—definition of, 142; aoristic, 143; translation of, 144; of *velle* and *posse*, 144, a; in *impr.* sense, 145; 200, 1, b; 200, 2, c; 201, 1, b; 201, 2, c; *inf.*, 163, 6; *subjv.*, 161, 162; in *O. O.*, 163; *part. act.*, 168; *part. pass.*, 43; periphrastic representation of, 165, 166; 167; *futurum est ut* + *subjv.*, 173.
- Future Perfect (Exactum)**—definition of, 146; of *posse*, *velle*, etc., 147, a; repr. of future, 147; independent use of, 148; of *video*, 149; 150; in both clauses, 151; substituted by *impr.*, 152; of *memini*, etc., 153; trans. of, 153, a; *inf.*, 163; 164; *subjv.*, 161; 162; periphrastic representation of, 165; 166; 167.
- Future Passive Participle**—43–51; definition of 43; conjugation of, 44; 45; impersonal form of, 46; 47; 48; agent with, 49; of *utor*, etc., 50; with *vbs.*, 51; with *habere*, 51, rem. 3; with a negative, 52; in *abl. abs.*, 66.
- Futurm fuisse ut + subjv.**—377, 3, a.
- Gaudere**—with *acc.* and *inf.*, 99, 415; with *quod*, 414; with *si*, 414, c.
- Genitive**—of *gerund*, 29; with *causa*, 30; with *adjs.*, 31; to express purpose, 32; with *esse*, 32, rem. 2; with *esse* + *subst.*, 33; with phrases, 34; of *adj.* as *pred. attrib.* of *inf.*, 74, rem. 1.
- Genus**—in phrases with *ut*, 279, a; 303.
- Gerund (Attracted Gerund)**—28–42; *gen.* of, 28–34; *infin.* for, 33; *dat.* of, 35; *acc.* of, with *preps.*, 36; *abl.* of, 37; laws for attraction 38; 39; *intrans. vbs.*, not attracted, 40; attraction with personal pronouns, 41, 1, 2; with *utor*, etc., 42; partial attraction, 41, 4, 5; *gerund* in apposition, 41, 6.
- Giving**—*vbs.* of, with *fut. pass. part.*, 51; final relative, 407, 8, a.
- Gloriari**—with *acc.* and *inf.*, 99, 415; with *quod*, 414.
- Gratia**—with *gen. ger.*, 30.

**Graviter ferre**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.

**Habere**—with double nom., in. pass, 104, c; with fut. pass. part., 51; with pf. pass. part., 61; first impr. wanting, 199.

**Habit**—vbs. of, with inf., 77.

**Haesito**—with an + subjv., 245.

**Happening**—vbs. of, sequence after, 180; with ut, 302, 2; with quod, 302, 2, a; 417, c; with acc. and inf., 302, 2, a, rem.

**Haud scio an**—245; 246; with unreal condition, 245, b; as advb., 246.

**Hindering**—vbs. of, constrs. with, 283; 284.

**Historical Cum**—424.

**Historical Infinitive**—139.

**Historical Perfect**—see *Aorist*.

**Historical Present**—121.

**Historical Tenses**—see *Sequenc.*

**Hope**—vbs. of, constr. with, 87, a, b.

**Horrere**—constrs. with, 292, a.

**Hortari**—with ut, 265, 2.

**Iam**—with pres. ind., 117; iam diu, iam pridem, iam dudum, 117; with impf., 134.

**Ideal (Indefinite) Second Person**—101, rem. 2; how referred to, 101, rem. 2; 160.

**Ideal Condition**—364-367; mood and tenses, 364; with impf. subjv. as potential of past, 365; indic. apodosis, 366; potential vbs., 366, a; in O. O., 367.

**Ideal Wish**—see *Optative Subjunctive*, 207.

**Ideo (idcirco)**—correl. of si, 339; of causal particles, 411, 1, a.

**Idoneus**—constrs. with, 407, 11, e; 305.

**Ignore**—with acc. and inf., 84.

**Immane**—with quantum and indic., 257.

**Immensum**—with quantum and indic., 257.

**Immo**—uses of, 260, 1, 2.

**Impedimento**—with esse + ne and subjv., 282.

**Impedire**—with acc. and inf., 98; with ne, etc., 283; 286.

**Impellere**—with ut, 265, 3.

**Imperare**—constrs. with, 97, c.

**Imperative**—195-203; definition of, 195; absolute impr., 196, a; relative impr., 196, b; third person, 197; laws, etc., 198; strengthening words, 198, a; vbs. with no first impr., 199; positive impr. relations, 200; third pers., 200, 1; second pers., 200, 2; first pers., 200, 3; neg. impr. relations, 201; third pers., 201, 1; second pers., 201, 2; first pers., 201, 3; of past, 202; periphr. of, 203; representatives of, 204; for protasis, 204, 5, c; in O. O., 314.

**Imperfect**—131-138; actions expressed, 131; associated with aor., 136; resistance to pressure, 132; with plural subj., 133; with iam, iam diu, etc., 134; in descriptions, etc., 137; memineram, etc., 138; subjv., as potential of past, 194, 2; in wishes (unreal), 208, 1; with vellem, etc., 208, 4; as impr. of past, 202; in unreal condition, 381, 1. See *Sequence*.

**Impersonal**—form of fut. pass. part., 46; with verbs of saying, etc., in pass. voice, 105, c, rem. 2.

**Impersonal Vbs.**—with acc. and inf., 83, 3; with ut, 302, 2; with quod, 302, 3.

- Impertire laborem**—with dat. ger., 35, III.
- Impetrare**—with ut, 265, 2.
- Implorare**—with ut, 265, 2.
- Imponere**—with fut. pass. part., 51.
- In**—with acc. ger., 36; with abl. ger., 37, II; with pf. pass. part., 54, I, rem. 3.
- Incertum an**—with subjv., 245; 246, c, d.
- Incipere**—with inf., 105, b.
- Inclination**—vbs. of, with inf., 77; 105, b.
- Incredibile est**—with inf., 73; with acc. and inf., 83, 1; with abl. sup., 26, a; with quantum and indic., 257.
- Indefinite (Ideal) Second Person**—101, rem. 2; 160.
- Indicative**—defined, 5; tenses of, 116–158; in questions, 214; with nescio quis, etc., 256; in subordinate clauses, see *Conditional, Relative, Temporal Clauses*, etc.
- Indignari**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414; with si, 414, c.
- Indignus**—with abl. sup., 26; constrs. with, 207, 6; 305.
- Inducere**—with part., 56.
- Infinitive**—definition of, 8; cases of, 14; with satis est, etc., 15; with nouns, 16; with adjs., 17; with preps., 18; pronouns as attr. of, 19; uses of, 72–77; as noun subst., 72; 73; advbs. as attr., 73; gender of, 73; with adj. as pred. attr., 74; inf. pass. as subj., 75; in pred. apposition, 76; with potential vbs., 76, c; as object (complementary), 77; acc. with, 79–103; nom. with, 104–105; dative with, 106–107; as predicate, tenses of, 163; 164; periphr. representation of future, 166; 167; 171; acc. with, after vbs. of saying and thinking, 84; vbs. of hoping, 87; vbs. of emotion, 415; in exclamations, 102; as subj., 81–83; vbs. of fearing, 294; non dubito, 290, c; in relative clauses, 318; O. O., 312, etc. See *Historical Infinitive*.
- Infinitum**—with quantum and indic., 257.
- Infitias**—with ire, 22, rem. 1.
- Inquam**—in citing O. R., 308; inquit, position of, 308, a; subject of, 308, a, rems. 1, 2, 3, 4; with indef. subj., 308, rem. 5; subj. omitted, 308, a, rem. 7.
- Instare**—with ut, 265, 3.
- Insuescere**—constrs. with, 98.
- Intellegere**—with acc. and inf., 84; intellectu, 26, b.
- Intendere**—with inf., 77.
- Inter**—with acc. ger., 36; with part., 54, I, rem. 3.
- Intercedere**—constrs. with, 285.
- Intercludere**—constrs. with, 285.
- Interdicere**—constrs. with, 285; 286, d.
- Interest**—with acc. and inf., 83, 3; with ut, 279, d.
- Intermittere**—with inf., 77.
- Interpellare**—constrs. with, 285.
- Interponere**—constrs. with, 285.
- Interrogative Sentences**—214–261; defined, 214; kinds of questions, 215–220; interrog. words, 221; direct simple question, 222–223; particles in, 223; rhetorical, 224–229; defined, 224; 225; in O. O., 227; nonne continued by non, 228; quid? quid ergo? etc., 229; subjv. mood in direct question, 230; quidni, 231; force of an, 232; an vero? 232; direct double



- question, 233; 234; particles in, 233; forms of, 234; num—aut, 235; num—an, 236; direct double question = whether or not, 237; utrum excluded in simple question, 238; indirect question, 240; simple, 241; nonne, 241, a; num, 241, b; an = num, 242; indir. potential, 243; interrog. si, 244; haud scio an, etc., 245; 246; indir. disjunctive question, 247, 248; whether or not, 249; sive—sive, 250; utrum, as pronoun, 251; utrumne, 252; -rus forms, 253; compared with relative, 254; moods of indir. question, 255; mirum quantum + indic., 257; nescio quis, etc., 256; peculiarities in, 258; exclamatory questions, 258, 7; answers, 259–261.
- Intransitive Vbs.**—fut. pass. part. of, 46; ger. of, 40.
- Inusitatum**—in phrases with acc. and inf., 83, 1; with ut, 304.
- Invenire**—with part., 56.
- Inveniri**—with nom. and inf., 105, c; inventu, 26, b.
- Inversum**—cum, 423, VI.
- Invidere**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.
- Ire**—with infinitas, etc., 22, 1; with acc. sup., 23, b.
- Ita**—correl. of ut, 299, 3; restrictive, 299, 3, d; correl. of si, 342; 390, 1, a; yes, 259, 1, d.
- Iubere**—with acc. and inf., 97; other constrs., 97, a, b, rem. 1; with nom. and inf., in passive voice, 105, c, rem. 1.
- Iudicare**—with acc. and inf., 84; double nom., 104, c.
- Ius**—in phrases with ut, 279, a; 303.
- Laborem impertire**—with dat. ger., 35, III.
- Laborare**—with inf., 77; with ut, 265, 5.
- Laetari**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.
- Lamentari**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.
- Largiri**—with ut, 265, 3.
- Letting**—vbs. of, with fut. pass. part., 51.
- Leaving**—vbs. of, with fut. pass. part., 51.
- Letters**—see *Epistolary Composition*.
- Lex**—in phrases with ut, 279, a, b; 303.
- Licere**—exact use of fut. perf., 147, a; licet, with acc. and inf., 83, 3; with dat. and inf., 107; = although, 399, 4.
- Litterae**—in phrases with ut, 279, b.
- Locare**—with fut. pass. part., 51.
- Logical Condition**—359–362; tenses, 359; in O. O., 359; apodosis in subjv., 360; ideal second person, 361; apodosis interrogative, 362.
- Longe abest**—ut, 302, 2.
- Longum est**—indic. for subjv., 376.
- Loqui**—with acc. and inf., 84.
- Lugere**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.
- Maerere**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.
- Malle**—with inf., 77, 1; malim, 194, 2, a; mallem, 194, 2, b; in wishes, 210, a, b.
- Mandare**—with fut. pass. part., 51; with ut, 265, 2.
- Manere**—with double nom., 104.
- Maturare**—with inf., 24.

- Meditari**—with inf., 77.
- Memini**—with first impr. wanting, 199; with pres. inf., 119; with cum + indic., 423, III, a.
- Memorable**—with abl. sup., 26, b.
- Memoria tenere**—with acc. and inf., 86; with pres. inf., 119, rem. 1.
- Mens**—in phrases with ut, 279, b; 303; in mentem venire, with inf., 77.
- Metuere**—with ne, etc., 292, a; with inf., 293; with acc. and inf., 294.
- Metus est**—constrs. with, 292, b.
- Middle Voice**—13, e.
- Minari**—with acc. and fut. inf., 87; with inf., 87, a.
- Minime**—"By no means," 259, 2, b.
- Minus**—si minus, sin minus, 347, rem.
- Mirari**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414; with si, 244, a; 414, c.
- Mirum**—with acc. and inf., 83, 1; with si, 244, a; 414, c; with quantum + indic., 257; with ut, 304; with quod, 414; with ni, 414, c, rem.
- Mittere**—with acc. sup., 23, b; with fut. pass. part., 51; mitte with inf. for impr., 203, 5, b; with quod, 417, a.
- Modo**—provided only, 212.
- Moleste ferre**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.
- Moliri**—with inf., 77.
- Monere**—with inf., 77; with ut, 265, 2; with acc. and inf., 267.
- Mood**—defined, 2, a; indic., 5; subjv., 6; impr., 7; inf., 8; in O. O., 312; in indirect question, 255-257. See *various clauses*.
- Morari**—with ne, etc., 286.
- Mora est**—constrs. with, 286.
- Mos**—in phrases with ut, 303; with acc. and inf., 83, 2.
- Motion**—vbs. of, with acc. sup., 21; with fut. part., 55, VII.
- Movere**—with acc. sup., 21; with ut, 265, 3.
- Munus**—in phrases with ut, 279, a.
- Nam**—in answers to questions, 261.
- Narrare**—with acc. and inf., 84.
- Nasci**—with double nom., 104, a; natu, 27, b.
- Nē**—neg. of impr., 201; continued by neve (neque), 201, a; neg. of opt. subjv., 206; nedum, 212; concessive subjv., 213; in final clauses, 269, 1; ut ne, 269, 2; neg. of final quo, 271; with vbs. of hindering, etc., 282, etc.; with vbs. of fearing, 292; ne non, 292, d.
- ne**—as interrog. particle, 223, 1; enclitic with interrog. words, 223, II; = nonne, 223, II, rem. 1; added to num, 223, III; anne, 232, rem. 2; in double questions, 233; necne, 237; in second member disjunctive question, 247.
- Necessarium**—in phrases with ut, 304.
- Necesse est**—with inf., 77; with acc. and inf., 83, 3; with dat. and inf., 107; with ut + subjv., 279, d; ut omitted, 279, d.
- Necubi**—272.
- Necunde**—272.
- Nedum**—281; nedum ut, 281, a, rem.
- Nefas**—with abl. sup., 26, a; with inf., 77; with acc. and inf., 83, 2.
- Negare**—with acc. and inf., 84.

- Negatives**—neg. of potential subjv., 194; of impr., 201; of optative, 206; *noli* + inf. for impr., 204. See *Ne and Non*.
- Negotium**—in phrases with *ut*, 279, a; 303.
- Nempe**—yes, 259, 1, e.
- Neque**—continuation of *ne*, 201, 1, a; 208, 2, rem. 1; 212, a; 274.
- Nequire**—with inf., 77.
- Nescio**—an, 245, 246; with unreal condition, 245, b; *nescio quis*, etc., 256; with inf., 77.
- Neu**—continuation of *ne*, 201, 1; 208, 2, rem. 1; 212, a; 274.
- Neve**—see *Neu*.
- Ni**—in protestations, 211; in conditions, 345; with *mirum*, 414, c, rem.
- Nisi**—in protestations, 211; in conditions, 346; after negatives, 346, a; *nisi si*, 346, b; *nisi ut*, 346, g; *nisi non*, 346, h; *nisi forte*, 349; *nisi quod*, 359; with part., 352, 3, a; = without, 288, 7.
- Niti**—with *ut*, 265, 5.
- No**—how translated, 259, 2, a, b, c, d.
- Nolle**—with inf., 77; nom. and inf., 105, b; fut. perf. of, 147, a; *nolim*, 194, 2, a; *nollem*, 194, 2, b; in wishes, 207, a; 208, 4; *noli* + inf. for impr., 204, 4 with part., 58; constrs. with, 93, a, b; has no periphrasis, 163, 6, a.
- Nominari**—with double nom., 104, c.
- Nominative**—with inf., 104, 105.
- Non**—neg. of potential, 194; of wish, 206; *non possum non*, with inf., 289, c; for *ne*, 206, 207. See *Negatives*.
- Nonne**—in questions, 223, 11; continued by *non*, 228; in indir. questions, 241, a; in rhetorical questions, 227.
- Noscere (novi)**—with acc. and inf., 84.
- Num**—in direct questions, 223, 111; in indirect questions, 241, b; in rhetorical questions, 227; *num*—aut, 235; *num*—an, 236.
- Num quando**—223, 111, b, 3.
- Num quis**—223, 111, b, 2.
- Num qui**—223, 111, b, 4.
- Nuntiare**—with acc. and inf., 84; with nom. and inf., 105.
- Ob**—with acc. ger., 36; with pf. part. pass, 51, I, rem. 3.
- Obicere**—with fut. pass. part., 51.
- Object**—of ger., 39, 1, 2; with acc. sup., 21; none with abl. sup., 26, b, rem. 1.
- Obsecro**—strengthens impr., 198, a; with *ut*, 265, 2.
- Obsistere**—constrs. with, 285.
- Obstare**—constrs. with, 283–285.
- Obtestari**—with acc. and inf., 84.
- Officium**—in phrases with *ut*, 279, a; 303.
- Omittere**—with inf., 77; with inf. for impr., 203, 5, b; with *quod*, 417, a.
- Omitting**—vbs. of, with *quod*, 417, a.
- Operam dare**—with dat. ger., 35, 11, a; with *ut*, 279, b.
- Opinio est**—with acc. and inf., 83, 2; in phrases with *ut*, 303.
- Oportet**—with inf., 77; with acc. and inf., 83, 3; with subjv., 279, d.
- Oppido**—with quantum and indie., 257.
- Oppugnare**—constrs. with, 286.

**Optare**—constrs. with, 93, a, b; 265, 1.

**Optative Subjunctive**—205-210; kinds of wishes, 205; particles, 206; ideal, 207; unreal, 208; qui = utinam, 209; mallet, 210; in asseverations, 211; in conditional wish, 212; concessive, 213; in final clauses, 262; in deliberative questions, 230; in O. O., 314, 3; as impr., 200.

**Opus est**—with inf., 77; with acc. and inf., 83, 2; with nom. and inf., 105; with ut, 279, a; 303; with abl. sup., 26.

**Orare**—with ut, 265, 2; with acc. and inf., 278.

**Oratio Obliqua**—308-334; defined, 309; subjective, 309, a; how introduced, 310; moods in, 311, 312; time of speaker, 313; interrog. sentences in, 314, 4; imperatives in, 314; original subjunctives in, 314, 2; wishes in, 314, 3; rhetorical question in, 315; potential question in, 316, 317; relative clauses in, 318, 319; real questions in, 320; transition from neg. to pos. gov. vb., 321; comparative sentences in, 322; indic. in subordinate clauses, 323; tenses in, 324-332; shifting tense of gov. vb., 325; transition to O. R., 326; shifting tenses of subordinate vbs., 323; subjv. in leading O. O. clause, 314, 330; subordinate clauses in, 331; double O. O., 332; pronouns in, 333, 334; conditional sentences in, see *Conditional Sentences*.

**Oratio Recta**—defined, 308; how introduced, 308, a, b, c.

**Ostendere**—with acc. and inf., 84.

**Paene**—with aor. indic. in apod. of unreal condition, 382.

**Par**—in phrases with dat. ger., 35, I; with acc. and inf., 83, 1.

**Parce**—with inf. for impr., 203, 5, b.

**Partial Obliquity**—309, a.

**Participial Clauses**—for relative and finite vb., 55, I; of means, 55, II; of condition, 55, III; of concession, 55, IV; of time, 55, V; of cause, 55, VI.

**Participle**—definition of, 12; as attributive, 54; fut. pass., 43-51; with vbs. of perception, 56; with vbs. of causation, 57; with neg. translated "without," 60; 288, 7; in abl. abs., 62; fut. act. part., subordinate relations, 55, VII; periphr. tenses with, 168; sequence after, 191; in interrog. clauses, 258, 4; for protasis, 352, 2; pf. with habere and tenere, 61.

**Patior**—constrs. with, 94

**Pavere**—constrs. with, 292, a.

**Pavor est**—constrs. with, 292, b.

**Pavidus**—constrs. with, 292, c.

**Per**—with pf. pass. part., 54, rem. 3.

**Perceiving**—vbs. of, with part., 56; with acc. and inf., 84.

**Perfect**—defined, 124; translated by Eng. pr., 124, rem. 1; gnomic, 126; for fut. pf., 127; with temporal designation, 128; sequence after, 175, I, 4, a; part., with habere and tenere, 61; subjv., 161, 5; as impr., 204, 5, c, rem.; inf., 163, 3; part., with vbs. of causation and desire, 57, 58; in abl. abs., 64; as attrib., 54; as fut. pf., 127.

**Perficere**—with ut, 265, 7.

**Perhibere**—with nom. and inf., 105, c.

**Periculum est**—constrs. with, 292, b.

**Perinde**—correl. of quasi, etc., 390, 1, a.

- Periphrasis**—for impr., 203; for future tenses, 165, 166; for apodosis of unreal conditions in O. O., 377, etc.; 383, etc.; 384, etc.; for apodosis of unreal conditions stated subjunctively, 386.
- Periphrastic Conjugation**—pass., 43–51; act., 168–173; in eo est (= it is on the point) ut, 174.
- Permittere**—with fut. pass. part., 51; constrs. with, 95; 107; 265, 6.
- Permitting**—vbs. of, constrs. with, 51; 95; 107; 265, 6.
- Perseverare**—with inf., 77.
- Perspicere**—with acc. and inf., 84.
- Persuadere**—constrs. with, 96.
- Pessum**—with dare (ire), 22, rem. 1.
- Petere**—with fut. pass. part., 51; with ut, 265, 2.
- Placet**—with acc. and inf., 83, 3.
- Pleasure**—adjs. of, with abl. sup., 26, b.
- Pluperfect**—definition of, 140; no independent usage, 141; trans. by impf., 154, II, b; periph. with habeo, 61; subjv. as impr. of past, 202; in wishes, 206; inf., 163, 5.
- Polliceri**—constrs. with, 87, a, b.
- Ponere**—“suppose,” with acc. and inf., 86.
- Poscere**—with ut, 265, 2.
- Posse**—with inf., 77, 1; with nom. and inf., 105, b; use of fut. pf., 147, a; no periph. for, 164, 6, a; non possum non, etc., 289, c; in apodosis of unreal condition, 381; in unreal condition in O. O., 385; in ideal condition, 366, a; in unreal condition stated subjunctively, 386, 5.
- Post**—with pf. part. pass., 54, I, rem. 3.
- Posteaquam**—see *Postquam*.
- Posteriority**—relation of, see *Antequam*.
- Postquam**—428–432; with hist. pr. and aor., 428, 3; with impf., 429, 1; with plup., 429, 2; with pr. tenses, 430; with fut. tenses, 431; with subjv., 432.
- Postridiequam**—see *Postquam*.
- Postulare**—with ut, 265, 2.
- Potential Subjunctive**—194; of pr. and fut., 194, 1; of past, 194, 2; of posse, velle, etc., 194, 2, a, b; of video, 150; in questions, 230; tenses in, 230, 1, 2; explained, 356.
- Potiri**—with attr. ger., 42; personal form of fut. pass. part., 50.
- Potius quam**—constrs. with, 449, 6, b, rem. 3.
- Power**—vbs. of, with inf., 77; substantives of, with gen. ger., 29.
- Praebere**—with fut. pass. part., 51.
- Praecipere**—with inf., 77; nom. and inf. in pass., 105, c; with ut, 265, 2.
- Praecipuum**—in phrases with ut, 304.
- Praeesse**—with dat. ger., 35, II.
- Praeficere**—with dat. ger., 35, II.
- Praestare**—with ut, 265, 3.
- Praeter**—with pf. pass. part., 54, I, rem. 3; praeterquam quod, 420.
- Praeterire**—with quod, 417, a.
- Praetermittere**—constrs. with, 284, a, b; 285; 287, 1, b.
- Precari**—with ut, 265, 2.

- Prepositions**—with acc. ger., 36; with abl. ger., 37, II; with pf. pass. part., 54, I, rem. 3.
- Present**—116–122; definition of, 116; actions expressed, 116; with iam, iam diu, etc., 117; gnomic, 118; inf. after memini, 119; historical, 121; for fut., 122; with dum, 123; subjv., tense relations in, 161; 162; inf., 163; 164; histor. sequence, 186; subjv. as potential, 194; as impr., 200, I. a; in wishes, 205; as concessive, 213.
- Preventing**—vbs. of, constrs. with, 283, 284.
- Priediequam**—449, 6, b, rem. 3.
- Principal Tenses**—see *Sequence of Tenses*.
- Priority**—relation of, see *Postquam*, etc.
- Priusquam**—see *Antequam*.
- Pro**—with abl. ger., 37, II.
- Probare**—with acc. and inf., 84.
- Prodere**—with fut. pass. part., 51.
- Prodesse**—with dat. ger., 35, II.
- Proficere**—with ut, 265, 7.
- Proficisci**—with acc. sup., 26, b.
- Prohibere**—with acc. and inf., 98; other constrs., 283; 286, c; 287, 1.
- Proinde**—correl. of quasi, etc., 390, 1, a.
- Prolepsis**—258, 1.
- Promising**—vbs. of, constrs. with, 87, a, b.
- Promittere**—constrs. with, 87, a, b.
- Pronouns**—in O. O., 333.
- Pronuntiare**—with acc and inf., 84; in pass., with nom. and inf., 105, c.
- Prope est**—with ut, 302, 2.
- Properare**—with inf., 24.
- Proponere**—with fut. pass. part., 51.
- Propositum est**—with ut, 279, a; 303.
- Proprium est**—with ut, 304.
- Propter**—with acc. ger., 36; with pf. pass. part., 54, I, rem. 3.
- Prospicere**—with acc. and inf., 84; with ut, 265, 5.
- Protasis**—defined, 335, 336; equivalents of, 352; omission of predicate, 354; total omission of, 355.
- Protestation**—see *Asseverations*.
- Providere**—with ut, 265, 5.
- Proximum**—in phrases with ut, 304.
- Pudet**—with abl. sup., 26.
- Pugnare**—constrs. with, 265, 5; 286.
- Purpose**—in acc. supine, 21; parallel constrs., 25; inf., 17, rem. 1; gen. ger., 30; dat. ger., 35, 11; fut. part., 55, VII; ut + subjv., 264; pres. part., 25; ad + ger., 35, 11, rem. 1; relative, 407, 8. See *Final Sentence*.
- Putare**—with acc. and inf., 84; constr. of, in passive, 105, c.
- Putting**—vbs. of, with fut. pass. part., 51.
- Quaerere**—with ut, 265, 2.
- Quaeso (quaesumus)**—strengthening impr., 198, a.
- Qualis**—in nominal questions, 221, 1.

- Quam**—quam ut, quam qui + subjv., 306; quam si, 390, 1; with adjs. in questions, 221, 1; potius (prius) quam, 449, 6, b, rem. 3. See *Comparative Sentences*.
- Quamdiu**—433-443. See *Dum*.
- Quamlibet**—398; with participles and adjs., 398; with subjv., 399, 3.
- Quam ob rem**—with subjv., 407, 11, e.
- Quamquam**—with adj. or part., 398, b; with indic., 399, 1; with subjv., 399, rem.; = and yet, 401.
- Quam si**—see *Quasi*.
- Quamvis**—with part. or adj., 398, b; with subjv., 399, 2; with indic., 399, 2, rem. 1; inflection of, 399, 2, rem. 2.
- Quando**—causal, with indic., 411, 2; with subjv., 411, 2, rem. 1; interrogative, 221, 2, b; conditional, 352.
- Quandoque**—411, 2.
- Quandoquidem**—411, 2.
- Quantus**—in questions, 221, 1; quantum + indic., with mirum, etc., 257.
- Quantumvis**—constrs. with, 398: 399, 3.
- Quare**—with subjv., 407, 11, e.
- Quasi**—390, 1; in ironical language, 390, c; = for example, 391; = on the ground that, 392; with part., 393; in figurative language, 394.
- Quatenus**—causal, with indic., 411, 2; with subjv., 411, 2, rem. 1.
- Queri**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.
- Questions**—see *Interrogative Sentences*.
- Qui**—interrogative, 221, 2, c; equiv. of utinam, 209; relative, 402-407; quam qui + subjv., 306; with ut, utpote, etc., 407, 9, a; equiv. of si quis, 407, 7; quod sciam, etc., 407, 6; final, 407, 8; concessive, 407, 9; explicative, 407, 9, d, rem. See *Relative*.
- Quia**—causal, 411, 1; with vbs. of doing, 417, c; vbs. of emotion, 416; rejected reason, non quia, etc., 412.
- Quicumque**—with indic., etc., 406.
- Quidem**—with sane, "yes," 259, 1, d.
- Quidni**—introd. rhetorical question, 231.
- Quin**—with indic. as impr., 200, 3, a; 200, 2, e; 291, a; with impr., 200, 2, e, rem.; 291, b; with indic., of a strong assurance, 291, b; final, 287, 1; consecutive, 287, 2, etc.; interrogative, 290, etc.; fieri non potest quin, 289; = without, 288; non quin = not because not, 412, 5.
- Quippe**—strengthens qui, 407, a, b, c, d; = yes, 259, 1, e.
- Quire**—with inf., 77.
- Quis (qui)**—interrogative, 221, 1, a; qui in wishes, 209.
- Quisnam**—interrogative, 223, 111, b, 1.
- Quisquis**—with indic., 406.
- Quo**—final, 264, 2, a, b, c; non quo in causal clauses, 412, 4, c; ne as neg., 271.
- Quoad**—with indic., 434, 435; = until, with indic., 439, 440; with subjv., 441-443.
- Quod**—409-420; causal, 409-413; non quod, etc., 412; with vbs. of emotion, 414; with impersonals, 416; with vbs. of adding and dropping, 417, b; with vbs. of doing, 417, c; with demonstratives, 418; = "as to the fact that," etc., 419; magis quod, etc., 413; quod si, 419, 3; nisi quod, 420; præterquam quod, 420; tantum quod, 420, rem. 1; quod, as relative, see *Relative Sentences*.

**Quom**—see *Cum*.

**Quominus**—with vbs. of preventing, etc., 282, etc.; with vbs. of refusing, 285, etc.; with vbs. of delay, 286, etc.; per aliquem stare quominus, 286, a.

**Quomodo**—in questions, 221, 2, d.

**Quoniam**—causal, with indic., 411, 2; with subjv., 411, 2, a, rem. 1.

**Quo setius**—286, b.

**Quotusquisque**—with consec. rel., 407, 11, h.

**Rarum**—in phrases with ut, 304.

**Ratio**—in phrases with ut, 279, a; 303.

**Recordari**—with acc. and inf., 84; with pres. inf., 119.

**Rectum**—in phrases with ut, 279, a; 303.

**Recusare**—constrs. with, 285; 286, d.

**Reddere**—with pf. pass. part., 57.

**Refert**—with ut, 279, d; with acc. and inf., 83, 3.

**Reflexive**—in O. O., 333, etc.; subjective, 333, II, e, 1, 2; ref. to indef. subj. (= aliquem) of inf., 333, II, e, 4.

**Refraining**—vbs. of, constrs. with, 285, etc.

**Refusing**—vbs. of, constrs. with, 285; 286, d.

**Relative Clauses**—402–403; how introduced, 403; particles, 404; translation of, 405; moods in, 405; 407; indef. rel. with indic., 406; subjv. in O. O., 407, 1; subjv. in iterative actions, 407, 2; in wishes, 407, 3; potential, 407, 5; ideal second person, 407, 4; in restrictive clauses, 407, 6; conditional, 407, 7; final, 407, 8; causal, 407, 9; concessive, 407, 10; consecutive, 407, 11; repr. by part., 408; in O. O., 318; for prot., 352.

**Relinquere**—with fut. pass. part., 51; relinquitur, with ut, 302, 2.

**Reliquum**—in phrases with ut, 304.

**Remorari**—constrs. with, 286.

**Reperiri**—with nom. and inf., 105, c.

**Representation**—vbs. of, with acc. and inf., 84; with part., 56.

**Repugnare**—constrs. with, 286.

**Resistere**—constrs. with, 285, etc.

**Resolving**—vbs. of, constrs. with, 265, 4 and rem.

**Respicere**—with part., 56; with acc. and inf., 84.

**Respice**—with direct question, 255, a.

**Respondere**—with acc. and inf., 84.

**Responde**—with direct question, 255, a.

**Restat**—with ut, 302, 2.

**Restrictions**—with quod, etc., 407, 6.

**Result**—see *Consecutive Sentences*.

**Retinere**—constrs. with, 283, etc.

**Rhetorical Questions**—see *Interrogative Sentences*.

**Rogare**—with fut. pass. part., 51; with ut, 265, 2.

**-rum fuisse**—377, etc.

**-rus fuerit**—386, etc.

**Sane**—strengthens impr., 198, a; with concessive subj., 213; with quam + indic., 257; yes, 259, 1, d.



**Sapientia**—in phrases with *ut*, 303.

**Saying**—vbs. of, with acc. and inf., 84; with nom. and inf., in passive, 105, a; with *quin*, 290; omitted, 310; attr. in subjv. mood, 329; with *quod*, 418, 6, b.

**Scientia**—in phrases with *ut*, 303.

**Scilicet**—yes, 259, 1, c.

**Scire**—with first impr. wanting, 199; with acc. and inf., 84; with nom. and inf., in passive, 105; *quod sciam*, 497, 6; *scitu*, 26, b.

**Scribere**—with acc. and inf., 84; with *ut*, 314.

**Secus**—strengthens *sin*, 348; correl. of *quasi*, 390, 1, a.

**Securing**—vbs. of, with nom. and inf., 105, c, rem. 1.

**Semel**—see *Ut Semel*.

**Sending**—vbs. of, with acc. sup., 21; with fut. pass. part., 51; with relative, 407, 8, a.

**Sentences**—causal, 409–413; conditional, 335–389; concessive, 395–400; consecutive, 297–307; final, 262–286; object, 417, etc.; relative, 402–408; temporal, 427, etc.

**Sententia**—in phrases with *ut*, 303.

**Sentire**—with part., 56; with acc. and inf., 84.

**Sequence of Tenses**—175–193; special sequence with pf., 175, I, 4, a; fut. subjv. relations, 175, I, 4, b; 175, II, 9, b; peculiarities of, 176, etc.; general statements after past vb., 176; in result clauses, 178; distinguish aor. and impf. subjv. in result clause, 179, rem.; vbs. of happening, 180; potential of past, 181, 2, 3; past subj. relation after pr. leading vb., 182; special rule in O. O., 183; with unreal pr., 184; parenthetical clauses, 185; hist. pr., 186; pr. of writer, 187; hist. inf., 188; *dum* in narrative, 189; with inf, ger., etc., 190; illustration of, 191; with past inf. and pr. gov. vb., 192; with subjv., 193.

**Sequitur**—with *ut*, 302, 2.

**Seu**—see *Sive*.

**Showing**—vbs. of, with acc. and inf., 84; with nom. and inf., 105, c.

**Si**—with *o* in wishes, 206; alone in wishes, 206; *sis*, *sultis*, 198, a, rem.; with vbs. of trial, 244; sign of condition, 335; *si quidem*, 338; *si modo*, 212, rem. 2; 340; *si non* and *nisi*, 346; *si minus*, 347; *si forte*, 349, a.

**Sic**—correl. of *ut*, 299, 3; correl. of *si*, 342; 390, 1, a.

**Siout (sicut si)**—in conditional sentence of comparison, 390, 1.

**Significare**—with acc. and inf., 84.

**Signum**—in phrases with *ut*, 303.

**Similiter**—correl. of *quasi*, 390, 1, a.

**Simul**—428–432. See *Postquam*.

**Simulac (atque)**—428–432. See *Postquam*.

**Simul et**—428–432. See *Postquam*.

**Simul ut**—428–432. See *Postquam*.

**Simulac primum**—428–432. See *Postquam*.

**Simulare**—with acc. (reflex. pron.) and inf., 97, c, rem. 2.

**Sin**—use of, 348; strengthened by *minus*, etc., 347, rem.; 348.

**Sine**—without, 288, 6.

- Sinere**—with acc. and inf., 94; other constrs., 92, rem. 1; nom. and inf., passive voice, 105, c, rem. 1.
- Singulare**—in phrases with ut, 304.
- Si quidem**—388.
- Sis** (= *si vis*)—198, a, rem.
- Sive**—**Sive**—351.
- So-called**—how expressed, 55, I, c.
- Sodes**—strengthens impr., 98, a.
- Solere**—with inf., 77, 2.
- Sollicitari**—with acc. and inf., 99, 415; with quod, 414.
- Sollicitus**—in phrases with ne, 292, c.
- Solus**—with consec. rel., 407, 11, d.
- Sompiare**—with acc. and inf., 84.
- Spectare**—with part., 56.
- Sperare**—constrs. with, 87, a, b, c.
- Spes est**—with acc. and inf., 88, a; with ut, 303.
- Stare**—per me stare, constrs. with, 284, a, b; 286, a; 287, 1, a.
- Statuere**—with inf., 265, 4, rem.; with ut, 265, 4; with fut. pass. part., 277; with acc. and inf., 266, 2; 277.
- Studere**—constrs. with, 266, 1, 2, 3.
- Suadere**—constrs. with, 96.
- Subject**—of inf., 78; omitted, 89, a; prominently presented in trans., 90; of inf. same as subj. of leading vb., 92; prolepsis, 258, 1.
- Subjective**—O. O., 309; reflexive, 333, II, e, 1, 2.
- Subjunctive**—defined, 6, 159; tense relations of, 161, 162; periphrastic representation of, 165; potential, 194; of pr., 194, 1; of past, 194, 2; optative, 205; as impr., 200, 201, etc.; in wishes, 205; impf. as unreal of past, 208, 3; in asseverations, 211; in conditional wishes, 212; as concessive, 213; in direct (potential) questions, 230; in indirect questions, 240; in final sentences, 262, etc.; in consecutive sentences, 297; in O.O., 312; in conditional sentences, see *Ideal, Unreal*; with historical cum, 424; with causal cum, 425; with concessive cum, 426; in relative sentences, 407; in temporal sentences, see *Antequam, Postquam*, etc.; tenses, see *Sequence*.
- Subordination**—with part., 54, II.
- Subsequent Action**—see *Posteriority*.
- Substantives**—with gen. ger., 29; with inf., 33; with dat. ger., 35, II, a; in abl. abs., 62; in phrases with ut, 303; with acc. and inf., 83, 2; in apod. unreal condition, 381.
- Sultis** (= *si vultis*)—strengthens impr., 198, a.
- Super**—with abl. ger., 37, II; super quam quod, etc., 420.
- Supervacuum est**—indic. for subjv., 376.
- Supine**—defined, 11, 20; acc. of, 21–25; parallel constrs., 25; vbs. with, 23, b; -um iri, how explained, 23, c; abl. of, 26; parallel constrs., 27; no obj., 26, b, rem. 1; dep. clause with facile est factu, 27, 5; expressing state from which, 27, 7.
- Suppetias ire**—22, rem. 1.
- Suscipere**—with fut. pass. part., 51.
- Susplicari**—with acc. and inf., 84.

**Suspiciere**—with acc. and inf., 84.

**Syntax**—of verb, defined, 1-20.

**Taking**—vbs. of, with fut. pass. part., 51.

**Talis**—correl. of consec. ut, or qui, 299, 3, a, b.

**Tam**—correl. of consec. ut, or qui, 299, 3, a, b; correl. of quasi, etc., 390, 1, a.

**Tamen**—emphasizes adversative relation, 347; 399, 5, b, c; 400.

**Tametsi**—396; 399, 5, c; = and yet, 401.

**Tamquam** (**si**)—390, 1; with part., 391; = on the charge that, 392; with part. = as if, 393, a; in figurative language, 394.

**Tantus**—correl. of ut, or qui, 299, 3, a, b; tantum abest, 300, a, b; tantum quod, 420, rem. 1.

**Temperare**—constrs. with, 285; 287, 1, a.

**Temporal Sentences**—427-454; priority, relation of, with postquam, etc., 428-432; with indic. tenses, 429-431; with subjv., 432; concurrence, relation of, with dum, etc., 433-443; particles, 434; with tenses of incomplete action, 434; with tenses of completed action, 435; dum historicum, 437; = until, 438; tenses, 439, 440; with subjv., 441-443; posteriority, relation of, with antequam, etc., 444-454; particles, 444-447; tenses with, 447-448; subjv. mood, 449-454. See *Cum*.

**Tempus**—with inf. or gen. ger., 33.

**Tendency**—see *Consecutive Sentences*.

**Tenere**—with pf. part., 61; memoria tenere, with acc. and inf., 86; with pr. inf., 119; tenere = prevent, constrs. with, 285.

**Tenses**—defined, 108; divisions of time, 109; future tenses, 110; actions, 111; classification of, 112; definition of subjv., 113; of impr., 114; of inf., 115; force of indic., 116-153; concurrence, etc., 154; partial concurrence, 155; in epistolary composition, 158; of subjv., 161, 162; of pred. inf., 162; pass. inf., 164; periphr. repr., of fut. subjv., 165; periphr. repr. of fut. inf., 166; 167; subj. of periphr., 170; inf. of periphr., 171; sequence of, 175; special cases of sequence, 176-192; in O. O., 324. See *Sequence of Tenses*.

**Tentare**—with inf., 77; with si, 244.

**Tertium**—in phrases with ut, 304.

**Testis est**—with acc. and inf., 83, 2.

**Thinking**—vbs. of, with acc. and inf., 84; nom. and inf., in pass., 105, a; vbs. of omitted, 310; attr. into subjv. after quod, 399; with quod, 418, 6, b.

**Threat**—vbs. of, constrs. with, 87, a, b.

**Time**—divisions of, 109; lapses of, with cum, 423, IV. See *Tenses*.

**Timere**—with ne, etc., 292, a; with inf., 293; with acc. and inf., 294.

**Timor est**—constrs. with, 292, b.

**Torqueri**—with ne, 292, a.

**Tradere**—with acc. and inf., 84; with nom. and inf., in passive, 105, a; with fut. pass. part., 51.

**Trial**—vbs. of, with interrog. si, 244.

**Tribuere**—with fut. pass. part., 51; with ut, 265, 6.

**Tueri**—with part., 56; with acc. and inf., 84.

**Tum**—correl. of si, 343; correl. of cum, 421, 1; cum—tum, 423, VII.

**Tuum**—in phrases with *ut*, 304; *tui*, with gen. ger., 41, 2.

**Ubi**—428-432. See *Postquam*.

**Ubi primum**—428-432. See *Postquam*.

**Ubi semel**—428-432. See *Postquam*.

**Uncertainty**—vbs. of, with *quin*, 290.

**Undertaking**—vbs. of, with fut. pass. part., 51.

**Unreal Condition**—368-389; with impf. subjv. in opposition to past, 368, 4; with indic. in apod., 378, 381; pr. tenses in, 368, 4, b; periphr. tenses in, 369, 380; in O. O., 377, 383, 384; potential vbs. in, 381; adj. and subst. preds. in, 381; stated subjunctively, 386; sequence after unreal pr., 387; expressed as concessive, 388.

**Unreal Wish**—how expressed, 208, etc.

**Unus**—with consec. rel., 407, 11, d.

**Urging**—vbs. of, with *ut*, 265, 3.

**Usitatum**—in phrases with *ut*, 304.

**Usus**—in phrases with *ut*, 279, d; 303; *usu venit*, with *ut*, 302, 2.

**Ut**—in wishes, 206; interrogative 221, 2, c; in exclamatory questions, 258, 7, a; final, 262, 1; omitted, 268; consecutive, 299, 1; with vbs. of fear, 292, a; *ut non* = without, 288, 1; *ut ne* for *ne*, 269, 2; *nisi ut*, 346, 9; concessive, 213, 396; causal, 393, b; 407, 9, a; with *quam* and subjv., 306; *ut si*, see *Ut si*; temporal, 428-432.

**Ut primum**—428-432. See *Postquam*.

**Ut semel**—428-432. See *Postquam*.

**Utrum**—in dir. disjunctive questions, 233-237; whether—or not, 237-239; in indir. disjunctive questions, 247-252; as pron., 251; *utrumne*, 252; excluded in simple question, 238.

**Utor**—with personal ger., 42; fut. pass. part. of, 50.

**Utinam**—in wishes, 206, etc.

**Utpote**—with causal relative, 407, 9, a.

**Ut si**—390, 1.

**Valere**—with inf., 77; with *ut*, 265, 7.

**Velle**—with nom. and inf., 105, b; constrs. with, 93, a, b; 267; exact use of fut. pf., 147, a; no periphr. for, 163, 6, a; *velim*, 207, a; *vellem*, 208, 4; with subjv. for impr., 207, a; with pf. pass. part., 56; *velis*, *nolis*, etc., as impr., 200, 3, b.

**Velut**—390, 1; = as for example, 391; with part., 393; = on the ground that, 393, b; in figurative language, 394.

**Velutsi**—see *Velut*.

**Venire**—with acc. inf., 23, b; *usu venit*, with *ut*, 302, 2.

**Verbs**—defined, 1.

**Verbum**—in phrases with *ut*, 303.

**Vereri**—with *ne*, etc., 292, a; with inf., 293; with acc. and inf., 294.

**Verisimile**—in phrases with *ut*, 304.

**Vero**—yes, 259, 1, d; *nisi vero*, 349.

**Verum**—yes, 259, 1, d; with *ut*, 304; with acc. and inf., 83, 1.

**Vesci**—personal ger. of, 42; fut. pass. part. of, 50.

**Vetare**—constrs. with, 97, a; 265, 2; nom. and inf., 105, c, rem. 1.

**Videre**—with part., 56; with acc. and inf., 84; with ut, 296; vide ne (= perhaps), 296; in pass., with nom. and inf., 105, c; videtur, impersonal, 105, c, rem. 8; vide + subjv. for impr., 203, 3; 204, 5; videris, 150; visu, 26, b.

**Vitium**—in phrases with ut, 303.

**Voice**—defined, 3; three kinds, 13, a, b, c.

**Voluntas**—in phrases with ut, 279, a; 303.

**Warning**—vbs. of, with ut, 265, 2.

**Will**—vbs. of, constrs. with, 93, a, b; 265, 1.

**Wishes**—see *Optative Subjunctive*.

**Without**—how expressed, 288.

**Wonder**—expressions of, constrs. with, 414, a, b, c; 415.

**Yes**—how expressed, 259, 1, a, b, c, d, e.

FINIS.









# Date Due

RECEIVED			
JAN - 5 1951			
REC'D JAN 1 1951			
JAN 1 1951			
NOV 21 1951			
RECEIVED			
JAN 3 1952			

Library Bureau Cat. no. 1137

PA2215

,P4



3 2000 007 586 052



